



3 1761 04215 6174

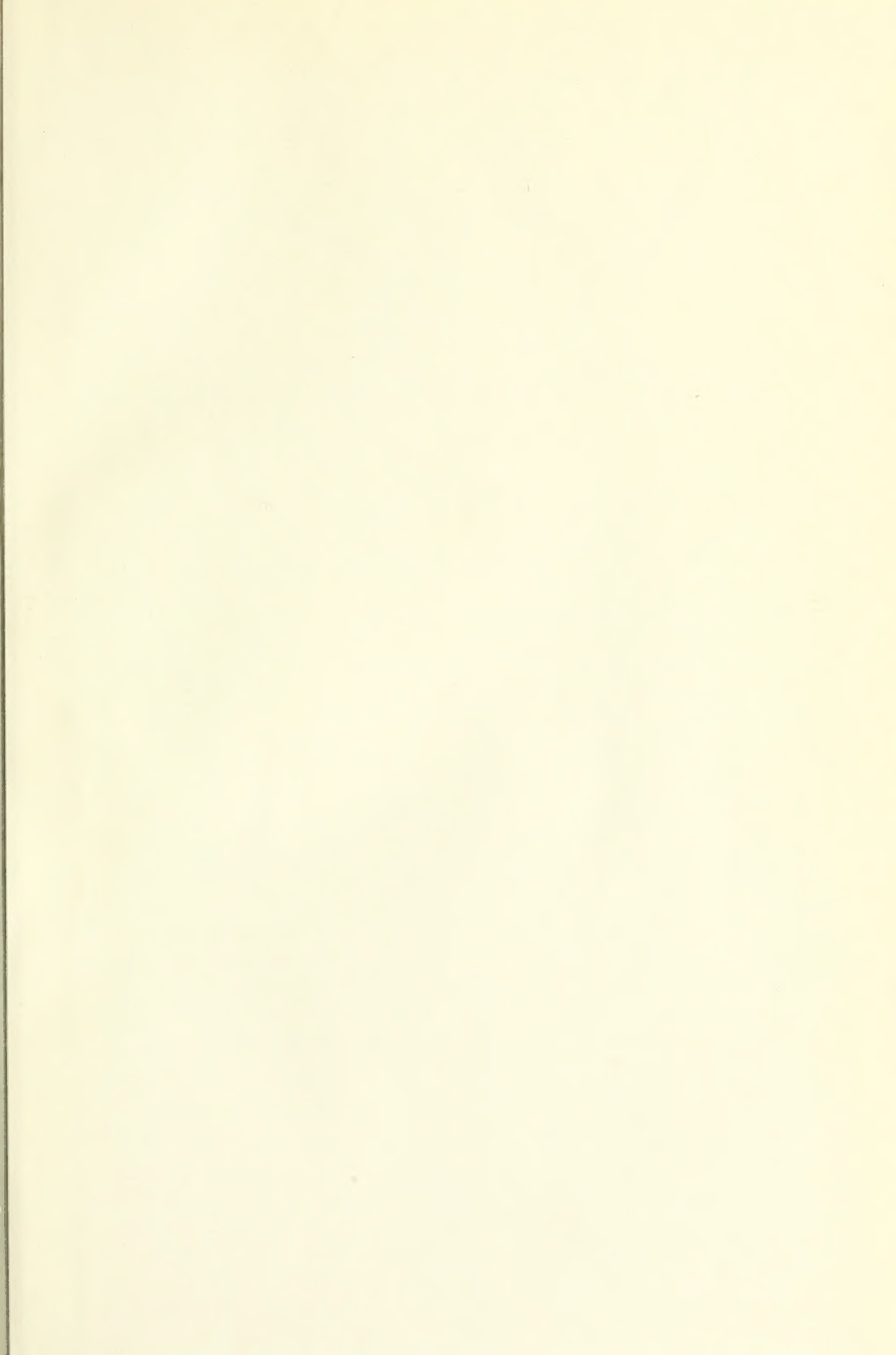


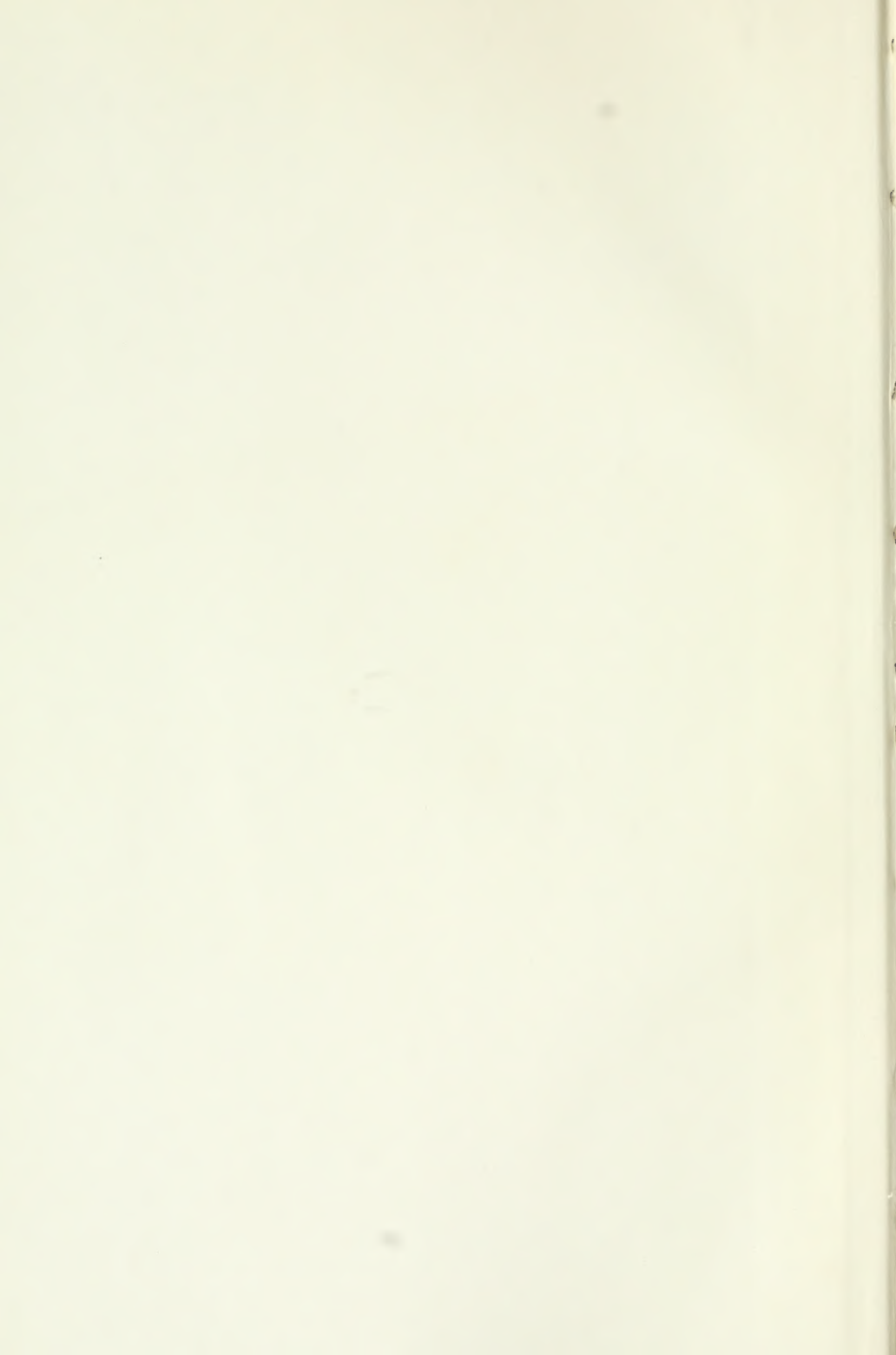














# A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH

BY  
J. R. H. SPENCER

PROFESSOR OF ENGLISH LITERATURE  
IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE

THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE  
PRESS

PRINTED BY THE UNIVERSITY PRESS, CAMBRIDGE

—

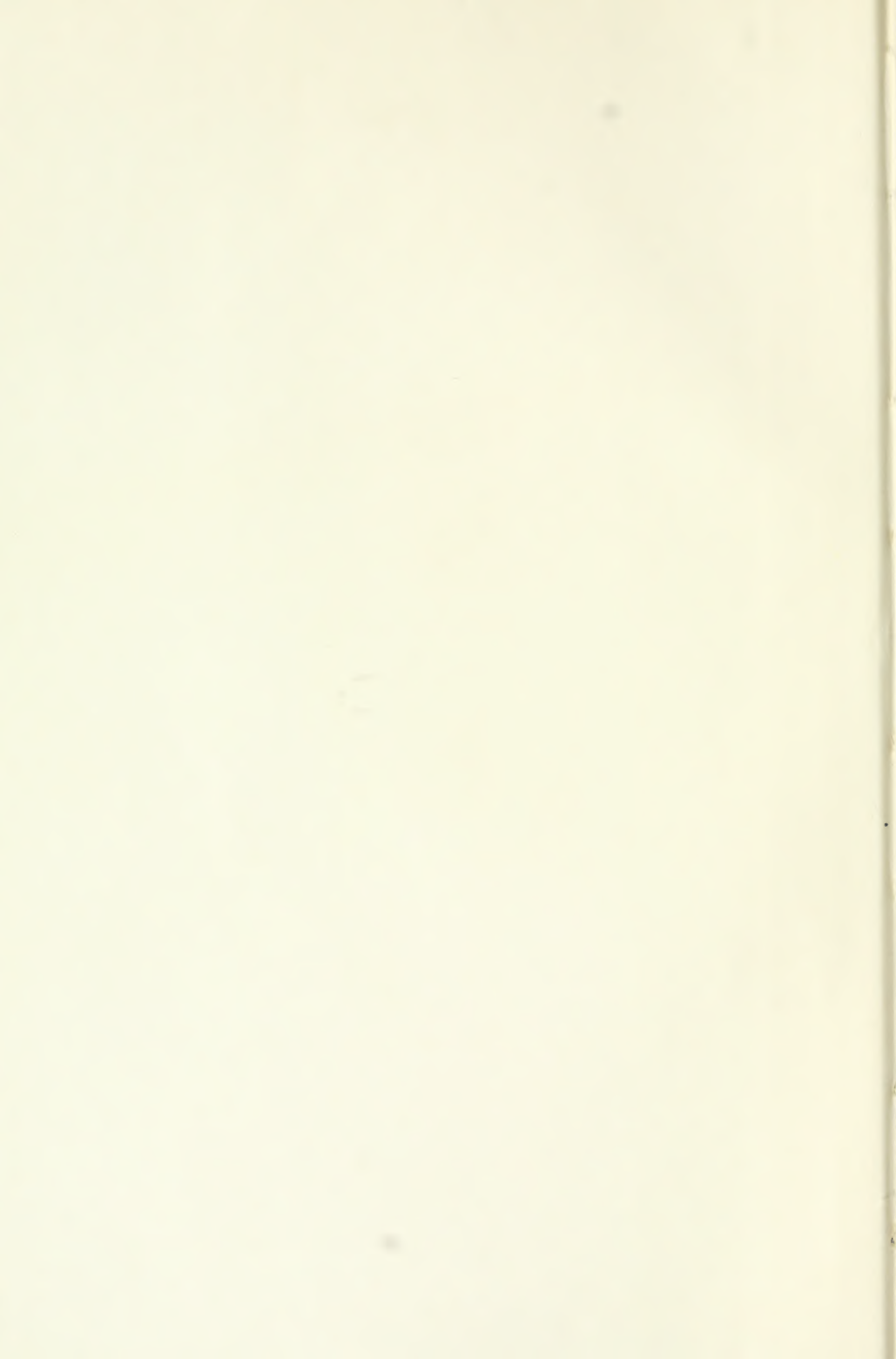
PART II

THE GRAMMAR OF ENGLISH

—

THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE PRESS

Cambridge, Massachusetts, U.S.A. and  
London, England





# A GRAMMAR OF LATE MODERN ENGLISH

FOR THE USE OF  
CONTINENTAL, ESPECIALLY DUTCH, STUDENTS,

BY

H. POUTSMA,

*English Master in the Municipal "Gymnasium", Amsterdam.*

---

## PART II

### THE PARTS OF SPEECH.

#### SECTION I, A

#### NOUNS, ADJECTIVES AND ARTICLES.



PE

1105

P6  
1928  
v.3



## PREFACE.

The second part of this Grammar dealing with the Parts of Speech in detail, falls into two sections, the first treating of nouns, pronouns and adnominal words, the second of verbs and particles. Owing to its inordinate bulk, the first section could not conveniently be brought out in one volume and has, therefore, been cut up into two portions of about equal size.

In preparing this part of my work, I have, in the main, proceeded on the same principles as those which guided me in the preparation of its predecessor. The only difference of any importance between this and the earlier part of my work is, that I have now been at greater pains to arrange my quotations chronologically. I have not, indeed, concerned myself much about minor details of chronology, as, for example, the order in which the novels of DICKENS or THACKERAY successively appeared; or the question whether *Vanity Fair* preceded or followed *David Copperfield*; but the great landmarks in the history of English Literature have been constantly kept in view. A few additional remarks may not be out of place.

The quotations used to support my statements, have, of course, been taken unaltered from the sources where I found them, but glaring inconsistencies in the use of capitals, hyphens, stops and similar typographical niceties have been removed. The quotations from SHAKESPEARE and the Authorized Version have been produced in modernized spelling, which will, perhaps, be considered improper in a work like the present. The editions used are respectively the well-known Globe Edition edited by WILLIAM G. CLARK and WILLIAM ALDIS WRIGHT and *The Oxford Bible for Teachers*.

In discussing such an elusive subject as the Syntax of Modern English Grammar, one is confronted by a formidable array of difficulties. It is often said, on what grounds I know not, that English is not bound by any strict rules of syntax. But anybody who has ever given the subject continued thought, must soon have become persuaded, that this is not in accordance with fact. The least change of comparatively insignificant words, the least tampering with the order of words in a sentence or phrase, and the slightest modification of stress and pitch, almost invariably produce changes of meaning which the most obtuse observer could not fail to notice at once. The prevailing freedom never degenerates into licence. Then

there is the important influence of rhythm and metre, overlooked or slighted by many grammarians, to which the recent publications of Dr. P. FIJN VAN DRAAT have especially drawn attention.

To make one's conclusions reliable a large number of quotations is needed. I have, indeed, collected a fair number to support my views: thousands upon thousands are scattered through the pages of my book, and yet in not a few cases the evidence at my disposal was inadequate, and could not be procured in the scanty leisure accorded to me. There are few things so wearisome and so disappointing as going in search of a particular idiom. The expressions one wants have a trick of not turning up when needed, while others, useful enough, but not particularly required for the subject in hand, constantly obtrude themselves on one's notice. The lack of sufficient material accounts for the diffidence with which I had to express myself in many cases, and the profuse use of saving terms.

It is often necessary to make nice distinctions, some of which may, at first sight, seem needless or even puerile, but which, on closer view, will appear to serve a useful purpose. It is then that the great difficulty of precise discrimination, and of neat and concise wording makes itself felt. Many observations have required casting and recasting over and over again, before their final form could be established. Nor will it be wondered at that, as the work was progressing, I have frequently been obliged to revise the disposition of the different headings under which I have discussed my subjects. This, of course, entailed a repeated rehandling of the references to preceding and subsequent paragraphs and observations. Some of them, too many I fear, are, therefore, incorrect. For obvious reasons this applies chiefly to the forward references, the backward references could be properly verified as the sheets were passing through the press. The necessity of ample and proper illustration and nice discrimination is chiefly responsible for the great bulk into which the book has swelled. As the sheets that had left the press, accumulated, I have often seriously considered the advisability of cutting down some branches of, apparently, too luxuriant growth, but the reflection that by a vigorous use of the pruning-knife I might materially injure the usefulness of my book, has stayed my hand.

Some important subjects, which in the books and treatises consulted have been touched upon only in the merest outline, or not at all, have found ample treatment. I may here call attention to the paragraphs dealing with the Adnominal Use of Nouns in the Common Case Form and the Conversion of Adjectives into Nouns. I flatter myself that in this field of English Grammar I have done some useful spadework.

I have, of course, diligently compared my results with those contained in the publications bearing on the subject, which at the moment of writing were at my disposal. Throughout the text I have constantly referred to these to assist the student in forming an opinion for himself. Full details

about the books and treatises consulted cannot, conveniently, be given until the book is completed. Also the preparation of the detailed Index of the present part in which so many subjects have to be discussed from more than one point of view, must be deferred until the whole is nearing completion.

I have again had the uninterrupted assistance of my brother, Dr. ALB<sup>s</sup>. POUTSMA, who through all the weary pages of this bulky volume has brought all the penetration of his discriminating mind to bear upon a subject, comparatively alien from his own studies, and to whom many important improvements in the way of arrangement and wording are due. I have great pleasure in saying that by his invaluable services he has cemented the feeling of brotherly affection by a sense of sincere gratitude. It is also a pleasant duty for me to acknowledge my indebtedness to the publisher for his generous co-operation in giving the book an attractive appearance, and, last but not least, to the compositor for the unremitting attention he has bestowed on the work entrusted to his care.

In conclusion I must tender my apologies to the reader for the inaccuracies, omissions and other imperfections, which cannot fail to strike him, if he goes carefully through the book. He may rest assured that any communication he should like to make to me regarding any portion of it, will meet a willing ear. In submitting my work to the scrutiny of students of English Grammar, I firmly believe that a few years more of constant study would enable me to ameliorate it in many ways. If then it should be urged that I have been rash in going to press, I can only plead the scantiness of my leisure and the uncertainty of life and vigour. There is a painful truth in the old song which I found quoted in SPENCER, Education, Ch. I:

Could a man be secure  
That his days would endure  
As of old, for a thousand long years,  
What things might he know!  
What deeds might he do!  
And all without hurry or care.

H. POUTSMA

AMSTERDAM, Christmas 1913.



## TABLE OF CONTENTS.

### CHAPTER XXIII.

ADNOMINAL USE OF NOUNS IN THE COMMON CASE . . . . .	1
NOUNS IN THE COMMON CASE USED ATTRIBUTIVELY §§ 1—13 . . . . .	1
General Observations §§ 1—4 . . . . .	1
Adnominal nouns expressing qualities §§ 5—11 . . . . .	5
Such as are names of substances §§ 5—7 . . . . .	5
Such as are names of persons, animals or things which are considered as the embodiment of a quality § 8 . . . . .	13
Such as denote a particular state, status, function employment or use of what is expressed by the noun modified §§ 9—10 . . . . .	16
Such as are proper names of persons or geographical bodies § 11 . . . . .	17
Adnominal nouns expressing relations §§ 12—13 . . . . .	17
Description of these relations § 12 . . . . .	17
Observations § 13 . . . . .	19
NOUNS IN THE COMMON CASE USED PREDICATIVELY §§ 14—17 . . . . .	23
Predicative nouns which express qualities or relations § 14 . . . . .	23
Observations § 15 . . . . .	23
Predicative nouns approximating to adjectives § 16 . . . . .	24
Observations § 17 . . . . .	28

### CHAPTER XXIV.

GENITIVE OF NOUNS . . . . .	30
FORM OF THE GENITIVE §§ 1—6 . . . . .	30
The genitive of simple nouns §§ 1—2 . . . . .	30
The genitive of compound nouns and word-groups §§ 3—4 . . . . .	33
The uninflected form taking the place of the genitive § 5 . . . . .	37
Observations § 6 . . . . .	38
MEANING AND USE OF THE GENITIVE §§ 7—56 . . . . .	40
The genitive is either individualizing or classifying § 7 . . . . .	40
THE INDIVIDUALIZING GENITIVE §§ 8—39 . . . . .	40
Different relations expressed by the individualizing genitive §§ 8—10 . . . . .	40
Use of the individualizing genitive and its prepositional equivalent apart from considerations of syntax, emphasis and metre or rhythm §§ 11—24 . . . . .	42

The genitive of possession or origin §§ 11—18 . . . . .	42
The genitive of agency or subjective genitive § 19 . . . . .	59
The objective genitive §§ 20—21 . . . . .	60
The genitive of measure §§ 22—23 . . . . .	63
The genitive of apposition or specializing § 24 . . . . .	69
Use of the individualizing genitive and its prepositional equivalent under the influence of considerations of syntax, emphasis and metre or rhythm §§ 25—31 . . . . .	71
The influence of syntactical connections §§ 26—28 . . . . .	71
The influence of comparative emphasis §§ 29—30 . . . . .	74
The influence of metre or rhythm § 31 . . . . .	76
Further observations §§ 32—39 . . . . .	76
The genitive and its equivalent with the preposition <i>of</i> differing in meaning § 32 . . . . .	76
The pleonastic genitive §§ 33—34 . . . . .	77
Prepositions other than <i>of</i> expressing certain functions of the genitive §§ 35—37 . . . . .	83
Use of <i>own</i> §§ 38—39 . . . . .	88
THE CLASSIFYING GENITIVE §§ 40—44 . . . . .	89
Preliminary Observations § 40 . . . . .	89
The classifying genitive denoting a quality § 41 . . . . .	90
The classifying genitive denoting a relation § 42 . . . . .	92
The classifying genitive of proper names § 43 . . . . .	94
Observations § 44 . . . . .	95
THE GENITIVE USED IN FOUR WAYS §§ 45—51 . . . . .	97
THE GENITIVE COMPARED WITH THE COMMON CASE §§ 52—56 . . . . .	101

## CHAPTER XXV.

NUMBER OF NOUNS . . . . .	112
FORM OF THE PLURAL §§ 1—17 . . . . .	112
The plural of simple nouns §§ 1—14 . . . . .	112
The plural of compound nouns and word-groups §§ 15—17 . . . . .	141
USE OF THE PLURAL §§ 18—36 . . . . .	147
Pluralia tantum §§ 18—21 . . . . .	147
Nouns whose singular is non-existent or unusual § 19 . . . . .	148
Nouns that have special meanings in the plural § 20 . . . . .	185
Nouns that are always used in the plural in certain combinations § 21 . . . . .	232
Nouns that are chiefly used in the singular §§ 22—24 . . . . .	240
Nouns that retain the singular form, although expressing a plural idea §§ 25—30 . . . . .	243
Nouns that retain the singular form, when used adnominally §§ 31—35 . . . . .	267
Use of individualizing words § 36 . . . . .	273

## CHAPTER XXVI.

CONCORD . . . . .	277
Definition of concord § 1 . . . . .	277
CONCORD OF NUMBER §§ 2—24 . . . . .	277
How concord of number is exhibited §§ 2—3 . . . . .	277
Concord with single elements of the sentence § 4—20 . . . . .	278
Want of concord between the subject and the nominal part of the predicate §§ 4—5 . . . . .	278
Collective nouns construed as singulars or plurals, according to their meaning §§ 6—11 . . . . .	280
Plural nouns construed as singulars §§ 12—18 . . . . .	290
Indefinite pronouns, nouns of common gender modified by an indefinite pronoun, or two or more nouns of different gender connected by <i>or</i> , referred to by plural pronouns § 19 . . . . .	310
Concord of <i>none</i> § 20 . . . . .	313
Concord with compound elements of the sentence §§ 21—24 . . . . .	314
CONCORD OF PERSON §§ 25—32 . . . . .	319
CONCORD OF GENDER §§ 33—38 . . . . .	325
Preliminary Observations §§ 33—35 . . . . .	325
Pronouns used in referring to names of persons that are of common gender § 36 . . . . .	326
Pronouns used in referring to names of animals § 37 . . . . .	329
Pronouns used in referring to names of inanimate things § 38 . . . . .	332

## CHAPTER XXVII.

SEX DENOTED BY NOUNS . . . . .	339
How the names of living beings may be divided §§ 1—2 . . . . .	339
Sex denoted by nouns that are not etymologically connected § 3 . . . . .	339
Sex denoted by suffixes §§ 4—11 . . . . .	340
Sex expressed by the context § 12 . . . . .	347
Sex indicated by adjectives, nouns or pronouns added to nouns of common gender § 13 . . . . .	349

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON ADJECTIVES . . . . .	354
Adjectives are either restrictive or continuative adnominal adjuncts § 1 . . . . .	354
Adjectives denote either qualities or relations §§ 2—3 . . . . .	354
Adjectives are either independent or relative §§ 4—5 . . . . .	359
Adjectives are used either attributively or predicatively §§ 6—8 . . . . .	359
Adjectives do not always logically belong to the nouns they modify grammatically § 9 . . . . .	362

## CHAPTER XXIX.

CONVERSION OF ADJECTIVES INTO NOUNS . . . . .	365
Adjectives may be either totally or partially converted into nouns § 1 . . . . .	365
ADJECTIVES TOTALLY CONVERTED INTO NOUNS §§ 2—12 . . . . .	368
Further comments on total conversion of adjectives § 2 . . . . .	368
Such as end in certain suffixes § 3 . . . . .	368
Such as denote a nationality § 4 . . . . .	376
Such as denote a language § 5 . . . . .	376
Such as denote a creed, sect or party § 6 . . . . .	377
Such as are comparatives § 7 . . . . .	377
Such as denote the most characteristic quality of a substance § 8 . . . . .	379
Such as are names of periodicals § 9 . . . . .	379
Such as denote a colour § 10 . . . . .	379
Such as do not answer to a general description § 11 . . . . .	380
Such as have conversion only occasionally and at variance with the genius of the language § 12 . . . . .	383
ADJECTIVES PARTIALLY CONVERTED INTO NOUNS §§ 13—28 . . . . .	387
Further comments on partial conversion of adjectives § 13 . . . . .	387
Such as denote persons §§ 14—20 . . . . .	387
Such as denote a class of persons in a generalizing way § 14 . . . . .	387
Such as denote a nationality and end in a sibilant § 15 . . . . .	396
Such as stand as objects to <i>to commit</i> , <i>to do</i> and <i>to play</i> § 16 . . . . .	398
Such as denote attributes of particular beings or things § 17 . . . . .	399
Such as denote single individuals § 18 . . . . .	400
The superlatives <i>first</i> and <i>last</i> , and the comparatives <i>former</i> and <i>latter</i> § 19 . . . . .	405
Participial adjectives denoting the victims of casualties § 20 . . . . .	405
Such as denote things §§ 21—24 . . . . .	406
Such as denote a quality in a generalizing way §§ 21—22 . . . . .	406
Superlatives preceded by a possessive pronoun § 23 . . . . .	419
The superlatives <i>first</i> and <i>last</i> and the comparatives <i>former</i> and <i>latter</i> § 24 . . . . .	420
Partially converted adjectives denoting an indefinite number of persons or things §§ 25—27 . . . . .	421
The adjective <i>own</i> § 28 . . . . .	425

## CHAPTER XXX.

DEGREES OF COMPARISON . . . . .	427
What words have degrees of comparison § 1 . . . . .	427
FORMATION OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON §§ 2—31 . . . . .	427
Comparison of simple words §§ 2—28 . . . . .	427
Regular terminational comparison §§ 2—4 . . . . .	427
Irregular terminational comparison §§ 5—27 . . . . .	429
Terminational and periphrastic comparison compared § 28 . . . . .	474

Comparison of compound words § 29 . . . . .	487
Terminational and periphrastic comparison combined § 30 . . . . .	490
The positive used instead of the superlative § 31 . . . . .	491
USE OF THE DEGREES OF COMPARISON §§ 32—47 . . . . .	491
Comparison of two qualities § 32 . . . . .	491
The comparative varying with the superlative, when two persons or things are compared § 33 . . . . .	492
The use and suppression of <i>the</i> , and the use of ( <i>at</i> +) possessive pronoun or definite article, before superlatives §§ 34—38 . . . . .	493
The use of comparatives to express the gradual increase of some quality § 39 . . . . .	503
The use of comparatives to express the proportional increase of two qualities § 40 . . . . .	504
The two ways to express how many times a person, animal or thing exceeds another as to the intensity of a certain quality § 41 . . . . .	506
The use of the preposition <i>by</i> before comparatives and superlatives § 42 . . . . .	507
Intensives before comparatives and superlatives § 43 . . . . .	507
The absolute superlative § 44 . . . . .	510
The absolute comparative § 45 . . . . .	511
English instances of the Latin construction <i>summus mons</i> § 46 . . . . .	511
The inclusive superlative § 47 . . . . .	512

## CHAPTER XXXI.

THE ARTICLE. . . . .	513
FORM OF THE ARTICLES §§ 1—3 . . . . .	513
MEANING OF THE ARTICLES §§ 4—8 . . . . .	517
USE OF THE ARTICLES §§ 9—74 . . . . .	530
Preliminary observations § 9 . . . . .	530
USE AND SUPPRESSION OF THE INDIVIDUALIZING DEFINITE ARTICLE §§ 10—30 . . . . .	532
Before common nouns §§ 10—22 . . . . .	532
Before common nouns that are modified by an adnominal clause, a prepositional word-group, an adnominal noun in the common case or an adjective §§ 10—14 . . . . .	532
Before the names of certain localities, the names of meals, the names of the main divisions of a day, the names of seasons and the names of months, days and festivals § 15 . . . . .	538
Before common nouns that are used as significant proper names § 16 . . . . .	549
Before the names of conceptions that are single in their kind § 17 . . . . .	554
Before <i>all</i> and <i>both</i> § 18 . . . . .	554
Before certain superlatives §§ 19—20 . . . . .	555
Before <i>one</i> when used as the correlative of <i>the other</i> , <i>another</i> or <i>other</i> § 21 . . . . .	562
Before such words as <i>before-mentioned</i> § 22 . . . . .	564



Before proper names §§ 23—30 . . . . .	564
Before proper names that have assumed the character of common nouns § 23 . . . . .	564
Before significant proper names §§ 24—27 . . . . .	565
Before proper names that are modified by an adnominal adjunct § 28 . . . . .	571
Before compound proper names both or all of whose parts are insignificant § 29 . . . . .	577
Before compound proper names one or all of whose parts are significant § 30 . . . . .	577
USE AND SUPPRESSION OF THE GENERALIZING ARTICLE §§ 31—37 . . . . .	587
Before adjectives partially converted into nouns and before singular nouns that are not collective nouns § 31 . . . . .	587
Before collective nouns § 32 . . . . .	590
Before plural nouns § 33 . . . . .	594
Before material and abstract nouns §§ 34—37 . . . . .	597
USE AND SUPPRESSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE §§ 38—42 . . . . .	608
Before abstract nouns that are modified by an adnominal clause § 38 . . . . .	608
Before the stems of verbs and before gerunds § 39 . . . . .	608
Before other abstract nouns § 40 . . . . .	610
Before the names of certain disorders, before <i>time</i> or <i>distance</i> preceded by an adjective, before nouns in certain salutations and imprecations and in titles of books, etc. § 41 . . . . .	632
Before abstract nouns, when modified by the determinative <i>such</i> or the exclamatory <i>what</i> § 42 . . . . .	634
SUPPRESSION OF EITHER ARTICLE BEFORE NOUNS IN CERTAIN GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS IN WHICH THEIR MEANING IS MODIFIED §§ 43—61 . . . . .	635
Before common nouns that assume the character of proper names, i. e. when they are used in address, as appositions or after specializing <i>of</i> § 43 . . . . .	635
Before nouns used predicatively § 44—52 . . . . .	637
Why the article is apt to be suppressed before predicative nouns § 44 . . . . .	637
Before predicative nouns not preceded by <i>as</i> § 45—47 . . . . .	637
Before predicative nouns preceded by <i>as</i> or its substitute <i>for</i> § 48 . . . . .	644
Before predicative nouns after <i>to turn</i> § 49 . . . . .	647
Before predicative nouns that are followed by an adnominal clause with the relative <i>that</i> , or an adverbial clause with the conjunction <i>as</i> § 50 . . . . .	647
Before abstract nouns standing after <i>to make</i> and followed by an adnominal gerund- or infinitive clause § 51 . . . . .	647
Before predicative nouns that occur both as adjectives and as nouns § 52 . . . . .	648
Before common nouns followed by proper names by way of apposition §§ 53—56 . . . . .	648

Before plural nouns that have assumed the character of indefinite pronouns § 57 . . . . .	657
Before nouns that have assumed the character of indefinite numerals § 58 . . . . .	660
Before <i>half</i> and <i>double</i> §§ 59—60 . . . . .	663
Before other nouns § 61 . . . . .	666
SUPPRESSION OF EITHER ARTICLE FOR THE SAKE OF BREVITY §§ 62—71 . . . . .	667
Suppression of the definite article § 63—66. . . . .	667
Before many nouns, or quasi-nouns, used as non-prepositional object, or as part of a prepositional word-group §§ 63—64 . . . . .	667
Before many nouns, when connected with another noun § 65 . . . . .	680
Before many nouns, when forming part of headings in books, essays, etc. § 66 . . . . .	684
Suppression of the indefinite article §§ 67—68 . . . . .	684
when a weak <i>some</i> § 67 . . . . .	684
when a weak <i>any</i> § 68 . . . . .	688
Suppression of either article in enumerations, epigrammatic language, and in verse §§ 69—71 . . . . .	692
VACILLATION BETWEEN THE DEFINITE AND THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE §§ 72—74 . . . . .	694

## CHAPTER XXIII.

### ADNOMINAL USE OF NOUNS IN THE COMMON CASE.

#### 1. Nouns may be used as adnominal words:

- a) attributively: Russia needs help to foster her *infant* colonies. Times.
- b) predicatively: Charles is *a soldier*. He will remain *a widower*. He turned *Christian*. They parted *enemies*. They called him *madman*.

#### 2. Attributive nouns occur:

- a) in the common case: The commercial policy of Japan is no *chance* thing. Daily Mail.
- b) in the genitive case: I ran to the *vessel's* edge. MARIE CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. XXXIX, 245.  
I'm not a *lady's* man. MRS. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XII, 203.

Note. Adnominal nouns may also be placed in apposition. Ch. IV.

#### 3. Attributive nouns in the common case are used to express:

- a) qualities: Russia needs help to foster her *infant* colonies. Times.  
(= *young* colonies.)
- b) relations: Nowhere have these complaints been more just than in the *China* trade. Times. (= the trade *to China*.)

#### 4. Obs. I. The attributive use of the common-case form of a noun is a highly interesting feature of the English language, to which there is hardly a parallel in either Dutch or German. Occasional instances are, indeed, met with in our language, but as the numerous illustrative word-groups and quotations given below, show, different turns of expression are in the majority of cases necessary to render its meaning. Even when a noun is placed adnominally before another noun, it is mostly felt as a component part of a compound, not as an independent word like an ordinary adjective, which is the case in English. See especially H. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 63 ff; JESP., *Growth and Structure*, § 210.

#### II. The independent character of the common-case form of the attributive noun has sometimes rendered it possible,

- c) that such a noun is modified by an adverb. From a too *exclusively London* standpoint<sup>1)</sup>. In *purely Government* work. LECKY<sup>1)</sup>. A *distinctly Church of England* institution<sup>2)</sup>.

She was brought up by a *very heathen* father and mother. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. X, 91.

- d) that such a noun stands adnominally after a compound of -thing: There was *nothing* political or *partisan* in the history of the question. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5658, 1c.

- e) that such a noun is placed in the degrees of comparison, i. e.: when expressing a quality, in the periphrastic comparative or superlative; when expressing a relation, in the terminational superlative. Compare 16.

- i. **baby**. The little king of Spain is also shown on stamps, but in a *more baby* state. *III. Lond. News*.

**business**. Is it any wonder that the German can even afford to pay the 25 per cent preference and get the business by his *more business* methods? *Times*, No. 1826, 1053b.

**model**. "And baby is the best traveller in the world," said Donati, "and in every way the *most model* baby." EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. XXVI, 239.

**pattern**. Johnson clung to them as fondly as if they had been the *most pattern* hero and heroine of romantic fiction. LESLIE STEPHEN, *Life of Johnson*, 3.

**silver**. An accent very low | In blandishment, but a *most silver* flow | Of subtle-paced counsel in distress. TEN., *Isabel*, II.

- ii. **centremost**. In the *centremost* parts of her complicated heart there existed at this minute a little pang of disappointment. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. II, 420.

**headmost**. Then as the *headmost* foes appeared. | With one brave bound the copse he cleared. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, II.

The *headmost* horseman rode alone. *Ib.*, I, VI.

**rearmost**. The engine of the express reared up and literally leaped upon the roof of the *rearmost* carriages of the Tournai train. *Graph*.

A long straggling troop bore spades and mattocks while the two *rearmost* of all staggered along under a huge basket of fish. CON. DOYLE, *White Comp.*, Ch. I, 2.

**topmost**. The wood Seems sunk and shorten'd to its *topmost* boughs. COWPER, *Sofa*, (226).

They could descry nothing but one or two spectral black trees, their *topmost* branches coming up into the clearer air. WILLIAM BLACK, *The New Prince Fort.*, Ch. XIV.

Topmost is sometimes used metaphorically as a quality-expressing word: He walked for a mile or two at his *topmost* speed. G. GISSING, *Eve's Ransom*, Ch. XIII.

Terminational comparison of quality-expressing attributive nouns is rare and has a burlesque effect<sup>3)</sup>: The wife is apt to remember that she is the *bosomest* of her husband's friends. TROL., *Prime Min.*, III, 61.

<sup>1)</sup> JESP., *Growth and Structure*, § 210. — <sup>2)</sup> WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adj.*, 19. — <sup>3)</sup> STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 685.

I'd rather be here than in the *swellest* London club. GISSING, *The House of Cobwebs*, 37.

The *swellest* European hotels. MUIRHEAD, *The Land of Contrasts*, 256. He has the *darlingest* expression. PUNCH, No. 3651, 498b.

It must here be observed, however, that the frequent use of a noun as an attributive adnominal word sometimes causes it to assume the character of a pure adjective, insomuch that there is nothing unusual in its being placed in either one or both of the degrees of comparison. Such, among, perhaps, other nouns are:

**chief.** Mr. Gumbo proposed to ride by the window for the *chief* part of the journey. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XX, 202.

For the first few weeks she spoke only to the goat, that was her *chiefest* friend on earth. RUDY. KIPLING, *The Light that failed*, Ch. I, 5.

**choice.** No place will please me so, no mean of death, As here by Caesar, and by you cut off, | The *choice* and master *spirits* of this age. JUL. CÆS., III, 1, 163.

He quickly rallied round him the *choicest* spirits in the Church. BUCKLE, *Civilis.*, III, 110.

He had shown her all his *choicest* nursery of plants. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. X, 108.

**dainty.** And I would be the girdle | About her *dainty* waist. TEN., *The Miller's Daughter*, XXIII.

The hand of little employment hath the *daintier* sense. HAMLET, V, I, 78.

There stood waiting for her the *daintiest* of little broughams. M. M. GRANT, *Sun-Maid*, VII<sup>2</sup>).

- III. For all that almost any noun can be freely used as an attributive adnominal adjunct, it is in this function to be regarded as a kind of makeshift, employed because there is not a fitting adjective expressing the meaning intended and the language does not admit of coining one from the noun. Thus we find: *the Transvaal Government*, (FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 61), *the Free State magistrates* (Ib., Ch. III, 52), because there are no adjectives derived from either *Transvaal* or *Free State*. Conversely we never say *England Government*, *magistrates*, etc. for *English Government*, *magistrates*, etc. Nor are, for example, *Elizabeth poets* or *suburb traffic* current collocations for *Elizabethan poets* (SHAW, *Hist. of Eng. Lit.*, Ch. IV) or *Suburban traffic* (Times).

Compare also the adjectives with the attributive nouns in: The *commercial* policy of Japan is no *chance* thing. DAILY MAIL.

The Review of Review is absolutely independent, and is free from any *national*, *sex*, *class*, *sectarian* and *denominational* bias. REV. OF REV., CXCV, 226.

The tone of these lyrics is rather that of the *Restoration* poets than that of the earlier *Caroline* school. STEPH. GWENN, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. I, 25.

Note also that the language has recently formed *pictorial postcard*, which is used by the side of *picture-postcard*.

- IV. For reasons of euphony, metre, rhythm, etc. the attributive noun is sometimes used, although there is a corresponding adjective, conveying practically the same meaning.

<sup>1</sup>) MURRAY, s. v. *choice*; <sup>2</sup>) id., s. v. *dainty*.



**colony.** In the old *colony* days, in Plymouth the land of the Pilgrims. LONGFELLOW, *Courtship of Miles Standish*, I, 1. (Compare: As ancient is this hostelry As any in the land may be, Built in the old *Colonial* day. Id., *Tales of a Wayside Inn*, Prel., 10.)

**coward.** Those Sons of Freedom would have pistolled, stabbed — in some way slain — that man by *coward* hands and murderous violence. DICK., *CHUZ.*, Ch. XXI, 185*a*. (instead of *cowardly*.)

**Flanders.** The country squire's great coach and heavy *Flanders* mares. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 8. (instead of *Flemish*.)

**fool.** That 'many' may be meant | By the *fool* multitude. Merch. of Ven., II, 9, 26. (instead of *foolish*.)

How this *fool* passion gulls men potently. MATTHEW ARNOLD, *Tristram and Iseult*, III, 133.

What if she be fasten'd to this *fool* lord. TEN., *Maud*, I, xvi, ii.

The interchange of visits between the journalists of Germany and of Britain affords welcome evidence of the depth and sincerity of the common sentiment of the two nations despite all the *fool* fury of the demented phobists on either side. Rev. of Rev., CCX, 563*a*.

**light-foot.** But *light-foot* Iris brought it yester-eve. TEN., *Cenone*, VII. (instead of *light-footed*.)

**money.** Money profit rather than advancement of learning must be first regarded in the policy of the institution. The Periodical, 78. (instead of *monetary*.)

**neighbour.** And Lilia with the rest, and lady friends | From *neighbour* seats. TEN., *The Princess*, Prol., 98. (instead of *neighbouring*, see the quotation below under *taper*.)

**Portugal.** My ship the Swan is newly arrived from St. Sebastian, laden with *Portugal* wines. FARQUHAR, *The Constant Couple*, I, 1, (44). (instead of *Portuguese*.)

**scoundrel.** He had a *scoundrel* dog whom he taught to whine in the most ludicrous manner. WASH. IRVING, *Sketch-book*, XXXII, 357. (instead of *scoundrelly*.)

**stranger.** I saw the *stranger* lad lift up his head. JOHN HALL., Ch. I, 6. (Compare: She remembered the *strange* officer's warning. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*.)

**taper.** I saw the *taper* spire of a village church rising from the brow of a neighbouring hill. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-book*, *The Voyage*, 12*b*. (instead of *tapering*.)

**victor.** And I return to thee, mine own heart's home; | As to his Queen some *victor* Knight of Faery. SHELLEY, *Revolt of Islam*, *Dedication*, 3. (instead of *victorious*.)

- V. In some cases, especially to meet the requirements of metre, rhythm, 'cursus' or rhyme, or when neither an attributive noun nor an adjective is available, a word-group consisting of *of* + noun is used to express the meaning intended.

She that finds a winter sunset fairer than a morn *of Spring*. LOCKSL. HALL., *Sixty Years After*, 22.

*The war of arms* in the Far East has ended; the new war *of commerce* is about to begin. Daily Mail.

The whole agitation would have collapsed like a house *of cards*.  
Rev. of Rev., CXIV, 112a.

To cover (with a gun, pistol, etc.) = to present a gun or pistol at (something) so as to have it directly in the line *of fire*. MURRAY, s. v. *cover*, 11.

- VI. Sometimes the noun followed by *of* + noun logically represents the defining idea, the idea defined being indicated by the noun standing after *of*. This is especially the case in the colloquial turn of expression instanced in the following quotations with such emotional words as:

**devil.** I certainly am *a devil of a mannerist*. BYRON, Letter to Mr. Murray.

There are prisoners here sometimes, who are not in such *a devil of a hurry* to be tried. DICK., Little Dorrit, I, Ch. I, 4a.

You are letting in *a devil of a draught* here. *ib.*, Ch. X, 59a.

**love.** What *a love of a child!* Jane Eyre, Ch. XVII, 210.

**milkstop.** That *Methodist milkstop of an eldest son* looks to Parliament. Van. Fair, I, Ch. XI, 107.

**slip.** She is *a frail slip of a woman*. Rev. of Rev., CCIV, 573b.

**snip.** She was *a frail slip of a woman with a snip of face*. DOR. GERARD, The Eternal Woman, Ch. I.

**strip.** It was disgusting to Keck to see *a strip of a fellow* get up and speechify by the hour against institutions which had existed "when he was in his cradle". G. ELIOT, Middlemarch, Ch. XXVI, 342.

**termagant.** How the old duke adored *his termagant of a wife*. Mrs. WARD, Lady Rose's Daught., I, Ch. V, 40b.

This is really the relation also between the modifying word-group and the word modified in the turn of expression mentioned in Ch. V, 17, as is clearly seen by comparing the first with the second member of the following sentence: She's *a small thing*, not much of a figure. G. ELIOT, Mill, V, Ch. V, 312.

- VII. It is interesting to note how a quality or a relation may sometimes be expressed in all the three ways described above. Thus *passenger birds* (Jane Eyre, Ch. XXIII, 302) = *birds of passage* = *migratory birds* (= *migrants*).

- VIII. An adnominal noun sometimes appears without a head-word: Have patience with me, brother Herluin, and I will die as soon as I can and go where there is neither French nor English, Jew nor Gentile, *bond* nor free, but all are alike in the eyes of Him who made them. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XX, 88a.

## 5. Qualities are expressed:

- a) by names of substances: *a cotton apron*;
- b) by names of persons, animals or things that are considered as the embodiment of a quality: *a giant tree*; *an infant colony*.
- c) by names of persons, animals or things denoting a particular state, status, function, employment or use of what is expressed by the noun modified: *a widow lady*, *a beggar-maid*, *his clergyman cousin*, *a fisher-lad*, *a sumpter-pony*.

- d) by proper names of persons, countries, towns, etc. denoting the origin or habitat of what is expressed by the head-word: *a Gladstone bag, Ceylon tea, a Bengal tiger.*

When the adnominal noun denotes a matter which is felt to differ distinctly in nature from that expressed by the head-word, there is little difficulty in assigning its place among those mentioned under b), but when there is no such difference it often answers both to the description under b) and that under c).

She was not at that time an *infant prodigy*. WILLIAM MOTTRAY. *The true Story of George Eliot*. Ch. I. 6.

The Queen left St. Pancras on Wednesday for Sandringham for the purpose of visiting the Princess of Wales and seeing the *baby Prince*. *Daily Mail*.

6. To denote the substance that things consist of, or are made of, the unmodified name of the substance is now commonly used: *an iron bedstead, a cotton frock.*

There she sat, staid and taciturn-looking, as usual in her brown *stuff* gown, her check apron, white handkerchief, and cap. JANE EYRE, Ch. XVI, 185.

And tripping across the room daintily to a little *mother-of-pearl* inlaid desk, she opened it with a silver key. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 256.

Then the three men strung their long *yew* bows. Robin Hood (*Grano Series*, 139).

The *oil* painting of Mr. and Mrs. Bowster. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 72).

7. Obs. I. Sometimes an adjective is used for the same purpose.

- a) The following adjectives may be met with not only in the higher literary style, but in ordinary spoken and written language: *birchen, earthen, hempen, leaden, leathern, oaken, oaten, wheaten, wooden, woollen.*

Besides the adjectives *leathern* and *oaken* we also find the nouns *leather* and *oak*, the latter being, perhaps, preferred in matter-of-fact language; the adjective *hempen*, on the other hand, seems to be more frequent than the corresponding noun; *earthen* and *oaten* seem to be the ordinary forms, except in certain compounds, such as *earthworks, oatmeal*. *Wheat* is occasionally met with instead of *wheaten*. Of the other material adjectives mentioned above, it may be said that they are used practically or wholly to the exclusion of the corresponding noun-forms. When these latter are used, they will mostly be found to convey a slightly different shade of meaning. Thus in *wood pavement* it is almost exclusively the road-metal used in the construction, hardly the construction itself, that is in our thoughts. Compare the Dutch *hout-bestrating*. The use of *wool* instead of *woollen*, as in the quotation cited below is very rare. With *leaden* compare *leaded* as in *leaded panes* (= Dutch: in lood gevatte ruiten).

**birchen.** Canoe-men in their *birchen* vessels. PARKMAN<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *birchen*.

He was sitting on a *birchen* trunk that had fallen by the stream. HALLIWELL'S *Sentence*. Through Sorrow's Gate, 23.

**earth(en)**. i. A good store of milk lay in *earthen* and wooden vessels. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. II, 193a.

The master sat down beside her on the *earthen* bank. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XVIII, 183.

In this high field's dark corner, where he leaves | His coat, his basket, and his *earthen* cruise. MATTHEW ARNOLD, *The Scholar Gipsy*, II.

The door alone let in the day, | Showing the trodden *earthen* floor. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, The Man born to be King, 43a.

Still higher . . . the elevation called Bulbarrow . . . swelled into the sky, engirdled by its *earthen* trenches. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. IV, 34.

ii. The Russians had thrown up strong *earthworks* on the banks of the river. KINGSLAKE, *Crimea*, III, III, 340<sup>1)</sup>.

**hemp(en)**. i. I covered it with the skins of 'Yahoos' well stitched together with *hempen* threads of my own making. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. X, 211a.

The 'Bounty' lay motionless upon the placid waters of the quiet little bay, her *hempen* cable hanging straight up and down from hawse-pipe to anchor. LOUIS BECKE and WALT. JEFFERY, *The Mutineer*, 10.

The slow match consists of *hempen* cord, steeped in a solution of saltpetre. *Cassell's Conc. Cycl.*, s. v. *match*.

ii. The wires in each strand must be twisted round a *hemp* core. R. F. MARTIN<sup>1)</sup>.

**leather(n)**. i. The armourer's heart swelled big with various and contending sensations, so that it seemed as if it would burst the *leathern* doublet under which it was shrouded. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. III, 37.

Mr. Dick never travelled without a *leathern* writing-desk. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XVII, 124b.

He wore ribbed hose and *leathern* gaiters. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 8.

His only clothing was a ragged sheepskin, bound with a *leathern* girdle. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 1a.

ii. Here he saw a pretty young woman in *leather* gloves. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 108.

The king took a heavy *chamois leather* case. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, I, 27.

**oaken**. i. Beside him, balanced upon the top of a thick *oaken* cudgel, was a weather-stained silver-laced hat. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 226.

With his lips compressed and clouded brow, he strode up and down the *oaken* floor. *Id.*, The White Company, Ch. I, 2.

ii. She opened the *oak* doors. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 105.

Presentation of a carved *oak* chair to Dr. James. Williams. *Graph*.

**oaten**. Meanwhile the rural ditties were not mute, | Temper'd to the *oaten* flute. MILTON, *Lycidas*, 33.

You have *oaten cakes* baked some months before. LONGFELLOW, *Rural Life in Sweden*.

Batter sinks better into *wheaten* bread than into *oaten* cakes. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, III, 48.

**wheaten**. i. The people live a good deal upon cakes made of *oatmeal*, instead of *wheaten* bread. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.*, I, 5.

John Halifax had probably not tasted *wheaten* bread like this for months. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 9.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *earthwork*.



ii. It shall suffice that the bread be such as is usual to be eaten, but the best and purest *wheat* bread that may conveniently be gotten. Book of Common Prayer.

**wood(en).** i. The man with the *wooden* leg eyed me all over. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38b.

ii. They (sc. the motor omnibuses) outpace the 'buses, and, except when the *wood* pavement is slimy, they are well under control. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 342b. I am sorry that my chairs all have *wood* seats. TH. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LVI, 465.

**wool(len).** i. He always wears *woollen* stockings.

ii. A small *wool* hat rested on the top of his nose. Wash. Irv., *Sketch-Book*, *The Leg. of Sleepy Hollow*, 359.

γ) Some are used only occasionally in ordinary style, but are frequent enough in the higher literary language.

**ashen.** i. And Ronin's mountains dark have sent | Their hunters to the shore,  
And each his *ashen* bow unbent, | And gave his pastime o'er. SCOTT, *Lord of the Isles*, IV, ix.

Ash = the *ashen* shaft of a spear. MURRAY, s. v. ash, 3.

ii. The effects of the *ashen* shower were not instantaneous. Pall Mall Gaz. 1882, 25 Oct. 2/21).

**brazen.** And many other things there be, which they have received to hold, as the washing of cups and pots and *brazen* vessels. Mark, VII, 4.

Hear the loud alarm bells, | *Brazen* bells. POE, *The Bells*, III.

The sun came dazzling thro' the leaves, | And flamed upon the *brazen* greaves  
Of bold Sir Lancelot. TEN., *The Lady of Shal.*, III, 1.

Push the *brazen* door. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 3b.

**flaxen.** I have often wanted him to throw off his great *flaxen* wig. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops to Conquer*, II (192).

A patent for spinning a *flaxen* thread. J. NICHOLSON, *Operat. Mechanic*, 405<sup>2</sup>).

**golden.** Hear the mellow wedding-bells, | *Golden* bells. POE, *The Bells*, II.  
The congregation will turn away from its books and prayers, to worship the *golden* calf in your person. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXIV, 251.

She that holds the diamond necklace dearer than the *golden* ring. TEN., *Locksley Hall*, *Sixty Years After*, 21.

Every door is barr'd with gold, and opens but to *golden* keys. Id., *Locksley Hall*, 100.

Reach me my *golden* cup that stands by thee. MATTHEW ARNOLD, *Tristram and Iseult*, I, 72.

Then taking from her bosom a small *golden* medallion attached to a slender *golden* chain, she placed it in his hands. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. II, 24.

They presented little Prince Edward with a *golden* replica of the King's cup given to each of the guests at his Majesty's dinner. III. Lond. News.

The building of a *golden* bridge for the retreat of those whom we wish to evacuate their position is good strategy and sound common sense. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 335a.

The millionaire must be regarded as the working-bee, the most of whose *golden* store must at his death be appropriated by the community. Id., CCV, 28.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *ashen*; 2) id., s. v. *flaxen*.



**silken.** She wore a gray *silken* gown. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 104.  
When the breeze of a joyful dawn blew free | In the *silken* sail of infancy.  
TEN., Rec. of the Arab. Nights, I.

As there are now no gates, a barrier was made for the occasion by the holding of a red *silken* rope across the street on either side of the Griffin, which commemorates the spot upon which the Temple Bar stood. Times.

**waxen.** He blew out the *two waxen candles* which he had in his hand. MOTLEY, Rise, Hist. Introd., 37b.

In a poor chamber of the Vatican, upon a simple bed beside which burned two *waxen* torches in the cold morning light, lay the body of the man whom none had loved, and many had feared. MAR. CRAWF., Don Orsino.

The corresponding nouns and the word-groups with the preposition of are also met with in literary diction.

A *gold* harp leans against the bed. MATTHEW ARNOLD, Tristram and Iseult, I, 17.

I know him by his harp of *gold*. Ib., I, 19.

- II. Especially in the higher literary style material adjectives are often used to denote one or more special qualities suggested by the substance. See SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 173; and compare also Ch. XXVIII, 7a.

**ashen.** He was startled by the *ashen hue* of her face. MARION CRAWFORD, A Tale of a Lonely Parish, Ch. IX, 91.

**brazen.** Bright clouds, | Motionless pillars of the *brazen heavens*. BRYANT<sup>1)</sup>.  
A rare monument of *brazen mendacity*. PARKMAN<sup>1)</sup>.

**flaxen.** He was tall and large-jointed with very light blue eyes and almost *flaxen hair*. (?) Madame Leroux, Ch. X.

**glazen.** He thus continued to follow with his green *glazen eyes* the motions of young Mordaunt Merton. SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. IX, 106.

**golden.** And I have bought | *Golden opinions* from all sorts of people. Macb., I, 7, 38.

He (sc. the parrot) turn'd on rocks and raging surf | His *golden eye*. CAMPBELL, The Parrot (Rainb., I, 18).

This gave a *golden opportunity* to the seniors of which they were not slow to avail themselves. MRS. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 92.

Sweet lips whereon perpetually did reign | The summer calm of *golden charity*. TEN., Isabel, I.

The poet in a *golden clime* was born. | With *golden stars* above. Id., The Poet, I.

Her hair falls about her face like the pale *golden halo* you see round the head of a Madonna. MISS BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, II, Ch. III, 50.

One of the *golden youths*, who had family ties with the Liberal Chief, carried him the story. KATH. TYNNAN, Johnny's Luck.

**leaden.** The *leaden weight* of the dead air pressed upon his brow and heart. RUSKIN, The King of the Golden River, Ch. III.

*Leaden skies*, chill mists, and raging gales were their portion for sixty long days. LADY POORE, Our Real Antipodes (Westm. Gaz., No. 5179, 3b).

**silken.** To be restrained by such mild and *silken language*. WATTS, Improv. Mind, 90<sup>2)</sup>.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *brazen*; <sup>2)</sup> id., s. v. *silken*.

Their *silken ease* | And royal luxury changed for blood and tears. L. MORRIS, *Epic of Hades*, II, 135<sup>1)</sup>.

A splendid charger, whose neck...swayed hither and thither to her *silken touch*. W. WRIGHT, *Palmyra and Zenobia*, III, 23<sup>1)</sup>.

In her lovely *silken murmur*. MRS. BROWNING, *Lady Ger. Courtish*, VII.

**waxen**. Baby fingers, *waxen touches*, press me from the mother's breast: TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 90.

The gentleman in the ample white cravat and shirt-frill is Mr. Riley, a gentleman with a *waxen complexion* and fat hands. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. III, 8.

The gait was feeble, the bearing had lost all its erectness; the bronzed strength of the face had given place to a *waxen* and ominous *pallor*. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 175.

**wooden**. Mr. F. W. Dunn complained of the *wooden translations* given even by well-taught pupils in examination<sup>2)</sup>.

- III. Also some material *nouns* are sometimes thus used. See also 8, c. Note. FJ: VAN DRAAT (*Rhythm in Eng. Prose, The Adj.*, § 27 ff.) has been at great pains to show that the choice between material nouns and material adjectives is often determined by the laws of metre and rhythm.

**diamond**. From the green rivage many a fall | Of *diamond rillets* musical. TEN., *Recollections of the Arabian Nights*, V.

**gold**. I saw the *gold sunshine* round your head. Henry Esmond (TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. V, 131).

The little *gold curls* on her temples. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 152 (Compare: Her hair had lost the original *gold*, which had dazzled the eyes of the poor defunct baroness. FOR. GERARD, *Eternal Woman*, Ch. XIX).

**iron**. Death relaxed his *iron features*. LONGFELLOW, *Norm. Bar.*, VII.

He felt the loss as much as it was in his *iron nature* to feel the loss of anything but a province or a battle. MAC., *Fred.*, 60a.

The *iron hand* is not less irresistible because it wears a velvet glove. O. W. HOLMES, *Autocrat of the Breakfast-table*, Ch. VII, 65a.

I have known him presume upon his *iron strength* until he has fainted from pure inanition. COS. DOYLE, *Retara of Sherl. Holm.*, Adv. of the Norw. Build.

**pinchbeck**. Where in these *pinchbeck days*, can we hope to find the old agricultural virtue in all its purity? TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 12.

**silver**. He was a cynic! You might read it writ | In that broad brow crowned with its *silver hair*. SHIRLEY BROOKS (TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 59).

**velvet**. Where dew lies long upon the flower, | Though vanished from the *velvet grass*. SCOTT, *Bridal of Triermain*, *Introd.*, I.

Here we may also mention *copper beech* (= Dutch bruine beuk).

- IV. In older English the number of material adjectives was greater than it is in present English. Those in the following quotations are now quite obsolete, or survive only as archaisms.

**azurn**. Thick-set with agate and *the azurn sheen* | Of turkis blue, and emerald green. MILTON, *Comus*, 893.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *silken*. - <sup>2)</sup> WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adj.*, 15.

**beechen.** But one into his waggon drew him up, | And gave him milk from out a *beechen* cup. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Paradise*, *Proud King*, LII.

**cedarn.** Right to the carven *cedarn* doors. TEN., *Recollections of the Arabian Nights*, XI.  
Moving toward a *cedarn* cabinet. Id., *Ger. and En.*, 136.

**silvern.** These sound louder than the *silvern* notes of the tuneful choir. Rev. of Rev., CC, 136a.

*Aspen* from *asp*, now almost forgotten, and *linen*, from Old English *lin*, have practically lost their adjectival character.

There's a dance of leaves in that *aspen bower*. W. C. BRYANT, *The Gladness of Nature*, IV.

- V. Adjectives in *-en* are sometimes, especially in poetry and the higher literary style, found in meanings differing materially from those referred to above.

**beechen.** Thou, light-winged Dryad of the trees, | In some melodious plot Of *beechen green*, and shadows numberless, | Singest of summer in full-throated ease. KEATS, *Ode to a Nightingale*, I.  
When *beechen buds* begin to swell. BRYANT, *The Yellow Violet*, I.  
There's a titter of winds in that *beechen tree*. Id., *The Gladness of Nature*.

**birchen.** He saw your steed, a dappled gray, | Lie dead beneath the *birchen* way. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, XXIII.  
He pass'd where Newark's stately tower | Looks out from Yarrow's *birchen bower*. Id., *Lay, Intro.*, I, 28.  
Boyhood sheds its flood of *birchen tears*. Frazer's *Mag.*<sup>1)</sup>  
But, alas! as his school increased in numbers, he had proportionately recanted these honourable and *anti-birchen* ideas. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. I, 29.

**brazen.** The *Brazen Age*.

**oaken.** She was so beautiful that had she stood | On windy Ida by the *oaken* wood [etc.]. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Cup. and Psyche*, 10.

- VI. Some material adjectives and nouns may be used to modify names of colour adverbially, the two words being often hyphenated.

**ashen.** In a cloud it faded, and seems | But an *ashen-gray* delight. TEN., *Maud.* I, vi, iii.

(Compare: He turned *ashy white*. F. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XII, 336.)

**gold(en).** i. Ah me, my dear, it seems but a little while since the hair was *golden brown*, and the cheeks as fresh as roses. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 991.  
His beard and moustache were *golden-yellow*. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. III, 34.

Quince. A fruit and the tree that bears it, now widely cultivated, the fruit being *golden yellow* and much used in making preserves. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*  
From the refulgent feathers of its head . . . arises an upright crest of bare . . . shafted plumes expanding at their tops into webs, forming a crown of rich *golden green*, shot with blue. Westm. *Gaz.*, No. 5329, 5a.

ii. A sudden splendour from behind | Flushed all the leaves with rich *gold-green*. TEN., *Rec. of the Ar. Nights*, VIII.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, S. V. *birchen*.

**silver.** Hard by a poplar shook alway, | All *silver-green* with gnarled bark.  
TEN., Mariana, IV.

VII. In such collocations as *chord glottis*, *cartilage glottis* the adnominal noun is loosely thought of as a substance-indicating word.

VIII. The suffix *-y* sometimes has approximately the same force as the suffix *-en* of material adjectives. See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 173.

**ashy.** By peaks that flamed, or, all in shade, | Gloom'd the low coast and quivering brine | With *ashy rains*. TEN., The Voyage, VI. (Compare: *ashen shower* in Obs. I, β.)

Margaret tottering back towards him with palms extended piteously, as if for help, and *ashy cheek*, and eyes fixed on vacancy. CH. READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. XXIII, 88. (Compare: *ashen hue* in Obs. II.)

**barky.** In bright alcoves, | In woodland cottages with *barky walls*, | In noisome cells of the tumultuous towns | Mothers have clasped with joy the new-born babe. BRYANT, An Evening Reverie, 17.

**feathery.** Rather a childish beauty, though, with large clear blue eyes, and pale golden ringlets, that fall in a *feathery shower* over her throat and shoulders. MISS BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. III, 50.

**leavy.** Now near enough: your *leavy screens* throw down. Macb., V, 6, 1 (*leavy* = Mod. Engl. *leafy*).

**silky.** Thy *silky mane* I braided once, | Must be another's care. Mrs. CAR. NORTON, The Arab to his Horse.

**waxy.** Pen's healthy red face, fresh from the gallop, compared oddly with the *waxy* debauched little *features* of Foker's chum. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. V, 53. (Compare: *waxen complexion* in Obs. II.)

Also the Romance suffix *-ous* sometimes forms material adjectives.

At the other end they (sc. the vocal chords) are fixed to two movable *cartilaginous bodies*. SWEET, Phonetics, § 17.

IX. It is hardly necessary to observe that also a word-group consisting of the preposition *of* (sometimes *in*) + noun placed after the noun modified is frequently used to indicate the substance that things consist of or are made of.

i. Chests *in oak or walnut*, looking with their strange carvings of palm branches and cherubs' heads, like types of the Hebrew ark. Jane Eyre, Ch. XI, 125.

A set of tea-things *in delf*. Ib., Ch. XXXI, 440.

There was not one modern piece of furniture, save a brace of workboxes and a lady's desk *in rosewood*. Ib., Ch. XXIX, 422.

ii. The summerhouse aloft | That open'd on the pines with doors *of glass*. TEN., The Lover's Tale, I, II, l. 40.

Such a word-group all but regularly replaces the material adjective or equivalent noun in the function of nominal part of the predicate or of predicative adnominal adjunct. Ch. XXVIII, 7a.

A boat with two figures in it floated on the Thames, between Southwark Bridge which is *of iron*, and London Bridge which is *of stone*. Dick., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. I, 1.

In conclusion we may observe that also these word-groups with *of* are used in a figurative meaning.



A man of great heart, and *nerves of iron*, was kept in thralldom by the ancestors of the Orsini. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 41.

In this small woman's frame was a *will of iron*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 484, 194b.

8. The use of the second class of quality-expressing nouns is due to the ever active propensity of the human mind to trace resemblances among the varied objects of creation. Thus a tree that is as tall as a giant will be described as a *giant tree*, one as stunted as a dwarf as a *dwarf tree*. Here follow some instances of:

a) attributive nouns that are names of persons.

**booby.** You have heard of a *booby* brother of mine, that was sent to sea three years ago. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 2 (208).

**boy.** The following them (sc. the military) about, and jesting with them, affords a cheap and innocent amusement for the *boy* population. PICKW., Ch. II.

**darling.** She was for rescuing the *darling* champion from his ravishers. Times.

**despot.** Last week came one to the county town, | To preach our poor little army down, | And play the game of the *despot* kings. TEN., *Maud*, I, x, ii.

**dwarf.** You, with Much and William Scathelock take a walk up to the *dwarf* willow thicket, and watch the highway called Watling Street. Robin Hood, 139 (Gruno Series).

A neighbouring brook...bubbled along among alders and *dwarf* willows. WASH. IRVING, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 351.

**gentleman.** He is quite a *gentleman* sort o'man. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII.

**giant.** And here she came, and round me play'd, | And sang to me the whole | Of those three stanzas that you make | About my "*giant* bole". TEN., *Talking Oak*, XXXIV.

Huge thorni cacti like *giant* candalabra clothed the glaring slopes. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol*, Ch. XVIII, 135b.

**grandfather.** I have...a *grandfather-clock*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5607, 7a.

**hang-dog.** Mr. Boxer, sitting opposite in a *hang-dog* fashion, eyed them with scornful wrath. W. W. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, B, 45.

**idiot.** This sweet and graceful courtship becomes a licentious intrigue of the lowest and least sentimental kind, between an impudent London rake and the *idiot* wife of a country squire. MAC., *Restoration*, 579a.

**infant.** Shall I weep if a Poland fall? Shall I shriek if a Hungary fail? | Or an *infant* civilisation be ruled with rod or with knout? TEN., *Maud*, I, iv, viii.

**maiden.** She was a *maiden* City, bright and free. WORDSW., *Sonn. Extinct. Venet. Repub.*

He had not as yet fleshed his *maiden* sword. L. RITCHIE, *Wand. by Seine*, 151).

There was no blood upon her *maiden* robes. TEN., *The Poet*, XI.

A *maiden* knight — to me is given | Such hope, I know not fear. Id., *Sir Galahad*, I. 61.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *maiden*.



The congregation can never be too small for a *maiden* sermon. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXIII, 195.

It is nearly half a century since there has been a *maiden* sessions at Oxford. Daily Tel., 1868, 16 April<sup>1)</sup>.

I found the earth was almost entirely *maiden* soil. Archæol. Cantiana, XII, 81).

The ... new steamship sailed from Plymouth ... on her *maiden* trip to the Antipodes. Times (weekly ed.) 1884, 31 Oct. 1941).

Macaulay's *maiden* speech in the House of Commons was delivered in that cause. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 4c.

Macaulay himself preferred the speech we reprinted as more powerful and effective than his *maiden* effort. Ib.

**rival.** He lives at some distance from the main road without any *rival* gentry near him. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Christm. Eve, 85a.

**school-boy.** He spent the 40 l. on a farewell supper to eight *school-boy* friends. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. I, 16.

**snob.** There may be a *snob* king, a *snob* parson, a *snob* member of Parliament, a *snob* grocer, tailor, goldsmith, and the like. TROL., Thack., Ch. II, 83.

**spitfire.** They gave themselves airs, which alternately mystified and enraged a little *spitfire* outsider like Marcella Boyce. MRS. WARD, Marcella, I, Ch. I, 8.

**stripling.** The one interest in literary circles was whether the *stripling* poet would go down before the storm. Lit. World.

**termagant.** From even this stronghold the unhappy Rip was at length routed by his *termagant* wife. WASH. IRV., Rip. v. Winkle.

**virgin.** Adelaide grew first into consequence through the Burra Burra copper-mine — a hill of *virgin* metal which was brought there by sea and smelted. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. VI, 82.

Wicken Fen is about the only piece of *virgin* fenland left in England. Times.

#### b) attributive nouns that are names of animals.

**bugbear.** Indiscretion was my *bugbear* fault. MRS. GASK, Cranf., Ch. XII, 221.

**halcyon.** She was taken to spend a few *halcyon* weeks with her friend Amelia Sedley. TROL., Thack., Ch. III, 98.

**monster.** The mighty mastiffs, the *monster* cats, the tower-like men and women (sc. of Brobdingnag). Jane Eyre, Ch. III, 19.

I have attended the *monster* performances at Sydenham. Times.

*Monster* meeting of Hindus and Mohammedans. Ib. (=mass meeting: In the evening Mr. Chamberlain addressed a *mass*-meeting in the Free-trade Hall. Ib.)

#### c) attributive nouns that are names of things.

**bubble.** The main object of the story is to expose *bubble* companies. TROL., Thack., Ch. II, 66.

Many so dote upon this *bubble* world, | They care for nothing else. TEN., Queen Mary, IV, 3 (631b).

**buckram.** The English ladies with their confounded *buckram* airs, and the squires with their politics after dinner, send me to sleep. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXV, 269.

**common-place.** It seemed such a *common-place* history that I was really glad I had forgotten to tell John the story. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. II, 18.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, S. V. *maiden*.

**cupboard.** He did not feel called upon as a parent to fulfil any expectations which Dick's youthful *cupboard* love had unintentially excited. F. ANSTEV, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 381.

**fancy.** This anxiety never degenerated into a monomania, like that which led his father to pay *fancy* prices for giants. MAC., *Fred.*, 664a.

**featherweight.** She was a tall woman, but a *featherweight* partner. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. IV.

**faint.** Buller's successful *faint attack*. *Daily Chronicle*. (Compare: making a *feigned* attack. *Times*.)

**game.** He conducted himself in a *game* way. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LVI, 469.

**gift.** *Gift* bread chokes in a man's throat. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVI, 353. Do not look a *gift* horse in the mouth. *Prov.*

**hook.** He had a *hook* nose. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, I, Ch. I, 2b.

**matter-of-fact.** He was essentially a bluff, masculine, *matter-of-fact* man, and he tells his story in a *matter-of-fact* way. W. J. DAWSON, *The Makers of English Fiction*, Ch. I, 6.

**mock.** But the *mock prince* passes away. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. V, 135.

**mockery.** Many, being subjected to a *mockery* trial, were infamously executed. SOUTHEY, *Wat Tyler* (BREWER, *Handbook*).

**old world.** As if the folks at Fubsby's could not garnish dishes better than Gashleigh, with her stupid, *old-world* devices of laurel-leaves, parsley and cut turnips. THACK., *A little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. V', (326).

**pattern.** A little formal, but nothing that might not be sent to a *pattern* young lady. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIII, 523.

**pendulum.** And the *pendulum* spider swings from side to side. CHRIST. GEORG. ROSSSETT, *Summer* (*Rainbow*, I, 7).

**sham.** This young lady was not able to carry out any emotion to the full, but had a *sham* enthusiasm, a *sham* hatred, a *sham* love, a *sham* taste, a *sham* grief. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. IV, 3.

**sheet.** In the middle leaps a fountain | Like *sheet* lightning. TEN., *The Poet's Mind*, II.

**surplus.** If they would rather die, they had better do it, and decrease the *surplus* population. CHRISTM. CAR., I.

**trumpery.** His active friendship was confined to giving him £10 and a *trumpery* shawl for a collection of songs. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 46.

**vinegar.** Mrs. Sharp, my lady's maid, of somewhat *vinegar* aspect and flaunting attire. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. II, 95.

Note. A particular variety of quality-expressing attributive nouns are such as are used to indicate a colour. (7, Obs. III.) They supply the place of adjectives in -y, which these nouns are incapable of forming.

**chestnut.** Mr. Martyn shook the reins, and the sturdy *chestnut* cob trotted off in the direction of Mount Stanning. MISS BRAD., *Lady Audley's Secret*, II, Ch. III, 50.

**ebony.** Then this *ebony* bird beguiling my sad fancy into smiling [etc.]. POE., *The Raven*, VIII.

**hazel.** All the spirit deeply dawning in the dark *hazel* eyes. TEN., *Locksli. Hall*, 28.

**mahogany.** Better she, my dear, than a black Mrs. Sedley, and a dozen of *mahogany* grandchildren. VAN FAIR, I, Ch. VI, 54.  
Fancy being seen by the side of such a *mahogany* charmer as that. *Ib.*, Ch. XXI, 217.

**mulberry.** Mr. Trotter gave four distinct slaps on the pockets of his *mulberry* indescribables. PICKW., Ch. XVI, 141.

**raven.** Let her... shake back her *raven* hair | With the old imperious air  
MATTHEW ARNOLD, *Tristram and Iseult*, I, 95.

Compare with the above: It shines upon the blank white walls | And on the *snowy* pillow falls. *Ib.*, I, 307.

9. The English language is singularly free in the attributive employment of nouns of the third group, especially of names of persons. Thus the noun *orphan* may stand attributively before *boy*, *girl*, *child*, *cousin*, *nephew*, *niece*, *son*, *daughter*, etc., while the use of wees in the same function in compounds is practically confined to *weesjongen*, *weesmeisje* and *weeskind*.

Sometimes the two nouns merely denote two different functions, uses, etc. that are combined in one and the same person or thing. In this case the order in which the two nouns are placed need not necessarily be a fixed one, although it is mostly but one that is in practical use. Thus in *warrior bard*, *bookseller importer*, *restaurant hotel*, the order might be reversed. Also these attributive nouns may be distinguished into:

- a) such as denote persons: the *beggar maid* (TEN.), his *brother volunteers*, his *clergyman cousin*, a *young fisher lad*, one of the *hostage ladies* (Mc CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 56), a *few curiosity-dealer* (MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*), a *few girl* (Henry Esm., I, Ch. IX, 93), her *kinsman lover* (TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. V, 134), a *maiden lady* (*Ib.*, Ch. III, 100), the *merchant princes* of the City (Newc., I, Ch. IV, 140), the *minstrel boy* (THOM. MOORE), the *minstrel wench* (SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXI, 322), his *old-maid sisters*, *orphan pupils*, his *philosopher friend*, a *slave woman* (LECKY), the *stranger lad* (MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I), their *tradesmen papas*, the *twin lads* (TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. IV, 137), the *warrior-bard*, a *widow lady* (Pend., I, Ch. VII, 78), a *widow woman* (T. P.'s Weekly, No. 477).
- b) such as denote animals: the *parent bird* (111. London News), two *sumpter poney*s, a *Terrier puppy*.
- c) such as denote things: *gossip parlance* (TEN., *Isabel*, II), his *island home* (READE, *Never too late*, I, Ch. I, 24), the *laurel shrub* (TEN., *The Poet's Mind*), a *morality play* (Rev. of Rev., CC, 206), *prose fiction*, a *specimen copy*, a *toy watch* (TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. V, 134).

10. Obs. I. Also collective nouns are often preceded by attributive nouns in the above function.

In the old king's time we would have given a thousand for you, when he had his *giant regiment* that our present monarch disbanded. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. V, 79.

Some proportion of the girls at Cliff House were drawn from the *tradesmen class*. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 15.

- II. Sometimes proper names of persons are appropriated for the same purpose.  
Queen Anne is on her deathbed, and a *Stuart prince* appears upon the scene. TROL., Thack., Ch. V, 135.
- III. A state is also expressed by the nouns *man* (*gentleman*), *woman* (*maid*), *cock*, *hen*, *bull*, *cow* etc. when placed before other nouns to denote sex. Ch. XXVII, 13, *b* and *c*.
- IV. Sometimes the adnominal noun in its ordinary application denotes a person, the noun modified a thing or animal.  
Here is a *companion picture* by Mr. Sydney Brooks. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVI, 335a.
11. The proper names used to denote qualities (5, *d*) are names of persons or names of geographical bodies. They may be further distinguished into:
- a) fixed epithets, i. e. such as denote a trade variety of whatever is expressed by the head-word:
- i. *Gladstone bag*, *Hansom cab*, *Louis XVI chairs*, *Pullman cars*, *Wellington boots*.
  - ii. *Brazil nut*, *Ceylon tea*, *India rubber*, *Norway spruce*, *Russia leather*, *Skye terrier*, *Turkey carpets*.
- b) accidental epithets:
- Society owes some worthy qualities in many of her members to mothers of the *Dodson class*. G. ELIOT, Mill, IV, Ch. I, 250.  
A conspicuous quality in the *Dodson character* was its genuineness. Ib.  
In fact he (sc. Lord Dalmeny) was a *Gladstone* and not a *Chamberlain free-trader*. Speech.<sup>1)</sup>  
The *Macaulay sentence* is plain as that of Swift himself. FR. HARRISON.<sup>1)</sup>
- These proper names must, of course, be understood to have primarily expressed a relation of origin, which gradually came to stand for a certain quality. Sometimes it is not easy to decide which is more prominent. This is, for example, the case in:  
*China pigs* have been esteemed a luxury all over the East from the remotest periods that we read of. CH. LAMB, Ess. of Elia, Dissertation upon Roast Pig, (255).
12. The relations which may be expressed by the common-case form of attributive nouns are of a highly varied nature. They may be roughly divided into:
- a) such as may also be expressed by genitives, especially when classifying in nature. Ch. XXIV, 7; 52—56. The relation may be:
- 1) one of possession, origin or agency:
- \* The Bishop ran off with more than youthful agility to seek the *United States Minister*. THACK., The Stars and Stripes, I (Compare: In fact as the monarch spoke, the *Minister of the United States* made his appearance. Ib.)
  - \*\* Douglas owed his appointment to *Court interest*. STEPH. GWENN. Thom. Moore, Ch. II, 33.
- We hear nothing from Transvaal except by *Boer permission*. Times.

1) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Engl., 112.



\*\*\* Much admirable *pioneer work* has been accomplished. Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 217b.

This involves the abandonment of all contentious legislation and concentration on *non-party measures* of social and administrative reform. Ib., CCXXX, 103a.

2) one of subjection to some action:

**baby.** He had not, perhaps, any natural taste for *baby-worship*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLIV, 398.

**divinity.** There is a *divinity student* lately come among us. OLIVER WEND. HOLMES, Autocr. of the Breakfast Table, Ch. I, 9a.

**Government.** Here are innumerable chances for a *Government defeat*. Truth, No. 1802, 81a.

**rose.** He shared her enthusiasm in *rose cultivation*. Rev. of Rev., CCXII, 162b.

**tariff.** It is one more nail driven into the coffin of *Tariff Reform*. Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 221a.

This striking example of preference in practice has come as a cold douche to *Tariff reformers*. Ib.

Note. In the following quotations the attributive noun is almost equivalent to a pleonastic genitive (Ch. XXIV, 21):

In 1862 she married a *Thackeray cousin*, a young officer with the Victoria Cross. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 4. (= a *cousin of Thackeray's*.)

It is not easy to read a *Roosevelt Message* to Congress without using a bad word. Saturday Review. (= a *message of Roosevelt's*, or a *message from R.*)

b) such as may also be expressed by a noun in apposition or a noun preceded by specializing *of*:

**angling.** We were all completely bitten by the *angling mania*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-book, The Angler, 139b.

**marriage.** He naturally looks for happiness in the *marriage state*. JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. XX, 113.

The two bills introduced by women are for raising the *marriage age* from fifteen to eighteen years. Rev. of Rev., CCXII, 161b.

Of the same nature are the adnominal nouns in:

Mr. Wapshot laid bare to me all the baseness of Mr. Smithers's conduct in the *Brough transaction*. Sam. Titmarsh, Ch. XIII, 182.

If Captain Sinclair had not had a *three thousand majority* at his back in 1906, he would have had to whistle for his peerage. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 104b.

c) such as may also be expressed by an attributive adnominal adjunct containing a preposition other than specializing *of*. Although as to their grammatical function these adjuncts are adnominal, yet they are adverbial in import.

**chance.** The red-room was ... very seldom slept in, I might say never, indeed, unless when a *chance influx* of visitors at Gateshead Hall rendered it necessary to turn to account all the accommodation it contained. Jane Eyre, Ch. II, 9. I found out by some *chance expression* that he was attending some meeting. Ch. KINGSLEY, Alt. Locke, Ch. VI, 68.

A *chance acquaintance* may develop faster than one brought about by formal introduction. MAR. CRAWF., Ad. Johnston's Son, Ch. V.

**China.** Nowhere have these complaints been more just than in the *China trade*. Times.



**court.** I hear of *Court ladies* who pine because Her Majesty looks cold on them. Henry Esmond, II, Ch. XV, 291. (= Dutch: dames aan het hof, not: hofdames, for which the English has *lady-in-waiting* or *maid-of-honour*.)

**cripple.** In its *cripple parlours* the Ragged School Union pioneered the way for the special schools now provided by the County Councils. Rev. of Rev., CCX, 574a.

**Devonshire.** His forbears have been *Devonshire men* for centuries. Lit. World.

**emergency.** All these things are admittedly *emergency measures*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVII, 401a.

**farewell.** He spent the 40 l. on a *farewell supper* to eight school-boy friends. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. I, 16.

**kindred.** And still, within our valleys here, | We hold the *kindred title* dear. SCOTT, Marm., VI, Introd. iv.

**life.** It is part of the ancient prerogative of the Crown to create *life Peers*. Rev. of Rev., CCV, 89b.

**native.** Every one admits that the *native question* is the most difficult and dangerous of all the questions with which the new legislators will have to deal. Id., CXCv, 229b.

**part.** He wrote for the Constitutional, of which he was *part proprietor*. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 14.

**surprise.** The Queen paid a *surprise visit* to the Military Hospital at Milbank on Tuesday afternoon. Daily Mail.

**university.** He had had a *university education*. Henry Esmond, III, Ch. III, 334.

- d) such as may also be expressed by a noun in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct of the first kind (Ch. VI, 1):

**maiden.** Have you heard her *maiden name*? MISS BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, II, Ch. III; 50. (= Dutch: meisjesnaam.)

**schoolboy.** It has never been my fortune to meet with him since my *school-boy days*. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. I, 10.

**student.** No novel indeed is half so delightful as that picture . . . of the *student life* enjoyed together for a few short months by the inseparable friends. Ib., Ch. II, 22.

13. Obs. I. Owing to the absence of the preposition or any other word to indicate the particular kind of relation, the attributive noun is often unsettled in meaning. Thus a *corner kick* might mean a kick aimed at the corner, but also a kick discharged from the corner. Similarly the *Huxley lecture* covers at least three meanings, viz.: the lecture delivered by Huxley, the lecture about Huxley, the lecture as one of a series of lectures instituted by Huxley.

This indistinctness is not, however, such a serious drawback as on the first blush would appear, ambiguity being mostly precluded by established usage, which has usually attached a fixed meaning to a given word-group, or by the connections, which make it quite clear what is meant. Thus to those

interested in the game of football, a *corner kick* exclusively means a *kick discharged from the corner*.

On the other hand the fact that there is not a fixed meaning which necessarily attaches to the attributive noun, has the advantage of rendering it capable of expressing almost any shade of meaning as occasion arises. Compare *mud-guard* with *dress-guard*; *letter-carrier* with *frame-carrier* (carrier attached to the frame of a cycle) and *cycle-carrier* (— carrier attached to the cycle).

- II. In many cases nouns, though primarily indicating some relation, also mark by implication some quality. Thus *an every-day occurrence* means primarily *an occurrence that happens every day*, but may also denote *an occurrence of a nature that it may be expected every day*, i. e. a *common occurrence*. Similarly *night air* = a) *air during the night*, ß) *air cold and bleak as the air during the night is apt to be*. Further instances are seen in:

His latest book proclaims this with *trumpet tones*. Rev. of Rev., CCVIII, 361a.  
Her eyes saw only future scenes of *home-sorrow*. G. ELIOT, Mill, IV, Ch. III, 257. (Compare: Tom's face showed little radiance during his few *home hours*. Ib., V, Ch. II, 285.)

Sometimes such a noun passes almost entirely into a quality-expressing word. Compare *home question*, *home truth*, *home thrust* in which *home* has the meaning of *searching*, pointed with *Home Office*, *home trade*. Further instances may be seen in *wild-goose chase*, *life-and-death struggle* (WOLSELEY, *The Young Napoleon*, Ch. II).

- III. There are also frequent cases that a noun in certain combinations expresses a relation, in others a quality as referred to in 5b and discussed in 8. Thus *mountain* is a relation-expressing word in *mountain air*, and *mountain goats*; it is a quality-expressing word in *a man of mountain stature*. Some collocations are, consequently, ambiguous. Thus *mountain trees* may mean *trees growing in the mountain*, and *very tall trees*. Compare also *infant school* with *infant colony*.
- IV. As some of the above instances show, a relation-expressing attributive noun is often modified by a word or word-group. Frequently two or more nouns or other words, sometimes forming fragmentary sentences, are coupled together to be used adnominally. The following are instances of a varied description:

- i. *Preferential trade proposals* (Times), *long-distance trains* (ib.), *an every-day occurrence* (CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIII, 169a), a *second-hand piece of old stores* (DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXXIV, 293).
- ii. *Church of England principles* (BRADLEY), *Church of England children* (Times), a *House of Commons debate* (BRADLEY).
- iii. The *London, Brighton and South Coast Railway* (BRADLEY), a *life-and-death struggle* (WOLSELEY, *the Young Napoleon*, Ch. II), *Nursery Rhymes with original pen and ink drawings* (Books for the Bairns, III).
- iv. The *Marriage with a Deceased Wife's Sister Bill*. Times.
- v. Tom (was) equipped in his *go-to-meeting roof*, as his new friend called it. Tom Brown, I, Ch. I, 85.  
I want her to have delicious *do-nothing days*. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. II, 352.  
*Knock-down furniture*. Daily Mail.

I am a lazy, *good-for-nothing* fellow. MISS BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, II. Ch. III, 49.

- V. Sometimes a word-group with an adnominal noun is in its turn used adnominally with another noun, or, contrariwise, an adnominal noun serves to modify a word-group containing an adnominal noun.

*trade union* leaders (Times), the *London County Council* (BRADLEY), the *Marriage Law Amendment Act* (id.), the *Public Works Loans Bill* (Times), the *United Kingdom Tea Company* (III. Lond. News), the *University of London school-leaving certificate* (Mod. Lang. Quart.), the *Times War Correspondent* (Times), a *livery stable keeper* (SAINTSBURY), the *Labour Representation Committee* (Rev. of Rev., CXCIV, 1396).

The following is an interesting instance of the extremes to which the language is capable of going:

He commenced the establishment of two "Bishop's Barchester Sabbath-day Schools," gave notice of a proposed "*Bishop's Barchester Young Men's Sabbath Evening Lecture-Room*." TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. X, 73.

- VI. A word-group with a relation-expressing adnominal noun may be used as the base of a derivative. Thus *trade unionist* has been formed from *trade union*, *temperance reformer* from *temperance reform*:

He was a staunch teetotaler and *temperance reformer*. Rev. of Rev., CXCIV, 309a.

- VII. Very frequent is the use of gerunds as adnominal words, as in: *boarding schools*, *calling-time* (Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XII, 224), *dancing-master*, *housing conditions* (West. Gaz., No. 5255, 4c), *housing reform* (Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 227), the *living conditions* of British workmen (Westm. Gaz., No. 5255), *marking ink*, *retiring room* (JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, A, 15), *sinking fund*, *training college*, *trying-on room* (WALT. BES., All Sorts and Cond. of Men, Ch. XXV, 178), *visiting-day* (GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. XII), *waiting woman*, *withdrawing-room* (JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, A, 11).

Sometimes the verbal in *ing* may, apparently with equal justice, be regarded as a present participle used metonymically. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2338) mentions *falling sickness* (= illness in which the patient falls), *dying day*, *parting glass*, *sleeping draught* as instances of word-groups (or compounds) in which the first element is a present participle, basing his interpretation chiefly on the fact that they are pronounced with even stress. This looks like mistaking cause for effect, and, moreover, seems to apply indubitably only to the first. *Dying-day* may certainly be understood as the day on which a person dies, but *parting glass* and *sleeping draught* seem severally to stand for *glass taken at parting* and *draught taken for sleeping* or *to induce sleep*, i. e. they seem to be gerund formations.

Further instances of doubtful formations are: *leaving book* (SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. II, 15), *reforming days* (Times), *retiring pension* (Mac., Mad. d'Arblay, 722b), *working man* (Rev. of Rev.).

In the following word-groups (or compounds), on the other hand, the verbal seems to be an indubitable participle: *circulating library* (Riv., I, 2), *fighting men* (MC CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. IV, 52), *flying literature* (TROL., Thack., Ch. VII, 165), *flying visit* (G. ELIOT, Mid., 280), *hanging-lamps* (THACK., A little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. VII, 334), *leading article*, *repeating rifles* (Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 254a), *standing army*.



VIII. Attributive nouns in the common case when expressing a relation are apt to form compounds with their head-words. In this case:

- a) the component parts of the combination give up some of their individuality, which is often attended by their expressing a more special sense than they would convey when detached. Thus in *backbone* the ideas conveyed by *back* and *bone* are not distinctly separated in the mind, and the word has a more special sense than the word-group *back bone*.
- b) the head-word loses some of its stress. This will become clear when such a sentence as *The backbone is the chief back bone of the human body* is read out loud.

Compare also *school-house* (= *house which is used as a school*) with *school house* (= *house which belongs to a school*).

Thus also in the following quotation the adnominal noun does not form a compound with the noun standing after it: The house standing in the valley was somewhat better than the ordinary *parsonage* houses of the day. G. E. MITTON, *Jane Austen and her Times*, Ch. I, 12.

For further information about the nature of compounds as compared with combinations in which the first element is merely an adnominal noun, see also BRADLEY, *The Making of Engl.*, Ch. II, 66; and MURRAY, N. E. D., *General Explanations*, 23.

IX. According to the degree in which the two nouns are considered to have lost their individuality, they are written without a break, with a hyphen, or as separate words. As this loss must appear in different degrees to different persons, we do not find anything approaching to uniformity in the spelling of compounds. Here follow some compounds:

- a) with some special meaning: *light-house*, *collar-bone*, *day-star*, *land-slip*, *turning-lathe*.
- b) without some special meaning: *fruit-tree*, *sea-man*, *moon-light*, *fire-wood*, *corn-field*, *wine-shop*, *hay-stack*.

X. It is hardly necessary to observe that the relations of the first noun of a compound to the second are in the main the same as those expressed by the more independent attributive noun; i. e. they may be:

- a) such as are also expressed by a noun in the genitive: *bedside*, *churchyard*, *day-star*, *sun-beam*, *man-slayer*, *peace-maker*;
- b) such as are also expressed by a noun in apposition or a noun preceded by specializing *of*: *oaktree*;
- c) such as are also expressed by an attributive adnominal adjunct containing a preposition other than specializing *of*: *inkstand*, *tea-spoon*, *bushranger*.

XI. Also compounds are often vague in meaning. Thus *fireman* may mean a) *one who attends to a furnace or the fire of a steam-engine*, and β) *one who is employed to extinguish fires*. Similarly a *water-plant* might mean *a plant growing in the water*, or *a plant growing near the water*, or, on the analogy of *water-melon*, we might suppose it to mean *a plant containing a great deal of moisture*, and perhaps growing in a comparatively dry place. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1559.

14. Also the predicative use of nouns presents some remarkable features in English. Not only are they found in all the functions which they may have in Dutch, but they are sometimes used to denote a quality or a relation.

i. **angel, imp.** He is neither *angel* nor *imp.* TROL., Thack., Ch. IV, 109.

**choice.** She had been afraid he would die a bachelor, he was so very *choice*. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. VII, 130.

**devil.** Your form is man's, and yet | You may be *devil*. BYRON, The Deformed transformed, I, 1 (490a).

**fool.** He was neither stolid nor *fool*. JOHN OXENHAM, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. V, 41.

**God.** Man's word is *God* in man. TEN., Bal. and Bal., 8.

**glass.** "Is that a fine time?" said the General, with a twinkle in his left eye (The other was *glass*). Miss J. H. EWING, Jackanapes.

**gold.** His face was ruddy, his hair was *gold*. TEN., Victim, III.

**hazel.** His hair was *hazel*. W. BESANT, By Celia's Arb., I, Ch. I, 2.

**knave.** In this business he was both *knave* and fool. MAS., Engl. Gram.<sup>31</sup>, § 31, N.

**manners.** Whispering, sir, before company, is not *manners*. G. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting officer, III, 1 (289).

**partisan.** Though the views expressed are decided *views*, they are not *partisan*, that is to say they fairly represent the other side of the question as well as the side to which the author has been led to adhere. Times.

**virgin.** What is it to be a gentleman? Is it to have lofty aims, to lead a pure life, to keep your honour *virgin*? THACK., The Four Georges, IV, 120.

- ii. **Budget.** The Parliamentary week, however, has not been all *Budget*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5007, 1c.

**chapel, church.** Another place that would have suited her was lost through unconsciously answering that she was *chapel*. The lady would have nothing in her house but *church*. G. MOORE, Esth. Wat., Ch. XXI, 151.

**county.** The Barfields at least were *county*, and he wished Woodview to remain *county* as long as the walls held together. Ib., Ch. XLVII, 322.

**Nonconformist.** There are a large number of schools in which the dominant tone and temper are *Nonconformist*, and a large number in which they are *Church of England*. Times.

**Nottinghamshire.** I hear none (sc. genuine English) but from my valet, and he is *Nottinghamshire*. BYRON, Letters (Marino Faliero, I, 2 (359a), footnote Lond. Ed.).

15. Obs. I. Sometimes the quality or the relation is expressed by a word-group, mostly a noun preceded by an adjective (or ordinal numeral) or followed by a prepositional word-group, the whole sometimes forming a kind of unit.

i. **(eighteenth) century.** Mr. Austin Dobson, a delightful authority on everything *eighteenth century*<sup>1)</sup>.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, Die Synt. des Adj., 27.



(middle-)class. To be a bit better than one's neighbour was considered excessively vulgar and *middle-class*. OSCAR WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, I.

(capital, good) company. We are *capital company* here. PICKW., Ch. XX.

I never saw him such *good company*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XVIII, 131b.

(good) form. Is it *good form* for a lady to drink a glass of wine? E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. III. (= *zooals het behoort*, *comme il faut*.)

(good) fun. His adventures are very *good fun*. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. VI, 139.

(common) knowledge. That Japan needs money is *common knowledge*. *Daily Mail*. (= *algemeen bekend*.)

(bad) manners. It was considered *bad manners* to put food into the mouth with the knife. GÜNT., *Leerb.*

matter(-of-fact). I will be busy and cool and *matter-of-fact*. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. IV, 77.

It all seemed pretty *matter-of-fact*. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *Pam*, III, Ch. VI, 145. (Note the modifying by the adverbial *pretty*.)

(common)place. He was in love, which was *commonplace*; the course of true love did not run smooth, which was also *commonplace*; but which was less ordinary, the barrier to his hopes was not the want of money. MARY M. GROSE, *The Lady of the Lime Walk*

plaster(-of-Paris). The trout was *plaster-of-Paris*. JEROME, *Three men in a Boat*, Ch. XVII, 224.

(sound common) sense, good strategy. The building of a golden bridge for the retreat of those whom we wish to evacuate their position is *good strategy* and *sound common sense*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVI, 335a.

- ii. (High) Church. Her tendencies were *High Church*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, 2.

II. Also proper names are sometimes used to denote a quality or a relation.

- i. That the stuff is genuine *Thackeray* is best proved by sampling it. *Acad.*, No. 1765, 202b.

The old man took it for granted that the child could not spell, no *Yeoland* could; and to him, whom she charmed, she was all *Yeoland*. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *Pam*, Ch. X, 52.

As for "Esmond", it is Addisonian in style certainly, but fortunately not *Addison*. *Truth*, No. 1802, 82b.

- ii. Kegan Paul was *Eton* and *Exeter* (= an Eton boy, and an Exeter college undergraduate)<sup>1</sup>.

Even Burns, who lived so close to the mountains, was not *Highland* enough<sup>1</sup>.

16. In English as well as Dutch predicative nouns when not modified by an individualizing adjunct or when not proper names, approximate more or less to adjectives. DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, §§ 16 and 35. This becomes apparent:

<sup>1</sup>) WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adj.*, 23.

- a) by their frequently discarding the definite or the indefinite article, not only when they denote a quality as in many of the above quotations (i. a. with *angel*, *imp*, *devil*, *knave*, *fool*, *partisan*, etc.), but also when they express how a person is related to a person or thing (Ch. XXIV, 36), or when they indicate a state, or an office, function or station. For a detailed discussion see Ch. XXXI, 45 ff. Compare also Ch. XXIV, 36 and FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 277.

i. Gumbo bragged... of the immense wealth to which he (sc. his young master) was *heir*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 7.

He was *secretary* to Mr. A. MASON, *Engl. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 15, IV.

ii. She was *daughter* to a city tradesman. W. BESANT, *St. Kath.*, Ch. II.

I hope you have no intent to turn *husband*. *Much ado*, I, 1, 196.

Lord Arran was twice *prisoner* in the Tower. *Henry Esmond*, III, Ch. IV, 346.

Let the boy go with us, lest he prove *traitor*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 13.

- b) by their being often referred to by *so*. For details see Ch. XXXII, 28.

Alas! Northam was altogether *a desert* to him then, and Bideford, as it turned out, hardly less *so*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 119a.

We had been *friends* — more *so* than I have had any occasion to mention in the course of this narrative. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XII, 79.

- c) by their occasionally admitting of being modified by an adverb of degree

**Anglomane.** Emile is *as Anglomane* as ever. G. MERED., *Lord Ormont*, Ch. V, 77.

**blockhead.** I am *blockhead enough* to give fifty per cent sooner than not have it; and you I presume are *rogue enough* to take a hundred if you can get it. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 3 (395).

**churl.** The malady had not been *churl enough* to injure the fair features of the Viscountess of Castlewood. *Henry Esm.* I, Ch. IX, 78.

**fool.** I was the only one that was *fool enough* to marry him. SYLVIA CRAVEN, *The Harvest of Sin*, 27.

**game.** A boxing match came off, but neither of the men were *very game* or severely punished. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 383.

**housekeeper.** I found that I was not *housekeeper enough* to know whether things were all as they ought to be. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 525.

**iron.** Though aged, he was *so iron* of limb, | Few of our youth could cope with him. BYRON, *Siege of Corinth*, 746.

**man.** Though barely twenty, he was *man enough* to know whether things were all as they ought to be. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 525.

**master.** He is *fully master* of the subject. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 361.

He soon made himself *thoroughly master* of its construction and method of working. *Cassell's Mod. School-Read.*, George Steph.

**matter-of-fact.** The story of the shipwrecked sailor was so *natural*, so *matter-of-fact*, and so full of good sense that to many it was not a story at all. *Hist. of Dan. Defoe.* (v. D. VOORT, Eng. Read-Book, 42.)

**partisan.** Even in . . . England it was well-nigh impossible for a statesman to find a place or a historian to find an audience, unless he were *violently partisan*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5329, 9c.

**rogue.** I am not clever enough; or not *rogue enough*. *Henry Esmond*, III, Ch. III, 344.

**starch.** She was *as starch* as any Quakeress. *Thack.*, *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. I, 14.

Note I. The conversion of some quality-expressing nouns into predicative quasi-adjectives is current only when they are connected with *enough*. Thus the absence of *enough* entails the use of the indefinite article before *fool*, i. e. causes this word to reassume its character as a noun.

I was *a fool* to marry you. *SHER.*, *School for Scand.*, III, 1 (393).

If thou hast never been *a fool*, be sure thou wilt never be a wise man. *Thack.* (*TROL.*, *Thack.*, Ch. I, 10.)

Also their being connected with other words in the same grammatical function may make such quality-expressing nouns capable of discarding the indefinite article. See the instances of *fool* and *knave* under 14.

II. There is not, of course, anything unusual in the free use of adverbs of degree to modify such words as *choice* and *dainty*, which sometimes strip off their substantival character altogether. (4, Obs. II.)

It's so pretty, George, that it looks *too choice* for me. *Dick.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XLIX, 412.

III. When the adverb of degree is *more*, the predicative noun may be said to stand in the comparative degree.

As for the English settlers they are *more Boer* than the Boers. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIV, 147b.

Still *more fool* I shall appear By the time I linger here. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 9, 73.

After all this man is *more hero* than scoundrel. *Thack.*, *Barry Lyndon*.

The mining and industrial vote in Charleroi and Liège, . . . will be even *more Socialist* than it was two years ago. *Westm. Gaz.*

Being *more* finely formed, better educated, and, though the youngest except Retty, *more woman* than either, she perceived that only the slightest ordinary care was necessary for holding her own in Angel Clare's heart against these her candid friends. *HARDY*, *Tess*, III, Ch. XXI, 176.

IV. The terminational comparative of a predicative noun seems to be very rare, and to be used chiefly for humorous effect, except, of course, of such a word as *dainty*.

The sweet perfumed double yellow Wallflower is much *dwarfer* than the old well-known yellow. *Garden.*<sup>1)</sup>

The doctor's friend was in the positive degree of hoarseness, puffiness, red-facedness, all-fours, tobacco, dirt, and brandy; the doctor in the comparative—hoarser, puffer, more red-faced, more all-foury, *tobaccoer*, dirtier and *brandier*. *Dick.*, *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 31a.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s.v. *dwarf*, B, 1.

d) by their occasionally giving up the distinctions of number and sex. It must, however, be remembered that many masculine nouns have a tendency of being used as nouns of common gender. Ch. XXVII, 14, Obs. VI.

i. That I may rest assured | Whether yond troops are *friend* or *enemy*. Jul. Cæs., V, 3, 18.

They turned *Christian*. RUDY. KIPL., Plain Tales, II.

The casualties on our side are believed to amount to 350, among which must be reckoned some 220 officers and men taken *prisoner*. Morning Leader.

ii. My wife was *heir* to the property. THACK., Cox's Diary, January.

She was thoroughly *master* of French. ANN. BES., Autobiog., 22.

The ordinary practice, however, is to make such nouns exhibit number and sex, which in most connections is unusual in Dutch.

i. **fool**. And we that were *fools* enough to bring up another body's child. MRS. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., B, 73.

They are not *fools* enough . . . to believe that they cannot get the Budget without destroying the Lords. Sat. Rev. (Westm. Gaz., No. 5185, 18c.)

**gambler**. Divines and philosophers turned *gamblers*. Mac., Pitt, 288b.

**master**. The conquerors became at once *masters* of almost every part of the Carnatic. Id., Clive, 504b.

Let us be *masters* of the Channel for six hours, and we are *masters* of the World. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. X, § IV, 821.

After a siege of nearly a year the Allies at last became *masters* of Sebastopol. Ib., Epil., 842.

Its forces cleared lake Ontario, and made themselves *masters* of Upper Canada. Ib., Ch. X, § IV, 833.

Both groups are very anxious to make clear to us that they remain *masters* in their own household. Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, 1b.

**prisoner**. After being made *prisoners* at Preston in Lancashire, they were imprisoned in Newgate. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. V, 34b.

At least we would not have been taken *prisoners*. Henry Esmond, II. Ch. XIV, 271.

Men who are taken *prisoners* are necessarily 'absent without leave'. Morning Leader.

Since the middle of April we have taken over 1000 *prisoners*, exclusive of surrenders. Times.

**stranger**. They are equal *strangers* to opulence and poverty. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. IV.

**traitor**. When our actions do not, Our fears do make us *traitors*. Macb., IV, 2, 4.

**victim**. In the circumstances the settlement of the affair will, of course, be left to France, but Spain, as some of her subjects have become *victims*, will doubtless co-operate. Daily Mail.

ii. **mistress**. Well, Julia, you are your own *mistress*. SHER. Riv., I, 2 (218). As for Mary, she was *mistress* enough of herself to whisper to Elizabeth [etc.].

JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej.

As to tobacco she was perfect *mistress* of the subject. DICK., Crick., I, 34. England was sole *mistress* of the seas. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. X, § IV, 828.



In real life Marcella would probably before long have been found trying to kick his shins — a mode of warfare of which in her demon moods she was past *mistress*. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, I, Ch. I, 11.

It is next to impossible to be *mistress* in two antithetical genres. Times. She was *mistress* of Danish, German, English and French. *Ib.*

- e) by their sometimes requiring either *that* or *which* as relative pronouns, even when they are the names of persons, *who* being impossible in referring to qualities. For full details see Ch. XXXIX, 4.

i. \* SIR ANTH. Though he wa'n't the indulgent father *that* I am, Jack. — Abs. I dare say not, sir. SHER., *Riv.*, III, 1 (241).

I have encouraged him too much — vain fool *that* I have been. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. IV, 18a.

\*\* A minute ago, the boy had looked the quiet, mild, dejected creature *that* harsh treatment had made him. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. VI, 69.

ii. John is a soldier, *which* I should also like to be. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 36.

17. Obs. I. Some quality-expressing predicative nouns assume so completely the character of adjectives that they may be followed by a pure prepositional object.

St. Roman's Well is almost absolutely *virgin of fact*. SAINTSB., *Nineteenth Cent.*, Ch. III, 133. (= *devoid of fact.*)

- II. When a word is freely used both as an adjective and a pure noun, as is the case with many names of political or religious denominations (Ch. XXIX, 6), the English language mostly treats it as a noun, when it is used predicatively. Thus we mostly find: *He is a Liberal, a Conservative, etc.; a Protestant, a Roman Catholic, etc.; a captive, a lunatic, etc. They are Liberals, Conservatives, etc.; Protestants, Roman Catholics, etc.; captives, lunatics, etc.*

i. He was *a Radical, a Red*. MRS. WARD, *David Grieve*, II, 92. About two-thirds of the population are *Protestants*, and about one third *Roman Catholics*. Cassell's *Conc. Cycl.*, s.v. *Russia*.

ii. The principal is *Christian*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 1 (389).

They are more than half *heathen*. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIV, 367.

Catholic communities have, since that time, become *infidel* and become *Catholic* again; but none has become *Protestant*. MAC., *Popes*, 563a. (In this quotation the context renders the form chosen obligatory.)

The successor of St. Peter was carried away *captive* by the unbelievers. *Ib.*, 562a.

Nine tenths of the nation had become heartily *Protestant*. *Id.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 74.

Thou art not *Christian*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XIII, 59a. With the documents contained in this volume before us, it seems almost fruitless to discuss whether in these days he was *Radical* or *Tory*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5448, 9c.

- III. To denote a person's nationality English uses indifferently either a noun or an adjective.



- i. He was more than half *a Frenchman*. MAC., FRED., 683*b*.

I am *a Frenchman*, and incapable of fear. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 51.

Angelo Villani . . . is no stranger but *a Roman*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. I, 153.

- ii. Though I was not always brought up at Rome, I am *Roman*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. I, 149.

Is he *Roman*? His name then must be known to me. *ib.* IV, Ch. I, 155.

My father was *Irish* on his mother's side. ANN. BES., *Autobiog.*, 13.

Boulanger, as is well known, is *English* or rather *Welsh* on his mother's side. *Lit. World*.

The people who live in England are called *English*. JESP. and SARAUX, II, 6

## CHAPTER XXIV.

### GENITIVE OF NOUNS.

#### FORM.

1. The genitive is formed by adding 's or ' to the common-case form. The bulk of *singular* nouns, and all *plural* nouns that end in any other letter than *s*, take 's. All plural nouns in *s* take ' only. *John's* book, the *millers'* horse. *Thomas's* slate; the *children's* toys. *geese's* legs; the *boys'* books, the *heroes'* graves.

Also French plurals in *x*, which is pronounced as *z*, take only the apostrophe: the *Beaux'* Stratagem. FARQUHAR.

Note. The *s* is voiced, unless preceded by a voiceless consonant. It is syllabic, i.e. it sounds as a separate syllable, when the base ends in a sibilant, i.e. either a blade-, or a blade-point consonant.

2. As to the formation of the genitive of singular nouns ending in a sibilant, usage is not always in conformity with the general rule. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 998; MASON, Engl. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 175; STOF., Taalst., IV, 53; HORACE HART, Rules for Compositors and Readers, Appendix III.

- a) Before the word *sake* abstract nouns ending in a sibilant now mostly take 's:

for his *office's* sake (CH. BRONTE, Shirley, I, Ch. IV, 67), for *acquaintance's* sake (BAIN, H. E. Gr., 136), for *appearance's* sake (BARRY PAIN, Culm. Point.)

But omission of the *s*, whether or not with the apostrophe retained, is not uncommon:

- i. for *appearance* sake (TEN., Queen Mary, II, (595*b*), for *conscience* sake (CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. XV, 125*a*), for *convenience* sake (ESCOTT, Engl., Ch. II, 17), for old *acquaintance* sake (SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 998).
- ii. for old *acquaintance'* sake (DICK., Uncom. Trav., Ch. III, 28; SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. XXXIX, 432), for *fairness'* sake (W. MORRIS, News from Nowhere, Ch. XXVIII, 210), for *goodness'* sake (JEROME, Idle Thoughts, IV, 63).

Note. I. In older English it was quite usual to suppress the mark of the genitive ('s) also in the case of nouns not ending in a sibilant. This practice became obsolete about the middle of the 19th century. MURRAY, s. v. *sake*, II.

For *pleasure sake*. THOMAS LODGE, *Rosalynde*, in Pref. to *As you like it* in Clar. Press, 20.

For *sport sake*. Henry IV, A, II, 1, 77.

For *fashion sake* *As you like it*, III, 2, 236.

For *form sake*. SHER., *Riv.*, II, 1 (230).

II. From the 17th to the early 19th century *sake* and its modifier were often connected by a hyphen. MURRAY, s. v. *sake*, II.

To flatter a man, from whom you can get nothing, . . . is doing mischief for *mischief-sake*. Swift's *Let.*, II, 127<sup>1</sup>).

I shall call . . . the populations . . . Tartars, for *convenience-sake*. J. H. NEWMAN, *Seat. Turks*, I, 131).

III. The apostrophe of the genitive is seldom, if ever, found wanting after plurals in *s* modifying *sake*.

The husbands, for their *wives'* sake, are fain to admit him. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. IV, 30.

(This) does not endear him to those who do not value him for their *souls'* sake. *Ib.*

He could for *parties'* sake . . . maintain a certain amount of necessary zeal. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXIV, 301.

For old *times'* sake. THACK., *Lovel the Widower*, Ch. II, 25.

- b) As to proper names the following practice is recommended by MURRAY to compositors and readers (HORACE HART, *Rules*, Appendix, IIIb):

"Use 's for the genitive case in English names and surnames "whenever possible; i. e. in all monosyllables and dissyllables, and "in longer words accented on the penult; as *Augustus's*, "*Gustavus's*, *St. James's Square*, *Nicodemus's*, "*Zacharias's*.

"In longer names, not accented on the penult, 's is also preferable, though ' is here admissible; e. g. *Theophilus's*.

"In ancient classical names, use 's with every monosyllable, e. g. *Mars's*, *Zeus's*. Also with dissyllables not "in *es*; as *Judas's*, *Marcus's*, *Venus's*.

"But poets in these cases sometimes use ' only; and *Jesus'* "is a well-known liturgical archaism. In quotations from Scripture follow the Oxford standard.

"Ancient words in *es* are usually written *es'* in the genitive, "e. g. *Ceres' rites*, *Xerxes' fleet*. This form should certainly "be used in words longer than two syllables, e. g. *Arbaces'*, "*Aristides'*, *Miltiades'*, *Themistocles'*. To pronounce "another 's (= *es*) after these is difficult.

1) MURRAY.

"This applies only to ancient words. One writes — *Moses' law*; "and *I used to alight at Moses's for the British Museum*. As to "the latter example, Moses, the tailor, was a modern man, like "Thomas and Lewis; and in using his name we follow modern "English usage."

In the above "Rules" English names and surnames means names and surnames of English persons, and by ancient classical names is meant names of persons belonging to the ancients.

The "Rules" are silent as to the numerous nouns of more than two syllables in *is*, *us* and *as*. Except for poetry, the ordinary practice seems to be to form their genitive by suffixing 's.

The following instances, which are arranged according to the number of syllables of the base, will show that the "Rules" are far from being uniformly applied, so far as the classical names are concerned.

- i. *Zeus's* action. ROWE and WEBB, *Introd. to Ten., Dem. and Pers.*
- ii. \* *Hermes' wand* (KEATS, *Endym.*, IV), *Dives' chariot* (THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. V, 51), *Brutus' Portia* (*Merch. of Ven.*, I, 1, 166), *Phæbus' fire* (*ib.*, II, 1, 5), *Phæbus' cart* (*Hamlet*, III, 2, 167), *Atlas' Daughter* (W. MORRIS, *Odyssey*, I, 59), *King Schæneus' city* (*id.*, *Atalanta's Race*, XXXII), *Queen Venus' well-wrought image white* (*ib.*, LIV). *Jesus' public ministry* (*Harmsw. Cycl.*, s. v. *Jesus Christ*, 278c).  
\*\* *Moses's men* (*Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 266).
- iii. \* *Aeneas' tale to Dido* (*Hamlet*, II, 2, 676), *Adonis' shoulders* (KEATS, *Endym.*, II), *Hippotas' son* (W. MORRIS, *Odyssey*, X, 2), *Adrastus' bonds* (*id.*, *The Son of Cræsus*, LXIV), *Adonis' bane* (*id.*, *Atalanta's Race*, XXX), *Achilles' statue* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5617, *Sci. Cervantes' romance* (WEBST., s. v. *Dulcinea*).  
\*\* *Laertes's challenge* (DEIGHTON, *Introd. to Hamlet*, 14), *Ulysses's arrival* (ROWE and WEBB, *Introd. to Ten., Lotos Eaters*), *Odysseus's own gentleman* (THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XX, 198), *Erasmus's own letters* (FROUDE, *Life and Let. of Erasmus*).
- iv. \* *Erymanthus' side* (W. MORRIS, *Odyssey*, VI, 103), *Alcinous' daughter* (*ib.*, VI, 139).  
\*\* *Herodias's daughter* (THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXV, 227), *Polonius's shop* (*id.*, *Sam. Tim.*, Ch. II, 22), *Polonius's opinion* (DEIGHTON, *Note to Hamlet*, II, 2, 109), *Polonius's wit* (DOWDEN, *Note to Hamlet*, I, 49—51), *Synesus's most charming letters* (CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Pref., 10), *Diogenes's assignees* (*Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVII, 173), *Aristophanes's Plato* (TOM HOOD, *Pract. Guide to Eng. Vers.*, 11).

As regards the non-classical proper names in *s*, usage is much more uniform, at least in the spoken language, in which the suffix of the genitive is, apparently, almost invariably pronounced.

In the written and printed language, however, the bare apostrophe is not seldom met with to denote the genitive. Many instances of irregularities and inconsistencies are cited by STOFFEL, in *Taalstudie*, IV, 55.

*Figs' left* (*Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 46; in the same chapter: *Figs's left*). *Raggles' house* (*ib.*, II, Ch. II, 23), *Keats' view* (CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Notes), *Rubens'*

Watering-place (HAZLITT, *On the Ignorance of the Learned*; PARDOE, *Sel. Eng. Ess.*, 234), *John Waters' heart* (G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. III, 21), *Stephens' inks*, *Pears' soap* (Advertisements).

Note. It is open to doubt whether the suppression of the genitive *s* in the printed documents is always intended to be phonetic. It may, however, be observed that certain people think they impart to their language a mark of distinction by dropping sibilants, the vulgar often running into the opposite extreme of adding improper sibilants. STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 799; JESP., *Growth and Struct.*, § 186 and § 191.

How can you talk like that, when you have books upon books already, and *masters* and *missesses* a teaching of you continual. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 111.

I do tell 'ee plainly, — face to face, — she be there in madam's drawing-room; herself and Gussy, and them two walloping gals, dressed up to their very *eyeses*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXIX, 344.

The *swellses* likes to be looked at. PUNCH.

- c) In the older writers, and in modern poetry, the *s* is sometimes suppressed in the case of ordinary class-nouns, chiefly for the sake of the metre. ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*, § 22 and § 471; STOF., *Taalst.*, V. Compare also Ch. XXV, 2, Obs. III.

But upon the fairest boughs, | Or at every *sentence* end, | Will I Rosalinda write. As you like it, III, 2, 145.

There will come a Christian by, | Will be worth a *Jewess'* eye. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 5, 42.

The *Princess'* favourite. CONGREVE, *The Mourning Bride*<sup>1</sup>).

Hard *unkindness'* altered eye. GRAY<sup>1</sup>).

Prayer is *innocence'* friend. LONGFELLOW<sup>1</sup>).

The gifts of those who, longing for delight, | Have hung them there within the goddess' sight. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Atalanta's Race*, 36a.

In the following quotation it is not clear whether (*the*) *Douglas* must be understood as a genitive or as a quality-expressing noun in the common case. (Ch. XXIII, 11.)

Can I not mountain-maiden spy, | But she must bear *the Douglas* eye? | Can I not view a Highland brand, | But it must match *the Douglas* hand? SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xxxv.

The accumulation of sibilants seems to be responsible for the suppression of *s* in:

How foolish this is! just now you were only apprehensive for your *mistress'* spirits. SHER., *Rivals*, II, I (228).

3. Compound nouns and word-groups of whatever description, usually have the mark of the genitive attached to the last word. Such a form is often called a group genitive.

*Julius Cæsar's* death; *my father-in-law's* house; the *Lord Lieutenant's* residence; the *old king's* son; the *principal offenders'* names (DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 47b).

<sup>1</sup>) STOF., *Taalst.*, V.



Colloquially this practice is sometimes carried to grotesque extremes. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1016; BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, 61; ONIONS, *Syntax*, § 89.

Having purchased the beer and obtained, moreover, the *day-but-one-before-yesterday's* paper, he repaired to the skittle-ground. PICKW., Ch. XLV, 411. I hate *this destroyer of my happiness'* letter. SAVAGE, *My Official Wife*, 162. *The United Kingdom Tea Company's Tea*. Advertisement.

It sometimes gives rise to obscurity, as may be seen from the puzzle mentioned by JESPERSEN (*Prog.*, § 231): *The son of Pharaoh's daughter was the daughter of Pharaoh's son.*

4. In some cases the above-mentioned practice is departed from.

a) The mark of the genitive is usually placed after each of a group of nouns, when the head-word refers to each of them separately. Thus *John's, Mary's and Jack's books* are the books owned by John, Mary and Jack separately, as distinguished from *John, Mary and Jack's books*, i. e. the books owned by John, Mary and Jack jointly. (27, b, 2.)

Some of the following quotations also illustrate the fact that the adnominal modifiers belonging equally to each of the genitives are often left out before the second, third, etc., when separate ownership is denoted:

Lord Fairfax was the only gentleman in the colony of Virginia to whom she would allow precedence over her. She insisted on the 'pas' before all *lieutenant-governors'* and *judges'* ladies. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IV, 36.

Buttons laid the table for the *children's* and *Miss Prior's tea*. Id., *Lovel the Widower*, Ch. III, 49.

When hath there been, since *our Henrys'* and *Edwards'* days, such a great feat of arms. Id., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. XI, 247.

In early life she had many offers of marriage, but refused them all for the sake of that art to which a *wife's* and *mother's duties* are so fatal. Ch. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. IX, 45.

The presence of the burgomaster in his house, after so many years of coolness, coupled with *his wife's* and *daughter's* distress, made him fear some heavy misfortune. Ib., Ch. VII, 38.

She had dreamed of an aged and dignified face, the sublimation of all the d'Urberville lineaments, furrowed with incarnate memories representing in hieroglyphic the centuries of *her family's* and *England's* history. HARDY, *Tess.*, I, Ch. V, 46.

Note. Occasional instances occur of only the last of such a group of nouns taking the mark of the genitive. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 42b; JESP., *Prog.*, § 237.

Not of a woman's tenderness to be; Requires nor *child* nor *woman's* face to see. CORIOL.; V, 3, 130.

A widow gentlewoman, well born both by *father* and *mother's* side. *Spectator*, No. XXXVI<sup>1</sup>).

The difference he felt between a *quarter of an hour* and *ten minutes'* work. DARWIN, *Life and Let.*, I, 144<sup>1</sup>).

<sup>1</sup>) JESP., *Prog.*, § 237.

When the persons or things denoted by the different nouns form a kind of unit, the latter practice is the rule:

- i. Mr. and Mrs. Fitzroy Tymmins request the pleasure of *Sir Thomas and Lady Kicklebury's* company at dinner on Wednesday, at 7½ o'clock. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. I (305).  
Of course people would say that she had tried to capture Ald. Raeburn for *his money and position's* sake. Mrs. WARD, *Marc*, I, 122.
- ii. From *papa's and mamma's* bedroom the grief... came downstairs. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVIII, 291.  
(They) might be running off to Scotland to-morrow, and pleading *papa's and mamma's* example for their impertinence. *Ib.*, Ch. LXXXI, 852.  
They had married... without previously asking *papa's and mamma's* leave. *Ib.*, 854.

b) Practice is highly varied in the case of word-groups consisting of two nouns, the second of which stands in apposition to the first.

- 1) When the genitive is conjoint (45), the general rule (3) is mostly followed, unless the second noun is accompanied by lengthy adjuncts, which entails the attaching of the mark of the genitive to the first and the placing of the noun modified in immediate succession to it. The result is a construction which is felt as at variance with the genius of the language, and which is, therefore, mostly avoided. (27, b, 1.) Sometimes both nouns receive the mark of the genitive, but this construction seems to be rare. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 77; JESP., *Prog.*, § 222; *The King's English*, 64; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>1</sup>, § 40.

- i. I acted as a kind of guardian to them both till *their uncle Sir Oliver's* liberality gave them an early independence. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 2 (374).  
We ask not *our cousin Louis's* sword. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVII, 355.
- ii. It is *Othello's pleasure, our noble and valiant general*. *Othello*, II, 2, 1.  
For Herod had laid hold on John, and found him, and put him in prison for *Herodias' sake, his brother Philip's wife*. *Matth.*, XIV, 3.  
He had now pitched his nets for *Gripe's daughter, the rich scrivener*. WYCH., *Love in a Wood*, I, 2 (24).  
Doubtless thou fearest to meet *Balder's voice*, | *Thy brother whom through folly thou didst slay*. *Matth. Arnold*<sup>1</sup>).  
Another mind that was being wrought up to climax was *Nanny's, the maid of all work, who had a warm heart*. G. ELIOT<sup>2</sup>).  
He joined *his cousin's company, Mr. T. R. Benson*. *Lit. World*, 152, 1906.
- iii. My Lord Castlewood feared very much that *his present chaplain's, Mr. Sampson's* careless life and heterodox conversations might lead him to give up his chaplaincy. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIX, 723.

- 2) When the genitive is absolute (45, 47), the first element of the noun-group mostly receives the mark of the genitive, the alternative practice being, apparently, mostly followed when the second noun is a proper name standing after a common noun.

<sup>1</sup>) JESP., *Prog.*, § 222. — <sup>2</sup>) *The King's Engl.*, 64.

- i. There was a carriage and pair standing at the gate, which she recognized as *Dr. Madeley's, the physician from Rotherby*. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VIII, 60. There was only one close carriage in the place, and that was old *Mr. Landor's, the banker*. *Ib.*, III. Ch. II, 190.  
And I know for a fact that Fusby's bill is not yet paid; nor *Binney and Latham's, the wine-merchant*. THACK., *A little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VII, 334.  
Convoys of treasure were passed to our forces, and to *our ally's, the King of Prussia*. *Id.*, *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 68.
- ii. What I came here to talk about was a little affair of *my young scapegrace, Fred's*. G. ELIOT, *Middlemarch*, II, Ch. XIII, 91.
- 3) When the genitive is used substantively (45, 49), in which case it mostly stands after a preposition, chiefly *at*, *in*, *into*, *over* and *to*, and denotes a residence or establishment, practice depends upon whether the noun expressing the narrower meaning, mostly a proper name, precedes or follows the other.
- a) When it precedes, the ordinary practice is to place both nouns in the genitive; not unfrequently it is the last which alone receives the mark of the genitive; while in style which is under the influence of grammar, we sometimes find the suffix attached to the first.
- i. He invited Pen to dine at his lodgings over *Madame Tribsby's, the milliner's, in Clavering*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 38.  
Water was brought from the pump close to *Wotley's the pastrycook's*. *Id.*, *Men's Wives*, Ch. I (322).  
I was so shocked when I recognized him behind the counter *at Mr. Grigg's, the mercer's*. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXI, 856.  
Martin's pound of candles invariably found its way *to Howlett's, the bird-fancier's*. *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 240.  
I bought these books *at Mr. Smith's, the bookseller's*. SWEET, *N.E. Gr.*, § 91.  
In the High Street he stopped *at Clifford's, the gun-maker's*, and bought a heavy revolver. CONAN DOYLE, *Round the Red Lamp*, Lot no. 249, 105.
- ii. I will send Nanny to London on purpose, and she may have a bed *at her cousin, the saddler's*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. I, 6.  
I called *at Parker, the publisher's*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Pref., 37.
- iii. As they walk up the town, they dive *into Nixon's, the hatter*. *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 85. (Another edition has *Nixon's, the hatter's*.)  
But just then the other man in brown appeared—wheeling his punctured machine. He was taking it *to Flambeau's, the repairers*. WELLS, *The Wheels of Chance*, 58.  
All this was happening *outside Rexton's, the hosier*. *Punch*.  
The third construction would, of course, be used when the class-noun is connected with (an)other(s) by *and*, or is accompanied by a prepositional modifier, as in *at Johnson's, the bookseller and stationer*, *at Johnson's, the bookseller in Farringdon Street*. See also JESP., *Prog.*, § 224.
- β) When the noun with the narrower meaning follows, the mark of the genitive is placed at the end, except in the case

of the former being a proper name preceded by a title, when the ordinary practice seems to be to attach the mark of the genitive to the first of the nouns.

i. For my part I little expected, when I last saw Keats *at my friend Leigh Hunt's*, that I should survive him. SHELLEY, Letter to Mr. Severn. *At his aunt Pullet's* there was a great many toads to pelt in the cellar-area. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. VII, 51.

ii. \* My master was all that time at his estate in Lincolnshire, and *at his sister's, the lady Davers*. RICHARDSON, Pamela, Letter X, 17. I am staying *at my aunt's, Mrs. Mowbray*. (STOF., Eng. Leesb. voor Aanv.kl., I, 24.)

\*\* I was *at my aunt, Lady Agatha's*. OSCAR WILDE, The Pict. of Dor. Gray, Ch. I, 23.

c) Of the deviations from the general practice exhibited by the following quotations, no further instances have been found:

i. When I got *to my sister's by marriage*. THEOD. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XII, Ch. III, 344.

ii. The first shop we entered was *a hosier's and glover's*. Daily Mail.

Note. Such a sentence as *A few hours' a day steady application does wonders* (Mrs. ALEX., For his sake, I, Ch. XV, 256) does not afford a real exception to the general rule (3), the word-group *a day* being in fact a concealed adverbial modifier, which might be shifted after *application*: *A few hours' steady application a day*.

5. The uninflected form is sometimes found for the genitive, when the noun modified is to be supplied from the preceding part of the discourse. JESP., Prog., § 235; FRANZ, Shak. Gram., § 42a.

Her dowry shall weigh equal with *a queen*. King John, II, 486<sup>1)</sup>.

I know the sound of Marcius' tongue from *every meaner man*. Coriol., I, 6, 27. My mother for whose sake and *the blessed Queen of heaven* I reverence all women. TEN.<sup>1)</sup>

"Well, I never!" says Mrs. Quiggett, with a shrill, strident laugh, like *a venerable old cockatoo*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LI, 526.

It (sc. the pin) did not look near so well in the second day's shirt as on *the first day*. Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 48. (Note, however, the change of preposition.)

And away went the good-tempered old fellow down the slide with a rapidity which came very close upon *Mr. Weller* and beat *the fat boy* all to nothing. Pickw., Ch. XXX.

This is even the usual form, when the noun is used in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct of the first kind. Ch. V, 4.

He thought they were but acknowledging his merits as *a commander*. THACK., Henry Esme., II, Ch. XV, 288.

At length Esmond saw his friend's name in the Gazette as *a bankrupt*. Ib., III, Ch. IV, 348.

<sup>1)</sup> JESP., Prog., § 235.



Sometimes the use of the uninflected form may be owing to the speaker not having arrived at clearness regarding the grammatical function of the word.

Bill Tidd, a very pale young man, with a black riband round his neck instead of a handkerchief, and his collars turned down like *Lord Byron*. *Sam. Titmarsh*, Ch. VII, 73

Woman's love | Save *one*, he not regarded. *TEN., Lanc. and El., 836.*

The uninflected form is unavoidable when the word does not admit of genitive inflection.

"And whose fault is it that I have not done so too?" said Bucklaw — "whose but the devil's and yours, and *such like* as you? *SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. V, 65.*

Our terms are lower than *any office*. *Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 80.* (which might be improved by placing *those of* after *than*.)

6. Obs. I. The 's of the genitive has sprung from the Old English termination *es*, which formed the genitive of most masculine and of all neuter nouns of the strong declension: *stan* — *stanes*; *scip* — *scipes*. As this ending was the only one that never had any other meaning than that of the genitive singular, it was better adapted to become the universal mark of the genitive than any of the other endings used for this purpose, which were equivocal, inasmuch as they were also used in other grammatical functions. *BRADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. II, 36.*

This termination formed a separate syllable, and in a later period. was often superseded by *is*, or *ys*. The change of pronunciation may have led to the notion of the 's of the genitive being an abbreviation of *his*, so that *the king's crown* was thought to stand for *the king his crown*.

- II. The use of the pronouns *his*, *her* and *their* after a noun instead of a genitive suffix is, however, of early origin and used to be widely prevalent. Towards the 17th century *her* and *their* as substitutes for the genitive were disappearing; not so *his*, which at that period was still common, even in the literary language. *FRANZ, Eng. Stud., XVII; id., Shak. Gram.<sup>1</sup>, § 45; MÄTZ., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 236.*

A continuation of *Olympias her storie*. *RALEIGH<sup>1</sup>).*

And now the feast of St. Martin was come, *the Dutch their* Arch-Saint. *FULLER<sup>1</sup>).*

Pallas *her* glass. *Bac., Adv. of Learn.<sup>2</sup>)*

Mars *his* true moving. *Henry VI, A, I, 2, 12).*

Charles *his* gleeks. *Ib., III, 2, 123<sup>2</sup>).*

For *jesus Christ his* sake. *Bk. of Com. Pray.*

In vulgar speech the use of *his* for 's is still common enough.

Bill Stumps *his* mark. *Pickw., Ch. XI, 92, 99.*

In George the First *his* time. *THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXII, 225.*

Seth Bede, the Methody *his* work. *G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, Ch. I, 3.*

<sup>1</sup>) *FRANZ, E. S., XVII.* — <sup>2</sup>) *ABBOTT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 217.*

III. The use of a possessive pronoun as a kind of genitival formative is not confined to English. We find it flourishing in colloquial Dutch, and, according to JESPERSEN (Prog., § 248) it is extremely common in Danish, Norwegian and Swedish dialects, in Middle and Modern Low German, and in some other European languages or dialects. According to the same authority, it seems in the majority of cases to be a form of *anacoluthia*, arising from the fact that the speaker mentions a word that is prominent in his thoughts without thinking of its syntactical possibilities, and afterwards feels the want of a corrective. This view does not, however, appear very acceptable.

Another possible source of this substitute for the genitive inflection is the occasional sameness of meaning of a person object + possessive pronoun and a genitival adnominal adjunct.

I forgave Miss Jessie *her* singing out of tune. MRS. GASKELL, Cranf., Ch. II, 29. (Compare: I forgave Miss Jessie's singing out of tune.)

I asked the woman *her* name. MISS BRAD., Lady Audl., II, Ch. XVI, 184. (Compare: I asked the woman's name.)

Carlo would not refuse the little fellow's petition. EDNA LYALL, Knight Err., Ch. XXXIII, 329. (Compare: Carlo would not refuse the little fellow his petition.)

IV. The apostrophe in the termination *'s* is intended to show that the vowel of a syllabic suffix has been lost. We still see the vowel in *Wednesday* ( *Wodenesday*), the proper name *Swineshead* (NESFIELD, Hist. Eng., § 114, N. 3), and in the compounds *calves-head* and *calves-foot*, articles of food, as distinguished from *calf's head* and *calf's foot*, parts of body. (SWEET, N. E. Gr. § 999.) The syllabic *es* is still frequent in SPENSER and instances are not wanting in SHAKESPEARE. (MAS., Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 76, IV.)

Ful worthy was he in his lordes werre. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, A, 47.

By goddes bones! whan I bete my knaves. Ib., B, 3087.

And eke through fear as white as whales bone. SPENS., Faery Queene, III, i, xv. Larger than the moon-es sphere. MIDS., II, 1, 7.

To show his teeth as white as whal-es bone. LOVE'S LAB. LOST, V, 2, 332.

The use of the apostrophe before the genitival *-s* did not become general until the middle of the 18th century, and as a mark of the genitive plural it seems to be of more recent date still. In the original editions of SHAKESPEARE such a spelling as *kings* or *ladies* was used for the genitive singular, for the nominative (or objective) plural, and for the genitive plural. The apostrophe was then used without regard to case-function:

a) to indicate that a syllable was added in pronunciation. *Thomas's*.

β) to indicate that the ending *es* was still commonly used, but not pronounced as a separate syllable. Thus SHAKESPEARE has *earth's* as a genitive singular and *prey's* as a nominative plural. Compare the modern practice of poets to write *kill'd* for *killed*, etc.

γ) to express the plural of a letter, figure, etc. or of a proper name, as is done in Present English. (Ch. XXV, 3, 4.) See also JESP., Prog., § 129; MAS., Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 76.

V. The dropping of the sibilant in such genitives as *for acquaintance's sake* and *Socrates' life* (2, a, b) is in accordance with the late Middle

English practice, which often dropped the whole ending *es* in French words and proper names ending in a sibilant. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 992, 998, 1022.

*Melibeus* wyf. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, B, 3086.

- VI. It was not until the 13th century that the sibilant came to be used to form the genitive of feminine nouns. In CHAUCER we still find a few instances of the common case doing duty for the genitive case of nouns that in Old English were feminine.

And born him well, as of so litel space | In hope to standen in his *lady* grace. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 88.

And in the gardin, at the *sonne* upriste | She walketh up and down, and as hir liste. *Ib.*, 1051.

A trace of the old practice is found in Modern English in *Lady-day*, with which compare *Lord's day*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 993.

#### MEANING AND USE.

7. The genitive of a noun or pronoun is a form which is used to express a certain relation between different persons, animals or things. For the sake of brevity the term genitive is often extended to the noun or pronoun which is placed in the genitive.

The person(s), animal(s) or thing(s) indicated by the genitive may be thought of as (an) individual(s) or as the representative(s) of a class. The genitive is, accordingly, meant either to individualize or to classify the person(s) animal(s) or thing(s) indicated by the noun modified. (Ch. IV, 1.)

i. *John's* book, *our neighbours'* rights.

ii. *a giant's* task, *old-wives'* tales.

A classifying genitive can often be told from an individualizing genitive by the markedly strong stress which it has as compared with the head-word. Compare: *That was a father's duty* (G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XV, 117) with *That was your father's duty*. See also 44, Obs. IV and V.

#### INDIVIDUALIZING GENITIVE.

8. The relations between what is expressed by the individualizing genitive and by the noun modified are of a highly varied nature, but are chiefly of the following description. The noun in the genitive may denote:

a) the person, animal or thing to which that which is expressed by the noun modified, belongs, of which it is a part, or to which it pertains.

*My brother's* books; *the old mare's* hoofs; *the earth's* crust.

b) the person, animal or thing from which that which is expressed by the noun modified, originates.

*David's* psalms; *the pheasant's* nest; *nature's* work.

- c) the person, animal or thing performing the action expressed by the noun modified.

*Elizabeth's* reign; *the horse's* breathing; *the globe's* rotation.

- d) the person, animal or thing subjected to the action expressed by the noun modified.

*Gordon's* murder (Times); *Wildfire's* (a horse) loss (G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. VIII, 56); *their kingdom's* loss (Rich. III, I, 3).

- e) the measure as to distance, time, weight, value or carrying capacity of what is expressed by the noun modified.

*a hair's* breath; *an hour's* interval; *a pound's* weight; *a shilling's* worth; *seventy tons'* burden.

- f) the thing which is a specimen or a variety of the class of things indicated by the noun modified. (Ch. IV, 16.)

*Tweed's* fair river (SCOTT, Marm., I, 1); For he attains that rival's name | With *treason's* charge (ib., II, xviii).

According to the different relations indicated by the genitive we may, therefore, distinguish: the genitive of possession, the genitive of origin, the genitive of agency or subjective genitive, the genitive of undergoing or objective genitive, the genitive of measure and the genitive of specializing or apposition.

From the fact that the genitive in the majority of cases expresses a relation of possession, it is often called the *possessive*.

9. Obs. I. The description under *a*) is meant to include a great many other relations of a kindred nature, as illustrated by:

And when he reads | Thy personal venture in *the rebels'* fight. Macb., I, 3, 91. (= the fight *against the rebels*.)

*Freedom's* battle. BYRON, Giaour, 123. (= the battle *fought in the cause of freedom*.)

*Poor Mr. Holbrook's* dinner. Mrs. GASKELL, Cranf., Ch. XVI, 302. (= the dinner *given by the late Mr. Holbrook*.)

*Mrs. Winter's* dance. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. V, 70. (= the dance *given by Mrs. Winter*.)

*This country's* history. Times. (= the history of *the events connected with this country*.)

*The week's* weather. Ib. (= the weather *prevailing in the week*.)

*The world's* fair. Ib. (= the fair *bringing together persons and things from all parts of the world*.)

It must also be observed that the divisions of the different kinds of genitive cannot always be marked off with precision. On the contrary, many genitives admit of being classed under different headings. Thus *the man's mistakes* is, perhaps, best described as a subjective genitive, but may also with, perhaps, equal justice be understood as a genitive of origin or even of possession. Such doubtful cases are all discussed under the heading of genitive of possession or origin, those cases in which the noun modified is a gerund or equivalent word being reserved for that of the genitive of agency or subjective genitive.



II. In the Old-English period the functions of the genitive were more numerous than in the present stage of the language. Of one of these, that of forming adverbial adjuncts, some traces are still met with. Go *your ways* in God's name, sir. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XXXI. 234b.

Pisistratus must *needs* go also to town and see the world. LYTTON, *Caxt.* IV, Ch. III, 93.

For further instances see also Ch. V, 5. Full details will be given in the Chapter about adverbs. The obsolete functions of the genitive are now expressed by prepositions or by apposition.

10. In some cases the relation expressed by the genitive may also be indicated by a preposition. By far the most frequent prepositional substitute for the genitive is *of*. Of more restricted application are *by*, *from*, *to*, and a few others. (35—37.)

Note. The use of the preposition *of* to express the meaning of the genitive did not appear until the twelfth century. Save for some special cases as in *se cyning of Norwegan*, where it has the same meaning as the genitive, this preposition was used in Old English where Modern English would have *from* or *out of*. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 59.

The use of the individualizing genitive as compared with its prepositional equivalent depends in the main on *a*) the kind of relation that has to be expressed; *b*) the meaning of the noun; *c*) the kind of diction; *d*) the syntactical connections of the noun; *e*) the comparative emphasis or stress of the modifying noun and the noun modified; *f*) the metre or rhythm.

In discussing the prevalence of one or the other construction it seems advisable to disregard provisionally the influences mentioned under *d*, *e*, and *f*.

#### USE OF THE GENITIVE AND ITS PREPOSITIONAL EQUIVALENT APART FROM CONSIDERATIONS OF SYNTAX, EMPHASIS AND METRE OR RHYTHM.

##### Genitive of Possession or Origin.

11. The genitive of possession or origin is chiefly used of the names of persons.
12. *a*) As to ordinary common nouns denoting persons, there is a distinct preference of the genitive over the prepositional construction. Indeed in perusing a few pages of ordinary English prose the observant reader cannot fail to be struck by the fact that, whenever the prepositional construction is used, there is mostly one of the reasons mentioned above (10) that accounts for it. The reason of this preference may be that it is mostly a

matter closely connected with the person, which is to be expressed, and for this the synthetic genitive is better adapted than the analytical prepositional construction. Thus the parsonage is better indicated by *the parson's house* than by *the house of the parson*. Here follow some quotations in which the synthetic construction has possibly been preferred from this unity being more or less apparent to the speaker or writer.

Mrs. Proudie had discovered a large hole, evidently the work of rats, in *the servants' hall*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. V, 36.

Mrs. Proudie had also seen that those (sc. the locks) on the doors of *the servants' bedrooms* were in an equally bad condition. Ib.

He recoiled from the idea of scolding *the bishop's wife* in *the bishop's presence*. Ib., 37.

The precentor clearly saw from *his companion's face* that a tornado was to be expected. Ib., 38.

The doctor indeed wished in his heart to prevent the signora from accepting *the bishop's invitation*. Ib., Ch. X, 74.

The ceremony of washing the feet of poor persons on the day before Good Friday was instituted in commemoration of Christ's washing *the apostles' feet* at the Last Supper, and of his injunction that his disciples should in like manner wash one another's feet. MURRAY, s. v. *maundy*.

Compare with the above the following quotations, in which the use of the analytical construction may have been occasioned by the connection between modifier and head-word having been felt as a less close one.

And now had I *the pen of a mighty poet*, would I sing in epic verse the *noble wrath of the archdeacon*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. V, 37.

She, and she alone, could in any degree control *the absurdities of her sister*. Ib., Ch. IX, 63.

It is not, I presume, probable . . . that you will accept from *the hands of the bishop* a piece of preferment with a fixed predetermination to disacknowledge the duties attached to it. Ib., Ch. XII, 97.

He merely observed . . . that the duties of the situation had . . . been done to *the satisfaction of the late bishop*. Ib., 95.

He would marry the lady as *the enemy of her brother-in-law*. Ib., Ch. XV, 116.

Another prince of the same house was raised to the throne by French influence, and ratified *all the promises of his predecessor*. MAC., Clive, 505a.

- b) The genitive is very common when the noun is used in a generalizing sense, in which case it is often practically equivalent to an adjective.

*Of the soldier's great virtues* - constancy in disaster, devotion to duty, hopefulness in defeat—no man ever possessed a larger share. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 900a. Any comprehensive scheme for extending education is beyond the range of *the King's powers*. Rev. of Rev., CCLVI, 327b. (Compare: The repeal of exceptional legislation is beyond the scope of *Royal prerogative*. Ib.)

I hear all the voices of human kind (sc. in the singing of the telegraph wires) . . . *the lover's secrets, the sportsman's tips, the merchant's prices, the death-roll from the veld, the latest scores from the Oval*. The Comments of Bagshot (Westm. Gaz., No. 5607, 9b.)

- c) Collective nouns indicating persons are often apprehended as the names of organized bodies and, consequently, have the genitive

construction frequently enough, although the prepositional would seem to be mostly preferred.

- i. I could not blame *the assembly's exhortation*. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. X, 210*b*.  
 Madras was the first in importance of *the Company's settlements*. MAC., Clive.  
 Such continued to be the talk . . . at *the gentry's houses* and the rough roadside taverns. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XII, 124.  
 There were many schemes and proposals which had *the meeting's objects* in view. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5448, 8*c*.  
 This . . . is the setting of *Society's parade ground*. *Ib.*, No. 5607, 8*c*.  
 The Khalifa began to suspect *this tribe's fidelity*. *Times*.

- ii. The business of *the servant of the Company* was not, as now, to conduct the judicial, financial, and diplomatic business of a great country. MAC., Clive, 499*a*.  
 He (sc. Dupleix) found tools even among *the allies of the English Company*. *Ib.*, 509*a*.  
 So we hear futile complaints of *the arbitrariness of the Government* in persisting in a policy which the country has approved, or *the obstinacy of the Government* in not yielding the victory to the beaten party. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5631, 1*b*.

But of such collective nouns as express little more than an idea of number the genitive is hardly ever used. Thus it could hardly stand for the construction with *of* in *the leaders of the multitude*.

- d) The genitive is less freely used of plural nouns in *s* than of singular nouns. This is owing to the fact that the spoken language does not distinguish between the genitive singular and the genitive plural of such nouns. Thus *the boy's parents* and *the boys' parents* sound precisely alike. This leads the speaker to a frequent use of the prepositional construction when he wishes his hearers clearly to understand that he is thinking of more than one possessor. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2004.

Thus the analytical construction may have been preferred for greater clearness in:

- My mother had married him against *the wishes of her friends*. *Jane Eyre*, Ch. III, 25.  
 Charlemagne was scarcely interred when *the imbecility and the disputes of his descendants* began to bring contempt on themselves and destruction on their subjects. MAC., Clive, 502*a*.  
*The wide dominion of the Franks* was severed into a thousand pieces. *Ib.*

- e) It may here also be observed that the prepositional construction is practically the only one with adjectives partially converted into nouns. (Ch. XXIV, 14 ff.)

We justified our conquest to ourselves by taking away *the character of the conquered*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III.  
 He has taken much interest in *the housing of the poor*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVI, 350*b*.

13. The greater frequency of the genitive as compared with its analytical equivalent is still more marked in the case of proper names of persons.

a) This applies especially to simple names. SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2006) even goes so far as to say that "in such a sentence as *Where is John's hat?* we could no more substitute *of John* than we could substitute *of me* for *my*". Although there can be no doubt that as regards such nouns the genitive is by far the commoner construction, it can hardly be said to be so exclusively used as SWEET'S words imply, seeing that instances of its analytical equivalent are not infrequently met with in different kinds of literature. See the second group of the following quotations:

- i. *George's loyal younger brother* shared too this repugnance. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 634.  
 He made up his mind that even as Mrs. Hope she must be dearer to him than any other creature on *God's earth*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXVIII, 238.  
 I am the most fortunate woman living on *God's earth*. *Ib.*, Ch. XLIX, 437.  
 (Thus, apparently, regularly in this combination.)  
 The supposed effect of these attacks on *Keats's health* was wildly exaggerated by some contemporaries. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 87.  
 Little need be said of *Shelley's character*. *Ib.*  
 Hunt had to a certain extent started this (sc. the new note), but he had not succeeded in giving it anything like the distinct character which it took in *Keats's hands*. *Ib.*, 89.  
 Dr. Annandale not only sets forth the main facts of *Burns's* career. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5027, 11a.
- ii. If they (sc. the Bells) said anything, they said this, until *the brain of Toby* reeled. DICK, *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 36.  
 Despite all *the admonitory looks and pinches of Bumble*, [*Oliver Twist*] was regarding the repulsive countenance of his future master with a mingled expression of horror and fear. *Id.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 42.  
 He (sc. Harry Foker) would have longed to give his arm to the fair *Blanche*, and conduct her down the brown carpeted stair; but she fell to *the lot of Pen* upon this occasion. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. I, 8.  
*The chair of lone* was next to *the couch of Glaucus*. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, IV, Ch. III.  
 Steele, an excellent judge of lively conversation, said, that *the conversation of Addison* was at once the most polite, and the most mirthful, that could be imagined. MAC., *Addison*, 751a.  
 With this negotiation commences a new chapter in *the life of Clive*. *Id.*, *Clive*, 515a.  
 This was but the beginning of *the greatness of Dupleix*. *Ib.*, 504b.  
*The health of Clive* had never been good during his residence in India. *Ib.*, 509b.  
 The young lady was not beautiful: but *the taste of James* was not nice. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 31.  
 But *the fortitude of Monmouth* was not that highest sort of fortitude which is derived from reflection and from self-respect. *Ib.*, II, Ch. V, 186.  
 Even those wild islands which intercept the huge waves of the Atlantic



from the bay of Galway, had acknowledged *the authority of William*. *Ib.*, VI, Ch. XVII, 214.

Here, they said, is an instrument of tyranny more formidable than the High Commission, than the Star Chamber, than even *the fifty thousand soldiers of Oliver*. *Ib.*, VII, Ch. XX, 311.

It contained a gold ring and a lock of *the hair of Mary*. *Ib.*, 10, Ch. XXV, 94. But *the frame of William* was not in a condition to bear even the slightest shock. *Ib.*, X, Ch. XXV, 89.

England, dragged at *the heels of Philip* into a useless and ruinous war, was left without an ally save Spain. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 369.

- b) Also as regards complex proper names and simple names preceded by a simple title, such as *Lord*, *Lady*, *Sir*, *Mr.*, *Mrs.*, *Miss*, the genitive is more in favour than the *of*-construction, although in a less marked degree than in the case of simple proper names. The longer the complex name, the greater the prevalence of the prepositional construction.

- i. The colloquy terminated by the writing of those two letters which were laid on *Major Pendennis's breakfast-table* in London, at the commencement of *Prince Arthur's most veracious history*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 78.

Two little boys had stolen some apples from *Farmer Benson's orchard*, and some eggs had been missed off *Widow Hayward's stall*. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 207.

*Mr. Mill's book* . . . is not sufficiently animated and picturesque to attract those who read for amusement. MAC., *Lord Clive.*, 497b.

- ii Timothy's Bess, though retaining her maiden appellation among her familiars, had long been *the wife of Sandy Jim*. G. ELDER, *Adam Bede*, Ch. II, 14. *The gratitude of Mr. Winkle* was too powerful for utterance. PICKW., Ch. II, 19.

The materials placed at *the disposal of Sir John Malcolm* by the late Lord Powis were indeed of great value. MAC., *Clive*, 497b.

The effect of the book . . . is, on the whole, greatly to raise *the character of Lord Clive*. *Ib.*, 408a.

*The father of Herbert Spencer*, it will be remembered, was also a school-master. CLODD, *Pioneers of Evolution*, 86.

In *the words of Lord Rosebery*, "the new King has led the life of a sailor and in Great Britain we all love sailors". WESTM. GAZ., No. 5311, 1c.

- c) Apparently regular is the use of the genitive in denoting the residence, the activities, etc. of a firm as in.

At *Christie's rooms* yesterday the old masters, which formed the collection of the late Sir William Abdy, were sold by auction. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5607, 8c. The scheme is to be worked through the existing railway companies, *Messrs. Thos. Cook and Son's agency* and the well-established hotels and boarding-houses throughout the country. *Ib.*, No. 5625, 6a.

- d) The genitive is much more common than the *of*-construction of names of persons, whether proper names or common nouns, which are used as parts of proper names of days, buildings, streets, squares, etc. In many cases such names of persons are preceded by *Saint*.

- i. \* *King's College*, *Queen's College*, *Christ's College* (at Cambridge).

*Christ's Hospital*. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 98.

*Pompey's theatre*. DEIGHTON, *Note to Haml.*, III, 2, 96.

\*\* *St. John's College* (at Cambridge).

*St. Valentine's day.* SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. II, 92.

*St. Bartholomew's fair.* WASH. IRV., *Sketch-bk.*, XXV, 249.

*Saint Bartholomew's Day.* CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 106.

*Saint Mary's Abbey.* Robin Hood, 149. (Gruno Ser.)

- ii. *The theatre of Pompey* in the Campus Martius. CLARK AND WRIGHT, *Note to Hamlet*, III, 2, 96.

Where there has been a French church ever since Queen Bess's time and *the dreadful day of Saint Bartholomew.* THACK., *Denis Duval*, Ch. I, 180.

*The Church of St. Angelo.* LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. V, 109.

*The Castle of Saint Angelo.* MAC., *Hist.*, Ch. I, 136.

The time was now come round again to *the high-day of St. Valentine.* BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XVI, 93.

*The Abbey of St. Mary.* Robin Hood, 144. (Gruno Ser.)

He was buried in *the church of St. Giles*, Cripplegate, London. Cassell's *Conc. Cycl.*, s. v. *Frobisher*.

- e) The genitive construction is practically regular with titles of persons of distinction, consisting of a possessive pronoun and an abstract noun, the latter sometimes preceded by an adjective, the combinations being understood as proper names.

I have not deserved the foul suspicions which *your Majesty's words* imply. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXV, 374.

The postmaster . . . said . . . that he had taken advantage of his opportunity to study *their honour's manners.* THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 83.

She looked up at him, and strove to catch *his reverence's eye.* Ib., Ch. XXXVIII, 397.

The faithful Fuchs bowed and promised to do *her excellency's will.* Ib., 403.

I drink to *your Highness's health.* Id., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. XI, 245.

He's *his Royal Highness's* right-hand man. Id., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 131.

One of *his Royal Highness's performances* was a refutation of Macchiavelli. MAC., *Fred.*, 664a.

You will have me act *his Grace's part.* Ib.

If *your highness's bags* do not contain more than eighty thousand, we will meet you. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. II, 74.

Similar fragmentary ejaculations were all that she ventured upon in *my lady's presence.* MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 208.

*Your Grace's policy* hath a farther flight | Than mine into the future. TEN., *Queen Mary*, I, v, (540b).

You are to go to the bath three times every day. It is *his Excellency's order.* MAX PEMB., *Doct. Xav.*, Ch. VII, 33a.

*Her Majesty's Government* have ceased to rely on mere paper. *Times*.

This matter has not been lost sight of by *Her Majesty's Minister* at Tangiers. Ib.

*Her Majesty's gunboat Hazard* is shelling the town of Candia. Ib.

Thus also in such collocations as:

- a) *the King's Majesty*, *the Queen's Grace*, etc. when denoting the personages themselves.

But, Sir Thomas, must we levy war against *the Queen's Grace?* TEN., *Queen Mary*, II, 1 (596a).

- β) *King's (Queen's, State's) evidence* (= accomplice or sharer in a crime, offering himself as a witness for the prosecution against the other persons implicated).

## 14. a) The genitive is also fixed in:

## 1) certain proverbial sayings, such as:

*Old maids' husbands* are al'ys (vulgar for: always) well-managed.  
G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 47.

*A coward's fear* may make a coward vallant. *Prov*

*A fool's bolt* is soon shot. *Id.*

*A man's best fortune*, or his worst, is a wife. *Id.*

*A woman's strength* is in her tongue. *Id.*

## 2) certain compounds and word-groups, such as:

a) *blind-man's-buff*, *blind man's holiday* (= the time just before candles are lighted, when it is too dark to work and one is obliged to rest or 'take a holiday', formerly used more widely. MURRAY.)

In the winter afternoons she (sc. Miss Matty Jenkyns) would sit knitting for two or three hours, . . . and when I asked if I might not ring for candles to finish stitching my wristbands, she told me to "keep *blind man's holiday*". Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. V, 87.

ß) *my* (thy, his, etc.) *father's* (or *mother's*), *son* (or *daughter*) as equivalents of *I*, *thou*, *he*, etc.

I think our work is well begun, | When we have taken *thy father's son*. SCOTT, *Lay*, III, xx.

Where has he been? Where *his mother's son* should have been ashamed to go. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 77.

You mean that you — *your mother's son* — are actually paying honourable attentions to this young person. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXIV, 895.

This also appears to be the case in such designations as *my brother's* (or *sister's*) *son* (or *daughter*) for *my nephew* (or *niece*); *my father's* (or *mother's*) *son* (or *daughter*) for *my brother* (or *sister*).

To tell lies has not been a habit in our family, Mr. Costigan, and I don't think *my brother's son* has learned it as yet. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 120.

Now God forgive me for talking so of *my own father's daughter*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XII, 70.

γ) *every mother's son* = everybody.

i. That would hang us *every mother's son*. *Mids.*, II, 1, 79.

ii. *Every mother's son* of them wishes to be considered Samson and Solomon rolled into one. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 190.

b) The genitive is almost regular also in the forms of speech illustrated by the following quotations, in which the Dutch has the common case:

i. \* New South Wales alone has a revenue of 14 millions *against the Commonwealth's 10 millions*. *Westm. Gaz.*

The value of German imports and exports amounted in 1907 to 17 milliard marks, *against England's 23.7 milliard marks*. *Ib.*

The three shillings per week to be contributed by the employer, *as against the State's threepence*, appears to us somewhat excessive. *Ib.*, No. 5625, 6a.

\*\* They sailed two feet *for the Spaniards' one*. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § VI, 419.

The two long and lean Clovelly men . . . ran two feet *for the Spaniards' one*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXV, 184b.

\*\*\* The lightly handled English vessels . . . fired four shots *to the Spaniards' one*. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § VI, 419.

In the third set Miss Fanshaw was five games *to Miss Tench's four*. G. MOORE, A Modern Lover, 95.

At our present rate of construction we shall in 1911 have twelve Dreadnoughts *to Germany's one*. Westm. Gaz.

We lost 800 men *to France's 3000*. Il. Lond. News, Summer Number, 1910.

Canada won by eight points *to the United Kingdom's nine*. Truth, No. 1800, 1685a.

We shall have to go on quietly building ships—two *to Germany's every one*. Eng. Rev., 1912, March, 682.

- ii. Trotty said this, taking about six of his trotting paces *to one stride of his fatigued companion*. DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, II, 56.

Observe an analogous varied practice with possessive pronouns (Ch. XXXIII, 14, c), and compare also the following quotations:

It having been arranged that Bob Sawyer and Ben Allen should be considered at liberty to fill twice *to Mr. Winkle's once*, they started fair, with great satisfaction and good-fellowship. PICKW., Ch. XXXVIII, 352.

During the interview (she) had spoken probably three words *for every one* which her ladyship had been able to utter. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXV, 342.

My dear mother . . . thought of me ten times *for one thought* about herself. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XII, 72.

15. a) As to the names of animals we find that the genitive is, in the main, confined to those of the larger and more familiar animals, especially when they have personal qualities ascribed to them.

Mr. Murdstone with *his horse's bridle* drawn over his arm, walked slowly up and down. DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 11b.

The cake made no more impression on his big face than it would have done on *an elephant's*. Id., Ch. V, 32a.

It was nine o'clock before I heard *the old mare's hoofs* clattering up the road. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 106.

*The very lions' manes* were burnt off by the heat. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. III, 14a.

How did you come to be taking *my pheasant's nest*. SWEET, Old Chapel. *His horse's feet* were in the water. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. X, 57.

With proper names of animals the genitive is as usual as with proper names of persons. *Pongo's collar*, *Oscar's coat*.

To hang about a stable, and collect a gang of the most disreputable dogs to be found in the town, and lead them out to march round the slums to fight other disreputable dogs, is *Montmorency's idea* of "life". JEROME, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. II, 22.

He feebly got upon *Winnie's back*. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XI, 63.

- b) When, however, an animal is regarded as a mere object of natural history, as is generally the case with the smaller and less-known species, the preposition *of* mostly takes the place of genitive inflection.



The *head of the armadillos* is flat. *Cass. Conc. Cycl.*

The *hair of the badger* is employed for making paint-brushes. *Ib.*

The *lungs of the chameleon* are capable of great distention. *Ib.*

16. As to the names of things the *of*-construction is the usual one.

It is often said that when the genitive is used of the name of a thing, there is a notion of personification. This may be true in the main, but can hardly be said to be applicable to all cases. Thus it seems difficult to find any notion of personification in such collocations as *the morning's work*, *the day's event*, *his journey's end*, *an arm's length*, *to be at one's wit's* (or *wits')* *end*, and many others mentioned below. See also BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, 60.

In ordinary prose the genitive is quite common:

a) of proper names of states, provinces, towns, etc. or equivalent word-groups like *this country*, *the town*, and also of such nouns as *bank*, *church*, *university* etc. when organized bodies are meant.

i. Happily for the country, *England's councils* are not directed by boys. *G. MEREDITH, Lord Ormont, Ch. II, 24.*

*France's religion* must be that of *France's king*. *CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 224.*

*America's foreign trade*. *Times.*

The Canadian people were devoted to British liberality and impressed by *Britain's power*. *Ib.*

All Frenchmen should be agreed in the necessity of seeking *England's friendship*. *Ib.*

ii. Of all bad deeds that, under cover of the darkness, had been committed within wide *London's bounds* since night hung over it, that was the worst. *DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. XLVIII, 439.*

That paragon of a clergyman . . . that honoured representative of *Oxford's best spirit* was . . . misconducting himself. *TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLVII, 417.*

The refitting and refounding of the library by Sir Thomas Bodley, is the most magnificent example of *Oxford's development*. *Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. Oxford.*

His marvellous facility of composition and splendour of colouring has made him one of *New York's most famous painters*. *T. P's Weekly, No. 472, 653a.*

iii. (We) predicted (that) one day he would be . . . at once *his country's brightest honour*, and her proudest boast. *PICKW., Ch. LI.*

The object which actuates and animates me in all my gigantic labours (is) *my country's good*. *Ib.*

In the last fiscal year the value of manufactured goods exported from America was for the first time in *this country's history* in excess of the manufactured goods imported. *Times.*

He offered to go out in any capacity to do what he could to help to retrieve *the Empire's losses*. *Rev. of Rev., CCLVI, 390b.*

He worked for his country and *his country's good*. *Westm. Gaz., No. 5607, 9c.*

*The State's partner* in the Insurance scheme must be solvent. *Ib., No. 5613, 2a.*

iv. The cakes (were) baked by *the town's chief confectioner*. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot*.

The Municipal authorities are taking full advantage of *the city's great opportunity*. *Punch*, No. 3682, 72b.

v. The depreciation in the value of *the Bank's investments* (admittedly the cause of its failure) is attributed to the Boer War. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5642, 1c. (Note the use of *its*.)

Mr. Lloyd George then proceeded to give the House chapter and verse of the history of a number of *the bank's principal investments*. *Ib.*, 5b.

The supply of these facilities was doubtless the reason of *the Birkbeck Bank's popularity*. *Outlook* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5642, 16c).

vi. On the due administration of (this trust) much of *the church's welfare* might depend. *TROL.*, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XIV, 107.

*The Archbishop* implied this to be *the Church's doctrine*. *Times*.

The theatre has been pointed at as *the Church's great rival*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5625, 4a.

At the Hanley Town Hall the topic at the morning session was "*The Church's Duty in Furthering International Peace*." *Times*, No. 1814, 801a.

vii. *The universities' boat race*. *Il. Lond. News*.

A few quotations illustrating the alternative practice, apparently the ordinary one, will suffice.

While the Jacobite party was in the last dotage and weakness of its paralytic old age, *the political philosophy of England* began to produce a mighty effect on France, and through France, on Europe. *MAC.*, *Hist. Rev.*, (346a).

During the last seven centuries *the public mind of Europe* has made constant progress in every department of secular knowledge. *Id.*, *Popes*, (545a).

Observe the regular use of the prepositional construction in *the Church of England* = the Anglican Church, *the Church of Rome* = the Roman Catholic Church.

Those are the sort of men who will ruin *the Church of England*. *TROL.*, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. VI, 40.

Four times since the authority of *the Church of Rome* was established in Western Europe, has the human intellect risen up against the yoke. *MAC.*, *Popes*, (545a-b).

When countries, provinces, towns etc. are viewed as geographical areas, i. e. when there is no idea of any personification, the prepositional construction is practically regular.

*The position of England*, lying as it does in full command of the sea-front of N. W. Europe, has largely determined its part in the economy and politics of the world. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s. v. *England*.

b) of the names of the principal heavenly bodies, that is of *earth* (*globe*), *moon* and *sun* (*MAS.*, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 73), and also of such nouns as *nature* (in the sense of the creative power) and *world*. (44, Obs. IV.)

**earth.** He has brought together a mass of information relating to the earthquakes and other movements of *the earth's crust*. *Times*.

Polar axis: that axis of an astronomical instrument, as an equatorial, which is parallel to *the earth's axis*. *WEBST.*, s. v. *polar*.

**globe.** Asia is the largest division of land on *the globe's surface*. *Cass.*, *Conc. Cycl.*, s. v. *Asia*.

**moon.** If *the moon's orbit* were in the same plane as the ecliptic or the path of the earth, then the sun would be eclipsed at every full moon. *Ib.*, s. v. *eclipse*.

There was but one there who cared much about *the moon's beauty*. TROL. Barch. Tow., Ch. XIX, 152.

**sun.** The sun-spots move over *the sun's surface* independently of *the sun's rotation*. Cass. Conc. Cyclop.

Woollen materials of all sorts were but ungracious receptacles of *the bright sun's glancing rays*. MRS. GASKELL, Cranford, Ch. XII, 230.

**nature.** Dolf gazed about him in mute delight and wonder at the scenes of *nature's magnificence*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl. I, 125).

He was as welcome as ever to the friendship of *nature's and fortune's most favoured, yet most unspoilt minion*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. II, 11b.

All this is *nature's work*. MAR. CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. III, 44.

**world.** It must suffice for him to be ordinarily honest according to the ordinary honesty of *the world's ways*, and to let men's tongues wag as they would. TROL. Barch. Tow., Ch. XXIV, 201.

*This world's wealth* will make no one happy. Ib., Ch. XXVII, 230.

He was condemned to undergo *the world's harsh judgment*: not for the fault — for its atonement. G. MEREDITH, Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. I, 6.

She loved him, and *the world's praise or blame* were nothing to her. EDNA LYALL, A Hardy Norseman, Ch. XXIII, 215.

He was never rich in *this world's goods*. Acad.

*The world's maize crop*. Times.

Never before have these aspirations found so responsive an echo in the councils of one of the greatest and most powerful of *the world's rulers*. Ib.

Note. Of the names of the heavenly bodies the prepositional construction is at least equally common.

Nature is often thought of as a kind of female being or goddess, as in the above quotations, hence the genitive is very common. When there is no notion of any personification as in *the laws of nature* the *of*-construction is, of course, the ordinary one.

Of *world* the genitive construction is, perhaps, less common than the *of*-construction.

**earth.** *The axis of the earth* is not at right angles to the plane of this circle (sc. the Ecliptic). Cassell's Conc. Cycl., s. v. *earth* (Compare: It is to this inclination of *the earth's axis* that we owe the variations of the seasons. Ib.)

People come from *the uttermost ends of the earth*, though, of course, there are many Londoners here. BEATR. HAR., Ships, I, Ch. I, 4.

**globe.** During three hundred years the multiplying millions of the English-speaking races spreading ever more widely over *the surface of the globe* have turned in their need to the grand simplicity of the Authorised Version. GEORGE V, Speech (Rev. of Rev., No. 256, 321a)

**moon.** *Eclipses of the moon* can only occur at her full. Cassell's Conc. Cycl., s. v. *eclipse*.

**sun.** During a total eclipse, when *the bright disc of the sun* is obscured, red flames are seen to project from different portions of the sun's edge. Ib., s. v. *sun*.

**nature.** *The Laws of Nature* are simply statements of the orderly condition of things in Nature. H. DRUMMOND, Nat. Law. in Spir. W., 51).

**world.** Mrs. Quiverful had not been slow to learn *the ways of the world*. TROL. Barch. Tow., Ch. XXV, 211.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *nature*.

Her father was a soft, good-natured gentleman, not sufficiently knowing in *the ways of the world*. Ib., Ch. XXIX, 250. (Compare the quotation above.)  
Oh, it's *the way of the world*, my dear. Ib., Ch. XLIII, 384. (In this last combination with way in the singular, the *of*-construction seems to be fixed.)

c) of the names of epochs:

*That morning's breakfast* passed heavily off. Pickw., Ch. II.  
There was a good deal of noise in the course of *the morning's work*. Dick., Cop., Ch. VII, 47b.  
In *the next day's paper* or *quarter's review* many of us very likely admired the work of his genius. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXIV, 362.  
He is now thinking of you as he attempts to write his sermon for *next Sunday's preaching*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLV, 407.  
The boy's were preparing *the morrow's lessons*. G. ELIOT, Mill, II, Ch. V, 160.  
I am going to write to my dear son by *Friday's mail*. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. II, 32.  
The community on board the 'Lorelei' had been much excited by *the day's event*. Ill. Mag.  
*The week's weather*. Times.  
*Friday's meeting* was the 16th day of the inquiry. Ib.  
Our Cape Town Correspondent telegraphed under *Sunday's date*. Ib.  
A certain balance there always must be on *every year's transactions* in order to provide for interest on securities. Ib.

The genitive construction seems to be the one that is mostly preferred, except, perhaps, when a genitive or possessive pronoun modifying the head-word precedes.

- i. Mr. Tupman was not in a condition to rise after *the unwonted dissipation of the previous night*. Pickw., Ch. II.  
In *the Times of Yesterday* we published a report on trade in 1898. Times.  
It would be a fatal error in our judgment, were the Unionist Party to repeat the somewhat carping attitude which they adopted towards *the Free Amusements Bill of last year*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 6a.
- ii. \* He begged me to express his opinion that *your conduct of last evening* was of a description which no gentleman could endure. Pickw., Ch. II, 16.  
"He gives devilish good dinners," said Foker, striking up for the honour of *his host of yesterday*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. II, 27.  
*Your letter of yesterday* did indeed give me a cruel chill of disappointment. Mrs. GASKELL, Life of Charl. Brontë, 242.  
\* Catherine took the opportunity of asking the other for some particulars of *their yesterday's party*. JANE AUSTEN, North. Ab., Ch. XV, 109.  
There was some connexion between his present situation and *his last night's dream*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl.  
There's *her to-morrow's partridge* in the larder. Dick., Little Dorrit, Ch. III, 19b.  
Having delivered this manifesto (which formed a portion of *his last week's leader*) . . . the editor paused to take breath. Pickw., Ch. 41.  
Since *their Sunday's conversation*, his lordship was more free and confidential with his kinsman than he had previously been. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 157.  
Small beer — will it be believed! — was the only drink with which unhappy gentlemen soothed the fever of *their previous night's potation*. Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 59.

Periphrasis with *of* would seem to be the rule with *to-day*, *yesterday* and *to-morrow*, when respectively used in the sense of *the present*.



*the past and the future*; also with *the day* in the meaning of *this (or that) time*.

- i. What young lady cares for the *puddings of to-day*, much more for those which were eaten a hundred years ago? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 89.

Before the bishop of Barchester had left the table, *the minister of the day* was made aware of the fact at his country-seat in Hampshire. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, XXXVIII, 333.

The plain man, looking at the problem as it exists to-day, is right to hold that he is not dealing with the *Bishops of yesterday*. *Rev. of Rev.*

- ii. *Yesterday's preacher* becomes the text for *to-day's sermon*. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, Swift.

As to Bertie, one would have imagined from the sound of his voice and the gleam of his eye that he had not a sorrow nor a care in the world. Nor had he. He was incapable of anticipating *to-morrow's griefs*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XIX, 147.

Periphrasis is unavoidable when the epoch is denoted by a noun + adverb.

Dobbin was already in the room, good-naturedly tending *his patient of the night before*. Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 60.

- d) numerous nouns in certain combinations, among others:

**arm** in *at (within) arm's distance (end, length, reach)*, sometimes with **arm** in the genitive plural; MURRAY gives *within arm reach* as a variant of *within arm's reach*. *At (the) arm's end* is now obsolete. **bed** in *bed's foot (head)*; **boat** in *boat's head (crew, etc., almost any noun)*; **cannon** in *cannon's mouth*; **death** in *at (from, to, etc.) death's door*; **finger** in *at one's fingers' ends*; **hair** in *hair's breadth*; **hand** in *hand's breadth and hand's span*; **harm** in *out of harm's way*; **heart** in *failure of the heart's action, my (your, etc.) heart's blood (content, care, delight, desire)*; **journey** in *journey's end*; **life** in *life's business (end, prime, struggle)*; **mind** in *mind's eye*; **nature** in *in nature's garb*; **needle** in *needle's eye*; **rope** in *rope's end*; **ship** in *ship's cabin (captain, company, crew, doctor etc., almost any noun)*; **spear** in *spear's length*; **sword** in *at the sword's point*; **tongue** in *at one's tongue's end*; **town** in *town's end and town's people*; **vessel** in *vessel's edge (course, arrival, etc., almost any noun)*; **water** in *water's edge*; **week** in *from week's end to week's end, from one week's end to another's*; **work** in *the work's end*; **year** in *from year's end to year's end, from one year's end to another's*.

**arm**. Hold him *at arm's distance*. Mrs. Woob, *East Lynne*, I, 218<sup>1)</sup>.

Hold death awhile *at the arm's end*. As you like it, II, 6, 10.

He is a man that one wishes to keep *at arm's length*.

To work *at arm's length* — to work awkwardly or disadvantageously. WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. **arm**.

The right woman never came *within arms' length*. ANON, *Owen*, 2, 265<sup>1)</sup>.

'Wood . . . piled *within arm-reach*. KANE, *Arct. Exp.* II, VII, 79<sup>2)</sup>.

**bed**. He stood *at the bed's foot*. Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIX, 314.

She went into the room where Clive was *at the bed's foot*. THACK., *Newc* II, Ch. XLII, 444.

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL; <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

An old . . . chair . . . stood *at the bed's head*. STERNE, *Tristr Shandy*, II. XXIX, 142<sup>1)</sup>.

Advancing *to the bed's head*. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 1a.

**boat.** An exploit to which no little consequence was attached by *the boat's crew*. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. XXII, 242.

He kept *the boat's head* continually towards the monster. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. III, 12b.

**cannon.** She shook her head, and smiled as they smile who face cold steel or *the cannon's mouth* and want to die game. TRUTH, No. 1800, 1677a.

**death.** I brought him *from death's door*. FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*. IV, I (413).

It's not a time to spare when people are *at death's door*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. LXX, 527.

This brought the patient *to death's door*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5335, 8d.

**fingers.** You seem to have the whole Peerage and Baronetage *at your fingers' ends*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XV.

**harm.** People send Children to School to keep them *out of Harm's way*. STEELE, *Spectator*, XXXVI.

So he was in love, and wished to marry! It was but natural and would keep him *out of harm's way*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXVI, 696.

I might have been kept *out of a deal of harm's way*. *Id.*, Ch. LXIX, 722.

We were fain to take to our boats again and pull *out of harm's way*. *Id.*, Ch. XC, 962.

He wanted her *out of harm's way*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XVI, 68a.

**heart.** Give me that man | That is not passion's slave, and I will wear him | *In my heart's core*. HAMLET, III, 2, 81.

Let us be shy how we ask him to give up his ease or *his heart's desire*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

Here she rummaged *to her heart's delight*. *Id.*, *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*. Ch. VI, 327.

The Protestant Somersetshire yeomen no doubt cheered him *to his heart's content*. FROUDE, *Ld. Beaconsfield*, IV, 61.

Ah me! these Plumstead walks were pleasant enough, if one could have but *heart's ease*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXX, 266.

I will yet have *his heart's blood*, if I go round the world again. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 118b.

Death was due to failure of *the heart's action*. *Times*.

**journey.** They find *their journey's end* too often in a galley, dungeon or torture-chamber. CONAN DOYLE, *Refugees*, 229.

**life.** My whole life I have lived in pleasant thought. | As if *life's business* were a summer mood. WORDSWORTH, *Res. and Ind.*

Would Some One like to have the thing, I wonder, and be reminded of a man whom she knew in *life's prime*. THACK., *Lovel the Wid.*, Ch. II, 25.

There are some few scenes in *life's drama* which even no poet should dare to paint. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXII, 275.

It was better to go and seek out some fair island and there dwell in joy and pleasure till *our lives' end*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. VII, 58b.

It is one of *life's little ironies* that men continually go unwhipped of justice for their great crimes and get smartly trounced for the veriest peccadilloes. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVI, 337b.

These people are tired with *life's struggle*. KATH. BATHURST (*Ninet. Cent.*, No. 392, 690).

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**man-of-war.** Cleveland, with his spy-glass, could see the *man-of-war's men* hoarding by the yards and bowsprit in irresistible numbers. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. XL, 443.

**mind.** HAML. My father! methinks I see my father. — HOR. Where, my lord? — HAML. *In my mind's eye*, Horatio. HAML., I, 2, 185

*In his devouring mind's eye* he pictured to himself every roasting-pig running about with a pudding in his belly. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Book*, XXXII, 351.

**nature.** They spent a large portion of the day *in nature's garb* by the river side. TOM BROWN, I, Ch. IX, 190.

**needle.** The happy thought struck him of getting a piece of horse-hair, doubling it, pushing it through *the needle's eye*. REV. OF REV.

**rope.** George Warrington was at a loss how his cousin had been made so to risk his precious existence (for which, perhaps, *a rope's end* had been a fitting termination). THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXIII, 767.

**sword.** In true English fashion they won their markets *at the sword's point*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 135a.

*By the sword's edge* his life shall be foredone. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, II, III, 348<sup>1)</sup>.

**tongue.** She never has an answer *at her tongue's end*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XI, 86.

**town.** *At the town's end* she met Mr. Balance. G. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, V, 6 (344).

I have been all this time — with Lord Shelburne, who has the squire's house *at the town's end*. SWIFT, *Journ. to Stella*, XXV, 9 June.

*The town's people* repaired to the cliffs. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 142.

**vessel.** It appeared certain that the crew, finding themselves unable either to direct *the vessel's course*, or to relieve her by pumping, had taken to their boats, and left her to her fate. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. VII, 83.

I fear the consequences of *that vessel's arrival* with her crew. *Ib.*, Ch. XXII, 246.

I ran to *the vessel's edge*. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.* Ch. XXXIX, 245.

The official trials, to which great importance is attached owing to *the vessel's* enormous horse-power of 70,000 units, were to have taken place early this month. *Times*, No. 1819, 893c.

**water.** At a distance of some paces from *the water's edge*. RID. HAG., *Mr. Mees. Will*, Ch. VIII, 83.

Lotus-lilies grew thickly by *the water's edge*. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXXIX, 235.

**week.** We did not see a single person *from week's end to week's end*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 120. (Compare: He brought down with him for *the week-end* a bundle of novels to review. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5642, 9a.)

**work.** On starting they have ingeniously found some accommodating short cut, which has brought them without fatigue to *their work's end* in five minutes. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XLVIII, 426.

**year.** This delicate instinct of self-respect keeps some men spruce and spotless *from one year's end to another's*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 17a.

Most of these combinations must be considered as survivals of the Old English idiom.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

Not a few are more or less felt as compounds with the genitive relation but dimly apprehended. In some of them, therefore, the common case occasionally takes the place of the genitive. The same applies more or less to those combinations in which the first element is the name of one of the larger heavenly bodies. (44, Obs. IV; 53b.) See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1999.

When the things denoted by the component parts of the combination are distinctly thought of as separate objects, the genitive is replaced by the prepositional construction.

**bed.** Mr. Glegg advanced to *the foot of the bed* before speaking. G. ELIOT, *MILL*, III, Ch. IV, 202.

Suddenly appearing aware that some one was seated by his side at *the head of the bed*, he turned sharply round and saw his sister. *Ib.*

**harm.** How proud he would be if he could show his young friend a little of London life! — if he could warn rogues off him, and *keep him out of the way of harm*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 168.

**life.** He knew that he was acting against *the recognised principles of his life*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXVII, 226.

**needle.** It is easier for a camel to go through *the eye of a needle* than for a rich man to enter into the Kingdom of God. *Matth.*, XIX, 24.

**sword.** The captives were driven into the cell *at the point of the sword*. MAC., *Clive*, (513b).

**tongue.** I saw the words on *the tip of his tongue* before Miss Jenkyns had finished her sentence. *Mrs. Gask.*, *Cranf.* Ch. I, 22.

17. Sometimes it appears to be the noun modified which favours the use of the genitive. This is shown by the frequency of the head-word being represented by *edge* and *end* or by the name of a measure, as may be observed in the above quotations, and especially by the fact that the genitive of all kinds of nouns may modify *sake* (2a).

*For heaven's sake* let me hear the worst of it. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXVIII, 242.

"Then *for God's sake*", he answer'd, "both our sakes, | So you will wed me, let it be at once. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 505.

There was no persecution *for opinion's sake*. T. W. HIGGINSON, *Hist. U. S.*, IX, 66<sup>1)</sup>.

He never loved combat *for combat's sake*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXX, 345a.

I continue to take an interest in him *for old sake's sake* as they say. STEVENSON, *Dr. Jekyll*, 17<sup>1)</sup>.

Ellen and I were once more together in her boat, though Dick, *for fairness' sake*, was for having me in his. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. XXVIII, 210.

It must be observed that the use of the genitive in connection with *sake* is now more or less archaic, being usual only in certain combinations, such as *for God's sake*, *for Heaven's sake*, *for goodness' sake*, *for old sake's sake* (= for the sake of old friendship). But



it would hardly do to substitute the genitive for the prepositional construction in:

*For the sake of her money* I was prostituting my honour. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXIII, 360.

It became necessary for him to exert himself *for the sake of the family*. J. PAYN, *Some Lit. Rec.*, 61).

Note. Thus also *every* standing before the noun modified causes a distinct predilection for the genitive.

In almshouse, hospital and jail, in *misery's every refuge*, he left his blessing. *Christm. Car.*

When the head-word is modified by *own*, the genitive is practically obligatory. (39, Obs. I.)

It was *the man's own fault*. OSCAR WILDE, *The Pict. of Dor. Gray*, Ch. XVIII, 260.

18. Obs. I. In the following quotations drawn from ordinary prose the use of the genitive is more or less at variance with ordinary practice:

Did not we say, at *our tale's commencement*, that all stories were old. THACK., *Newc.* I, Ch. XX, 215.

Failure in any of these arrangements endangers a *newspaper's stability*. *Good Words* for 1885.

He was ushered into a *London house's library*. G. MEREDITH, *Lord Ormont*, Ch. V, 67.

Mr. Cunard was on board enjoying quietly *his ship's success*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XX, 338.

When they came to *the bight's mouth* [etc.]. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 135*b*.

They saw the billows break here and there off *the bay's mouth*. *Ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 135*b*.

We should not have seen *the House of Commons' supremacy* in taxation challenged in form and in theory as in fact. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5167, *Ib.*

While the Lords have been engaged with the Budget, *the Commons' Week* has been one of considerable industry. *Ib.*, 2*a*.

Well-meaning legislators would do well to think more of the present, and concentrate their forces on the hostile powers which are still endeavouring to thwart *the Act's chief end*. *Ib.*, 5642, 4*c*.

At the bottom of *the kite's stem* is another line terminating in a tangle of large spider's web. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3777, 393.

- II. In the higher elevated style, especially in verse, the use of the genitive is often found extended to any noun, to impart dignity to the discourse or to meet the requirements of metre and rhyme.

What! leave the lofty Latian strain, | Her stately prose, *her verse's* charms. SCOTT, *Marm.*, VI, *Introd.*, vi.

Calf-love is a passion most people scorn, | Who've loved and outlived *life and love's young morn*. | But there's a calf-love too common by half, | And that is the love of the Golden Calf. PUNCH.

It is not the great bloodhounds and greyhounds that bark at *misfortune's heels*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. II, 32.

## Genitive of Agency or Subjective Genitive.

19. a) With the names of persons, whether common nouns or proper names, the genitive of agency is much more common than its prepositional equivalent, when the noun modified distinctly expresses an action or a state, i. e. when it is a gerund or an equivalent form. The verbal nature of the head-word may be made distinctly apparent by the presence of objects or adverbial adjuncts, and it is these latter which often practically preclude the use of the prepositional construction (26, c).

i. \* Will you have a husband of *your friends' choosing*. SHER., Riv., 1, 2.  
He brought up a liberal supply of claret for *the company's drinking*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVI, 163.

*My girl's singing* after that little odious governess's is unbearable. Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIX, 196.

Paul was quite alarmed at *Mr. Feeder's yawning*. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 104.

*Mr. Barkis's wooing* was altogether of a peculiar kind. Id., Cop., Ch. X, 72.

That's *Dr. Gwynne's doing*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLVII, 421.

\*\* Lady Catherine continued her remarks on *Elizabeth's performance*. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XXXI, 176.

Mrs. Gardiner then rallied her niece on *Wickham's desertion*. Ib., Ch. XXXVII, 154.

A priest rose and renewed an oration which *Hereward's entrance* had interrupted. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. IV, 33b.

\*\*\* Mr. Slope had spoken of *Mrs. Proudie's interference in diocesan matters*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXV, 209.

- ii. We could never listen for a quarter of an hour to *the speaking of Sir James*, without feeling that there was a constant effort, a tug up hill. MAC., Rev., 311b.

He was destroyed by Mercury at *the bidding of Zeus*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5329, 5a.

For illustrative quotations see also Ch. III, 17, and especially Ch. XIX.

Note. Sometimes the prepositional construction may have been preferred on account of the modifier being a plural (12, d):

*After the withdrawal of the servants* Pen said to the vicar of Tinkleton. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXVIII, 308.

He got a scolding from the bishop in *the hearing of the servants*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XVI, 418.

- b) With nouns that do not indicate persons the prepositional construction is the ordinary one:

His ears were deafened by *the thundering of the water*. Christm. Car.  
The only sound heard in the stillness was *the hopping of the canary* up and down the perches of its prison. HARDY <sup>1)</sup>.

<sup>1)</sup> GÜNTH., Man., § 614.

*The sullen murmur of the bees* ... seemed to make the stillness more oppressive. OSCAR WILDE, *The Pict. of Dor. Gray*, Ch. I, 7.

In 1865 the sale (sc. of the Danish West Indian possession) was frustrated, when on the point of completion, by *the refusal of the United States Senate* to ratify the treaty. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5613, 2b.

### Objective Genitive.

20. The objective genitive is unusual, apparently owing to the reluctance which is generally felt to express the notion of subjection to an action by genitive inflection.

The objective genitive is not, however, so unusual as is often believed. This comparative frequency may be due to the fact that the objective relation is sometimes mixed with the relation of possession understood in its widest sense (9). Thus such combinations as *Marley's funeral*, *the king's accommodation*, *the lady's amusement* may also be interpreted: *the funeral which Marley had*, *the accommodation which the king had*, *the amusement which that lady had*. These and similar combinations may favour the use of others, such as *Rizzio's assassination*, *Eleanor's banishment*, *her daughter's loss* etc. where the relation of possession cannot be thought of.

It must also be borne in mind that, according to a generally observed principle in the matter of word-order (Ch. VIII, 2, a), post-position of the modifying element, as in *the punishment of the boy*, has the effect of throwing that element into relief, which may be foreign to the speaker's or writer's intention. It may, accordingly, be supposed that the desire of giving prominence to the element modified, will sometimes lead to the use of the genitive construction.

Objective genitives are almost strictly confined to the names of persons, or of animals or things thought of as persons.

They are found before gerunds, nouns of action, and agent-nouns. As to gerunds, the two factors mentioned above seem to operate with the least potency. They make their influence more powerfully felt when the head-word is a noun of action, but in the case of agent-nouns they almost entirely counteract the reluctance referred to above. Thus there is nothing strange in *my father's defenders*, *patrons*, *persecutors*, *supporters*, but *my father's defence*, *patronage*, *persecution*, *support* are more or less incongruous, if they are meant to denote the defence, patronage, persecution or support enjoyed or suffered by my father. It follows then that objective genitives are least common before gerunds, rather usual before nouns of action, while before agent-nouns they are as common as ordinary genitives of possession.

It stands to reason that the objective genitive is avoided when it might give rise to misunderstanding. Thus *God's love* being mostly apprehended as a subjective genitive, it would hardly do to use the same expression to denote an objective relation. It may here also be observed that *the love of God*, perhaps, owing to its frequent liturgical use is often understood as a substitute for a subjective genitive: *The grace of our Lord Jesus Christ, and the love of God, and the fellowship of the Holy Ghost, be with us all evermore.* LITANY (Cor. B, XIII).

In the following quotations those of the first group have a gerund as the head-word of an objective genitive, those of the second a noun of action.

- i. \* **christening**. I must present your friend with some little token, on the occasion of *Paul's christening*. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. V, 34.  
On the occasion of *Dora's christening* they had expressed their opinion in writing. *Id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 278*b*.  
**drilling**. A boy's *drilling* in Latin and Greek is insisted on. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 10*a*.  
\* **crowning**. The *crowning* of King George V took place under peculiarly auspicious circumstances.
- ii. \* **abandonment**. Better avoid the friction and odium of causing *the Bill's abandonment* now, and then when we come into power, we will repeal it. *Sat. Rev.* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5625, 16*c*).  
**accommodation**. Some hasty preparations had been made for *the King's accommodation*. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 360.  
**amusement**. He little dreamt that had all his intentions with reference to Mrs. Bold been known to the signora, it would only have added zest to *that lady's amusement*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXVII, 228.  
**appointment**. She wouldn't have Mr. *Quiverful's promised appointment* cozened away by the treachery of Mr. Slope. *Ib.*, Ch. XXVI, 222.  
*Sir John French's appointment* to succeed Sir William Nicholson as Aide-de-Camp General to the King comes in the natural sequence of things. *Truth*, No. 1802, 75*b*.  
**assassination**. Even the story of *Rizzio's assassination* presented no ideas to this emissary of commerce. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Intr. 10.  
**banishment**. To the one it appeared as though he were triumphing at *Eleanor's banishment*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXIV, 298.  
**discomfiture**. The idea of Mr. Slope's *discomfiture* formed no small part of the archdeacon's pleasure. *Ib.*, Ch. XLVII, 421.  
**dread**. The Saxons called him the whale's bane, *the seal's dread*. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. II, 21*a*.  
**execution**. A day or two after *Amonius's execution*. *Id.*, *Hyp.*, Ch. XX, 105*a*.  
*Mr. Doughty's famous trial and execution*. *Id.*, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. V, 41*b*.  
**expulsion**. She should not have expressed the idea that her order for Mr. Slope's *expulsion* could be treated otherwise than by immediate obedience. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXVI, 218.  
**loss**. It was *Jemina's* opinion that if anything could console Mrs. Birch for *her daughter's loss*, it would be that pious and eloquent composition in which Miss Pinkerton announced the event. *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 3.  
Nor should I have mentioned *the child's loss* at all, but that even that loss was a means of great wordly blessing to us. *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 165.  
The feeling of *Emily's loss* does not diminish as time wears on. *Mrs. GASK.* *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 286.  
No tears were shed for *her mother's loss*. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXVI, 62.  
His faculties were benumbed, and not even pain, the pain of *Ewan's loss*, could yet penetrate the dead blank that lay between him and a full consciousness of the awful event. *HALL CAINE*, *Deemster*, Ch. XXVII, 193.  
**murder**. The army is giving no thought to anything else than crushing the tyrant and avenging *Gordon's murder*. *Times*.



**preferment.** He (sc. Mr. Arabin) had not as yet seen Mr. Harding *since* Eleanor had accepted him, nor had he seen him since he had learnt *his future father-in-law's preferment*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. LII, 454.

**punishment.** Not intending to reprove *Maggie's punishment*. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. V, 30.

**rehabilitation.** He has nobly devoted his life to *his brother's rehabilitation*. Times.

**robbery.** In What Lady Glenmire had said about Mr. Hoggins's *robbery*, we had a specimen of what people came to, if they gave way to such a weakness. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XI, 208.

**\*\* adoption.** The result was his marriage and *the adoption of the new Mrs. Acland's son*. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. II, 33.

**appointment.** She sent Mrs. Quiverful home with an assurance that . . . *the appointment of Mr. Quiverful* should be insisted on. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXVI, 223.

**loss.** She could not bear *the loss of her lover*. Ib., Ch. XXVIII, 228.

The efforts of the Malcontent nobles, the religious discord, the consummate ability, both political and military of Parma, all combined with *the lamentable loss of William the Silent* to separate for ever the southern and Catholic provinces from the northern confederacy. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 897b.

**treatment.** *The high-handed treatment of the Prince* was held by his (sc. Lord Ormont's) advocates to be justified by the provocation and the result. G. MEREDITH, Lord Ormont, Ch. II, 25.

21. Obs. I. Instances of the objective genitive, also of the names of things, are quite frequent in SHAKESPEARE.

Every one did hear | Thy praises in *his kingdom's great defence*. Mac b., I, 5, 98.

He laboured in *his country's wreck*. Ib., I, 5, 114.

Henry the Seventh succeeding, | truly pitying | *My father's loss* like a most royal prince | Restor'd me to my honours. Henry VIII, II, 1, 113.

- II. Such words as *likeness*, *picture*, *portrait* may be preceded by a genitive denoting the person (or thing) represented, the combination forming a kind of objective genitive.

**effigy.** I was staring at *my father's effigy*. RID. HAG., The Brethren, Ch. II, 18.

**picture.** On the receipt of *my mother's picture*. COWPER.

The medallion with *your mother's picture* and yours, lies always on my heart. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 26.

I want you to explain to me why you won't exhibit *Dorian Gray's picture*. OSC. WILDE, Pict. of Dor. Gray, Ch. I, 12.

**portrait.** "How many portraits have you painted since last summer, Crowdie?" — "Four, I think — and two I'm doing now, besides *Miss Lauderdale's*". MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. X, 184.

**statue.** *Achilles' statue* is just out of sight round a corner. Westm. Gaz., No. 5607, 8c.

Compare with this: *the picture of Dorian Gray*. OSCAR WILDE. *The oil painting of Bowster and Miss Bowster*. MISS BRAD., My First Happy Christm.

In the centre of the room . . . stood the *full-length portrait of a young man*. OSCAR WILDE, *Pict. of Dor. Gray*, Ch. I, 8.

- III. In *a stone's throw*, which has come to be used as the name of a measure, the objective genitive is fixed. See, however, 23, Obs. V.

- IV. Sometimes it appears to be a prepositional object to which the genitive corresponds.

He had absolutely taken that same Mr. Arabin into his confidence with reference to his dread of *Mr. Slope's alliance*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. LII, 442 (= *alliance with Mr. Slope*.)

### Genitive of Measure.

22. The genitive of measure is used in expressing:

- a) an extent of length, breadth, height, depth, space, etc.

The lowest gallery appeared in a parallel of less than *a hundred yards' distance* from the height where I stood. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, III, Ch. I (165a). (Compare: It lay nearly *twenty miles distant* from Yarlshof. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. III, 31.)

The grisly priest, with murmuring prayer, | A slender crosslet form'd with care. | *A cubit's length* in measure due. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, viii.

Onward she came, the large black hulk seeming larger at *every fathoms' length*. Id., *Pirate*, Ch. VII, 83

This house stood but little more than *three miles' distance* from Stratford. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 266.

- b) a length of time, duration, etc.:

We had good winds from the east, though soft and weak, for *five months' space* and more. BACON, *New Atlantis* (269).

In *six weeks' time* I finished a sort of Indian canoe. SWIFT, *Gulliver's Trav.*, IV; Ch. X (211a).

In *three days' time* he was able to sit in an easy chair. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XII, 27a

They were still like lovers, this husband and wife of *twenty-six years' standing*. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. XXIII, 209.

The acquaintance of the two was not of *a few weeks' standing*. II. Lond. News.

An interview of *three hours' duration*. Times.

- c) the magnitude of a weight.

(He) Gave them a chain of *twelve marks' weight*, | All as he lighted down. SCOTT, *Marm.*, I, ii.

*Twenty-five pounds' weight* of biltong. RID. HAG., *King Sol. Mines*, 68.

- d) the magnitude of a worth or value.

I had not *three farthings' worth* of business in the world. BURNS, *Letter to Dr. Moore*.

He had chosen a shawl of about *thirty shillings' value*. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 242.

Buy a *shilling's worth* of stamps. WALT. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's I*, Ch. VI, 85.

e) the magnitude of the carrying capacity of a ship.

Four caravels only were furnished for the expedition, the largest of which did not exceed *seventy tons' burden*. PRESCOTT, *Hist. of the Reign of Ferd. and Isab.*

23. Obs. 1. As like can only be measured by like, the names of measures ought, strictly speaking to be followed by the names of the abstractions that are measured, i. e. respectively by such words as *distance*, *time*, *weight*, *worth*, *burden*, or their synonyms. This is actually the case in all the quotations given above. As a matter of fact these words are, however, mostly understood: *a moment's time* ( $\alpha$ ) becomes *a moment* ( $\beta$ ).

Sometimes the name of the measure is put in the common case, partitive *of* being placed before the name of the abstraction: *a moment's time* becomes *a moment of time* ( $\gamma$ ). This construction is infrequent.

In some cases the name of the abstraction is followed by descriptive *of* (MURRAY, s. v. *of*, 38) + the name of the matter measured: *a moment's pause of complete silence* ( $\delta$ ). In such a combination the name of the abstraction is mostly thrown out, with the result that the genitive is replaced by the common case: *a moment's pause of complete silence* becomes *a moment of complete silence* ( $\epsilon$ ).

This latter construction admits of two modifications: it may be changed into one with a genitive: *a moment's complete silence* ( $\zeta$ ); the word modified and the modifying word may change functions: *a complete silence of a moment* ( $\eta$ ), this last construction being also found with the name of the abstraction as the head-word: *a space of five minutes*.

The different constructions here described do not occur with equal frequency, nor are they found with regard to all the different measures mentioned above. Construction ( $\beta$ ) is, of course, a usual one with all of them and does not, therefore, require any illustration.

a) With the names of measures of length etc. constructions ( $\epsilon$ ) and ( $\eta$ ) are the ordinary ones.

- i. To give Martin Lightfoot *a yard of law* was never to come up with him again. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 12b.

The sight of the *miles and miles of houses* all round made her miserable. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXVII, 250. It was *a good four miles of walk*. CON. DOYLE, *Rodney Stone*, I, Ch. III, 66.

The viceroy has sanctioned the construction of *550 miles of railway*. *Times*.

- ii. At *a distance of some paces* from the water's edge. RID. HAG., *Mr. Mees. Will*, Ch. VIII, 83.

When the name of the abstraction is understood, the descriptive noun sometimes stands by way of apposition after the name of the unit.

Another said there was *four foot water*. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 10.

b) With the nouns denoting a length of time all the above constructions are possible. Construction (•) is rather unusual. Construction (δ) occurs especially when the abstraction is denoted by such words as *pause* or *interval*. Constructions (ε) and (ζ) are very frequent. Construction (η), also quite common, is sometimes replaced by one with the preposition *for*, in which the prepositional word-group is, of course, an adverbial adjunct. Some quotations illustrating the construction (θ) instanced by *a space of five minutes* (see preceding page), are given below under vi. For illustration of construction (α) see 22, b.

- i. *A moment of time* will make us unhappy for ever. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, II. There can be no harm in mentioning the matter now after *twenty years' lapse of time*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 130.  
He inquired for Rummer and the cold in his nose, told Mrs. Rummer a riddle, asked Miss Rummer when she would be ready to marry him, and paid his compliments to Miss Brett, the other young lady in the bar, all in *a minute of time*. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 42.
- ii. There was *a moment's pause of complete silence*. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 40.
- iii. Accept my thanks for *some hours of pleasant reading*. MRS. GASKELL, *Life of Ch. Brontë*.  
She begged for *an extra week of holiday*. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 45.  
To such a temper had *eighteen years of misgovernment* brought the most loyal Parliament that had ever met. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. II, 232.  
That would have spared me *eight years of misery*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. VII, 62b.  
After *a night of tossing* he started for Bideford. Ib., Ch. XIV, 112b.  
*Three hours of driving* brought us back to Ballarat. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. VIII, 116.  
Still it was something to be out in the open air, to get *a few minutes of leisure*. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXIV, 218.  
To-night there was *a moment of calm*. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 261.
- iv. Peggotty and Mr. Barkis were going to make *a day's holiday* together. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. X, 72b.  
During *my month's holiday* she was particularly pleased with me. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 2.  
*A couple of hours' brainwork*. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 76.  
Dick Boyce got *three months' imprisonment*. Ib., I, 95.  
*An hour's walking* would have brought me back to Essendean. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, 17.  
Workers just set free from *the day's toil*. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXVII, 250.  
He could not bear the thought of *a day's separation* from her. II. Mag.  
*Thirty-five years' world-wide reputation*. Times.  
This is what we shall all feel when in our time we are summoned to render an account of *our life's stewardship*. Rev. of Rev., CXCv, 226.  
Yokohama is *fifteen days' steaming* from San Francisco. Ib., CCxII, 113b.
- v. "I met with a man I haven't seen for years," he said after *a silence of some minutes*. MRS. ALEXANDER, *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 25.
- vi. We sailed from Peru where we had continued for *the space of one whole year*. BACON, *New Atlantis*, (269).  
My master allowed me *the space of two months* to finish my boat. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. X (210b).  
This unique and momentous change, completed, so far as one dialect is concerned, in *a space of two centuries*, evidently requires to be accounted for. BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 48.



vii. There was *silence for a few minutes*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXI, 237b.

There was *a fight for four hours*. *Times*.

In such a sentence as *John had but two hours the start of them* (THACK., *Henry Esme.*, I, Ch. V, 46) the word-group *two hours* is rather adverbial than adnominal.

- c) The words denoting a weight are ordinarily found in construction (e): *three pounds of sugar*. Compare, however, the construction used in: The floating masses are sometimes from *sixty to two hundred and twenty-five pounds in weight*. WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. *ambergris*.
- d) A more varied practice may be observed with regard to nouns denoting a measure of worth or value.

Very frequent are construction (a) and (b) with the noun *worth* as the head-word, in the latter with the name of a commodity in the descriptive word-group: *a good shilling's worth*, *a shilling's worth of tobacco*. When the noun in the descriptive word-group is not the name of a commodity, *worth* is suppressed; i. e. construction (c): *a hundred pounds of debts*, or construction (η): *a debt of a hundred pounds* is used, or the descriptive noun is placed by way of apposition after the name of the money-unit: *a hundred pounds expense*. In this last construction the apposition may be regarded as a substitute for the genitive (23, Obs. IV, d). Only the three last constructions are here illustrated.

- i. He had *1000 l. of debts*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 121.

Brough alone is worth *half a million of money*. *Id.*, Ch. VII, 80 (million = million pounds.)

She brought me her *£750 l. of savings*. *Id.*, *Ving.*, Ch. LXXXIV, 893.

- ii. *A reward of 25 pounds* is offered to whoever shall discover the offender.

- iii. He had never been at *one shilling expense* to furnish him with food. SMOLLETT, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. III, 19.

Thirty pounds and twenty-five guineas a year make *fifty-six pounds five shillings English money*. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. XI.

*Three thousand two hundred loose cash*. *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 58. (*pounds* is understood.)

Mr. Haldane held out hopes of *five millions reduction*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVII, 228b. (million = million pounds.)

In the following quotation *for* stands as a substitute for the conjunction *as* in the function described in Ch. VI, 15.

Whosoever will apprehend the traitor Thomas Wyatt shall have *a hundred pounds for reward*. TEN., *Queen Mary*, II, 3.

The names of the money-units *penny*, *shilling* and *pound* when joined to *worth* are sometimes placed in the common case instead of the genitive. The two nouns are sometimes made to form a kind of compound which may take the mark of the plural. For the exposition of the ordinary constructions with *worth* see Ch. IV, 10, Obs. II. Compare also Ch. XXV, 29, a, 3.

Construction (a) and (d) are frequent enough with the noun *value* respectively as the head-word or as part of the modifying word-group:

- i. a shawl of *thirty shillings' value*.

- ii. Send stamps to *value of sixpence*. *II. Lond. News*.

The money and jewels to the *value of several hundred thousand pounds* Mos. Rotsch. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 52).

More frequent still is the construction (*i*) with the noun *value* understood: *a shawl of thirty shillings*.

Compare also *money's worth* (= Dutch: waar voor (zijn) geld) with *money value* (= Dutch: geldswaarde).

i. What need you care, if you have your *money's worth*. SHER., School for Scand., III, 3, (402).

The public has a shrewd idea that it does not get its *money's worth*. Rev. of Rev., CCXI, 12*b*.

ii. Old hoards were taken out and examined as to their *money value*. Mrs. GASKELL, Cranford, Ch. XIV, 273.

There is more depending upon this ring than its mere *money value*. DEIGHTON, Note to Merch. of Ven., IV, 1, 426.

c) The noun *burden* is often understood after *ton*.

A stout ship of *three hundred ton*. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., I, Ch. I, (163*a*).

II. Word-groups containing the name of a measure of time are often used in describing the magnitude of other matters, varying as to the length of a period.

Who knows what *a year or two's Latin* may do for him? GOLDSM., She Stoops to Conquer, I.

My faculties have wrought *a day's task* and earned *a day's wages*. Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 311.

Not without *three months' salary*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 15.

He has a right to claim *six years' arrears*. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 470.

The walk was a solitary walk, . . . but *a minute or two's distance* from his lodgings. H. J. BYRON, Our Boys.

He owed me *fifteen months' rent*. MISS BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret., II, Ch. II, 35.

Observe that in stating a distance in a measure of time it is the rule to mention the mode of locomotion: thus *half-an-hour's walk* (or *ride*, etc.) *from the station*, etc., not *half-an-hour from the station*, etc.

In the following quotation the ordinary practice is not observed:

He (sc. Bismarck) had satisfied himself during his walk that our outposts were only *three quarters of an hour* from the town. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 479, 33*b*.

III. The action or state whose duration is to be described, is sometimes but dimly present to the speaker's mind, and, consequently, not indicated by a special word.

We were all off at *an hour's warning*. SHER., Riv., I, 1.

He was always ready to march at *a few hours' notice*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXI, 339.

A beard of *three weeks' date*. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. I, 4*a*.

You cannot at *a moment's notice* put a stop to all those precautions. Times. Compare: I have already said that when you begin preparations, you cannot stop them *in a moment*. Ib.

IV. The common-case form is sometimes used instead of the genitive.

a) This practice is most common when the name of the measure is a plural, the word *feet* included.

i. Over against this temple, on the other side of the great highway, at *twenty feet distance* there was a turret at least five feet high. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., I, Ch. I, (118*a*).

Norna took her seat on a stone about *three feet distance*. SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. X, 113.

He built a house of *three stories height*. Id., Guy Mannering, Ch. I.

- A much heavier charge of powder is necessary to hit a target a mile off than at a *hundred yards distance*. Rev. of Rev., CXCV, 228b.
- ii. Any attempt to carry out this ideal would have involved another *ten or fifteen years delay*. SWEET, Hist. of Eng. Sounds, Pref., 11.
  - iii. He's *four pounds weight*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXII, 169b.  
The vast tobacco warehouses with their *millions of pounds weight* of smoke-producing material. London and its Environs.<sup>1)</sup>
  - iv. In another locker I found about *thirty-six pounds value* in money. DEFOE, Rob. Crusoe (v. D. VOORT, Eng. Reading-book, 43).
- b) The common-case form is only exceptionally used when the name of the measure is a singular, perhaps excepting *inch*, which owing to the final sibilant may ordinarily reject the mark of the genitive.
- i. I saw this vast body descending almost to a parallel with me, at less than *an English mile distance*. SWIFT, Gulliver's Travels, III, Ch. I, (164b).  
He passed them (sc. these remonstrances) on to the editor with . . . a cheerful admonition not to swerve by *an inch breadth* from the course he was then pursuing. Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 4b.
  - ii. She might as well have asked him to carry *a ton weight* on his back. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. IX, 240.
- c) The numeral *more* placed after the name of the measure seems to entail the dropping of the mark of the genitive.
- The oldest clerk had not *six months more standing* in it. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 65.
- d) The nouns denoting a measure of money have the mark of the genitive only when the noun modified is *worth* or *value*. When either of these nouns is absent, the common case seems to be regularly used. This appears to be the case also when the name of the money-unit (*pound*) is suppressed. (23, Obs. I, d.)
- i. She has *fifteen hundred pounds a year jointure*. WYCH., Plain Dealer, I, 1.  
He had never been at *one shilling expense* to furnish him with food, raiment, books or other necessities. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. III, 19.  
Thirty pounds and twenty-five guineas a year make *fifty-six pounds five shillings English money*. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XI, (298).  
*A hundred and fifty guineas reward*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 52.  
I became head-clerk with *400 l. a year salary*. Ib., Ch. X, 127.  
Under no circumstances shall we ever put *a penny tax* on wool. Westm. Gaz.
  - ii. *Four hundred a year jointure*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 58.  
*Three thousand two hundred loose cash*. Ib.  
Mr. Haldane held out hopes of *five millions reduction*. Rev. of Rev., CCVII, 228b.
- e) The use of the singular common case instead of the plural genitive, as in the following quotation, is more or less vulgar.
- Each bar (of silver) between *a thirty and forty pound weight*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. I, 2a.
- V. Sometimes the genitive forms a kind of compound with the following noun, the compound in its turn being used as the name of a measure. The genitive may be variously related to its head-word. (16, d; 21, Obs. III.) Especially the following compounds are in frequent use:

<sup>1)</sup> ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 18

*hair's-breadth*, *hand's-breadth*, *arm's-length*, *stone's-throw*, *hand's-touch*, *day's-journey*, *day's-sail*. In some of these the common-case form occasionally varies with the genitive.

**arm's-length.** At last he was within an *arm's-length* of the sinking child. IL. MAG.

With the newspaper before him at *arm's length*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 56.

**day's journey.** Alexandria was still *several days' journey* below him. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. III, 12b.

It is a *good two days' journey*. JEROME, *Diary of a Pilgr.*, 12.

There are districts in France now where a church is not to be seen in a *day's journey*. CON. DOYLE, *Ref.*, 222.

**day's ride.** The greatest man within a *day's ride* of Rouen. *Ib.*, 303.

**day's sail.** Asgard was only *ten days' sail* up. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. III, 14b.

**hair('s)-breadth.** i. Not a *hair's-breadth* beyond. G. ELIOT, *Middlemarch*, Ch. XXXVI, 260.

She next dusted and arranged the room, which was dusted and arranged to a *hair's breadth* already. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XIV, 100b.

ii. Drawing herself up so as not to lose *one hair-breadth* of her uncommon height. SCOTT, *Guy Mannering*, 1)

**hand('s)-breadth.** i. The man's face was within a *hand's-breadth* of her own. CON. DOYLE, *Ref.*, 207.

ii. Behold, thou hast made my days as *an handbreadth*. Psalm XXXIX, 5. I saw the library casement open a *hand-breadth*. JANE EYRE, Ch. XXIII, 302. The good sword stood a *hand-breadth* out | Behind the Tuscan's head. MACAULAY, *Lays*, Horatius, XLV.

**hand's-span.** Seventeen years is but a *hand's-span* in the history of literature. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5071, 4c.

**hand('s)-touch.** i. He had the woman he loved within *hand's touch* of him. CON. DOYLE, *Ref.*, 303.

ii. I could make out no sound when they are were within *hand-touch* of me. *Ib.*, 325.

**stone('s)-throw(-cast).** i. Rebecca and her husband were but a *few stones' throw* of the lodging which the invalid Miss Crawley occupied. VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. XXV, 265.

ii. About a *stone-cast* from the wall | A sluice with blacken'd waters slept. TEN., *Mariana*, IV.

Within a *stone-throw* of the hard white beach. *Westm. Gaz.*

Compare also: A *bow-shot* from her bower-eaves. TEN., *Lady of Shalott*, III, 1.

### Genitive of Apposition or Specializing.

24. a) The genitive of apposition or specializing is uncommon and confined to the higher literary language, being almost exclusively found in poetry. In the majority of cases the noun is a proper name. In Dutch the genitive of apposition or specializing is

1) MURRAY.



hardly used except when the head-word is a plural, as in *De Republiek der Vereenigde Staten*. See also Ch. IV, 16, and compare ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 94—95.

i. In *Britain's Isle*, no matter where, | An ancient pile of buildings stands.

GRAY, *A Long Story*, I.

No want of timber then was felt or fear'd | In *Albion's happy isle*. COWPER, *Task*, I, 58.

On Barnard's towers and *Tees's stream* She (sc. the moon) changes as a guilty dream. SCOTT, *Rokeby*, I, 1.

Where the Trosach's defile | Opens on *the Katrine's lake and isle*. Id., *Lady*, VI, XIX.

Day set on Norham's castled steep | And *Tweed's fair river*, broad and deep | And *Cheviot's mountain* lone. Id., *Marm.*, I, 1.

Oh I'm the chief of *Ulva's isle*, | And this Lord Ullin's daughter. CAMPBELL, *Each flag lay still*, | So did the leaves on *Cithæron's hill*. BYRON, *Siege of Cor.*, XIX.

The azure calm of *Mæri's Lake*. MOORE, *Par. and the Peri*.

ii. Macbeth does murder sleep, — the innocent sleep; . . . | Chief nourisher in *life's feast*. Macb., II, 2, 39.

For he attains that rival's fame | With *treason's charge*. SCOTT, *Marm.*, II, VIII.

For not *Mimosa's tender tree* | Shrinks sooner from the touch than he. Ib., IV, *Introd.* VII.

Safe and free from magic power | Blushing like *the rose's flower* | Opening to the day. Id. *Brid. of Triethmain*, III, XXXIX.

And indeed he seems to me | Scarce other than *my king's ideal knight*. TEN., Id. of the King, *Ded.* 6.

The horse was worth a *kingdom's gift*. W. MOORE, *Earthly Par.* The Proud King, 87b.

Also the genitives in the following quotations may be considered as instances of the appositional or specializing genitive:

'T was after dread *Pultowa's day*. BYRON, *Mazeppa*, I.

Within a window'd niche of that high hall | Sate *Brunswick's fated chieftain*. Id., *Childe Har.*, III, XXIII.

This applies more or less also to the genitives in:

Far ran the naked moon across | *The houseless ocean's heaving field*, | Or flying shone, the silver boss | *Of her own halo's dusky shield*. TEN., *The Voyage*, IV.

Great and manifold were the blessings, . . . which Almighty God . . . bestowed upon us, the people of England, when first he sent *Your Majesty's Royal Person* to rule and reign over us. Author. Vers., *Epistle Dedic.*

To *the Queen's Most Excellent Majesty* this historical dictionary of the English language is by her gracious permission dutifully dedicated by the University of Oxford. MURRAY.

Likewise even to such genitives as are component parts of proper names, as in:

*St. Paul's Cathedral*, *Gray's Inn*, *Hudson's Bay*, etc.

- b) The constructions mostly used instead of the genitive of apposition or specializing, are that of apposition or that with appositional *of*: *the river Tweed* (anciently *the river of Tweed*), *the ideal knight my king*; *the isle of Britain*, *the feast of life*, *the charge of treason*, *the gift of a kingdom*.

Sometimes its ordinary substitute is the common case of an adnominal noun: *the mimosa tree*. For fuller details see Ch. IV, 12 ff.

USE OF THE GENITIVE AND ITS PREPOSITIONAL EQUIVALENT UNDER THE INFLUENCE OF  
CONSIDERATIONS OF SYNTAX, EMPHASIS AND METRE OR RHYTHM.

25. As to the names of persons or of animals or things thought of as persons, one or the other construction is sometimes made obligatory or at least highly preferable by the syntactical connections of either of the two nouns concerned, by the exigencies of emphasis or by the laws of metre or rhythm. These factors are sometimes clashing, but more frequently co-operating to bring about the same effect.

26. The syntactical connections make the genitive:

a) unavoidable when the head-word is followed by an apposition.

Thus it was that Laura Bell became Mrs. Pendennis's daughter. Neither her husband, nor *that gentleman's brother, the Major*, viewed her with favourable eyes. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 90.

He purchased the Whittingehame estate, to which *the Prime Minister's father, James Maitland Balfour* succeeded in 1847. ROB. MACHRAY (*Pall Mall Mag.*) There are some interesting illustrations, including a portrait of *Pitt's mother, Lady Hester Grenville*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5607, 10a.

b) practically obligatory:

1) when the head-word is the object of a verb of requesting.  
Ch. III, 17.

I beg *the court's pardon*. Pickw., Ch. XXXIV.

2) when the head-word is followed by *of* – (pro)noun, whether representing an objective genitive or an apposition, or filling any other grammatical function. It will be observed that Dutch idiom in this case hardly tolerates a genitive-construction, nor its prepositional equivalent either.

He would grumble about *the master's treatment of him*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XII, 144.

We are not going to say a great deal about *Pen's courtship of Miss Fotheringay*. *Id.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. VI, 69.

He accepted very complacently *the town's opinion of him*. *Id.*, Henry Esmond, II, Ch. X, 238.

All the town was indignant at *my lord Duke's unjust treatment of General Webb*. *Id.*, II, Ch. XV, 287.

Sir Miles himself had agreed in *George's view of pursuing quite other than a military career*. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 633.

I was not surprised at *Miss Pole's manner of bridling up*. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 208.

Even Mrs. Jamieson's *approval of her selling tea* had been gained. *Id.*, Ch. XV, 281.

We can only find space for *Napoleon's most interesting summary of Cromwell*, in whom, perhaps, he saw a kindred spirit. *Acad.*, No. 1765, 203b.

In the earlier plays, such as the story of *Abraham's sacrifice of Isaac*, is to be found a preponderance of the pathetic. II *Lond. News*, No. 3698, 344.

Another distinction of the French visit was *the King's opening of the King's way*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCI, 460a.

c) distinctly preferable, although not obligatory:

1) when the adjunct of the head-word begins with another preposition.

His denials only served to confirm *his relatives' opinion regarding his splendid expectations*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 167.

Within a few pages of the end we are made unhappy by *the lady's victory over that poor young sinner Foker*. TROL., Thack., Ch. IV, 111.

(He) thus purposely (ignored) *the archdeacon's hitherto unlimited dominion over the diocese at large*. Id., Barch. Tow., Ch. V, 32.

I was rather vexed and annoyed at *Miss Matty's conduct in taking the note to herself so decidedly*. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIII, 247.

2) when the head-word is modified by a clause.

There are so many of *the bishop's relatives who always bring their own horses*. TROL., Barch. Town., Ch. V, 35.

The malignant Pope was forced to own, that there was a charm in *Addison's talk, which could be found nowhere else*. Mac., Addison, (751a).

3) when the element modified is made up of two or more co-ordinate members.

It depends mainly on *the parson's wife and daughters*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. V, 34.

*Pitt's childhood and early life* are little known. Westm. Gaz., No. 5607, 9c.

4) when a construction in which the owner is indicated by a non-prepositional object may be given as an actual or theoretical equivalent. Ch. III, 14.

"You shall have it (sc. my assistance)," replied Mr. Snodgrass, clasping *his friend's hand*. Pickw., Ch. II.

Mr. Snodgrass seized *his friend's hand* warmly. Ib.

The tears rolled down *the poor child's face*. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. III, 39.

He squeezed *Foker's hand*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. IV, 50.

She put her card and half-a-crown...into *the man's hand*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXV, 212.

He shook *Mr. Harding's hand* ruthlessly and begged him to be seated. Ib., Ch. XII, 94.

He took *people's money*, more by force than fraud. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XI, 65.

Note. The above syntactical connections, especially those mentioned under 1) and 3), are, however, of no effect when an objective genitive is in question.

Dr. Grantly's proposed visit would have reference to *the reappointment of Mr. Harding to the wardenship of Barchester Hospital*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XVII, 133.

He did not feel any peculiar personal interest in *the appointment of Dr. Proudie to the bishopric*. Ib., Ch. V, 31.

The assassination and burial of the king made a deep impression on the people.

They are sometimes disregarded also when a relation of possession, origin or agency is in question.

*The journey of my daughters to town* was now resolved upon. GOLDS., Vic. From the time when, as a hostage in France, he first discovered *the plan of Philip to plant the Inquisition in the Netherlands* [etc.]. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 899a.

The last chapters in this volume deal with *the relations of Pitt with Catherine of Russia*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5607, 10a.

## 27. The syntactical connections make the prepositional construction

## a) unavoidable:

- 1) when the noun in the modifying element is followed by an adjective or participle that has the value of an undeveloped clause. Thus for *the hats of the women present, the opinion of the man addressed* we could not say *\*the women present's opinion, \*the man addressed's opinion*; nor yet, of course, *\*the women's hats present, \*the man's opinion addressed*.

But there is nothing unusual in the use of the genitive, if the adjective or participle is not felt as an undeveloped clause.

*Fitzroy minor's nursery.* THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VI, 326.

- 2) when the head-word, whether or no modified by an adjective, is preceded by an indefinite article, by a demonstrative, interrogative or indefinite pronoun, or by a numeral; and also when it stands without any modifier beyond an adjective: *a (this, which, some, one) friend (old friend) of Dr. Johnson; friends (old friends) of Dr. Johnson.* (33, 34.)

## b) practically obligatory or, at least, highly preferable:

- 1) when the noun in the modifying element is followed by an adnominal clause, a prepositional adjunct or an apposition.
  - i. Is my young landlord then the nephew of a man whose virtues are so universally known? GOLDS., *Vicar*, Ch. III.  
Harry played so well that he could beat the parson and soon was the equal of Will, who, of course, could beat both the girls. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 159.  
The incapacity of Feversham, who commanded in chief, was notorious. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 173.
  - ii. *The Church of St. Mary of Egypt.* LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. V, 189.
  - iii. Chunda Sahib fell into the hands of the Mahrattas, and was put to death at the instigation probably of his competitor, Mahommed Ali. MAC., *Clive*, (509a).
- 2) when the modifying element consists of two or more co-ordinate members.

In such a frame of mind he proceeded to pay his respects at the palace the second day after the arrival of the bishop and his chaplain. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. V, 31.

Shelley's body was washed ashore on the 19th, and burnt on a pyre in the presence of Byron, Hunt and Trelawney. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 83.

Note. It is hardly necessary to observe that also the genitive is sometimes used in spite of the above connections. 4, a; 4, b, 1. *The Gentleman's Name that met him* was Mr. Wordly Wiseman. BUNYAN, *Pilgr. Progr.*, (149).

On Thursday Lord Selborne complained of Mr. Lloyd George's and Mr. Churchill's combined invective. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5625, 7b.



28. Obs. α) Two or more successive genitives are generally avoided, unless a particular effect, mostly humorous or depreciatory, is intended.

QUEEN. Have you forgot me? — HAML. No, by the rood, not so: | You are the queen, *your husband's brother's wife*. HAML., III, 4, 15.

What can I do for *Dr. Smith's daughter's husband*. SWIFT, JOURN. to Stella, LXI.

This is Madam Lucy, *my master's mistress's maid*. SHER., RIV., I, 1. *Scrooge's niece's sisters*, and all the other ladies, expressed the same opinion. CHRISTM. CAR.

*Captain Boldwig's wife's sister* had married a Marquis. PICKW., CH. XIX.

Whatever is, is right, as the young nobleman sweetly remarked when they put him down in the pension list 'cos his *mother's uncle's wife's grandfather* vunce lit the king's pipe with a portable tinder-box. PICKW., CH. LI, 468.

Can you imagine *Queen Guinevere's lady's maid's lady's maid* being affable to Sir Lancelot. THACK., NEWC., I, CH. VII, 83.

She snapped her fingers in the *Judge's lady's face*. Id., VAN. FAIR, CH. VIII, 82.

But Sam Titmarsh, with a salary of 250 l. . . . was a very different man from Sam the poor clerk, and *the poor clergyman's widow's son*. Id., SAM. TITM., CH. VIII, 88.

- β) Instances of two, or even more periphrases with *of* are common enough.

Passengers are requested to apply to the secretary in case of *incivility of any of the servants of the company*.

*The wife of a clergyman of the Church of England*. THACK. 1)

"What a condition," said the doctor, "for *the son of a clergyman of the Church of England*." TROL., BARCH. TOW., CH. XIX, 149.

Note. No exception is taken to the use of two successive genitives, one individualizing, the other classifying.

*Reeves' artists' colours* can be obtained at Whiteley's. Advertisement.

29. a) The comparative emphasis of the head-word and the noun in the modifying element, which varies according to the prominence of the ideas they indicate have in the speaker's or writer's mind, may cause either the genitive or the prepositional construction to be the more preferable construction.

- i. "There are so many of the bishop's relatives who always bring their own horses." Dr. Grantly promised that due provision for *the relatives' horses* should be made. TROL., BARCH. TOW., CH. V, 35.

He at once saw that open battle against Dr. Grantly and all *Dr. Grantly's adherents* was a necessity of his position. Id., CH. VI, 43.

Such is a very inadequate summary of Dr. Rose's treatment of *Pitt's Home policy*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5607, 10a.

Thus regularly when *the (that or this) + noun* replaces a possessive pronoun, even when the reference is to (an) animal(s).

The Major . . . held out hands to Pen, shook *the lad's passive fingers* gaily and said [etc.] THACK., PEND., CH. VIII, 91.

Thus it was that Laura Bell became Mrs. Pendennis's daughter. Neither her husband, nor *that gentleman's brother*, the Major, viewed her with very favourable eyes. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 90.

With another slight toss and a nod to the postilion, *that individual's white leather breeches* began to jump up and down in the saddle. *THACK.*, *Men's Wives*, Ch. II (325).

You might just as well be angry with the turkey-cock for gobbling at you. It's *the bird's nature*. *TROL.*, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XLIII, 384.

Suddenly from a lumpy tussock of old grass . . . started a hare. Sir Geoffrey put his gun to his shoulder, but there was something in *the animal's grace of movement* that strangely charmed Dorian Gray. *OSCAR WILDE*, *The Pict. of Dor. Gray*, Ch. VIII, 259.

But even if he were to admit to you . . . that a snake may possibly be able to swim, he will still treat as the invention of Munchhausen the notion of a snake catching a fish in *a fish's own element*. *HORACE HUTCHINSON*, *Stranger than Fiction* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5631, 2c).

- ii. Running on in this way, Mr. Tupman's new companion adjusted his dress, or rather *the dress of Mr. Winkle*. *PICKW.*, Ch. II, 13.

And now had I *the pen of a mighty poet*, would, I sing in epic verse the noble wrath of the archdeacon. *TROL.*, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. V, 37.

Some lineaments of the character *of the man* were early discerned in the child. *MAC.*, *Clive*, (498a).

The history *of the successors of Theodosius* bears no small analogy to that *of the successors of Aurungzebe*. *Ib.*, (502a).

Both *the demeanour of Monmouth* and that of Grey, during the journey, filled all observers with surprise. *Id.*, *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 188.

Those who do not think very highly of the poetry *of the pupil* do not, as a rule show much greater enthusiasm for that of the master. *SAINTSB.*, *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II, 75.

April was not worse, even in imports, than *April of last year*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5613, 2b.

- b) But the exigencies of emphasis are not always potent enough to change the genitive into the prepositional construction, and sometimes vice versa.

- i. *Helen's* face looked very pale by the light of the lamp — *the Doctor's* was flushed. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 77.

You stand in *your mother's presence* and call that woman a lady! *Ib.*, I, Ch. VI, 77.

The preacher's immediate object was to preach *Mr. Slope's doctrine*, and not *St. Paul's*. *TROL.*, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. VI, 45.

The features of *Mrs. Stanhope's character* were even less plainly marked than those of her lord. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 62.

Our friends found Dr. Proudie sitting on *the old bishop's chair*. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 32.

- ii. Though he disliked the man, and hated the doctrines, still he was prepared to show respect to *the station of the bishop*. *Ib.*, 31.

30. Obs. The almost invariable subserviency of the head-word to the proper name in the modifying element entails the prevalence of the prepositional construction:

- a) in giving the title of a writer's compositions or artist's works.

i. *The Poetical Works of S. T. Coleridge*.

*The Complete Works of Alfred Lord Tennyson*.

ii. *Swift's Works* (but in the same volume: *The Works of Jonathan Swift, D.D., Dean of St. Patrick's Dublin*).

When such designations occur in other positions, the genitive is common enough, although its analytical equivalent appears to be the usual one:

- i. This edition of *Thackeray's works* is complete in seventeen volumes, arranged, as far as possible, in chronological order. The Oxford Thackeray.
- ii. A complete edition of *the works of Charles Dickens* is now being published... at 6 d. net a volume. Westm. Gaz., No. 5255, 3c.  
*The hitherto unpublished letters of Henry Fielding* ... are of little interest. Ib., No. 5027, 10c.

In the following quotation the prepositional construction is even used in spite of the syntactical connections making the genitive more preferable.

'Its' does not appear in any of the works of *Shakspeare* published during his life-time. MURRAY, s. v. *its*.

β) in speaking of the persons, matters, events etc. connected with sovereigns. MURRAY, s. v. *of*, XIV.

- i. The Scotch Parliament proposed the marriage of "the Maid of Norway" with *the son of Edward the First*. GREEN.<sup>1)</sup>  
in *the reign of George the First* this moderate but ancient inheritance was possessed by Mr. Richard Clive. Mac., Clive, (498a).  
Throughout *the long reign of Aurungzebe* the state ... was hastening to dissolution. Ib., (501b).
- ii. This chapel was fitted up as you see it, in *James the Second's time*. JANE AUSTEN, Mansfield Park, Ch. IX, 89.  
The term (sc. leveller) first arose as the designation of a political party of *Charles I's reign*. MURRAY, s. v. *leveller*.

### 31. The laws of metre or rhythm are responsible for the choice of the construction used in:

- i. All this to season *A brother's dead love*, which she would keep fresh | And lasting in her sad remembrance. Twelfth Night, I, 1, 31. (= *love for a dead brother*.)  
June saw *his father's overthrow*. SCOTT, Marm., IV, xv.  
Doge. Have you long served? — I. BER. So long as to remember *Zara's siege*. BYRON, Mar. Fal., I, 2 (356b).  
From the dark fen *the oxen's low* | Came to her. TEN., Mariana, II.  
But near by is *my asses' stall* | Who on this night bide in the town. W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., The Man born to be king, 42a.
- ii. *The son of Duncan*.<sup>1)</sup> From whom this tyrant holds the due of birth, Lives in the English court. Macb., III, 6, 25.

Note the varied construction in:

And Gareth, a good knight, but therewithal | *Sir Mordred's brother*, and *the child of Lot*. TEN., Lanc. and El., 556.

### Further Observations.

### 32. The genitive and the corresponding *of*-construction sometimes express different ideas. Thus:

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 307.

- a) *the King's English* = standard English, or the English spoken or written by the King; *the English of the King* = the English spoken or written by the King.
- b) *the Lord's Day* = Sunday (Dutch: *de dag des Heeren*); *the Day of the Lord* = the Day of Judgement.

"In the 17th—18th century *Lord's day* (without the article) was "somewhat widely used (not exclusively among Puritans) as an "ordinary name for Sunday. This use seems to be partially retained "by some Nonconformists, expressions like *next Lord's day* appearing "occasionally in announcements of services." MURRAY.

Compare with the above also *the year of our Lord* (= *Anno Domini*), in which, too, the *of*-construction is fixed.

- c) *the horse's master* = the owner of the horse; *the master of the horse* id., but *the Master of the Horse* the officer who has the management of the horses belonging to a sovereign or other exalted personage.
- d) *Nelson's life* the life led by Nelson; *the life of Nelson*  
a) id., b) the history of Nelson's life.

The first construction is occasionally used in the alternative meaning. This part of Newman's story in *Mr. Ward's life* is to an Irishman the most interesting. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 491, 417b.

- e) *the world's end* the uttermost part of the world or globe, *the end of the world* the last moment of this world ( French *fin du monde*).

i. I will go to *the world's end* with you. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. III, 15a.

I would go with him to *the world's end*. MURRAY, s. v. *end*.

ii. What shall be the sign of thy coming, and of *the end of the world*. *Matth.*, XXIV. 3.

Compare with this *the farthest (uttermost) ends of the world*, in which the prepositional construction seems to be fixed.

We should see straggling huts built of wood and covered with thatch, where we now see manufacturing towns and seaports renowned to *the farthest ends of the world*. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 277.

The Catholic Church is still sending forth to *the farthest ends of the world* missionaries as zealous as those who landed in Kent with Augustin. *Id.*, *Popes*, (542a).

33. Sometimes the meaning of the preposition *of* is expressed over again by the genitive inflection of the following noun. This genitive may then be called pleonastic. (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 201.)

The idiom is most common when a relation of possession is indicated, but is by no means confined to this, being often extended to that of origin and agency, in fact to all those numerous shades of notions which are felt as modifications of that of possession.

The pleonastic genitive is natural to the genius of the language when the noun modified by it is preceded by the indefinite article, a demonstrative, interrogative or indefinite pronoun, or by a numeral; and also when it stands without any preceding modifier beyond an adjective:



A (*this, which, some, one*) book (*fine, large, etc. book*) of my brother's;

Books (*fine, large, etc. books*) of my brother's, wine (*excellent, inferior, etc. wine*) of my brother's.

Compare Ch. XXXIII, 23, and see also BEEKMAN, E. S., VIII, and FIJN VAN DRAAT, De Drie Talen, XIV.

a) relation of possession.

- i. He had a scoundrel dog, whom he taught to whine in the most ludicrous manner, and introduced as a *rival of Ichabod's* to instruct her in psalmody. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 357.

He became a *friend of Mr. Wilberforce's*. VAN FAIR, I, Ch. IX, 88.

Mrs. Lambert had been an *early friend of his mother's*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXII, 225.

At last, one day in early May, a letter reached her from a *former friend of her mother's*. HARDY, Tess., II, Ch. XV, 126.

- ii. Stubble and Spooney and the rest indulged in most romantic conjectures regarding *this female correspondent of Osborne's*. VAN FAIR, I, Ch. XIII, 123.

- iii. *Which house of your neighbour's* was burnt down last night?

- iv. There's *no general of Boney's* fit to hold a candle to Wittgenstein. VAN FAIR, I, Ch. XXVIII, 295.

- v. BAKER. I shall want another hapenny. Bread's gone up to-day. BOY. Then give me *one of yesterday's*. PUNCH.

- vi. Some stormy words passed, which ended in the retirement of several of the board. *Friends of Mr. B's* filled up their places. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. X, 121.

Almost all of them, probably, [were] *blood relations of Hereward's, or of King Harold's*, or of each other. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XXIII, 97b. (Note the absence of inflection in *each other*.)

The shouting and yelling which had gained the camp its infelicitous title, were not permitted within *hearing distance of Stumpy's*. BRET HARTE, The Luck of Roaring Camp, 13.

b) relation of origin or agency:

- i. He had a penny too — a *gift of Sowerberry's* after some funeral in which he had acquitted himself more than ordinarily well. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. VIII, 78.

The insinuating Major had actually got a *letter of Miss Rouncey's* in his own pocket-book. THACK., Pend., Ch. X, 111.

This is a *picture of Turner's*. MEIKLEJOHN, The Eng. Lang., 67.  
A *play of Ibsen's*. PUNCH.

- ii. Miss Pole drew herself up at *this remark of Lady Glenmire's*. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XI, 207.

Her trouble was the result of *that intolerable threat of her father's*. MRS. WARD, Marcella, III, 215.

After *that really beautiful speech of your wife's*. LYTTON, Caxtons, XI, Ch. VII, 298.

*These questions of Smithers's* had a good deal to do with the subsequent events narrated in this little history. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IX, 108.

- iii. *Which novel of Dickens's* is your favourite?

- iv. To execute *any caprice or order of her patient's* was her chiefest joy and reward. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XVI, 164.

It was *no fault of the doctors*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyliger. (STOF., HANDL. I, 109.)

- v. After *one or two attempts of the lad's*. THACK., PEND., I, CH. XIII, 137.

We are promised *200 letters of Lamb's*, that have not been included in the most complete editions ever issued. Lit. World.

Knowing it to be Carver's dwelling (or at least suspecting so from *some words of Lorna's*), I was led by curiosity to have a closer look at it. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, CH. XXXVI, 216.

- iv. It's all *nonsense of Crowdie's*. MRS. CRAWF., KATH. LAUD., II, CH. V, 96.

34. Obs. I. Occasionally we meet instances of the pleonastic genitive standing after a noun that is preceded by the definite article.

Since *the youth of the count's* was to-day with my lady, she is much out of quiet. Twelfth Night, II, 3, 143.

In *the golden days of Christ's* the young Hospitallers were wont to have smoking joints of roast meat upon their nightly boards. CH. LAMB, Grace before Meat (PEACOCK, Sel. Ess., 192).

The Sermon on Gunpowder Treason is *the earliest composition of Taylor's* which we possess. EDM. GOSSE, Jeremy Taylor, CH. I, 19. *The battered school-book of Tom's*, which she held on her knees, could give her no fortitude. G. ELIOT, Mill, IV, CH. III, 256.

*The earliest letters of Gray's* which have been preserved are addressed to him there. Life and Poems of Gray (Clarendon Press). A consideration which is in *the spirit of Shelley's*. BRADLEY, Oxford Lectures, 171 (Macm.).

Efforts recently made to assign *the embarrassments of Shakespeare's* to another John Shakespeare of Stratford deserve little attention. SIDNEY LEE<sup>1)</sup>.

- II. The construction is rare and improper after *that* or *those* used as determinatives.

And for his government civil, though he did not attain to *that of Trajan's*. BACON, Advancement of Learning, I, 7, § 6<sup>2)</sup>.

- III. The noun modified is sometimes divided from the modifying word-group by other elements of the sentence.

I am much obliged to you for having sent me *a copy of the letter you have of my grandmother's*. Truth, No. 1801, 22a.

- IV. An obvious explanation of the pleonastic genitive is to assume that a noun is understood after the genitive. But to this explanation there are two weighty objections: a) that such a noun is never used now, and has never been used; b) that the idiom is also used when it is impossible to think of one or more things out of a collection of like things, as in the following quotations:

That Paradise Lost of *Milton's*. EARLE, Phil., § 572.

That gun of *Tupman's* is not safe. PICKW., CH. XIX, 164.

When any partitive notion is absent, the construction is, however, possible only after a demonstrative pronoun. Observe that the demonstrative is in this case more or less depreciative. (CH. XXXVI, 2).

<sup>1)</sup> GÜNTHER, Synonyms, § 48. — <sup>2)</sup> Note to Hamlet I, 5, 52 (Clar. Press).

It is probable that the idiom arose from the practice, long since obsolete, of placing the genitive after the noun modified. In the expressions in which it survived *of* was gradually interpolated for clearness. So it would appear that the idiom is an instance of grammatical cumulation, so frequent in English. The term pleonastic genitive used by SWEET (N.E. Gr., § 2010) seems, therefore, to be peculiarly appropriate. See also JESPERSEN, *Growth and Struct.*, § 184 and MURRAY, s. v. *of*, 44.

There can be no doubt, however, that *of* when followed by a genitive is mostly understood in a partitive sense. But this partitive sense is more or less vague. Thus such a phrase as *two friends of my brother's* does not necessarily imply that the number of friends is larger than two, a notion which would be expressed by *two of my brother's friends*. On the other hand it does not limit the number of friends to two, as is done by *my brother's two friends*.

- V. The partitive meaning which more or less attaches to the idiom, often causes the common case to be preferred when any such notion is foreign to the speaker's or writer's intention.

a) relation of possession.

- i. The note . . informed Mr. Esmond Warrington that his relatives at Castlewood, and among them *a dear friend of his grandfather*, were most anxious that he should come to 'Colonel Esmond's house in England'. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. II, 24.  
His wife's father was *a great friend of good Bishop Ken*. *Ib.*, Ch. XXII, 224.  
He was *a close friend of Ernest Jones*. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 72.  
The Circumlocution Office, in course of time, took up the business, as if it were *a bran-new thing of yesterday*. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. X, 62a.
- ii. As for Mrs. Kirk: *that disciple of Dr. Ramshorn* put one or two leading professional questions to Amelia. VAN FAIR, I, Ch. XXVII, 289.  
*In that affair of Mr. Slope*, had not all the world conspired against her? TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XLVIII, 427. (Compare: Could not *this affair of Mr. Slope's* be turned to advantage? *Ib.*, Ch. XLI, 364.)
- iii. By him also it was recognised as a binding law that *every whim of his sister* was to be respected. *Ib.*, *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXV, 311.
- iv. No less than *three pupils of her father* had trifled with those young affections. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 87.
- v. Both of these Jewish gents, who were *connexions of Mr. Abednego*, were insured in our office. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 127.  
She had no other relations than two aunts, *maiden sisters of Mr. Spenlow*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 278b.  
His friends were *old friends of Madame Svengali*. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, Ch. VII, 176.

b) relation of origin or agency.

- i. *A play of Shakespeare*. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 83.  
*A symphony of Beethoven; a play of Shakespeare*. MAS., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 118.  
A young lady was reading to him *a play of Shakespeare*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XV, 161.
- ii. *This letter of the Parisian great lady* did not by any means advance Mrs. Becky's interest with her admirable, her respectable, relative. VAN FAIR, I, Ch. XXXIV, 380.  
The publication of such books as *this of Mr. Landon* is of far-reaching import to the public. *Academy*.  
How could I tell Mary of *this behaviour of Mrs. Hoggarty*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 126.

iii. The reviewer makes merry over *certain remarks of Mr. Tylor*. Lit. World.

iv. The Lamberts were not squeamish: and laughed over *pages of Mr. Fielding*, and cried over *volumes of Mr. Richardson*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXIII, 240.

In the following quotations *of* is ambiguous:

*Anecdotes of Byron* formed his staple. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXIV, 361. I had hoped to gather *some traditional anecdotes of the bard* from these ancient chroniclers. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXVI, 261.

VI. When the head-word is such a noun as *portrait*, *effigy* etc., denoting a representation of the person mentioned in the modifying element, the pleonastic construction is never used.

Just over the grave, in a niche in the wall, is *a bust of Shakespeare*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXVI, 263.

Perhaps you may be interested, Mr. Jarndyce, . . . in *this portrait of Captain Swosser*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XIII, 107.

"Then you mean to give up your profession," said she. — "No, I dont," said he, going on with *some absurd portrait of the bishop*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XV, 117.

VII. Sometimes the construction of the sentence makes the pleonastic genitive impracticable or impossible. This is the case:

a) When the head-word is accompanied by an apposition.

Here's *a sad affair of our friend Lady Teazle*. SHER., School for Scand., V, 2, (425).

He was *a friend of his Royal Highness, the Duke of Kent*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VI, 78.

In Miss Jemima's eyes *an autograph letter of her sister, Miss Pinkerton*, was an object of as deep veneration as would have been a letter from a sovereign. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. I, 2.

Do you mean that *a grandson of Henry Esmond, the master of this house*, has been here, and none of you have offered him hospitality. Id., Virg., Ch. II, 21.

I believe you are *a particular friend of Pickwick, the defendant*, are not you? PICKW., Ch. XXXIV, 313. (Compare: Are you, or are you not, *a particular friend of the defendant's?* Ib.)

This neighbour was *a secret kinsman of his dear friend, W. Ladislaw*. LOCKHARDT, Scott<sup>1)</sup>.

b) When the head-word is modified by a genitive.

He went off with Lord C. *an intimate friend of my lady's husband*. FERGUS HUME, The Piccadilly Puzzle<sup>1)</sup>.

c) When the element modified is compound.

He was *a contemporary of Coleridge and Lamb and Hazlitt*. J. H. LOBBAN, Selections from Leigh Hunt, Introd.

The common case is decidedly the rule also when the noun standing after *of* is a collective noun.

MAR. What are you, and what may your business in this house be? — MISS HARD. *A relation of the family*. GOLDSMITH, She stoops to conquer, IV, (212).

The friend at whose house we shall sup to-night, hath a son, who is *an old friend of our family*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXIV, 245.

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, De Drie Talen, XIV.

H. POUTSMA, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II



VIII. The partitive meaning that attaches to *of*, may also be responsible for the preference given to other constructions, when any such notion is foreign to the speaker's intentions:

- a) The most interesting of these is that with the preposition *with* instead of *of*, which is apparently the rule after certain nouns, such as:

**favourite.** i. I was a favourite with all the servants. DE QUINCEY, Conf., 90.  
They were great favourites with her ladyship. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. II, 11.

He had been a favourite with three successive generations of the royal house. MAC., Pitt, (292a).

Winnie was a great favourite with the people there. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XVII, 476.

Miss Dorothy Drew . . was, as a child, a great favourite with her grandfather. II. Lond. News, No. 3704, 560.

- ii. (He) was a prodigious favourite of the Chief himself. THACK., Virg., Ch. XCII, 982.

Scorn and cynicism would be my only opium; unless I could fall into some kind of madness, and fancy myself a favourite of Heaven because I am not a favourite with men. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. VII, 383.  
(Note the varied practice.)

- iii. Bunce . . had long been a favourite of Mr. Harding's. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. VIII, 57.

Also the adjective *favourite* sometimes causes *with* to be used instead of *of*:

Julia was — yet I never could see why — With Donna Inez quite a favourite friend. BYRON, Don Juan, I, LXVI.

Hume's Essays were a favourite book with Shelley. HOGG, Life of Shelley, I, 110.

The character of Steele has been a favourite one with recent biographers. GOSSE, Eighteenth Cent. Lit., 194.

**habit.** i. It was a habit with Scrooge . . to put his hands in his breeches' pockets. CHRISTMAS CAR.

It seems to have become a habit with the German Press . . to vent feelings of that kind in denunciations of England. TIMES, No. 1820, 923d.

- ii. Now if there's a habit of the populace which I cannot endure, it's the barbarous practice of misplacing the aspirate. GRANT ALLEN, That Friend of Sylvia's.

After the same noun also *to* is occasionally found: Obedience was now a habit to her. MAX PEMB., Doctor Xavier, Ch. IX, 49a.

**passion.** It appeared to have become a perfect passion with Mrs. Flintwinch, that the only son should be pitted against him. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. V, 28a.

**principle.** It was a principle with Mr. Bulstrode to [etc.]. G. ELIOT, Mid.

**sore point.** The going to school to a clergyman was a sore point with Tom. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. IX.

Note also: True sentiment is twin with melancholy, though not with gloom. LYTTON, Rienzi, III, Ch. III, 114.

After the above nouns *with* may appear also when the definite article precedes.

I always knew that Harry was the favourite son with Madam Esmond. THACK., Virg., Ch. LIV, 559.

b) Other approximate equivalents of the pleonastic genitive may be seen in the constructions used in the following quotations:

i. These locks of hair belonged to *a baker's dozen of sisters that the old gentleman had*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. 1, 2.

ii. *A look of surprise and displeasure on the nobleman's part* recalled him to better sentiments. Id., Virg., Ch. XV, 153.

Very few people do like strangers to whom they are presented with an outrageous flourish of praises *on the part of the introducer*. Ib., Ch. XXI, 221.  
Harry never could relish *this condescension on his brother's part*. Ib., Ch. LXI, 634.

*This considerateness on old Mr. Clare's part* led Angel onward to the other and dearer subject. HARDY, Tess, IV, Ch. XXVI, 211.

Resolution. *A formal decision etc. on the part of a deliberative assembly or other meeting*. MURRAY.

iii. Deceit is, indeed, *a sad fault in a child*. Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 35.

35. Besides *of* there are several other prepositions which may take upon them certain of the functions of the genitive.

a) *At, for, to* and *towards* appear to a certain extent as substitutes for an objective genitive after such nouns as *dislike, hate, liking, love*, which correspond to transitive verbs, but are often constructed with these prepositions through the influence of synonymous words. Ch. XIX, 49, Obs. III.

b) *By*, as a genitive equivalent, is used only to express a relation of origin or agency. It is especially frequent:

1) when the head-word is also accompanied by an objective genitive or analogous possessive pronoun, or by a phrase with the preposition *of* representing an objective genitive. See also JESPERSEN, Growth and Structure, § 182.

*His friend's assassination by the treacherous Arabs* roused his bitter resentment.

*His rejection by the widow . . .* galled him terribly. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLIII, 391.

All that the deputation could do was to register a protest in the hearing of the civilized world against *the treatment of their country by Japan*. Rev. of Rev., CCXII, 115a. (Compare: All the town was indignant at *my lord Duke's unjust treatment of General Webb*. THACK., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. XV, 287.)

This leads to *an able vindication by Dr. Rose of Pitt's fame* as a War Minister. Westm. Gaz., No. 5607, 10a.

2) when the head-word is preceded by any of the modifiers mentioned in 27, a, 2 and 33, or is not preceded by any modifier at all beyond an adjective.

We have heard that, about this time, *a tragedy by Madame d'Arblay* was performed without success. MAC., Mad. d'Arblay, (724a).

From *a speech by Mr. Gladstone*. LLOYD, North. Eng., 78. (Compare: The sensation of the week has undoubtedly been *Mr. Roosevelt's speech* at the Guildhall on Tuesday. Westm. Gaz., No. 5323, 1b.)

Also when the definite article precedes, *by* is sometimes used.

Another strange feature of Wednesday's debate was *the speech by the Archbishop of Canterbury*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 7b.

- c) The application of *from* as a substitute for the genitive is also confined to the relations of origin or agency. It seems to be used only when the head-word is preceded by any of the modifiers mentioned in 27, *a*, 2 and 33, or has no modifier beyond an adjective. In some cases it varies with *by*.

Nathaniel Pipkin could have sworn he heard the sound of a kiss, followed by *a faint remonstrance from Maria Lobbs*. PICKW., Ch. XVII, 153.

Everything was made secure against *an attack from the enemy*. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 46.

The landlord had to listen to *a long speech from the duke*. STOF., *Handl.*, I.

Despite *bullying from big boys and masters*, Tennyson would "shout his verses to the skies." ANDREW LANG, *Ten.*, Ch. I, 6.

The French flagship "Massena" moored by *men from Nelson's old flagship*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CLXXXIX, 227.

*A visit from your Majesty*. *Il. Lond. News*.

The debate on the second reading of that measure on Tuesday was initiated by *a motion for its rejection from Mr. Wyndham*. *Westm. Gaz.*

Observe the alternate use of *of* and *from* in:

In Miss *Jemima's eyes an autograph letter of her sister*, Miss Pinkerton, was an object of as deep veneration as would have been *a letter from a sovereign*. *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. I, 2.

- d) *In* may to a certain extent be understood as a substitute for a genitive in such adnominal adjuncts as *in the world*, *in the kingdom*, *in the town* etc.

He was pronounced by all the neighbourhood *the wickedest dog in the street*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 104).

When thus gentle, Bessie seemed to me to be *the best, prettiest, kindest being in the world*. *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 29.

Her reply was, that, if he did not keep his promise, she would carry his letters into *every court in the kingdom*. THACK., *Pend.* I, Ch. VIII, 89.

The ædile... was celebrated through Pompeii for having *the worst paintings in the world*. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. III, 15b.

Mr. Balfour went over the old ground of argument against the Veto Bill... as if it was *the most normal thing in the world* that after the jury had pronounced for the one, judgment should be entered for the other. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5613, 1c.

Compare with the above the following quotations with the less usual *of*:

She already saw Dolf, in her mind's eye... *one of the established dignitaries of the town*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 105).

In my blood she venerates *the eldest dynasties of earth*. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. IV, 22b. (In this quotation the alternative preposition would be *on*.)

In size it (sc. St. Paul's) is *fifth among Christian churches of the world*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3778, 441.

36. *To* is also a kind of substitute for the genitive in other connections than that mentioned in 35, *a*. In literary language we frequently find it after nouns which express how one person (or a number of persons) is (are) related or disposed to another person (or number

of persons), or to a thing (or a number of things); i. e. after such nouns as *brother*, *sister*, etc.; *apprentice*, *secretary*, *servant*, etc.; *prey*, *slave*, *victim*, etc.; *enemy*, *friend*, etc.

In the majority of cases the head-word, when in the singular, is not preceded by any modifier, or by either the indefinite article or *no*. Such nouns as would have the indefinite article in the singular, of course throw it off in the plural.

i. \* The wish is *father to the thought*. Proverb.

He was *son and heir to Sir Anth. Absolute*. SHER., Rivals.

The boy had been *apprentice to a famous German doctor*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (STOF., Handl., I, 105).

My young friend, I make no doubt is *heir to two thousand pounds a year*. THACK., Pend., Ch. XI, 108.

He was . . . *Physician to Queen Charlotte*. Ib., I, Ch. X, 108.

It occurred to him that Mrs. Bold was *sister-in-law to the archdeacon*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XV, 114.

He had at length been placed in a post which partook of both characters (sc. military and commercial), that of *commissary to the troops*, with the rank of captain. MAC., Clive, (505b).

He is *cousin to the Loftus boys*. Mrs. WOOD, Orville College, Ch. II, 23.

He is *brother to the second senior of the school*. Ib.

She was *sister to Mrs. Jones* and the widow of a baronet. Pref. Mem. of W. COOPER. (Chandos Clas.)

She was *daughter to a City tradesman*. WALT. BES., St. Kath., Ch. II.

He was declared *heir presumptive to the Danish throne*. Times.

He was *secretary to Mr. A.* MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 15, N.

The German Emperor is *brother-in-law to the Crown Prince of Greece*. Spectator (Westm. Gaz., No. 5149, 20c).

The wish was no doubt *father to the thought*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5561, 5b.

\*\* Romeo, *son to Montague*. Paris, a young nobleman, *kinsman to the Prince*. Romeo and Jul.

Lady Magdalen Dacres } *Ladies in Waiting to the Queen*. TEN., Queen Mary.  
Alice }

ii. \* Not that I am *an enemy to love*. SHER., Duenna, I, 1 (310).

He was a *great friend to Indians and to an Indian mode of life*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl., (STOF., Handl., I, 132).

Her husband had fallen *a victim to his zeal for the public safety*. Ib., 102.

She was a *martyr to a curious disorder*, called the "spazzums." DICK., Cop., Ch. XXVI.

Upon my word and honour, as a gentleman and *an executor to my brother's will* too, he left little more than five hundred a year behind him. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XI, 118.

He was a *distant relative to both of these persons*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. I, 8.

If ever a man was *an abject slave to a woman*, I was. Titbits, 1895, 389a.

They fell *a prey to the angry waves*. H. FYFE, Triumphs of Invention, 13<sup>1</sup>).

Dr. Rose has not fallen *a prey to the wiles of the Sinking Fund*. West. Gaz., No. 3607, 10a.

In one respect he may prove *a worthy successor to Mr. Chamberlain*. Times, No. 1820, 923a.

\*\* Most of the Southron chiefs were *friends to the authority of the Queen*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. I, 10.

1) ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 17.



\*\*\* Then you're *no friend to the ladies*. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops to conquer*, II (194).

For my part I am *no enemy to harmless ornaments*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 79.

37. Obs. I. It is not often that *to* is placed after any of the above nouns when preceded by the definite article, unless the meaning of the noun distinctly suggests this preposition, as in the case of such words as *successor*, *heir*, which are suggestive of *to succeed to*, or *slave* which suggests *subject to*.

Purpose is but *the slave to memory*. HAMLET, III, 2, 200.

Matilda, though of the royal Saxon blood, was not *the heir to the monarchy*. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XLII, 448.

Miss Beaufort is now *the heiress to an ancient name and fortune*. LATON, *Night and Morn.*, 481.

At fifteen he was *the confidential counsellor*, as at twenty-one he became *the general-in-chief to the most politic, as well as the most warlike, potentate of his age*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 902b.

We not only find that science is *the handmaid to all forms of art and poetry*, but that, rightly considered, science is itself poetic. SPENCER, *Education*, Ch. I, 35b.

A Little Englander is *the most dangerous enemy to his country*. TIMES, No. 1881, 81c.

- II. As to the nouns which express a relation (36), the idiom is at all common only:

- a) when they are in the function of nominal part of the predicate or predicative adnominal adjunct. In this position it is freely used only when the relation is one of kinship: when the relation is one of a different description, it is of limited application. Thus we could hardly say: *He is owner to the mill, commander to the squadron, overseer to the work*.

Conversely it appears to be regular in such designations as *physician to the Queen, purveyor to the Prince of Wales, hatter to the Duke of Cornwall*, etc.

The following quotations may show that *of* may be used after the above nouns, even although they stand without the article:

- i. I was told you were *nephew of Lady Drum*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 84.

He was *son of Uther and Ygerne*. G. C. MACAULAY, *Note to Tennyson's Guinevere*, 10.

He was an old school-fellow of his, and *son of a merchant* in that town. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVI, 131a.

Robert, the first marquis of Westminster, was *son of the first Earl Grosvenor*. HARMSWORTH ENCYCL., s. v. *Westminster*.

- ii. Little Buttons bounced up to his mistress, said he was *butler of the family*. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VI, 327.

When the boys' grandfather died, their mother . . . proclaimed her eldest son George her successor, and *heir of the estate*. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. III, 30.

- b) when they stand as part of a nominal clause modifying a proper name. Here we meet *to* especially in descriptions of

the *dramatis personæ* of a play, varying with *of*. Compare the last of the first group of quotations given in 36 with the following:

Oliver }  
Jaques } *sons of Sir Rowland de Boys. As you like it.*  
Orlando }

Geoffrey, *son of Rosamund and Henry.* TEN., Becket.

Camma, *wife of Sinnatus.* Id., *The Cup.*

Except for descriptions of the *dramatis personæ* of a play the use of *to* in appositions or in nominal clauses (Ch. XXI) modifying proper names, would appear to be rare.

Colonel F. W. Rhodes, *brother of Mr. Cecil Rhodes,* was wounded. *Times.*

The elder was Mrs. Benjamin Slayback, *wife of the well-known member of Congress.* MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

Mrs. Thackeray Ritchie, *daughter of Thackeray.* ROWE and WEBB, *Intr. to Ten. Id. of the King.*

Further evidence of the variable practice regarding the use of *to* or *of* after relation-expressing words, also in connection with the use of the articles, is afforded by the following quotations:

**heir.** *The Heir Apparent to the British Throne* was present to do honour to the memory of his friend. *Times.*

Mr. Harry Esmond Warrington was *the heir of immense wealth.* THACK., *Virg.* Ch. XVI, 168.

Nothing more than a nominal dignity was left to *the abject heirs of an illustrious name.* MAC., *Clive*, (502a).

**victim.** It fell *a victim to an infantile disorder.* The English Newspaper Reader, 25<sup>1</sup>).

He (sc. Lord Rosebery) is *a victim of insomnia.* Daily News.

Shortly after this he became *the victim of a passionate attachment to a young lady.* ARTHUR C. DOWNER, *The Personal Hist. of John Keats*, 3.

- III. As to the nouns expressing a disposition (36), the use of *to* as compared with *of* depends on the particular shade of meaning expressed by them. When it is rather the disposition than the individual that is meant, *to* is used, and vice versa. In the former case the noun is mostly preceded by *a(n)* or *no*, and is practically equivalent to an adjective. Thus *He was a friend to Indians* does not materially differ from *He was friendly to Indians*, any more than *I am no enemy to harmless amusements* from *I am not inimical to harmless amusements*. In the latter case the noun takes another modifier than either *a(n)* or *no*. We subjoin some further quotations for comparison.

- i. So mak'st thou faith an *enemy to faith.* King John, III, 1, 263.

He was an *enemy to himself* in spending his estate. HOWELL, *St. Trials*, V, 359<sup>2</sup>).

Some evil genius, *enemy to mankind*, must have been the first contriver. SWIFT, *Gul.*, II, vii<sup>2</sup>).

The Minister who was *no friend to the young nobleman.* SHAFT., *Advice to Author*, 143<sup>2</sup>).

- ii. Vice, *the Enemy of Religion*, is at the same time *the Enemy of Humane Society.* PENN, *Addr. Prot.*, I, viii, 31<sup>2</sup>).

The true judge . . . ought to be *the enemy of all pandering to the pleasure of the spectators.* JOWETT, *Plato*<sup>2</sup>, V, 229<sup>2</sup>).

<sup>1</sup>) ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 17. -- <sup>2</sup>) MURRAY, s. v. *enemy*, B, 1.

- IV. The following quotation is a remarkable instance of divided practice:

I am *the son of Marcus Cato*, ho! | *A foe to tyrants, and my country's friend.* JUL. CÆS., 5, 4, 5.

38. In order to express emphatically that the relation of possession, origin or agency is assigned to a particular person, animal or thing (or number of persons, animals or things), the English language uses the adjective *own*.

Mr. Harding . . . thought the old reddish brown much preferable to the gaudy buff-coloured trumpery moreen which Mrs. Proudie had deemed good enough for *her husband's own room*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. V, 32.

We cannot do better than quote *Dickens's own words*. FORSTER, *Life of Dick.* 1)

39. Obs. I. *Own* is especially used after a genitive, as in the above quotations, or after a possessive pronoun (Ch. XXXIII, 18, 19), but before names of kinship it is occasionally met with also after the (in)definite article or without any modifier preceding. Such a name of kinship is then usually followed by *to*, especially when it modifies a proper name.

- i. "*The own maid*" had not been able to divine the exact truth. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXXII, 282.

The horses are all right; there's *the own brother to* the one that brought you here. ANTH. HOPE, *Pris. of Zenda*, 39.

- ii. Decimus Brady, of Ballybrady, married *an own cousin of* aunt Towzer's mother. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 33.

Mrs. Waule's mind was entirely flooded with the sense of being *an own sister* and getting little. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXV, 248.

- iii. He married Scully, *own cousin to* Lord Poldoody. VAN. FAIR, I, Ch. XXVII, 288.

- II. *Own* sometimes has a meaning which is usually expressed by the adverb *even*. For further information about secondary shades of meaning that may be expressed by *own*, see Ch. XXXIII, 19.

The Tory women crowded round her with congratulations, and made her a train greater than the Duchess of *Marlborough's own*. THACK., *Henry Esme.*, II, Ch. XV, 287.

Her eyes were grey; her mouth rather large; her teeth as regular and bright as *Lady Kew's own*. *Id.*, *New c.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 281.

I would not have taken *the Lord Mayor's own* daughter in place of Mary with a plum to her fortune. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VIII, 87.

- III. An occasional variant of *own*, now only used archaically, and often used together with it, is *proper*. For fuller illustration see Ch. XXXIII, 20.

It is further agreed between them, that the duchies of Anjou and Maine shall be released and delivered over to the king her father, and she sent over of *the King of England's own proper cost* and charges, without having any dowry. HENRY VI, B, I, 1, 61.

- IV. *Own* in the secondary meaning of *peculiar* or *special* is sometimes used together with either of these adjectives.

King Edward's *own special* gift was that he brought to bear upon the task of the Sovereign all the kindly human gifts with which nature had endowed him. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5311, 1b.

1) SATTLER, E. S., II, 7.

## CLASSIFYING GENITIVE.

40. a) Besides representing a class of persons, animals or things as the owners, originators or performers of what is expressed by the noun modified, we find the classifying genitive indicating certain ideas which are suggested by the modifying noun. These ideas are mostly qualities, sometimes adverbial relations. Thus in *a fool's errand* the genitive is connotative of a quality, in *an evening's repast* of an adverbial relation.

b) Sometimes there is an adjective of approximately the same meaning. Compare the following groups of quotations:

**boy's-boyish.** i. I have still serv'd Afrasiab well, and shown. | At my *boy's years*, the courage of a man. MATTHEW ARNOLD, *Sohrab and Rustum*, 45.

ii. In my *boyish days*. DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 11.

In my infant and *boyish* days. BURNS, *Letter to Dr. Moore*, 51.

**moment's-momentary.** i. If the bright moment of promising is sincere in its *moment's extravagant goodness*. BROWNING, *A Soul's Tragedy*, II, (32).

ii. Frithiof must have taken it in a *momentary aberration*. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXVIII, 244.

**sheep's-sheepish.** i. What a plague business had he making *sheep's eyes* at his daughter? CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II 20b.

ii. His boy's face gave him quite a *sheepish look*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 15a.

Especial mention may here be made of adjectives in *y* as equivalents of classifying genitives.

He was busied in doing this *friendly office* for me. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXIV, 175.

He kissed her with a *sisterly warmth*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 257.

He made me another of his *soldierly bows*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXIV, 211.

c) It deserves notice that the classifying genitive, like the uninflected attributive noun (Ch. XXIII, 4, Obs. I), is a peculiarly English idiom. In Dutch, indeed, a noun in the classifying genitive is frequent enough, but only as part of a compound, not as an independent word. Nor is the mark of the genitive distinctly felt as a case-suffix, but rather as a link-sound inserted for euphony: *timmermansgereedschap*, *zusters-kind*, *kindskind*, *levensbericht*. The vagueness of the suffix accounts for the inconsistency with which it is applied in Dutch. Thus we find it only exceptionally in equivalents of the English classifying genitive, as is shown by the instances given in these §§.

In not a few cases, however, a noun in the classifying genitive is felt as part of a compound also in English, which causes it to be used conjunctively with the noun modified, or joined on to it by a hyphen. Instances are given below 44, Obs. I.



- d) Like the common-case form (Ch. XXIII, 4, Obs. 3), the genitive of a noun, when classifying in function, is to be considered as a kind of makeshift, put into requisition because a fitting adjective expressing the meaning intended, is not available.

But the logicians of St. James and Versailles wisely chose to consider the matter in dispute as a *European* and not a *Red-man's question*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VI, 63.

41. When a quality is expressed, the modifying noun and the noun modified are related in various ways, which are, chiefly of the following description:

- a) The noun modified denotes a part of, or something belonging to, what is expressed by the modifying noun.

**cat.** He is but a *cat's paw* and we are the cats themselves. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. V, 54b. (Observe also: *cat's eye* (a kind of precious stone), *cat's meat* (flesh of horses, etc. prepared and sold by street dealers as food for domestic cats), etc.)

**girl.** A *girl's voice* sang a strange wild melody. MAR. CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, Ch. XXXIX, 235.

**fish, lizard, serpent.** "A stranger animal," cried one, | Sure never lived beneath the sun: | A *lizard's body* lean and long, | A *fish's head*, a *serpent's tongue*. REV. JOHN MERRICK, *The Caméléon*.

**peacock.** She was fanned with *peacock's feathers*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. III, 13b.

**sheep.** Wolves in *sheep's clothing*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. I, 5.

**sow.** You cannot make a silk purse out of a *sow's ear*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXX, 219a.

**virgin.** Atalanta, daughter of King Schœneus, not willing to lose her *virgin's estate*, made it a law to all suitors that they should run a race with her in the public place, and if they failed to overcome her, should die unrevenge. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Paradise*, *Atalanta's Race*, *Argument*.

**whale.** She was like a *whale's tooth* for whiteness. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. VII, 57b.

- b) The modifying noun denotes the person, animal (or thing) of which the quality assigned to what is expressed by the noun modified, is characteristic. Thus slowness is characteristic of a snail, and a slow pace may, therefore, be aptly described as a *snail's pace*. In using such a collocation as a *girl's voice* we may, or may not, think of the quality (of weakness) by which the voices of girls are mostly characterized. In the former case the genitive would have to be classed among those mentioned here, in the latter case among those mentioned under a).

**boy.** He was now a huge, strong fellow of six feet high . . . , but with a *simpering boy's face* and curlish hair that gave him quite a sheepish look. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 15a.

**child.** To talk of burning IOU's was *child's play*. VAN. FAIR, II, Ch. I, 5.

That is *child's talk*. RUDY. KIPL., Wee Willie Winkie.

How that woman can keep her *child's heart* and *child's faith* in a world like this, is more than I can understand. MAR. CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. XXVII, 68.

**conqueror.** I stood awhile on the rug, where Mr. Brocklehurst had stood, and I enjoyed my *conqueror's solitude*. JANE EYRE, Ch. VII, 39.

**courtier.** My dear young gentleman there's no need of so many *courtiers' words*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. V, 42a.

**coward.** On one of these many *coward's errands*, Mr. Holt had come to my lord at Castlewood. THACK., Henry Esm., II, Ch. IV, 183.

**deuce.** I shall have the *deuce's own trouble* in getting him home. ID., PEND., II, Ch. XXIX, 323.

**devil.** Oh Robert Beaufort — could your heart but feel what *devil's trick* your wealth was playing with a son, who, if poor, would have been the pride of the Beauforts. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 90.

Was this vessel another *devil's craft* set sailing round the world? MAR. CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. XLII, 274.

**enemy.** It might be an *enemy's ship* in disguise. WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship, (STOF., HANDL., I, 86).

She would have taken her own way with as much coolness through an *enemy's country*. DICK., Cop., Ch. XV, 109a.

**father.** That was a *father's duty*. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. XV, 117.

**fool.** The Lords are living in a *fool's paradise* from which they will be rudely awakened. REV. OF REV., CXCVIII, 566a.

And so the patients and patients' friends go on living in a *fool's paradise*, often refusing to undergo an operation, until, when too late, it is discovered that the tumour is cancer. TITBITS.

In a sudden *fool's paroxysm* of despair I exclaimed. MAR. CORELLI, Sor. of Sat., II, Ch. XXVII, 91.

I was yet in my *fool's dream*. ID., II, Ch. XXV, 56.

He sent us here on a *fool's errand*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. III, 56a.

**gentleman.** There now, that is a very pretty distance, a pretty *gentleman's* distance. SHER., Riv., V, 3.

**giant.** A *giant's task*. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., II, 119.

**knave.** It is a good *knave's trade*. JOHN RUSKIN, The King of the Golden River, Ch. II.

**man.** I have a *man's mind*, but a *woman's might*. JUL. CÆS., II, 4, 8.

He left to us his infant son on condition that we should rear him until he came to *man's estate*. CON. DOYLE, The White Comp., II.

**mother.** It was a poor little chance of life for her *mother's love*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VII, 123.

**slave.** Greek is a *slave's tongue*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. III, 13b.

**widow.** As to Square, who was in his person what is called a jolly fellow, or a *widow's man*, he easily reconciled his choice to the eternal fitness of things. FIELDING, Tom Jones, III, Ch. VI, 37b.

(old)**wives.** We'll stop his *old wives' tales* for him. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. III, 15b.

**woman.** She had grown up to *woman's estate*. MRS. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 80.

Her *woman's instinct* had read the truth. (?), Miss Prov., Ch. XXI.

It required all her *woman's tact* to avoid betraying what had happened. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. VI, 50b.

**yeoman.** Here Ellis did *yeoman's service*. MRS. ALIX., Life Int., I, Ch. XIV, 231.

- c) The modifying noun denotes the person animal (or thing) to which what is expressed by the noun modified is adapted, for which it is destined, or by which it is used: *lady's maid*, *sportsman's tailor*, *bishop's mitre*, *judge's wig*, *widow's weeds*, *jewellers' cotton*, *the women's ward of an infirmary*, *carpenter's shop*, *smith's forge*, *boy's book*, *children's party* (for which THACKERAY has *child's party*, see below).

**bishop, judge.** The son of a peasant or mechanic may carry a *bishop's mitre* or a *judge's wig* in his school satchel. ESCOTT, Eng., Ch. XV, 272.

**child.** Mrs. Sedley had forgiven his breaking the punch-bowl at the *child's party*. Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 48.

**children.** The end of a novel, like the end of a *children's dinner-party*, must be made up of sweetmeats and sugar plums. TROL., Barch. Tow., Gt. LIII, 459.

**doctor.** He took his *doctor's degree* in Erfurt. Macm.'s Recent and Forthcoming Books, March, 1903, 17.

**hunter.** He saw nothing but the bright *hunter's moon*. Ch. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. V, 43a.

**jeweller.** (The) unknown lady (was) stopping her ears with *jewellers' cotton*. Dick., Cop., Ch. I, 5b.

**lady.** I'm not much of a *lady's man*. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XII, 203.

I am not, in the first place, what is called a *ladies' man*. THACK, Fitz-Boodle's Confessions, I.

**man.** Brian Rashleigh was essentially a *man's man*. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, Ch. XII, 204.

**town.** A largely attended *town's meeting* was held on Monday night at the Hackney Town-Hall. Times.

I beg to inform you that at a *town's meeting*, held here on Friday, May 26, it was unanimously resolved that [etc.]. Truth, No. 1801, 7b.

**woman.** Lady Maxwell, as you once said yourself, is not, I suppose, a *woman's woman*. Mrs. WARD, Sir George Tres., III, Ch. XV, 123b.

42. When an adverbial relation is expressed, the noun in the classifying genitive is mostly the name of:

- a) an epoch, especially:

- 1) a division of a day (56, Obs. III, b, 4).

**afternoon.** In the open bay window sat merchants and gentlemen over their *afternoon's draught of sack*. Ch. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. I, 1b.

**evening.** A part of the game was cooking for the *evening's repast*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 130).

I had settled to my *evening's reading*. Ch. KINGSLEY, Alt. Locke, Ch. VI, 69.

We took notes of the vicar's or curate's discourse to be reproduced in our own form as our *evening's amusement*. Miss BRAD., My First Happy Christm. (STOF., Handl., I, 66).

**morning.** After a hearty *morning's meal* the encampment broke up. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 136).

2) a day of the week (56, Obs. III, *b*, 3).

**Sunday.** People who a generation or two back were content to work on steadily with the regular *Sunday's rest*, and perhaps one summer holiday, are no longer satisfied with this. *Times*.

3) a season (56, Obs. III, *b*, 1).

**summer.** Not so much life as on a *summer's day* | Robs not one light seed from the feather'd grass. KEATS, *Hyp.*, I, 8.

He sat down on its (sc. the brook's) margin, as sad a gentleman as you shall meet in a *summer's day*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXIV, 297. (= a long day.)

They were not created . . . to endure without protection the *summer's sun* and the *winter's storm*. *ib.*, XLIX, 436.

Passing the long *summer's day* | Idle as a mossy stone. MATTHEW ARNOLD, *Tristram and Iseult*, I, 193.

This adventurous lady would be seen pushing her way through the *summer's heat* and the *winter's snow*. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 21.

This glycerine protects from *summer's heat* and *winter's cold*. *Il. Lond. News*.

**winter.** One *winter's evening* a man in a gig might be seen urging his tired horse along the road. *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 118.

What tale did Iseult to the children say, | Under the hollies, that bright *winter's day*? MATTH. ARN., *Tristram and Iseult*, III, 151.

One *winter's night* the winds and waves tore up the great stones and blocks of concrete. GORDON HOLMES, *Silvia Craven*, 18.

*b*) a period, represented:

## 1) as a singular unit:

**day.** George was highly pleased with his *day's business*. *Van. Fair.*, I, Ch. XXV, 283.

My faculties have wrought a *day's task* and earned a day's wages. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 311.

Mr. Caudle's goes out to amuse himself when his *day's work* is done. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 22.

The Squire is a good gentleman, he often gives a *day's work*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 24.

**life.** Thackeray died, early indeed, but still having done a good *life's work*. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 8.

**moment.** If (the bright moment of promising is) sincere in its *moment's extravagant goodness*. BROWNING, *A Soul's Trag.*, II, (32).

**year.** We have had a good *year's trade*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5501, 1c. (*Year's trade* may be compared to such a combination as *night's rest*, but the word-group may also be analysed: a *year's good trade* or a *year of good trade*.)

## 2) as a multiple of a certain unit.

**day.** It will be a *ten days' break* for him at any rate. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, II, 273.

After a *five days' absence* he returned to Paris. *Blackw. Mag.*

**hour.** It is but a *twelve hours' passage*. *Van. Fair.*, I, Ch. XXV, 263.

The village of Marlott . . . (was) . . . for the most part untrodden as yet by tourist or landscape-painter, though within a *four hours' journey* from London. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. II, 10.



**year.** He had spoken of a *two years' engagement*. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, III, 5. We cannot expect to get a *ten years' experience* in as many weeks or months. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie, 77.

**Note I.** Observe; *Nine days' wonder*, as in: The University Boat Race has long taken so strong a hold on public interest that no unusual incident in connexion with it is merely a *nine days' wonder*. *Times*, No. 1840, 271c. It will be a *nine days' wonder*, and then it will be heard of no more. ROORDA, *Supplem.*, 43. (Compare: That would be a *ten days' wonder* at the least — That's a day longer than a wonder lasts. HENRY VI, C, III, 2, 113.)

**II.** The noun modified by such a genitive is mostly the name of an action or state, as in all the above instances. This is not the case in: *A ten days' beard*. RID. HAG., *King Solomon's Mines*, 102. Behold the child among his new-born blisses, | *A six years' darling* of a pigmy size. WORDSWORTH, *Ode, Intimations of Immortality*, VII, 2. The Wedding-guest stood still, | And listens like a *three years' child*. COLERIDGE, *Ancient Mar.*, I, iv. She was still to him the lovely *fifteen years' girl*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 118

Compare with the above Ch. XXV, 32, Obs. I.

In these collocations some such adjective as *old* seems to be understood. Compare Ch. XXV, 32, Obs. II, and also the following quotation: After a prolonged examination he discovers, in this *century-old record*, nothing more fitted for the exercise of his ingenuity. G. E. MITTON, *Jane Austen and her Times*. Ch. I, 5.

It is but natural that the mark of the genitive also in this case is apt to be suppressed.

43. Also proper names of persons are occasionally found in the classifying genitive, mostly denoting a quality.

**Cook.** When I see your *Cook's tourists* [etc.]. MAX PEMB., *Giant's Gate*, Ch. IX, 32a.

**Dickens.** It is fully illustrated from the "original wood engravings by Barnard, Phiz," and other great *Dickens' artists*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5255, 3c.

**Falstaff.** Our vaunted levies of loyal recruits (were) so many *Falstaff's regiments* for the most part. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 658

**Gessler.** That *Gessler's cap* is still up in the market-place of Europe, and not a few folks are kneeling to it. THACK., *The four Georges*, I, 11.

In thus facing imprisonment rather than bow to the *Gessler's Cap* which the jingo majority of 1900 set up in our midst, the Nonconformists are on their old ground. *Rev. of Rev.*

**Jaeger.** I detest people who are always doing 'outré' things like that — it's all of a piece with their fads about no stays and *Jaeger's woollen clothes*. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. XIII, 110.

**Job.** "I told you so, I told you so!" is the croak of a true *Job's comforter*. TROL., *Barth. Tow.*, Ch. XLIV, 395.

But the worst *Job's messenger* was Bishop Egelwin of Durham. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XXV, 107a.

**King William.** Tom professed himself, albeit a high-churchman, a strong *King William's man*. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. X, 101.

**Pope.** Tennyson also knew Pope and wrote hundreds of lines in *Pope's measure*. ANDREW LANG, *Alfred Tennyson*, Ch. I, 5.

**Tom Fool.** It is a *Tom Fool's business*. RID. HAG., *She*, Ch. IV, 48.

**Turner.** What could be expected from a man who goes to sleep with, every night, a *Turner's picture* on a chair opposite his bed that "he may have something beautiful to look at on first opening his eyes of a morning"? T. P.'s Weekly, No. 478, 3b. (The referencé is to Ruskin.)

- 44 Obs. I. A noun in the classifying genitive is more closely connected with the noun modified than one in the individualizing genitive. This is often symbolized by the hyphen, or by writing the two component parts of the word-group conjunctively, especially in formations that have been handed down from ancient times, when the genitive was more freely used than it is at the present day. Thus we find:

- a) written with a hyphen: *bird's-nest*, *cat's-mint*, *crow's-foot*, *lady's-maid*.
- b) written conjunctively: *coxcomb* (corrupted from *cock's comb*), *craftsman*, *draftsman*, *draughtsman*, *headsman*, *helmsman*, *ratsbane*, *tradesman*.

Inconsistencies and irregularities are, of course, very numerous. Thus MURRAY has *heartsease* and *heart's-ease*, and in the quotations under this: *hearts-ease* and *heart's ease*.

Also in such collocations as *a ten days' break* mentioned above, the numeral and the following noun form a kind of compound, which is sometimes symbolized by a hyphen.

- II. Owing to this closer union with the noun modified, the noun in the classifying genitive is more rarely replaced by the prepositional construction than that in the individualizing genitive. Quite usual, however, is the construction with *of*, when the name of a period represented as the multiple of a certain unit, enters into the word-group. Compare Ch. XXV, 32, Obs. I, Note I.

- i. She set up a *school of children*. THACK., Henry Esm., Ch. VII, 381.
- ii. His *friend of fifty years* died. Prefatory Memoir to Lamb's Poems and Essays (Chandos).

His *love of ten years* was over. THACK., Henry Esm., III, Ch. XIII, 446. It was in the month of August 1756 that the great war of the *Seven Years* commenced. MAC., Fred., (687b).

During a *halt of twelve days*. Times.

She broke the *silence of many hours*. BRET HARTE, Outc. of Pok. Flat, 31.

It must, however, be remembered that also the classifying genitive is not freely used of nouns that otherwise admit of the genitive construction, and that *of* is frequently used in word-groups denoting a quality. Thus not only *a man of tact* = a tactful man, *a work of authority* = an authoritative work, *a flag of three colours* = a tricolor flag, *a people of many languages* = a polyglot people, etc. (MURRAY, s. v. *of*, 38), but also, *a man of God*, *a word of man*, as in the following quotations: It is nobler to receive sword and belt from *a man of God* than from a man of blood. Ch. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XX, 89b. I swore that no *word of man* should make me doubt her innocence. CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. X, 115.

- III. A word-group containing a classifying genitive may in its turn be used adnominally.

I went to the window-seat to put in order some picture-books and *doll's house furniture* scattered there. *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 30.

He was very busy at a map or *bird's eye view* of an island. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 12a.

- IV. In some cases the genitive may be understood as either individualizing or classifying. Thus in *It was his life's task to promote the welfare of his subjects* we may apprehend the spaced word-group as equivalent to *the task of his life*, but also as equivalent to *his lifelong task*, the difference corresponding to the Dutch *de taak zijns levens* (or *van zijn leven*), and *zijn levenstaak*. The latter view seems to be the more plausible (53, *b*, Note II), but in *It was her life's task and duty to dedicate all her powers to the prosperity and interests of her Fatherland* (Times), the fact that *task* is coupled with another noun causes the genitive to be best understood as individualizing, although also *task and duty* may be apprehended as an instance of hendiadys. Compare also 16, *d*.

To give another instance: *The appearance of the figures of the polls has provided an evening's amusement for large crowds* (11. Lond. News). In this quotation an *evening's amusement* may be understood to mean an *amusement lasting an evening*, but also an *amusement enjoyed of an evening*.

It is especially the following genitives discussed above, that are more or less ambiguous:

- a) those of the names of the principal heavenly bodies (16, *b*): *the earth's axis*, *the sun's rays*, etc.
- b) those of certain nouns that have the genitive only in certain combinations (16, *d*): *the bed's foot*, *the boat's head*, *a hand's breadth*, etc.
- c) those of the names of epochs (42, *a*) or periods (42, *b*): *the evening's repast*, *the winter's amusements*, etc.; *a day's work*, *a five days' absence*, etc.

In the majority of cases ambiguous genitives are rendered clear enough by the context or the circumstances of the case referred to. Thus the following genitives, although admitting of two interpretations, will after a moment's thought be apprehended as classifying:

Hot water . . . was, indeed, a requisite in any decent *gentleman's house*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. V, 36.

I am a poor *palson's son*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 138b.

Tell them that I died like a true *earl's son*. Id., *Herew.*, Ch. III, 28b.

- V. Modifiers standing before a genitive mostly belong exclusively to the modifying element when it is individualizing, to the whole word-group when it is classifying. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2002—3. Compare:

He refused to pay *his extravagant son's bills*. (= *the bills of his extravagant son*.) He was content to let his widowed mother pay *his extravagant tailor's bills*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VII, 131.

When the definite article stands before an individualizing genitive, it is also best understood as belonging to the modifying element, although in the expanded construction two definite articles are required. Thus *the archdeacon's daughters* = *the daughters of the archdeacon*.

But the definite article or a possessive pronoun, when standing before the individualizing genitive of the names of epochs or periods, belong to the noun modified, or rather to the whole word-group.

There's her *to-morrow's partridge* in the larder. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. III, 19b.

At once I saw, by the general's face, that the *yesterday's transaction* was known to him. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVII, 815.

During my *month's holiday* she was particularly pleased with me. ID., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 2.

Also when an individualizing genitive forms a kind of unit with its head-word (16, *d*), the preceding modifiers often belong to the whole word-group.

Only one man of the whole *ship's company* could dance the hornpipe at all. TRUTH, No. 1801, 9a.

*All* and *both* mostly belong to the whole word-group. (Ch. V, 16; Ch. XXXIII, 9a.)

All (or both) *my brother's friends* attended the meeting.

All *my neighbour's property* lies in this county.

In the midst of all *the great King's calamities*, his passion for writing indifferent poetry grew stronger and stronger. MAC., *Fred.*, (690a).

This was one of the blackest nights in all *Newnes's career*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 482, 130c.

But when the genitive is a plural, *all* and *both* may belong to the modifying element alone. Compare Ch. XXXIII, 8a.

A peace was concluded . . . to continue for *both the kings' lives*. BACON, *Hist. Henry VII* (= the lives of both the kings).

The young farmer drew himself up and looked fearlessly in *all his companions' eyes*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*.

*Both these men's eyes* followed George into the house, and each had a strong emotion they were bent on concealing. *Id.*, I, Ch. II, 34.

Sometimes one of the modifiers, an adjective, belongs only to the genitive, with which it forms a kind of unit, while another modifier belongs to the whole word-group. Thus in the following quotation *old* belongs to *wives'* alone, while *his* modifies *old wives' tales*:

We'll stop his *old wives' tales* for him. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. III, 15b.

Another instance: Alas! . . . my good and dear friend, from what sepulchre have you drawn such *dead man's comfort*. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXX, 397.

Finally we draw attention to the archaic and unusual construction instanced by *All other the Queen's Dominions* (*Periodical*<sup>1)</sup>), in which *other* belongs to the noun modified. (Ch. XXXIII, 11b.)

#### THE GENITIVE USED IN FOUR WAYS.

45. Nouns in the genitive are used conjointly, absolutely, substantively and predicatively.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 2008) calls the substantive genitive elliptical, but there seems to be no call to assume an ellipsis in such a collocation as *at the baker's*, any more than there is in all the other cases in which an adnominal word(-group) is used substantively.

46. For the conjoint use of the genitive, whether individualizing or classifying, see the above discussions.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 88.

H. POUTSMA, *A Grammar of Late Modern English*. II.



## 47. a) The absolute genitive is mostly individualizing.

When denoting a relation of possession, origin or agency, the absolute individualizing genitive appears to be used, in the main, of the same nouns as those which admit of the conjoint genitive.

A person with jaundice in his blood shall lie down and go to sleep at noon-day, when another of a different complexion shall find his eyes as *a statue's*. LEIGH HUNT, *A Few Thoughts on Sleep*.

She cared for his verses no more than for *Dan Chaucer's*. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. X, 240.

The Boers had, or imagined that they had, a list of grievances as long as *an Irishman's*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 45.

He neglects his own business to look after *other people's*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2007.

His (sc. Shakespeare's) tendencies had usually the same bent as *the crowd's*. II. Lond. News, No. 3678, 538*b*.

*Chambers's* is the only Encyclopædia that is always up-to-date. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 471, 631*a*.

## b) When other relations are in question, it seems to be exceedingly rare. Such a construction as is illustrated by the following quotation has a singular air about it:

*Six weeks'* was all the schooling I ever got. THACK., *Barry Lyndon* Ch. I, 18.

Note. The absolute individualizing genitive is sometimes replaced by a construction with the determinative *that* or *those* followed by *of*. This construction, however, is decidedly uncongenial to the language. It is rarely used in the case of a simple proper name. Thus we could hardly say *The book I have bought, is more expensive than that of John*.

The syntactical connections or the demands of emphasis, however, may make it obligatory or desirable.

The most triumphant death is *that of the martyr*; the most awful is *that of the martyred patriot*; the most splendid *that of the hero* in the hour of victory. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 268.

He might perhaps... make atonement for the distraction which his intrigues had occasioned in the Duke's dominions, and *those of his allies*. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXX, 384.

At the command of the Duke, sanctioned by *that of Louis*, Quentin commenced an account of his journey. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXII, 418.

Mr. Blondel's house was next to *that of Sir Francis Clavering*, in Grosvenor Place. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXVI, 386.

Mr. Arabin's church is two degrees higher than *that of Mrs. Grantly*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. LIII, 461.

We keep, if not our own birthday, *those of our children*. *Ib.*, Ch. LII, 456  
Under whose direction are we to fight, if not under *that of Mr. Balfour?* Daily Telegraph (Westm. Gaz., No. 5642, 9).

The construction with the determinative *that* (or *those*) bears no replacing by the genitive when *of* is specializing or appositional.

Our own position was purely *that of military conquerors*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III.

But this construction is clumsy and unusual in the case of a proper name, as in: What noble rivers were *those of Potomac and Rappahannoc*, abounding in all sorts of fish. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 167. (Rewritten: What noble rivers were *the Potomac and the Rappahannoc*.)

48. Of the classifying genitive the absolute application is very uncommon, it being the ordinary practice to repeat the noun modified: *a gentleman's umbrella* and *a lady's umbrella*. Several instances are, however, found in the following quotation:

We found all kinds of eggs: missel-thrushes' eggs, *wood-pigeons'*, *red-starts'*, *red-linnets'* and many other kinds as well. SWEET, Old Chapel.

49. Only nouns in the individualizing genitive admit of being used substantively. In this application they denote:

- a) a residence, an establishment or a firm:

Can you, when you return from *this lord's*, come to Fullerton? JANE AUSTEN, Northanger Abbey, Ch. XXVIII, 216.

How should you like to go along with me and spend a fortnight at *my brother's*? DICK., Cop., Ch. II, 13b.

Here is *my father's*, Sir, where the light is. Id., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. III, 29.

It (sc. the diamond pin) had come home from *Mr. Polonius's* as I said on Saturday night. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 47.

He was invited to Logwood, *Lady Agnes Foker's*. Id., Pend. I, Ch. XVIII, 183.

*The doctor's* is on the other side of the street. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., §88.

For further illustration see also 3. Compare with the above: And then she orders us to proceed to *Mr. Titmarsh's house*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 56.

- b) a place of worship (church, chapel or cathedral), a town or village dedicated to a patron-saint, e.g.: *St. Paul's*, *St. Peter's*, *St. Andrew's*, *St. Alban's*, *St. Ogg's*, *Bury St. Edmund's*.

i. If you will come to *St. Cuthbert's* some Sunday, I will preach you a sermon on that subject. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. V, 37.

*St. Stephen's* has once more become the centre of the Empire. Rev. of Rev., CXCV, 227a.

ii. My ship the Swan is newly arrived from *St. Sebastian's* laden with Portugal wines. FARQUHAR, The Constant Couple, I, 1, (44).

- c) a day dedicated to a patron-saint.

It was nearly midnight on the eve of *St. Thomas's*, the shortest day in the year. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. II, 8.

50. Obs. I. Occasionally the substantive genitive is used to indicate other notions, as in:

Our first landing was on the eastern bank, at a place called Verplanck's Point . . . Meanwhile . . . two thousand men . . . were carried over to Stoney Point on the western shore, opposite *Verplanck's*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XCII, 975. (sc. *point*.)

He is a little man in *the Duke's* whom every one loves. DOLF WYLLARDE, The Story of Eden, I, Ch. I, 19. (sc. *regiment*.)

*The Duke's* are not all so popular. Ib.

II. Substantive genitives are sometimes vague in meaning. Thus *St. Ewold's* (TROL., Barch. Tow.) stands successively for *St. Ewold's church*, *St. Ewold's parsonage*, *the living of St. Ewold*, *the parish of St. Ewold*.

III. When the substantive genitive denotes a firm, it is felt as a plural and, consequently, governs the plural of the finite verb of which it is the subject.

*Reeves' have* been established 117 years. Advertisement.

*Pickford's have* just delivered a heavy case containing what I take to be tin kettles. PUNCH 1300, 26 Oct., 217.

*Barclay's assure* absolute secrecy: our extensive resources enable us to effect satisfactorily results quickly at least expense. Daily Tel., 1905, 5 Febr., Adv.

IV. Instead of *I am staying at my uncle's* (SWERT), we also find *I am staying with my uncle* (Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. VIII, 123). The latter construction alone is possible with word-groups like *an uncle of my neighbour(s)*, *an uncle of mine*, etc.: *I am staying with an uncle of my neighbour(s)*, (or *an uncle of mine*).

SHAKESPEARE, however, has: *I do dine to-day at the father's of a certain pupil of mine*. Love's Labour Lost, IV, 2, 160.

V. After foreign names of patron-saints the mark of the genitive is sometimes dropped: *the cool shades of San Giovanni* (HUGH CONWAY, Called Back, III, 34).

Also plural nouns are frequently found without it.

The shops are really very entertaining, especially *the mercers*, Miss BURNEY, Evelina, X, 18.

They might have had better balances at *their bankers*. SPENCER, Educ., Ch. I, 22b.

At all *booksellers*. Advertisement.

The suppression of the mark of the genitive after singular nouns is unusual except, perhaps, when the common noun is followed by a proper name in apposition, or when two (or more) nouns connected by *and* are used to denote the line of business, the word-group being preceded by a preposition. Compare 4, b, 3, β.

i. They took all their spare clothes to a *pawnbroker*. W. W. JACOBS, Odd Craft, A, 19.

ii. She desired me to take it on my arrival in London to the great *jeweller*, *Mr. Polonius*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. I, 7.

iii. They went off to the grand *cook and confectioner* of the Brobdingnag quarter. Id., A little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. IV, 320.

51. a) When the genitive is used predicatively, it mostly denotes (a) person(s) that is (are) thought of as the proprietor(s) or originator(s) of whatever is expressed by the subject: *These houses are my uncle's*. *Those poems are my brother's*. The grammatical function is mostly that of nominal part of the predicate, but may be that of predicative adnominal adjunct. Compare Ch. XXXIII, 28, a.

i. Render therefore unto Cæsar the things that are Cæsar's; and unto God the things that are God's. MATTH., XXII, 21.

I love snow and all the forms | Of the radiant frost; I love waves, and winds and storms, | Everything almost | Which is *nature's*, and may be Untainted by man's misery. SHELLEY, Invocation, VI.

Your form is *man's*. BYRON, The Deformed Transformed, I, 1 (490a). It is often said that his manners are *a true gentleman's*. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. IX, 5b.

There is just a foundation of Wordsworthian scheme in the blank verse; but the structure built on it is not *Wordsworth's* at all. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent., Ch. II, 84.

- ii. Two men I honour, and no third. First the toil-worn Craftsman, that with earth-made implement laboriously conquers the Earth and makes her *Man's*. CARLYLE, Sartor Resartus.

- b) In the higher literary style it is also used to represent a person as assigned, obliged, privileged, entitled, etc. to do the action indicated by the subject. Observe the same practice with possessive pronouns. See Ch. XXXIII, 28. b, where fuller illustration is given. What I am truly, | Is *thine and my poor country's* to command. Macb., IV, 3, 132.

All his (sc. Gladstone's) ends were *his country's, his God's, and Truth's*. JOHN MORLEY P.

- c) The predicative genitive does not bear replacing by the construction with the preposition *of*. Thus such a sentence as \**This horse is of our neighbour* is impossible. Nor is its place often taken by a construction with the determinative *that* or *those*. (47, Note.)

In the following quotations approximate equivalents of the predicative genitive are used:

- i. It is not *for an old soldier* to ask many questions. Wash. Irv. 2).

It is *for our merchants and manufacturers* to consider whether they will ignore this rivalry. Times.

- ii. The contest was long, and he (sc. William the Silent) fell in the struggle; but the victory was *to the dead hero*, not *to the living monarch*. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 900a.

#### THE GENITIVE COMPARED WITH THE COMMON CASE.

52. The difference between the individualizing genitive and the common case of attributive nouns is on the whole distinctly perceptible. Thus there is no difficulty in distinguishing between *his mother's tongue*, *the darling's champion*, *the idiot's wife*, *the boy's friends*, *his kinsman's friend*, etc. and *his mother-tongue*, *the darling champion*, *the idiot wife*, *the boy friends*, *his kinsman friend*, etc.

Observe also the difference which a change of the common case into the genitive would involve in:

One of directors is reported to have said that the trouble was due to *Lloyd George finance*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5636, 1c (= *finance after the style of Lloyd George*).

1) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., 88. 2) FOELS.—KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 382.



53. There are, however, not a few cases in which the relation expressed by the genitive is vague or dimmed by other associations, causing the common case to be substituted for the genitive, with numerous irregularities and inconsistencies. Compare also Ch. XXIII, 12.

a) A notable instance of divided usage may be seen in complex proper names of buildings, streets, parks, countries, bays, rivers, etc.

- 1) When the first part of such a complex proper name denotes a person, the language is highly arbitrary, some nouns taking the genitive, however, as regularly as others reject it.
  - i. *St. Paul's Cathedral*, *Lincoln's Inn*, *Gray's Inn*, *Queen's College*, *Regent's Park*, *Drake's Island*, *Behring's Straits* (Cas. Conc. Cycl.), *Hudson's Bay* (ib.), *Pompey's theatre* (DEIGHTON, Ham I. III, 2, 96).
  - ii. *Buckingham Palace*, *Victoria Station*, *Marlborough House*, *Steinway Hall*, *Balliol College*, *Magdalen College*, *Hyde Park*, *Frobisher Strait* (Cas. Conc. Cycl.), *Davis Strait* (ib.)

When such complex proper names are preceded by the definite article belonging to the noun modified (or the whole word-group), the common-case form is mostly used, except in those names in which the definite article is also found absent. (Ch. XXXI, 30, d, 1.)

- i. *the Albert Hall*, *the Alexandra Palace*, *the Swishtail Seminary*, *the Clarendon hotel*, *the Garrick Theatre*.
- ii. *(the) St. James's Hall*, *(the) Martin's Hall*.

Thus also the common case or the genitive is used in the following quotations, according as the definite article, or another modifier, is felt to belong to the noun modified or the modifying noun.

- i. *The Government tariff scheme*. Times.  
(Some) appear to be torn between an equal dislike both of the Lansdowne Bill and of the *Government Bill*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5619, 1c.  
The Parisian reported... that she had no *Titanic passengers*. Times, No. 1842, 301d.
- ii. *The Dutch Government's methods*. Rev. of Rev., CCXII, 284b.  
It seems to us extremely unlikely that the Peers will do other than reject *the Government's scheme*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5466, 2a.  
Much nonsense has been talked in the heat of the moment about *the Government's House of Lords policy*. Ib., No. 5490, 1b.  
*The Titanic's passengers* in the Carpathia numbered 868. Times, No. 1842, 301d.

Compare also the following pairs of quotations:

- i. \* The ghosts of the *Prior children* peeped out from the banisters. THACK., *Lovel the Widower*, Ch. II, 25.  
\*\* Do you think, when I spoke anon of the ghosts of *Prior's children* I mean that any of them are dead? Ib.
- ii. \* On the *Réaumur thermometer* the distance is divided into 80 degrees. Cas. Con. Cycl., s. v. *thermometer*.  
\*\* *Réaumur's thermometer* is used only in North-Western Europe. Ib.

Irregularities are not wanting. Thus the genitive seems to be uncalled for in:

I have had the honour to be appointed by your committee to the trying task of reading the *Williams' Lecture* on Murder. DE QUINCEY, On

Murder considered as one of the Fine Arts (PEACOCK, Sel. Es., 305).

It was arranged that Mr. Slope should not return in the *Stanhope's carriage* to Barchester. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLI, 364.

The *Hudson's Bay* Company has gradually extinguished this custom. Times. (Compare: From this point the *Hudson Bay* Company's steamers cover the whole distance to the Arctic Ocean. Ib.)

I have been taken to task lately . . . for writing about a *Montagu's harrier* seen in Sussex. Westm. Gaz., No. 5631, 2c.

- 2) When the modifying part of a geographical name is not the name of a person, it almost regularly has the common-case form.

i. *Portland Bill, Calais Roads, Delagoa Port, Trafalgar Bay.*

ii. *Trafalgar's Bay* (Il. Lond. News).

- 3) It will not seem strange that, when the modifying noun is a plural in *s*, and also when it is a singular in *s*, the mark of the genitive is apt to be neglected.

Thus: *All Souls College, a United States security, St. Pancras Church* (THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. X, 120), by the side of *All Souls' College, a United States' security* (Christm. Car., II, 26), *St. Pancras' Church*.

- b) It is but natural that when the modifying noun is one that hardly admits of the genitive in the present stage of the language, the common case is mostly preferred to the genitive.

**Abbey.** Carved stones of *the Abbey-ruin* in the park. TEN., Princ., Prol., 14.  
**chestnut.** The day when in *the chestnut shade* I found the blue Forget-me-not. Id., The Miller's Daught., XXVI.

**city.** With that Adrastus' bonds were done away, | And forthwith to *the city gates* he ran. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., Son of Cræus., LXIV.

**cottage.** I left *our cottage threshold*. WORDSWORTH, Nutting, 4.

**gateway.** A happy lover who has come, | To look on her that loves him well, | Who lights and rings *the gateway bell*, | And learns her gone and far from home. TEN., In Mem., VIII, 1.

**mast.** It was a fine sunny morning when the thrilling cry of "land!" was given from *the mast-head*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., The Voyage.

Note I. Such combinations of a similar nature as have the mark of the genitive, have come down to us from the older stages of the language, which made a much more extensive use of the genitive than the present. (16, *d*.) Also in these the common case not infrequently takes the place of the genitive, especially when the head-word is such a word as *side* beginning with a sibilant.

**bed.** Bessie stood at *the bed-foot* with a basin in her hand. Jane Eyre, Ch. III, 16.

I slipped to my feet at *the bed-side*. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 22b.

He put on his hat, and, pausing by *the bed-side* on his way to the door, added [etc.]. Id., Ol. Twist, Ch. I, 21.

**boat.** Often, where clear-stemm'd platans guard | The outlet, did I turn away | *The boat-head* down a broad canal. TEN., Rec. of the Arab. Nights, III.

**finger.** When one is five-and-twenty, one has not chalk-stones at *one's finger-ends* that the touch of a handsome girl should be entirely indifferent. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. II, 353.

He was a business man to *his finger-tips*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No: 5335, 2a. If ever there was a being who was a man of letters to *his finger-tips*, it was he. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 495, 545b.

(Compare also: The instances are not to seek, — are at *the fingers of us all*. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 11.)

**moon.** He laid it out on my bed in *the moonlight*. DICK., *Cop.*, VI, 43a.

**pin.** To the majority . . . it matters not a *pin-head* whether the Poems were the work of Ossian, the son of Fingal . . . or of a James Mac Pherson. *Daily News*, 1894, 11 June 6/2. (Thus also with no alternative genitive: *pin-point*, *pin-prick*.)

On the other hand the *s* is sometimes a Late-English insertion.

This is the case with *bridesman* and *bridesmaid*, which have taken the place of an earlier *brideman* and *bridemaid*. Compare *bridegroom*, *bride-bed*, *bride-chamber*, etc. (MURRAY).

II. In the following quotations the common-case form of *life* corresponds rather to a classifying than an individualizing genitive (16, *d*; 44, Obs. IV):

He makes it his *life work* to determine those positions for each sound. LLOYD, *Mod. Lang. Quart.*

Goethe doubtless puts his own deepest insight into the Chorus Mysticus with which he closes Faust, his great *life-work*. DAVIDSON, *Prolegomena to 'In Memoriam'*, Ch. XI, 88.

Lamartine and John Stuart Mill had *life partners* who were perfectly congenial. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 478, 4a.

c) Quite common is the use of the common case instead of the genitive before gerunds. Ch. XIX, 5.

54. Also when the genitive is classifying, it is mostly clearly distinct from the common-case form of the noun. Compare *a giant's task* with *a giant tree*, *a sportsman's tailor* with *a sportman tailor*.

55. But the vagueness is often greater than in the case of the individualizing genitive, which causes a more frequent substitution of the common case. The genitive sometimes seems to be avoided because the context might cause it to be understood as individualizing. Thus in such a sentence as *Now health forsakes that angel face* (BURNS, *On the Illness of a Favourite Child*) the placing of *angel* in the genitive might misrepresent the author's ideas.

The common-case form is used for the genitive.

a) occasionally with names of persons.

**angel.** And hearken, my merry-men! What time or where | Did she pass, that maid with her heavenly brow, | With her look so sweet and her eyes so fair, | And her graceful step and her *angel air*. SCOTT, *Bridal of Triermain*, I, iv.

So sweet a face, such *angel grace*, | In all that land had never been. TEN. *The Beggar Maid*.

And to and fro With books, with flowers, with *Angel offices*, Like creatures native unto gracious act, | And in their own clear element, they moved. *Id.*, *Princ.*, VII, 11. Compare: She had *an angel's face*. *Mrs. Wood*, *East Lynne*, I, 121.

**baby**. Her *baby face* looked exquisite now in its perfect peace. *EDNA LYALL*, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. VII, 60.

He stooped to kiss the *baby face* that was temptingly offered to him. *Ib.*, Ch. XII, 97. A fault, common especially in bad southern English, and found almost invariably in *baby speech*, is the substitution of [v, f] for [ð, θ]. *RIEPMANN*, *The Sounds of Spoken English*, § 31. (Compare: In "*ladies' speech*" the [öu] occurs even in stressed syllables, and may then be confidently described as a sign of affectation. *Ib.*, § 44.)

**bachelor**. But he was little disposed to marriage, he said, . . . spoke rather contemptuously of the institution, and in favour of a *bachelor life*. *THACK.*, *Peñd.*, II, Ch. VII, 71.

He often asked me to *his bachelor home*. *JAMES PAYN*, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, A, 17. (Compare: You know I am only to stay in my *bachelor's quarters* a month longer. *THACK.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 56.)

**boy**. And you liken — boyish babble — this *boy-love* of yours with mine. *TEN.*, *Locksley Hall*, *Sixty Years After*, 6.

**dame**. It was a poor old-fashioned *dame-school*. *WILLIAM MOTTRAM*, *The True Story of George Eliot*, Ch. I, 6. (Compare with this the legend of a picture on the preceding page: *The Dame's School*, *Griff.* *George Eliot's First School*.)

**demon**. A mode of warfare of which in *her demon moods* she was past mistress. *Mrs. WARD*, *Marcella*, I, Ch. I, 11. (Compare the quotations with *deuce* and *devil* in 41, b.)

**foot**. The coach was going at a *footpace* up a steep hill. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38b.

He went out at a *foot-pace*. *RUDY. KIPLING*, *Wee Willie Winkie*, 200. Compare: Catherine was driving at a *foot's pace* up a steep hill. *Mrs. WARD*, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 126. (*foot* = *pedestrian*.) (The construction with the genitive is not mentioned in *MURRAY*, and seems to be rare.)

**giant**. But Douglas rose. | And thrust between the struggling foes, | His *giant strength*. *SCOTT*, *Lady*, II, xxxiv, 22.

Her father was, in his way, a remarkable man. A stalwart, of *giant strength*, self-reliant, energetic and practical. *WILLIAM MOTTRAM*, *George Eliot*, Ch. I, 4.

Sublime courage, unfailing skill, *giant strength*, paternal tenderness — these things may win for some man the imperishable title of Father of United South Africa. *Rev. of Rev.* (Compare: *a giant's task*. *Mrs. WARD*, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 191.)

**guardian**. Being permitted in this way to revisit the scenes of his enterprise, and keep a *guardian eye* upon the river. *WASH. IRV.*, *Rip van Winkle*.

**infant**. How quickly the *infant eye* comprehends the look which precedes the verbal expression of an idea. *J. HABBERTON*, *Helen's Bab.*, 41.

**maiden**. O Walter, I have shelter'd here | Whatever *maiden grace* | The good old Summers, year by year | Made ripe in Summer-chace. *TEN.*, *Talking Oak*, X.

**maniac**. "His cousin what?" I shriek with a *maniac laugh*. *THACK.*, *Lovel the Widower*, Ch. II, 27.

**master**. He has shown how much may be done for a place in hours of leisure by one *master spirit*. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-book*, *Roscoe*, (14a).

In every line from Addison's pen Steele found a *master-stroke*. *THACK.*, *Henry Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 245.



It is better to reproduce in another tongue the *master-piece of a master-mind* — provided you do it well — than to brew small beer of one's own. Not. and Quer. It is hardly necessary to remind either classical scholars or lovers of English literature of the influence which the *master minds* of antiquity have exercised upon the greatest English writers. Times. (Compare: It is a *master's work*. Acad.)

**minstrel.** O *minstrel Harp*, still must thine accents sleep? SCOTT, Lady, I, l.

**missionary.** I do not understand a *missionary life*. Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXIV, 495.

**partisan.** This reception will go far to wipe out from his memory the unfairness of the *partisan attacks* upon him. Times.

To those who take a *purely non-partisan* view of the question, the outbreaks that occur from time to time on the Rand are rather alarming. Daily Mail.

**peasant.** And much it pleased him to peruse | The songs of the Sicilian muse,  
Bucolic songs by Meli sung | In the familiar *peasant tongue*. LONGFELLOW, Tales of a Wayside Inn, Prel. (Compare: Greek is a *slave's tongue*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. III, 13b.)

*Peasant German* has lost much more of its original grammar than has the German spoken by the educated people. H. BRADLEY, The Making of English, Ch. II, 18.

They had such a man ready to hand in M. Fallières, of *peasant origin*. Rev. of Rev., CXCV, 120.

**sailor.** Upon the body in the well were found a *sailor hat* with the name "H. M. S. Swift," no collar of any kind [etc.]. Truth, No. 1801, 11a.

**scoundrel.** "A penny saved is a penny got." | Firm to this *scoundrel maxim* keepeth he. THOMSON, Castle of Indol., I, l.

**seraph.** Yes; to thy tongue shall *seraph words* be given. CAMPBELL, Pleasures of Hope, I, 183.

**shepherd.** He has 35,000 *shepherd dogs* to look after 1,500,000 sheep. Titbits, No. 1291, 400a.

**spendthrift.** The colonel was right when he rebuked him for his *spendthrift follies*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LIII, 554.

**vagabond.** There is always, however, a kind of *vagabond consolation* in a man's having nothing in the world to lose. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOE., Handl., I, 125).

**woman.** The special advantage of this system of *woman work* among the poor is that the ladies are able to obtain all the discipline and habits of devotion in sisterhoods, without life vows. Times, No. 1809, 707b.

**yeoman.** He (sc. Dickens) did *yeoman service* to the children's cause. Times, No. 1832, 112b. (Compare: 41, b.)

Note. The uninflected form is regular with adjectives and participles partially converted into nouns. (Ch. XXIX, 14a.)

the *sick ward* of a hospital; the *condemned hold* (GAY, Beggar's Opera, III, 2); to be placed on the *Retired List* (Times No. 1843, 333b).

In the following quotation the absence of the mark of the genitive gives rise to obscurity:

That life (sc. of William the Silent) was a *noble Christian epic*. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 898b. (= the *epic of a noble Christian*.)

Also proper names of persons are often kept in the common case.

I have the happiness to name her Ladyship among my acquaintances — and you bear, sir, a *Rosherville face*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. X, 106.

## b) more commonly with the names of animals.

**animal.** It would appear that this superstition as to names is later than the first giving of *animal names* to groups. ANDREW LANG, *A cad.*, MDCCLXV, 212b.

**bird-of-prey.** Gladstone had a wonderful eye — a *bird-of-prey eye*. *Times*.

**cat-and-dog.** She and her sister lead a *cat-and-dog life* together. Jane Eyre, Ch. X, 107.

**eagle.** Thou hast an *eagle eye*. BULWER, Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 16. (Compare: The Duke of Omnium (saw) with his *eagle's eye* that the welfare of his countrymen at large required that some great step should be initiated. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. VIII, 78.)

**ferret.** He was endeavouring to pierce the darkness with his *ferret eyes*. *Christm. Car.*, II, 31.

**goose.** Where gott'st thou that *goose* look? *Macbeth*, V, 3, 12.

**lion.** "If you stir, Mr. Cary, you have to do with Richard Grenville!" thunders the *lion voice*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XII, 108. But never in the worst moments did that *lion heart* show signs of weakness. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCI, 238b.

**ostrich.** Strings of various coloured birds' eggs were suspended above it (sc. the mantel-piece): a great *ostrich egg* was hung from the centre of the room. WASH. IRV., *The Legend of Sleepy Hollow*, (353).

**rabbit.** A *rabbit mouth* that is ever agape. TEN., *Maud*, I, x, ii.

**serpent.** And one, in whom all evil fancies clung | Like *serpent eggs* together, laughingly | Would hint at worse in either. TEN., *En. Arden*, 476. She contrived by means of an angel face, a *serpent tongue* and a heart as hard as a diamond, to make every weak man fall in love with her. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XXIX, 218b.

The *serpent smile* is your countrymen's proper distinction. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. V, 108.

**wild beast.** In the hunted air of the people there was yet some *wild-beast thought* of the possibility of turning at bay. DICK., *Tale of Two Cities*, I, Ch. V, 45.

**wild-cat.** When a political party has been kept too long in opposition, it is inclined to adopt all manner of *wild-cat theories*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVIII, 341a.

Note. Sometimes the use of the common case seems to be favoured by the occurrence of a sibilant at the end of the modifier. Compare: *horse-flesh* (-meat) with *dog's-flesh* (-meat).

## c) almost regularly with the names of things in late formations.

**funeral.** While through the meadows Like fearful shadows Slowly passes A *funeral train*. LONGFELLOW, *Afternoon in February*, I.

**State.** He has recognized the justice of the demand for secular education in the *State schools*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIV, 138a.

**vegetable.** A *vegetable life* may not be the highest ideal of holiday refreshment. But [etc.]. *Times*.

**village.** I saw the taper spire of a *village church* rising from the brow of a neighbouring hill. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-bk.*, *The Voyage*, 12b. The red sun flashes | On *village windows*. LONGFELLOW, *Afternoon in February*, I.

56. Obs. I. When the modifying noun is a plural in *s* there is variable practice, the apostrophe being written by some and omitted by others. Thus we find *ladies' waiting-room*, *savings' bank*, *servants' hall* by the side of *ladies waiting room*, *savings bank*, *servants hall*.

Some compounds are always written without the apostrophe. Such, among others, are *bees-wax*, *swansdown*.

Thus also in adnominal word-groups made up of a numeral and the name of a measure of time (42, *b*, 2; Ch. XXV, 32, Obs. I), the apostrophe is sometimes omitted.

John Keats was born, a *seven months* child, on the 29th of October 1795. W. M. ROSSETTI, Prefatory Notice to the Poetical Works of John Keats.

What possible inroad upon the authority of the Boers could the *five-years* franchise have ever made, if Mr. Schreiner's figures are all correct. Daily Chronicle.

A notable instance of divided practice is also afforded by *trade union*, the usual form, and its variants *trades union* and *trades' union*.

- i. The *trade union* endeavours to supply the workman with a reserve fund, that will enable him to stand out for his price. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. *trade unions*.

If a *trade union* comes into the State scheme, some understanding will have to be arrived at. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 2a.

- ii. The letter was from the secretary of a Midland *trades union*. Mrs. WARD, MARG., II, 234.

- iii. They are bound to say this to every man joining a *trades' union*. CH. KINGSLEY, Alton Locke, Pref., 102.

The plural also appears under three forms: *trade unions*, *trades unions* and *trades' unions*.

- i. A quarter of a century ago *trade-unions* were regarded as criminal conspiracies. Graph.

The object for which *trade unions* have been formed, may be expressed briefly as overcoming or offsetting the disabilities of labour. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. *trade unions*.

The Friendly Societies and the *trade unions* all have criticisms to make and amendments to propose. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 2a.

- ii. The custom of congregation gave the guilds, of which our *trades unions* are the degenerate successors. WALT. BESANT, Lond., I, 62.

- iii. The misdoings of the *Trades' Unions* are no argument against the extension of the suffrage. CH. KINGSLEY, Alton Locke, Pref., 103.

Another instance of variable practice may be seen in *woman suffrage*, the usual form, and its variants *woman's suffrage*, *women suffrage* and *women's suffrage*.

- i. It is a rather stubborn fact, which has its bearing on the *Woman Suffrage* question, that adult suffrage would give us a majority of female voters. Westm. Gaz., No. 5642, 2a.

The movement for *Woman-Suffrage* and equality between the sexes. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 467, 492a.

Mr. Lloyd George's speech... was mainly devoted to *woman suffrage*. Times, No. 1822, 959b.

- ii. *Woman's suffrage*. TEN BRUG., Dict.<sup>3</sup>, s. v. *woman*.
- iii. Portugal and *women suffrage*. Rev. of Rev., No. 256, 365a.  
She was hearty in her condemnation of recent militant *Women Suffrage* tactics. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 496, 596b.
- iv. Recent demands for *women's suffrage* have ended in disaster. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. *suffrage*.  
To the end of his life he was a strong opponent of *women's suffrage*.  
Il. Lond. News, No. 3775, 330a.

II. It is interesting to compare adnominal word-groups that are made up of a numeral and the name of a measure. The genitive plural is all but regularly used, when the measure is one of time (42, b, 2; 56, Obs. I), the uninflected form is the rule, when the measure is one of another description: *a five-pound note*, *a two-foot rule*, *a four-mile journey*; but *a five hours' journey*. See also Ch. XXV, 32, Obs. I.

In the following quotation the common case is exceptionally used for the genitive:

I made the *hour-and-a-half trip* between New York and Hillcrest. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, Ch. I, 10.

The chief political event of the week is the *hour-and-a-half speech* which Mr. Balfour made at Edinburgh on Wednesday. Westm. Gaz., No. 5430, 1c.

The common-case form sometimes seems to have a more distinctly classifying meaning than the genitive plural. Thus according to KRUISINGA (*A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 343) "the difference 'between (a) *a three-mile journey* and (β) *a three miles' journey* seems 'to be that (a) is more of a compound and used to denote a kind of 'journey' (compare *a two-year-old horse*); whereas (β) applies to a 'special case.'"

III. In conclusion some words should be devoted to the use of the genitive, as compared with the common case, of the names of seasons, months, days and parts of the day, when used adnominally.

a) When the genitive is distinctly individualizing, as appears from the absence of the (in)definite article, it does not bear replacing by the common case. (16, c.) Of the names of seasons and months the genitive is, however, used only in the higher literary style, especially poetry, the analytical construction being the rule in ordinary language.

i. Darkly that day rose: '*Autumn's mock sunshine* of the faded woods' Was all the life of it. TEN., *Aylmer's Field*, 610.

ii. Alike to him was time or tide, | *December's snow*, or *July's tide*. SCOTT, *Lay, I*, XXI.

iii. *Friday's meeting* was the 16th day of the inquiry. Times.

Our Cape Town Correspondent telegraphed under *Sunday's date*. Id.

Another strange feature of *Wednesday's debate* was the speech by the Archbishop of Canterbury. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 7b.

iv. *That morning's breakfast* passed heavily off. Pickw., Ch. II.

b) When, however, the individualizing function is dimmed (44 Obs. IV) and especially when the genitive is distinctly classifying, common case often takes its place.



- 1) Of the names of seasons only *summer* and *winter* seem at all to admit of the classifying genitive, *autumn* and *spring* having, apparently, regularly the common case instead. This latter form appears to be more frequent than the genitive also in the case of *winter* and *summer*. Compare the quotations given in 42, a, 3 with the following:

**autumn.** Even the indefatigable Mr. Towers had stolen an *autumn holiday*. TROL., *Barch Tow.*, Ch. XXXIII, 287.

A still September afternoon, lightly charged with *autumn mists*. Mrs. WARD, *Sir George Tres.*, III, Ch. XXI, 177a.

**spring.** The *spring fashions* were arrived. Mrs. GASK., *Cran.*, Ch. XII, 231. The poplar was bursting into *spring beauty*. *ib.*, Ch. XIV, 260.

**summer.** So now my *summer task* is ended, Mary. SHELLEY, *Revolt*, Ded., 1. There was a certain person in the village with whom on those *golden summer evenings* I should have liked to have taken a stroll in the hay-fields. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 2.

There is a saying that the weather will not settle to its *summer fineness* "until the cuckoo has eaten up the mud". *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5631, 2c.

**winter.** The house was sheltered from the *winter cold* and the *summer heat*. LYTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. III, 40.

The genitive is regular in *in a summer's day* (= in a long day), *any summer's day* (= practically every day in summer).

I'll assure, a' (vulgar for *he*) uttered as brave words at the bridge as you shall see *in a summer's day*. *Henry V.*, III, 6, 67.

A proper man, as one shall see *in a summer's day*. *Mids.*, I, 2, 77.

spoke of the Montagu's harrier, and that was of a fact which I have seen with my own eyes, and a fact which I have shown *any summer's day*, until some three years ago, on a certain stretch of Ashdown Forest. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5631, 2c.

Conversely *midsummer* appears to have the common case regularly.

**midsummer.** Three o'clock upon a still, pure, bright *midsummer morning*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XII, 107a.

- 2) Of the names of months only the common-case form has been found in a classifying meaning.

A fresh *May-dawn* it was, | When I walked forth upon the glittering grass, And wept, I knew not why. SHELLEY, *Revolt*, Ded., 22.

It was a very fine *May day*. *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 491.

And oft in ramblings on the wold, | When *April nights* began to blow, | And April's crescent glimmer'd cold, | I saw the village lights below. TEN., *The Miller's Daughter*, XIV. (*April's crescent* is an instance of an individualizing genitive.)

He was thinking of the poor emaciated soul George had seen him tending in the cottage garden on that *April day*. Mrs. WARD, *Sir George Tres.*, Ch. XXIV, 209a.

The captives, or hostages, who were hurried away that terrible *January night* at the command of Akbar Khan, had yet to be recovered. JUSTIN MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 55.

- 3) Of the names of days also the common case seems to replace the classifying genitive almost regularly. Compare the quotation in 42, a, 2 with the following:

The lonely Hall, | Whose *Friday fare* was Enoch's ministering. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 100.

He had heard something of Mrs. Proudie and her *Sunday schools*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLIII, 386.

I wonder whether Mrs. Grantly would like me to drive over and inspect her *Sabbath-day school*. Ib.

The *Saturday Westminster Gazette*.

Would you kindly permit me to inquire through your "*Saturday Letter-Bag*" for information as to [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 5625, 4c.

An occasional variant of *Sunday best* is *Sunday's best*.

Little family parties dressed in their *Sunday best*. JEPHSON<sup>1)</sup>.

To go to fair I drest . . . in my *Sunday's best*. SOUTHEY<sup>1)</sup>.

- 4) Of the names of parts of a day the classifying genitive is, indeed, frequent enough (42, a, 1), but the common case seems to be more frequent, being apparently, regularly used in many combinations, such as *morning (evening, night) air, morning (evening) dress (party), afternoon (morning) school (lessons), morning (evening) prayers*.

**evening.** The table was set for the *evening repast*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 141).

**morning.** *Morning parties*, as a rule, are failures. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLII, 367.

In a private house or in private grounds a *morning party* is a bore. Ib.

She was dressed in her brightest of *morning dresses*. Ib., Ch. XLVI, 409.

Eleanor was dressed a full hour before the time fixed in the Ullathorne household for *morning prayers*. Ib., Ch. XLIX, 434.

**night.** She was a wonderful object to look at in her *night attire*. THACK., Henry Esmond, I, Ch. V, 46.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

## CHAPTER XXV.

### NUMBER OF NOUNS.

#### FORM.

1. The usual way of forming the plural of English nouns is by adding *s* or *es* to the singular.
2. Obs. 1. The *s* is voiced, unless preceded by a voiceless consonant. In the termination *es* the *s* is always voiced, and *es* is syllabic, i. e. sounded as a separate syllable, when preceded by a sibilant. This equally applies to such nouns as in the singular have the sibilant followed by silent *e*: *horse* — *horses*; *age* — *ages*.

In the following nouns the *th*, though voiceless in the singular, becomes voiced through the influence of the termination of the plural: *bath* — *baths*, *mouth* — *mouths*, *oath* — *oaths*, *path* — *paths*, *wreath* — *wreaths*. In the plurals *laths*, *truths* and *youths* the *th* is pronounced by some with voice, by some with breath; in *growths* and *heaths* it seems to be breathed with most, if not all, speakers.

In the above nouns the *th* is preceded by a long vowel, which may be considered as the cause of its becoming vocalized. When preceded by a short vowel or a consonant, the *th* invariably remains breathed in the plural: *death* — *deaths*; *month* — *months*. This is also the case when the preceding vowel has become lengthened through the *r* as in *birth* — *births*; *fourth* — *fourths*. In *hearths*, however, the *th* is voiced.

In unstressed positions the voiceless *th* is preserved: *twentieth* — *twentieths*. Compare: WEBST., Princ. of Pron., § 99; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1001; KRUISINGA, A Gram. of Pres. Eng., § 282.

As to the pronunciation of *cloths*, MURRAY (N. E. D., s. v. *cloth*) observes that northerners generally pronounce the *th* with breath, Londoners usually with voice, the preceding vowel being lengthened. Some Londoners make the *th* breathed in compounds as *table-cloths*, *neck-cloths*, many to the same when the word is used as a material noun (kinds of cloth).

- II. The plural suffix *s* has come down from the Old English *as*, which terminated the nominative and accusative plural of the most numerous class of masculine nouns of the strong declension: *stān* — *stānas*. On account of its never meaning anything else than the nominative or accusative plural, it was better adapted to become the universal termination for the plural than any of the other plural endings used in English, which might also have other grammatical functions. BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 36.

In course of time the ending *as* degenerated into *es*, sometimes into *ys* or *is*, which continued to be syllabic. Syllabic *es* is still the ordinary mark of the plural in CHAUCER. In SPENSER, however, the syllabic *es* has already disappeared, except, of course, after sibilants. EMERSON, *Mid. Eng. Read.*, § 123; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 188. And fyrr Phebus ryseth up so brighte, | That al the orient laugheth of the lighte, | And with his *stremes* dryeth in the *greves* | The silver *dropes*, hanging on the *leves*. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales*, A, 1493—1497.

A GENTLE Knight was pricking on the plaine. | Yeladd in mightie *armes* and silver shielde. | Wherein old dint of deepe *wounds* did remaine. | The cruel *markes* of many a bloody field. SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, I, i, 1.

In the form *clothes* the ending *es* is never pronounced as a separate syllable. The distinction between *cloths* and the plurale tantum *clothes* 'is chiefly of the 19th century'. MURRAY, s. v. *clothes*.

Another common suffix for the plural in Old English was *an*, which terminated all nouns of the weak declension: *nama* — *naman*; *sunne* — *sunnan*; *ēage* — *ēagan*. The ending *an* has survived in *en*, which is found in the plural of a few English nouns to this day.

Some of these plurals in *en*, however, must not be traced to Old English, but to Early Southern Middle English, which exhibited a movement towards making *en* the regular plural ending of nouns. Thus *shoes* was in this dialect *shoon*, but in Old English *scōs* or *scōos*. For further details see EMERSON, *Mid. Eng. Read.*, § 132; BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 40; JESPERSEN, *Growth and Structure*, § 185; KERN, *Vereenvoudiging*, 14.

- III. In SHAKESPEARE the termination of the plural, when preceded by a sibilant, written *s*, *se*, *ss*, *ce* and *ge*, is frequently left unpronounced, and sometimes even left unwritten. ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 471; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 189.

i. As the | dead *car casses* of | unburied men. Coriol., III, 3, 122.

Thinking | upon | his *ser vices* took, | from you. Ib., II, 3, 231.

ii. It is | so. Are | there *ba lance* here | to weigh | The flesh? Merch. of Ven., IV, 1, 256.

My *sense* | are stopped. Son., CXII.

3. The bulk of English nouns take *s*. The termination *es* is added:

a) to all nouns ending in a sibilant: i. e. a blade —, or a blade-point consonant: *bus* — *bus(es)*; *gas* — *gases*; *glass* — *glasses*; *box* — *boxes*; *topaz* — *topazes*; *fez* — *fez(z)es*; *quiz* — *quizzes*; *waltz* — *waltzes*; *dish* — *dishes*; *church* — *churches*.

b) to nouns in *o* that have become thoroughly English: *buffalo* — *buffaloes*. Thus also: *cargo*, *echo*, *flamingo*, *hero*, *negro*, *no*, *potato*, *tomato*, *volcano*.



In the case of such nouns in *o* as have still more or less a foreign ring about them, usage is arbitrary and far from uniform. Thus we find *s* as well as *es* in the plural of *bravo*, *calico*, *commando*, *desperado*, *domino*, *embargo*, *fresco*, *grotto*, *indigo*, *innuendo*, *magnifico*, *memento*, *motto*, *mosquito*, *pallisado*, *peccadillo*, *photo*, *portico*, *salvo*, *stiletto*, *tobacco*, *tornado*, *torpedo*. See especially FOWLER, *Concise Oxford Dict.*, Pref., 6.

A simple *s* is invariably added to:

- 1) nouns ending in *oo*, and such as have the *o* preceded by a vowel: *cuckoo*, *Hindoo*; *cameo*, *duo*, *folio*, *nuncio*, *ratio*, *seraglio*, *studio*, *tercio* (= *tertio*), *trio*.
- 2) Italian and Latin terms of art and science: *canto*, *cento*, *crescendo*, *duodecimo*, *octavo*, *quarto*, *piano*, *proviso*, *rondo*, *solo* [plural also *solì* (9)], *tyro*, *virtuoso* [plural also *virtuosi* (9)], *zero*.
- 3) some words borrowed from the Spanish and the Portuguese: *albino*, *gaucho*, *guanaco*, *merino*.

Note. The *e* may have been retained in the termination of nouns ending in *o*, to denote length of vowel, this being one of the functions of this letter in many German dialects. The retention of the *e* may also be due to a desire of exhibiting the voiced pronunciation of the *s*, simple *os*, as in *chaos* suggesting the breath-sound. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 49.

The following illustrative quotations must suffice:

i. **bilboes**. You shan't go to the *bilboes* this bout. SMOLLETT, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXIII, 16b.

**buffalo**. The Pontifical State is abandoned to *buffaloes* and wild boars. MAC., *Popes*, (559a).

**cargo**. There should be a more rigid examination of *cargoes*. *Times*.

**dominoes**. I was never weary of playing at *dominoes* with Mrs. Primmins. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 19.

**fresco**. Their open interiors all and each radiant with the gaudy, yet harmonious colours of *frescoes*. *Id.*, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. I, 10a.

**innuendo**. Mr. Joshua Rigg, in fact, appeared to trouble himself little about any *innuendoes*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXV, 250.

**jingo**. When the *jingoes* left office, they had raised the expenditure on war to £ 76,367,000. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVI, 333a.

**memento**. The soldier was offering for sale all sorts of *mementoes* of the fight. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 388.

**mosquito**. Lapland is a country that abounds in *mosquitoes* and knorts. *Daily Mail* (LLOYD, *North. Eng.*, 86).

**motto**. One of our *moltoes* is this haughty address to the Romans, — 'If we fall, ye fall also'. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. I, 80.

**peccadillo**. It is one of life's little ironies that men continually go unwhipped of justice for their great crimes and get smartly trounced for the veriest *peccadilloes*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVI, 337b.

**salvo**. At three in the afternoon the batteries fired *salvoes*. *Daily Chron.*  
**veto**. What with *vetoes* and retaliation *vetoes*, the whole thing (sc. the Women's Parliament) would be absurd and impossible. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 492, 474c.

- ii. **bravo.** Can you dwell in your father's house, without towers and fortresses, and the bought swords of *bravos*? LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 53.

**commando.** The news of the British disasters have undoubtedly encouraged many waverers to join the Boer *commandos*. *Times*.

**curio.** I am too fond of *curios* to part with this. *Il. Mag.*

**duo, trio.** The talking was done in *duos* and *trios* more or less inharmonious. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. X, 62.

**gazebo.** *Gazebos* or summer-houses hanging over peagreen canals. THACK., *Notes on a Week's Holiday* (PARDOE, *Sel. Eng. Es.*, 449).

**mustachio.** The captain coming out, curling his *mustachios*, mounted the black charger pawing among the straw. *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 136.

**photo.** They (sc. those pictures) are some *photos* of the Khaibar and Tirah. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. V, 41a.

**piano.** They went off to the piano, which was situated, as *pianos* usually are, in the back drawing-room. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 32.

**punctilio.** These treaties ought to have been officially notified with all due *punctilios* to the other signatories. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVI, 348a.

**octavo.** Other gentlemen carried under their arms goodly *octavos*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 305.

**salvo.** *Salvos* of cannon were likewise fired. MOTLEY, *Rise*, IV, Ch. II, 571.

**studio.** She was known in all the *studios* of the quarter. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 200.

**tercio.** England was armed to confront the *tercios* of Spain, when Parma awaited the Armada's sails. *Acad.*

- c) to nouns ending in *y* preceded by a consonant, the *y* being changed to *i*: *lady* — *ladies*.

When the *y* is preceded by a vowel, the plural is formed by simply suffixing *s*: *boy* — *boys*; *key* — *keys*; *quay* — *quays*.

In the digraph *qu* the *u* is a consonant; hence the plural of *colloquy* and *soliloquy*, etc. is *colloquies*, *soliloquies*, etc.

Note I. From an historical point of view it would be more accurate to say that the *ie* has been changed in the singular to *y*: the Early Modern English way of spelling these words in the singular being *ladie*, *glorie*, etc. The *ie* was kept in the plural probably to show that the following *s* was voiced, simple *is*, as in *crisis*, suggesting the breath-sound. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 49; NESFIELD, *Hist. Eng. and Deriv.*, § 109; JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 3.134.

II. The plural of *fly* when denoting a light one-horse covered carriage is mostly written *flies*. JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 3.138.

i. I remarked very few carriages, mostly cabs and *flies*. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VII, (334).

No *flies* so pleasant as Brighton *flies*. *Id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. IX, 102.

ii. *Flies* came and went. Mrs. WOOD, *Orville College*, Ch. I, 11.

III. The plural of *sty* in the sense of 'pen or inclosure for swine', is sometimes written *styes*. There is, of course, nothing unusual in the spelling *styes* as the plural of *stye* (also spelled *sty*) in the sense of 'small inflammatory tumour on the edge of the eye'.

Sheep of half-a-dozen different breeds and *styes* of bloated preposterous pigs. HUXL., *Darw.*, Ch. I, 15.

It reminds them of the horrible acts of vandalism committed by people who have torn down beautiful ruins in order to build cottages and walls of *pigstyes*. Westm. Gaz.

IV. Weak *ey* was till lately changed into *ie* before the plural *s*. Instances of the old practice are occasionally met with in the latest English. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1021; ALFORD, Queen's Eng.<sup>8</sup>, § 37.

i. When Mildred was about fifteen, he made one of his rare *journies* to London. (?), Mad. Lëroux, Ch. II.

The *monies* expended on you in your minority far exceed the sum to which you are entitled. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 257.

ii. A purser is a commissioned officer who has the charge of the provisions, clothing, etc., and of the public *moneys* on shipboard. WEBST., Dict.

V. Nouns in *i*, of which there are but few, generally add *s* only; occasionally the plural of *alkali* is also written with *es*, and this seems to be the ordinary practice with *macaroni*. MURRAY; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1021.

*houris*. The *houris* of the theatres especially were so ravishing and angelic that to see them was to set the heart in motion. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. I, 6.

*macaroni*. Sure never were seen two such beautiful ponies; | Other horses are clowns, but these *macaronies*. SHER., School for Scand., II, 2, (378).

He wore his hair in the fashion which I remember to have seen in caricatures of what were termed, in my young days, *Macaronies*. CH. LAMB, Es. of Elia, The South-Sea House.

*Peris*. The *Peris* are a sort of half-fallen female angels, who dwell in the air, and live on perfumes; and though banished for a time from Paradise, go about in this world doing good. JEFFREY, Thomas Moore.

On going into Fusby's a week afterwards he found the *Peris* drinking out of blue cups. THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. V.

*ski*. On these occasions practically every one is to be seen on *skis*. II. Lond. News, No. 3850, 150.

*taxi*. They have to catch trains and *taxis*. Eng. Rev., No. 53, 158.

d) to some nouns ending in *f*, the *f* being changed to *v*. The nouns which regularly change *f* into *ves* are *calv*, *elv*, *half*, *leaf*, *loaf*, *self*, *sheaf*, *shelf*, *thief* and *wolf*.

Note I. Already in Old English *f*, like *th* and *s*, became voiced in voiced surroundings, although the symbol was retained. Thus *wulf* — *wulfas*, *hlaf* — *hlafas*; Modern English: *wolf* — *wolves*, *loaf* — *loaves*. Compare COOK-SIEVERS, Old Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 192, 2; KALUZA, Hist. Gram., § 81; EMERSON, Mid. Eng. Reader, § 98; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 731; id., Sounds of Eng., § 181; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., I, 2541.

II. In the plural of *wife*, *knife* and *life* the *f* is also changed into *v*.

III. Besides *beeves*, the common form, we also find *beefs*, the latter being apparently the ordinary form in America. The singular *beef* in the sense of *ox* occurs only occasionally since the 16th century; the plural is now found only in archaic and technical language. See MURRAY, s. *v.* *beef*; SATTLER, E. S., X.

IV. The plural of *staff* is sometimes *staves*, but mostly *stuffs*; when it means a corps of officers, either military or civil, the plural is always *stuffs*. Also of compounds, such as *flagstaff*, *distaff*, etc., the plural

is mostly formed by simply adding *s*: *flagstaffs*, etc. The plural *staves* has developed a new singular *stave* (= Dutch *duig*). SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1001; JESPERSEN, *Progr.*, § 133, footnote.

V. *Dwarves* and *wharves* are occasionally met with in English writers, instead of the more usual *dwarfs* and *wharfs*. (In America *wharves* is, apparently, the common form. WEBST.) *Scarves*, however, seems to be rather more common than *scarfs*. NESFIELD, *Hist. Eng. and Der.*, § 110.

VI. *Hooves* occurs occasionally beside the more usual *hoofs*. See the quotation from STEVENSON in MURRAY, s.v. *hoof*, 1; and below.

VII. For the rest nouns in *f* and *fe* form the plural according to the general rule.

**beef.** i. A pound of man's flesh taken from a man | Is not so estimable, profitable neither, | As flesh of muttons, *beefs* or goats. *Merch.*, I, 3, 168.

Has he land and *beefs*? *Henry IV*, B, III, 2, 353.

ii. All the villages, nine hundred yards round the city, (were obliged) to deliver in every morning six *beeves*, forty sheep, etc. SWIFT, *Gul.*, I, Ch. II, (119b).

Madam Esmond had *beeves*, and horses, and stores in plenty. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VII, 70.

And men brought in whole hogs and quarter *beeves*. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 601.

**belief.** The lecturer's *beliefs* exactly coincided with all his own ready-formed notions. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 84.

**gulf.** There were *gulfs* between them — gulfs which, as it seemed to him, could never be bridged again. *Mrs. WARD*, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 268.

**hoof.** On burnish'd *hooves* his war-horse trode. TEN., *Lady of Shal.*, III, iv. [Compare with this the unusual *hooved* instead of *hoofed* in: Beautiful Paris, evil-hearted Paris, | Leading a jet-black goat white-horn'd, white-*hooved*, | Came up from reedy Simois all alone (TEN., *Enone*, IV); and also *leavy*, which many modern editors altered into *leafy*, in: Now near enough: your *leavy* screens throw down (*Macb.*, V, 6, 1).]

**scarf.** Men and women alike are much given to bright silk neckties, *scarves* and shawls. ESCOTT, *Eng.*, Ch. VI, 81.

**staff.** i. \* Mr. Grummer pocketed his staff, and looked at Mr. Dubbley; Mr. Dubbley pocketed his staff and looked at the division; the division pocketed their *staves* and looked at Messrs. Tupman and Pickwick. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIV, 218.

\*\* Here it is that the architects and surveyors with their several *staffs* are domiciled. ESCOTT, *Eng.*, Ch. III, 59.

The railway companies mastered the difficulties of the situation and filled up their depleted *staffs*. *Times*, No. 1808, 682d.

ii. \* O sir, there's Trapland the scrivener, with two suspicious fellows like lawful pads, that would knock a man down with pocket-*tipstaves*. CONGR., *Love for Love*, I, 1, (205).

The judges and the *tipstaves* parted the combatants. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 99. Over the altar are still seen the French *flagstaves*, taken by the garrison in a desperate sally. *Id.*, IV, Ch. XII, 239.

\*\* Serving wenches...sate plying their *distaffs*. SCOTT, *Bl. Dwarf*, Ch. III.

It began with the erection of *flagstaffs*. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IX.

The mayor and corporation-men appeared in full robes, with maces and *tipstuffs*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIX, 216b.

**waif.** This was the land which we have regarded as a refuge for the *waifs* and strays of our superfluous population. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. VIII, 115.

**wharf.** The gates leading to factories and *wharves*. W. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, I, Ch. II, 37.



4. The plural of proper nouns is, in the main, formed according to the rules described in 1 and 3.

With regard to those in *y* and *o*, the most common practice is to add *s*: *Henry* — *Henrys*; *Cato* — *Catos*. Some writers insert an apostrophe before *s*: *Henry's*, *Cato's*; others form the plural of these nouns as if they were class-nouns: *Henries*, *Catoes*. Singulars in *y* of one syllable, such as *Paul Pry*, would hardly be pluralized in any way but by taking *s* or *'s*. JESPERSEN, *Mod. Eng. Gram.*, I, 3.135.

Proper nouns ending in a sibilant generally add the simple apostrophe, occasionally *es*, or *'s*: *the Chambers'* or *the Chamberses* or *the Chambers's*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1021; TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, VI.

**proper names in *y*.** All the *Marys* and *Elizabeths* they had married. JANE AUSTEN, *Persuasion*, Ch. I, 2.

Though she does not come of such good blood as the *Malonys* or *Molloys*, let me tell ye, she's of an ancient family. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 83.

Off *the Scillys* a member of . . . "the inferior sex" is sighted and has to be taken on board. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3860, 464c.

**proper names in a sibilant.** i. Why, in fact, did the *Timminses* give that party at all? *Id.*, *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VII, 334.

The Carlovingian race had been exhausted by producing a race of *Pepins* and *Charleses*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, *Intro.*, 12b.

The impious heretics — the *Drakes* and *Raleighs*, *Grenvilles* and *Cavendishes*, *Hawkines* and *Frobishers* had dared to violate that hidden Sanctuary. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIX, 218a.

ii. I have not been to the Rooms this age, nor to the Play, except going in last night with the *Hodges's* for a frolic. JANE AUSTEN, *Northanger Abbey*, Ch. XXVII, 209.

5. To express the plural of a letter, figure or any character or sign, or of a word or phrase mentioned without regard to its syntactical function, the letter *s*, generally preceded by the apostrophe, is appended: *the two l's in all*; *the two o's in 400*; *the why's and wherefore's of the question*.

Some writers, however, omit the apostrophe in such cases, joining the *s* immediately to the letter, character or word: *the two ls in all*, etc.

Others still write the names of letters with their proper plural endings, instead of the letters themselves: *the two ells*, *the two efs*, *the two esses*. (WEBST.) This practice seems to be very rare.

i. Several dozen of "*How-are-you's*?" hailed the old gentleman's arrival. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VII, 59.

Mamma drops her *H's*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 251.

You don't need to be on your *p's* and *q's* with him. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 230.

You'll have to mind your *p's* and *q's*, or else you'll be dropped on. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. I, 6.

I said a few "*yes's*" and "*really's*" during this long speech. EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. III, 107.

He discusses literature, as though he were a rather daring Victorian of the '90's. Eng. Rev., 1912 Aug., 153.

The present authors are able to dot some of the *i*'s. Athen., No. 4463, 513a.

- ii. The *hes* would quarrel and fight with the females, as fiercely as with each other. SWIFT, Gull., IV, Ch. VII, (204a).

In L. W. S. these *us* are lost. SWEET, A. S. Read., Gram. Intr., 47.

These adjectives often lose one of the *rs*. Ib., 149.

A great deal has been written about the *Whys* and *Wherefores* of the action of Germany. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 347b.

But if '*ifs* and *ans* were pots and pans', as the old jingle has it, there'd be no trade for tinkers'. Id.

The plural of abbreviations is mostly indicated by '*s*', if only initials are used (*M.P.'s*); by *s*, if more letters are retained (*Bros.*, *Profs.*, *Drs.*). Another way of indicating the plural, especially applied to titles, is by duplication: *LL.D.*, *MSS.*, *pp.*

- i. To talk of burning *IOU's* was child's play. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. I, 5.

It is easy to understand the quick taming of the ordinary Labour *M.P.'s*. Eng. Rev., 1912, March, 685.

The Dean proposes . . . to confine the B.D. and D.D. degrees to those who understand divinity in its true sense. How many of the present *D.D.'s* do this? Athen., No. 4405, 361a.

The boys grew up to positions of trust and are now *J. P.'s*. Punch, No. 3674, 413c.

- ii. So the bishop was searched for by the *Revs.* Messrs. Grey and Green. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLII, 368.

- iii. *MSS.* should always be accompanied by remittance to cover the amount of charges and stamped addressed envelope for return. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 491, 447a.

6. Some nouns form their plural by vowel-mutation: *foot* — *feet*; *goose* — *geese*; *tooth* — *teeth*; *louse* — *lice*; *mouse* — *mice*; *man* — *men*.

Note I. The preservation of the mutation-plural in these nouns may be owing to the fact that their plural occurs more frequently than, or at least as frequently as, their singular. JESPERSEN, Growth and Structure, § 185; KERN, Vereenvoudiging, 14.

II. The forms *lice* and *mice* stand for Middle English *lys* and *mys*: the *ce* recording the fact that, when inflectional *s* in many words came to be pronounced with voice, the breath-sound was retained in these words. Compare 11, s.v. *dice*. The compounds *dormouse* and *titmouse* are pluralized: *dormice*, *titmice*.

III. Compounds of *man* of English make also change *man* to *men*. Such are *alderman*, *cabman*, *woman*; *Dutchman*, *Englishman*, and a great many others.

He captured two Dutch *East Indiamen*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 9c.

Compounds of *woman* form the plural by changing this part to *women*: *countrywoman* — *countrywomen*, *horsewoman* — *horsewomen*, *gentlewoman* — *gentlewomen*.

In these compounds of *man* no difference is heard in speech between the singular and the plural, except in the case of *woman* — *women*. Note also that *gentleman* in the vocative does not lose the *e*-sound in the last syllable. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1004.

Anglicized foreign compounds of *man*, such as *German*, *Norman*, *Ottoman*, *Roman*, *Turcoman*, and those nouns in *man*, which are not

really compounds of *man*, such as *cayman*, *talisman*, form the plural, according to the general rule, by affixing *s*: *Germans*, *caymans*, etc. *Mussulman*, however, is pluralized either *Mussulmen* or *Mussulmans*. Proper nouns in *man* also form the plural in this way: *Longman* — *Longmans*.

Thus also proper names in *foot* simply take *s* in the plural: *Longfoot* — *Longfoots*.

IV. *Foot* has *foots* in the sense of 'bottoms, dregs' (MURRAY, s.v. *foot*, 22); *goose* has *gooses* in the sense of 'tailor's smoothing-iron' (id., s.v. *goose*, 5).

7. Of the Old English weak declension (2) but a few traces are found in Modern English. The only pure instance of the plural being formed by affixing *en* is *ox*, plural *oxen*.

Note. In the forms *brethren* and *children* there is also vowel-change. The Old English *broðor* had in the plural *brōðor* or *brōðru*. The singular *broðor* developed the Modern English *brothers*. In Early Middle English another plural *breðre* or *breðer* sprang up, formed on the analogy of the mutation plural *fet*, singular *fōt*, and suggested by the Old English dative singular *breðer*. The shortening of the *ē* in Middle English was due to its being followed by two consonants. To the new plural the weak ending *en* was added, resulting in the Modern English *brethren*. The present differentiation between *brothers* and *brethren* (11, 2) was not observed in Middle English. Compare COOK-SIEVERS, Old Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 285; KALUZA, Hist. Gram., § 121; EMERSON, Mid. Eng. Read., § 135.

The Old English *cild* had in the plural *cild* and, less commonly, *cildru* or *cilderu*. The latter developed into *childre* or *childer*, with short *i*, the shortening being due to the three successive consonants (1000—1200). These forms have maintained themselves in the Northern dialects to the present day. In the Southern, and later in the Midland dialects, the weak ending *en* was added. Compare COOK-SIEVERS, Old Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 290; EMERSON, Mid. Eng. Read., § 132; JESPERSEN, Mod. Eng. Gram., I, 4.221.

I thought more o' th' *childer* nor of mysel. Jane Eyre, Ch. XXIX, 419.

We han done our best to gi' the *childer* food. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. VI, 59.

Gold won't buy back *childer*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. II, 15a.

I'll hand it down to my *childer's childer*. ZANGWILL, The Next Religion, I, (63).

Compare also *Childermas*, usually *Childermasday* or *-tide*; also called *Innocents' day* [Matth. II, 16] (= 28 Dec.).

Another instance of a plural formed by vowel-mutation and suffixing *en*, although in a concealed form, is *kine*, a plural form of *cow*. *Kine* has now given way to *cows*, but is still occasionally met with, especially in poetry. TENNYSON has *kine* as a singular. The old plural *ky*, in a large variety of spellings, survives in dialects.

Besides the above *en*-plurals, Early Modern English had *eyne* (in SPENSER and SHAKESPEARE), *shoon* (in SHAKESPEARE and MILTON), *treen* (in SACKVILLE), *hosen* (in the Authorised Version). For these Late Modern English has *eyes*, *shoes* and *hose*, the last of which

nouns has one and the same form for the plural and the singular (8). Also SHAKESPEARE has only *hose*.

These old plurals in *en* are still now and again met with as archaisms, and survive in certain dialects. BURNS has both *een* and *ee*.

*eyne*. Shed thy faire beames into my feeble *eyne*. SPENSER, Faery Queene, Introd., IV.

For ere Demetrius look'd on Hermia's *eyne*. Mids., I, 1, 242.

And his half-open'd *eyne* he shut straightway. THOMSON, Castle of Indolence, I, LXXIV.

This said, poor Mailie turn'd her head, | And closed her *een* among the dead. BURNS, The Death and Dying Words of Poor Mailie.

Their eldest hope, their Jenny, woman grown, | In youthfu' bloom, love sparkling in her *ee*. | Comes hame. Id., The Cotter's Sat. Night, IV.

Hawks will not pick out hawk's *een*. SCOTT, Redgauntlet, 1)

*hosen*. Then these three men were bound in their coats, their *hosen* and their hats. Bible, Daniel, III, 21.

Last, twenty yeomen, two and two, | In *hosen* black and jerkins blue. SCOTT, Marm., I, viii.

I did lift her over the stream, she having on her *hosen* and shoon, whilst I had but my wooden sandals. CON. DOYLE, The White Comp., 7.

But when I was turned fourteen years old, and put into good small-clothes, buckled at the knee, and strong worsted *hosen*, knitted by my mother, it happened to me, without choice, I may say, to explore the Bagworthy water. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. VII, 38.

*kine*. i. And behold there came out of the river seven *kine*. Bible, Gen., XLI, 18.

The deserted hamlets were set on fire; and the troops departed, driving away with them many sheep and goats, nine hundred *kine*, and two hundred of the small shaggy ponies of the Highlands. MAC, Hist., VII, Ch. XVIII, 25.

The fields between | Are dewy-fresh, browsed by deep-udder'd *kine*. TEN., Gard. Daught., 46.

The dearthness of *milch-kine* ever since Michaelmas has been remarked. Graph.

ii. Sadly the far *kine* loweth. TEN., Leonine Elegiacs, 9.

iii. The inn lasses went afield with petticoats kilted to milk the *kye*. JAMES PURVES, Walking Tours. (STOF., Eng. Leesb., I, 136.)

The father cracks of horses, pleughs, and *kye*. BURNS, The Cotter's Saturday Night, VIII.

*shoon*. Spare none but such as go on clouted *shoon*. Henry VI. B, IV, 2, 195.

How should I your true love know | From another one? | By his cockle hat and staff | And his sandal *shoon*. Hamlet, IV, 5, 26.

The dull swain | Treads on it daily with his clouted *shoon*. MILTON, Comus, 635. Not in vain | He wore his *sandal-shoon* and scallop-shell. BYRON, Childe Harold, IV, CLXXXVI.

Withal there came to me | A little child and did off hastily | My *shoon* and *hosen*. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Paradise, ProL., 8b.

Gerard can paint, Gerard can write, but what can you do to keep a woman, ye lazy loon? Naught but wait for your father's *shoon*. CH. READE, The Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. IX, 45.

*treen*. The wrathful Winter, 'proaching on apace, | With blustering blasts had all ybar'd the *treen*. THOM. SACKVILLE, Induction to the "Mirror of Magistrates", I.

8. Some nouns have the same form in the plural as in the singular. Such are:

1) De Drie Talen, XXIII, 148.



a) *craft*, *deer* (*reindeer*), *hose*, *sheep* and *swine*.

Note I. *Craft*, originally used collectively by watermen, fishermen and seamen only in the expression *small craft* (= small trading vessels, boats, lighters, etc.), afterwards without *small* in the same sense, subsequently in the general sense of vessels of all kinds, is now also used to denote a small vessel or boat, or any sailing or floating vessel. MURRAY.

II. *Deer*, *sheep* and *swine* belonged to that class of Old English neuter nouns which in the nominative and accusative had the same form in the plural as in the singular. *Deer* is occasionally found with the mark of the plural; *sheeps* occurs in certain dialects. MURRAY, s. v. *deer*, 2, b; KERN, Vereenvoudiging, 18; KRUSINGA, Bonner Beitr., XVIII, § 464.

In Old English *deer* meant a wild animal in general. In this sense we still find it once used in SHAKESPEARE, and SATTLER quotes an instance from Late Modern English.

*Swine* is now chiefly used as a collective noun of the type of *cattle*. In Early Modern English it frequently denotes a single animal, where Present English mostly has *hog* or *pig*. The use of *swine* to denote a single animal is not, however, so unusual as is often thought. Thus MURRAY's definition of *lard* is: 1) *the fat of a swine*, 2) *the internal fat of the abdomen of a swine*.

III. Further traces of this want of inflection for the plural have been preserved to the present day with some other nouns. Thus *head* is still uninflected in such collocations as *fifty head of cattle*. Uneducated people still say *year* for *years*. For more details see 29.

IV. The plural of *hose* was formerly *hosen* (7). Its ordinary meaning is now *stockings*, but the word was originally used to imply the breeches or chausses. FAIRHOLT, *Costume in England*, 512. (Note to *As you like it*, II, 4, 6 in Clar. Press). It still denotes a covering of the legs in *trunkhose* [= *trunks* (19, a)], which sometimes has the *s* of the plural. Also when denoting a flexible tube used in extinguishing fires, it is sometimes placed in the plural: *hoses*.

**craft.** i. He not only discovered that there is a North-East passage to India, but actually made it in his little *craft*. II. Mag.

Was this great vessel with smoking funnels and grinding engines another devil's *craft* set sailing round the world? MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.* II, Ch. XLII, 274.

ii. Behind them lay two long, low, ugly-looking *craft*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 141b.

Eighty odd *craft* made up their fleet. W. BESANT, *By Celia's Arbour*, I, 2. The strength of the future lies in these *craft*. Lit. World.

**deer.** i. They saw several *deer* grazing peacefully in the distance.

His *reindeer* are from Lapland. Times, No. 1826, 1049d.

ii. Are the princes of the Crusade turned hares or *deers* in the eyes of King Richard, that he should slip hounds on them? Black's Sir W. Scott's Read., *Story of the Talisman*, 46.

iii. But mice and rats and such small *deer* | Have been Tom's food for seven year. King Lear, III, 4, 144. (perhaps = *game*. A. SCHMIDT.) The vendors of chickens and rabbits and such small *deer*. All the Year Round. 1)

1) SATTLER, E. S., X.

Next day we **were** to shoot rabbits and pheasants, and there was lively curiosity **as** to how our heroic friend . . . would shape among these small **deer**. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5149, 12b.

**hose**. i. 'Faith, here's an English tailor come hither for stealing out of a French **hose**. *Mac b.*, II, 3, 16.

He bought his doublet in Italy, his round **hose** in France. *Merch of Ven.*, I, 2, 80.

From his waist to his heels he was clad in a pair of tight-fitting buckskin **hose** fastened by laces (called points) to his doublet. *CH. READE, The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 8.

ii. She was mending those eternal pairs of stockings, little and big — grey and white — socks and long **hose**. *MRS. CRAIK, A Hero*, 82.

I followed him with my eyes . . . his ribbed **hose** and leathern gaiters. *Id.*, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 3.

I doffed my shoes and **hose**, and put them into a bag about my neck. *BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone*, Ch. VII, 39.

iii. \* The two fourgons carry about 4000 ft. of **hose** of different sizes. *Times*.  
\*\* Others were at the same time getting **fire-hoses** fitted and passed to the scene of the fire. (?) *A Ship on Fire* (*STOF.*, *Leesb.*, I, 3).

iv. \* The captains of the river-craft talk of a little square-built Dutch goblin in **trunk-hose** and sugarloaf-shaped hat. *WASH. IRV., Storm-Ship* (*STOF.*, *Handl.*, I, 88).

You had but to supply figures with beards and ruffs and rapiers and **trunk-hose** to make the picture complete. *THACK, Newc.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 301.

White satin his **trunk-hose**, | Inwrought with silver. *TEN., Queen Mary*, III, 1, (605a).

\*\* Certain I had heard that every Spaniard carries a tail like a devil under his **trunk-hose**. — Ay, but see what **trunk-hoses**! *Ib.*, III, 1, (606b).

**sheep**. The **sheep** were patiently browsing *STEVENSON*.

**swine**. i. How like a **swine** he lies. *Taming of the Shrew*, *Ind.*, I, 34.

And the **swine**, because it divideth the hoof, yet cheweth not the cud, it is unclean unto you *Bible, Deut.*, XV, 8.

The domestic **swine** fairly dotes on snakes. *All the Year Round*.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. I never threw away pearls to **swine**, as the saying is. *CAPT. MARRYAT, Perc. Keene*.<sup>2)</sup>

b) the names of nationalities in **ese**, such as *Chinese*, *Portuguese*, etc., and the noun *Swiss*.

Note. Instead of the singular *Chinese*, which sounds like a plural, we often find *Chinaman*, especially in familiar style. *Switzer* is used by SHAKESPEARE and SCOTT instead of *Swiss*. For such singulars as *Chinee* and *Portuguee* see 13.

i. Before arriving at the mine, we passed through a location of *Chinese*. *FROUDE, Oceana*, Ch. VIII, 117.

Li Hung Chang is one of the most intelligent and enlightened *Chinese* of the present age. *Hazell's Annual*.

Many of the 130,000 *Maltese* who possess no political rights, have interests opposed to those of Dr. Mizzi and the enemies of British rule. *Times*.

On the 7th, 8th, and 10th of May nine *Chinese* . . . were examined on a charge of gambling . . . *Nineteenth Cent.*, No. CCCXCVII, 535.

ii. Some 6000 men are employed on the works, most of them are Italians and *Swiss*. *Graph*.

The Pope's body-guard consists of *Swiss*. *Note to Haml.*, IV, 5, 79 (*Clar. Press*).

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., X.    <sup>2)</sup> FLÜGEL, S. v. *swine*.

iii. Where are my *Switzers*. Ham l., IV, 5, 96.

They (sc. the Dutch) levy regiments of the stubborn *Switzers* and hardy Germans to protect the treasures they have amassed. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. III, 32.

c) some nouns borrowed from the Latin, and belonging in that language to the fifth declension, in which the nominative of the singular and the plural are the same: *series*, *species*. (9.)

**series.** If we lower the tongue, starting from [i] and [i] respectively, we obtain the two parallel *series*: [etc.]. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 64.

In going down either of these *series*, it will be seen as well as felt that [etc.]. *Ib.*, § 80.

Of all the many cheap *series* of standard works to the production of which so many publishers have . . . devoted themselves, 'Everyman's Library' maintains its triumphant lead. *Daily Telegraph*.

**species.** Those beings which the world calls improperly suits of clothes, are in reality the most refined *species* of animals. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, Sect. II.

With the lower parasitic *species* the males are of small size. DARWIN, *Descent of Man*, Ch. IX, 265.

d) the French *ab(b)at(t)is*, *chamois* and *corps*.

Note. *Abatis*, the ordinary spelling both in English and French, is sometimes pronounced as in French.

The spellings *shammy* and *shamoy* are still frequently used to denote a kind of leather, but the name of the animal is now always written *chamois*. In the plural the *s* may be pronounced, as is always done with the plural *corps*.

**abatis.** Mines are run under the man's credit, *abatis* are constructed around his markets. MISS TARBELL (*Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVI, 41a).

**chamois.** Rabbits stamp loudly on the ground with their hind-feet as a signal! Sheep and *chamois* do the same with their fore-feet. DARWIN, *Descent of Man*, Ch. IV, 100.

**corps.** The sand-bank was dotted with English soldiery, of half-a-dozen *corps*. RUDY. KIPLING, *The Light that failed*, Ch. II, 17.

9. Many foreign nouns are used in English in the singular without any change of form, and are, accordingly, pluralized more or less regularly in the same way as is done in the language from which they have been taken. For foreign pluralia tantum see 19, *h*.

To those ignorant of Latin, Greek and Italian the following observations may be acceptable.

In **Latin** the termination *a* when belonging to nouns of the 1st declension is changed into *ae* (*vertebra* — *vertebrae*), the suffix *ma* of nouns of the 3rd declension being changed into *mata* (*dogma* — *dogmata*, *stigma* — *stigmata*, *thema* — *themata*);

the termination *us* of nouns of the 2nd declension is changed into *i* (*bacillus* — *bacilli*, *radius* — *radii*, *tumulus* — *tumuli*), of nouns of the 4th declension remains unaltered (*apparatus* — *apparatus*, *hiatus* — *hiatus*), of nouns of the 3rd declension is changed into either *era* or *ora* (*genus* — *genera*, *tempus* — *tempora*);

the termination *x* is mostly changed into *ces* (*apex* — *apices*, *calyx* — *calyces*, *radix* — *radices*, *vortex* — *vortices*);

the termination *um* is changed into *a* (*datum* — *data*, *desideratum* — *desiderata*, *erratum* — *errata*, *stratum* — *strata*).

(Note that *data* answers to the Dutch *gegevens*, *dates* to the Dutch *datum s.*)

In **Greek** the termination *on* is changed into *a* (*phenomenon* — *phenomena* **prolegomenon** — **prolegomena**);

the termination *sis* is changed into *ses* (in which *e* represents *u*) *crisis* — *crises*)

Thus also *oasis* — *oases*.

In **Italian** the terminations *e* and *o* are mostly changed into *i* (*cicerone* — *ciceroni*, *dilettante* — *dilettanti*, *libretto* — *libretti*, *solo* — *solì*, *virtuoso* — *virtuosi*).

- a) Some of these loan-words, especially such as are still distinctly felt as aliens, prefer the foreign plural. Thus we find it regularly, or practically regularly:

- 1) with nouns in *sis* (*crisis* — *crises*), also with the Latin *amanuensis* — *amanuenses* and *axis* — *axes*.

(Note that the ordinary meaning of *amanuensis* in English is *one who copies or writes from the dictation of another*.)

- 2) with the following, among many others:

a) *bacillus*, *calyx*, *formula*, *genus*, *hiatus*, *lamina*, *stratum*, *vertebra*;

β) *phenomenon*, *prolegomenon*;

γ) *dilettante*;

δ) *bureau*, *château*, *madame*, *tableau*.

- b) Some, especially such as have passed into common use, mostly have their plural formed in the ordinary English way: *asylum* — *asylums*, *chorus* — *choruses*, *convolvulus* — *convolvuluses*, *crocus* — *crocuses*, *crucifix* — *crucifixes*, *dogma* — *dogmas*, *encomium* — *encomiums*, *enigma* — *enigmas*, *nostrum* — *nostrums*, *rhododendron* — *rhododendrons*, *syllabus* — *syllabuses*, etc.

- c) With some usage is more or less equally divided: *appendix* — *appendices* — *appendices*, *automaton* — *automatons* — *automata*, *candelabrum* — *candelabrams* — *candelabra*, *criterion* — *criteria* — *criteria*, *focus* — *focuses* — *foci*, *fungus* — *funguses* — *fungi*, *simile* — *similes* — *similia*, *spectrum* — *spectrums* — *spectra*, *stigma* — *stigmas* — *stigmata*; *triumvir* — *triumvirs* — *triumviri*, *vortex* — *vortexes* — *vortices*, etc.

*adieu* — *adieux* — *adieux*, *beau* — *beaus* — *beaux*, *plateau* — *plateaus* — *plateaux*. (In all these plurals the *x* is pronounced as *z*).

*conversazione* — *conversazioni* — *conversazioni*, *solo* — *solos* — *solì*, *soprano* — *sopranos* — *soprani*, *virtuoso* — *virtuosos* — *virtuosi*.

*Lit(t)erati*, the plural of the Latin *lit(t)eratus*, has also been considered to be the plural of the Italian *literato* (also *litterato*). This last is now the ordinary singular, instead of *lit(t)eratus*, which has become rare. *Literati* is sometimes used as a singular through ignorance.

*Rhinoceros* sometimes remains unchanged, but the ordinary plural would seem to be *rhinoceroses*. (Compare, however, 29.)

- d) Sometimes each plural belongs more or less strictly to (a) particular meaning(s) of the singular. Thus:

*genius* has *geniuses* (= Dutch *genieën*) and *genii* (= Dutch *geniën*), the latter being practically a *plurale tantum*, as the singular is replaced by *genie* or *jinnee*;

*index*, in the sense of the Dutch *bladwijzer*, mostly has *indexes* sometimes *indices*, the latter plural being almost regularly used for the other meanings: *exponent*, etc.;

*stamens* has *stamens* in the sense of the Dutch *meeldraad*, the form



*stamina*, a plurale tantum, being used only figuratively in the sense of the Dutch kern, pit.

Here follow some illustrative quotations. When only one plural is given, it must not be concluded that the alternative does not exist, or even is less frequent.

**adieu.** i. He departed, taking with him from many an anxious fellow besides myself, our *adieux* to friends in Old Ireland. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 65.

I shall pass over my *adieux* with my kind hostess. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 77.

ii. I presume... you are prepared to receive my *adieux*. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXI, 222.

His *adieux* were not long. JANE AUSTEN, *Northanger Abbey*, Ch. XV.

**analysis.** Sanatogen has probably been put to more severe and searching *analyses* and tests than any other specific of modern years. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXIII, 101*b*.

**apparatus.** i. There are more elaborate methods, ... which involve special training in physics and mathematics and in handling complicated *apparatus*. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 288.

ii. The many *apparatus* designed to apply electricity. NAPHEYS.<sup>1)</sup>

**appendix.** i. New and enlarged edition, with supplement of additional words; key to names in Mythology and Fiction, and other valuable *appendices*. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*

ii. The *Appendixes* include illustrative matter for which there was no natural place elsewhere. COOK, *First Book in Old English*, Pref., 8.

**bacillus.** Milk, however many tubercle *bacilli* it may contain, may be rendered an absolute safe article of food by being raised to the temperature of boiling water. *Times*.

**automaton.** i. "Do you think so?" said the Princess ... "Have these *automata*, indeed, souls?" DISRAELI, *Coningsby*, IV, xi, 167.1)

ii. Three petty chieftains were sitting, stolid and silent, at a table and might have been taken for *automatons*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II. Ch. I, 74

**beau.** i. Poets will think nothing so checks their fury. | As wits, cits, *beaux*, and women for their jury. FARQUHAR, *The Constant Couple*, Prologue, 2.

ii. Young sparks of his Acquaintance ... the *Beaus* of those Days. BIRCH.<sup>1)</sup>

**bureau.** The establishment of information *bureaux* for all foreigners without distinction will be seen to be indispensable. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXII, 538*a*.

**cactus, candelabrum.** Huge thorni *cacti*, like giant *candelabra*, clothed the glorious slopes. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 135*b*.

(*Candelabra* is erroneously used as a singular in: A smartly dressed woman ... had taken from a travelling-bag some silver salt-cellars and a big *candelabra* of the same metal. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*, Ch. IV, 30.)

**chrysalis.** The *chrysalides* (if that is the right way to write of more than one *chrysalis*) are generally found by digging in the mossy earth of trees. HOR. HUTCHINSON, *The Insect-Hunter* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5329, 4*c*).

**convolvulus.** The lustre of the long *convolvuluses* | That coil'd around the stately stems. TEN., *Enoch Arden*, 571.

**crisis.** It is the duty of the Government, when *crises* of this kind arise, to know what they want and to say what they mean. *Times*.

But even these especial *crises* in her malady could scarcely have equalled in pain the constant watchfulness and anxiety of Lamb's early life. Prefatory Memoir to Lamb's *Poems and Essays* (Chandos).

**crucifix.** The silver *crucifixes* were melted down. MAC., *Popes*, (561*b*).

**château.** The *châteaux* of the Loire are famous in song and prose. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4943, 15*b*.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

We journey with her to the *châteaux* of the Loire. *Ib.*

**datum.** As I have given the facts from which I have drawn my interpretation of the principal agent, the reader has sufficient *data* for his own judgment. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, Preface.

**dictum.** Look at Mr. Roosevelt's *dicta* about the Courts. *Saturday Rev.*

**dilettante.** There are many ways of seeing landscape quite as good (sc. as a walking tour); and none more vivid, in spite of canting *dilettantes*, than from a railway train. R. L. STEVENSON, *Walking Tours*.

**dogma.** Mr. Keats had advanced no *dogmas* which he was bound to support by examples. *Quarterly Review*, Article upon Keat's 'Endymion.'

**emphasis.** He then began to read in a good round resonant voice, with clear enunciation and careful attention to his pauses and *emphases*. WALT. BESANT, *The American Claimant*.

**enigma.** Words that she would spell quite correctly in her letters to me, became perfect *enigmas* when she wrote to my father. MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. XIV, 259.

**focus.** The Clarendon Press was one of the *foci* of York Powell's life in Oxford. *The Periodical*, XXXVII, 78.

**formula.** i. The ordained agencies for teaching have been mumbling little else but dead *formulas*. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 23a.

ii. I have, therefore, laid down the most stringent rules and the clearest *formulae* in my power. TOM HOOD, *Eng. Versification*, Preface, 11.

**fungus.** i. Fairy-ring: a circular band of grass differing in colour from the grass around it, a phenomenon supposed in popular belief to be produced by fairies when dancing; really caused by the growth of certain *fungi*. MURRAY.

Champignon: A name applied originally (as in French) to *fungi* or mushrooms generally. *Ib.*

ii. A castle covered with moss and wall-flowers and *funguses* and creeping ivy. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. VI, 140.

**genius.** i. There were hosts of these *geniuses*, and any reasonable person would have thought it honour enough to meet them. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 132.

It was even said that one or two distinguished *geniuses* had condescended to borrow money of him. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIII, 661.

Saints and *geniuses* are always rare. WILLIAM MOTTRAM, *George Eliot*, Ch. I, 6.

ii. \* I know too where the *Genii* hid | The jewell'd cup of their king Jamshid. MOORE, *Paradise and the Peri*.

The *genii* of the storm afflict me with keen hail. SHELLEY, *Prom. Unbound*, I, 1, 43.

\*\* Her mother was of human birth, | Her sire a *Genie* of the earth. SCOTT, *Bridal of Triermain*, II, III.

**hiatus.** i. It was printed in the usual Greek characters, with all the *hiatus* filled up by conjecture. *Monthly Mag.*<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Those *hiatuses* at the bottom of the sea, whereby the abyss below opens into it and communicates with it. FRANKLIN.<sup>1)</sup>

**hippopotamus.** i. A considerable body of bitter water containing leeches . . . crocodiles and *hippopotami*. LIVINGSTONE, *Zambesi*, III, 81. <sup>1)</sup>

ii. The tusks of *hippopotamuses* often appear on the surface. LYELL, *Princ. Geol.* III, 221. <sup>1)</sup>

**hypothesis.** I have desired to put before you the principles upon which all *hypotheses* respecting the history of Nature must be judged. HUXLEY, *Lect. and Es.*, 44b.

Phonology is, therefore, a speculative science, dealing largely with more or less probable *hypotheses*. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 266.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**incubus.** Mary and I have had a dozen (sc. governesses) at least in our day; half of them detestable and the rest ridiculous, and all *incubi* — were they not? CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVI, 214.

**index.** i. A diligent search through the *indices* to 'Notes and Queries' fails to discover any notice to the name of Jarndyce. **Notes and Queries.**

One of the first *indices* to the solution of the question lies in the situation of the oil-bearing regions. **Nature.**<sup>1)</sup>

His son's empty guffaws struck him with pain as the *indices* of a weak mind. STEVENSON.<sup>1)</sup>

The figures 2, 3...*m* denoting the number of factors which produce the powers, are called *Indices*. BARN. SMITH.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. And in such *indexes*, although small pricks; To their subsequent volumes, there is seen The baby finger of the giant mass Of things to come at large. *Troilus and Cressida*, I, 3, 343.

Tastes are the *indexes* of the different qualities of plants. ARBUTHNOT.<sup>2)</sup>

The *indexes* may be of use to students of a more advanced stage. ABBOT. *Shak. Gram.*, Pref. to the 3rd Ed., 22.

**lamina.** Such crystals may be easily cloven into the thinnest *laminae*. TYNDALL. *Glac. of the Alps*, I, Ch. I, 15.

**larva.** If you see a certain plant, you may look in your books and see what *larvae* there is a chance of finding on this at the moment. HOR. HUTCHINSON, *The Insect-Hunter* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5329, 4c).

**lazzarone.** i. When he got a bit of sunshine, the old *lazzarone* basked in it. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 59.

ii. Neither are picturesque *lazzaroni* or romantic criminals half so frequent as your common labourer. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, II, Ch. XVII, 154.

**lexicon.** *Lexicons*. Clar. Press Adv.

**lit(t)eratus.** i. \* You do not happen to have any place at your disposal which would suit a decayed *Literatus*? CH. LAMB.<sup>1)</sup>

A folio edition of the *Iliad*, published at Venice, by a *literato*, who calls himself Villoison. COWPER.<sup>1)</sup>

There was Lady Blanche Bluenose, the eminent *literati*. THACK., *Cox's Diary*, February.

ii. There was such a row among the *literati* as to the persons who should be appointed, that the plan was given up. *Id.*, *The four Georges*, III, 74.

**magus.** Whence the wise men of the East who came to see Christ, are called simply *Magi*. *Penny Cycl.*<sup>1)</sup>

**memorandum.** May I ask you if you could spare a few minutes to send me some notes or *memoranda* as to the books which you found by experience most useful to you? *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVIII, 568b.

**nostrum.** Among many *nostrums* which he possessed, there was one of the venereal disease, that brought him a good deal of money. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XIX, 126.

**parenthesis.** The pronunciation given in *parentheses* is the nearest that can be expressed in English letters, as pronounced in Southern English. SWELT, *A. S. Primer*, 3.

**phenomena.** Science most properly concerns itself with matter and motion, and reduces *phenomena*, as far as it can, to mechanism. OLIVER LODGE, *Introd. to Huxley's Essays*.

It was not my intention to confine myself to the glaciers alone, but to make my work a vehicle for the familiar explanation of such physical *phenomena* as had come under my notice. TYNDALL, *Glac. of the Alps*, I, Ch. I, 9.

1) MURRAY.

2) WEBSTER.

**plateau.** The principal mountain ranges of Asia either form the boundaries of these lofty *plateaus*, or traverse their interior. *Cas. Conc. Cycl.*

**rhinoceros.** i. From their allies, the tapirs, the *rhinoceroses* differ in having only three toes on each foot. *Harmsw. Enc.*

ii. In his first day's shoot in Nepal, the King Emperor's bag included three tigers and three *rhinoceros*. *Times*, No. 1825, 1025*d*.

**soprano.** Italian *soprani* piped their Latin rhymes in place of the hymns which William the Pious and Doctor Luther sang. *Thack., The Four Georges*, I, 5.

**stamen.** i. In botanical use, a flower consists normally of one or more *stamens* or pistils (or both), a corolla and a calyx. *Murray.*

ii. There are valetudinarians in reputation as well as constitution, who, being conscious of their weak part, avoid the least breath of air, and supply their want of *stamina* by care and circumspection. *Sheridan, School for Scand.*, I, I, (370).

The bones are the *stamina* of animal bodies. *Webst.*

The ligneous parts of trees are the *stamina* which constitute their strength. *lb.*

**stigma.** If any Seneschal . . . had . . . endeavoured to palm upon posterity supposititious *stigmata*, I conceive the impostor would have chosen the Queen's cabinet and the bedroom for the scene of his trick. *Scott, Fair Maid, Introd.*, 13.

These men . . . bore the *stigmata* of their punishment on their bodies. *E. J. Dillon, The Breakdown of Turkey (Eng. Rev., Febr. 1912, 504).*

**stimulus.** There are well-known cases in which great writers have had recourse to artificial *stimuli*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 7*b*.

**stratum.** It is written only in the geologic *strata* — that fortunate day when a wave of the German Ocean burst the old isthmus, which joined Kent and Cornwall to France. *Emerson, Eng. Traits*, 84*b*.

**syllabus.** It has been embodied in the *syllabuses* drawn up by nearly all the School Boards. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVII, 451*b*.

**symposium.** Shelley's rooms were generally chosen as the scene of their *symposia*. *Symonds, Shelley*, Ch. II, 26.

**tableau.** Pageant = a stage or platform on which scenes were acted or *tableaux* represented. *Murray*, s. v. *pageant*, 2.

**thesis.** His *theses* got into print. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVI, 128*a*.

10. a) Of a few foreign nouns which, in passing into English, underwent a slight change in the singular, there is, besides the regular English plural in *s*, a foreign plural also.

*cherub* (†*cherubim*, †*cherubin*) — *cherubs* or *cherubim* (†*cherubin*, †*cherubims*, †*cherubins*);

*seraph* (†*seraphim*, †*seraphin*) — *seraphs* or *seraphim* (†*seraphin*, †*seraphims*, †*seraphins*);

*bandit* — *bandits* or *banditti*.

Note I. "*Cherubin* and plur. *cherubins* are the original English forms, as still in French. But, in the process of Biblical translation, "*cherubin* has been supplanted by *cherub*, and *cherubins* has been "'improved' successively to *cherubims* or *cherubim*; while concurrently "*cherub* has been popularly fitted with a new plural *cherubs*." *Murray*. The form history of *seraph* is probably analogous to that of *cherub*. The forms marked with a † are now obsolete (archaic) or vulgar (dialectal).



In the sense of a beautiful and innocent child and that of an image or picture meant to represent a celestial spirit, only the forms *cherubs* and *seraphs* are used.

It may be added here that also the Hebrew *teraphim*, a plurale tantum, is sometimes used as a singular, which may be pluralized regularly: *teraphims*. Besides these the Anglicized forms *teraph* and *teraphs* are met with.

II. *Banditti*, an Anglicized plural of the Italian *banditi*, "is more common than *bandits*, especially in reference to an organized band of robbers; in which sense it has also been used as a collective singular. In the 17th century this was taken as an individual singular, with plural in *is (ies)*." MURRAY. Also *bandit* is sometimes used in a collective sense.

**cherub (seraph).** i. \* A *cherub's* face, a reptile all the rest. POPE, *Prolog. Sat.*, 331.

Never *seraph* spread a pinion | Over fabric half so fair. POE, *The Haunted Palace*.

\*\* As he lay in bed, face upward, he seemed to be nothing but a face — like a conventional *cherubim*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXI, 153b.

Firing one day at some flying creature, he was very much dismayed, when it fell, to find that he had shot a *cherubim*. MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. XVI, 311.

\*\*\* O, *cherubin*, | Thou wast that did preserve me. Temp., II, 1, 152.

Turn thy complexion there, | Patience, thou young and rose-lipp'd *cherubin*. — | Ay, there, look grim as hell! Othello, IV, 2, 63.

ii. \* And Mammon wins his way where *seraphs* might despair. BYRON, *Child of Har.*, I, ix.

The *cherubs* painted on the scutcheon answered as well for her as for Sir Pitt's mother. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 151.

I . . . | From my high nest of penance here proclaim | That Pontius and Iscariot by my side | Show'd like fair *seraphs*. TEN., *St. Simeon Stylites*, 166.

\*\* Then methought, the air grew denser, perfumed from an unseen censer | Swung by *seraphim*, whose footfalls tinkled on the tufted floor. POE, *The Raven*, XIV. Perhaps the daintiest children seem but an earthly order of *cherubim*. ANSTLEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. X, 93.

The *seraphim*, according to the ancient Hebrew doctrine, were an order of angels who hovered round the throne of God on mighty wings, chanting His praises and bearing His messages to earth; their chief attributes were power and wisdom. The *cherubim* were silent, mysterious spirits, and are generally pictured as not of human shape — winged heads without bodies. ROWE and WEBB, *Selections from Tennyson, Note to The Palace of Art*, 133.

\*\*\* To thee *Cherubin*, and *Seraphin*: continually do cry. Book of Com. Pray., Te Deum.

\*\*\*\* Thou shalt make two *cherubims* of gold. Exodus, XXV, 18.

There shall we be with *Seraphims* and *Cherubims*. BUNYAN, *Pilgr. Progr.*, I, (147). Rabbins tell us that the *Cherubims* are a Set of Angels who know most. Spectator, DC.

\*\*\*\*\* There's not the smallest orb which thou behold'st | But in his motion like an angel sings | Still quiring to the young-ey'd *cherubins*. Merch. V, 1, 62.

**teraph.** Mrs. Tulliver's *teraphim*, or household gods. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. II.

**bandit.** i. Every baron in the land was a *bandit*. HOOD,<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* He was one of those wild German *bandits* whom the Colonna held in their pay. LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 24.

At the foot of the stairs grouped some dozen of the *bandits* whom the old Colonna entertained. Ib., II, Ch. I, 74.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

\*\* *Banditti* infest the beautiful shores of Campania. MAC., POPES, (558b).  
The nobles supported themselves less as sagacious tyrants than as relentless *banditti*. LYTTON, RIEZENI, I, Ch. II, 18.

Do you think, O blue-eyed *banditti*, | Because you have scaled the wall, | Such  
an old moustache as I am | Is not a match for you all. LONGFELLOW, The  
Children's Hour, VIII.

\*\*\* Deer-stealers are ever a desperate *banditti*. SCOTT.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\*\* But Enid in their going had two fears, | One from the *bandit* scatter'd in  
the field, | And one from Edyrn. TEN., GER. and ENID, 817.

b) *Cyclops* is used in the singular by the side of *cyclop*. The corresponding plurals are *cyclopes* and *cyclops*. The singular *cyclop* is regularly used by POPE in his translation of the *Odyssey*. WEBSTER. Some writers have *cyclopes* in the plural.

i. \* Ulysses and his crew having reached the island of Sicily, strayed into the cave of Polyphemos, the giant *Cyclops*. BREWER, Read. Handb., 1150b.

I had felt early some stirrings of ambition, but they were the blind gropings  
of Homer's *cyclops* round the walls of his cave. BURNS, Letter to Dr.  
Moore, (53a).

A little cyclops, with one eye | Staring to threaten and defy. WORDSWORTH,  
To the Daisy, IV.

\*\* In front of the helmet was a huge glass eye like that of a *cyclop*. MAC.,  
Hist., Ch. XIX.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* In works of art the *Cyclopes* are represented as giants with one eye in their forehead. NETTLESHIP, Dict. Clas. Ant.

In 'Hesiod Theogony 140' we find three *Cyclopes*, who forged the thunderbolts  
for Zeus. LIDDELL and SCOTT.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* The *cyclops* round the anvil suspend their ringing hammers. WASH. IRV.,  
Sketch-book, The Stage Coach, (83b).

All the representations of the *Cyclops* make them the possessors of only one  
eye, situated in the centre of the forehead. CAS. CONC. CYCL.

\*\*\* The one-eyed children of the Ocean God, | The man-destroying *Cyclopes*.  
SHELLEY.<sup>1)</sup>

c) The semi-French *portmanteau* and *purlicu*, the latter a plurale tantum, mostly form the plural by adding *s*.

**portmanteau.** i. Feeling in his pockets for the keys of his *portmanteaus*. G.  
ELIOT, Felix Holt.<sup>1)</sup>

She had not only emptied his purse, but his *portmanteaus*. THACK., Newc.,  
I, Ch. XXVIII, 307.

The *portmanteaus* and carpet-bags have been stowed away. DICK., Pickw.,  
Ch. XXVIII, 245.

ii. Violet's *portmanteaux* were packed. MISS BRADDON, Vivien III.<sup>1)</sup>

Trunks and *portmanteaux*. Truth, No. 1802, 115b.

**purlicu.** Brokers had been incessantly plying for custom in the *purlicus* of the  
the Court. MACAULAY.<sup>2)</sup>

But his home was no longer in the ancient and picturesque *purlicus* which he  
loved so well. Prefatory Memoir to Lamb's Poems and Essays  
(Chand. Clas.).

d) *Mr.*, short for *Mister*, has in the plural *Messrs.*, an abbreviated form  
of *Messieurs*.

1) MURRAY. 2) WEBSTER.

Note. *Messrs.* is now chiefly used as part of the name of a firm. Less frequent is the use of *Messrs.* as a title common to several gentlemen not constituting a firm, *Mr.* being mostly repeated before the name of each of the gentleman referred to. (17, c.)

SHAKESPEARE has one instance of *monsieurs*.

- i. The *Messrs.* Bell desire me to thank you for your suggestion respecting the advertisement. Mrs. GASKELL, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 228.
- ii. Lady Agnes voted the two *Messieurs* Pendennis most agreeable men. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 176.  
The *Messrs.* Foker and Pen strolled down the High Street together. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 42.  
*Messrs.* Tupman, Winkle and Snodgrass repaired to their several homes. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVI, 234.
- iii. A short time afterwards *Mr.* Chopper and *Mr.* Birch, the next clerk, were summoned. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 250.
- iv. Now I would pray our *monsieurs* | To think an English courtier may be wise, And never see the Louvre. Henry VIII, I, 3, 21.

The plural of *Madam(e)* is *Mesdames*. This form is also employed to supply the want of an English plural of *Mrs.* In this latter application *Mesdames* is, however, rarely used, *Mrs.* being mostly repeated before each of the following proper names. When there is only one proper name common to a number of ladies, *Mrs.* is mostly placed before the plural of that proper name. (17b.)

A dialogue between *Mesdames* Bridget and Deborah. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, I, Ch. VIII.

The two ugly elderly German favourites, *Mesdames* of Kielmansegge and Schulenberg, whom he created respectively Countess of Darlington and Duchess of Kendal. THACK., *The Four Georges*, I, 20.

- e) *Esquimo* is also spelled *Eskimo*. *Esquimau* and *Esquimaux*, the plural being spelled *Esquimos* and *Esquimat*. According to KRUISINGA, (*A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 307, N.) the forms in *o* are also used in a plural or collective meaning.

The *Eskimo* rarely feeds his dogs in the summer time. *Harmsworth Encycl.*

It is an error to suppose that where *an Esquimau* can live, a civilized man can live also. CAPTAIN MC CLINTOCK.<sup>1)</sup>

Thumbs and hands are given to *an Esquimaux*, as well as to scholars and surgeons. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, III, Ch. II, 58.

The early history lesson can be safely hinged on to the child's play-interest, and there will be no reluctance in learning of the surroundings and implements of ancient Briton, or of Roman, of *Esquimaux*, or of Arab. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXIV, 172a.

- ii. One of my *Esquimos* started to the Pole. PEARY, *Nearest the Pole*.  
The *Eskimos* are the primitive people inhabiting the region of N. America extending from Greenland to Alaska. *Harmsworth's Encycl.*  
The *Esquimaux*, pressed by hard necessity, have succeeded in many ingenious inventions. DARWIN, *Descent of Man*, Ch. V, 133.
- iii. These *Esquimo* called themselves Ogluli *Esquimo*.<sup>2)</sup>

11. Besides the nouns mentioned in 9, d, the following have two plurals with a difference in meaning or in use: *brother* — *brothers* —

1) WEBST.

2) KRUISINGA, *Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 307, N.

*brethren*, *die* — *dies* — *dice*, *pea* — *peas* — *pease*, *penny* — *pennies* — *pence*.

a) The ordinary plural of *brother* is now *brothers*.

The older form *brethren* is still used:

1) regularly to denote fellow-members of a Christian society or of the Christian religion as a whole: fellow-Christians, co-religionists generally. In this meaning it is often used with inclusion of women.

Dearly beloved *brethren*, the Scripture moveth us in sundry places [etc.].  
Book of Com. Pray.

He was somewhat given to over-severity to his weaker *brethren*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. I, 6.

At this time the senior deacon was taken seriously ill, and being a childless widower, he was tended night and day by some of the younger *brethren* or sisters. *Ib.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

2) almost regularly in certain proper names of Christian associations, most, if not all, of them used in conscious or unconscious allusion to *The Brethren*, as the members of the early Christian churches were called.

i. Farewell to the *Brethren of St. James's Lodge*, Torbolton. BURNS, Title of a Poem. (Compare with this the first lines of this poem: Adieu! a heart-warm, fond adieu! | Dear *brothers* of the mystic tie!)

It was the custom of their *Lantern Yard brethren* to call them David and Jonathan. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. I, 6.

The *Brethren*, or *Plymouth Brethren* have 25 places of worship in London. *Whitaker's Almanac*.

She had been brought up in the strictness of the *Plymouth Brethren*. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. III, 21.

ii. The Rosicrucians . . . were often known as *Brothers of the Rosy Cross*. ANNANDALE, *Cone. Dict*

3) a) regularly to denote fellow-members of a guild, corporation or order, and, by extension, persons of the same profession, trade or society, when there is no defining word(-group).

The general made certain of his young officers welcome at his table, a kind of hospitality which, I believe, is not now common among his *brethren*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 251.

The man of letters cannot but love the place which has been inhabited by so many of his *brethren*. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 309.

One of the pleas which Congreve set up for himself and his *brethren* was that, though they might be guilty of a little levity here and there, they were careful to inculcate a moral, packed close into two or three lines, at the end of every play. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (585b).

John Murray has more knowledge of what concerns his business than any of his *brethren*. *Athen.*

β) When, however, the nature of the profession, trade, etc. is indicated by some word(-group), *brothers* not seldom takes the place of *brethren*. See especially the second of the following quotations.

i. The *brothers of the whip* exchange a pinch of snuff. CARLYLE, *French Rev.*

Gradually the name of Thackeray as one of the band of *brethren* was buzzed about, and gradually became known as that of the chief of the *literary brothers*. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 22.



I and he, | *Brothers in Art.* TEN., *Gardener's Daught.*, 3.

We are a cosmopolitan band of good *brothers-in-arms* here around Ladysmith. *Daily Chron.*

- ii. The persons least surprised at the Rev. Amos's deficiencies were his clerical *brethren*, who had gone through the mysteries themselves. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. II, 19.

The strongest interests and the strongest feelings concurred to mitigate the hostility of those who had lately been *brethren-in-arms*. MAC., *Mach.*, (36a). He acted what he thought and felt, with a directness rare among his *brethren of the poet's craft*. SYMONDS, *Shelley*, Ch. VIII, 182.

Iffley Lock and Mill is a favourite subject with the river-loving *brethren of the brush*. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XVIII, 232.

The impression made upon him by the warm welcome he received from his English *brethren of the pen* seems to have been a lasting one. *Lit. World*.

- 4) often to denote persons (animals) in the same case or position: comrades, fellows, companions, associates.

- i. O, my dear *brethren* and fellow-sojourners in Vanity Fair, which amongst you does not know and suffer under such benevolent despots? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIII, 363.

Down, down with every foreigner, but let your *brethren* go. MAC., *Lays*, *Ivry*, 48.

Thou shalt not find the ministers of God are less eager than their lay *brethren* for the happiness of men. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 43.

She used to watch, | Near that old home, a pool of golden carp; | And one was patch'd and blurr'd and lustreless | Among his burnish'd *brethren* of the pool. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 650.

When the monasteries, the homes of the literary class, were filled with foreign monks, the superiors in education of their native *brethren*, the vernacular culture could not but suffer. BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 32.

If they are proud of having beaten them, they are still prouder of having made them their political *brethren*. *Graph.*

Economically speaking, what I take from my *brethren* should go to my debit, only what service I do them, should go to the credit of my account. *Stead's Annual*, 1906, 236.

Mr. Ballour was the first great sacrifice to the injured manes of our slaughtered *brethren* in South Africa. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCV, 132b.

- ii. Oh God, to hear the Insect on the leaf pronouncing on the too much life among his hungry *brothers* in the dust. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, Ch. III, 62.

The workmen in the great jewellers' shops struck, saying they had no grievance of any kind, but they could not continue to work when their *brothers* all over Russia were striking for liberty. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCI, 500b.

Pitt's noble heart was broken in striving that she (sc. Freedom) should not pass us for ever to take refuge with our *brothers* across the Atlantic. CON. DOYLE, *Rodney Stone*, I, Ch. I, 10.

Far away in the background were the glorious snow-capped Alps, with Monte Rosa and Grand Paradis towering above their *brothers*. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. III, 33.

- 5) often in the literal sense of sons of the same parents, especially in poetry, and occasionally in prose to produce a humorous effect.

- i. And live at home in blameless ease; | For these my *brethren's* sake, for me And, most of all, for Emily. WORDSWORTH, *White Doe*, II, 60.

Call not thy brothers *brethren*. BYRON, *The Deformed transformed*, I, 1.  
And Both my *brethren* are in Arthur's hall. TEN., *Gar. and Lyn.*, 81.

- ii. It was not until he remitted considerable sums of money to England, that the bankers, his *brethren*, began to be reconciled to him. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. V, 57.

Thus frequently in comparisons:

- i. You should live together in one house, like *brethren* and friends. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, Sect., II.

I pray you all to live together | Like *brethren*. TEN., *Queen Mary*, IV, 3, (631b).

- ii. The Romans were like *brothers* | In the brave days of old. MAC., *Lays*, Horatius, XXXII.

Note. The Authorised Version has only *brethren*, irrespective of meaning. According to AL. SCHMIDT *brothers* and *brethren* are used indiscriminately by SHAKESPEARE. SWIFT also observes no difference in *The Tale of a Tub*.

- i. And Joseph knew his *brethren*, but they knew him not. Genesis. XLII. 8.  
But be not ye called Rabbi: for one is your Master, even Christ; and all ye are *brethren*. MATTHEW, XXIII, 8.

- ii. Thou hast a better place in his affection | Than all thy *brothers*: cherish it my boy, | And noble offices thou mayst effect | Of mediation, after I am dead, Between his greatness and thy other *brethren*. HENRY IV, B, IV, 4, 22ff.

- b) *Dice* is the modern spelling of Middle English *dys*, in like manner as *lice* and *mice* are the modern spellings of the Middle English *lys* and *mys*. (6).

This spelling with *ce* came into use in the transition from Middle English to Modern English, and served the purpose of showing that the original breath-sound of the sibilant had been retained. At that time it had become the general practice to pronounce breathed *s*, *th* and *f* with voice in weak syllables. Especially was this the case with the sibilant in inflectional *es*, as in the genitive singular *mannes* (Modern English *man's*) and the plural *stones*. The breath-sound was then retained for the *s* in strong monosyllables like *ges* and *pens* (Modern English *geese* and *pence*), also in such words as *hennes*, *ones*, *twies* (Modern English *hence*, *once*, *twice*), which at that time seem to have already become monosyllabic.

The Middle English *dys* was used chiefly in a collective sense, the singular being rare before the time of SHAKESPEARE; so that the *s* may not have been felt as a mark of the plural. Hence the use of *dice* as a singular (*a dice*) and of *dices* as a cumulative plural, down to the 17th century. Compare *truce*, a concealed plural (14). SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 861 and § 997; SKEAT, *Etym. Dict.*, s. v. *die*, *hence*, etc. MURRAY, s. v. *die*; NESFIELD, *Hist. Eng.*, § 109, N.

The form *dice* is now chiefly used in the meaning of the Dutch *dobbelsteen*, *dies* in that of *muntstempels*.

- i. The immensity of the stake which he was hazarding on a most uncertain *die* DISRAELI. <sup>1)</sup>

- ii. \* Dice-player = one who plays or gambles with *dice*. MURRAY.

France and Austria were both playing with clogged *dice*. MORLEY. <sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Protesting never to touch a card or throw a *dice* again. MRS. E. HEYWOOD. <sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* Ne at the *dyc*es with him to play. Bk. *Curtasye*. <sup>1)</sup>

iii. The *dies* used for the 3 d. and 5 d. New South Wales stamps have been in use for forty years. Times.

- c)<sup>4</sup> The form *pease* is chiefly used in a collective sense, but is also found preceded by a number-indicating word. Conversely *peas*, though mostly denoting separate seeds, is not infrequently met with in a collective sense. Many writers use the spelling *peas* throughout.
- i. \*He is as like him as two *peas*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIX, 302.  
 \*\* How vulgar it is to eat *peas* with a knife. Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 36.  
 Wharton devoted himself to his green *peas*. Mrs. WARD, Marcella, II, 208.  
 We also put in a cabbage and about half a peck of *peas*. JEROME, Three men in a Boat, Ch. XIV, 179.
- ii. \* In each bladder was a small quantity of dried *pease*. SWIFT, Gulliver's Trav., III, Ch. II, (1656).  
 \*\* She was much interested in the prospect of a *few pease* and cabbages as in former days she had been in the culture of expensive flowers. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XLIX, 327.
- d) For the rise of the spelling *pence* see the observation under *dice*.

The form *pence* is the only one used when the value is meant, but is not infrequently met with also when the coin is referred to. The form *pennies* always indicates coins. The plural of *halfpenny* seems to be usually *halfpence*. Names of coins ending in *pence* form the plural regularly by adding *s*. Thus also any multiple of *penny* is pluralized when considered as a unit. MURRAY, s. v. *penny*, B, 1, c.

- i. \* The books cost him only eight *pence* each.  
 Bardolph stole a lute-case, and sold it for three *halfpence*. Henry V, III, 2, 47.  
 \*\* Many people had, after hard begging, thrown her *pence*. EDNA LYALL, We Two, I, 21.  
 How many pounds of copper are there in a million of *pence*, each weighing an ounce? YOUNG, Arithmetic.  
 \*\*\* William Wood of Wolverhampton obtained in 1723 a patent authorising him to coin *halfpence* and farthings to the value of £ 108000. D. LAING PURVES, Life of Swift, 29.  
 He rattled his *halfpence* in his pockets as he walked home. (?), Mad. Leroux, Ch. XIII.  
 He disinterred all the cheese and *halfpence* he had buried in the garden. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Pref.  
 I shall show you that, on many occasions, he gave *halfpence*, and on some occasions even *sixpences*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV, 310.  
 \*\*\*\* "Here, you little beggars," Dobbin said, giving some *sixpences* amongst them. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXII, 229.  
 \*\*\*\*\* How many *eightpences* go to a sovereign?
- ii. These pieces obtained the appellation of gold *pennies*, gold *halfpennies*, and gold farthings, WALTER MERREY (RICHARD BITHELL, Merchant's Dict., s. v. *penny*).  
 He distributed silver *pennies* to be kept as a memento of the occasion. Times.

13. Some nouns, though properly singulars, have been mistaken for plurals:

*Alms* is now mostly construed as a plural in ordinary language. In literary language it is, however, sometimes treated as a singular, in

accordance with the Early Modern English practice. See especially JESP., *Growth and Structure*, § 187:

- i. Beggars that come into my father's door | Upon entreaty have a present *alms*.  
*Taming of the Shrew*, IV, 3.  
 Who seeing Peter and John about to go into the temple asked *an alms*. Acts, III, 3.  
 He was engaged in conversation with a beggar man that had asked *an alms* of him. *Spectator*, CCLXIX.  
 I have enough to give and enough to keep; as large a daily *alms* as a deacon gives would never be missed by me. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. VI, 66.  
 And Enoch set himself, | Scorning *an alms*, to work whereby to live. TEN., *En. Arden*, 807.

We ask *an alms* before some city gate. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *Cupid and Psyche*, 99a.

A round £ 100000 is a goodly *alms*. II. *Lond. News*.

- ii. His wealth | A fountain of perennial *alms*. TEN., *Queen Mary*, II, 1, (600b).  
 An outcast mother of the street stretched out of her rags a brown hand and arm, asking *alms* for the sake of the little children. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XX, 144.  
 He didn't see anything, but put out his hands towards me as if asking *alms*. *Punch*.

*Eaves* is now always construed as a plural. From the supposed plural a new singular has been formed, which is, however, as yet rarely met with. (13, c.)

- i. The *eaves* rest commonly on small arcades or corbel-tables. FREEMAN.<sup>1)</sup>  
 There was no counting now on Lord Ormont's presence in the British gathering seasons, when wheat-ears wing across our fields or swallows return to their *eaves*. GEORGE MERED., *Lord Ormont*, Ch. III, 43.  
 The swallows sported about the *eaves*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*.
- ii. The water trickles to the *eave* and then drops down. TYNDALL.<sup>1)</sup>

*Forceps*, from the Latin *forceps*, plural *forcepes*, although properly a singular, is sometimes construed as a plural, and, accordingly, used with the individualizer *pair* (36): *on the table lay a forceps, these forceps are very easy to handle, a pair of forceps*.

Some writers also have *forcepses* for the plural. The form *forcep*, as the name of one of the branches of the prehensile organs in certain animals, is now obsolete.

- i. One of two posterior legs is converted into a *forceps*. DARWIN, *Descent*.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. These *forceps* can seize firmly hold of any object. Id., *Origin of Species*.<sup>1)</sup>
- iii. Dunstan caught his sable majesty by the nose with a *pair of red-hot forceps*. COBB. BREW., *Read. Handb.*, s. v. *Dunstan*.
- iv. Then must the tooth be taken hold of with some of these toothed *forcepes*. T. JOHNSON.<sup>1)</sup>
- v. The eggs at the origin of each *forceps* would contain but one *forcep*. *Univ. Magaz.*<sup>1)</sup>
- vi. Tridactyle *forcepses* certainly exist on some star-fishes. DARWIN, *Origin of Species*.<sup>1)</sup>

*Riches*, an adaptation of the Old-French *richeise*, is always construed as a plural. "The conversion into the plural form may have been assisted by Latin *divitiæ*." MURRAY.

What signify *riches*, my dear friend? — do they not take unto *themselves* wings, as the wise man saith? SMOL., *Rod. Random*, Ch. XVI, 101.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



Note. *Summons* (Middle English *somouns*, from the Old French *semonce*), though apparently a plural, is a true singular and is usually construed as a singular. It has a regular plural: *summonses*. According to HODGSON (*Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 144), *summonses* has fallen into disrepute, *summons* being also used for the plural.

- i. His *summons carries* no kind of compulsion with it. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. XXV, 465.
- ii. During a couple of hours David had but three *summonses* from below to attend to. MRS. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, I, 229.  
There were three *summonses* just taken out by the sanitary inspector against Mr. Boyce. *Id.*, Marcella, I, 135.  
The Prime Minister yesterday issued *summonses* to his colleagues to attend a further Council for this week. *Daily Chron.*  
We are not disposed to regret the outcome of the *cross-summonses* which arose from the very disgraceful disturbances at the time of the Chelmsford election. *Westm. Gaz.*

13. a) In some cases a new singular has been coined from the supposed plural by divesting the latter of the plural termination. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 381; NESFIELD, *Hist. Eng.*, § 116.

*Burial*, from Mid. English *burials*. When the *e* was changed to *a* in Mod. English, *burials* seemed to be a plural like *virtuals*, *vitals*, *espousals*, etc.

*Cherry*, from Mid. English *cheris*.

*Pea*, from Mid. English *pese*, plur. *pesen* or *peses*. *Pease* may be apprehended as a singular in many compounds (31), such as *pease-meal*, *peas(e)-cod* (= *peapod*), *pease-pudding*. In some the form *pease* varies with *pea*, as in *pea(se)-bloom*, *pea(se)-blossom*, *pea(se)-soup*.

*Marquee*, from Mod. English *marquees*, a modified spelling of French *marquise*.

*Riddle*, from Mid. English *redels*.

- b) In some words the process has not yet been fully accomplished.

*Assets* is from the Anglo-French *assetz*, in the law-phrase *aver assetz* (= *to have sufficient*, viz. to meet certain claims). *Assets*, regularly treated as a plural, is still the ordinary form, but *asset* as a singular is by no means uncommon.

- i. His mother, Donna Inez, finding, too | That in the lieu of drawing on his banker, | Where his *assets* were waxing rather few, [etc.]. BYRON, *Don Juan*, X, xxxi.  
Lenders wish to have their *assets* as available as they can. ROGERS, *Polit. Econ.*, Ch. XV, 213.  
A man's property and sums owing to him are called his *assets*. Sir R. G. C. HAMILTON and JOHN BALL, *Book-keeping*, 5.
- ii. One of the most valuable *assets* that Great Britain possesses, is the coal of the South Wales mining fields. *Daily Mail*.  
To prevent the sale to a foreign and not over-friendly Power of *an asset* that would add enormously to the efficiency of its navy. *Ib.*  
Hitherto the Queen Alexandra has been regarded more or less as *an* ornamental *asset* of the Empire. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCI, 583a.

In the event of a dissolution of partnership the value of any existing insurance as an *asset* can be ascertained and dealt with as with *any other asset*. Weekly Statement of Mut. Life Ins. Comp.

**Chicken** is in some dialects felt as a plural, of the type of *oxen*, which causes *chick* to be used as the singular. We also find it occasionally regarded as a kind of collective noun of the type of *cattle*. For the rest *chick* is generally understood as a diminutive of *chicken*, and, accordingly it often denotes the young bird still in the egg or only just hatched. Figuratively *chick* often stands for young child. When an article of food is meant, *chicken* is the only word; conversely the form *chick* is regular in the phrase (n)either *chick* (n)or *child*. Note also *peachick* as the only form. ALFORD, The Queen's English, § 44; SATTLER, E. S., XII; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1967.

i. \* As East remarked, he cackled after him like a hen with one *chick*. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. II, 218.

The female of the cassowary pays court to the male and leaves him to incubate the eggs and care for the young *chicks*. Rev. of Rev., CCXI, 58b.

Now and again a kestrel will take to eating the *chicks* of pheasants. Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, 4c.

\*\* Why should any one exchange with me — a poor, blind, gouty old creature, with no *chick or child* to care whether she lives or dies? MRS. WARD, Lady Rose's Daughter, I, Ch. I, 14a.

In earlier days rich had he been and great, | But had no *chick or child* to bless his house. W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., The Story of Rhodope, XII.

\*\*\* John no one thwarted, much less punished; though he twisted the necks of the pigeons, killed the little *pea-chicks*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. II, 11.

\*\*\*\* It was not long, however, before the *chicks* proved to be the bringers of revenue instead of more cares and larger expenses to the modest household. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 474, 713c.

ii. Children and *chicken* must ever be picking. HAZLITT, Eng. Prov.<sup>1)</sup>

Do you keep *chicken*? DEAN ALFORD, The Queen's English.

iii. We had a *chicken* for dinner. Ib.

**Kickshaws** (= Dutch *liflaffjes*) is a corruption of the French *quelque chose*. "The original French spelling was frequent in the 17th century, "but the commonest forms follow the pronunciation *que'que chose*, "formerly regarded as elegant and still current in colloquial French. The word "was sometimes correctly taken as singular, with plural *-choses* etc.; more "commonly it was treated as a plural, and a new singular *kickshaw* afterwards "formed from it." MURRAY. The word occurs only twice in SHAKESPEARE, once under the form of *kickshaws* in Henry IV, B, V, 1, 29, where it may be understood as a singular; and once under the form of *kickshawses* in Twelfth Night I, 2, 122.

i. \* A kinde of daintie dish or *quelque chose* used in Italie. FLORIO.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\* Making *quelque-choses* of unsavoury Meat. MOUFET and BENNET.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. He despised your French *kickshaws*. THACK., The four Georges, III, 80.  
I hate your *kickshaws*, though I keep a French cook for those who are not of my way of thinking. Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 75.

iii. The Chef is instructing a kitchen-maid how to compound some rascally French *kickshaw*. Id., G. Cruikshank.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *chicken*, 6.    <sup>2)</sup> Id., s. v. *kickshaws*.

iv. Some pigeons, Davy, a couple of short-legged hens, a joint of mutton, and any pretty little tiny *kickshaws*, tell William cook. Henry IV, B, V, 1, 29.

Art thou good at these *kickshawses*, knight? Twelfth Night, I, 2. 122.

- c) Some newly coined singulars have not as yet found their way into the literary language.

Such are *eave* from *caves* (13), *shay* from *chaise*, and *Chinee*, *Portuguee*, etc. from *Chinese*, *Portuguese*, etc. STORM, Eng. Phil., 800.

*shay*. "How shall we go?" — "It's too warm to walk." — "A *shay*?" suggested Mr. Joseph Tuggs. "*Chaise*", whispered Mr. Cymon. "I should think one would be enough", said Mr. Joseph Tuggs aloud, quite unconscious of the meaning of the correction, "However, two *shays*, if you like." DICK, Sketches.<sup>1)</sup>

Master sent me over with the *shay*-cart to carry your luggage up to the house. Id., Pickw., Ch. XXVIII, 248.

Mr. MIDDLEWICK (a retired butlerman). My boy'll be here soon; I sent the *shay*. — SIR GEOFFREY CHAMPNEYS (a county magnate). Sent the what? — MID. The *shay* — the *shay*. — SIR G. Oh, the *chaise*? — MID. No, only one of them. H. J. BYRON, Our Boys, I, 1.

*Chinee*. For ways that are dark | And for tricks that are vain, | The heathen *Chinee* is peculiar. BRET HARTE, Plain Language from Truthful James, I.

"You boys have no taste whatever; one might as well play to — to —". She paused for a comparison. "To the heathen *Chinee*," suggested her companion. EDNA LYALL, DONOVAN, I, 55.

*Portuguee*. I had an attack of fever and was in a bad way generally, when one day a *Portuguee* arrived with a single companion — a half-breed. Now I know a Delagoa *Portuguee* well. RIDER HAGGARD, Sol. Mines, 25.

14. In some nouns plurality has got disguised through orthography, with the result that they are construed as singulars.

*Baize* (= Dutch *baai*) stands for *bayes*, *baies*, etc., which are adaptations of the French *baies*, a plural of the feminine form of the adjective *bai* used as a noun. *Bai* = chestnut-coloured; compare a *bay horse*.

*Bodice* for stands *bodices*, the *ce* representing the earlier pronunciation of the final *s* (11, b). "The original phrase (was) a pair of *bodies*. Even with the spelling *bodice* the word was formerly (like *pence*, *mice*, *dice*, *truce*) "treated as a plural." MURRAY. *Bodice* has developed a new plural: *bodices*.

*Chess* represents the Old French and Anglo-French *eschecs*, the plural of *eschec*, of which there are many secondary forms.

*Pox* is an an absurd spelling for *pocks*; compare the illiterate *sox* for *socks*. The singular form still appears in *pock-marks*. The plural *pox* occurs chiefly in the compounds *chicken-pox* (= Dutch *waterpokken*), *cow-pox* (= Dutch *koepokken*) and *small-pox* (= Dutch *kinderpokken*), which seem to be ordinarily construed as singulars. HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, 144. *Cowpock*, etc. are, apparently, only in vulgar use for *cowpox*, etc.

<sup>1)</sup> FRANZ, E. S. XII.

i. I have just heard that there is *a* shocking *chicken-pox* in the village. MAR. EDGEWORTH.<sup>1)</sup>

*Cowpox* is transferred to man and from one person to another by the introduction of a virus. FLINT.<sup>1)</sup>

*Small-pox* was raging in the neighborhood. Graph.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. If I hadn't a family, and that family hadn't the *cowpock*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 35a.

*Poultice* represents the Latin *pultes*, plural of *puls* = *thick pap*, or *pap-like substance*.

*Sledge* is, apparently, a re-spelling of *sleds*, plural of *sled*, the word still used in Canada for *sledge*. The spelling *sledge* may have come into use through the influence of *sledge* in *sledge-hammer*.

*Trace* is probably a re-spelling of the French *traits*, the plural of *trait* = *line*. The form *traces* would then be a double plural.

*Truce* might be spelled *trews* as the Modern English representative of the Middle English *trives*, and its variants, meaning *pledges of truth*. The spelling *ce* has to be accounted for as that of *dice*. (11, b.)

They had nothing now to fear from the Turk, for they had concluded a *truce* with him. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIX, 218a.

*Welkin* represents the Middle English *wolkne*, *welkne* and many more variants.

"Well done, men of Devon!" shouted Amyas, as cheers rent the *welkin*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XX, 152a.

15. In forming the plural of compound nouns and substantival word-groups, except such as contain a noun placed in apposition to another noun (17), only the last member receives, as a rule, the mark of plurality: *brother-officer* — *brother-officers*, *penny-a-liner* — *penny-a-liners*, *forget-me-not* — *forget-me-nots*, *go-between* — *go-betweens*, *ne'er-do-well* — *ne'er-do-wells*, *three-year-old* — *three-year-olds*, *merry-go-round* — *merry-go-rounds*, etc. The situation will be changed . . . in such a way as to increase the work of the *Lieutenant Governors*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4949, 1c.

In the next race were seen the well-known *three-years-olds* Le Nord and Alloway. Graph.

The custom of the Temple obliging each novice to give a dinner to some *brother Templars*, embarrassed him at first. STEPH. GWENN, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. I, 19.

She had evidently held his displeasure as a rod in pickle over the heads of all the *ne'er-do-wells*. MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. V, 94.

A Governor General is a governor who has under him *deputy- or lieutenant governors*. MURRAY.

Note. Also compounds of *ful(l)* mostly follow this rule, but sometimes we find the mark of the plural attached to the first member of the compound, the word *ful(l)* being kept in the singular.

i. Two *handfuls* of marbles. MORRIS, *Eng. Accidence*, § 78, k.

There were calves still young enough to want *bucketfuls* of fragrant milk. G. ELIOT, *Silas Marner*, Conclusion, 156.

ii. At seven in the morning, in bed, a tumbler of new cream and two *table-spoonsful* of rum. DICK., *Letters*.<sup>3)</sup>

1) MURRAY. 2) SATTLER, E. S., XVI. 3) TEN BRUG., *Taals*., VI.



Then came two *donkeysful* of children. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 302.  
When there was a stoppage and boiling water could be obtained, *bucketsfull* of tea were made and poured down their throats. CONWAY, *Called Back*, 187.

In such a sentence as *We had our hands full of work* (MORRIS, *Eng. Accid.*, § 78, *k*), *hands* and *full* are, of course, detached words. A similar interpretation may also be put on:

There was such a crowd you might have thought it was a Derby day. Several *coaches full* of ministers of all denominations. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. V, 55.

16. To the rule described in 15 there are the following exceptions:

- a) Word-groups (or compounds) in which, after the French idiom, the adjective is placed after the noun (Ch. VIII, 87, *a*) mostly have the mark of the plural attached to the noun.

The rule holds good chiefly in the literary language, i. e. when the nature of the adjective as an adnominal modifier is distinctly understood.

But in the popular language in which the individual meaning of the noun and the adjective is not distinctly felt, we observe a tendency to put the inflection at the end. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, 1019. This seems to apply especially to *knight-errant* and *court-martial*. According to MURRAY *attorney generals* is 'better' than *attorneys general*.

- i. The children of brothers and sisters are usually denominated cousins, or *cousins-german*. WEBST., *Dict.*

*Book-prices current* is rapidly becoming the most extensive, as it has long been the best, of books of bibliographical reference. Not. and Quer. These *battles royal* between him and Lady Henry were not uncommon. MRS. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. V, 42a.

It is, certainly, a very singular accident, that a small society as that of Merton should have sent out two successive *Governors-General* of Canada. Sir G. C. LEWIS.<sup>1)</sup>

Youth, we are *damsels-errant*, and we ride, | Arm'd as ye see, to tilt against the knights | There at Caerleon. TEN., *Pelleas and Ettarre*, 61.

The purpose of this little book is to provide for schools a simple outline of the rise, expansion, and present form of those National Institutions, of which all English children are already the *heirs-apparent*. ANNA BUCKLAND, *Our National Institutions*, Preface.

Augusta was not prepared to find *knights-errant* thus prepared, at such cost to themselves, to break a lance in her cause. RID. HAGGARD, *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 36.

It was an object in search of which numerous *knights-errant* spent their lives. WEBST., *App.*, s. v. *St. Graal*.

Cnut's *courts martial* really exercised this kind of jurisdiction. FREEMAN.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. Without waiting the judgment of *court-martials*. STEELE, *Spect.*, CCCXCIV.<sup>1)</sup>

From what giants and monsters would these *knight-errants* undertake to free the world? BERKELEY.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. SHAKESPEARE has *letters-patents* (*Rich. II*, II, 1, 202; *ib.*, II, 3, 130; *Henry VIII*, III, 2, 250); but the modern practice is to attach the mark of the plural only to the noun.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- b) Compounds consisting of a noun and a prepositional word-group or an adverb, have the noun placed in the plural: *commanders-in-chief*, *fathers-in-law*, *heirs-at-law*, *men-at-arms*, *quarters-of-an-hour*, *bills of fare*;

*blowings-up*, *callings-over*, *hangers-on*, *knockers-up*, *lookers-on*, *lyings-in*, *standers-by*, *whippers-in*.

- i. He had the honour of singing his songs at the tables of the most illustrious generals and *commanders-in-chief*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 58.  
He bethought him of all the hours, half-hours, and *quarters-of-an-hour* during which she had been employed in her pretty task. WILLIAM BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XXI.
- ii. I dare say thou hast often admired its magnificent portals ever gaping wide, and disclosing to view a grave court, with cloisters and pillars, with few or no traces of *goers-in* or *comers-out*. LAMB, *Essays of Elia*, *South-Sea House*, 3.

*Breakings-up* are capital things in our school days, but in after life they are painful enough. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX.

At length, after several *droppings asleep* and *fallings forward* towards the bars, and *catchings backward* soon enough to prevent being branded in the face, Mr. Dowler made up his mind that he would throw himself on the bed in the back-room and think — not sleep of course. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXVI, 336.

The punt-about is the practice-ball, which is just brought out and kicked about anyhow from one boy to another before *callings-over* and dinner. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. V, 93.

(l) Delight myself with gossip and old wives | And ills and aches, and teetlings, *lyings-in*. TEN., *Holy Grail*, 564.

He sends forth to his clergy either blessings or *blowings-up*, according to the state of his digestive organs. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 25.

- c) Some compounds or word-groups in which one noun stands adnominally before another noun, have both members placed in the plural. This is the case:

- 1) when the adnominal noun is in the genitive: *bird's-nest* — *birds'-nests*, *lady's costume* — *ladies' costumes*, *fox's tail* — *foxes' tails*, *gentleman's umbrella* — *gentlemen's umbrellas*.

Your hair reminds me of *eagles' feathers*; whether your nails are grown like *birds' claws* or not, I have not yet noticed. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 537.

*Farmers' sons* are apeing fine gentlemen, and *farmers' daughters* caring more to make bad music than good English cheeses. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 89.

Mr. Crawley returned a note with her compliments, an an intimation that it was not her custom to transact bargains with *ladies' maids*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 345.

Note. Not infrequently do we find the genitive singular:

There were three *peacock's feathers* displayed over the mantelpiece. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. V, 38a.

Though he had not reached his fortieth year, he had already *crow's feet* about his eyes. G. ELIOT, *Broth. Jac.*, 395.

We had been sowing *dragon's teeth* at the Diamond Fields, and the old harvest was springing from them. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 52.

A measure which it is asserted has practically dried up all *Peter's pence* in France. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVII, 454b.

*Convolvulus minor* and *major* are *florist's* names of well-known garden annuals.  
MURRAY, s. v. *convolvulus*.  
King Midas has *ass's ears*. Cas. Conc. Cycl., s. v. *Midas*.

- 2) Sometimes when the attributive noun denotes a particular condition, function, status, employment or use (Ch. XXIII, 5c; 9).

It is especially the following nouns that have both members in the plural number:

- a) such as have *man* or *woman*, or a compound of either, for their first member.

The keeper of a chandler's shop in a front-parlour, who took in *gentlemen-boarders*, lent his assistance in making the bed. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VIII, 45a.

He lived in a little street near the Veterinary College in Camden Town, which was principally tenanted by *gentlemen-students*. Id., Cop., Ch. XXVII, 199a.  
The *women-servants*, who were about the place, came to look and giggle at me. Ib., Ch. V, 35b.

It was one of her practices to have the *women-servants* for half an hour every Sunday afternoon in the library and instruct them in the life of Christ. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. III, 27.

Their *tradesmen papas* were sometimes ready to deal on favourable terms with Mrs. Frederick. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 15.

Eight of the *women suffragists* are released from Holloway Gaol. Rev. of Rev., CCIV, 657a.

Note. Sometimes we find the adnominal noun kept in the singular. One of the most eminent of our *woman* astronomers has passed away in Miss Elizabeth Brown. II. Lond. News.  
*Woman suffragists* in Wall-Street. Times, No. 1822, 959b. (According to WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., *woman suffragists* is more common than *women suffragists*.)

- β) Such as have *knight*, *lord*, and, perhaps, some other titles for their first member. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1019.

The priory of St. John of Jerusalem, the chief seat in England of the *Knights-Hospitallers*, was founded in the year 1700. WALT. BESANT, *London*, I, 16.  
On the first day of Michaelmas sittings the *Lords Justices*, when they march up Westminster Hall, wear black robes, liberally sprinkled with gold lace. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. XXIV, 415.

The *Lords-Lieutenants* and their Deputies held the command under the King. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 287.

They both were *Lords Marchers*, whose lands lay on the border of Wales. GOSSE, *Gray, Bard*, Note to 14.

After this the order of *knights-bannerets* was allowed to die out. MURRAY, s. v. *banneret*.

Note. Occasionally we find the mark of the plural attached only to either the first or the last noun.

- i. It was also agreed that the association should consist of *Lords-Lieutenant* of counties in England and Wales. Daily Chron.

Peers, Bishops, *Lords-Lieutenant* of counties, Members of Parliament, clergy of all denominations will be good enough. Mrs. HUMPHREY, *Etiquette*, 16.

He defended the impartiality of the *Lords-Lieutenant*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5060, 2b.

- ii. He prated about his own affairs and past splendour, and all the lords, generals, and *Lord-Lieutenants* he had ever known. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 59.

*Two Knight Templars*. TEN., *Dram. Pers. to Becket*.

The *Lord Chancellors* are raised to the peerage. ANNA BUCKLAND, *Our Nat. Inst.*, 14.

There are five ordinary judges in this court, who are called *Lord Justices*. *Ib.*, 60.  
That a Radical Ministry should employ the Crown to induce the *Lord-Lieutenants* to undertake a new and somewhat distasteful duty is entirely in accordance with the ideas of modern democracy. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXV, 442b.

It is interesting to observe the nice shade of difference in the meaning of the adnominal nouns in the following quotation. In the first it is understood as that described under c), in the second as that described under b) in Ch. XXIII, 5.

- i. They often recruited their *banditti* garrisons by *banditti* soldiers. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 20.
- ii. His principedom | Close on the borders of a territory, | Wherein were *bandit* earls, and caitiff knights. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 35.

Compare with the first of the two above quotations:

The election is notable, too, from the fact that two *Suffragists* candidates who stood, polled respectively 22 and 32 votes. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5484, 5b.

Note. In this connection mention may also be made of the compounds *menkind* and *womenkind*, denoting the men or women belonging to a particular circle or establishment, as distinct from *mankind*, the human species or the male sex, according to the accent; and *womankind*, the female sex. Instead of *womenkind* the form *womankind* is very common. MURRAY gives no instances of *mankind* in the sense of *menkind*. For *menkind* and *womenkind* we also find *menfolk* and *womenfolk*.

- i. \* I had breakfasted with the Family, and the *Men-kind* were gone abroad. in C. MATHER, *Magn.*, Ch. VI, 12. 1)

Where the family meals take place, and where the Basque *menkind* are served first. MONTH. 1)

\*\* It is quite a mistake to imagine that the heroines of sensational fiction live more crowded and romantic lives than real women. Take for instance those who go with their *menfolk* to far corners of the Empire, where the latter are playing the parts of watchdogs of civilisation. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5137, 15b.

- ii. \* The *womenkind* were busy with their domestic avocations. GORDON HOLMES, *Silvia Craven*, 14.

\*\* Chafing under the persecution which his *womankind* had inflicted upon him. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XIX, 211.

He hurried out of his house to his chambers, and to discharge the commissions with which the *womankind* had intrusted him. *Id.*, *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VI.

She was at any rate their natural guardian in those matters, relating to *womankind*. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 159.

\*\*\* The *womenfolk* 'don't understand these things. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VIII, 121.

If the Anglo-Indian official, and especially his *women-folk*, could realise that, a good deal of the trouble in India would disappear. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXXI, 205b.  
What about the man in the street, the railway guard, the 'bus conductor, the cabman, the humbler clerks, and their *womenfolk* . . .; will they get beyond one visit? *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4961, 12a.

1) MURRAY.



Here, at any rate, was a revival of old days, with *women-folk* paying flattering attentions. W. PETT RIDGE, *New Scheme*, (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4983, 3c.) Any man who shows the white feather, runs every risk of being killed by his *womenfolk*. 11. *Lond. News*, No. 3669, 239.

17. a) Word-groups consisting of a class-noun and a proper name standing in apposition to it, mostly have the mark of the plural attached to the former, at least in the formal literary style.

The *Misses Osborne* were excellent critics on a Cashmere shawl. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 117.

Yonder are the *Misses Leery* looking out for the young officers of the Heavies. *ib.*, I, Ch. XXII, 229.

The *Misses Plaskwith*. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 62.

I would collect evidence and carry it home to lay before my father, as the family friend of the two *Misses Jenkyns*. MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. XII, 221. She had a countess coming, an honourable John and an Honourable George, and a whole bevy of *Ladies Amelia, Rosina, Margaretha*, etc. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXV, 307.

The *Messrs. Bell* desire me to thank you for your suggestion respecting the advertisement. MRS. GASKELL, *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 228.

The *Ladies Devenish* were not disposed to make her life any easier than it needed to be. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankr. Heart*, I, 230.

This book is an attempt to revive the fairy-tale after the manner of the *brothers Grimm*. *Manch. Guardian*.

The *sisters Findlater*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVI, 216b.

- b) In the spoken language some of these words-groups, have the mark of the plural attached to the proper name. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1020.

I will alter this: this shall be altered, were there ten *Mrs. Yorkes* to do battle with. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XVI, 329.

The *Miss Crumptions*, or to quote the authority of the inscription on the garden-gate: 'The *Misses Crumpton*' [etc.]. DICK., *Sketches*, The *Misses Crumpton*.

Are there *Mrs. Nicklebies* — or, to speak more correctly, are there *Mistresses Nickleby* in France? THACK., *Dickens in France*.

It was remarked that the young *Master Gashleighs*, when they came home for the holidays, always wore lacquered highlows. *Id.*, *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VI, 337.

The *Miss Notleys*. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 316.

The two *doctor Thomsons*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1020.

Such things are never forgotten by the *Mrs. Paches* of this world. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Jane Oglander*, Ch. VI, 88.

This practice is, however, impossible when the different members of one and the same family are referred to, and the proper name is mentioned only once.

*Mr., Mrs. and the Misses Johnson.*

The very blackest view is the one taken by the numerous *Mrs. and Misses Grundy*, to say nothing of the almost equally numerous *Grundys, Esq.*<sup>1)</sup>

Compare this with the varied practice in: *Sir Thomas Clubber, Lady Clubber, and the Miss Clubbers*. PICKW., Ch. II, 13.

*Mrs. Smithie, Mrs. Smithie, and the Misses Smithie.* *ib.*

<sup>1)</sup> KRUISINGA, *A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 315.

NOTE I. In some combinations the popular language often transposes the two nouns, so that the mark of plurality may be conveniently placed at the end. (Ch. IV, 13.)

The Smith *brothers*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1020.

The Dodson *sisters*. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. III, 197.

II. The reason why in such word-groups as *Doctor Thomson*, *King William*, etc. the mark of the plural is often attached at the end, may be that the common noun in this position loses to a large extent the character of head-word and becomes an adjunct-word, which causes it to assume more or less the character of an adjective. In fact *King William* differs but little from *Royal William*. Ch. IV, 4 Obs. I, Ch. XXXI, 53. See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 90.

The placing of the mark of the plural at the end has, moreover, the effect of uniting the two nouns into a kind of compound.

- c) When the class-noun refers to persons bearing different names, it is placed in the plural, if it is not repeated before each proper name. (10, d.)

*Messrs.* Snodgrass, Winkle, and Tupman, all smile in company. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXVIII.

*Messrs.* Pendennis and Bows. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XI, 123.

*Young Masters* Alfred and Edward clapping and hurrying by his side. Id., Newc. I. Ch. XVI, 183.

*The emperors* William and Francis Joseph. Times.

*Lieutenants* Walton and Sword. Ib.

*Generals* Buller and Warren. Morn. Lead.

*Drs.* Johnson and Smith.

Thus also when the proper names are preceded by two class-nouns, as in:

So the bishop was searched for by the *Revs. Messrs.* Grey and Green. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XLII, 368.

## USE.

18. From their meaning a great many nouns are used only or chiefly in the plural, either absolutely, or exclusively in certain significations or combinations.

This plural meaning, however, is not always distinctly felt, so that we meet with not a few instances in which, although the plural form of the noun is retained, its constructions are that of a singular. The orderly discussion of this matter belongs of right to the Chapter on Concord, but has, for practical purposes, been incidentally given in this Chapter à propos of the several nouns concerned.

For want of a convenient English word, nouns that are used only in the plural are often called by the Latin name of *pluralia tantum*, singular *plurale tantum*.

According partly to their meaning, partly to their origin, the *pluralia tantum* have been divided into certain groups. Especially owing to this twofold principle of division some have found a place in two or more

groups. When necessary, these have been discussed or illustrated where it seemed most convenient to do so.

The nouns that are usually placed in the plural only in certain of their meanings, the singular being quite usual in others, are discussed in a separate §. This has also been done with such as have the plural for their ordinary form only in certain collocations.

19. The nouns of which the plural is the only or usual form are chiefly the following:

a) the names of certain articles of dress, chiefly for the lower limbs, and of certain tools or instruments consisting of two conspicuously symmetrical or equal parts, or mostly used in pairs, such as:

- 1) *barnacles*, *breeches*, *chausses* (now usually pronounced as in Mod. French), *cuisse*s, *drabs* (= drab breeches), *drawers* (similarly *swimming-drawers*), *ducks*, (*galli*)*gaskins*, *greaves*, *knee-smalls* (= *knee-shorts*), *knickerbockers* (often shortened to *knickers*), *pantaloon*s, *pumps*, *rational*s (*g*) (= *bloomers*), *leathers*, *overalls*, *shorts* (*g*), *small-clothes*, *smalls* (*g*), *spatterdashes*, *stays*, *tights* (*g*), *trousers*, *trunks* (20) (= *trunk-hose* (8a), Dutch *potbroek*).
- 2) *bellows*, *bilboes*, *calipers* (= *caliper compasses*), *chains* (20), *compasses* (20), *derbies*, *eye-glasses* (20), *fetters*, *gives* (= *gyves*), *handcuffs*, *irons* (20), *leading-strings*, *manacles*, *nutcrackers* (20), *pincers* (= *pinchers*), *pliers*, *reins*, *scales* (20), *scissors*, *shackles*, *shears*, *snuffers*, *spectacles* (20), *tongs*, *trammels*, *tweezers*.

Note I. After a numeral or the indefinite article these nouns require to be preceded by the individualizer *pair*. (36.) See, however below. Analogously *a pair of corsets* is sometimes used for *a corset*.

II. *Bellows* is mostly construed as a singular: *the bellows wants mending*, *a bellows is a kind of instrument*. In some dialects it has received a second plural: *bellowses*.

But we also find it construed as a plural and preceded by the individualizer *pair* (36): *the bellows want mending*, *he has ordered another pair of bellows*. After a numeral *pair* is, however, mostly dispensed with: *two pair(s) of bellows*, more usually: *two bellows*.

Also some of the other nouns mentioned above, are sometimes treated as singulars: *a scissors*, *a trousers*.

Very rarely are the singulars of most of the above words met with. *Eye-glass*, however, seems to be in common use for *eye-glasses*. See also STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 686.

III. *Breeches* is a cumulate plural, the Old English *brēc* forming its plural by mutation: *brēc*. This *brēc* came afterwards to be considered as a singular, as in:

But in our childhood our mothers maids haue so terrified vs with an ouglie diuell hauing hornes on his head, fier in his mouth, and a taile in his breech. REGINALD SCOT, *Discovery of Witchcraft*, VII, Ch. XV.

CH. KINGSLEY has *breeks* archaically in:

Thou art no old tarry-*breeks* of a sea-dog. Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXX, 229b.

Compare also: My coat and my rest, they are Scotch o' the best, | O' pairs of quid *breeks* I cae twa, man. BURNS, The Forbolton Lasses, XVIII.

**barnacles.** i. The *barnacles* are the handles of the pincers placed over and enclosing the muzzle. YOUATT, Horse XXI, 457.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. One on' em's got his legs on the table, and is a drinkin' brandy neat, vile the f'other one — him in the *barnacles* — has got a barrel o' oysters atween his knees. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 266.

**bellows.** i. Flattery is the *bellows* blows up sin. Pericles, I, 2.

Suppose the reverse — the enthusiasm gone to dust, or become a wheezy old *bellows*. GEORGE MERED., Lord Ormont, Ch. III, 61.

Bagpipe: a musical wind-instrument consisting of a leathern bag which receives the air from the mouth or from a *bellows*. ANNANDALE, Conc. Dict.

You want to be something better than a *bellows*. W. BESANT, All Sorts and Cond. of Men., Ch. XXXV, 239.

ii. When the disease was more stubborn and violent, he let in his nozzle while the *bellows* were full of wind. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., III, Ch. V, (174b).

iii. He had a large pair of *bellows*, with a long slender nozzle of ivory. Ib., III, Ch. V, (174b).

Twelve pair of *Bellows*, rang'd in stated row, | Are joined above, and fourteen more below. MASON.<sup>1)</sup>

iv. The lungs are like two elastic *bellows*. RIPPmann, Sounds of Spok. Engl., §4. The walls were hung with bright dish-covers, warming-pans, quaint old *bellows* and kitchen implements. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norseman, Ch. XVIII, 150.

v. Twenty *bellowses* in all he had. HOBBS.<sup>1)</sup>

**bilboes.** You sha'n't go to the *bilboes* this bout. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXIII, 166. A magician keeps me here in *bilboes* for which you have no picklock. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXIX, 219b.

**chains.** The gentleman is in *chains* already. GAY, Beg. Op., III.

**compasses.** Fix one point of a pair of *compasses* at B, and with the distance BO sweep a circle. TYNDALL, Glac. of the Alps, Ch. II, 16.

**cuisses.** And all his *greaves* and *cuisses* dash'd with drops | Of onset. TEN., Morte d'Arthur, 215.

**derbies.** Just hold out the hands while I fix the *derbies*. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., I, 97.

**drabs.** The latter (sc. the sporting Winkle) communicating additional lustre to a new green shooting coat, plaid neckerchief, and closely-fitted *drabs*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. I.

**ducks.** At Auckland there came on board in white *ducks*, which hung on his emaciated form like clothes on a prop, a man to all appearance in the last stage of consumption. Times.

**eye-glasses.** i. "She has her notions, you know", said Mr. Brooke, sticking his *eye-glasses* on nervously. G. ELIOT, Mid., V, Ch. XLIX, 357.

ii. "My dear Chettam, it won't lead to anything, you know", said Mr. Brooke, seating himself and sticking on his *eye-glass* again. Ib., V, Ch. XLIX, 358.

**galligaskins.** He was generally seen trooping like a colt at his mother's heels, equipped in a pair of his father's cast-off *galligaskins*. WASH. IRV., Rip van Winkle.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



He had somehow picked up a troop of *droll* children, little hatless boys with their *galligaskins* much worn. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 342.

CLOWN. I am resolved on two points. — MAR. That if one break, your *gaskins* fall. *Twelfth Night*, I, 6, 27. (a pun on the word *points*, which Maria takes in the meaning of tags used for keeping up the breeches.)

**greaves.** The sun came dazzling thro' the leaves | And flamed upon the brazen *greaves* | Of bold Sir Lancelot. TEN., *Lady of Shalott*, III, 1.

**irons.** The tyrant sent him up the country in *irons*. MAC., *Clive*.

**knee-smalls.** (He) played some part in blue silk *knee-smalls*. DICK., *Nich. Nick.*, Ch. XXIII.

**knee-shorts.** A very dusty skeleton in a blue coat, black *knee-shorts*, and silks, fell forward in the arms of the porter. ID., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXI.

**leggings.** So by way of indemnification, Mr. Weller contorted his features from behind the wheelbarrow, for the exclusive amusement of the boys with the *leggings*. ID., Ch. XIX, 165.

**overalls.** He was dressed in a tarnished green travelling-jacket, with a broad belt round his waist, and a *pair of overalls*, with buttons from the hips to the ankle. WALH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XVI, 150.

**pantaloons.** My *pantaloons* were made a good eighteen months before. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 8.

**pumps.** It was quite painful to see how humble and civil he was to John of the Tapioca, a blear-eyed old attendant in dingy stockings and cracked *pumps*. ID., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 208.

**rationals.** The criminal law was invoked against poor Mrs. Spragne in order to decide whether innkeepers may or may not refuse to serve ladies in '*rationals*'. *Times*.

**reins.** Bulstrode holds the *reins* and drives him. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 344.

**scissors.** i. I have paid fifteen-and-six for a silver *scissors*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 21.

Here is *the scissors*. BAIN, *Comp.*, 295.

ii. Tom saw her go at once to a drawer, from which she took out a large *pair of scissors*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 54.

**shorts.** It was a pleasant sight to behold Mr. Tupman in full Brigand's costume... the upper portion of his legs encased in the velvet *shorts*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 131.

**smalls.** Very few people but those who have tried it, know what a difficult process it is, to bow in green velvet *smalls*. ID., Ch. XV, 133.

**shackles.** The *shackles* of an old love straitened him. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 870.

**trunks.** Equally humorous and agreeable was the appearance of Mr. Snodgrass in blue satin *trunks*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 131.

**spectacles.** On the whole it appears... | That the *spectacles* plainly were made for the Nose | And the nose was as plainly intended for them. W. COWPER, *Report of an Adjudged Case*, VI.

**stays.** Margaret clasped her *stays* across her plump figure. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. II, 10.

**tights.** Marley in his pig-tail, usual waistcoat, *tights* and boots. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 17.

Did you ever dance in *tights*? WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. XXX.

**trammels.** Now when the wine has done its rosy deed, | And every soul from human *trammels* freed. KEATS, *Lamia*.

At last, Cowper threw off the whole *trammels* of French criticism and artificial refinement. FRANCIS JEFFREY, *Ess.*, Ford (Univ. Libr., 49).

If a man can so write as to be easily understood, and to convey lucidly that which he has to convey, without accuracy of grammar, why should he subject himself to unnecessary *trammels*. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. IX, 199.

**trouser(s).** i. Besides the clothes in which you see me, I have scarcely a decent *trousers* in my wardrobe. STEVENSON.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. My first glance is always at a woman's sleeve. In a man it is perhaps better first to take the knee of his *trouser*. CON. DOYLE, *Sherlock Holmes*, I, 123.

b) the names of certain parts of the human or animal body, which are made up of several more or less separate parts, such as:

*bowels*, *entrails*, (*eye*-)*lashes*, *fauces*, *gums*, *guts*, *intestines*, *lights* (g, 2), *loins*, *numbles* (= entrails of a deer), *posteriors* (h), *viscera* (h), *whiskers*, *withers*.

Note. The singulars *bowel*, (*eye*-)*lash*, *gum*, *gut*, *intestine* and *viscus* are occasionally met with, especially as medical or scientific terms, and when a defining adjective precedes, as in *the little (small) gut*, *the great (large) gut*, *the small intestine*, *the large intestine*. Also *whisker* is found in the singular, apparently in the same sense as the plural *whiskers*.

**bowel(s).** i. The seat of the disease, namely the *bowel*. NATURE.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. Scrooge had often heard it said that Marley had no *bowels*, but he had never believed it until now. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 18.

A place where Miners live, who labour in the *bowels* of the earth. *Ib.*, III, 74.

(*eye*-)*lash(es)*. i. She fought him (sc. sleep) to the last *eye-lash*. Harper's *Mag.*<sup>2)</sup>

ii. Looking through their fingers or their *eye-lashes*. TYNDALL.<sup>2)</sup>

**gum(s).** i. \* The hiss of such a consonant as the blade-fan-open... is formed not only between blade and *gum*, but also between the sides of the tongue and the back teeth. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 128.

In some languages, as in *English*, *t*, *d*, *n* are not strictly dental, but alveolar; i. e. the contact is with the *gum* close behind the teeth. MURRAY, s. v. *dental*, 2.

\*\* She had small teeth and a good deal of *gum* when she smiled. *Queer Stories* (Truth No. 1800, 1676b).

ii. The *gums* extend from the teeth-rim to the arch-rim. SWEET, *Princ. Phon.*, § 31.

**gut(s).** i. They (sc. the faeces) may lie in any part of the great *gut*. J. M. DUNCAN.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. A king may go a progress through the *guts* of a beggar. *Hamlet*, IV, 3, 34.

**intestine(s).** i. I was about to tell him I had never seen a wounded *intestine*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXII, 110.

The duodenum is that part of the small *intestine* which immediately succeeds the stomach. The rectum is that part of the large *intestine* which opens externally. HUXLEY.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. The contents of the stomach and *intestines* were of a similar nature. *Med. Journ.*<sup>2)</sup>

**lights.** The lungs, or as they are vulgarly termed *lights*, are eaten as a part of the pluck or fry. E. SMITH, *Food*.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> GÜNTL., *Man.*, § 374.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

**loins.** In Britain we are girding up our *loins* for a war with the Lords. Rev. of Rev. CCV, 3a.

**thews.** For nature crescent does not grow alone | In *thews* and bulk. Haml., I, 3, 12.

That fierce and sturdy giant, who, in all popular commotions, towered above his tribe, with *thews* of stone, and nerves of iron, stood now colouring and trembling. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. X, 59.

Miss Thorne made up her mind . . . to trust . . . to the *thews* and sinews of native Ullathorne growth. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXXV, 312.

**viscus(-era).** i. He well says that probably no limb, no *viscus* is so far a vessel of dishonour as to lie wholly outside the renewal of the spirit. Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 8d.

ii. *Viscera* = the contents of the great cavities of the body, as of the head, thorax and abdomen; but especially those of the abdomen, as the stomach, intestines, etc. WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v.

**whisker(s).** i. Sir Brian had a bald head and light hair, *a short whisker* cut to his cheek, a buff waistcoat, very neat boots and hands. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VI, 68.

ii. In face Hobson Newcome, Esq., was like his elder brother, but he was more portly in person. He allowed his *red whiskers* to grow wherever nature had planted them. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VI, 69.

**withers.** Let the galled jade wince, our *withers* are unwrung. Haml., III, 2, 255.

Mr. Lowther may well say, . . . that his *withers* are unwrung, and there, so far as he is concerned, the incident is at an end. Westm. Gaz., No. 5549, 1c.

- c) the names of certain physical or mental derangements, such as: *chills*, *creeps*, *dismals* (g), *dumps*, *fidgets*, *glanders*, *gripes*, *horrors* (20), *hysterics* (g), *jerks*, *jumps*, *measles*, *mumps*, *pathetics* (g), *pouts*, *rickets*, *shakes* (20), *shivers*, *sullens* (g), *staggers*, *sulks*, *tantrums*, *thrills* (20), *vapours* (20).

Note I. Probably these nouns are, at least partly, construed as singulars, but the evidence is scanty. See the quotations with *glanders* and *measles*. Compare also HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 144.

II. Of some of them the singular form is also in occasional use.

III. *Blues* is a contraction from *blue-devils* in the meaning of depression of spirits.

IV. *Vapours* has almost disappeared from the language.

V. All the above nouns, except *glanders* and *measles*, belong to the colloquial or the vulgar language.

VI. After the indefinite article or a numeral they are preceded by one or the other of the individualizers *fit* or *spell*. (36.)

**blues.** I see you are awfully in the *blues*. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. VIII, 142. (Compare: I am very blue at times. *Ib.*, II, Ch. II, 38.)

**blue-devils.** I must get to work or the *blue-devils* will get the better of me. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, II, 250.

**chills.** It gave me the *chills* to think of killing him. CON. DOYLE, *The Sign of Four*.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> Drie Talen, XXIII, 146.

**creeps.** She was constantly complaining of the cold, and of its occasioning a visitation in her back, which she called the '*creeps*'. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 20a. It gave one just the *creeps* to listen to her crying and moaning. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XVII, 106.

**dismals.** What business have you to indulge in a fit of the *dismals* on this gala-day? EDNA LYALL, To right the wrong.<sup>1)</sup> (= *low spirits, dumps, blues*.) The learned serjeant considered it advisable to undergo a slight relapse into the *dismals* before he concluded. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV, 311. (= *dismal subjects*, a sense not recorded by MURRAY.)

**dumps.** She is in the doleful *dumps* because her father was not in sufficient agonies of grief at parting with her last night. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, II, Ch. II, 24.

**glanders.** *Glanders* has broken out in the American mules remount-farm at Stellenbosch. Times.

**gripes.** The cold water will give the baby the *gripes* for certain. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XIX, 129.

**horrors, jumps.** "I've got 'em agin Bill, I've got 'em agin". — "Got what agin?" growled Bill. "What's the matter now?" — "It's the *jumps*, Bill", gasped the other, "the '*orrors* — they've got me and no mistake". ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. XVI, 302.

**jerks.** Tea-time and Miss Pross making tea, with another fit of the *jerks* upon her. DICK., Tale of two Cities, II, Ch. VI, 119.

**measles.** *Measles* is a disease which, when it occurs in healthy children, is attended by only an insignificant mortality. Times.

Fiscal malady may be a *brief measles*, which we shall get over, or a virulent disease; which will be incurable for years. Westm. Gaz.

**pouts.** If you gets the young men at the quintain, you'll have all the young women in the *pouts*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXXV, 308.

**shivers.** You give me the *shivers*. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 4. Cold *shivers* went down Trilby's back as she listened. DU MAURIER, Trilby, I, 99.

**staggers.** To buy a horse for a £10 note, to sell it for £20; then to buy it back for £5 by pointing out that it had the *staggers*. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 418b.

**sulk(s).** i. For a week or fifteen days her continued *sulk* excited little suspicion. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XI, 63.

ii. The whole of her first year was one continual series of *sulks*, quarrels and revolts. Mrs. WARD, Marcella, I, Ch. I, 6.

**sullens.** We can speak a little to it, being ourself but lately recovered — we whisper in confidence, reader — out of a long and desperate fit of the *sullens*. CH. LAMB, Last Es. of Elia, Popular Fallacies, (397).

**tantrums.** He might strike her dead in the midst of her *tantrums*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. II, 8.

The squabbles and the cabals, the *sulks* and the *tantrums* of Ministers, even in an English cabinet, are remarkably like the carryings-on in the servants' kitchen. Rev. of Rev., CCIII, 477a.

**thrills.** To be signalled to in a marked manner by a strange young lady of great personal attractions might be a coveted distinction to other schoolboys, but it simply gave Mr. Bullitude cold *thrills*. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. XI, 313.

He had *thrills* of horror every ten yards at the idea of the supernatural things he was about to witness. W. W. JACOBS, Odd Craft, B, 39.

**vapours.** The man has got the *vapours* in his ears, I believe: I must expel this melancholy spirit. FARQUHAR, Rec. Off., I, 1 (256).

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



Wine can clear the *vapours* of despair. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, III.  
He rose refreshed at an earlier hour than usual; and what he considered a *fit of vapours* of the previous night was passed away. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 455.

d) the names of certain games, such as:

*all-fours, billiards, cards, checkers, draughts, fives, forfeits, graces, letters, marbles, ninepins, quoits, skittles.*

Note I. Probably also these nouns are, at least partly, construed as singulars. See especially the quotations under *billiards*.

II. *Ninepins* has developed a new singular, which in its turn admits of being pluralized like an ordinary noun.

**all-fours.** Ham had been giving me a lesson in *all-fours*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 16b.

**billiards.** *Billiards* is played in England on an oblong table, 13 ft. long by 6 ft. broad. HARMSWORTH ENCYCL., s. v. *billiards*.

*Billiards* is usually played by two persons. 1b.

Nor is *billiards* a game which puts much muscular strain on the players. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5361, 4c.

**cards.** Mrs. Mirvan was at *cards*. MISS BURNEY, *Evelina*, Ch. XI, 26.

*Cards* are a temporary illusion. CH. LAMB, *Mrs. Battle's Opinions on Whist*.

**fives.** Men were playing at *fives*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 340.

**forfeits.** There were more dances, and there were *forfeits*. CHRISTM. CAR., II, 39.

**letters.** We sat round a large table and played at '*letters*', sedulously 'shuffling' the handsome capitals as we gave each other long jaw-breaking words. WHYTE MELVILLE.<sup>1)</sup>

**ninepins.** i. To play at *ninepins*.

ii. Will you see an English nobleman knocked about like a *ninepin*? *New Monthly Magaz.*<sup>2)</sup>

He knocked his adversaries down one after the other like so many *ninepins*.

GORDON HOLMES, *Silvia Craven*, 19.

The author sets up his four *ninepins*. GOSSE.<sup>3)</sup>

**skittles.** Life is not all beer and *skittles*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 40.

e) the names of certain substances, such as:

*ashes, coals, curds, dregs, embers, groats, grounds, grouts, hards* (= *herds, hurds*), *hops, husks, lees, molasses, oats, sediments, slops, soapsuds.*

Note I. The singular *ash*, although much less frequent than the plural *ashes*, is pretty common, particularly in speaking of cigars or pipes. Especially in scientific language it is sometimes found preceded by the indefinite article. The singular is regular in the names of certain varieties, and in compounds, such as *volcanic ash, black ash, bone-ash, copper-ash, pearlash, potash* (but *wood-ashes*). In transferred meanings, on the other hand, it is only the plural form that is used. MURRAY; SATTLER, E. S., XVI.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *letter*, 1d.    <sup>2)</sup> FLÜGEL, s. v. *ninepin*.

<sup>3)</sup> JESPERSEN, *Growth and Structure*, § 189.

II. *Coal* in the meaning of a *piece of carbon glowing without flame* is often used as an ordinary object-noun, with an indefinite article and with an ordinary plural. In the usual meaning of a kind of mineral the singular is now more common than the plural, and almost the only form when a defining word precedes, as in *digged (earth, pit, sea, stone, etc.) coal, brown (black, cannel, cherry, parrot) coal*. Thus also *charcoal*. The plural is, however, regular in certain expressions, such as *to heap (cast, gather) coals of fire on the head of a man* (Compare Bible, Rom., XII, 90) (= to produce remorse by requiting evil with good), *to blow the coals* (= to fan the flames of passion, etc.), *to blow hot coals* (= to rage fiercely), *to stir coals* (= to excite strife or ill-feeling), *to carry (bear) coals* (= to do dirty or degrading work, to submit to humiliation or insult), *to haul (call, have) over the coals* (= to call to task), *to carry coals to Newcastle*. In the second meaning *coal* is found with an indefinite article in the sayings *as black as a coal, a cold coal to blow at* (= a hopeless task to perform), and in dialects also to denote a piece of coal generally. MURRAY.

III. *Curd* and *ember* are not infrequently found as object-nouns with an indefinite article.

IV. *Grout* is also met with in the singular.

V. *Hards* (*hurds*) is sometimes construed as a singular. MURRAY.

VI. *Hop* as a singular is used chiefly to denote the plant, the plural form being to all appearance regular when the ripened cones of the female hop-plant are meant.

VII. *Lees* is sometimes construed as a singular.

VIII. *Oat* is found in the singular only in the sense of *oat-plant*, the more usual form, and when preceded by a defining adjective denoting a variety, as *the white oat, the false oat*. MURRAY. Note the expression *to sow one's wild oats*, and its variations.

**ashes.** i. \* "T is not poverty that's the hardest to bear, or the least happy lot in life," said Mr. Addison, shaking the *ash* out of his pipe. THACK., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. XI, 350.

\*\* Everything is covered with a white *ash*, which in the photographs looks like snow. Ch a m b. M a g. 1)

Gun-cotton leaves no *ash* or fouling matter. Ib. 1)

The wood-fire makes no soot, and leaves only a white *ash* as clean as the flame itself. Graph. 1)

ii. \* A thousand villages to *ashes* turn. ADDISON, The Campaign.

The brands were dying, | Amid their own white *ashes* lying. COLERIDGE, Christabel, 157.

He knocked the *ashes* out of his pipe. DICK., Cop., Ch. LI, 365b.

The woman who had left on a door-step the little pot of hot *ashes* [etc.]. Id., Tale of Two Cities, I, Ch. V, 44.

Pickwick, who has choked up the well, and thrown *ashes* on the sward. Id., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV, 311.

\*\* Even before the funeral rites had been performed over the *ashes* of Pius the Sixth, a great reaction had commenced. Mac., Popes, (562a).

And from his *ashes* may be made | The violet of his native land. TEN., In Memoriam, XVII, 1.

\*\*\* Alas, alas! we poor mortals are often little better than *wood-ashes*. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 79.

**coal.** i. \* "I heard but an indistinct noise," said the youth, his face glowing like a heated *coal*. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XI, 60.

One man can put the *live coal* in a right place. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XVIII. He threw a large *coal* at him. MURRAY, s. v. *coal*, 5, b.

\*\* *Coal* was already the ordinary fuel in some districts. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 312. Both *coal* and coke are sent off as wanted. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. IX, 123.

Within are vast stacks of *coal*, of coke and fire-bricks. Ib.

Summers-Howson would naturally be unwilling to tempt his assistant to burn more *coal* than was absolutely necessary. BARRY PAIN, *Culminating Point*.

ii. \* A piece of Flesh broiled on *Coals*. ADDISON.

The fire-wood was burnt into embers, or *live coals*. DE FOE, *Rob. Crusoe*.<sup>1)</sup> On the *coals* I lay, | A vessel full of sin: all hell beneath | Made me boil over. TEN., *St. Simeon Stylites*, 166. (Comp. Bible, Revelation, IX.)

\*\* He said that they should have no more *coals* if they came to hear you preach. G. ELIOT, *Middlemarch*.<sup>2)</sup>

A roaring fire, composed of something short of a bushel of *coals*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 119.

\*\*\* When you ask for Wallsend *coals*, see that you get them. All the Year Round.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\*\*\* I knew by that service the men would *carry coals*. Henry V, III, 2, 50.

Publicola damned one poor man to a wretched immortality, and another was called pitilessly *over the coals*, because he had mixed a grain of flattery with a bushel of truth. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. II, 82.

What do you think of his *having had me over the coals* this evening? DICK., *Little Dorrit*.<sup>3)</sup>

**curd(s).** i. This acid transforms the milk into a *curd*. J. BAXTER.

ii. He has a decided liking for *curds*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 23.

**dregs.** The *dregs* of a battle, however brilliant, *are* ever a base residue of rapine, cruelty and drunken plunder. THACK., *Henry Es.*, II, Ch. XII, 255.

Jingoism is the ultimate product of the drivelling brain of the *dregs* of our people. Rev. of Rev., CCI, 256a.

Sir Wilfrid returned to his warm room and the *dregs* of his tea. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. V, 39b.

**ember(s).** i. And each separate dying *ember* wrought its ghost upon the floor. POE, *The Raven*, II

ii. When the *embers* sank to a dull red, I undressed hastily. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 28.

War in Spain is a fire which cannot be raked out; it burns fiercely under the *embers*. MAC., *War of the Succession*, (255a).

**grout(s).** i. Wherefore should we turn the *grout* | In a drained cup? ROSSETTI.<sup>4)</sup>

ii. Old women might have told fortunes in them better than in *grouts* of tea. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. V, 28b.

**hards.** These Regalia were smuggled out by a clergyman's wife under a quantity of *hards* of lint. SCOTT.<sup>4)</sup>

**hop(s).** i. The *hop* is remarkable among the Nettle family for its twining stem. OLIVER.<sup>4)</sup>

ii. \*The planting of *hops* increased much in England during this reign. HUME.<sup>4)</sup>

\*\* When they smelt the *hops*, it seemed as if their throats were tightened. WALT. BES., *All Sorts and Conditions of Men.*, Ch. IV, 43.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *coal*. <sup>2)</sup> SATTLER. <sup>3)</sup> Drie Talen, XXIII, 147. <sup>4)</sup> MURRAY

**husk(s).** i. It is certain that, as Christianity passes beyond its mediæval phase, and casts aside the *husk* of out-worm dogmas, it will more and more approximate to Shelley's exposition. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. V, 101.

"It's true enough in the main," he said, "master: I could sift grain from *husk* here and there, but let it be as it is." DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, II, 52.

ii. There were *husks* in his corn, that even Game Chickens couldn't peck up. Id., Domb., Ch. XII, 206.

Often the *husks* of acorns are mixed with the meal to add to the volume of this awful food. Rev. of Rev., CCVI, 118a.

**lees.** i. He scrawled upon a wall with his finger dipped in muddy *wine-lees* — blood. DICK., Tale of Two Cities, I, Ch. V, 44.

I will drink life to the *lees*. TEN., Ulysses, 7.

And no sooner have you passed the straps over your shoulder than the *lees* of sleep *are* cleared from you. STEVENSON, Walking Tours (W. PEACOCK, Sel. Ess., 537).

ii. The wine of life is drawn, and the mere *lees* | *Is* left this vault to brag of. Macb., II, 3, 100.

**molasses.** Don't think, young man, that we go to the expense of flower of brimstone and *molasses* just to purify them. DICK., Nich. Nickleby, Ch. VIII, 44a.

**oat(s).** i. \* I was prepared to undertake the superintendence of the *oat* from *its* birth to *its* reaping. GRANT ALLEN, Hilda Wade, Ch. VII, 194.

\*\* Had the *wild oat* not been sown, | The soil, left barren, scarce had grown  
The grain by which a man may live. TEN., In Memoriam, LIII, ii.

ii. \* *Oats* in their tongue *are* called 'hlunnh'. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., IV, Ch. II, (192b).

In the United Kingdom *oats are* the chief crop. Graph.

\*\* He will sow his *wild oats*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. X, 97.

I've pretty well done with my *wild oats*. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XLI, 306.

f) many words in *ing* derived from gerunds, especially when denoting a substance that is the product of an action, or anything thought of as the subject of an action, such as:

*bearings, belongings, clippings, cuttings, diggings, drainings, earnings, hangings, incomings, leavings, lodgings, losings, outgoings, parings, savings, scrapings, soundings, surroundings, sweepings, trappings, trimmings, winnings, workings.*

Note I. Most of these are virtually only a variety of those mentioned under e). It is hardly necessary to observe that the product of the action may also appear as a singular object so that some of the above nouns are also used as ordinary object-nouns with an ordinary singular and plural.

II. In this connection mention may also be made of *innings*, which, although not formed from a verb *to in*, is yet felt as a plural verbal noun of the type of *surroundings*. It is ordinarily construed as a singular, i. e. has the finite verb of which it is the subject in the singular, and is frequently found with the indefinite article. No evidence is available to show what is the form of the modifying demonstrative pronoun. See also STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 686.

III. *Bearings* is used as a more or less strict plurale tantum in different shades of meaning: α) devices upon an escutcheon: *armorial bearings*; β) supports: *the bearings of a floor*; γ) parts of a machine



which bear the friction: *to oil the bearings*;  $\delta$ ) relative positions of surrounding objects, especially in the phrases *to take (lose) one's bearings* (= Dutch *poolshoogte nemen, de kluts kwijt raken*).

IV. **Diggings** is sometimes treated as a singular (MURRAY); i. e. it is occasionally found with the indefinite article. Note also that *diggings* is colloquially used in the sense of lodgings, quarters.

- bearings.** i. In the twelfth century armorial *bearings* were invented. BUCKLE.<sup>1)</sup>  
 ii. Each floor lying upon the horizontal *bearings* furnished by these ledges. SMEATON.<sup>1)</sup>  
 iii. Heated *bearings* in machinery may be relieved by the use of graphite as a lubricator. *Print. Trades Journ.*<sup>1)</sup>  
 iv. All *bearings* herein given are magnetic. *Merc. Mar. Mag.*<sup>1)</sup>  
 v. He *had* utterly *lost his bearings*. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. VI, 53. He was in the act of *taking his bearings* by such landmarks as were still visible. FRANKF. MOORE, *The Secret of the Court*, 6.  
 At dawn of September 6, 4.20 a. m., the first *bearings* of the day were taken. Grisnez bore south-west by south, and Calais east-south-east. *Times*, No. 1840, 713c.

**belongings.** She was learning to love Cranford and its *belongings*. MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. XII, 230.

**clippings.** The tin *clippings* are wastefully thrown into the river. *Manch. Guardian*.<sup>1)</sup>

**cutting(s).** i. *A cutting* from the City Press of May 31. *Notes and Quer.*

ii. Dirty *cuttings* from the shambles at three-ha'pence a pound. LAMB.<sup>1)</sup>

**diggings.** i. \* The *diggings*, as they term the places where the lead is found, were about sixteen miles distant. MARRYAT.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* We took out the hamper and started off to look for *diggings*. JEROME, *Three men*.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. It was a goldfield and *a diggings* in far-away Australia. BOLDEWOOD.<sup>1)</sup>

**drainings.** You would like your baby to have the best of everything, and the *drainings* of any bottle that's handy. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XVIII, 117.

**earnings.** In him woke | With his first babe's first cry, the noble wish | To save all *earnings* to the uttermost. TEN., *Enoch Arden*, 86.

It was my pride to bring him up on my *earnings*. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XXII, 154.

**hangings.** She set fire to the *hangings* of the room next her own. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 526.

"Where am I?" cried Irene, rising from the couch. "This room — these *hangings* — Holy Virgin! do I dream still! LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VI, 47.

**incomings.** The *incomings* and *outgoings* of his private purse are faithfully set down. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 4b.

**innings.** i. On Saturday the Englishmen's first *innings* was completed for 312. *Times*.

The Englishmen's *innings* was finished off for the addition of six runs. *Id.*

The *innings* was declared closed. *Daily Mail*.

ii. The county were therefore victorious by *an innings* and 22 runs. *Times*.

At the Oval on Wednesday Kent were 'beaten by *an innings* and 345 runs. *Id.*

**journeyings.** In the course of his two months' *journeyings* the President is expected to deliver no fewer than seventy-five set speeches. *Times*.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- leavings.** Their *leavings* made a luxurious supper for all the waiters. Graph. 1)
- lodging(s).** i. She has a *lodging* at the turnkey's. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. VIII, 45a.  
For months past David had been hoarding up a few in his *lodging*. MRS. WARD, David Grieve, I, 310.
- ii. They hired quiet *lodgings* in the neighbourhood of the barracks. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 165.
- losings.** My *losings* were never more than nineteen-pence a-night. Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. I, 2.  
One hears of the winnings, but they say very little about the *losings*. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. IV, 35.
- outgoings.** The balance of income over *outgoings* was only £ 60 a year. Law Times. 1)
- parings.** The prattle of children paddling in the gutter, and sailing thereon a fleet of potato *parings*. MRS. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. I, 6.
- saving(s).** i. The £ 816.000 not yet "issued" by the Treasury, will, we may assume, be paid out before long, and cannot be regarded as a *saving*. Times.
- ii. The *savings* of years of economy. WEBST., Dict., s. v. *savings*.  
You will find nothing but three pound five of my own *savings*. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. I, 8.  
His illness made a big hole in her *savings*. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XXI, 146.
- surroundings.** It took the servants by surprise, and made them feel that they were out of place in such *surroundings*. Id., Ch. XXXIII, 237.  
Mr. Boyce was not very favourably struck with his daughter's *surroundings*. MRS. WARD, Macc. I, Ch. II, 13.  
Venice and its *surroundings*. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. *Venice*.  
The patient should be removed from overwork, and from bad hygienic *surroundings*. Id., s. v. *phthisis*.
- sweepings.** They sent him for troops only the *sweepings* of the galleys. MAC., Clive.  
The *sweepings* of streets are often used as manure. WEBST., Dict., s. v. *sweepings*.
- trappings.** These but the *trappings* and the suits of woe. Hamlet, I, 3, 86.  
The gold wrought into his armour, with the gorgeous *trappings* of his charger, betokened his rank. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 15.  
Maisie would not even allow him to put one ring on one finger, and she would laugh at golden *trappings*. RUDY. KIPLING, The Light that failed, Ch. V, 71.  
The heavy cart-horses slipped and stamped upon the rough stones, shaking their bells and *trappings*. OSCAR WILDE, Dorian Gray, Ch. VI, 118.
- winnings.** The pocket-book fell from him, and out of it the thousand-pound note which had been the last of the unlucky Becky's *winnings*. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XIX, 204.
- workings.** Life-belts capable of generating oxygen when in use, are suspended in every accessible part of the *workings*. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 344b.
- g) a great many nouns that were originally adjectives. Ch. XIX.  
Some of these words are now seldom, if ever, used as adjectives; they are marked with an \*. Others are as yet more or less uncommon in the function of nouns; they are marked with an †.  
Of some we also meet with occasional or frequent instances of

the singular, sometimes with a different meaning. Note especially *physic* = the healing art (now archaic) and = medicine (now chiefly colloquial); and *physics* = natural science.

1) The majority may be known by certain suffixes, belonging to the foreign element of the language, such as:

α) *able*: †(dis)agreeables, drinkables, eatables, †indescribables, †inseparables, †intellectuals, †irreconcilables, movables, †respectables, valuables, †undesirables, vegetables.

β) *al*: academicals, \*annals, bacchanals, bridals, canonicals, chemicals, \*credential, \*espousals, †externals, nuptials, pontificals, rationals (a), regimentals, \*reprisals, theatricals, \*victuals; vitals.

γ) *ary*: †extraordinaries, necessities.

δ) *ent*: †pertinents.

ε) *ible*: combustibles, edibles, †invisibles.

ζ) *ic*: aesthetics, athletics, acoustics, ca(l)listhenics, dialectics, dynamics, economics, ethics, gymnastics, hysterics (c), italics, mathematics, mechanics, metaphysics, optics, physics, phonetics, polemics, politics, statistics, tactics.

NOTE. It will be observed that most of these nouns in *ics* are names of arts and sciences. These are singular in meaning, and are, accordingly, mostly construed as singulars.

The first nouns in *ic* of this kind that were adopted in English (before 1500), mostly had the singular form, and this form has been retained to the present day in some, such as *arithmetic*, *logic*, *magic*, *music*, *rhetoric*. The plural *logics* seems to be in occasional use.

In recent times some writers, following German and French usage, have preferred to use the singular throughout: *dynamic*, *economic*, *polemic*, etc.

Names of practical matters, such as *gymnastics*, *politics*, *tactics* usually remain plural in construction as well as in form.

Such of these words in *ics* as have an uncertain construction have the verb *to be* in the singular, when the nominal part of the predicate is a singular: *mathematics is a science*.

Some of them are occasionally found in the singular number with the indefinite article, or preceded by a word denoting number. MURRAY; WEBSTER; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 686; WENDT, E. S., XV, 471; id., Syntax des Adjectivs, 48; id., Synt. des heut. Eng., 131.

II. *Bridal*, really a compound (*bride-ale*), has assumed its present form and pronunciation through association with the adjectives of Latin origin in *al*.

III. *Nuptial* is used in the singular by SHAKESPEARE, except in two instances. (*Othello*, II, 2, 8; *Pericles*, V, 3, 80). For the instance in *Mids.*, I, 1, 125, the second and later folios read *nuptialls*.

IV. *Victuals* governs the singular number of the indefinite numerals: *much* (*little*) *victuals*. Poets often use the singular *victual* to avoid the common-place associations attaching to the word, but the singular is also frequent in dialects.

**aesthetics.** Recognising thus the true position of *aesthetics* and holding that, while the cultivation of *them* should form a part of education from its commencement, such cultivation should be subsidiary. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 31b.

**bridal(s).** i. The *bridal* of Triermain. SCOTT.

ii. (I) will clothe her for her *bridals* like the sun. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 231.

**canonicals.** I did not at all wonder to find a cheat in *canonicals*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. IX, 53.

Most of us, at some moment in our young lives, would have welcomed a priest of that natural order in any sort of *canonicals* or *uncanonicals*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. IX, 403.

**credential(s).** i. If he goes, he will leave Trinity a sound classical scholar... and he will carry a *credential* which will always be of infinite value to his career. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouverie*, 7.

Mr. Haldane has produced a new Army scheme, which has at least this great *credential* in its favour: it reduces the money spent on the Army by two millions instead of increasing the expenditure. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVII, 228b.

ii. He had no *credentials* and the whole mission was a joke, a mere farce. MAC., *Fred.*, (670b).

"We have no doubt his liberality is well represented by his surviving partner" said the gentleman, presenting his *credentials*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 9.

**disagreeables.** A little credulity helps one on through life very smoothly — better than always doubting and doubting and seeing difficulties and *disagreeables* in everything. MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. XI, 212.

**essential(s).** i. They still make the recognition of their absolute sovereignty an *essential* in any negotiations. *Times*.

ii. Mr. Timothy Shelley was a very ordinary country gentleman in *essentials*, and a rather eccentric one in some details. W. M. ROSSETTI, *Shelley's Adonais*, *Memoir of Shel.*, 3.

The anecdote is in its *essentials* confirmed by two independent witnesses. W. GUNNYON, *Biographical Sketch of Burns*, 34.

**economics.** i. *Economics* has come out into the open. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, July, 638.

ii. He really understood *economics* — in fact, he had invented *them*. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3777, 396a).

**ethics.** i. *Ethics* is the science of the laws which govern our actions as moral agents. SIR W. HAMILTON.<sup>1)</sup>

To Spencer also *ethics* was the crown of all human thought.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. Such, it appears to me, *are* the *ethics* of the play. DOWDEN, *Introd. to Rom. and Jul.*, 34.

**externals.** Howsoever his *externals* might be altered, he was at bottom the same individual Gawky whom I have already described. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXI, 136.

*Externals* have a great effect on the young. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XI, 116.

**extraordinary(ies).** i. She made it (sc. her behaviour) look like an *extraordinary*. RICHARDSON.<sup>3)</sup>

ii. The blank lines are left for any *extraordinaries* that may occur. *Regul. and Ord. Army*.<sup>3)</sup>

Not only the king's ordinary revenues, but the *extraordinaries*. CARLYLE.<sup>3)</sup>

*Extraordinaries* comprehend the expenses for barracks, marches, encampments, staff, etc. STOCQUELER.<sup>3)</sup>

**fundamentals.** The worshippers of this deity had also a system of their belief, which seemed to turn upon the following *fundamentals*. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, Sect. II.

1) WEBSTER. 2) WENDT, *Die Syntax des Adjectivs*, 48. 3) MURRAY.



Given these two *fundamentals*, upon which the mandate of Ministers is unmistakable, the Bill is remarkable for the tenderness with which it deals with denominational schools. Rev. of Rev., CXCVII, 450b.

**gymnastic(s).** i. It would be utterly contrary to the beautiful economy of Nature, if one kind of culture were needed for the gaining of information and another were needed as a mental *gymnastic*. SPENCER, Educ., Ch. I, 36o.

ii. Through the miscellaneous activities of his life, he gains a better balance of physical powers than *gymnastics* ever give. *ib.*, Ch. I, 36a.

**hysterics.** The youngest was subject to *hysterics*. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XX, 135.

**indescribables.** Mr. Trotter gave four distinct slaps on the pocket of his mulberry *indescribables*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVI, 141.

**inseparables.** I hope we shall be *inseparables* for many weeks to come. *id.*, Sketches by Boz.<sup>1)</sup>

**intellectuals.** Those instructions they give being too refined for the *intellectuals* of their workmen. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., III, Ch. II, (167b).

**invisibles.** You are as familiar with these antiquated monastics, as Swedenborg with his *invisibles*. LAMB.<sup>2)</sup>

**mathematics.** i. *Mathematics* is the science of quantities; its students are mathematicians. MURRAY, s. v. *ic*, 2.

*Mathematics* has not a foot to stand upon which is not purely metaphysical. DE QUINCEY.<sup>3)</sup>

ii. It was *those* infernal *mathematics*, which I have always neglected. THACK., Pend., I, 209.

*Do mathematics* make one's manners masculine? — Well, *they have* not done so as yet in your case. But still *they are* not womanly pursuits. SARAH GRAND, Our manifold Nature, 34.

**irreconcilables.** The prospect of two General Elections in quick succession appears to have abated the zeal of the *irreconcilables*. Rev. of Rev., CXCVII, 458a.

**metaphysics.** All parts of knowledge have their origin in *metaphysics*, and finally, perhaps, revolve into *it*. DE QUINCEY.<sup>3)</sup>

The Scotch *metaphysics* he (sc. Carlyle) respects as being, in *its* day, a powerful protest against sensationalism. J. D. MORELL.<sup>3)</sup>

**movable(s).** i. Every *movable* was packed off. DICK., Christm. Car., II, 37.

ii. A palace furnished with the most rich and princely *movables*. EVELYN.<sup>2)</sup>

**necessary (ies).** i. Maps are a *necessary* for children. Lit. World.

ii. The valley supplied its inhabitants with all the *necessaries* of life. JOHNSON, Rasselas, Ch. I, 5.

I was not only destitute of *necessaries*, but even of food. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXIII, 163.

**nuptial(s).** i. I will bid the duke to the *nuptial*. As you like it, V, 2, 38.

I must employ you in some business | Against our *nuptial*. Mids., I, 1, 125.

ii. Her aunt had insisted that her *nuptials* with Mr. Thornhill should be celebrated at her house. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. XXXI, (465).

It was intended that the *nuptials* should be celebrated at Cashmere. MOORE, Lalla Rookh.

**optics.** Can all that *optics* teach, unfold | Thy form to please me so? CAMPB., To the Rainb., III.

Yet those same bleared *optics* had a strange penetrating power. HAWTHORNE Scarlet Letter.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAF, De Drie Talen, XIV. <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY. <sup>3)</sup> WEBST.

**pathetics.** As Mr. Weller said this, he inflicted a little friction on his right eye-lid, with the sleeve of his coat, after the most approved manner of actors when they are in domestic *pathetics*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXI.

**pertinents.** The whole farm with all its *pertinents* is let to six tenants. THE DUKE OF ARGYLL, Scotland as it was and as it is.<sup>1)</sup>

**phonetics.** i. *Phonetics* is the science of speech-sounds. SWEET, *Primer of Phonetics*.

Since then *phonetics* has made no progress in this country. *Id.*

*Phonetics* is still regarded by the majority of educated persons as either a fad or a fraud, possibly a pious one. H. C. WYLD, *Hist. Study of the Mother-tongue*, *Introd.*, 16.

ii. *Phonetics* are in a much more advanced state. SWEET, *Handb. of Phon.*, 100.

Note. In SWEET'S latest publication on phonetics, *The Sounds of English*, *phonetics* is construed as a singular throughout.

**physic(s).** i. To admit certificates from schools of *physic* may prevent the possibility of ascertaining a regular education. *Med. Journ.*, XIX, 468.<sup>2)</sup>

As bad as the wrong *physic*, — nasty to take and sure to disagree. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. X.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. *Physics* is the mother of the sciences. SPENCER, *Education*, Ch. II, 45a.

After all *this physics* and metaphysics. *Daily News*.<sup>3)</sup>

**polemic(s).** i. Plato's constant *polemic* against them. LEWES, *Hist. Phil.*, 116. Its columns have been humming ever since with vehement *polemic*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVI, 128a.

ii. Religious *polemics* have seldom formed a part of my studies. H. K. WHITE.<sup>2)</sup>

**politics.** i. *Politics*, as a profession, was, therefore, of importance to him. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 14.

*Politics* is a game. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3690, 40c).

ii. \* *Politics* were excluded. CH. LAMB, *Es. of Elia*, *South-Sea House*.

Cape *politics* had been so disagreeable a subject that persons in authority at the Colonial Office dismissed *them* from their minds. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 48.

English *politics* are free from that acerbity. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. XXII, 401.

What is it? Nothing about *politics*, I hope? *They* don't interest me. OSC. WILDE, *Dorian Gray*, Ch. VI, 98.

\*\* She had spared the time from her idleness to cultivate a language or two, a little music, a few *politics*. BEATR. HARRADEN, *The Fowler*, Ch. III, 32.

**regimentals.** He now, therefore, entered, handsomely dressed in his *regimentals*.

\*GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (468).

Perhaps their *regimentals* are alike, and she is something blind. SHER., *Rivals*, V, 2., (260).

**reprisal(s).** i. Such a proceeding would be barbarous if used towards any other nation, but would only be a just *reprisal* against the British. *Times*.

They use every effort to scare the people of this country into some kind of *reprisal*. *Id.*

That this fear of *reprisal* is justified may be gathered from the following instance. *Nineteenth Cent.*, No. CCCXCVII, 536.

ii. The neighbouring kings were but too ready to make *reprisals* on him for his champion's murders and robberies. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. V, 36b.

Japan is in a position to exercise *reprisals* against them. *Times*.

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *De Drie Taien*, XIV.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>3)</sup> WENDT, E. S., XV, 471.

**respectables.** For '*respectables*' to settle in such slums | Where toil hums, | And to dwell amidst much dirt and noise and vice | Is not nice. PUNCH.

Some of the '*respectables*' objected to the enrolment of the bard. W. GUNNYON, Biographical Sketch of Burns, 38.

**statistic(s).** i. \* Accurate *statistics* may be difficult to obtain, but *they are* the only basis on which the work of dealing with the disease must rest. Rev. of Rev., CC, 185a.

*Statistics show* that moderate consumers of alcoholic drinks live considerably longer than drunkards and total abstainers. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. X, 180. Taking the experience from *these* official *statistics*, we are in a position to say [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 4949, 1c.

\*\* Mr. W. L. Wilson contributes to the Daily Express *some* remarkable *statistics* concerning the results of eleven elections. Rev. of Rev., CCXXII, 11b.

He cited *numerous statistics* to show the progress of the movement. Times.

ii. Now the death-rate is perhaps as familiar as any *statistic*.<sup>1)</sup>

**tactics.** The Boer *tactics* were admirable. Times.

To a certain extent *these tactics* have been successful. Id.

President Roosevelt has shown himself fully aware of *these* insidious *tactics*. Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 225b.

**theatricals.** \* It (sc. wh) is taught by professors of elocution, and is, therefore, commonly heard at recitals and also at amateur *theatricals*. W. RIPPMANN, The Sounds of Spoken English, § 26.

\*\* I got the orders from my old friend Scauncher, who does *the theatricals* for the Daily Scarifier. MISS BRADDON, Captain Thomas.

**undesirable.** China Town was honeycombed underground by passages down which criminals and other *undesirables* disappeared. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 608a.

**valuables.** The *valuables* which she had secreted in the wadding. THACK., Van Fair.

**victual(s).** i. \* If you want fresh water, or *victual*, or help for your sick..., write down your wants. BACON, New Atlantis, (270).

\*\* There came a fair-hair'd youth, that in his hand | Bare *victual* for the mowers. TEN., Ger. and Enid, 202.

Glad to be gone from a land of sand and sickness and sorrow, | Short allowance of *victual*, and plenty of nothing but Gospel. LONGF., Courtship of Miles Standish, V.

\*\*\* In this country, where there's some shelter and *victual* for man and beast. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. VI, 65.

ii. \* Nor could all the world persuade him, as the common phrase is, to eat his *victuals* like a Christian. SWIFT, Tale of a Tub, XI, (90b).

\*\* Herrings are a light *victuals*. SWIFT.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\*\* My children can eat as *much victuals* as most, thank God. G. ELIOT, Mill, Ch. I, 4.

**vital(s).** i. Forced to keep the fire of my nature continually low, to compel it to burn inwardly and never utter a cry, though the imprisoned flame consumed *vital* after *vital* -- this would be unendurable. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXIV, 501.

ii. Corruption of manners preys upon the *vitals* of the state. WEBST., Dict.

A man in an officer's uniform in Prussia is a little God -- the uniform makes the deity. Now when it is seen how easy it is for ex-convicts to obtain a uniform, the cult has been hit in its *vitals*. Rev. of Rev., CCIII, 458b.

1) WENDT, Die Syntax des Adjectivs, 48.

2) STORM, Eng. Phil., 686.

## 2) Many do not answer to a general description:

*ancients, betters, blacks, blues (c), bygones, commons, dismals (c), goods, greens, hards (e), lights (b), minutes, moderns, news, odds, posteriors (b), rapids, roughs, savages, shorts (a), smalls (a), sullens (c), tights (a), sweets, wilds, whites woollens.*

Here we may mention also the names of certain regiments, parties, clubs, etc.: *the Blues, the Greys, the Heavies*, etc.

Note I. *Ancient* was originally used as a partially converted adjective in denoting *the civilized nations of antiquity: the ancient*, like *the learned*. In the meaning of *ancient classic*, the singular is occasionally met with, and this is quite usual when the word is used to denote *an old or aged man (patriarch)*. The term *Ancient of Days* is a scriptural title of *the Almighty* (DAN. VII, 9). For the other meanings of *ancient*, all of them more or less obsolete, see MURRAY.

II. *Better* as a singular is not uncommon. When superiority in rank or station is in question, the plural *betters* is sometimes met with as a singular in writers of the 16th to the 18th century. MURRAY, s. v. *better*, 7.

III. *Bitter* is occasionally found in the singular in the sense of a *bitter substance* in general. In the sense of *bitter, unpleasant experiences* and in that of a *liquor seasoned by a bitter substance*, the plural seems to be regular.

IV. *Blacks* in the sense of *black clothing worn in mourning* is said by MURRAY to belong to an older stage of the language and to Lowland Scotch. Compare *I found him in deep sables* (THACK., Lovel, Ch. I, 23). In the meaning of *black or dress trousers* it has only recently come into use. To denote *a man of black skin* the singular is not infrequent, but the usual application of the word in this sense is the collocation *the blacks*, i. e. the black people as a class. It may here be observed that the corresponding use of *white* in the sense of *a man of white skin* seems to be confined to the plural. (XVI.) See also WENDT, *die Synt. des Adj. im heut. Eng.*, 43.

V. *Blues* is a strict plurale tantum as the name of certain companies of troops and as the name of a certain disease. (c.)

VI. *Commons* is used as a plurale tantum to denote *persons or provisions*. Note especially *short commons* *insufficient rations, scant fare*. In the sense of *House of Commons*, the word is sometimes followed by the singular form of the finite verb, and referred to by singular pronouns.

VII. *Goods* is sometimes found with the indefinite article in colloquial style.

VIII. *Greens* as a plurale tantum is colloquially used in the meaning of *green vegetables, such as are boiled for the table*, and, especially in America, to denote *freshly-cut branches or leaves for decoration*.

IX. *Modern* is regularly used in the plural in *the moderns* = the nations which arose out of the ruins of the empires of Greece and Rome, the people of which are called '*the ancients*'. SMART. The singular is occasionally met with in the sense of *a man of modern times*.



X. *News* is now hardly felt as an adjective converted into a noun. It is now all but regularly construed as a singular in every respect, but is never found preceded by the indefinite article: for the Dutch *een nieuwtje* English has *a piece (an item) of news* (36). In SHAKESPEARE *news* is often construed as a plural: *the news, the news are good*. In the latest English such constructions are felt as archaisms, except, perhaps, in describing news referring to separate events.

XI. Also *odds* has lost its adjectival meaning almost entirely. It is construed as a singular in the meaning of *difference*, especially in the colloquial phrases *What's the odds?* or *Where's the odds?* (What does it matter?) See however Ch. XXVI, 18b.

It is construed as a plural in the meaning of *a) superiority in numbers or resources* (= Dutch *overwicht, overmacht*); *β) chances*, especially in the phrase *the odds are*.

In the meaning of *advantage conceded by one of the parties in proportion to the assumed chances in his favour* (= Dutch *voorgift*), usage is divided.

In many connections the number of *odds* is not shown. See the 4th group of quotations below, where some instances exhibiting different meanings are given.

The combination *odds and ends* may be an alteration of *odd ends*. MURRAY, s. v. *odds*, 7.

XII. *Rapids* varies with the singular *rapid*, but the latter is much less common.

XIII. *Rough* (= *rough fellow*, Dutch *woesteling*) is mostly used in the plural, but the singular is not uncommon. The singular seems to be quite usual in the sense of *a man who is averse to ceremony* (= Dutch *ruwe kerel*).

XIV. *Strait* is mostly found in the plural, both in the sense of *a narrow pass(age)* (either in a mountain or in the ocean), and in that of *distressing necessity*; but the singular is not infrequent.

XV. *Sweet* as a singular in the meaning of *sweet thing* is also met with. For *sweet* in the sense of *a sweet person woman or girl* see Ch. XXXIX, 18d.

XVI. *White* in the sense of *a man of a white complexion* seems to be current only in the collocation *the whites*, meaning the white people as a class.

**ancient(s).** i. \* The *ancient*, it may be, were too severe. HOOKER.<sup>1)</sup>

Neither is there any likelihood that enue and malignity died and were buried with the *ancient*. Bible Transl., Pref.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* The only method by which a poet may reckon on ever becoming an *ancient* himself. LOWELL.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* "My father, sir," replied Mr. Weller. "How are you, my *ancient*?" DICK., Pickw., Ch. XX.

ii. We always return to the writings of the *ancients*. Sir W. JONES.<sup>1)</sup>

**better(s).** i. It never entered his head that he was in any respect their *better*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXX, 317.

1) MURRAY.

- ii. \* The family endeavour to cope with their *bettors*. GOLDS., Vic., Ch. X.  
The distinctions lately paid us by our *bettors* awakened that pride which I had laid asleep, but not removed. Ib.  
\*\* A squire or a gentleman, or one that was her *bettors*. STEELE, Spect., CCLXVI.  
I look upon myself as her *bettors*. FIELDING, Jos. Andrews, IV, Ch. I, 203.
- bitter(s)**. i. A little *bitter* mingled in our Cup, leaves no relish of the sweet. LOCKE, Hum. Underst., II, XXI.<sup>1)</sup>  
Camomile yields a useful *bitter*. MURRAY.
- ii. Whether Mrs. Blifil had been surfeited with the sweets of marriage or disgusted by its *bitters* . . . I will not determine. FIELDING, Tom Jones, III, Ch. VI, 38a.  
Seek the sweets of life, the *bitters* come.<sup>2)</sup>  
Some Americans drinking their morning's *bitters*. J. FLINT, Let. Amer., 54.<sup>2)</sup>
- black(s)**. i. \* Lucy had laid aside her *black* for the first time. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. X, 407.  
\*\* The *black* had long completed his master's toilette. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLVI, 476.  
The jailer was touched at the sight of the *black's* grief. Ib., 486.  
The *black* will lose nothing that he now has. Westm. Gaz., No. 4925, 1c.
- ii. \* Just in your *blacks* for your poor uncle. Punch.  
\*\* My old *blacks* show the white seams so, that you must rig me out with a new pair. THACK.  
\*\*\* It was more of the red men and the *blacks* that we were afraid. THACK., Virg., Ch. XC, 955.  
There have been no risings of *blacks* against whites in the Transvaal. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 47.
- blues**. Vainly endeavouring to prevail on their soldiers to look the Dutch *blues* in the face. MAC., Hist., Ch. XVI.
- bygones**. Let *bygones* be! TEN., The First Quarrel, XIII.  
Once set thinking of *bygones* by the stimulus of Mellor and its novelty, Marcella must needs think, too, of her London life. Mrs. WARD, Marc., I, Ch. II, 15.
- commons**. i. \* Let but the *commons* hear this testament. Jul. Cæs., III, 2, 135.  
\*\* The *Commons* resolved that acquisitions made by the arms of the State belong to the State alone. MAC., Clive, (539a).  
The House of Lords has the right to discuss and throw out any measure sent up into it from the *Commons*, and the *Commons* has the same right in regard to bills passed by the Lords. ANNA BUCKLAND, Our Nat. Inst., 15:  
The *Commons* lost much in his going. It welcomes him back as it welcomes back all able men who can minister to its fondness for the sharp clash of intellect against intellect. West. Gaz., No. 5255, 4c.  
\*\*\* The *Commons* were dealing with the largest Naval Estimates ever presented to the country. Westm. Gaz., No. 5261, 4a.
- ii. Sizar = one of a class of students in Cambridge University who get their *commons* or food free and receive certain emoluments. ANNANDALE, Concise Dict.  
The gruel was served out and a long grace was said over the *short commons*. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 33.  
*Short commons*, no work and intolerable dulness do pull a fellow down. EDNA LYALL, Donovan, II, 47.
- goods**. i. He has strongly recommended me to make a trial of your *goods*. Business Letter Writer, I.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY. . <sup>2)</sup> KONRAD MEIER, E. S., XXXI, 321.

ii. Currents which are a *goods* that will not keep. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*<sup>1)</sup>

**greens.** \* The leaves of the manioc make excellent '*greens*'. DU CHAILLU, *Equat. Africa.*<sup>2)</sup>

\*\* Two great wax tapers, called Christmas candles wreathed with *greens*. WASH. IRV.<sup>3)</sup>

The staircase was 'trimmed with *greens*', to use an expression current in the States. *Globe.*<sup>2)</sup>

**minute(s).** i. The *minute* of a letter to Elizabeth was submitted to the ambassador. MOTLEY, *Netherl.*, VII, Ch. I, 409.<sup>4)</sup>

ii. The *Minutes* of the last meeting were read and confirmed. *Folklore*, Vol. XI, 2, 184.

**modern(s).** But here the severe reader may justly tax me as a writer of short memory, a deficiency to which a true *modern* cannot but, of necessity, be a little subject. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, Sect. VI, (75a).

ii. In these abstracted tasks of poetry the *moderns* outvie the ancients. LEIGH HUNT, *A Few Thoughts on Sleep*, (W. PEACOCK, *Sel. Es.*, 292).  
The ancients had not yet been permitted to condemn the *moderns* to the lot of humble imitators. FRANCIS JEFFREYS, *Es.*, *Ford*, 41.

**news.** i. For more unwelcome *news* | Came from the north, and thus *it* did import. *Henry IV*, A, I, 1, 50.

Look here *comes* more *news*. *Henry IV*, B, I, 1, 59.

How dares thy harsh rude tongue sound *this* displeasing *news*. *Rich. II*, III, 4, 74.

As cold waters to a thirsty soul, so *is* good *news* from a far country. *Bible*, *Prov.*, XXV, 25.

Ill *news* runs apace. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 130.

ii. \* *These news* are everywhere; every tongue speaks *them*. *Henry VIII*, II, 2, 39.  
I can tell you strange *news* that you yet dreamt not of — Are *they* good? — As the event stamps *them*; but *they* have a good cover, *they* show well outward. *Much ado.*, I, 2, 4—7.

*These are* no *news* at all. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, I, 1, (49).

What are the *news* in Perth? SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXX, 312.

Whose moody aspect soon declared, | That evil *were* the *news* he heard. *Id.*, *Lady*, II, xxvii.

But tell me are your *news* of a sad or pleasant complexion? *Id.*, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXV, 322. (Thus, apparently, regularly in this novel.)

Such *were* the *news*. THACK., *Henry Es.*, II, Ch. I, 157.

Are there any *news* of the Collector of Boggley Wollah? *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. III, 27.

He could not face his mistress himself with *those* dreadful *news*. *Id.*, I, Ch. XIV, 152.

*These news* be mine. TEN., *Gar. and Lyn.*, 534.

\*\* The *News* of the British disasters have undoubtedly encouraged many waverers to join the Boer commandos. *Times*.

No *news* are the best *news*. *Id.*

**odds.** i. \* A little sooner or later, what's *the odds*? THACK., *Pend.*, Ch. XVIII, 194  
So long as it helps me, and don't hurt you, what's *the odds*? *Punch*.

\*\* And arter all though, where's *the odds*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 167.

\*\*\* There *is* no great *odds* betwixt us. DICK.<sup>5)</sup>

\*\*\*\* There's no great Honour in getting a Victory when *odds* is taken. BAILEY.<sup>6)</sup>

1) STORM, *Eng. Phil.*, 686.

2) MURRAY, s. v. *green*, 11b.

3) TEN BRUG., *Taa|st.*, VI.

4) MURRAY, s. v. *minute*, 6.

5) WEBST., s. v. *muddle*.

6) MURRAY, s. v. *odds*, 4, c.

- ii. \* Judging is balancing an account and determining on which side the *odds* lie. LOCKE.<sup>1)</sup>
- \*\* We must not abide *these odds*. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 14.  
In spite of their courage, they are no match for our trained soldiers even at *these odds*. Times.
- \*\*\* Are the *odds* in favour of fame against failure so great? LYTTON, Caxt., IV, Ch. III, 91.  
Even thus the *odds were* against him. MAC., Fred., (688*b*).  
The *odds are* in my favour. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. IV, 79.
- iii. *Odds were* taken that he would kill three of his opponents before he himself fell. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXIV, 362.  
"I'll bet you twenty-five cents to a gold watch that you can't guess what's happened — at Routh's." — "Twenty-five cents — to a gold watch? Oh — I see. Thank you — the *odds don't* tempt me. What did happen?" MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XIII, 240.
- iv. \* These companies are to-day *by all odds* the greatest power in the world. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 419*b*. (= *far and away*).  
\*\* I do not know that Englishman alive | With whom my soul is any jot *at odds*. Rich. III, II, I, 70. (= *in disagreement*).  
The Council are all *at odds*. TEN., Queen Mary, II, I, (595*b*).  
\*\*\* That makes no *odds*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 171.  
\*\*\*\* He gave the *odds* of 100 to 1 (in twenties) against Kangaroo, who won the Derby. THACK., Van. Fair.  
\*\*\*\*\* It is not strange that even his heart should now and then have sunk when he reflected against what *odds* and for what a prize he was in a few hours to contend. MAC., Clive, (518*a*).  
What warrior was there, however famous and skilful, that could fight *at odds* with him? THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXII, 350.  
\*\*\*\*\* It is *odds* but I make a hairpin of it (sc. the straw). CH. READE, the Cloister and the Hearth, Ch. II, 12. (= It is not improbable, the chances are.)
- v. My brain is filled with all kinds of *odds and ends*. WASH. IRV.<sup>1)</sup>  
He began to hum *odds and ends* of the greatest music. OUIDA.<sup>2)</sup>
- posteriors.** This leader had usually a favourite as like himself as he could get, whose employment was to lick his master's feet and *posteriors*. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., IV, Ch. VII, (203*b*).
- rapid(s).** i. Mortal boat | In such a shallow *rapid* could not float. SHELLEY, Witch, XLI.  
When I thought my thirst | Would slay me (I) saw deep lawns, and then a brook, | With one sharp *rapid*. TEN., Holy Grail, 381.
- ii. The Lachine *rapids* in the St. Laurence. WEBST.
- rough(s).** i. She is much too good for such a *rough* as I am. THOMAS, W. Goring.<sup>3)</sup>  
ii. There was a lot of Irish chaps, reg'lar *roughs*, a-breaking stones. HUGHES, TOM BROWN.
- savage(s).** i. You gave me time to breathe; allowed me to play with the *savage*. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. I, 81.  
The *savage* only appears stupid, because the cursory traveller does not understand him. Times, No. 1826, 1049*a*.
- ii. The mountainous interior is inhabited by a race of bloodthirsty *savages*. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 385*a*.

1) WEBST.    2) TEN BRUG., Taalst., VI.    3) FLÜGEL.



**strait(s).** i. \* And since the day, when in the *strait* | His only boy had met his fate. BYRON, *Siege of Corinth*, 760.

\*\* You would be glad that she would have some one to protect her in such a *strait*. MRS. WARD, *David Grieve*, III, 98.

ii. \* At this distance he hoped to decoy the enemy out, while he guarded against the danger of being caught with a westerly wind near Cadiz, and driven within the *Straits*. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 247.

\*\* I have been shocked to think of the *straits* you have been reduced to. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, II, 111.

I forbid you to touch this, unless you are in the last *straits*. II. Mag.  
The merchants who traded with these parts were now driven to sore *straits*, because no goods came to them from their friends. (?)

**sweet(s).** i. Cheese, sir; or would you like a cold sweet? BERN. SHAW, *You never can tell*, II, (257).

ii. \* She had known and relished the *sweets* of prosperity. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXIII, 169.

Here Catherine and Isabella, arm in arm, again tasted the *sweets* of friendship. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. V, 23.

\*\* *Sweets* to the *sweet*; farewell! HAML., V, 1, 266.

I enter'd, from the clearer light | Imbower'd vaults of pillar'd palm, | Imprisoning *sweets*, which, as they clomb | Heavenward, were stay'd beneath the dome | Of hollow boughs. TEN., *Rec. of the Arab. Nights*, IV.

**whites.** i. Mr. Uppington made an arrangement satisfactory to the majority of the *whites* in the colony. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 61.

ii. The eyes of the dancing girls rolled till only the *whites* were seen. REV. OF REV., CXCVIII, 618a.

iii. The interests of all *white men* in Africa are *solidaire*. Id., CCVI, 117a.

**wild(s).** i. We sometimes | Who dwell | this *wild*, constrained by want, come forth | To town or village nigh. MILTON, *Par. Reg.*, I, 331.

A *wild* where weeds and flow'rs promiscuous shoot. POPE, *Essay on Man*, I, 7.

The King was hunting in the *wild*. TEN., *Victim*, III.

And close beneath, a meadow gemlike chased | In the brown *wild*. Id., *Ger. and Enid*, 219.

ii. But hosts may in these *wilds* abound, | Such as are better miss'd than found. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xvi.

The *wilds* of America. WEBST.

Then he cried again, | 'To the *wilds*!' TEN., *Ger. and Enid*, 28.

h) some nouns, borrowed from the Latin or Greek, which have retained their original garb also in English. Such are:

*aborigines*, *agenda*, *anthropophagi*, *antipodes*, *arcana*, *data*, *effluvia*, *errata*, *factiae*, *fascies*, *Floralia*, *insignia*, *lares*, *larvae*, *lemures*, *manes*, *minutiae*, *paraphernalia*, *penates*, *postulata*, *propaganda*, *regalia*.

In this connection we may also mention the Anglicized Latin words: *calends* (*kalends*), *ides*, *nones*.

Note I. Of *aborigines* the singular *aborigine* (in 4 syllables) has been formed. Besides this we also find *aborigen* (*aborigin*), and *aboriginal* for the singular. Of these singulars *aboriginal* seems to be the most usual, its plural is sometimes used instead of *aborigines*. MURRAY.

I'. *Agenda* is also used as a singular when denoting a book for writing memorandums in.

III. Of *anthropophagi* the singular *anthropophagus* is occasionally met with. MURRAY.

IV. *Antipodes* was formerly, quite regularly, pronounced in three syllables. This gave rise to the formation of a singular *antipod(e)*, which is still used in the transferred sense of *the exact opposite of a person or thing*. MURRAY. The plural form *antipodes* seems to be more usual in this meaning.

V. *Arcanum* is mostly used in the plural, but the singular is not infrequent. In Early Modern English *arcana* was sometimes treated as a singular with plural *arcanas*. MURRAY.

VI. Also *datum* is not rare as a singular. Observe that for the Dutch *datum*, data the English has *date*, *dates*.

VII. *Effluvium* as a singular does not seem to be very rare. The plural *effluvia* has often been carelessly, or ignorantly, treated as a singular with a new plural *effluvias* or *effluviae*.

VIII. *Erratum* occurs mostly in the plural, but the singular is also met with. In Early Modern English 's or *es* was sometimes added to mark the plural more distinctly. In the same period *errata* was sometimes construed as a singular in the sense of *list of errata*. MURRAY.

IX. *Insignia* is sometimes erroneously used as a singular with a plural in *as*.

X. *Paraphernalia* is sometimes construed as a singular.

XI. *Propaganda* has passed into the language of the common people, to whom it has lost all character of a plural. We find it, therefore, regularly dealt with as an ordinary singular.

Of the other loan-words mentioned above the singular is practically never used, and they are always construed as plurals.

**aborigines**, etc. i. \* The Cimex lectularius is apparently an *aborigin* of the country. R. F. BURTON.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* American = an *aborigine* of the American continent; now called an 'American Indian'. MURRAY, s. v. *American*.

The Australian *aborigine* is not a great or serious foe to his neighbour. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 503, 808c.

The *aborigine* is a true nomad. Ib., 808b.

\*\*\* The thoughtless *aboriginal* is delighted at the approach of the white man. DARWIN.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* It will be as well to call the race by the name officially given to it. The Government styles them '*aboriginals*', the word 'native' is almost universally applied to white colonists born in Australia. TROL.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* The *aborigines* of Germany had their bards, their battle-songs and their sacrificial songs. B. TAYLOR.<sup>1)</sup>

**agenda**. i. Notwithstanding all that has been done there still remain many *agenda*. MAURY.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. *Agenda* is also used for a book containing notes or memorandums of things necessary to be done. CHAMBERS, Cycl. Sup.<sup>1)</sup>

**anthropophagus** (i). i. That same hair-mantled flint-hurling Aboriginal *Anthropophagus*. CARLYLE.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

ii. A poor New Zealander, whose forefathers had from time immemorial been *anthropophagi*. J. LANG.<sup>1)</sup>

**antipode(s)**. i. \* Forbes he hated, for he was the very *antipode* to himself. G. MACDONALD.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* He was a man in all respects the *antipodes* to Richard Seddon. Rev. of Rev., CXCIX, 11a.

Alfred Beit was in almost every respect its exact antithesis and *antipodes*. Ib., CC, 139a.

ii. One of the reassuring signs of the times is the attention which is being paid to the curse of gambling both here and in the *Antipodes*. Ib., CCIII, 462b.

**arcanum (a)**. i. The pursuit of the great *arcanum*. SCOTT, Kenilworth, Ch. XXII.<sup>1)</sup>  
The infallible *arcanum* for that purpose. BURKE.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Under the impression that you might have some difficulty in penetrating the *arcana* of the Modern Babylon in the direction of the City Road [etc.]. DICK., C o p., Ch. XI, 78b.

**calends, ides, nones**. The Romans reckoned the days forward to the *Kalends*, *Nones* or *Ides* next following. Thus 'on the 27th of May' was *ante diem sextum 'Kalendas Junias'*. This was loosely rendered into English as 'the sixth of the *Kalends* of June', or 'the sixth *Kalends* of June. MURRAY.

**datum (a)**. i. The omission of a material *datum* in the calculation, namely, the weight of the charge of powder. HUTTON.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. As I have given the facts from which I have drawn my interpretation of the principal agent, the reader has sufficient *data* for his own judgment. LYTON, Rienzi, Preface.

With the *data* I had given, the man would at once be identified by the police. HUGH CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. X, 116.

**effluvia**, etc. i. \* The doctrine that magnetism is an *effluvium* issuing forth from the root of the tail of the Little Bear. DRAPER.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* A strong *effluvia* of the stable. BECKFORD.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* The face of the sun will by degrees be encrusted with its own *effluvia*. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., III, Ch. II, (168).

Its rooms and passages steamed with hospital smells, the drug and the pastille striving vainly to overcome the *effluvia* of mortality. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IX, 89.

\*\* The putrid *effluviae* in prisons. IMISON.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* The fam'd Perfumes of Summer Men to Rapture with *effluvias* move. T. PAINE.<sup>1)</sup>

**errata**, etc. i. \* The company of stationers made a very remarkable *Erratum* or Blunder in one of their Editions of the Bible. Spectator, DLXXIX.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Such Misnomers are so frequent in him, as might make a sufficient *Errata* at the end of his History. HEYLIN.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* The *errata* are put immediately before the body of the work or at the end of it. J. JOHNSON.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* That a number of *errata's* be raised out of Pope's Homer. SWIFT.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* The *errataes* at the end of the books. GERBIER.<sup>1)</sup>

**facetiae**. He read tit-bits from its columns of *facetiae* which made me the melancholy creature you now behold. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm. Tales, II, A, 18.

**fascēs**. All of the same proud patrician blood, all worthy to be attended by the *fascēs* and to command the legions. WEBB, Introd. to Macaulay's Lays, 14.

**Floralia**. The *Floralia* were popular festivals at which naked courtesans danced unpunished before the eyes of the citizens. Rev. of Rev., CCX, 575.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**insignia(as).** i. In his hand he bore a slender white wand, the dreaded *insignia* of his office. WASH. IRV.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* King Harold received in due order the *insignia* of his kingly office. FREEMAN.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Bells, ladle, and the fool's cap... *Insignia*s of their liking. H. W. IRELAND.<sup>1)</sup>

**lares, larvæ, lemures.** In Roman belief the *Larvæ*, in contrast to the *Lares* (the good spirits of the departed), were the souls of dead people who could find no rest, either owing to their own guilt, or from having met with some indignity, such as a violent death. They were supposed to wander abroad in the form of dreadful spectres, skeletons, etc., and especially to strike the living with madness. Similar spectres of the night are the *Lēmūrēs*. NETTLESHIP and SANDYS, Dict. Clas. Antiquities.

**manes.** Peace to the *manes* of the Bubble. CH. LAMB, Es. of Elia, South-Sea House, 4.

**minutiæ.** Impatient speed and indifference to *minutiæ* were indeed among the cardinal qualities of his intellect. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. II, 15.

**paraphernalia.** i. Romanticism is certainly in the ascendant during the last quarter of the nineteenth century, both in poetry and in household *paraphernalia*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. XXVIII, 503.

ii. A ponderous *paraphernalia* is a concomitant of respectability. O'DONOVAN.<sup>1)</sup>

**penates.** John Walter broke up his household in Printing House Square, set up his *penates* at Bearwood. PEBODY.<sup>1)</sup>

**penetralia.** These two rooms were set apart for the reception of visitors who neither by rank nor familiarity were entitled to admission in the *penetralia* of the mansion. LYTTON, Last Days of Pomp., I, Ch. II, 15a,  
For six years she lived in the innermost *penetralia* of the Imperial Household. Rev. of Rev., CXCVII, 534a.

**postulata.** These *postulata* being admitted, it will follow [etc.]. SWIFT, Tale of a Tub, Sect. II.

**propaganda.** i. The Catholics and the Jews have never used their schools as engines of sectarian *propaganda*. Rev. of Rev., CXCVII, 452b.

ii. A *propaganda* of mutual hate was raging between their subjects. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 557b.

He insisted that *propaganda* was active in the Army. Ib., CCXXIV, 108b.

It is this direct *propaganda* of promises that the Free Traders have to meet. Westm. Gaz., No. 4949, 1b.

**regalia.** I have gotten the warrant for searching for the old *regalia* of the Scottish Crown. J. W. CROKER.<sup>1)</sup>

i) some proper names of geography and of constellations.

1) names of countries, states, provinces, islands, etc.:

*the Antilles, the Azores, the Brazils, the Grisons, the Hebrides, the East (West) Indies, the Low Countries, the Moluccas, the Netherlands, the Sporades, the United States (of America).*

2) names of mountain ranges, such as:

*the Alps, the Andes, the Apennines, the Balkans, the Cameroons, the Carpathians, the Pyrenees, the Urals (= the Ural Mountains).*

3) names of constellations, such as:

*the Hyades, the Dioscuri, the Pleiades.*

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



Note I. The numerous names of towns in *s*, such as *Athens*, *Brussels*, *Lyons*, *Marseilles*, *Treves*, etc., and the noun *Flanders* are only apparent plurals, and are regularly construed as singulars.

II. *Alp* is occasionally met with in the singular. SHAKESPEARE has *Alps* followed by a singular verb and referred to by a singular pronoun. DICKENS humorously speaks of *an Alps of testimony*.

III. *The Balkans* is also the name of the States covering the peninsula in which this mountain range is found. Similarly *Camaroons* is mostly used to denote the district in which this range of mountains is situated.

IV. *The Brazils* seems to be giving way to *Brazil*, at least in the language of the educated.

V. *The United States (of America)* is also construed as a singular. SCHULZE, *Beit. zur Feststellung des mod. eng. Sprachgebrauches*, 19.

**Alp(s).** i. I marked him | As a far *Alp*; and loved to watch the sunrise | Dawn on his ample brow. DE VERE, *Mary Tudor*, IV, 1.

ii. \* The Banner of St. George was carried far beyond *the Pyrenees* and *the Alps*. MACAULAY.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* The valleys, whose vassal seat | *The Alps doth* spit and void *his* rheum upon. Henry V, III, 5, 52.

If it came within the scope of reasonable probability that further proofs were required, they might be heaped upon each other until they formed *an Alps of testimony*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. I, 4a.

**Antilles.** *The Antilles* have been divided into two groups: *the Greater Antilles* and *the Lesser Antilles*. CAS. CONC. CYCL.

**Balkans.** \* The simplest way of solving the whole problem would be to move *the Balkans* southward and sink them in the Dardanelles. GRAPH.

The highlands of East Servia form the transition between the Transylvanian Alps and *the Balkans*. HARMSWORTH *Encyclopædia*, s. v. *Servia*.

\*\* Uneasiness in *the Balkans*. TIMES.

Unrest in *the Balkans*. REV. OF REV., CCI, 229a.

When he was twenty-two, he went with his regiment to *the Balkans*. IB., CCII, 363b.

There is certain to be war in *the Balkans*. IB., CCIV, 564a.

**Brazil(s).** i. He . . . asked Lady Steyne . . . how his dear friend, George Gaunt liked *the Brazils*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XIV, 145.

The ship remained some months at *the Brazils*. MAC., *Clive*, (499b).

ii. In his intercourse with natives of India he employed the smattering of Portuguese which he had acquired when a lad in *Brazil*. IB., (519b).

**Canaries.** He got clapt into the Inquisition at *the Canaries*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XVI, 132a.

**Downs.** We cast anchor in *the Downs* about nine in the morning. SWIFT, *Gul Trav.*, IV, Ch. XI, (213b).

**Camaroons.** In *the Camaroons* the German Empire already possesses a colony of nearly 200.000 square miles in area. TIMES, No. 1803, 515a.

The rivers would be of the first importance for the trade of *the Camaroons*. IB., 575d.

**Himalayas.** *The Himalayas* are the loftiest mountains in the world. CAS. CONC. CYCL.

1) FOELS-KOCH, *Wiss. Gram.*, § 261.

**Hyades.** And when | Thro' scudding drifts *the* rainy *Hyades* | Vext the dim sea.  
TEN., *Ulysses*, 10.

**Indies.** Much against the minds of many of the Spaniards themselves, that cruel and bloody Inquisition was established in *the Indies*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XX, 153*b*.

**the Low Countries.** She (sc. Elizabeth) was resolute in her refusal of *the Low Countries*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, VII, § 3, 371.

**Moluccas.** Amboyna is one of the *Moluccas*. CAS. CONC. CYCL.

**Philippines.** Puertorico will be next considered, *the Philippines* being reserved for the last. TIMES.

**Pleiades.** Alcyone, the brightest of *the Pleiades*, is a star of the third magnitude. CAS. CONC. CYCL.

**United States.** i. If he had done so, perhaps *the United States* had begun to exist twenty years sooner than *they* actually did. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIX, 217*a*.

Our conditions would include, of course, the open door to the Pacific for our merchant ships in peace, and for our battleships in all wars to which *the United States* were not a party. TIMES.

*The United States* are not, as many Americans and some foreigners seem to imagine, exempt from the laws of nature. IB.

ii. \* *The United States* is as anxious as Germany for the punishment of such offenders. DAILY TELEGRAPH.

*The United States* is not co-operating with the German or any other Government. TIMES.

\*\* *The United States* will not participate in any effort to bring about mediation. It will not participate in any note of interrogation regarding Great Britain's ultimate intentions. IB.

*The United States* has considerably increased this balance in *its* favour. IB.

*The United States* will increase *its* fleet in the Pacific. WESTM. GAZ.

\*\*\* *The United States*, of course, still *produces* more wheat than *she* requires. IB., No. 5179, 17*b*.

*The United States* is the greatest coal country, the greatest lead country and the greatest cotton country in the world. We need not, therefore, be surprised to find that *her* imports are smaller than *our* own. IB., No. 5271, 4*a*.

\*\*\*\* The unoccupied lands, properly the inheritance of the collective British nation — whole continents large as a second *United States* — were hurriedly abandoned to the local colonial governments. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. I, 16.

**Urals.** We crossed *the Urals*. HUGH CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. XI, 124.

i) many nouns not answering to a general description, such as:

*acclamations, amends, annals, annates, archives, arms, arrears, assets* (13), *auspices, banns, barracks, bounds, cates, chattels, clothes, confines, duds, environs, exequies, fallals, fumes, gallows, gewgaws, hallows, justs* (— *jousts*), *kickshaws, lauds, (dis)likes, lineaments, matins, obsequies, (out)skirts, perquisites, plaudits, precincts, proceeds, raptures, remains, roads, stops, sweepstakes, thanks, throes, tidings, togs, traps, vails* (— *vales*), *vespers, vestments, viands, wages, wares, weeds*.

Note I. *Acclamation* in the singular is found in the phrase *by acclamation*.

II. *Amends* occurs chiefly in the collocation *to make amends*. As far as the evidence goes, it is construed as a singular and may even be preceded by the indefinite article.

III. *Annal* in the singular is sometimes used to denote the record or entry of a single year, or a single item in a chronicle.

IV. *Archive* is sometimes found in the singular.

V. *Arms* as a plurale tantum is found in two meanings: *a*) *weapons*; *b*) *heraldic insignia or devices*. Note especially:

the following compounds and word-groups: *fire-arms*, *small-arms* (= those not requiring carriages, as opposed to *artillery*), *stand of arms* (= complete set for one soldier), *man-at-arms* (= one practised in war, fully-armed knight), *man-in-arms* (= armed man), *companion in arms*;

the following phrases: *to arms*, *in arms* (= armed, prepared to fight), *up in arms* (= in active readiness to fight, actively engaged in struggle or rebellion), *to take up arms*, *to bear arms* (= to serve as a soldier), *to lay down arms*, *to turn one's arms against* (= to make war upon, to attack), *under arms* (= standing or marching arms in hand), *Stand to your arms!* (= Stand in order of battle with arms presented), *Present arms!* *Shoulder arms!* *Slope arms!* *Trail arms!* *Carry arms!* etc. See especially SATTLER, E. S., XVI.

The singular *arm* is used to denote *a*) a kind of troops of which an army is composed, *b*) a particular species of weapon. (Compare *a wine*, *a sugar*, etc.)

VI. *Arrear* is mostly used in the singular in the expression *in arrear*, and occasionally when not preceded by *in*.

VII. *Auspices* is always used in the plural in the sense of *patronage*, as in the expression *under the auspices of*. The plural is also usual in the meaning of *omen*, as in *under the fairest auspices*, and in the unusual, although original, meaning of *observation of birds for the purpose of obtaining omens*.

VIII. *Barrack* is mostly used in the plural when it is used in its ordinary meaning: *a set of buildings erected or used as a place of lodgement or residence for troops*, but the singular is not uncommon. This is even the ordinary form when there is occasion to use the indefinite article or a distributive numeral: *a barrack*, *every barrack*. Sometimes we find the plural form after the indefinite article.

IX. *Chattel* is occasionally used in the singular, especially when a distinctly single object has to be denoted. Note also *goods and chattels*, a comprehensive phrase for all kinds of personal property.

X. *Firstling* is occasionally met with in the singular.

XI. *Fume* in certain shades of meaning is occasionally found in the singular.

XII. *Gallows* is said to have become a singular. The evidence for this statement is, however, somewhat unsatisfactory. Instances are, indeed, given of *gallows* preceded by the indefinite article, but, none with a demonstrative pronoun or a numeral. Nor do the illustrative quotations adduced in MURRAY clearly show whether we should say *the gallows is* or *are*. There is a plural *gallowses*, but, according to MURRAY, this form is now seldom used, the formation being felt to be somewhat uncouth. Instead of *a gallows* the older language used *a pair of gallows*, the present language *a set of gallows* (36) (MURRAY, s. v. *pair*, 6). See also HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 144.

XIII. *Gewgaw* is sometimes used in the singular.

XIV. *J(o)ust*, occasionally spelled *giust*, is sometimes met with to denote a single encounter, in which case it may be preceded by a numeral: *a j(o)ust*, *two j(o)usts*. The plural *j(o)usts* is also found with the indefinite article: *a j(o)usts*.

XV. *Like* is seldom met with in the singular, but *dislike* is quite common in the singular as the opposite of *liking*. *Likes* and *dislikes* are often coupled together (Dutch *sympathieën en antipathieën*).

XVI. *Matins* is sometimes construed as a singular.

XVII. *Perquisite* as a singular occurs now and then, although rarely.

XVIII. *Precinct* also is rarely found in the singular.

XIX. *Rapture* is rather frequently met with in the singular.

XX. *Remain* in some shades of meaning is occasionally met with in the singular.

XXI. *Roads* seems to be the regular form when a proper name precedes: *Yarmouth roads*. When no such noun precedes, the singular form seems to be the rule.

XXII. *Sweepstake* is occasionally found in the singular to denote a person who wins all. The plural is regularly used to denote the money staked or won at a horse-race. It may then be preceded by the indefinite article, but is otherwise treated as a plural.

XXIII. *Thanks* is always used as a singular in SHAKESPEARE, except for the combinations *a thousand thanks* (*Taming of the Shrew*, II, 85; *Henry V*, IV, 4, 64; *Henry VIII*, I, 4, 74) and *many thousand thanks* (*Henry VI*, C, III, 2, 56). Thus we meet with *much thanks*, *little thanks*, *that thanks*, *thanks...is*, *a liberal thanks*. ALEX. SCHMIDT, s.v. *thanks*.

In Present English *thanks* seems to be ordinarily construed as a plural. Thus regularly in such phrases as *many thanks for*, *our (all, no) thanks are due to*. On the other hand it is dealt with as a singular in *to get little (much) thanks*. For the rest no sufficient evidence is available at the time of writing to settle all points of concord.

Here mention may also be made of the prepositional phrases *thanks to* (= owing to, Dutch *dank zij*) and *no thanks to* (= no credit to, Dutch *niet te danken aan*).

XXIV. *Throes* seems to be a strict plurale tantum, but *death-throe* is sometimes used in the singular.

XXV. *Tidings*, now almost regularly construed as a plural throughout, is used indiscriminately as a singular and a plural in SHAKESPEARE. See AL. SCHMIDT, s.v. *tidings*. SCOTT has *little tidings* instead of *few tidings*.

XXVI. *Toil* was formerly also found in the singular.

XXVII. *Vespers* is sometimes construed as a singular and may be preceded by the indefinite article.

XXVIII. *Vestments* is especially used in the plural when the dress of officiating clergymen is referred to: *the ecclesiastical or sacerdotal vestments*. ANNAND., Conc. Dict. In SHAKESPEARE only the plural is met with.

XXIX. *Wages* is much more common than *wage*, but there is a decided tendency to use the singular form when a defining adjective precedes: *living wage*, *average wage*, etc., but *board wage* is only vulgarly used for



*board-wages*. The plural requires the plural form of the demonstrative pronouns, but the indefinite numerals are the singular. Compare also Ch. XXVI, 16. Occasionally it has the finite verb of which it is the subject placed in the singular.

XXX. *Wares* is almost the only form, but the singular is regular in compounds, such as *tinware*, *hardware*, *earthenware*, etc. Thus also *woman's ware*, which may be regarded as a kind of compound.

XXXI. *Weeds* as the name of clothing is the ordinary form, besides which the singular *weed* is in ordinary use in Early Modern English, especially to denote a single garment. Except for the collocation *widow's weeds*, the word is now only met with in the higher literary style.

For *weed(s)* as the name of a plant see below (20).

The other nouns mentioned above are practically strict pluralia tantum.

XXXII. *Clothes* can now hardly be considered as the plural of *cloth*, from which it differs materially in meaning. The plural of *cloth* is now regular: *cloths*. To translate the Dutch *kleedingstuk* we may use *article of clothing (dress), garment*, etc.

XXXIII. *Bounds* is especially met with in certain combinations, such as *to go beyond all bounds*, *to keep within (due) bounds*.

XXXIV. *Duds* is used only in slang or colloquial language as a depreciative or humorous term.

XXXV. *Hallows* has been preserved only in *All-Hallows*.

XXXVI. *Togs*, from the Latin *toga*, only used in slang or colloquial language, corresponds to the Dutch *plunje*.

XXXVII. *Traps*, used only in slang or colloquial language, may be an abbreviation of *trappings*.

XXXVIII. *Vails (vales)*, shortened from *avail*, is obsolescent, *perquisites*, short *perks*, being the ordinary word now.

**acclamation(s)**. i. He was received throughout the fleet with a shout of answering *acclamation*. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 254.

A general *acclamation* concluded the sitting of this species of privy council. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. VII, 74.

ii. The theatre resounded with *acclamations*. MAC., *Fred.*, (678b).

**amends**. \* Well, my dear, you shall come at night, and I'll make you *amends*.—Madam, I will have *amends* before I leave the place. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, II, 5, (77).

Seeing here a possibility of *making amends* for the casting-vote he had given with an ill-satisfied conscience. G. ELIOT, *Middlemarch*, V, Ch. L, 366.

\*\* Those who have most distinguished themselves by railing at the sex, very often make an honourable *amends* by chusing one of the most worthless persons of it for a companion and yoke-fellow. SPECTATOR, DXXX, (69).

\*\*\* There is great *amends* made in the representation. FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, Advertisement.

\*\*\*\* It will make us but little *amends* that they will be beauties. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, IV, Ch. II, 205.

**annal(s)**. i. Here and there may be seen an *annal*, expressed in riper language, which must be marked as the interpolation of a later Editor. EARLE.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- ii. Let not Ambition mock their useful toil, | ... Nor Grandeur hear with a disdainful smile | The short and simple *annals* of the poor. GRAY, *Elegy*, 32.  
Sir Walter Scott is undoubtedly the most remarkable writer that figures in the literary *annals* of the nineteenth century. G. H. T., *Memoir of Sir Walter Scott*, 12.

**annates.** At the Reformation the right to the *annates* was transferred to the Crown; in the reign of Queen Anne they were given up to form a fund for the augmentation of poor livings, known as Queen Anne's bounty. MURRAY.

**archive(s).** i. Some rotten *archive*, rummaged out of some seldom-explored press. CH. LAMB.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. There remain in the various *archives* of the Netherlands and Germany many documents from his hand which will probably never see the light. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 901*b*.

Send the *archives* to Potsdam. MAC., *Fred.*, (697*b*).

God' hath now | Sponged and made blank of crimeful record all | My mortal *archives*. TEN., *St. Simeon Stylites*, 158.

**arm(s).** i. \* The married women of each *arm* of the Service stationed in India receive pay. HARPER'S *Mag.*<sup>2)</sup>

Since the adoption of long-range weapons of precision there has been an active controversy as to the value of cavalry and the method of using that *arm*. ATHEN.<sup>3)</sup>

\*\* The Enfield rifle is still superior to any *arm*. CHAMB. *Mag.*<sup>2)</sup>

- ii. \* It was plain that an appeal to *arms* was at hand. MAC., *Pitt*, (301*a*).

He had *taken arms* for the house of Stuart in 1715. ID., *Fred.*, (675*b*).

Bavaria *took up arms*. IB., (668*b*).

Saxony was all *in arms* behind him. IB., (670*b*).

Of the males in the vigour of life, a seventh part were probably *under arms*. IB., (673*a*).

The scene in the interior of St. Paul's was, if possible, still more grand and touching, where were gathered almost all that survived of his *companions in arms*. ROWE and WEBB, *Intr. to Tennyson's Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wellington*.

Some of the peasants *carried arms* like the soldiers. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 51.

These men were openly *carrying arms* with the avowed intention of using them. REV. OF REV., CXCI, 10*a*.

\*\* The *arms* quartered on the shield along with his own were not, to be sure, poor Rose's. She had no *arms*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 151.

Any person who without proper royal authority uses . . . the royal *arms* . . . is liable to be restrained by injunction or interdict. TIMES.

**arrear(s).** i. \* This long *arrear* of the government is very hard upon us. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, II, 1.

Molly, kind and faithful in spite of a long *arrear* of unpaid wages. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XVII, 182.

The burdens of the war had been terrible, almost insupportable; but no *arrear* was left to embarrass the finances in time of peace. MAC., *Fred.*, (700*b*).

\*\* Our wages are sometimes a little *in arrear*. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 2 (395).

- ii. \* He was cogitating in his mind his ways and means of paying certain *arrears* of rent. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 8*b*.

He has a right to claim six years' *arrears*. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 770.  
He received the *arrears* of two and three quarter years of sipping in one attack of delirium tremens. RUD. KIPLING, *Plain Tales*, XXIII, 177.

1) MURRAY. — 2) SATTLER, E. S., XVI. — 3) TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, XI.

He had large *arrears* of sleep to make up. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, Ch. XLIII.  
 \*\* I am greatly in *arrears* in my correspondence, reports, etc. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 569a.

**auspice(s).** i. This *auspice* (sc. the publication of a pamphlet) was instantly followed by a speech from the throne, in the very spirit of the pamphlet. BURKE.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* All sortileges. *auspices*, divinations and other works of the devil were forbidden. MILMAN.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Under these unpromising *auspices* the parting took place and the journey began. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Ab.*, Ch. II, 7.

The company began under the fairest *auspices*. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. II, 33.

\*\*\* Published *under the auspices* of the Royal Society of Literature. LINGARD.<sup>1)</sup>

**banns.** "He," said the parson, "with the consent of Fanny, before my face put in the *banns*. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, IV, Ch. II, 205.

To my thinking, she's just as much married as if the *banns* had been read in all the churches in London. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 211.

**barrack(s).** i. I wish any one in a *barrack* would say what you say. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 187.

The high wall being that of a *barrack*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XI, 98.

I'll proclaim your share in the performance in *every barrack* in the kingdom. EM. LAWLESS, *A Colonel of the Empire*, Ch. X.

The conscription carries off village lads to the life of the *barrack* and the town, from which half of them, apparently, never return. *Times*.

ii. \* Three days afterwards Dobbin found George in his room at the *barracks*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 191.

\*\* The college building had been seized for a *barracks*. *Harper's Mag.*<sup>1)</sup>

**bounds.** Why was he rejoiced beyond all *bounds* to see them? DICK., *Christ. Car.*, II, 31.

Their interests would be better consulted by keeping their singers within *bounds*. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. I, 9.

Religious impulses like other impulses must be chastened and kept within due *bounds*. G. C. MACAULAY, *Pref. to Tennyson's Holy Grail*, 16.

**cates.** The Tempter. I warrant you, thought these *cates* would go down without the recommendatory preface of a benediction. CH. LAMB, *Grace before Meat* (PEACOCK, *Sel. Es.*, 188).

With the decay of my first innocence, I confess a less and less relish daily for those innocuous *cates*. *Ib.*, 190.

**chattel(s).** i. If at the age of eighteen she marries, she becomes little more than the *chattel* of her husband. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. X, 137.

ii. Deliver up to me the *chattels* of the mad Charles Stewart. SCOTT.<sup>1)</sup>

The bulk of his *goods and chattels* ... were with the regimental baggage. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 292.

**confines.** If the fame of that treatise were to extend to the furthest *confines* of the known world. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 3.

**duds.** Her mother is getting on her *duds*. RUDY. KIPLING, *Gadsb.*, 11.

Just look at the *duds* she 'as got on. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XIII, 88.

**exequies.** The festival of Adonis was celebrated with the representation of funeral *exequies*. THIRLWALL.<sup>1)</sup>

**fume(s).** i. His two chamberlains | Will I with wine and wassail so convince,  
 That memory, the warder of the brain, | Shall be a *fume*. Mac b., I, 7, 66.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

The wind falls faint as it blows with the *fume* of the flowers of the night.  
SWINBURNE.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. The *fumes* of choice tobacco scent the air. DICKENS.<sup>1)</sup>

Suddenly an idea mingled with the alcoholic *fumes* which disturbed his brain.  
BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 24.

**furies.** Before he landed at Southampton, the Jameson raid had taken place and the *furies* of racial hatred were unloosed. Rev. of Rev., CCV, 28*b*.

- gallows.** i. I prophesied, if a *gallows* were on land, This fellow could not drown.  
Temp., V, 1, 217.

So was the black-horned thing seated aloof on a rock, surveying a distant crowd surrounding a *gallows*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I, 3.

Gibbet = a *gallows* with a cross-beam or an arm projecting from the top, on which notorious malefactors were hanged. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*

The sign-post of the White Hart Inn served for a *gallows*. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 201.

\*\* I like thy wit well, in good faith: the *gallows* does well; but how does it well? *it does* well to those that do ill [etc.]. HAM., V, 1, 50.

He continued to swing there at night long after the *gallows* was taken down.  
WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 114).

\*\*\* He took the maior aside and required of him that a *paire of gallowses* should be framed and erected. HAYWARD.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. Previous to this epocha, *gallowses* had been erected at Naples. HELEN M. WILLIAMS.<sup>1)</sup>

**gewgaw(s).** i. The toy and the *gewgaw* no more can divert. R. W. HAMILTON, *Pop. Educ.*, X, 318.

- ii. Leave your diamond-pin up-stairs; our friends to-day don't like such *gewgaws*.  
THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 79.

**just (jousts).** i. \* The *just* was a separate trial of skill when only one man was opposed to another. STRUTT.<sup>1)</sup>

Seldom hath pass'd a week but *giust* | Or feat of arms befell. SCOTT, *Marm.*, I, xiv.  
And no quest came, but all was *joust* and play. TEN., *Merlin and Vivien*, 143.  
Henceforward let there be, Once every year, a *joust* for one of these (sc. diamonds).  
Id., *Lanc. and El.*, 61.

\*\* Eight *jousts* had been, and still | Had Lancelot won the diamond of the year.  
Id., 67.

- ii. \* Hand in hand they moved | Down to the meadow where the *jousts* were held.  
Id., *Ger. and Enid*, 537.

Are you so sick, my Queen, you cannot move | To these fair *jousts*? Id., *Lanc. and El.*, 79.

\*\* The cry of a great *jousts* | With trumpet-blowings ran on all the ways | From Camelot, Id., *The last Tournament*, 51.

**lauds.** Breviary = a book containing the daily service of the Roman Catholic or Greek church. It is composed of matins, *lauds*, first, third, and ninth vespers and the compline or post-communio. WEBST., s. v. *breviary*.

(dis)like(s). i. I do not care a straw for his *like* or *dislike*. F. M. CRAWFORD, *Greifenstein*, III, xxii, 41.<sup>1)</sup>

She had a small flower-garden, for which she had rather an affection: but beyond this no other *like* or disliking. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IX, 86.

- ii. Her odd *likes and dislikes*. BLACK, *Pr. Thule*, Ch. XII, 180.<sup>1)</sup>

All that the Chancellor said about his *likes*, his *dislikes*... carefully reported.  
MANCH. EXAM.<sup>1)</sup>



**Compare:** The convenience of States has to be taken into account; the possible *liking and disliking* of peoples whom perhaps the bride and bridegroom have never seen, and are destined never to see. MC. CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XVIII, 245.

**lineaments.** The general *lineaments* of the era that was passing away. KIRK.<sup>1)</sup> He examined his *lineaments*, in the hopes of detecting a likeness to the Chandos portrait. J. PAYN.<sup>1)</sup>

**matins.** •The warriors left their lowly bed, | Looked out upon the dappled sky, | Muttered their soldier *matins* by | And then awaked their fire. SCOTT, *Lady*, V, II. *Matins* are preceded by the Pater Noster, the Ave Maria, and the Credo. J. M. NEALE.<sup>1)</sup>

**obsequies.** Her *obsequies* have been as far enlarged | As we have warranty. Haml., V, 1, 250.

Call it not vain: — they do not err, | Who say, that when the poet dies, | Mute Nature mourns her worshipper, | And celebrates his *obsequies*. SCOTT, *Lay*, V, 1.

**(out)skirts.** i. We found a party of Uhlands reconnoitring in the *outskirts* of Grandpré and immediately attacked them. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 52. There is much that is profoundly impressive in the appearance of their *outskirts* as the traveller enters them by night. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VI, 74.

ii. Now, Sir, young Fortinbras, | ... Hath in the *skirts* of Norway, here and there Shark'd up a list of lawless resolute. Haml., I, 1, 97.

In his way to the lodgings of a friend, who lived in the *skirts* of the town, he was picked up by the watch. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XX, 133.

He now entered the *skirts* of the village. WASH. IRV., *Rip van Winkle*.

**perquisite(s).** i. Of all the arguments in the way of business, the *perquisite* is the most prevailing. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, II, 1.

ii. Your father's *perquisites* for the escape of prisoners must amount to a considerable sum in the year. Ib., II.

**plaudit.** Mr. Morley introduced his first Indian Budget on July 20th, and won *plaudits* from the House for the manner as well as the matter of his speech. Rev. of Rev., CC, 123b

But what is that to the horror of seeing Marguerite return from heaven in order to join hands with the Devil and her seducer in acknowledging the *plaudits* of the crowd? Ib., CC, 157a.

**precinct(s).** i. I would as soon have thought of walking into the Doctor's own library at Grey Friars, as of entering into that awful *precinct*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. V, 50.

ii. The sound of his voice was heard ... down staircases to the Court of Requests and *precincts* of Westminster Hall. MAC., *Pitt*, (293b).

More than once it (sc. the Exhibition) held within its *precincts* at one moment nearly a hundred thousand persons. MC. CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IX, 109. The public are not admitted within the turbulent *precincts* of "the House". ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VIII, 108.

They do not even respect the holy *precincts* of the church. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 47.

**proceeds.** It was a very vivid and very suggestive representation of the ways and manners of those rough warriors, who, having garnered the loot of the world got drunk on its *proceeds*. Rev. of Rev., CCV, 35b.

**rapture.** i. Who was this, stealing in the chamber — a tall grey man, with a face full of eager love and *rapture*? BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. XV, 129.

ii. I held my daughter in my arms, whose silence only spoke her *raptures*. GOLDS., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (473).

But my *raptures* were not lasting. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXII, 156.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**remain(s).** i. A traditional *remain* of his office of server. *Times*.<sup>1)</sup>

The supposition that Low Hill is a Druidical *remain*. J. H. LUPTON.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. He made a scanty breakfast on the *remains* of the last night's provisions. *WASH. IRV.*, DOLF HEYL (*STOF.*, *Handl.*, I, 123).

On visiting those disinterred *remains* of an ancient City [etc.]. *LYTTON*, *Last Days*, Pref.

He must destroy all *remains* of this detestable will. *EDNA LYALL*, *DONOVAN*, I, 64.

She lies in the same vault containing the *remains* of the famous author and statesman. *Lit. World*.

**responsions.** Congregation yesterday rejected the solution which would have rendered Greek unnecessary as a subject for *Responsions*. *Times*.

**road(s).** i. My ships | Are safely come to *road*. *Merch. of Ven.*, V, 1, 278.

ii. The sixth day of our being at sea we came into Yarmouth *roads*. *DEFOE*, *Rob. Crusoe*, 8.

A great many ships from Newcastle came into the same *roads*. *Ib.*

The Armada dropped anchor in Calais *roads*. *J. R. GREEN*, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, Sect. VI, 419.

An enormous number of the yachts have already arrived in the Cowes *Roads*. *Daily Mail*.

**sweepstakes.** Every noon there was a *sweepstakes* for the number of miles in 24 hours. *FROUDE*, *Oceana*, Ch. XIX, 301.

A few days after he tried to persuade her to take a ticket in a shilling *sweepstakes* he was getting up among the out- and in-door servants. *G. MOORE*, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. V, 33.

**thanks.** i. To his Subscribers the Author returns his most sincere *thanks*. *BURNS*, Pref. to the First Edition.

The letters consisted for the most part of compliments, *thanks*, offers of service, assurances of attachment. *Mac.*, *Fred.*, (690b).

The man was too awkward to put his *thanks* into words. *Mrs. GASK*, *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 245.

To those who wrote the play ... all *thanks are due*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5525, *8d.* *Many (a thousand) thanks* for your kind letter.

ii. \* For this relief *much thanks*. *Hamlet*, I, 1, 8.

Your wife would give you *little thanks* for that. *Merch. of Ven.*, IV, 1, 280. It's *little thanks* I get for what I do for folks i' this world. *G. ELIOT*, *Mill*, I, Ch. XII, 111.

\*\* Yet your good will | Must have *that thanks* from Rome, after the measure As you intended well. *Coriolanus*, V, 1, 46.

\*\*\* *Thanks* to men of noble minds is honourable meed. *Tit. Adr.*, I, 215.

\*\*\*\* I have heard it, Pompey; | And am well studied for a *liberal thanks* | Which I do owe you. *Ant. and Cleop.*, II, 6, 48.

iii. *Thanks to* the political crisis, the States General were assembled. *Mrs. GORE*, *A Life's Less.*, II, 136.<sup>2)</sup>

That the incident terminated without an appeal to arms was no *thanks* to Lord Randolph. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXIII, 89a. (Compare: That increasing acquaintance with the laws of phenomena, which has through successive ages enabled us to subjugate Nature to our needs, is scarcely *owed to* the appointed means of instructing our youth. *SPENC.*, *Educ.*, Ch. I, 23a.)

**throe(s).** i. And was the Old World coming speedily to its death-*throe*? *CH. KINGLEY*, *Hyp.*, Ch. X, 54.

ii. Round her new-fallen young the heifer moves, | Fruit of her *throes*. *POPE*, *Iliad*, XVII, 6.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

FLÜGEL.

Nine years elapsed before it saw the light. His *throes* in bringing it forth had been severe and remittent. BOSWELL, *Life of Johnson*, 85*b*.  
It is at least conceivable that in the *throes* of revolutionary frenzy he himself might perish. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 562*b*.

**tidings.** i. And when the people heard *these* evil *tidings*, they mourned. Bible Exodus, XXXIII, 4.

I am to shew thee *these* glad *tidings*. Id., Luke, I, 19.

The next *tidings* were that he was married. JANE AUSTEN, *Persuasion*, Ch. I, 6.

ii. \* The *tidings* comes that they are all arrived. King John, IV, 2, 115.

Now, Travers, what good *tidings* comes with you? Henry IV, B, I, 1, 33.

\*\* He welcomed his nephew to France, and, in the same breath, asked what news from Scotland. "Little good *tidings*, dear uncle," replied young Durward. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. V, 75.

**toil.** i. Why do you go about to recover the wind of me, as if you would drive me into a *toil*? Hamlet, III, 2, 365.

ii. Where chiefs, with hound and hawk who came | To share their monarch's silvan game, | Themselves in bloody *toils* were snared. SCOTT, *Lady*, II, xxviii, 15.

In order to drive a deer into the *toils* it was needful to get to the windward of him. MADDEN, *The Diary of Master William Silence*, 33, Note (DOWDEN, *Hamlet*, III, 2, 365).

Do you know whom she has got into her *toils*. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. II, 22*b*.

She tried to get Robert into her *toils*. OSCAR WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, I.

**traps.** Have I got all my *traps*? DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXII, 166*b*.

**vails.** The lackeys rose up from their cards to open the door to him, in order to et their "*vails*". THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. II, 13.

These ignominious *vails* Pitt resolutely declined. MAC., *Pitt*, (298*a*).

**vespers.** i. \* *Vespers* was still far off. CONAN DOYLE, *The White Comp.*, Ch. I, 1.

\*\* We should see a new and vaster and far more horrible Sicilian *vespers*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 511*a*.

ii. *Vespers* were performed before the sovereigns. LEIGH HUNT, *The Story of King Robert of Sicily*.

**vestment(s).** i. They frown at the sight of even the most modest sacerdotal *vestment*. RIDER HAGGARD, *Lysbeth*, Author's Note.

ii. Some (priests) flung away their sacred *vestments*. MAC., *Popes*, (560*a*).

A quaint old carved oak chest half filled with priests' *vestments*. MISS BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secr.*, I, Ch. I, 4.

**viand(s).** i. Still cupboarding the *viand*. Coriolanus, I, 1, 103.

ii. Soon after our dinner was served in, which was right good *viands*. BACON, *New Atlantis*, (274).

He loved to eat in the open air and shared his *viands* liberally with the wasps. Rev. of Rev., CCIX, 572*b*.

**wage(s).** i. \* By the end of six months he was receiving a *wage* of fourteen shillings as salesman. Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 250.

Three half-pence an hour was the *average wage* of a working man in England. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, II, 69.

Thousands of them are just earning a *living wage*. Rev. of Rev., CCVII, 385*a*.

\*\* What's to make me sure as the house won't be put o' *board wage* afore we're many months older. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, Ch. XXXII, 300.

i. \* The *wages* are pretty good. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 148.

The *wages* of these people *were* laid out in powder and arms. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 52.

If the *wages* *satisfy* you, I think you will suit me very well. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XXII, 143.

\*\* The *wages* of sin is death. Bible, Romans, VI, 23.

Last week my *wages* was 7s. 6d. CH. KINGSLEY, *Cheap Clothes and Nasty*, 66.

I think I shall be able to manage till my first quarter's *wages* comes to me. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. III, 25.

\*\*\* These (those) *wages* were utterly insufficient.

\*\*\*\* If any servants have too *little wages*, or any husband too much wife: let them repair to the noble Serjeant Kite. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, I, 1, (251).

The poor lad had but *little wages* to receive. FIELD., *Jos. Andrews*, IV, Ch. I, 203.

Mary is living in a place where they don't give her as *much wages* as she deserves. MRS. GASKELL, *Wives and Daught.*, Ch. XV, 157.

The manufacturers there enjoy the advantage of paying much *less wages* for much longer hours of work. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4943, 9.

He quite compelled us to hold our tongues, by threatening to lay information against us, for paying him too *much wages*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVIII, 228.

iii. If you please I had rather be at *Board-Wages*, CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 1, 12.

**ware(s).** i. Small *woman's ware*, such as thread and pins. G. ELIOT, *Romola*.<sup>1)</sup> The capital of cotton and the capital of *hardware* supply materials both for parallel and contrast. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VI, 91.

ii. One of the youngsters espied the cart of Dobbin and Rudge, at the Doctor's door, discharging a cargo of the *wares* in which the firm dealt. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 40.

I can't show such *wares* as mine in this fair for every fly to settle on and pay nothing. G. ELIOT, *Romola*, Ch. XIV, 121.

**weed(s).** i. They left me then, when the grey-hooded Ev'n | Like a sad votarist in palmer's *weed* | Rose from the hindmost wheel of Phœbus' wain. MILTON, *Comus*, 190.

Oh, for his arms! Of martial *weed* | Had never mortal Knight such need! SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm.*, III, xx.

At least put off to please me this poor gown, | This silken rag, this beggar-woman's *weed*. TEN., *Ger. and Enid*, 679.

ii. To such my errand is, and but for such | I would not soil these pure ambrosial *weeds*. MILTON, *Comus*, 15.

Who would rob a palmer of his *weeds*? *Ib.*, 390.

You must even do like other widows — buy yourself *weeds*. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, II, 1.

No matter how her *weeds* of widowhood might have become her, she would probably have doffed them soon to wed another lover. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCV, 37a.

20. Among the nouns which are more or less strictly pluralia tantum only in certain of their meanings, the majority are found in the plural also in a meaning or in meanings corresponding exactly to that or those of the singular, so that they mostly have more meanings in



the plural than in the singular. Thus *chains* as a *plurale tantum fetters*, but the word is also the plural of *chain* in its ordinary meaning. Similarly *accents* not only has the meaning corresponding to the singular *accent*, but also stands for *speech* or *language*.

These relative pluralia tantum are very numerous, so that anything like an exhaustive discussion cannot be attempted in these pages. Nor do they present any distinct features according to which they might be conveniently divided into groups. The most remarkable among them are, therefore, simply enumerated in alphabetical order, while only those meanings are mentioned which are peculiar to the plural. The definitions of these meanings are in substance those of MURRAY, WEBSTER or ANNANDALE, more or less shortened.

**accents** = *speech, language*.

How many ages hence | Shall this our lofty scene be acted over | In states unborn and *accents* yet unknown! JUL. CÆS., III, 1, 113.

O Minstrel Harp, still must thine *accents* sleep? SCOTT, Lady, I, 1.

**accomplishments** *ornamental attainments or acquirements*. Sometimes used in the singular in, apparently, the same meaning.

i. She had neither beauty, genius, *accomplishment*, nor manner. JANE AUSTEN, North. Abbey, Ch. II, 8.

He was a man of great reading, no small ability, considerable *accomplishment*, excellent good sense and humour. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. VIII, 97.

ii. Such a dashing young fellow as he is, with his good looks, rank and *accomplishments* would be the very husband for her. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 216. But it was not solely or principally to outward *accomplishments* that Pitt owed the vast influence which, during nearly thirty years, he exercised over the House of Commons. MAC., Pitt, (294a).

**accounts** = a) *registers of facts relating to money*; b) *the art of drawing up commercial calculations* (= Dutch *handelsrekenen*). Also regularly used in the plural in the phrases *to cast accounts*, *to keep accounts*, *to balance* (or *square*) *accounts with any one*, *to settle (the) accounts*.

i. In very ancient times *accounts* were kept by means of tallies and chalk-marks. Sir R. G. C. HAMILTON and JOHN BALL, Book-keeping.

Here he checked the housekeeper's *accounts*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIV, 246. Some days we can get through our *accounts* in 'alf the time we can at other times, G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XXX, 214.

ii. A knowledge of the theory and practice of *accounts* is an important part of the education of every man. Sir R. G. C. HAMILTON and JOHN BALL, Book-keeping, Pref.

I am versed in book-keeping and *accounts*. Business-letter writer, XX.

iii. Can you cast *accounts*. LYTTON, Night and Morning, 81.

I went over from Drumble once a quarter at least to *settle the accounts*. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XV, 286.

**acquirements** = *personal attainments of body or mind*. Occasionally in the singular in apparently the same meaning.

i. A man of greater ability and *acquirement* than Stein. SEELEN.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. They found it advisable to employ these unoccupied intervals with rubbing up their historical or geographical *acquirements*. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Woman, Ch. XII.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**addresses** = *dutiful or courteous approach to any one especially to a lady in courtship* (= Dutch *aanzoek*). Occasionally in the singular in, apparently, the same meaning.

- i. She is taken with Sir Lucius's *address*. SHER., Riv., II, 2, (238).

I have your respected mother's permission for this *address*. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XIX, 108.

Make your *addresses* to the fair. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, I, 1, (46).

It is usual with young ladies to reject the *addresses* of the man whom they secretly mean to accept, when he first applies for their favour. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XIX,

She felt much honoured by Mr. Pipkin's *addresses*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 132.

**advances** — *movements towards closer acquaintance or understanding, overtures*. May be used in the singular preceded by *every*, and in the plural modified by *some* understood as an indefinite numeral.

- i. She doggedly refused and rejected *every advance*. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XV, 291.

- ii. Notwithstanding *some advances* she made, I could not be prevailed upon to yield her the least attention. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XIX, 124.

- iii. The girls had made the most cordial *advances* to her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XX, 212.

Frederic had some time before made *advances* towards a reconciliation. MAC., *Fred.*, (690b).

Her resistance to his *advances* nettled him. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. XI, 191.

**advice(s)** = *communication(s) from a distance*. Also occasionally in the singular in the same meaning.

- i. I have sure *advice* that she is gone to meet her father. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXX, 313.

- ii. Though *advices* came down to him that many thousands of the citizens had been enrolled as volunteers for the good cause, nothing was done. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 159.

*Advices* from Colesberg of the 15th inst. say that many colonial Dutch have joined the Boers in that district. TIMES.

**affairs** = a) *transactions of a general kind*; b) *commercial or professional business*; c) *public business transactions or matters concerning men or nations collectively*; d) *matters, things in an indefinite or vague way* (Ch. XXXI, 57).

- i. There is a tide in the *affairs* of men | Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune. JUL. CÆS., IV, 3, 218.

- ii. His own *affairs* were in a very anxious state. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 274.

A knowledge of the theory and practice of accounts is an important part of the education of every man. It enables him to exercise a due control over his own *affairs*, or the *affairs* of others which may be intrusted to him. SIR R. G. C. HAMILTON and JOHN BALL, *Book-keeping*, Preface.

- iii. Gradually he acquired such an aptitude for *affairs* as his most intimate associates were not aware he possessed. MAC., *Fred.*, (661b).

He was his own treasurer, his own minister for trade and justice, for *home affairs* and *foreign affairs*. *ib.*, (671b).

- iv. The inhabitants of the village, while discussing the position of *affairs*, had suddenly been startled by the appearance of six mounted Uhlands. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 45.

**airs** = *artificial or affected manner, show of pride, haughtiness*.

They give themselves such *airs*. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. VI, 30.

He puts on *airs*. WEBST., Dict.

You will find your companions easy enough to get on with, if you don't go giving yourself *airs*. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. II, 37.

**antlers** = *branched horn of a stag or deer*.

He (sc. the hart) is of a green colour, and his *antlers* have full sixty points. ROBIN HOOD, Ch. III, (146) (Gruno Series).

**appearances** = *the general aspect of circumstances or events, the 'look' of things*. Also regularly in the plural in the phrases *to keep up (to save) appearances*.

- i. *Appearances* are at least against you. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 146b. How deceptive are *appearances*. PUNCH.
- ii. My only chance of success depends on my *keeping up appearances* — lulling suspicion. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. IV, 72.

**appointments** = *equipment, outfit, accoutrements*. Occasionally met with in the singular, especially in earlier writers, to denote a single article of outfit.

- i. I have not one *appointment* belonging to me which I set so much store by, as I do by these jack-boots. STERNE, *Trist. Shandy*, III, Ch. XXII.
- ii. "Oh, oh! my old friend!" said the Prince recognising the figure as well as the *appointments* of the French glee-woman Louise. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXX, 318.

**articles** = a) *formal agreement drawn up in articles*; b) *indictment drawn up in articles*. As a *plurale tantum* also met with in the collocation *the articles of war* (= the regulations made for the government of the military and naval forces of Great Britain and the United States [Dutch *krijgswet*]).

Note especially: α) *articles of apprenticeship, articles of association* (= rules, conditions, etc., upon which a commercial agreement is founded), β) *marriage articles* (= Dutch *huwelijksvoorwaarden*), γ) *to enter into articles with a man* (= Dutch *een overeenkomst met iemand aangaan, het met iemand op een accoordje gooien*).

- i. Parting with him! why, that is the whole scheme and intention of all *marriage articles*. GAY, *Beg. Op.*, I.  
He had been instrumental in drawing up the *marriage articles* himself. GOLD-SMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (469).  
I was obliged to retrench and *enter into articles* with the porters of certain taverns. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXIII, 161.  
I'll teach the scoundrel to give intelligence to others, while he is under *articles* with me. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 46.  
She was forbidden by the *articles* of her engagement to have 'followers'. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. III, 54.  
I have a great mind to chuck the whole thing up. I would, if my *articles* hadn't been signed. OSC. WILDE, *Dorian Gray*, Ch. V, 93.
- ii. Certain *articles* presented against this Archbishop. BURTON.<sup>1)</sup>
- iii. The *Articles of War* are to be read once in every three months to the Officers and Men. *Regul. and Ord. Army*.<sup>1)</sup>  
It was a city obeying the *articles of war*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, IV, Ch. I, 562.

**assizes** = *sessions held periodically in each county of England for the purpose of administering civil and criminal justice*. Sometimes found preceded by the indefinite article or a singular demonstrative pronoun; in this position the singular form is, however, more usual.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- i. In addition to the ordinary half-yearly *assizes*, at which both civil and criminal causes are heard, there is now in some of the counties a special *assize* for criminal cases only. CAS. CONC. CYCLOP., s. v. *assize*.

What is now wanted is some sort of international *assize* which will do for libelled nations what the Liverpool *Assize* did for the libelled soap firms. REV. OF REV., CCXII, 122a.

It sometimes happens in thinly populated districts that there are no criminals to be tried; this is called a "*Maiden Assize*," and the sheriff presents the judge with a pair of white gloves. ANNA BUCKLAND, Our Nat. Inst., 50

- ii. Two lawyers' clerks were discussing the cases to come on *that assizes*. MRS. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXVI, 267.

A plague upon you, sir, and a black *assizes* for you, for you will come to the gallows yet. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. IV, 29b.

**attainments** = *personal acquirements*. Occasionally found in the singular.

- i. Men that count it a great *attainment* to be able to talk much. GLANVILL.<sup>1)</sup>  
ii. Tom began . . . examining him as to his literary *attainments*. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. V, 87.

A French poet of modest *attainments* . . . was French tutor of the three daughters of Protector Somerset. SIDNEY LEE, French Renaissance in England, I, Ch. X, 45.

**auxiliaries** *foreign troops in the service of a nation at war*. Occasionally met with in the singular to denote a soldier belonging to an auxiliary force.

- i. A Gaul and a Roman happened to challenge one another to wrestle; the legionary fell, *the auxiliary* mocked him. MERIVALE.<sup>1)</sup>  
ii. When Xanthippus, a Lacedæmonian arrived with a Body of *Auxiliaries*. DRYDEN.<sup>1)</sup>

**balusters** = *structure of uprights and handrail*.

Stooping till her head looked over the *balusters*. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters. Ch. XIII, 79.

The main staircase . . . was of hard oak, the *balusters* . . . being turned and moulded in the quaint fashion of their century. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. IX, 81.

**bands** a) *bonds, bondage*; b) *strips hanging down in front as part of a conventional dress, clerical, legal or academical*.

- i. He left me on pretence of finding a proper person to unite us in the *bands* of wedlock. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXII, 150.  
He struggled fiercely with his chain, | Whispered, and wept, and smiled; | Yet wore not long those fatal *bands*. BRYANT, The African Chief, VIII.  
ii. It was this man that Jonathan Swift advised to take orders, to mount in a cassock and *bands*. TROL., Thack., Ch. VII, 161.

**ban(n)isters** *balusters*. Occasionally used in the singular in the same meaning. The spelling with single *n* is the usual one. The word is a corruption of *balusters*. In the singular meaning of *upright post*, the form *baluster* is the ordinary one.

- i. Here, leaning over the *banister*, I cried out suddenly [etc.]. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 27.  
"Is it — is it for the child?" cried Lady Ann, reeling against the *banister*. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. IX, 114.  
ii. She kept looking over the *banisters* to see if she could get a glimpse of Mr. Rochester, CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XIII, 141.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



As I went up and down that darkling stair, the ghosts of the Prior children peeped out from the *banisters*. THACK., *Love's the Widower*, Ch. II, 25.

**bays** = *leaves or sprigs of the bay-tree or bay-laurel woven into a wreath or garland to reward a conqueror or a poet*. Also occasionally in the singular in the same meaning.

- i. The gain of Civil wars will not allow *Bay* to the Conqueror's Brow. COWLEY.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. Your *bays* may hide the baldness of your brows. BYRON, *Don Juan*, Dedic., VII. Murray, we are told, might have been an Ovid, but he preferred to be lord chief justice, and to wear ermine instead of *bays*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIII, 659.

**beads** — a) *rosary*; b) *string of beads* for the neck. *Bead* (archaically *bede*) in its original sense of *prayer* occurs as a singular in *to bid a (his, etc.) bead*; mostly as a plural in *to say one's beads*. With distinct reference to the use of the rosary we find *bead* as a plural also in the expressions *to tell or count one's beads*.

- i. \* He seeks a rocky cell,—Like hermit poor to bid his *bead*. SCOTT, *Bridal of Trierman*, III, iv.
- \*\* To fetch the priest... | To bury her and say her *bede*. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, I, 1, 152<sup>1)</sup>.
- ii. Do they wear *beads*? She cannot find her *beads*. MURRAY.
- iii. All the people *said their beads* in a perfect silence. BURNET, *Hist. Ref.*, II, 55.<sup>1)</sup> He *counts his beads*, and spends his holy zeal. J. BARLOW, *Conspir. Kings*, 78.<sup>1)</sup>

**beginnings** = *initial stages* (in a person's career). The singular form with the same meaning appears occasionally.

- i. Out of this humble *beginning* sprang... that great institution now housed in the Royal Exchange. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3810, 621.
  - ii. They have fought their way up from humble *beginnings* to the front rank. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVIII, 568a.
- The tale may have been invented to sharpen the contrast between his high achievements and his humble *beginnings*. Introd. to 'The Merch. of Ven.'<sup>4</sup> (Clar. Press).

**boards** = *stage*.

This general officer had written one or two comedies, which were still acted on the London *boards*. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VII, 129.

Molière and his contemporaries had lived their lives on the *boards*. ANDREW LANG, *Ten.*, Ch. VIII, 170.

**bonds** = *bondage*.

I may be my own master before I get into the *bonds* of matrimony. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. II, 95.

Some men are weary of the *bonds* of love. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Paradise*, *Atalanta's Race*, 36b.

Compare: There is one great *bond* between all races and between all nations. T. P.'s *Christm. Numb.* of 1911, 2b.

**boots** = a) *instrument of torture*, b) *servant in hotels who cleans the boots*. Also in certain compounds, such as *clumsy-boots*, *lazy-boots*, *sly-boots*, *smooth-boots*, in which it stands for *fellow*, *person*.

- i. He (Monmouth) tried to throw the blame on others, particularly on Argyle, who would rather have put his legs into the *boots* than have saved his own life by such baseness. MAC. *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 189.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

ii. I'm the *boots* as b'longs to the house. DICK., *Sketches*.

No *boots* admires and envies me. Id., *Uncom. Trav.*, Ch. I, 11.

iii. You're the most creasing and tumbling *Clumsy-boots* of a packer. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*.<sup>1)</sup>

**brains** = a) *the nervous system contained in the skull when not considered as part of the organic system: a dish of brains*; b) *intellectual power*. *Brain* as a singular is chiefly used in two ways: a) as an ordinary object noun to denote the nervous substance in the skull as part of the animal organism. In this case it may be preceded by the indef. art. and be pluralized like any other object-noun: *a brain, ten brains* (Comp. *mane*); β) as a material noun: *brain is heavier than water*.

Also in denoting intellectual power, some writers prefer the singular.

When by the word is meant the centre of sensation, the organ of thought, etc. the popular language prefers the plural, the dignified language the singular.

The plural is regular in many phrases, such as *to dash (knock) out a person's brains, to blow out (any) one's brains*.

The singular is regular in the phrases *to have anything (music, gambling, any object of admiration or antipathy) on the brain* (= to be crazy on the subject of), *to turn one's brain* (= to render giddy, to bewilder, to render vain or imprudent).

Usage is divided as to the phrases *to beat (busy, cudgel, drag, melt out, puzzle, rack) one's brain(s)* (= to exert oneself in thought or contrivance); also in the phrase *to crack one's brain(s)* (= to render oneself insane); but the plural is more common than the singular.

*Brains* in the sense of intellectual power is construed now as a plural, now as a singular. The use of the singular form of the indefinite numerals would, however, seem to be the rule: *much (little) brains*. Compare also Ch. XXVI, 16.

i. \* He fired, over the boy's head, exactly in the very spot where the tall man's *brain* would have been, had he been there instead. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 165.  
The *brain* of a porpoise is quite wonderful for its mass. HUXLEY, *Darwiniana*, Ch. V, 176.

It may be safely said that an average European child of four years old has a brain twice as large as that of an adult Gorilla. HUXLEY, *Man's Place in Nature*, Ch. II, 107.

The human *brain* is the most marvellous machine in the world. Rev. of Rev., CCXX, 390a.

\*\* *Brain* is heavier than water. Ib.

\*\*\* She has fascination, resource, *brain*. Mrs. WARD, *Marc*, I, Ch. III, 29.

He's got an unusual *brain* and a wonderful memory. Id., *David Grieve*, I, 70.  
In the coming day *Brain* is to stand above Dollars. ANDREW CARNEGIE (Rev. of Rev., CCV, 28).

\*\*\*\* I hasten to fulfil an important duty — that of giving the productions of a sublime genius to the world . . . as they sprang, living and warm from his heart and *brain*. Mrs. SHELLEY, *Pref. to First Col. Edition*, 1839.

Men who are not perplexed overmuch by fatigue of the *brain*. THACK., *Van Fair*, II, Ch. VIII, 81.

Suddenly an idea mingled with the alcoholic fumes that disturbed his *brain*. BRET HARTE, *Outcasts*, 24.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

(If) he should sorrow o'er my state | And marvel what possess'd my *brain*.  
TEN., In Memoriam, XIV, iv.

He paced restlessly up and down the room with his *brain* on fire. ANSTEY,  
Vice Versa, Ch. II, 30.

\*\*\*\* Zounds! the girl's mad! — her *brain's* turned by reading. SHER., Riv.,  
IV, 1, (261).

If they (sc. the Bells) said anything, they said this, until the *brain* of Toby  
reeled. DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, I, 36.

When a gentleman is *cudgelling his brain* to find any rhyme for 'sorrow' besides  
'borrow' and 'to-morrow', his woes are nearer at an end than he thinks for.  
THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XV, 147.

He *cudgels his brain* into framing illustrations which he takes for proofs. LESLIE  
STEPHEN, G. Eliot, Ch. VIII, 117.

The lithe, thin-lipped Countess is *racking her small brain* for caressing words  
and charming exaggerations. G. ELIOT, Scenes, I, Ch. II, 28.

He was *racking his brain* for some excuse by which to draw Stephen away.  
EDNA LYALL, Don., II, 150.

Sigrid *racked her brain* to think of some way of making money. Id., A Hardy  
Norseman, Ch. XVIII, 163.

Mr. Balfour *has the Irish on the brain*, and we need not attach serious importance  
to what he says when he sees green. Westm. Gaz., No. 5283, 1b.

He may sometimes have been . . . derided . . . as a man *afflicted with postal  
reform on the brain*. Times, No. 1831, 89b.

- ii. \* As the result of the careful weighing of more than 900 human *brains*, Professor  
Wagner states that one-half weighed between 1200 and 1400 grammes. HUXLEY,  
Man's Place in Nature, Ch. II, 166.

\*\* His skull was the great blue vault of Immensity, and the *brains* of it became  
the clouds. CARLYLE, Hero Worship, 18.

\*\*\* At the bottom a calf's tongue and *brains*. — Let your *brains* be knocked  
out, my good sir, I don't like them. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, II.

Dead as the stones on which her *brains* and blood were scattered. CH. BRONTË,  
Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXVI, 527.

\*\*\*\* Are we to expect a heavy dragoon with strong desires and small *brains* to  
become prudent all of a sudden? THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 164.

You have got more *brains* in your little finger than any baronet's wife in the  
county. Id., I, Ch. XV, 158.

She's as stuck-up as if her *brains* had made the money, and not his. LLOYD,  
North. Eng., 118.

*Brains* without practical experience will go farther than practical experience  
without *brains*. JOHN STUART MILL.

\*\*\*\*\* She did not pester their young *brains* with too much learning. THACK.,  
Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 164.

When she spoke, he brought all the force of his *brains* to listen. Id., I, Ch.  
XVI, 165.

There was more stimulus in the air than such *brains* as Daddy's could rightly  
stand. Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve, I, 273.

\*\*\*\*\* *Cudgel thy brains* no more about it. HamI., V, 1, 62.

I shall *knock your brains out*, if you have any. GAY, Beggar's Opera, I.  
It was a mercy of God you did not *knock your brains out* against some post in  
your career. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XVIII, 121.

They are *melting their brains out*, this hot day, to guess at the riddle. LYTTON,  
Rienzi, I, Ch. IX, 55.

Give your *brains a racking*. BROWNING, Pied. Piper, 29. (with which  
compare: It's easy to bid one *rack one's brain*. Id., 38.)

Often did he *rack his brains* for some means of cheering the 'débutant'. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XVI, 132.

The old man was *racking his brains* for some argument. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. IV, 18*b*.

\*\*\*\*\* *Brains* were not everything, though, of course, brains counted. And at any time he would back the man with greater force of character and *fewer brains* against the man with *more brains* and less force of character. BONAR LAW (*Times*). Madam has far too *much brains* to be taken in by that vapouring vain little villain. (?) Mad. Leroux, Ch. XIII.

We have never regarded him as having *much brains*. II. Lond. News, No. 3816, 894*a*.

**breakers** = *heavy ocean waves which break violently into foam against a rocky coast or in passing over reefs or shallows*. Sometimes the singular is used collectively.

i. Across the boundless east we drove, | Where those long swells of *breaker* sweep | The nutmeg rocks and isles of clove. TEN., *The Voyage*, V.  
Following up | And flying the white *breaker*, daily left | The little footprint daily wash'd away. *Ib.*, *Enoch Arden*, 21.

ii. Suddenly we heard a shout of '*Breakers* ahead!' and every one turned pale. BEERBOHM.<sup>1)</sup>

**brows** — a) *head*; b) *countenance*. In poetical language also used for *eyebrows*. The singular *brow*, the literary word for *forehead*, seems to be likewise used loosely for the head in general.

i. And many a wizard *brow* bleach'd on the walls. TEN., *Merl. and Viv.*, 595.

ii. \* And round the champion's *brows* were bound | The crown that Druidess had wound | Of the green laurel-bay. SCOTT, *Brid. of Triermain*, III, xxxix.  
And he laid | His *brows* upon the drifted leaf and dreamed. TEN., *Last Tourn.*, 405.

Then Annie with her *brows* against the wall | Answered [etc.]. *Id.*, *Enoch Arden*, 313.

Then, those two brethren slowly with bent *brows* | Accompanying, the sad chariot-bier | Past like a shadow thro' the field. *Id.*, *Lanc. and El.*, 1131.

I sat up in the bed and pressed my hands to my throbbing *brows*. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. II, 23.

\*\* Though all things foul would wear the *brows* of grace, | Yet grace must still look so. Macb., IV, 3, 23.

A heavy thunder-cloud gathering on his *brows*. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XI, 217.

\*\*\* But under her black *brows* a swarthy one | Laugh'd shrilly. TEN., *Last Tourn.*, 216.

**cards** = *cardplaying* (19*d*). Also used as a plurale tantum in certain figurative expressions, such as *to play one's cards well* (*badly*, etc.), *to throw (fling) up one's cards*, *to show one's cards*, *it is on the cards* (= within the range of probability).

i. You might sooner tear a pension out of the hands of a courtier, a fee from a lawyer, a pretty woman from a looking-glass, or any woman from *cards*. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, I, 1.

ii. It was quite *on the cards* that he was to be raised to the Upper House. MURRAY.  
An invasion of England was at least *on the cards*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IX, 119.

It is quite *on the cards* that we may never spend another hour together. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVII, 111.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



**chains** = *fetters* (19a).

**charges** — *expenses*. According to MURRAY in this application archaic. Note especially the collocation *at* (rarely *upon*, or *on*) *any one's charges* (= Dutch *op kosten van*).

i. *Charges* to be deducted. Including (the) *charges*.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* They had a magnum of claret at dinner at the club that day *at Pen's charges*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 339.

They are welcome to make merry *at my charges*. *Id.*, Lovel the Widower.

\*\* One that serves as a volunteer in the wars *upon his own charges*. BAILEY.<sup>2)</sup>

**checkers** = *draughts* (19d). Used especially by American writers.

**cheers** = *shouts of encouragement, welcome, approbation or congratulation*. He drew down storms of *cheers*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXI, 184a. (= Dutch: *oogstte stormachtigen bijval*.)

Lord Roberts was received with hearty *cheers*. *Times*.

**chops** (also, less frequently, *chaps*) = *the jaws as united forming the biting and devouring apparatus*.

Open your *chaps* again. *Temp.*, II, 2, 89.

If thou hadst as much brains in thy skull as beard on thy *chops*. SWIFT.<sup>2)</sup>

**circumstances** = a) *external conditions prevailing at the time*; b) *condition or state as to material welfare, means*. In the first application occasionally singular in the same meaning, even where the Dutch idiom would lead one to expect the plural; frequently preceded by the prepositions *in* or *under*. Observe also that owing to the frequent vagueness of its meaning the plural often discards the article. (Ch. XXXI, 57.)

In the second meaning usually preceded by some defining adjective: *in easy (good, reduced, straitened, etc.) circumstances*.

i. If that had ever been the case, her father would never have brought me in *this circumstance*. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, II.

He has strayed or has been forced into political life by irresistible *circumstance*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 417, 617c.

He is hemmed in by *circumstance*, by interests, and above all, by friends. *Id.*, 618c.

ii. Have you no tenderness, my dear Lucy, to see your husband *in these circumstances*. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, II, 1.

*Under these circumstances* I dare not press your visit here. MRS. GASK, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 121.

That was an act that seemed pardonable *under the circumstances*. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, 6.

\* His family, though ancient, was *in depressed circumstances*. Pref. to John Gay's *Beggar's Opera*.

Her father had once been an opulent farmer, but was *reduced in circumstances*. WASH. IRVING, *Sketches*, XXX, 323.

Are you aware how small his means are, and of the *straitened circumstances* of his widow? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 390.

He had become fairly *easy in his circumstances*. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 39.

**colours** = a) *coloured symbols of colleges, clubs, jockeys, etc., rosettes and ribbons worn as party badges*; b) *flag*. In the second meaning preceded by *stand* or *pair* when the indefinite article or a numeral precedes (36). Instead of a *stand (pair) of colours* modern military use has *a colour*; *a colour* is also occasionally met with.

In a transferred sense *colours* denotes the army in such expressions as *to serve with the colours*, *to join the colours*, *to desert one's colours*. Furthermore we find *colours* in a great many phrases, a) *to come off with flying colours*, *to stick to one's colours*, *to nail one's colours to the mast* (= to adopt an unyielding attitude), *to hang out false colours*, etc., b) *to cast (put) false (lively, etc.) colours upon*, *to paint in bright (dark, etc.) colours*, *to see a thing in its true colours*, *to be in excellent colours*.

i. To lose *a colour* in battle was considered a great dishonour. Graph.

Her Majesty presenting a state *colour* to the Scots Guards at Windsor Castle. Times.

ii. It still bears on its *colours* the proud motto 'Primus in Indis'. Mac., Clive, (518b). When the Prussian infantry wavered, the stout old marshal snatched the *colours* from an ensign, and, waving *them* in the air, led back his regiment to the charge. Mac., Fred., (689a).

Presentation of new *colours* at the Duke of York's school. Graph.

\*\* What! a soldier stay here! to look like an old *pair of colours* in Westminster Hall, ragged and rusty! FARQUHAR, *The Constant Couple*, I, 1.

He began life rather brilliantly with a *pair of colours*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 58.

Fifty *stand of colours* fell into the hands of the Prussians. Mac., Fred., (693a).

\*\*\* An author compares a ragged coin to a tattered *colours*. ADDISON.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\*\* The Russian demand is for 36000 men with a service of five years with the *colours*. Times.

Special inducements have been offered to Reservists to rejoin *the colours*. Id.

They joined for 12 years with the *colours*. Ib.

\*\*\*\*\* Mrs. Chick had *naild her colours to the mast*. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. V, 35. They gallantly determined *to nail their colours to the mast*, and to go through Darkness Lane rather than fail in loyalty to their friend. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 192.

He stood for a vacant fellowship and got it *with flying colours*. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 93.

\*\*\*\*\* The armourer, indeed, while he heard the lips that were dearest to him *paint his character in such unfavourable colours*, had laid his head down on the table. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. II, 34.

He would have liked to protest and declare himself there and then *in his true colours*. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. III, 59.

Dr. James, the new President of the College, who took the chair, showed himself *in excellent colours*. Truth, No. 1802, 74b.

**conditions** = *circumstances* (a). Like *circumstances* frequently found preceded by the prepositions *in* and *under*, especially the latter.

The total eclipse of the moon was observed in Dublin on Tuesday night *under exceptionally favourable conditions*. Times.

Hereford once more had its musical festival, this time *under happier conditions than heretofore*. Graph.

What might not be the development of the suburban population *in such new conditions*. The *conditions* have changed in the interval. Graph.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *colour*, 7.

**contents** — *thing contained, things treated of in a writing or document.* The singular form is now the rule in the sense of *containing capacity, space, area, extent*, especially in the collocation *solid content*. Note also (*table of contents*). The pronouns referring to *contents* are sometimes singular.

- i. \* Gaugers glancing at a cask to tell its '*content*', as its holding capacity is officially styled. *Chamb. Journ.*<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Side by side with, and in close relation to, the study of the *content*, in the senior classes, the study of structure may proceed. WILLIAM MACPHERSON, *Princ. and Meth. in the Study of Eng. Lit.*, Ch. II, 24.

in these classes we cannot hope to gain for the pupils all that is to be derived from the study of literature: their attention is to be directed mainly to the *content* of what is read. *Ib.*, 26. (Thus throughout the book.)

- ii. \* (He) can tell you the cubic *contents* of anything in no time. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. IV, 212.

\*\* The *contents* were less striking than the title. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 54.

The most precious *contents* of the purse were two half-crowns folded together in a bit of paper. *Dick.*, *Co.p.*, Ch. V, 32a.

The *contents* of the Company's warehouses were seized. *Mac.*, *Clive*.

\*\*\* There are some shrewd *contents* in yon same paper, | That *steals* the colour from Bassanio's cheek. *Merch.*, III, 2, 246.

\*\*\*\* An earnest conjuration from the king, | ... That, on the view and knowing of *these contents*, | ... He should the bearers put to sudden death. *Hamlet*, V, 2, 44.

She had formed no expectation of its (sc. the letter's) *contents*. But such as *they* were, it may well be supposed how eagerly she went through *them*. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XXXVI, 202.

The epistle was in his friend's handwriting, and *these* were its *contents*. *Dick.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XI, 183.

\*\*\*\*\* He stirred the *contents* and rolled it about in the glass. WALT. BESANT, *The World* went very well then, Ch. I, 6.

\*\*\*\*\* After the body of the volume is completed, the *contents* sometimes follow next. *J. Johnson*.<sup>1)</sup>

**costs** *expenses of litigation or other legal transaction.* The singular is almost regularly used except in the legal meaning above and in the phrase *at all costs* (= *at any cost* — French *coûte que coûte*). Note especially *at any one's cost* (= Dutch *op iemands kosten*), as distinguished from *at any one's expense* (= Dutch *tot iemands nadeel*); *at one's own cost* (= *at one's own expense* — Dutch *op zijn eigen kosten*); *at the cost of something* (= Dutch *ten koste van iets*); *at little cost* = *at little expense* (= Dutch *met geringe kosten*); *to any one's cost* (= Dutch *tot iemands schade*). Compare also: *at any one's charges* (see above). For further details see SATTLER, E. S., X.

- i. \* The *cost* of his victories increased the pleasure with which he contemplated them. *Mac.*, *Pitt*, (309a).

Germany would have much to gain by a successful war, but the *cost*, both in the lives of men and in treasure, would be enormous. *Graph*.

The new water-works have been built at a *cost* of £ 20,000. *Il. Lond. News*.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\* The dinner so hospitably offered by the Colonel, was gladly accepted and followed by many entertainments *at the cost of* that good-natured friend. *Thack.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. V, 49.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY. — <sup>2)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., X.

The crofters want the right of every man to live idle *at the cost of* the estate. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.

\*\*\* She had been living a month *at her own cost*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XIII, 135.

\*\*\*\* To increase the numbers of a nation *at the cost of* common health or comfort. RUSKIN, *Munera P.*, 2.<sup>1</sup>)

\*\*\*\*\* It wears out fast, as I can tell *to my cost*. MARTINEAU, *Demerara*, III, 41.<sup>1</sup>)

- ii. \* Do I understand that the whole estate is found to have been absorbed in *costs*? DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXV, 533.

His friends in Leadenhall Street proposed to reimburse him the *costs* of his trial. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (655*a*).

Four others were severally fined 20 s. and *costs*. Graph.

\*\* His rustic patrons are apt to consider the *costs* of schooling a grievous burden. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, (346).

\*\*\* The Government will carry through, without wavering and *at all costs*, the policy in South Africa they have laid down. Times.

Water *at all costs* must be had. CON. DOYLE, *Siege of Sunda Gunge*.

**courses** — a) *points of the compass*; b) *ways of action, proceedings, personal conduct or behaviour*.

- i. Lay her two *courses* to the wind. Cornhill Mag.

- ii. Since the departure of Becky Sharp, that old wretch had given himself up entirely to his bad *courses*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIII, 358.

Mr. A was getting into bad *courses*. Id., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VII, 85.

**crackers** in the compound *nutcrackers* (19, c).

**cups** — *potations, drunken revelry*, especially in the phrases *in one's cups*, *over one's cups*.

\* There is the jolly Prince, shrewd, selfish, scheming, loving his *cups* and his ease. THACK., *The Four Georges*, I, 17.

They were merry, but no riot came out of their *cups*. Ib., III, 68.

\*\* When *in his cups*, he was especially hospitable. Id., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 376.

I'll never get in your way when you are *in your cups*. Id., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. VI, 60.

Many of the wags derided the poor fellow *in his cups*. Ib., II, Ch. XI, 242.

\*\*\* They affect, dull souls, the knowledge of the past, play the patron, and misquote Latin *over their cups*. LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 11.

What is the grandest entertainment at Windsor, compared to a night at the club *over its modest cups*? THACK., *The Four Georges*, III, 67.

**(the) Customs** = a) *(the) duties levied upon imports*, b) *(the) Department of the Civil Service employed in levying these duties*. The singular is used to denote the money to be paid by way of duty.

- i. The handkerchiefs will be put in some friend's pocket, not to pay *custom*. SWIFT.<sup>1</sup>)

- ii. \* Collectors of *customs* and port-duties. ARNOLD.<sup>1</sup>)

\*\* Officers of the *Customs*.

**damages** = *value estimated in money of something lost or withheld; the sum of money claimed or adjudged to be paid in compensation for loss or injury sustained*.

*Damages*, gentleman — heavy *damages* — is the only punishment with which you can visit him. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 31.



And for *those damages* she now appeals to an enlightened, a high-minded, a right-feeling jury. *Ib.*

The jury find for the plaintiff with £ 20 *damages*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. XXIV, 428. The defendants capitulated and consented to pay *damages* to the extent of £ 50.000 plus costs. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXII, 123a.

**deserts** = *that which is deserved*. Especially frequent in certain phrases, such as *to find (get, have, meet with) one's deserts*, *to come by one's deserts*, *to reward a man according to his deserts*. In other combinations and shades of meaning the singular is frequent enough.

- i. Use every man *after his desert*, and who should 'scape whipping? *Hamlet*, II, 2, 554.

A man who loves only himself, without regard to friendship and *desert*, merits the severest blame. HUME, *Essays*, III, 23.

Some will always mistake the degree of their own *desert*. JOHNSON, *Rambler*. Pitt having come to his kingdom, and having by good luck, or *desert* rather, as he considered, assumed almost all the fortune [etc.]. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. V, 55.

Surely a few pin-pricks were her *desert*. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. VII, 53b.

- ii. \* In the spring of 1713, Swift began to realise that there was no prospect of overcoming the resistance which his *deserts* and his hopes encountered at Court. D. LAING PURVES, *Life of Swift*, 22.

\*\* The wicked are wicked no doubt, and they go astray and they fall, and they come by *their deserts*; but who can tell the mischief which the very virtuous do? THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XX, 218.

Ah, good neighbour, | There should be something fierlier than fire | To yield them *their deserts*. TEN., *Queen Mary*, V, 4, (647b).

I knew that the last and guiltiest of Antony March's murderers had *found his deserts*. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. XV, 193.

All was being done *to bring the guilty to their deserts*. *Ib.*, Ch. X, 114.

**devotions** = *worship*, '*prayers*' (— Dutch *geestelijke oefeningen*). Occasionally met with in the singular in, apparently, the same meaning.

- i. Conachar lived with him in his cell, sharing his *devotion* and privations, till death removed them in succession. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXVI, 379.
- ii. She invited them to join in her *devotions*. *Ib.*, 376.

She was scrupulous in her *devotions*, good to the poor, never knowingly did anybody a wrong. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IV, 34.

That half-hour in which you perform your *devotions*. PUNCH, *Life's Little Difficulties*.

He was at his *devotions*. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

**doors** = *dwelling-house*. In this meaning especially common in the collo-cations (*with*)in-doors, out of doors (— *without doors*), *to pack out of doors*, *to go from a man's doors*, *to enter into a man's doors*.

You have your choice — to marry her, or *pack out of doors* without any fortune. GOLDS., *Good-nat. Man*, I.

Turning her out of doors. JANE AUSTEN, *Northanger Abbey*, Ch. II, 8.

Sir Pitt swore that no governess should ever enter into his doors again. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIII, 359.

In the course of the day Miss Osborne heard her father give orders that that meddling scoundrel, Captain Dobbin, should never be admitted *within his doors* again. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 254.

His fame out of doors depended entirely on the report of those who were *within the doors*. MAC., *Pitt*, (293b).

Let your poor wife's only brother *go from your doors* without a penny in the world. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 375.

You may swear at it and kick it *out of doors*, but next time you will remember that cats have claws. Rev. of Rev., CXCVII, 486b.

**drains** = *dregs from which the liquid has been drained*.

My heart aches, and a drowsy numbness pains | My sense, as though of hemlock I had drunk, | Or emptied some dull opiate to the *drains*. KEATS, *Ode to a Nightingale*, I.

**draughts** (19, *d*).

**drawers** = *a) under-hose worn next to the skin* (19, *a*); *b) chest of drawers*.

I set out my silver dressing-apparatus upon the ragged cloth on the *drawers*. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 55.

**duties** = *regular actions required by one's position, profession, religion*, etc.

Having thus discharged his devotional *duties*, he annexed, in the same diary, the following remarkable writing. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 251.

He had undertaken public *duties* for which he was ill qualified. TROL., *Thacker*, Ch. I, 44.

I resolved to wait in darkness until Mr. Jay returned to his *duties*. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. I, 7.

**effects** = *goods and chattels, movable property*. Also used in a wider meaning, as in the phrases *no effects*, written by bankers on dishonoured cheques when the drawer has no funds in the bank; *to leave no effects* (= to leave nothing for one's heirs). Note also the common *personal effects* (= personal luggage as distinguished from *merchandise*).

With these he lived successively a week at a time; thus going the rounds of the neighbourhood, with all his *effects* tied up in a cotton handkerchief. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII.

The bankers declined to cash the Captain's draft, simply writing the words '*No effects*' on the paper. THACK.<sup>1)</sup>

The people escaped from the town with their *effects*. WEBST., *Dict*.

He died leaving no *effects*. MURRAY.

Sale of household *effects*. *lb*.

The contents of the trunks were insured as '*personal effects*'. *lb*.

**elements** = *rudiments of learning, first principles of an art or science*.

Calculation and geometry and all the other *elements* of instruction. JOWETT.<sup>1)</sup>

Euclid's *elements* were first used in the school of Alexandria. LARDNER.<sup>1)</sup>

**environments** = *surroundings, sphere*. Occasionally in the singular in approximately the same meaning.

i. To the general public a title, an *environment* and a little action would add much to the interest. PUNCH.

The king prominently reproduces the defects of his *environment*. Rev. of Rev., CCXI, 20b.

ii. Let us have a look at the life and the *environments* of the child. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 21.

In the more generous and ampler *environments* of the Colonies they might become respectable citizens. TIMES.

**Estates** = *assembly of the governing classes or their representatives* (= Dutch *Staten*).

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

The new law had been ratified by the *Estates* of all the kingdoms and principalities which made up the great Austrian monarchy. MAC., FRED., (665a).

The whole nation is represented in the Government by what is called the "three *Estates* of the Realm". ANNA BUCKL., *Our Nat. Institutions*, 9.

(The) *Estimates* = (the) *accounts presented annually to Parliament, showing the probable amount of expenditure on the several administrative departments for the current year* (= Dutch *Begrooting*). Sometimes in the singular in the same meaning, especially after the indefinite article.

i. Every rixdollar of extraordinary charge was scrutinized by Frederic with a vigilance and suspicion such as Mr. Joseph Hume never brought to the examination of an army *estimate*. MAC., FRED., (673a).

ii. Warm debates took place on the *Estimates*. ID., PITT, (302a).

Mr. Balfour denied that anything which fell from him last year estopped the Government from presenting *the Estimates* in the form which they had selected. TIMES. (= de *Begrooting indienen*.)

We give this morning an abstract of the Army *Estimates* for 1889—1890. ID.

*expenses* = a) *items of outlay incurred by a person in the execution of any commission or duty; money paid to a person in reimbursement of these* (= Dutch *onkosten*); b) *expenditure* (= Dutch *uitgaven*).

The singular is ordinarily used in the meaning of amount of money to be expended in carrying out a plan (Dutch *kosten*); also in certain phrases, such are instanced by *at the (an) expense of 40 pounds; at a heavy (considerable, trifling, etc.) expense, or at some (little, much) expense I procured this article; He has been at (put to, brought to) a heavy (considerable, trifling, etc.) expense or He has been at (put to, brought to) little (some, much) expense to get everything right; at my father's (my own, etc.) expense or at the expense of my father, etc.; They laughed at his (your brother's, etc.) expense, or at the expense of your brother; to spare no expense.*

Usage is divided as to *to be at the expense(s) of* ( to defray the costs of) (MURRAY), *to go to the expense(s) of* ( to spend money (on, or in).

Except for certain collocations there is much vacillation in the choice of the number. See especially SATTLER, E. S. XII.

i. \* My finances were too weak to support the *expense* of hiring a horse. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. VIII, 43.

The *expense* of the war never entered into Pitt's consideration. MAC., PITT, (309a). Of the *expense* of civil government only a small *portion* was defrayed by the Crown. ID., Hist., Ch. III, 302.

\*\* Mrs. Norris had not the least intention of *being at any expense* whatever in her maintenance. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. I, 7.

The whole arrangement was *to bring very little expense* to anybody. IB., Ch. XIII, 135. Instead of contriving to gratify him *at little expense*, she gave her cook as high wages as they did at *Mansfield Park*. IB., Ch. III, 30.

They have also *at their own expense* made tours of Germany. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. V, 58.

*At a heavy expense* I procured the rods. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

After having up the whole basement, *at the expense* of 40 pounds, that nuisance was abated. IB.

I don't like to speak to your papa about it, my dear; he *has already been put to such expense*. IB.

You defend his veracity *at the expense* of his understanding. We had a laugh *at his expense*. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxford Dict.*

*Spare no expense*. PUNCH.

- ii. \* The king promised to contribute only twenty thousand pounds for architectural *expenses*. MAC., Hist., Ch. III, 302.

The *expenses* of his board and schooling were defrayed by his father in goods, not money. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V, 40.

In this case the *expenses* of brokerage are saved. ESC., England, Ch. VIII, 112. To form a correct estimate of the true amount of the management *expenses*. Lit. World.

He paid my *expenses*. He offered me £ 10 and *expenses*. FOWLER, Conc. Oxford Dict.

\*\* We sewed our money between the lining and waistbands of our breeches, except some loose silver for our immediate *expenses* on the road. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. VIII, 45.

To weather these two years, we retrenched our *expenses*. BURNS, Letter to Dr. Moore, 52a.

\*\*\* She *went to great expenses* in new gowns, and bracelets and bonnets. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 219.

He had written to ask the signor to come, and was *to be at all the expenses* of the affair. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XVI, 309.

**exports** = *exported articles*. Not infrequently found in the singular to denote a single article.

- i. The trade and commerce of Rio de Janeiro are very great, its principal *export* being coffee. Cassell's Conc. Cycl.

- ii. Our *exports* have been 'cabined, cribbed and confined' by hostile tariffs in every quarter of the globe. Times.

**(the) Fates** = *the Destinies or Parcae*.

And thou, fair cause of mischief, hear | The doom *thy Fates* demand. SCOTT, Brid. of Triermain, II, xxvi.

They cast lots for the farms as the fairest method, thus letting the *Fates* decide. Rev. of Rev., CCV, 29b.

We can but say that the *Fates* deal mercifully with him if he (sc. the Sultan) passes in silence to some place of safety. Westm. Gaz., No. 4983, 1b.

**features** — *form or mould of the various parts of the face combined, cast of countenance*. Also in the singular to denote the same meaning, especially in the older language.

- i. Doth my simple *feature* content you? As you like it, III, 3, 3. (Compare the answer: Your *features*! Lord warrant us! what *features*?)

He equalled him in refinement of *feature*. TROL.<sup>2</sup>).

- ii. As Dolf caught a distinct view of his person and *features*, he was struck with something that reminded him of the old man of the Haunted House. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 130).

**finances** — *pecuniary resources* (— Dutch geldmiddelen). The singular form is the rule to denote the management of (public) money, the science which concerns itself with the levying and application of revenue in a state, corporation, etc. (= Dutch geldelijk beheer, finantiewezen). But also the plural form often seems to convey the same meaning.

- i. The report which is first taken, is that of the committee of *finance*. ESCOTT, Eng., Ch. IV, 51.

His book is most useful in the account it gives of the steps which have been taken to reduce Egyptian *finance* to order. Lit. World.

This is fanaticism; it is certainly not *finance*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5036, 1b.

We are to give the House of Lords control of *finance* as well as of legislation. Id., 5207, 1b.



- ii. \* So much has Lalouette's luck drained my *finances* that [etc.]. THACK., Fitzb. Pap., Pref.

He increased his *finances* by taking pupils. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 44.

As to *finances* they were not making their fortune, but they had paid their way and something more. MRS. WARD, David Grieve, I, 286.

His *finances* were low. EDNA LYALL, Donovan, II, 156.

\*\* (He was) so clear in stating the most intricate matters, especially in the *finances*, that, whilst he was speaking, the most ignorant thought that they understood what they really did not. CHESTERFIELD (1001 Gems in prose, 210a).

While Danby was at the head of the *finances*, the creditors had received their dividends. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 284.

That load which pressed most heavily on the *finances* of the great continental states, was here scarcely felt. *Ib.*, 285.

Any departure from the simple rules of arithmetic and fact is found to land the *finances* of the country in a hopeless muddle. Westm. Gaz., No. 5036, 16c.

**floodgates**, in a figurative meaning.

The "Life of Wallace" poured a Scottish prejudice into my veins, which will boil along there till the *floodgates* of life shut in eternal rest. BURNS, Letter to Dr. Moore.

The *floodgates* were opened, and mother and daughter wept. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXVI.

**fortunes** = *that which is given to a person by fate or divine providence, lot*. Occasionally also in the singular in, apparently, the same sense. The plural is also the rule in the phrases *to seek (try, repair, stake) one's fortune(s)*. The plural is regular in *to tell fortunes* (— Dutch *waarszeggen*), the singular in the phrase *to tell a man his fortune*.

- i. \* The contract was made when we were both poor and content to be so, until, in good season, we could improve our wordly *fortune* by patient industry. DICK., Christ. Car., II, 50.

\*\* He leaves Stratford for London, there *to seek his fortune*. WALTER RALEIGH, Shakespeare, Ch. II, 42.

Send him out *to seek his fortune*. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 16a.

\*\*\* The Visier then demanded, if he could *tell his own Fortune*. Lond. Gaz.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. \* The sad *fortunes* of the Rev. Amos Barton. G. ELIOT, Scenes.

Pulteney had resigned a valuable place, and had followed the *fortunes* of Walpole. MAC., Pitt, (289b).

In an evil hour for his fame and *fortunes* he accepted the offer. *Ib.*, (301a).

This, when taken with the decline of his *fortunes* seems to indicate some evil evidence, probably drink, upon him. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb.

The *fortunes* of France were at the last extremity. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 583.

\*\* He must *repair his fortunes*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XI, 110.

My parents sent me out into the world to *seek my fortunes*. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 13b.

Bulgaria may decide *to stake her fortunes* in a gallant effort to liberate the enslaved province. Rev. of Rev., CCIV, 564a.

\*\*\* Ham was trying to collect a scheme of *telling fortunes* with the dirty cards. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 16b.

**fruits** = a) *vegetable products in general that are fit to be used as food by men and animals, also: fruits of the earth (ground); b) products, revenues.*

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

In the Authorised Version the word is, apparently, mostly singular when used in the first meaning. Thus in Numb. XIII, 26; Deut. XXVI, 2; Isaiah XXVII, 6. Not in Deut. XXXIII, 14; Psalm CVII, 37.

The singular is used, both as a collective noun and as a unit-noun with an ordinary plural, in the more limited sense of the edible succulent products of certain plants. Compare the Dutch *fruit* (= ooft) and *vruchten*.

The plural is the rule in certain combinations, such as *fruits and flowers*, *fruits and vegetables*, etc., also when a defining adjective precedes: *candied fruits*, *preserved fruits*, *syruped fruits*, etc. The trade distinguishes *green fruits* (= oranges, lemons, etc., gathered green and ripening on the way to destination) from *green fruit* (= apples, pears, etc. consumed in an unripe state); *dried fruits* (= dried figs, raisins, currants, etc.) from *dried fruit* (= evaporated apples, pears, etc.).

The plural is regular in the phrase *first-fruits*, which in its metaphorical meaning is, however, often construed as a singular, i. e. preceded by the indefinite article or a singular demonstrative pronoun.

The singular is the rarer form in the metaphorical meaning of products, in the collocation *to bear (yield) fruit*. See especially SATTLER, E. S., XII.

- i. \* Every tree that bringeth not forth good *fruit* is hewn down, and cast into the fire. Bible, Matth., VII, 19.

Or garden, tempting with forbidden *fruit*. POPE, Essay on Man, I, 9.

I see trees laden with ripening *fruit*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXIII, 303.

He strolls on, now lifting the gooseberry-tree branches to look at the *fruit*, large as plums. Ib.

The silly people take me for a saint, | And bring me offerings of *fruit and flowers*. TEN., St. Simeon Stylites, 127.

\*\* The rich man enjoyed the *fruit* of the poor man's labour. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., IV, Ch. VI, (199b).

The toil which stole from thee so many an hour, | Is ended — and the *fruit* is at thy feet. SHELLEY, Revolt, Ded., 16.

For manners are not idle, but the *fruit* | Of loyal nature, and of noble mind. TEN., Guin., 333.

Mr. Cremer has good reason to be proud of the *fruit* of his labours. Rev. of Rev., CXCIX, 2a.

\*\*\* These thoughts . . . might germinate and *bear fruit*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XVII, 197.

Sow the same seed of rapacious licence and oppression over again, and it will surely *yield* the same *fruit* according to its kind. DICK., Tale of Two Cities, III, Ch. XV, 410.

These principles will *bear fruit*. Rev. of Rev.

- ii. \* The Breton peasant can turn all the *fruits of the earth* to account. JEPHSON, Brittany, II. 1)

\*\* The birds eat the *fruits* of the surrounding trees. BATES. 1)

The *fruits* of some species of jungle-trees furnish a variety of poison. BALL. 1)

The very gold and silver fish, set forth among these choice *fruits*. Christm. Car. These orchard-tufts | Which at this season, with their unripe *fruits*, | Are clad in one green hue. WORDSW., Lines comp. a few miles above Tint. Ab., 12.

\*\*\* There Frederic amused himself by collecting rare *fruits and flowers*. MAC., Fred., (661b).

Negroes in these climates live principally upon *fruits and vegetables*. At the Year Round. 2)

1) MURRAY. 2) SATTLER, E. S., XII.

The *candied fruits* were so caked and spotted with molten sugar. Christm. Car. They fared sumptuously every day upon dainties — delicate jellies and *syruped fruits*. HOWELLS, (2).

*Green fruits* are entirely duty free. All the Year Round.<sup>1)</sup>

Officially, according to the customs lists, all fruit is divided into three parts — *dried fruits, green fruits* and nuts. Ib.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\*\* The value of the produce of the soil far exceeded the value of all the other *fruits* of human industry. MAC., Hist., Ch. III, 306.

I could wish that the *fruits* of my manhood were worthier of the tender and anxious pains bestowed upon my education in youth. LYTTON, Rienzi, Ded. Every day witnessed the *fruits* of their lawless warfare. Ib., I, Ch. II, 19.

The *fruits* of the victory were lost by a sudden appearance of Soult on the English line of advance. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. X, Sect. IV, 825.

\*\*\*\*\* Ye shall bring a sheaf of the *first-fruits* of your harvest unto the priest. Bible, Lev., XXIII, 10.

Keats died at the age of 26: we have, therefore, only the *first-fruits* of his genius. W. T. ARNOLD, Introd. to Keat's Hyperion.

As a *first-fruits* of this dedication [etc.]. Preface to Par. Lost (Clar. Press), 8.

The mayor and corporation-men appeared in full robes, with maces and tipstiffs, to do honour to *that first-fruits* of the Gospel in the West. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXXIX, 216b. (Compare: The scientist sat mutely enjoying the *first fruit* of his stupendous discovery. SAKI, (Westm. Gaz., No. 5167, 2c).

**functions** = *official duties*.

He took upon himself the *functions* of a lecturer. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 43.

**funds** a) *money at a person's disposal*; b) *stock of the national debt considered as a mode of investment*.

i. When he had no *funds*, he went on tick. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 25.

The knight who happens to be in *funds* at the time, prefers to kill the little girl. TROL., Thack., Ch. VI, 152.

ii. The *funds* fell. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 185.

We shall have our town and country mansion, and a hundred and thirty pounds in the *funds*. Id., Cox's Diary, Feb.

I succeeded to an income, which, being drawn from the *funds*, I was able to enjoy without responsibilities or anxiety. CONWAY, Called Back, Ch. I, 2.

**furies** = *avenging deities*.

He (sc. Surajah Dowlah) sat gloomily in his tent, haunted, a Greek poet would have said, by the *furies* of those who had cursed him with their last breath in the Black Hole. MAC., Clive, (518a).

**gains** *sums acquired by trade or in other ways, emoluments, profits, winnings, etc.*

No *gains* without pains. Prov.

If *gains* be sordid and lure filthy, where is the priest, the lawyer, the doctor, or the man of literature, who does not wish for dirty hands? TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 44.

**gardens** *ornamental grounds, used as a place of public resort, usually with some defining word*. Sometimes constructed as a singular, i. e. as the subject of a singular finite verb, and preceded by the indefinite article. The singular form is sometimes used in the same sense.

i. I had promised to go with him on the water to Spring-garden. Spectator, CCCLXXXIII.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XII.

- ii. \* And after we have been in the Park we can walk in *Kensington Gardens*.  
THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 28.  
I have just returned from my stroll in the *Botanical Gardens*. Scotsman.  
\*\* A natural *Zoological Gardens*. Lit. World.  
The *Zoological Gardens* was patronised by 21000 persons on Bank Holiday.  
Daily Telegraph.

**glasses** in the sense of *eye-glasses* (19, a).

**graces** = a) *goddesses of charm and beauty*; b) *attainments, accomplishments*. Also in the phrase *to be in a man's good graces* (= Dutch *bij iemand in de gratie staan*).

- i. "This cup to the *Graces*!" said Panda, and he thrice emptied his calyx. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. III, 18a.  
ii. She secretly o'erheard | Your daughter and her cousin much commend | The parts and *graces* of the wrestler. As you like it, II, 2, 13.  
To some kind of men | Their *graces* serve them but as enemies. Ib., II, 3, II.  
iii. He was pretty well in Miss Amory's *good graces*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. III, 33.  
Mrs. Hoggins was really desirous to be restored to Mrs. Jamieson's *good graces*. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XV, 291.  
He was without much difficulty received again into the *good graces* of Stella. D. LAING PURVES, *Life of Swift*, 29.

**grounds** — a) *enclosed portion of a land of considerable extent, surrounding or attached to a dwelling-house or other building, serving chiefly for ornament or recreation*; b) *particles deposited by a liquid in the bottom of the vessel containing it* (19, e).

Extensive *grounds* were also laid out around the place. PRESCOTT.<sup>1)</sup>  
One afternoon he chanced to meet me and Adèle in the *grounds*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XV, 369.

**Guards** = *household troops of the English army consisting of the Foot-guards, the Horse-guards and the Life-guards*. A single soldier belonging to the *Guards* is called a *Guardman*.

- i. The brigade of *Guards* will be destroyed; ought it not to fall back? KINGLAKE, *Crimea*, II, 351.<sup>1)</sup>  
ii. Jack the *Guardman* and La Tulipe of the Royal Bretagne are face to face. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIV, 685.

**heaps** = *large quantity* (= Dutch *een hoop, hoopen*).

Old Lobbs was well known to have *heaps* of money. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 151.  
You will have had *heaps* of opportunity. OSC. WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, I.  
I have given you *heaps* of opportunities. Ib., IV.

**heavens** a) *visible sky*, b) *realms or regions of space in which the heavenly bodies move*.

*Heaven* is also met with in the plural a) occasionally when denoting the abode of the Supreme Being and the blessed after death, β) rather frequently when denoting the Supreme Being, γ) in apostrophe, when its precise meaning is indistinct. It deserves notice that, except for the vocative, the plural is almost always preceded by the definite article. The singular, mostly with the definite article, is occasionally met with also in the sense of *sky*. (Ch. XXXI, 24a.)

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



- i. I will send to thee at the hour of eve, | When the curtains are drawn o'er *heaven*. (?), *The Eng. Merch. and the Saracen Lady* (Rainbow, II, 52).

The full power of the clear *heaven* was not equal to that of a cloudy sky at noon. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XIV, 114.

- ii. \* The moon was already bright in *the heavens*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IV, 31. The thunder may roar till it splits *the heavens*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXII, 240b.

As the sun sank low in *the heavens*, the breath came slower and slower. ANNIE BESANT, *Autob.*, 126.

Oh, I suppose *the heavens* must fall because you've lost your pretty plaything. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XX.

Maps of *the heavens*, planisphere of *the heavens*, globe of *the heavens*: MURRAY. A popular Guide to the study of *the Starry Heavens*. Advertisement.

\*\* The Planets and Comets move in *the Heavens* very freely. GREGORY, *Astron.* 1) The great circle of *the Heavens*, or the path which the earth traverses in its revolution around the sun, is called the ecliptic. Cassell's *Conc. Cycl.*

\*\*\* Thus *the heavens* and the earth were finished. Bible, *Gen.*, II, 1.

I can live down sin | And be his mate hereafter in *the heavens* | Before high God. TEN., *Guin.*, 633.

\*\*\*\* And she was ever praying *the sweet heavens* | To save her dear lord from any wound. TEN., *Ger. and Enid*, 44.

*The Heavens* themselves had called upon Spain to fulfil her heavenly mission. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIX, 218a.

\*\*\*\*\* *Heavens* make our presence and our practices | Pleasant and helpful to him. Haml., II, 2, 38.

*Heavens* avert it. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, II, 2, (269).

\*\*\*\*\* *Heavens!* it is the Lord Adrian di Castello! BULWER, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VI, 47. But, *good-heavens!* such a figure, in such a place; a pious, self-respecting, miserably infirm and pleased old man telling such a tale! WORDSWORTH, *Letters*.

**holidays** = *vacation*. Often used in the singular in the same meaning. (Ch. XXXI, 39.)

- i. The last day of my *holiday*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 3.

Lucy shall have *holiday*. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, III, 275.

In November he took a *holiday*. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. IV, 78.

She's entitled to a week's *holiday*. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, I, 276.

- ii. Blair spent one summer *holidays* with his mother, Lady Mary, at Spa. SOUTHEY.<sup>1)</sup>

You have devoted your month's *holidays* to your aunt. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 5. (With which compare: During my month's *holiday*. *Ib.*, Ch. I, 2.)

**honours** — a) marks or manifestations of high regard; b) special distinction gained, in a University or other examination, for proficiency in scholarship beyond that required to pass the examination; c) decorations, ornaments; d) the highest trumps in certain games of cards. In the first meaning *honours* is very common in the expressions *to do the honours*, *the last (funeral) honours*, *military honours*, *honours of war*. In the meaning given under c) it is chiefly found in poetical language.

- i. \* At home *honours* and rewards awaited him. MAC., *Clive*, (525a).

He never visited Cawnpore; the reason being, it is believed, that he would not have been received with princely *honours*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 184.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

\*\* George *did the honours* with a princely air. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXVI, 275.

He assisted the captain in *doing the honours* of the princely meal. Miss BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. II, 19.

As soon as the prince Facilidas had paid the *last honours* to his father. BRUCE.<sup>1)</sup> Their *funeral honours* claimed, and asked their quiet graves. DRYDEN.<sup>2)</sup>

His remains were buried on the following day with *military honours* by his brother volunteers. W. GUNNYON, Biographical Sketch of Burns, 49.

She capitulated, or rather marched out with the *honours of war*. TROL.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. A graduate of the University of Cambridge who had taken *honours* in the Mathematical Tripos. F. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. V, 98.

Miss Pankhurst has taken her degree with *honours* in law at Manchester University. Rev. of Rev., CXCIX, 8a.

- iii. The sire then shook the *honors* of his head. DRYDEN.<sup>2)</sup>

The woods, in scarlet *honors* bright. COWPER, Task, I, 321.<sup>1)</sup>

- iv. The *honours* were divided, but the state, as by this time its habit was, took the odd trick. MAITLAND.<sup>1)</sup>

**horrors** = *a kind of disease* (19, c).

**hours** = a) *stated time of occupation or duty*; b) *habitual time of getting up and going to bed, especially the latter*; c) *seven stated times of the day appointed for prayer (also the prayers or offices appointed to be said at these times, and a book containing these)*. In the two first meanings preceded by a defining word. In the third meaning *hours* = canonical hours. The plural is also regular in the *small hours* (= 1,2, etc. a. m.).

- i. After *office hours* he goes for a ride. MURRAY.

- ii. Their *regular hours* stupefy me. SHER., Rivals, I, 1.

I keep *early hours*. Mrs. S. EDWARDS.<sup>1)</sup>

- iii. In the Church of Rome the *canonical hours* begin with vespers. Hook.<sup>1)</sup>

A nun saying her *hours*. BARING GOULD.<sup>1)</sup>

Illuminated *hours*, and golden missals. DIXON.<sup>1)</sup>

- iv. Both these gifts inevitably (attached), as they believed, to all unlucky infants of either gender, born towards the *small hours* on a Friday night. DICK., Cop., Ch. I, 1b.

**hulks** = *dismantled ship used as a prison*.

Rather than trade upon this secret of Amory's I would go and join my father-in-law at the *hulks*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXIII, 359.

**hustings** = *temporary platform from which, previous to the Ballot Act of 1872, the nomination of candidates for Parliament was made, and on which these stood while addressing the electors*. Sometimes preceded by the indefinite article.

\* An unpopular candidate had frequently to beat a hasty retreat from the *hustings*. S. C. HALL.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* One thing the stupidest multitude at a *hustings* can do. CARLYLE.<sup>1)</sup>

A better friend of Church never stood on a *hustings*. LYTTON, My Novel.<sup>3)</sup>

The members were nominated on an open *hustings*, exposed to the disturbances of two contending mobs. ANNA BUCKL., Our Nat. Institutions, 24.

**imports** — *commodities imported from abroad*. Not infrequently used in the singular when one article is referred to.

1) MURRAY. — 2) WEBSTER. — 3) STORM, Eng. Phil., 686.

- i. Your *import* is your own food; as much your own, as that you raise . . . out of your own soil. BURKE.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. We are not going to ruin because our *imports* exceed our exports. Times.
- indentures** = *contract by which an apprentice is bound to the master who undertakes to teach him a trade; also contract by which a person binds himself to service in the colonies, etc.* Note to take up one's indentures — to receive them back on completion of service. Not infrequently used in the singular in the same sense.
- i. Mr. W. C. D. Whetman supplies proof in an *indenture* of the 3rd of January, 1648—49, of the sale of Bishop's lands during the Commonwealth to a Parliamentary soldier. Rev. of Rev., CDXI, 210b.
- ii. Recollecting that his *indentures* were in a box on board, he brought them up. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXIV, 179.
- irons** = fetters. Especially in the phrase *in irons* (19, a). Also in the compound *fire-irons* = implements used in tending a domestic fire. The kitchen *fire-irons* were in exactly the same position. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. X, 185.
- jaws** = *mouth*. Frequent in certain transferred meanings, as in *the jaws of a valley* (*gulf, sea, etc.*), *the jaws* (*faucis*) *of a flower*, *the jaws of the tongs*, *the jaws of a boom* (*gaff*), *the jaws of death*. The singular is sometimes used in, apparently, the same sense.
- i. But such officers do the king best service in the end; he keeps them, like an ape, in a corner of his *jaw*; first mouthed to be last swallowed. HAMLET, IV, 2, 21.
- ii. We that were awhile since in the *jaws of death*, were now brought into a place where we found nothing but consolations. BACON, New Atlantis, (276). Your benevolence rescued me from the *jaws of death*. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXIII, 169.
- When a man goes near them out of compassion, they open their great *jaws*. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 103.
- jinks** = *lively or boisterous sport*; mostly in the combination *high jinks*. In Wraxall we find the Prime Minister himself, the redoubted William Pitt, engaged in *high jinks* with personages of no less importance than [etc.]. THACK., The Four Georges, IV, 100.
- In the summer weather the club takes to tents, migrates to the forest, and holds *high jinks* in Dionysic fashion. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. XX, 320.
- It is easy to guess who is at the bottom of it (sc. raising the rents). It's my lady's *high jinks* and no mistake. FLOR. MARRYAT, A Bankrupt Heart, II, 22.
- You ought to be in bed, my Nell, instead of cutting such *jinks*. *Ib.*, I, 134.
- laurels** = *distinction*. Chiefly, with partial allusion to its original meaning in certain phrases, such as *to reap* (or *win*) *one's laurels*, *to repose* (or *rest, retire*) *on one's laurels*, *to look to one's laurels*. Also the singular is occasionally met with in the same figurative meaning.
- i. Still he is a poet—poet of a prouder *laurel* than any contemporary. EMERSON. Repres. Men, Goethe.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. 'Tis sweet to *win*, no matter how, *one's laurels*. BYRON, Don Juan, I, cxxvi. He did not exactly cover himself with *laurels*. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. IV, 68. He caught eagerly at the golden opportunity of *winning* fresh *laurels*. MOTLEY, Rise, I, Ch. II, 89a.
- It is Mr. Dernburg who *wears* all the *laurels* of the victory. Rev. of Rev., CCVI, 116a.
- It showed a disposition *to sleep on its laurels*. Graph.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**leads** = *leaden covering of a roof.*

Having reached the *leads*, I looked out afar over sequestered field and hill. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XV, 130.

The tempest crackles on the *leads*. TEN., *Sir Galahad*, 53.

**leathers** = *articles for wear made of leather*; colloquially: *one who wears leather breeches or leggings.*

i. I glanced down at the new patent *leathers* which I was wearing. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holmes*.

ii. Out of the vay, young *leathers*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 167.

**letters** = a) *a certain game*; b) *literature*. In the meaning of *epistle* also it is regularly placed in the plural in certain combinations of a formal or legal sense, such as *letters dimissory*, *letters patent*, *letters rogatory*, etc.; *letters of administration*, *caption*, *ejection*, etc. In Early Modern English the plural is also met with without any such defining word.

In the meaning of *literature* especially frequent in such combinations as *man of letters*, *the commonwealth (or republic) of letters*.

i. We sat round a large table and played at '*letters*', sedulously 'shuffling' the handsome capitals as we gave each other long jaw-breaking words. WHYTE MELVILLE.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* The abbot was cautioned not to receive a member of any other known monastery without *dimissory letters* from his superior. SOUTHEY.<sup>1)</sup>

*Letters dimissory* for a young man who has distinguished himself. C. SIMEON.<sup>1)</sup>

Richard II was the first to confer the peerage by *letters patent*. H. COX.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Thy *letters* have transported me beyond | This ignorant present. MACB., I, 5, 57.

iii. *Letters* were loved indeed in those quaint times, and authors were actually authorities. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXIII, 660.

In France, every man distinguished in *letters* was found in their ranks. MAC., *Popes*, (560b).

This disadvantage would, in all probability, have for ever prevented him from taking a high place among *men of letters*. ID., *Fred.*, (662b).

There was another field of exertion . . . in the *republic of letters*. BURTON.<sup>1)</sup>

The teaching of arts and *letters* is not wanting to the members of these communities. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VI, 75.

**liabilities** = *debts or pecuniary obligations of a person or company* (— Dutch *passiva*).

A man's property and the sums owing to him are called his assets: the sums owing by him, his *liabilities*. SIR R. G. C. HAMILTON and JOHN BALL, *Book-keeping*, 5.

**lights** = *knowledge, information*. Frequent in the phrases *according (or after) one's lights* (the singular is unusual in these combinations). Also a plurale tantum in the legal phrase *ancient lights*, and in *northern (or polar) lights*.

i. The editors of the Posthumous Poems, moreover, though diligent *according to their light*, were neither endowed with remarkable acumen nor possessed of the wide knowledge requisite for the full intelligence of so erudite a poet as Shelley. THOMAS HUTCHINSON, *Poet. Works of Shelley*, Preface, 7.

He was, *according to his light*, a just man. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5613, 9a.

ii. \* In truth nothing more is wanted, — except those inner *lights* as to which so many men live and die without having learned whether they possess them or not. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 11.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



To Pen and to Pen's mother he is beneficent *after his lights*. *Ib.*, Ch. IV, 112. Two faults, however, marred the effect of his sagacity: a supreme insolence of disposition, and a profound belief in the *lights* of his experience. *LYTTON, Rienzi*, II, Ch. I, 75.

To become the vehicle of knowledge beyond the *lights* of men. *G. ELIOT, Romolo*.<sup>1)</sup>

They were doing their best *according to their lights*. *Mrs. WARD, Marc.*, II, 42.

**\*\* Ancient lights** = window lights, which have been opened and enjoyed without molestation, and have become established by the legal time of prescription. *WEBST., Dict.*

**\*\*\* Aurora borealis**, i. e. northern daybreak; popularly called *northern lights*. *Ib.* The *northern lights*, which are to be seen almost every evening, relieve the darkness. *Times*.

No satisfactory answer has yet been furnished as to the cause of these *polar lights*. *Cas. Conc. Cycl.*

**lines** = *footing*. Also regularly plural in the Scriptural *My (your, etc.) lines fall (fell, etc.)*. (Compare Psalm XVI, 6.) Furthermore in (*marriage*) *lines* ( = marriage certificate), and in the colloquial phrase *to be hard lines* (on a man).

i. In Lord Rosebery's opinion acquiescence in these opinions is wholly incompatible with the maintenance of the Liberal party on existing *lines*. *Times*.

The division was not taken on party *lines*. *Ib.*

Languages which have been separate for thousands of years have altered so much from their original form, and have developed on such different *lines*, that they are often absolutely unrecognisable as relatives. *H. C. WYLD, Hist. Study of the Mother Tongue*, Ch. I, 9.

ii. Milby was a low place where they would have found it a severe lot to have *their lines fall* for any long period. *G. ELIOT, Scenes*, III, Ch. II, 194.

iii. "How should a child like you know that the marriage was irregular?" — "Because I had no *lines*" cries Caroline quickly. *THACK.*<sup>2)</sup>

She could not produce her *marriage lines*. *MARRYAT.*<sup>2)</sup>

iv. I said you couldn't afford to buy me toys. He said that was *hard lines* on me. *G. MOORE, Esth. Waters*, Ch. XXVI, 188.

To break off an old connection so suddenly, and, as it chanced, at such a trying moment, was *hard lines*. *EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norseman*, Ch. X, 84.

**links** = *ground for the game of golf, provided with loops* (= *golf-links*). Sometimes preceded by the indefinite article.

"Golfing?" "Oh, yes," said the young man indifferently. "There's a fair *links*." *Mrs. WARD, Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. V, 38b.

This would be a jolly good place for a *golf-links*. *SHAW, John Bull's Other Island*, 102.

**lists** = *ground inclosed for a combat or competition, especially a tilting-match or tournament*. (Properly = *palisades* or *barriers*.) The word may be an English adaptation of the Old French *lisse* (Mod. French *lice*). For the insertion of the *t* compare *whilst*, *amongst*. Note especially *to enter the lists*. The singular form is occasionally met with in the same meaning.

i. Rather than so, come, fate, into the *list*. *Macb.*, III, 1, 71.

The champions, armed in martial sort, | Have thronged into the *list*. *SCOTT, Brid. of Triermain*, II, xviii.

- ii. \* The *lists* are oped, the spacious area clear'd. BYRON, *Childe Harold*, I, LXXII.  
They reel, they roll in clanging *lists*. TEN., *Sir Galahad*, I.  
\*\* The young king himself *entered the lists* against Luther. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § 5, 321.  
He *entered the lists* against the most celebrated advocates of the day. NETTLESHIP, *Dict. of Clas. Antiquities*, s. v. *Julius Caesar*.

**looks** = *appearance of the countenance, mien, cast of the features*. Frequent in the phrase *good looks*. Note *to be in good looks* (= Dutch zijn 'beau jour' hebben). The singular form is sometimes used in the same meaning. Without any defining word *looks* often means *good looks*. (Compare *parts* and *spirits*).

- i. I suppose his acquirements and abilities . . . make amends for any fault of *look*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVI, 191.  
ii. \* I asked a man of sorrow and of tears | Whose *looks* told anguish press'd him more than years. (?), *What is Life?* (Rainb., I, 20).  
Tozer replied that he thought not also, judging from Paul's *looks*. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. XII, 105.  
\*\* Those hapless creatures who suffer under the misfortune of *good looks*, ought to be continually put in mind of the fate which awaits them. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 113.  
He was possessed of a certain brilliancy which generally passes for *ood looks*. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 60.  
\*\*\* Her person was pleasing, and, when *in good looks*, pleasing. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. II, 6.  
Catherine was *in very good looks*. Ib., Ch. II, 12.  
\*\*\*\* I never saw anybody to equal him in *looks*. RID. HAGGARD, *She*, Ch. II, 21.

**lots** = *plenty*. Only in colloquial language. *Lots* is sometimes confounded with *a lot*, another colloquialism, corresponding to the literary *a large number (quantity)*.

Let's have *lots* of room. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 37.  
*Lots* of tin, I suppose, eh? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 147.

**manners** = *external behaviour in social intercourse* (= Dutch *manieren*). The singular form is sometimes used in the same meaning, but mostly corresponds to the Dutch (*wijze van*) *optreden*.

- i. She had neither beauty, genius, accomplishment, nor *manner*. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. II, 8.  
We shall probably see much to be altered in her . . . and must prepare ourselves for . . . much distressing vulgarity of *manner*. Id., *Mansfield Park*, Ch. I, 9.  
ii. His *manners* were dignified. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. II, 8.  
For *manners* are not idle, but the fruit | Of loyal nature, and of loyal mind. TEN., *Guin.*, 333.  
Evil communications corrupt good *manners*. Rev. of Rev.

**marbles** = a) *sculptures in marble*; b) *game played with marble balls*. In the second meaning constructed as a singular.

- i. Of late years he has decidedly gone in more for sculpture, or as Plush disdainfully terms it "taken to *marbles*." JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, C, 42.  
What have I myself not suffered from Jebb's lectures upon the Carrara *marbles*. Ib.  
ii. *Marbles* is not the popular game it once was. New Bk. Sports.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

*matters* = *things, affairs*, in an indefinite and vague sense (Ch. XXXI, 57). *Matters* being thus composed, everybody went to rest. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XIX, 127.

Those who either attack or defend a minister in such a government as ours, where the utmost liberty is allowed, always carry *matters* to an extreme. HUME, Essays, III, 24.

We are, however, advancing *matters*. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. II, 16. (= Dutch *loopen op de zaak vooruit*.)

*means* = a) *that through which or by the help of which an end is attained*; b) *resources*.

In the first meaning construed as a singular or as a plural. Thus we find *a means*, *this (that) means*, but also *these (those) means*. It is but natural that the plural demonstratives are used when more agencies than one are referred to. In Early Modern English the singular form *mean* is sometimes met with, in Present English this form is rare.

In the second meaning *means* is a strict plurale tantum, and construed as such throughout, except with regard to the indefinite numerals: *much (little) means*. The plural is also regularly used in certain collocations, such as *to have means*, *to find means*, *(by) fair (or foul) means*, *means of Grace*, *by all (manner of) means*, *by any (manner) of means*, *by no (manner of) means*, *by means of*, *ways and means* (see below).

a) i. You may deny that you were not the *mean* | Of my lord Hastings' late imprisonment. Rich. III, I, 3, 90.

No place will serve me so, no *mean* of death, | As here by Cæsar, and by you cut off, | The choice and master spirits of this age. Jul. Cæs., III, 1, 161.

I will not practise any violent *mean* to stay the unbridled course of youth in him. JONSON, Ev. Man in his Hum., I, 2, 124. (Some editions have *means*). You may be able by this *mean* to review your own scientific acquirements. COLLINGDGE.<sup>1)</sup>

As *a mean* of passenger transportation. MARK TWAIN, Tramp Abroad.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. \* He was thankful to have been the *means* of making her happy. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XX, 214.

\*\* Rebecca easily found *a means* to get rid of Briggs, her companion. Ib., I, Ch. XVI, 165.

Each regarded her as *a means* of keeping an eye on the other. Mrs. WARD, Marc., I, 135.

\*\*\* Being by *that means* reminded of his charge, he fell mechanically into his usual trot, and trotted off. DICK., Chimes<sup>3)</sup>, I, 36.

By *this means* she ensured the personal chastisement of all other youths who dared to lift their eyes to her. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. VIII, 48a.

\*\*\*\* Good God, betimes remove | The *means* that *makes* us strangers. Mac b., IV, 3, 164.

\*\*\*\*\* They have *few means* of information. Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, 4c.

\*\*\*\*\* With great dexterity *these means* were now employed. MOTLEY.<sup>3)</sup>

\*\*\*\*\* By *fair or foul means* we must now enter in. Henry VI, C, IV, 7, 14. She *found means* to deceive the servants. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. I, 9.

What was the extent of his income I *have no means* of saying. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 33.

The discourse of the preacher was on the fearful condition of those who disobey the discipline of the Church and refuse the *means of Grace*. WALT. BESANT, St. Katherine, Ch. X.

1) WEBST., Dict. 2) TEN BRUG., Taalst., VI. 3) GÜNT., Man., § 369.

These (sc. the Rosebery and Lansdowne Resolutions) adumbrate a Second Chamber which *by no manner of means* satisfies the Liberal Party or the Country. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5496, 1c.

β) \* I should esteem it a great favour if you would acquaint me, so far as lies in your power, with information respecting the character and *means* of Messrs. — Business Letter-Writer, XVI.

The daughter of an Irishman of *means*, who squandered *them* and became a burden on his children [etc.]. *SAINTSBURY*, *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. I, 37.

\*\* She was parting with one who had *little means* of serving her. *DE QUINCEY*, *Confessions*, Ch. II, 28.

He broke away from surgery. and, having some *little means*, travelled to the Isle of Wight, Devonshire, and other parts of England. *SAINTSBURY*, *Nineteenth Century*, Ch. II, 86.

He would very likely have followed in the steps of his father and grandfather with *less means* at his disposal, and, consequently greater temptations than theirs and so forth. *NORRIS*, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XII, 80.

*memoirs* = a) *desultory record of events*; b) *autobiographical record*; c) *record of the proceedings or transactions of a learned society*.

i. Their whole structure serves to prove that they (sc. the Synoptic Gospels) are *memoirs* and not histories. *WESTCOTT*.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. We do not find, in any of his voluminous *Memoirs*, either deep reflection or vivid painting. *MAC.*, *Fred.*, (663a).

Few sermons can be read with so much profit as the *Memoirs* of Burns, of Chatterton, or of Savage. *WALT. SCOTT* (*LOCKHARDT*, *Life of Sir Walt. Scott*, Ch. I, 3).

The sensation of the month has been the publication of Prince Hohenlohe's *Memoirs*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCIII, 477a.

iii. *Memoirs* read before the Anthropological Society of London.<sup>1)</sup>

*memoranda* = *booklet or paper containing memoranda*, Felt as a singular, so that the use of a preceding indefinite article is not regarded as an incongruity.

"And now look at this paper." And he drew out a *memoranda*, scrawled over with figures. *LYTTON*, *Caxtons*, X, Ch. I, 248.

*merits* = a) *intrinsic excellences or defects*; b) *good works viewed as entitling to reward from God*. In the first meaning especially frequent in the phrase (*upon one's (own) merits*). The opposite *demerits*, often found in conjunction with *merits*, is also a *plurale tantum*.

i. \* In pleading, they studiously avoid entering into the *merits* of the cause. *SWIFT*, *Gul. Trav.*, IV, Ch. V, 199a.

Nobody could be insensible to Mr. Pipkin's *merits*. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 152. It is impossible to enter here into the *merits* of the controversy. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVIII, 565a.

\*\* He has always been content to let his novels advance *on their own merits*. *Standard*.

He wishes that measures might be discussed *upon their merits*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCIV, 619b.

Each breach of the law must be judged *on its own merits*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6005, 1c.

ii. His superabundant *merits*, which are laid up as a rich treasure for his Church. *MORTIMER*.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> *MURRAY*.



Perhaps his exalted appreciation of the *merits* of the old girl, causes him usually to make the noun-substantive, Goodness, of the feminine gender. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XLIX, 409.

- iii. I need say nothing here of their special *merits and demerits*. TROL., *Thack*., Ch. I, 38.

It seemed to me by no means unprofitable to lay out fifty sous in the purchase of a stall at the theatre, and to judge with my own eyes of *the merits and demerits* of the play. THACK., *Dickens in France*.

**mews** = *large stable for carriages and carriage-horses*. Originally the name of the Royal stables in London, so called because built where the king's hawks were once mewed or confined. *Mews* is often found with the indefinite article, but seems otherwise to be treated as a plural. Compare STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 686 and 799.

- i. There was some disturbance last night in consequence of the mob assembling round the King's *mews*. GREVILLE.<sup>1</sup>)

- ii. The cabman who stabled his horses in some *mews* near Praed Street. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. III, 44.

Miss Tox's bedroom (which was at the back) commanded a vista of *Mews*. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. VII, 59.

The *mews* of London constitute a world of their own. MAYHEW.<sup>1</sup>)

- iii. Having a loft, I always say, is one of the great conveniences of living in a *mews*. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, II, 60.

Mr. Turveydrop's great room was built out into a *mews* at the back. Id., *Bleak House*, Ch. XIV, 117.

I found that there was a *mews* in a lane which runs down by one wall of the garden. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, I, 31.

She saw the black spot pass down a *mews* and disappear under the eaves. G. MOORE, *Esth. Wat.*, Ch. XV, 96.

Nero, the younger (dog) had dived to the very heart of a peculiarly unsavoury dust-box, standing near the entrance of a *mews*. MRS. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. IV, 29a.

**morals** = *moral principles, moral life*.

He would not take one without a certificate from the schoolmaster and clergyman of his native place, strongly vouching for his *morals* and doctrine. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 11.

His private *morals* lay, justly or unjustly, under imputations of the worst kind. MAC., *Pitt*, (291a).

The Duke of Newcastle, however contemptible in *morals*, manners and understanding, was a dangerous enemy. Ib., (305a).

**nerves** = *nervousness*.

He must be a man of nerve, but without *nerves*. Good Words (STOF., Leesb., I, 95) (Note the contrast.)

Europe during the last ten years has been in that peculiar stage of *nerves* in which mere talk about war . . . does but increase the irritation, and accentuate the fears of the timid. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5376, 1c.

In order to bring us into his state of *nerves* he made a series of assertions which are either half-true or totally inaccurate. Ib., No. 5442, 1c.

**numbers** = a) a large number; b) numerical strength; c) superior numbers; d) poetical rhythm or measure (now uncommon). Also the singular form

1) MURRAY

is used to denote a numerous multitude. Note also the collocation *in round numbers*, sometimes used figuratively in the sense of the Dutch *in ronde woorden*.

- i. *Numbers* of Pen's friends frequented this very merry meeting. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 319.
- ii. To do the villains justice, they fought bravely; but we far excelled them in *numbers*. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 52.
- iii. The Ghebers are at last borne down by *numbers*. JEFFREY, *Thomas Moore*.
- iv. I am ill at these *numbers*. HAMLET, II, 2, 120.  
I lisp'd in *numbers*, for the *numbers* came. POPE.  
Tell me not in mournful *numbers*. "Life is but an empty dream!" LONGFELLOW.
- v. Such may be stated, *in round numbers*, to be the result of the information which Major Pendennis got. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 75.  
Well, ma'am, *in round numbers*, she's run away with the soldiers. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. X, 92.

**offices** -- a) *ceremonial duties or services*; b) *rites due to the dead*; c) *kitchen and rooms connected with it, often including stables and other outhouses*. In the second meaning mostly preceded by the adjective *last*. To denote a single servant's room the singular may be used.

- i. She usually leaves her cloak in the passage as she goes into the pantler's *office* with the milk. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXII, 334.
- ii. \* In *offices* as strict as Lent, King James's June is ever spent. SCOTT, *Marm.*, IV, xv.  
Hitherto he had said his *offices* regularly, but now he would say special prayers. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, I, 298.  
Breviary = a book containing the daily *offices* which all who are in orders are bound to read. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*  
\*\* I did not doubt that he had thus quietly fulfilled the last mournful *offices*. LYTON, *Caxtons*, X, Ch. III, 251.  
The last *offices* for the dead having been performed. *Times*.  
\*\*\* He hath been in unusual pleasure and sent forth great largess to your *offices*. MACB., II, 1, 14.  
She gave her cook as high wages as they did at Mansfield Park and was scarcely ever seen in her *offices*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. III, 30.  
The spacious *offices* were little used. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 31.  
The sleeping-rooms and domestic *offices* were on its right. Mrs. WOOD, *Orville College*, Ch. I, 7.

**oils** = a) *oil-colour*; b) *oil-paintings*.

- i. Branwell . . . seems to have progressed so far as to paint, very badly, in *oils*. Miss FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. VII, 38.
- ii. Mr. Eugenius Maunder had a turn for *oils*. PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, B. 40.

**oilskins** = *clothes made of oilskin*.

- The Kaiser in *Oilskins*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXII.  
Fox at once threw off his *oilskins* and plunged in to save him. *Westm. Gaz.* No. 5371, 8d.  
Mr. Tom Wing . . . is going to don *oilskins* in a week's time and go on a fortnight's voyage to the Faroe Islands. *Ib.*, No. 5376, 8d.

**orders** -- a) *rank, status, or position of a clergyman or ordained minister of the Church*; b) *conferment of holy orders*. *Orders* is short for *holy orders*. It is frequently found in certain phrases: *to take orders*, *to enter (into) holy orders*, *in orders*, *in deacon's orders*, *in priest's orders* (= *in full orders*).

Also in the meaning of *command* we often find *order* in the plural; seemingly regularly in certain combinations, such as *to have orders*, *to receive orders*, *at (by) any one's orders*, *under (strict) orders*, *with (strict) orders*. SHAKESPEARE has *to have order*, DRYDEN *by my order*.

The plural is likewise regular in the phrase *standing orders* (- Dutch *reglement van orde*).

i. \* Last year I resigned my *orders* because I could no longer accept the view of the English Church. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., III, 154.

\*\* About this period he was offered a living of considerable value in Lincolnshire, if he were inclined to *enter into holy orders*. BOSWELL, *Life of Johnson*, 85b. A master of arts, in *full orders*, is desirous of a curacy. MARTINEAU.<sup>1)</sup>

It is better for a boy's character that his headmaster should be *in orders*. Times. He told his father that he must give up all thought of *taking orders*. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 25.

It was a settled thing that he should *take Holy Orders*. *Ib.*, I, 25.

Nor was any undertaking given by the candidate or their choice that he should hereafter *enter holy orders*. Times.

After some delay Swift was admitted to *deacon's orders*, in October 1694, and to *priest's orders*, in January 1694-5. *Life of Swift*, Prefaced to *The Works of the Rev. Jon. Swift*.

ii. In the sacrament of *Orders* there is given a grace, whereby a priest will always have a perpetual assistance for the discharge of his office. MANNING.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. \* Villeneuve *received orders* to put to sea the first opportunity. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 246.

He twice *gave orders* to cease firing upon the Redoubtable. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 259.

Gamekeeper *has orders* to shoot all dogs found in this enclosure. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 18.

At Truncheon's *orders* she flung the whole shrubbery into the dust-house. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VI, 326.

Boaler *has orders* to pay your cab. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. I, 15.

She jerked and pushed him into his place without a word, being apparently *under strict orders* from the governess not on any account to speak to the boys. *Ib.*, Ch. VI, 130.

They were executed *by the orders* of the Ameer. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 57.

\*\* They *have already order* | This night to play before him. Hamlet, III, 1, 20. He did it *by my order*. DRYDEN, *All for love*, IV, 1 (79).

iv. The *standing orders* allow the Speaker to arrest irrelevance. Daily Mail.

pains — a) *punishment, penalty, fine*; b) *suffering or throes of childbirth*; c) *exertions*. In the first meaning *pains* is said (by MURRAY) to be now obsolete, except in the collocation *pains and penalties*. The singular form with the same meaning is regular in the phrases *on (upon, under) pain of death (bondage etc.)*.

In the third meaning *pains* has the finite verb of which it is the subject either in the singular or in the plural, generally the latter. As for its adnominal modifiers we say *much (little) pains*, not *many (few) pains*; *these (those) pains* rather than *this (that) pains*. But *great (small) pains* seems preferable to *many (few) pains*, and instances with the demonstratives are infrequent. Compare also Ch. XXVI, 16.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

We also find *pains* preceded by the distributive *every*, which seems an objectionable combination.

In some collocations it is impossible to tell whether *pains* is regarded as a plural or a singular. Note especially *to be at some (the, great, etc.) pains, to spare no pains, to cost (give) no (great, etc.) pains, to be a fool for one's pains* (= lit. to be a dupe notwithstanding, or in reward of, one's pains; fig. to lose one's labour). For illustration of this last phrase see especially FLÜGEL, s. v. *pains*, and STOF., Stud., I, 17.

Instead of the plural the older language also had the singular form *pain*, which is still occasionally met with in poetry as an archaism.

α) \* That's necessary *on pain of* a fine. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VII, 126.

\*\* Compulsion, either in the direct form or in that of *pains and penalties*. MILL, Liberty, I, 23.<sup>1)</sup>

Each bottle being marked with the initials of the inventor, to counterfeit which would be to incur the *pains* of forgery. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Introd., 11.

β) She bore unhusbanded a mother's *pains*. SOUTHEY, Eng. Eclogues, Hannah, 19.<sup>1)</sup>

γ) i. The labour we delight in physics *pain*. Mac b., II, 3, 55.

Pray thee, take *pain* | To allay with some cold drops of modesty | Thy skipping spirit. Merch. of Ven., II, 2, 171.

He rolled his kindling eye, | With *pain* his rising wrath suppressed. SCOTT, Marm., I, xvi.

Sir Tristram of the Woods — 'Whom Lancelot knew, had held sometime with *pain* | His own against him. TEN., The last Tourn., 178.

He quickly snatched away | Their fairest maid and with small *pain* did slay  
Such men as there in arms before him stood. W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Doom of King Acrisius, 78b.

ii. \* All my *pains* is sorted to no proof. Taming of the Shrew, IV, 3, 43. (sorted = contrived.)

It is obvious that such a racial difficulty as this can only be overcome by taking special *pains*, and yet in most of our schools no *pains* at all seems to be taken. Graph.

\*\* Your *pains* | Are registered where every day I turn | The leaf to read them. Mac b., I, 3, 151.

The greatest *pains* have been taken by the author of the following vocabularies to render them as complete and correct as possible. WEBST., Appendix, Pref. to Modern Geogr. and Biogr. Names.

Hardly any *pains* are taken to make it (sc. the play) credible. Rev. of Rev., CCII, 358a.

\*\*\* The answers I have with *much pains* wringed and extorted from you. SWIFT, Lilliput.

*Much pains* have been taken to give the most approved spelling. WEBST., Appendix, Pref. to Modern Geogr. and Biogr. Names.

By merely taking a *little pains* he may make a tremendously effective thing out of it. Punch.

The more she impressed his badness upon him, the *less pains* did he take to obey her. EDNA LYALL, Donovan, I, 21.

\*\*\*\* I have deserved her; and now methinks too, with taking all *this pains* for her, I begin to like her. DRYDEN, Marriage à la Mode, V, 1 (319).

\*\*\*\*\* Yet much he praised the pains he took, | And well *those pains* did pay SCOTT, Marm., I, xiii.

1) MURRAY.



\*\*\*\*\* He took *every pains* to arrive at a proper conclusion. Sir J. C. MATHEW.<sup>1)</sup>

- δ) His Majesty, in another audience, *was at the pains* to recapitulate the sum of all I had spoken. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, I.

She (sc. Lady Godolphin) refused some time ago to be acquainted with me. You know she is Lord Marlborough's eldest daughter. She is *a fool for her pains*, and I'll pull her down. Id., *Journ. to Stella*, LXI.

The parts which have *given* the author *the greatest pains* in composing. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, V, Ch. I, 63.

It *cost* this great man *no pains* to pardon him. THACK., *Henry Es.*, II, Ch. X, 234.

Many people *give* themselves extreme *pains* to frequent company where all round them are their superiors. Id., *Newc.*, Ch. IX, 103.

The impression at present is that he (sc. Dobbin) is *a fool for his pains*. Id., *Lett. to Rob. Bell* (*Times*, No. 1803, 581c).

You want to let Lynton off his debt, — you are *a fool for your pains*. He is a born scoundrel, — and has never seen his way to being anything else, — why should you compassionate him? MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. X, 136.

He *spared no pains* to please her during her week's stay. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, II, 160.

We *were at some pains* to acquaint ourselves accurately with the facts. *Times*. He is *at great pains* to supplement what has been published already with particulars which scarcely merit reproduction. *Athen.*

**Parts** = a) *portion of an animal body*; b) *talents*; c) *region*. When denoting a portion of an animal body, *parts* is mostly preceded by a defining adjective: *hinder parts*, *inward parts*. In the meaning of *talents* also it is often accompanied by a defining adjective; when such an adjective is absent, *parts* = *good parts*. (Compare *looks* and *spirits*.) According to MURRAY the word in the second meaning is now archaic and rare in speech.

- i. I had occasion to examine *the parts* of a child very attentively at the birth. UNDERWOOD.<sup>1)</sup>

The *inward parts* of a swine be very like to the *inward parts* of a man. COGAN.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. In the French verses of Frederic we can find nothing beyond the reach of any man of *good parts* and industry. MAC., *Fred.*, (663a).

He was allowed to be a man of *parts*. Ib., (671b).

His parents expected nothing from such *slender parts* and such a headstrong temper. Ib., *Clive*, (498b).

Though his *parts* were not brilliant, he made up for his lack of talent by meritorious industry. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IX, 87.

He was not a young man of *brilliant parts*. *Il. Mag.*

- iii. Tell your dad what your impressions of foreign *parts* are. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*.

They spends the summer at Woodview and goes to *foreign parts* for the winter. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XXVI, 181.

**prayers** — *devotional exercises on a small scale, especially in the home-circle*. She went to church thrice every Sunday, and as often on week-days as there were *prayers*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 288.

He has come down late for *prayers*. *Punch*.

So you have had *prayers* without me. Ib.

**premises** = *building with its adjuncts*.

I have no desire to put my foot on the *premises again*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV Ch. XXXV, 249.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

Meadows was wandering about the *premises*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I.

**points** = *switch of a railway-track*.

Passing over the *points* at Manningtree, the train gave a lurch. JEROME, *Sketches* (GRONDH. and ROORDA, Eng. Leesb., III, 51).

**presents** = *present letters or instrument*. A legal term used in a deed of conveyance, a lease, a letter of attorney, a bill of sale, etc., especially in the formula (*Know all men*) *by these presents* (= Dutch *bij dezen*).

Witness all men *by these presents*, that I, Anthony Lumbkin, esquire of Blank place, refuse you, Constantia Neville, spinster, of no place at all, for my true and lawful wife. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops to Conquer*, V, (232).

To the hundred thousand ladies and gentlemen who have written me from all parts of the world . . . greeting. Know all of you *by these presents* that [etc.]. *Advertisement*.

**proceedings** = a) *happenings*, b) *course of steps, especially in the prosecution of actions at law*; c) *record of the proceedings or transactions of a society*.

i. He even remembered an impious opinion of his that the *proceedings* were 'slow'. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. I, 13.

There seems to be a widespread misconception concerning this month's Parliamentary *proceedings*. Rev. of Rev., CCIII, 451a.

ii. \* He therefore commenced *proceedings* by putting his arm over the half-door of the bar. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 240.

\*\* *Proceedings* were threatened but were withdrawn. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. II, 12.

He is now taking *proceedings* in order to secure an account of his mother's financial affairs. Rev. of Rev., CCVIII, 363b.

iii. *Proceedings* of the Royal Society. MURRAY.

**prospects** = *expectations*.

Dolf frankly told him his course of life, his severe medical studies, his little proficiency, and his very dubious *prospects*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 138).

**provisions** = *stock of food* (= Dutch *proviand*, *leeftocht*).

He made a scanty breakfast on the remains of the last night's *provisions*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 123).

**quarters** = a) *four parts, each containing a limb of a human body divided in the case of execution for high treason*, by extension also *any part of the human body*; b) *place of stay or residence, lodgings, especially of soldiers*.

*Quarters* is a strict plurale tantum in the compounds *head-quarters* and *hind-quarters*. The plural is likewise usual in the phrases *in certain (some) quarters* (= circles), *at close quarters*. The singular *quarter* is occasionally met with in the meaning *hind-quarters*. The compound *head-quarters* is construed with either a singular or a plural finite verb, and may be preceded by the indefinite article.

a) \* Their heads and *quarters* were still rotting on poles. MAC., *Hist.*, Ch. XII.

\*\* The tickling pleasure which he experienced in his lower regions had rendered him quite callous to any inconveniences he might feel in those remote *quarters*. CH. LAMB, *Es. of Elia*, *Dis. on Roast Pig*, (255).

\*\*\* The mare's . . . a bit too weak in the *hindquarters*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. IV, 28.

\*\*\*\* They jawed together fore and aft a good spell, till at last the captain turned out, and, laying hold of a rattan, came athwart Mr. Bowling's *quarter*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXIV, 175. (= *hind-quarters*.)

- β) i. He was fain to take up his *quarters* for the night under the lowly roof of honest Peter de Groot. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., HANDL., I. 150). I'm in good *quarters* for the present at least. *Id.*, 143.  
Lieutenant Lindsay answered that the soldiers came as friends, and wanted nothing but *quarters*. MAC., HIST., VII, Ch. XVIII, 21.  
Frederic allowed his troops to take some repose in winter *quarters*. *Id.*, FRED., (693a).
- ii. \* He had no quarrel with Mr. Cadogan, but only with those at *head-quarters*, who had belied him. THACK., Henry EsM., II, Ch. XV, 284.  
\*\* The *head-quarters* of her (sc. Aphrodite's) worship were Paphos, Amathus [etc.]. NETTLESHIP, Dict. Clas. Ant., 39b.  
\*\*\* The original *head-quarters* was in the palace of Baldwin II in Jerusalem. ANNANDALE, Conc. Dict., s. v. *templar*.  
The *head-quarters* of the corps is at the Tower of London. Graph.  
\*\*\*\* In Toulon the French have a fortified *head-quarters*. Times, 311, 1893.  
The line to Dartmoor passes through Exeter, an excellent *head-quarters* for the exploration of the rugged Phillpotts country. Westm. Gaz., No. 6017, 11c.
- γ) \* The nonsense that is talked in *some quarters* about the cause having been lost by impatience of a few working women in the Ladies' Gallery [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., CXCVII, 459a.  
\*\* I have seen the opposing forces in Russia at *close quarters*, and I struggle in vain against the despairing conviction that it is too late. *Id.*, CXCVIII, 564a.  
We both desired to come to *close quarters*. Mrs. WARD, Lady Rose's Daught., I, Ch. II, 22a.

**ranks** = *body of private soldiers, rank and file*. Mostly used in the plural also in the sense of *number of soldiers drawn up in line abreast* (= Dutch *geliid*). Note especially *ranks of death*, *ranks of war*. When used figuratively of other matters than the army, the plural is practically the only form.

- i. He was reduced to the *ranks*. TEN BRUG., Dict.  
To rise from the *ranks*. FLÜGEL.
- ii. \* When the *ranks* are broken and you have to fight singly. JOWETT.<sup>1)</sup>  
\*\* To paint the Hero's Toil, the *Ranks of War*. GRAY, Propertius, III, 33.  
The Minstrel Boy to the war is gone. In the *ranks of death* you'll find him. THOMAS MOORE.  
\*\*\* Scholars like Hooker, gentlemen like George Herbert, could not be found in the *ranks* of the priesthood. GREEN, Short Hist.<sup>1)</sup>

**recitals** = *entertainment consisting in recitation*.

It (sc. the voiceless w) is taught by professors of elocution, and is, therefore, commonly heard at *recitals*, and also at amateur theatricals. WALT. RUPPMANN, The Sounds of Spoken English, § 26.

**records** = *collection of official accounts, documents*.

Here they find an inspector of police, who enters the charge in the station-*records*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. IV, 416.

Here were usually kept the *records* of the family. LYTON, Last Days of Pomp., I, Ch. II, 14b.

**regards** = *expressions of regard or deference*.

I merely told her that my father was well and sent his kind *regards* to her. Mrs. GASK., Cranford, Ch. XIII, 238.

Pa's kind *regards* and hopes his leg's better, and will he lend him his spirit-level. JEROME, Three men in a boat, Ch. III, 25.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**relics** = *remains* (19, j). Occasionally used in the singular.

- i. Such is the South-Sea House. At least such it was forty years ago, when I knew it — a magnificent *relic*. CH. LAMB, *Es. of Elia, South-Sea House*, 4.
- ii. All around | The mouldering *relics* of my kindred lay. SHELLEY, *Queen Mab*, VII, 188.  
The story lies amidst places whose *relics* we yet trace. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pompeii*, Pref.

**resources** = a) (*pecuniary*) means; b) (*mental*) powers (= Dutch kunnen).

- i. The national *resources* were contributed with unexampled cheerfulness. MAC., Pitt, (309a)  
They had wished to husband their *resources*. Id., Hal., (77b).  
I have at times bought the Nineteenth Century for an important article, and thereby strained my *resources*. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 570b.
- ii. She had a finer sense than any of her counsellors of her real *resources*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 371.  
Falstaff was never at the end of his *resources*. WALTER RALEIGH, *Shakespeare*, Ch. II, 50.  
She was thrown upon her own *resources*. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. IV.

**respects** = *regards, expressions of respect or deference*.

- I'll take another opportunity of paying my *respects* to Mrs. Malaprop. SHER., *Rivals*, I, 2, (219).  
The young lady came forward to pay her *respects* to the protector of her friend. THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XII, 115.  
To send one's *respects* to another. WEBST., Dict.

**returns** *set of tabulated statistics prepared for general information* (= Dutch staat).

Long then may England's trade *returns* continue to afford their satisfactory testimony to her unimpaired commercial strength and manufacturing energy. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VIII, 119.

**rights** — a) *way in which anything really happened* (= Dutch ware toedracht); b) *dues*; c) *justice or correctness of opinion or action*.

In other meanings also used as a plurale tantum in *The Bill of Rights*, to set (put) to rights, by rights. We find within one's (*legal*) right side by side with within one's (*legal*) rights, the latter being, apparently the more common form. In one's right(s) is an uncommon variant. The plural seems to be the rule also in to insist (up)on one's rights. Note also of right(s), which does not appreciably differ from by rights.

- i. We will let matters stand over till we can look into this complaint of yours and discover the *rights* of it. S. BARING GOULD, *The Red-Haired Girl* (SWAEN, Selection, III, 141).
- ii. I love and honour the Church. I pay her *rights* duly and cheerfully. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. V, 53.
- iii. We are obliged to say that the *rights* were with M. Delcassé. Westm. Gaz., No. 5060, 1c. (= Wij moeten M. D. gelijk geven.)
- iv. \* Some people would be ashamed to fill up a place belonging by rights to others. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXXII, 227.  
A great rock, I have said; but by rights it was two rocks leaning together at the top. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, 181.  
Suakim belongs by rights to these savages. Graph.



\*\* I have a thought shall soon *set* all matters again *to rights*. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, I.

A line from himself to me, or a call at Putney when next in town, might *set* all *to rights*. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. XXVII, 208.

I turned crusty and *put* her *to rights*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. IX, 103.

I'll go *put* my room *to rights*. DICK., *Chuz*.

He tried to *set* the village *to rights*. Lit. World.

\*\*\* General Komaroff was entirely *within his rights*. Rev. of Rev., CXCI, 89a.

They were acting *within their rights*. Ib., 89b.

The Colonials were acting *within their rights*. Times.

She was quite *within her rights*. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. V, 38b.

You're *within your legal right* Id., Sir George Tres., III, Ch. XXIV, 204.

The Tsar was *within his rights* in dissolving the Duma. Rev. of Rev., CCI, 228b.

We were *in our right* in creating our Navy, and they were not *in their right* in ordering us to scrap it. THOS. HODGKIN, (*Nineteenth Cent.*, No. 399, 865).

The publishers . . . are no doubt *within their right*. Athen., No. 4422, 92a.

\*\*\*\* It is not to be wondered at if he *insisted on his rights*. W. GUNNYAN, *Biographical Sketch of Burns*, 3.

\*\*\*\*\* It was a thing appertaining *of rights* to them. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 19.

Martin's grandfather was *of right* the person to decide upon the course that should be taken. DICK., *Chuz*, Ch. XLVIII, 376a.

**rudiments** — *beginnings of any branch of knowledge.*

A man who to good nature adds the general *rudiments* of good breeding, will never be ridiculous in the best society. SCOTT (in LOCKH., *Life of Sir Walt. Scott*, Ch. I, 4, N.)

**ruins** = *remains of destroyed or desolate house, fortress, city and the like.* Also figuratively of other matters. Sometimes dealt with as a singular.

Thou art the *ruins* of the noblest man | That ever lived in the tide of times. J. I. CÆS., III, 1, 256.

On the platform of the middle terrace *stands* the *ruins* of the chapel. Westm. Gaz.

**sables** = *mourning garments.*

Her little boy sate by her side in pompous new *sables*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXII, 242.

"I can't go out of mourning, ma'am," said the young man looking down at his *sables*. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XXV, 256.

He rose, drawing his *sables* about him. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. III, 35.

**sands** = a) *grains of sand*, b) *areas covered with sand*. In the first meaning especially used in referring to the contents of the hour-glas. Here the singular is occasionally met with also.

i. \* Herrings are as countless as the *sands* on the shore. Suggestive lessons, I, 119.

\*\* The *sands* are numbered that make up my life. Henry VI, C, I, 4, 25.

Our *sands* run low. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, V, Ch. IV, 212.

The *sands* of the holidays have run out to their last golden grain. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. I, 7.

The *sands* are running fast out of the hour-glass. Rev. of Rev., CXCI, 454b.

The Nation warns statesmen that the *sands* are running out. Westm. Gaz., No. 5436, 16c.

\*\*\* My *sand* is nearly run. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 149.

- ii. The sea beating loud the mutable *sands* of the sea-shore. LONGF., Courtship of Miles Standish.<sup>1)</sup>

Three corpses lay out on the shining *sands*. CH. KINGSLEY, Three Fishers, III.

**scales** = *apparatus for weighing* (19, d). The singular is used in the the expression *to turn the scale*. The plural is sometimes found preceded by the indefinite article.

- i. Intellectually the balance was nearly even between the rivals. But here, again, the moral qualities of Pitt *turned the scale*. MAC., Pitt, (299a).

A hair would *turn the scale* either way. G. MOORE, Esth. Waters, Ch. XX, 138.

- ii. \* A large hook in the ceiling that supported the *scales* on wick the hemp is weighed. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXIII, 164.

Thine own fate — that of thy house — that of thousands — that of Britain herself are at this moment in the *scales*. SCOTT, Redgauntlet, Ch. XXII, 519b.

\*\* He weighed it in *a scales*. HICHENS, Garden of Allah, I, 1, Ch. V, 78.

**seeds** = *prime causes* (= Dutch *kiemen*).

Here I could plainly discover the true *seeds* of spleen, which only seizes on the lazy, the luxurious and the rich. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., IV, Ch. VII, (204a).

He cherished the *seeds* of enmity so strongly in his breast, that he imparted his indignation to his wife. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXI, 139.

Many of those who reached their country carried with them the *seeds* of death. MAC., Fred., (669b).

**sessions** = *sitting of justices of the peace, also the magistracy itself*. More fully *Sessions of the Peace*; mostly preceded by defining words: *Petty Sessions, Quarter Sessions*. Sometimes the word is preceded by the indefinite article. The singular is also met with in the same meaning.

- i. But it is now high time to look about me for a decent execution against next *session*. GAY, Beggar's Opera, I.

I'll try him only for a *session* or two longer upon his good behaviour. Ib.

- ii. \* The Magistrate is one of the class called stipendiary magistrates, who in places where the magisterial work is arduous, are commonly substituted for the *Petty Sessions*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. XXIV, 416.

In districts where the business is lighter the *Petty Sessions* consist of two or more country gentlemen. Ib.

The prisoners must be tried either at the Assizes when the judge comes round on circuit, or the *Quarter Sessions*, which have power to try most criminal cases except burglary and murder. Ib., 417.

\*\* There is not one in the town where he lives that he has not sued at *a quarter-sessions*. SPECTATOR, CXXII, (36).

He never missed *a sessions*. MRS. WARD, Mar. of Wil. Ashe, I, 13.

**shakes** = *a kind of disease* (19, c).

**shambles** = *slaughter-house*. Sometimes treated as a singular and preceded by the indefinite article. Also the singular form is used occasionally in the same sense.

- i. A ghastly *shamble*. ARCH. FORBES, Life of Nap. III, 290.

- ii. \* Starving wretches swarmed daily around the *shambles* where these cattle were slaughtered. MOTLEY, Rise, IV, Ch. II, 575.

We no longer slaughter in the *shambles* and cellars of our crowded capital. SUGGESTIVE LESSONS, I, 86.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., Taalst., VI.

\*\* Far be the thought of this from Henry's heart, | To make *a shambles* of the parliament-house. Henry VI, C, I, 1, 71.

That hand was found cast out on the street, like the disgusting refuse of *a shambles*. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XV, 163.

*A shambles* reeking with blood. STANL. WEYM., Count Hannibal, 37.

The awful stench from *this shambles* turns your gorge. Times, 258, 1899.

**shores** = *country* (with some vague reference to coast). Frequent in the collocation *on our shores*. The singular form is not infrequent in the same sense.

i. This delusion becomes almost a madness when many exiles who suffer in the same cause herd together on a foreign *shore*. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 94.

ii. A pretender is on our *shores*. THACK., The Hist. of the next French Revolution, Ch. I.

Mr. Binnie was just on the point of visiting his relatives, who reside at Musselburgh, near Edinburgh, when he met with the fatal accident which prevented his visit to his native *shores*. Id., Newc., I, Ch. XXII, 245.

Our home markets have been free to all the world to pour its products on our *shores*. Times.

Would you consider yourself efficient to undertake the responsibility of defending our *shores* against an invasion, if necessity arose? Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 1b.

It is announced that King Manael is to find an asylum on our *shores*. Ib., No. 5436, 2a.

**shrouds** = *set of ropes, reaching from the mast-head to the sides of vessel to support the masts*. Occasionally in the singular in the same meaning.

i. In mist or cloud, on mast or *shroud*, | It perched for vespers nine. COLERIDGE, Anc. Mar., I, xix.

ii. Her rattling *shrouds*, all sheathed in ice. | With the mast went by the board. LONGF., Wreck of the Hesperus, XVIII.

**silks** = *a) silk stockings, b) silk garments*.

i. A very dusty skeleton in a blue coat black knee-shorts, and *silks*, fell forward in the arms of the porter. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXI.

Very few people but those who have tried it, know what a difficult process it is, to bow in great velvet smalls and a tight jacket, a high-crowned hat: or in blue satin trunks and white *silks*. Ib., Ch. XV, 133.

ii. "Oh, no! no need!" cries the widow, rustling in her *silks*. THACK., Virg., Ch. IV, 38.

**spectacles** = *pair of lenses to assist defective sight* (19, a).

**spirits** = *a) temper or disposition of the mind; b) distilled liquor, strong drinks*.

In the first meaning mostly accompanied by a defining adjective: *good spirits, excellent spirits, his spirits were excellent*, etc. Without any such defining word *spirits* = *good spirits*. (Compare *looks* and *parts*.)

The plural is also regular in the phrase *animal spirits* — natural buoyancy, 'healthy animalism'.

The plural is frequent when any liquid produced by distillation is meant, as in *spirit(s) of wine, spirit(s) of hartshorn, spirit(s) of turpentine* (= Dutch *geest*). When used in the meaning of *alcohol* (= Dutch *spiritus*) the singular is the ordinary form: thus *methylated spirit* (= Dutch *brand-spiritus*).

i. \* Our analysis shows this to be a remarkably pure *spirit*. Graph.

The manufacturers of European potato *spirit* have no vested right to poison the inhabitants of Africa. Times.

Sugar ferments and turns to *spirit*; *spirit* ferments and turns to vinegar. Suggestive Lessons, I, 180.

Vodka = an intoxicating *spirit* distilled from rye and much used in Russia. ANNANDALE, Concise Dict.

\*\* Some people said it was the profuse use of *spirit* that brought on delirium tremens. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. I, 7.

ii. \* The sudden change of my fortune giving me a flow of *spirits*, I appeared in the most winning and gay manner I could assume. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXIII, 165.

I made her drink a glass of the cordial to recruit her *spirits*. Ib., Ch. XXI, 145. If you were convinced that Julia were well and in *spirits*, you would be entirely content? SHER., Riv., II, 1, (226).

Rebecca's wit, *spirits*, and accomplishments troubled her with a rueful disquiet. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXV, 259.

All these boys were in great *spirits*. DICK., Christm. Car., II, 30.

His *spirits* became buoyant. MAC., Earl of Chatham, (817a).

Her *spirits* were depressed. Id., Fred., (665b).

The friends of Hastings were in high *spirits* when Pitt rose. Id., Warren Hastings, (645a).

\*\* This afforded presumptive proof of the excellent quality of the ale and *spirits* sold within. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXVII, 230.

Toddy, now generic for a hot drink of any kind of *spirits*. FARMER and HENLEY, Dict.

Along the mantelpiece were glass vessels, in which were snakes and lizards and other reptiles preserved in *spirits*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 106).

**spoils** = *booty*. Not seldom found in the singular.

i. He neither cracked his whip, nor blew his horn, | But gazed upon the *spoils* with silent joy. WORDSWORTH, Hart-leap Well, 36.

An ample share of *spoils* was promised to the King of Poland. MAC., Fred., (683a).

ii. And I return to thee, mine own heart's home; | As to his Queen some victor knight of Faery, | Earning bright *spoils* for her enchanted home. SHELLEY, Revolt, Dedic., 4.

Rawdon Crawley did not know what better to do with the *spoils* than to send them to his old friends. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXIII, 357.

France from her geographical position could not directly share in his *spoils*. MAC., Fred., (685b).

Every member of the league would think his own share of the war too large, and his own share of the *spoils* too small. Ib., (687a).

**stables** = *house or shed with stables*. Sometimes found preceded by the indefinite article.

i. The curtain was drawn so as to exclude the dead brick-wall of a neighbour's *stables*. MRS. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIV, 260.ii. I met him according to appointment at a livery *stables* over the Iron Bridge. MARRYAT, Making the Best of it (ROBINSON, The Advanced Reader, 33).

I was supplanted by a shabby man with a squint, who had no other merit than smelling like a livery-*stables*. DICK., Cop., Ch. XIX, 141b.

**stairs** = *staircase*. Originally kept in the singular when a series of steps was meant; instances being still frequent enough in the latest English.

After the indefinite article or a numeral *stairs* is mostly preceded by *flight* or *pair* (36), which latter word anciently had the meaning of *set*.



Sometimes either of these individualizers (36) is dispensed with: *a stairs*. The plural is now regular in the expressions *up-stairs* and *down-stairs*.

- i. She ran nimbly up the *stair*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 27.

"Thank heaven, that is over", George thought, bounding down the *stair*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I.

- ii. \* He would steal cautiously half-way down the *stairs*. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. XX, 135.

It seemed impossible to summon strength and will to beat carpets or sweep down the *stairs*. *Ib.*, 137.

\*\* We hired a bedroom, up two *pair of stairs*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XIII, 83.

It is number 92, up four *pair of stairs*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXX, 341.

\*\*\* I sought a *back-stairs* which conducted directly to the kitchen. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVII, 202.

\*\*\*\* John ran *down-stairs*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal*, Ch. VIII, 85.

**states** = *representatives of the people or governing classes*.

It was with difficulty that the intercession of the *States* of Holland . . . saved the house of Brandenburg from the stain of an unnatural murder. MAC. FRED., (661a). He had borne the commissions of the *States* (General of Holland. *Ib.*, (668a.)

**stays**— a) *orset* (19, a); b) *station or fixed anchorage for vessels*. In the latter application especially in the nautical phrases *in stays* (= *hove in stays*), *to miss stays*. WEBST., Dict.

In a last endeavour to clear the headlands of Clare, she *missed stays*. CHARLES LEVER, 1)

**steps**— a) *series of steps as at the entrance of a house or carriage* (= Dutch stoep or tree); b) *portable frame-work of stairs, step-ladder* (= Dutch (huis)trap). Preceded by *range, flight, line* or *pair* after the indefinite article or a numeral (36). The word is also ordinarily found in the plural in certain collocations as *to bend (direct, turn, went) one's steps, to retrace one's steps, to conduct (guide, etc.) any one's steps, to take steps*, in which the original meaning of *paces* is more or less distinctly felt.

- i. They came thronging up the *steps*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal*, Ch. VIII, 87.

A great powdered fellow in yellow plush breeches pushed me up the *steps* (sc. of the barouche). THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 2.

A hansom really had rolled up to the *steps* outside. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. III, 53.

- ii. He then called down a little break-neck *range of steps* behind a door. "Bring up that tea and bread-and-butter!" DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IX, 63a.

He stood on the top of the *flight of steps*, in full view of the mob. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal*, Ch. VIII, 85.

She descended the *flight of stone steps* in front of the château. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 52.

A long *line of steps* led to the front door. GRAPH.

Just above him was the nursery landing, and near it, leaning against the wall, was the *pair of kitchen steps* with which he had hopes of reaching the roof. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 361.

- iii. He turned his *steps* homeward. WASH. IRV., *Rip van Winkle*.

The Greek *bent his steps* towards a solitary part of the beach. LYTTON, *Last days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. I, 12a.

They *wended their steps* towards Connaught Place. PUNCH.

He *retraced his steps* through the wood. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. IV, 43.

The authorities *took immediate steps* to secure the regular service. TIMES.

1) FLÜGEL.

**stocks** = a) *funds lent to the government and forming part of the national debt* (= Dutch effecten); b) *frame of timbers on which a ship rests while building* (= Dutch schoorbalken); c) *frame for the confinement of criminals* (= Dutch blok); d) *contrivance for making children keep their limbs in the proper position.*

*Stock* in the singular may mean transferable shares in a bank or other company (— Dutch aandeelen). In the second meaning *stocks* is especially frequent in the collocation (*up*)*on the stocks*, which is also used figuratively. Compare Dutch op stapel.

i. He himself has not the moneys by him, but is forced to sell *stock* at a great loss. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 1, (390).

I sent to my aunt 120 l. sterling as the amount of the interest of the *stock* in my name. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VIII, 86.

ii. \* I believe she owns half the *stocks*. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1, (214).

The *stocks* are at ninety, and Mrs. Hoggarty can get three per cent. for her money. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 62.

\*\* The vessel glided quietly off the *stocks*.

I am told Mr. Dryden has something of this nature new *upon the stocks*. THOM. BROWN.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* Fetch forth the *stocks*! As I have life and honour, | There shall he sit till noon. Lear, II, 2, 140.

\*\*\*\* I hear a flying rumour that the Misses Nettingall have stood Miss Shepherd in the *stocks* for turning in her toes. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XVIII, 133a.

**stores** = a) *supplies, as of provisions, ammunition, arms, clothing and the like for an army, a ship, etc.*; b) *number of shops managed by one society or firm established in one building* (= Dutch warenhuis). In the second meaning sometimes found preceded by the indefinite article. In this case the singular form is also used in the same meaning.

i. The Japanese captain was so kind as to double this out of his own *stores*. SWIFT, *Gul. Trav.*, III, Ch. I, (164a).

The vessel, with all her *stores* and arms, was sold at Dumfries. WILLIAM GUNNYON, *Biographical Sketch of Robert Burns*, 38.

The last thing he wrote was an epigram on the building of a magazine for arms and *stores*. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, Swift, 4, Note.

Then with what she brought | Buy goods and *stores* — set Annie forth in trade. TEN., *Enoch Arden*, 138.

ii. \* The *stores* are situated within five minutes' walk of Victoria Station. *Price-List of the Army and Navy Co-operative Society*.

\*\* If I was a *co-operative stores* and family hotel combined, I might be able to oblige you. JER., *Three men in a Boat*, Ch. I, 5.

\*\*\* It had become a sort of small *co-operative store*. Id., *Idle Thoughts*, XII, 209.

**strings** in the compound *leading strings* (19, a).

**studies** = *cultivation of a particular branch of arts or sciences.*

Nothing happened to interrupt the quiet course of Adèle's *studies*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVI, 184.

Up went the king's cane, away ran the terrified instructor and Frederic's classical *studies* ended for ever. MAC., *Fred.*, (662a).

He looked forward at this time to a post provided by Government: legal *studies* in the meantime having lapsed. STEPHEN GWYNN, *Thomas Moore*, Ch. I, 27.

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL.

In the education of girls social accomplishments carried off the palm from more serious *studies*. JOHN FINNEMORE, *Social Life in England*, II, Ch. VIII, 59. You find us at our *studies*, you see, said the Doctor. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIV, 274.

**supplies** = a) *stores or articles necessary for an army or other great body of people*; b) *grant of money provided by a national assembly to meet the expenses of government*.

i. The *supplies* from France thus effectually cut off. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Ch. IX, 247.

ii. to vote *supplies*. WEBST., *Dict.*

It was even recommended that the *supplies* should be stopped. MACAULAY.<sup>1)</sup>

**tablets** = *pocket memorandum-book*. Now infrequent; formerly called *tables*.

i. And the Count was proceeding to enter Mr. Pickwick's name in his *tablets*, as a gentleman of the long robe. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 133.

"Stop!" exclaimed the Count, bringing out the *tablets* once more. *Ib.*, Ch. XV, 134.

Across the waist a girdle served in lieu of pockets for the receptacle of the handkerchief and the purse, the stilus and the *tablets*. LYTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. I, 9b.

ii. My *tables*, — meet it is I set it down, | That one may smile, and smile, and be a villain. Hamlet, I, 5, 107.

Therefore will he wipe his *tables* clean. Henry IV, B, II, 4, 289.

**terms** = a) *conditions*; b) *agreement*; c) *diction, words* (= Dutch *beoordingen*); d) *relative position*; e) *footing*.

*Terms* in the meaning of *agreement* is chiefly found in certain phrases, such as *to come to terms*, *to make terms*, *to reduce to terms*. In the collocation *in terms*, in which *terms* is used in the third meaning, the word is equivalent to *terms required by the case* (= Dutch *geijkte termen*).

In the fourth and fifth applications *terms* without a defining adjective means respectively *equal terms* and *good terms*. (Compare *looks, parts and spirits*).

i. *Terms* were hard *terms*; but not to be rejected. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXIII, 165.

Not content with concluding peace on *terms* favourable to Prussia, he solicited rank in the Prussian service. MAC., *Fred.*, (699a).

Such a place was found on very easy *terms*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 525.

She (sc. England) at once became the most formidable power in the world, dictated *terms* of peace to the United Provinces. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 135.

ii. The town may *make terms* with the enemy. *Id.*, *Fred.*, (697b).

Others were for *making terms* with the enemy. WALT. BESANT, *London*, I, 31.

The question for the landed and wealthy classes is whether they will *make terms* with it (sc. the demand for a better and healthier existence . . . for the masses of the people) or be *reduced to terms*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 1c.

iii. \* My master at last lost patience, and in plain *terms* taxed me with having embezzled them for my own use. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XX, 139.

In his letters and conversation he alluded to the greatest potentates of his age in *terms* which would have better suited Collé. MAC., *Fred.*, (685a).

Methuen speaks in high *terms* of the intelligent manner in which the Imperial Yeomanry and the Kimberley mounted corps behaved. Morning Leader.

He has frequently spoken to me of your house of business in *terms* of great praise. Business Letter-Writer, I.

\*\* He distinctly and *in terms* offered her marriage. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 310.

1) FLÜGEL.

iv. He had maintained a contest, on *terms* of advantage, against the powers. MAC., Fred., (693a).

He crossed swords on equal *terms* with one of the greatest statesmen of the century. TIMES.

This week P. and M. are playing 8000 up, spot-barred, on even *terms*. GRAPH. Although he played probably as well as ever he did in his life, he could never quite get on *terms* with White, who eventually won by 604 points. GRAPH.

v. \* He lived on *terms* of the greatest intimacy with many persons of the highest rank. Preface to Gay's Beggar's Opera.

They were not upon good *terms* with each other. SOUTHEY, Life of Nelson, Ch. IX, 257.

The English people showed that it was anxious to live on good *terms* with its nearest neighbour. Daily Mail.

\*\* We have lived much together, and always on *terms*. SHER., Riv., V, 1, (275).

**terrors** = *visions of terror* (= Dutch schrikbeelden).

It is impossible to express the *terrors* of my imagination. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXII, 155.

The bright cheery day soon put to flight the *terrors* of the preceding night. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 118).

**things** = *matters, affairs in a vague sense* (Ch. XXXI, 57). Sometimes added to (an)other noun(s), as a vague indication of further details. Observe also *no great things* (= Dutch niet veel zaaks). Compare 21, s. v. *shakes*.

i. They resolved to bring *things* to a crisis. MAC., Pitt, (297a).

While *things* went on quietly, Fox had a decided advantage over Pitt. Ib., (298a).

You carry *things* too far. GRANT ALLEN, Tents of Shem, Ch. IX.

ii. She would come wistfully into my rooms, bringing me my gruel and *things*. THACK., Lovel the Widower, Ch. II, 26.

iii. Fanny was well enough, but Biddy was *no great things*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XI, 113.

**thrills** = *a kind of disease* (19, c).

**times** = *circumstances generally* (Ch. XXXI, 57). The plural is also usual in many combinations denoting a particular period, such as *the times of the Stuarts, pre-historic times, those godless times, the good old times, things have changed since those times* (FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict. s. v. *time*), *pre-Victorian times* (Westm. Gaz., No. 6065, 5a).

Note especially *abreast of (with) the times* (= Dutch op de hoogte van zijn tijd), *behind the times* (= Dutch zijn tijd ten achter), *to keep pace with the times* (= Dutch met zijn tijd meegaan).

i. *Times* grew worse and worse with Rip van Winkle as years of matrimony rolled on. WASH. IRV., Rip van Winkle.

ii. It's very natural that he should think me *behind the times*. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. V, 51.

The Modern Cyclopædia is fully *abreast of the times*. Athen.

The Magazine you must have to keep *abreast of the times*. Stead's Annual, 1906, 40b.

Something which serious people must understand and appraise rightly if they are to keep *abreast of these times*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5149, 1c.

He makes no attempt to *keep pace with the times*. Ib., No. 6011, 4b.

**tithes** = *tenth part of the increase arising from the profits of land and stock, allotted to the clergy for their support*.

I pay her rights duly and cheerfully; *tithes* and alms, wine and wax, I pay them as justly, I say, as any man in Perth of my means doth. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. V, 53.



**transports** = *manifestations of vehement emotion*. Often used in the singular in the same meaning.

- i. We had now, therefore, the satisfaction of seeing them fly into each other's arms in a *transport*. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. XXXI, (471).  
They shook their chains | In *transport* and rude harmony. Ib., Ch. XXXI, (474).
- ii. The warmest *transports* of the fondest lover were not greater than mine. Ib., Ch. XXXI, 473.  
The news was received at Fort St. George with *transports* of joy and pride. Mac., Clive, (507b).  
The offences of his youth excited, however, *transports* of rage in the King. Id., Fred., (660b).

**travels** = a) *journeys (voyages) of discovery*; b) *account of occurrences and observations made during a journey*. The singular form is used in the sense of *travelling*.

- i. Except as a means of *travel* money had no charm for him. DOR. GERARD, Etern. Wom., Ch. XXV.  
It was distant a day's *travel*. BRET HARTE, Outcasts of Poker Flat, 21.
- ii. Upon the whole, I never beheld in all my *travels* so disagreeable an animal. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., IV, Ch. I, (189b).
- iii. I have perused several books of *travels* with great delight in my younger days. Ib., Ch. XII, 214b.  
Writers of *travels* are sunk into oblivion. Ib., IV, Ch. XII, 214b.

**troops** = *army*.

The havoc which the war had made among his *troops* was rapidly repaired. Mac., Fred., (695a).

His feeling about his *troops* seems to have resembled a miser's feeling about his money. Ib., (659b).

The *troops* were formed up at 8 a. m. Graph.

**trunks** = *trunk-hose* [colloquial (8)].

**vaults** = *large cellar*. Sometimes preceded by the indefinite article. STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 686.

- i. A thousand a year, besides the rent of the *wine-vaults* below the chapel. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XI, 131.  
Confound it! there are *wine-vaults* under the chapel. Ib., 132.
- ii. Mr. Bob Sawyer had himself purchased the spirits at a *wine vaults* in High Street. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXII, 284.

**wars** = *seat of war*. Especially in the phrases *to be at the wars*, *to go to the wars*, *to return from the wars*. SATTLER, E. S., XVI.

Is Signor Montante *returned from the wars*, Much ado, I, 1, 31.

He *went to the wars*. WASH. IRV., Rip van Winkle.

Some half-dozen of his brothers and kinsmen *had gone to the wars*. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. II, 25.

Dear Madam, Philip is but *at the wars*. TEN., Queen Mary, V, 5, (648b).

**waters** = a) *tract covered with water*; b) *water impregnated with such ingredients as to give it medicinal properties or a particular flavour or temperature*. In the second meaning mostly preceded by a defining adjective: *mineral waters*, *medicinal waters*.

- i. Our fleet was ordered to the Greek *waters*. BAIN, Companion, 33.  
Every region of the *waters* is alive with its own chosen fish. Suggestive Lessons, I, 114.
- ii. Strong *waters* are apt to give me the headache. GAY, Beggar's Opera, III.  
Neither my master nor I drink the *waters*. SHER., Riv., I, 1.

**ways** = *a) timbers on which a ship is launched (= stocks); b) courses.* Also a plurale tantum in the word-group *ways and means* (usual meaning: financial resources; *means and ways* is a rare variant), and in the collocation *to find ways* (= to find means).

i. The vessel as she appeared after leaving the *ways*. *Il. Lond. News*

Lady Lucy Hicks Beach cutting the last cord which held the vessel to the *ways*. *lb.*

ii. Let us look up to God, and every man reform his own *ways*. *BACON, New Atlantis, (274).*

He has got into bad *ways*. *LYTTON, Night and Morning, 160.*

iii. \* He was cogitating in his mind his *ways and means* of paying certain arrears of rent. *DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. III, 8b.*

Philip had despatched Ruy Gomez to Spain for the purpose of providing *ways and means*. *MOTLEY, Rise, I, Ch. II, 88b,*

Martha had to shirk many a perplexed question as to *ways and means* of living in such a house. *Mrs. GASK., Cranford, Ch. XV, 286.*

\*\* 'There are many other *ways and means* by which the taxing power may be used to bring the Peers to reason. *Rev. of Rev., CCIII, 452b.*

\*\*\* Butlers, cooks, and ladies of high standing furiously discuss the *means and ways* of evasion and contravention. *Eng. Rev., Aug. 1912, 89.*

iv. He will *find ways* of eluding your father's anger. *HOR. WALPOLE, Castle of Otranto, Ch. II, 69.*

**weeds** = *useless and troublesome plants.* The singular occurs not infrequently to denote a particular noxious plant.

i. They bid thee crop a *weed*, thou pluck'st a flower.. *SHAKESP., Venus, 946.*

And I am helpless as a trodden *weed*. *W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., The Son of Cræsus, LXI.*

But O the pity | To find thine own first love once more . . . and then — cast her aside, | Foregoing all her sweetness, like a *weed*. *TEN., Holy Grail, 622.*

ii. Small herbs have grace, great *weeds* do grow apace. *Richard III, II, 4, 13.*

A wild, where *weeds* and flow'rs promiscuous shoot. *POPE, Essay on Man, l. 7.*

In a world liable to become overgrown with *weeds* and choked with refuse, the cleansing work of a firebrand may from time to time be a necessity. *OL. LODGE, Introd. to Huxl. Es.*

**wits** = *mental faculty.* Occasionally found in the singular in the same meaning. The plural is regular in certain phrases, such as *to be out of one's wits, to wander in one's wits, to live by one's wits, to lose one's wits, to have all one's wits about one.*

In the phrase *at one's wits end* some writers prefer to write *wit's*, i. e. the genitive singular instead of the genitive plural. *JESP., Growth and Structure, § 181.*

Note also *the five wits = the five senses.*

i. \* Paul had *wit* enough to shake his head. *DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 105.*

O, these are hard questions for my shallow *wit*. *Old Ballad (Rainbow, II, 47).*

A fool may learn a wise man *wit*. *lb., 49.*

She has brains in plenty (much more *wit* in her little finger than you have in all your head). *THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XV, 158.*

Will was one whose *wit* keeps the roadway. *G. ELIOT, Mid., V, Ch. XLVII, 346.*

\*\* "I — I didn't receive it," said Paul, *at his wit's end*. *ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. XI, 219.*

He was *at his wit's end*. *FLOR. MONTGOMERY, Misunderstood, Ch. V, 67*

He must have been *at his wit's end* when he had recourse to so lame and impotent a defence. *W. GUNNYON, Biograph. Sketch of Burns, 48.*

- ii. \* The dulness of the fool is the whetstone of the *wits*. As you like it, I, I, 50.  
He drained the jug to the great apparent refreshment and steadying of his *wits*. II. Mag.

George was calling up his courage and *wits* to open the subject. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 17.

\*\* The old Marchioness was *wandering in her wits*. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, III, Ch. II, 318.

Gay was then *living by his wits*. MAC., *Addison*, (773b).

The Duke was scared out of his *wits*. Id., Pitt, (301a).

The suggestion nearly *frightened* the Minister of the Interior out of his *wits*. Truth, No. 1802, 85a.

He was at his *wits' end*. Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 285.

The Minister of the Interior, *driven to his wits' end*, . . . hit upon an idea which certainly had never occurred to any statesman before. Truth, No. 1802, 85a.

\*\*\* Four of his *five wits* went halting off. Much ado, I, I, 66.

**works** = a) *establishment where work is carried on extensively*; b) *moral duties, or external performances as a ground of pardon or justification* (— Dutch *goede werken*); c) *wheelwork or machinery as of a watch*.

*Works*, as used in the first meaning, is often found preceded by the indefinite article, but for the rest seems to be ordinarily treated as a plural. The compound *fireworks* is mostly preceded by an individualizer, e. g. *show, display*, after the indefinite article (36), but a *firework* is also met with.

Note also *earthworks* (Ch. XXIII, 7, Obs. I, a) and *waterworks* in the familiar phrase *to turn on the waterworks*.

- i. \* A bit of water between a coal-barge and a *gas-works* would have quite satisfied us for the night. JEROME, *Three men in a boat*, Ch. X, 116.  
They were employed at a mill, a factory, a *print-works* or a *bleach-works*. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VI, 81.

\*\* *That works* is like a millstone round our neck. A. BENNETT, *Cupid and Common Sense*, 59.

- ii. Was not Abraham, our father, justified by *works*, when he had offered Isaac his son upon the altar. Bible, James, II, 21.

Holy men have bidden penitents to hasten their path upward by penance, self-denial and *good works*. Ch. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XV, 202.

- iii. The clock was wrong. An icicle must have got into the *works*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 31.

- iv. \* Harry . . . had never seen a *firework* beyond an exhibition of a dozen squibs at Williamsburg on the Fifth of November. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVII, 387.

A man's heart is a *firework* that once in its time flashes heavenward. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 84.

\*\* The banquet was followed by brilliant *fireworks*. MACAULAY.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* He would aim at being noticeable even at a *show of fireworks*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XLI, 306.

A highly successful *display of fireworks*. JEROME, *Variety Patter*, 152.

- v. You need not go *a-turning on the waterworks* again. M. E. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XXI.

21. Some nouns, although no pluralia tantum, are always used in the plural in certain phrases or collocations. This applies especially

to some names of parts of the human or animal body, which occur in pairs or larger numbers: *hands, knees, legs, heels, feel, teeth*. These require no illustration in these pages.

Also several of the nouns passed in review in the preceding § are chiefly found in certain fixed combinations.

Besides the above the following nouns may here be mentioned:

**age:** in *the Middle Ages* (the singular is occasionally met with); *ages ago* (— Dutch *tijden geleden*).

i. \* *The Middle Age* adorned itself with proofs of manhood and devotion. EMERSON, *English Traits, Aristocracy*, 119a.

Aristo and Bojardo gave the brilliant and vivid colour of their own times, and of the civilization of *the later middle age*, to the rude material they found in the early legends. F. J. ROWE, *Introd. to Ten. Lanc. and El.*, 30.

\*\* A view of the state of Europe during *the Middle Ages*. HALLAM. 1)

ii. Peggotty has told me — I don't know when, but apparently *ages ago* — about my father's funeral. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 7b.

**bone:** in *to make bones about (of)*. Ch. XIX, 24.

**book:** in *to be (keep) in (on) a man's (good) books* (— Dutch *bij iemand in een goed blaadje staan (blijven)*); *to be (keep) in (on) a man's black books* (= Dutch *bij iemand in een slecht blaadje staan (blijven)*); *to be (keep) out of a person's books* (= Dutch *bij iemand uit de gunst zijn (blijven)*); *to be upon the books* (— Dutch *ingeschreven zijn*); *to take one's name off the books* (= Dutch *zich laten afschrijven*); *to close the books* (= Dutch *de inschrijving sluiten*); *to shut the books* (= Dutch *de zaken aan kant doen*); *to keep any one's books* (= Dutch *iemand's boeken bijhouden*).

i. I see the gentleman is not in *your books*. Much ado, I, 1.

ii. She gave me half-a-soy this half and perhaps she'll double it next, if I *keep in her good books*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch V, 86.

iii. I'm in *her black books*. (?), *The Mischiefmaker*, Ch. VII.

Unfortunately he had come to be *on the black books* of the Triple Alliance. *Rev. of Rev.*

iv. I am sorry to say I am *out of his books*.

v. She continued *on the books* as an out-patient. WATSON. 1)

vi. The young scapegrace *took his name off the college books*. HOLME LEE. 1)

vii. You cannot be admitted now because *the books are closed*.

viii. He has decided *to shut the books* because the business no longer yields a decent profit

ix. She kept her father's *books*. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch XX, 135.

**chance:** in *the chances are* (= Dutch *het is best mogelijk*).

Open any one of the monthly numbers, and *the chances are* you will find in one part a neat little doctrinal essay. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XI, 222.

*The chances are* he will not be happy. STEVENSON, *Walking Tours* (PEACOCK, *Sel. Es.*, 537).

**conclusion:** in *to try (challenge) conclusions* (— Dutch 1<sup>o</sup> *de proef nemen*; 2<sup>o</sup> *zich meten*).

i. No, in despite of sense and secrecy, | Unpeg the basket on the house's top, | Let the birds fly, and, like the famous ape, | *To try conclusions*, in the basket creep, | And break your neck down. HAMIL., III, 4, 195.

1) MURRAY.



- ii. They believed themselves strong enough *to try conclusions* with their employers. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Pref., 41.  
Town-dwellers know better than *to try conclusions* with street-noises. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. I.  
When the cow *challenges conclusions* with an express train, the cow's miscalculation of the parallelogram of forces does not avail to save her from destruction. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCIII, 452a.

**counsel:** in *to leave (abandon) to one's own counsels* (= Dutch voor zich zelf laten zorgen).

I also experienced the glow of independence, mingled with that degree of anxiety which the most conceited boy feels, when he is first *abandoned to his own* undirected *counsels*. SCOTT, *Fair Maid of Perth*, Ch. I, 19.

**cudgel:** in *to take up the cudgels for (in or on behalf of)* (= Dutch het opnemen voor).

It was neither my business nor my inclination *to take up the cudgels on Hilda's behalf*. W. E. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVII, 113.

**device:** in *to leave (abandon) to one's own devices* (= Dutch voor zich zelf laten zorgen).

What would you do, if *left to your own devices*? MRS. WOOD, *G. Canterbury's Will*, XV.

I *abandoned him to his own devices* this evening. TRUTH, No. 1902, 113a.

**dog:** in *to go to the dogs* (= Dutch naar den kelder gaan); *to throw to the dogs* (= Dutch uit het raam gooien, fig.).

- i. Egad, sir, the country is *going to the dogs*. LYTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. IV, 45.  
If he stays eating his heart out in London, he will *go to the dogs* in no time. LYALL, *A Hardy Horseman*, Ch. X, 84.  
ii. *Throw physic to the dogs*. MACB., V, 3, 47.  
He told Dolf never to despair, but *to 'throw physic to the dogs'*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 138).

**fit:** in *to scream (laugh, etc.) oneself into fits* (= Dutch zich een stuip schreeuwen (lachen, etc.); *to throw a person into fits* (= Dutch iemand een stuip geven); *to beat a person (a thing) into fits* iemand (iets) de baas af zijn, het geheel van iemand (iets) winnen); *to give a person fits* (= iemand totaal verslaan, also iemand er duchtig doorhalen); *by fits and starts* (= Dutch bij buien).

- i. The little wretch *screams herself into fits*. THACKERAY.<sup>1)</sup>  
ii. Such a proposal would have *thrown him into fits*. L. HARCOURT.<sup>1)</sup>  
iii. They had been sometimes known to *beat a blustering Nor'-Wester* —; ay, "*all to fits*," as Toby Veck said. DICK., *Chimes*, I, 4.  
iv. We goes out and tackles a East indiaman and he *gives us fits*. RUNCIMAN.<sup>1)</sup>  
I rather guess as how the old man will *give particular fits* to our folks to-day. E. EGGESTON.<sup>1)</sup>  
v. They worked well *by fits and starts*. SARAH GRAND, *Heav. Twins*, I, 129.

**friend:** in *to be friends with a person* (= Dutch vriendschappelijk met iemand omgaan); *to make friends with (of) a man* (= Dutch vriendschap met iemand sluiten); *to drink friends* (= Dutch het afdrinken); *to feel friends with a man* (= Dutch met iemand op hebben). See also Ch. XXVI, 5, e, Note.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

i. *Friends am I with you all.* JUL. CÆS., III, 1, 220.

You can't *be friends* with your own girls. W. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. VII, 66.

Dick is a real good fellow; *be friends* with him. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. III, 59.

*Be friends* with him as long as you stay here. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. III, 27a.

ii. \* I like her and shall *make friends* with her. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 181.  
Lady Henry has *made great friends* with him. Id., *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. IV, 33b.

\*\* She resolved to *make friends* of every one around her who could at all interfere with her comfort. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. X, 93.

iii. The victory being thus decided, it was proposed to adjourn to a cellar hard by, and *drink friends*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XVIII, 118.iv. Tom, notwithstanding his bumptiousness, *felt friends* with him at once. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. I, 86.

**grip:** in *to be at grips* (*with*) (= Dutch *bij de haren hebben*).

Even the relations of Japan and Russia, so recently *at grips* with one another, are constantly increasing in intimacy. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4919, 2a.

The monarchy is *at death grips* with murder. *Rev. 'of Rev.*, CCI, 227b.

**gun:** in *to stick* (*stand*) *to one's guns* (= Dutch *op zijn stuk blijven staan*); *to blow great guns* (= Dutch *eën storm waaien*). In the first expression the singular occasionally takes the place of the plural.

i. \* But Augusta, though she felt sadly inclined to flee, still *stood to her guns*. RIDER HAGGARD, *Mees. Will*, Ch. I, 7.

An animated colloquy ensued. *Manvers stuck to his guns*. MRS. ALEXANDER.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* He *stood to his gun* like a man. EMILY LAWLESS, *A Colonel of the Empire*, Ch. X.

ii. I had been in Yarmouth when the seamen said it *blew great guns*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LV, 392a.

It *blows great guns* indeed. There'll be many a crash in the forest to-night. Id., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. XXXIII, 128b.

**hair:** in *to split hairs* (= Dutch *haarkloven*); *grey hairs* as the symbol of old age, in allusion to Gen., XLIV, 29.

Note. For *to split hairs* we also find *to split straws*; see below.

In the second collocation *grey* sometimes varies with *white*, *venerable* and similar words. *Young hairs* is occasionally used to mark the opposite of *grey hairs*. The plural is also sometimes used when *grey*, etc. are used predicatively.

Early Modern English practice sometimes has the plural where the present has the singular. Observe also the singular number in *His hair rose* (*stood*) *on end* (*erect*) where the Dutch equivalent *Zijne haren rezen ten berge* has the plural.

i. \* His *hair began to rise* on his head. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 119).

The *hair* of the pupil's head would *stand on end* with fright. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 151.

His blood froze, his *hair stood erect*. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 480.

Uncle Tom's *hair stood on end* with alarm. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of them*, Ch. XI.

My *hair stood erect* on my head with horror. Id., *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

\*\* My *hair* is *grey*, but not with years. BYRON, *Pris. of Chil.*, I.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

ii. \* I cannot *split hairs* on that burning query. HARDY, *Tess*, II, Ch. XII, 100.

\*\* Ye shall bring down my *grey hairs* with sorrow to the grave. Bible, Gen., XLIX, 29.

It would also bring the *grey hairs* of an indulgent parent with sorrow to the grave. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXII, 151.

The oldest man he seemed that ever wore *grey hairs*. WORDSWORTH, *Resolution and Independence*, VIII.

Lady Henry pays no more attention to his cloth than to my *grey hairs*. Mrs. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daughter*, I, Ch. I, 11b.

*Grey hairs* are a crown of glory. CHESTERTON (II. Lond. News, No. 3828, 340b).

\*\*\* O let us have him (sc. Cicero); for his *silver hairs* | Will purchase us a good opinion. JUL. CÆS., II, 1, 144.

How hideously look deeds of lust and blood | Through those *snow-white and venerable hairs*. SHELLEY, *Cenci*, I, 1, 49.

I, who have *white hairs* and a tottering body, | Will keep at least blameless neutrality. *Ib.*, II, 2, 39.

If peradventure, reader, it has been thy lot . . . to have thy prison days prolonged through middle age down to decrepitude and *silver hairs* [etc.]. CH. LAMB, *Last Es. of El.*, *The Superannuated Man*, (322).

He has shown grey wit under *young hairs*. LYTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 97.

\*\*\*\* And when my *hairs* are *white*, | My son will then perhaps be waiting thus. SHELLEY, *Cenci*, III, 2, 25.

My *hairs* are *grey* with suffering, and yours with years. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*.

\*\*\*\*\* Bind up your *hairs*. JOHN, III, 4, 68.

Here in her *hairs* | The painter plays the spider and hath woven | A golden mesh to entrap the hearts of men. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 2, 120.

**half:** in *to cry halves* (= Dutch 'samen deelen' roepen); *to go halves* (= Dutch half staan, gelijkop deelen, voor de helft meedoen); *to do a thing by halves* (= Dutch iets ten halve doen).

Note. For *to go halves* we occasionally find *to go half*.

i. You cannot *cry halves* to anything that he (sc. a true Caledonian) finds. He does not find but bring. CH. LAMB, *Es. of Elia*, *Imperf. Sympathies*, (203).

ii. \* You have consented to *go halves* in Macheath. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, II, 1. I'll *go halves* in the bet. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 377.

I wouldn't *go halves* in the toffee and gingerbread on purpose to save the money. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 26.

Borrow all you can get, and meantime we'll *go halves*. W. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, I, Ch. V, 82.

Mr. Beit replied that in whatever Rhodes decided to do he would *go halves*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CC, 140a.

\*\* "I'll *go half*," he said, "if anybody will do the rest." THACK. (*Trol.*, *Thack.*, Ch. I, 60).

iii. I have no notion of loving people *by halves*. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. VI, 28.

Bless these women; they never do anything *by halves*. DICK., *Christm. Car*, III, 67.

When Lord Steyne was benevolently disposed, he did nothing *by halves*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XVII, 180.

**hook:** in the colloquial *off the hooks* ( Dutch het hoekje om).

Why do you wish her *off the hooks*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIII, 238.

Mabilda — as his Reverence expressed it — was very nearly "*off the hooks*." *Id.* *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 139.

**length:** in *to carry to lengths* (= Dutch *het zoo ver drijven*); *to go (to) all (considerable, etc. lengths* (= Dutch *tot het uiterste, ver, etc. gaan*).

Note. The singular form is retained before specializing *of* + gerund.

i. Mrs. Tulliver never *went the length* of quarrelling with her. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, Ch. VII, 46.

He *went the length* of suggesting [etc.]. *Times*.

ii. \* He *carried* that policy *to lengths* to which his father never thought of carrying it. MAC., *Fred.*, (672*b*).

\*\* I felt resolved in my desperation *to go all lengths*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 7.

I am prepared *to go to considerable lengths*. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXII, 456.

There are *no lengths* to which she would not *go*. DON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, I, 26.

**lots:** in *to cast (draw) lots* (= Dutch *loten*). Occasionally also in other collocations, such as *the lots declared*.

i. *Lots were cast* who should walk up to the master after supper that evening and ask for more. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 30.

The guests then *draw lots* as to who shall begin. DOBSON, *Eng. Lit.*, 37.

The members were bound to take other measures for finding out the truth, and they resolved on praying and *drawing lots*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. I, 9.

ii. *The lots declared* that Silas Marner was guilty. *Ib.*

**mercy:** in *the tender mercies* (= Dutch *de genade*).

If he could have known that he was an orphan, left to *the tender mercies* of church-wardens and overseers, perhaps he would have cried the louder. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 21.

**name:** in *to call names* (= Dutch *(uit)schelden*).

"Don't *call names*!" Dobbin replied, getting off the bench very nervous. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 42.

**nut:** in the colloquial *to be nuts on* (= Dutch *dol zijn op*).

*I'm nuts on* that girl. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. II, 58.

She was *nuts on* Public Houses, was England's Virgin Queen. JEROME, *Three men in a boat*, Ch. VI, 61.

**probability:** in *the probabilities are* (= Dutch *het is waarschijnlijk*). The singular occurs as an occasional variant.

i. *The probability is* that the Turkish army and the survivors of the right wing are not at Chorlu. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6065, 1*b*.

ii. What are *the probabilities* as the result of the contest? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIII, 106. *The probabilities are* all against such a Bill ever passing at all. *Truth*, No. 1802, 81*a*.

**round:** in *to go the rounds (of)* (= Dutch *de ronde doen (in)*). The singular is not infrequent.

i. The following anecdote . . . is now *going the round* of the papers. THACK., *Paris Sketch-Bk.*, I.

This celebrated epistle . . . created quite a sensation . . . as it *went the round* after tea. HUGHES, *Tom Brown at Oxf.*, Ch. II.

ii. At last we *went the rounds* at half-past six. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. X, 180. A story is *going the rounds* concerning a well-know essayist. *Lit. World*.

A letter from a London doctor which *has been going the rounds* of the Press. *Times*.

**sea:** in *the high seas* (= Dutch *de open zee*). In certain combinations the plural is also common in poetic or rhetorical diction.



- i. When the United States puts a navy on *the high seas*, it is like a tortoise which puts its head out of its shell. Rev. of Rev., CCXVII, 9b.  
The coming war will be fought out on *the high-seas*. Times.
- ii. England still *held the seas*. GREEN, Short. Hist., Ch. X, § IV, 810.  
Freed from the dangers that threatened her rule in Ireland and in India, and *mistress of the seas*, England was free to attack France. Ib., Ch. X, § IV, 811.  
Whosoever has children, wards, etc. in the parts *beyond the seas*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. III, 22b.  
No one, since Milton laid down his harp, would have written these lines on England as the *sovereign of the seas*. STOPFORD A. BROOKE, Stud. in Poetry, Ch. I, 8.

**shake**: in the colloquial expression *no great shakes* (= Dutch *niet veel zaa's*). Also, occasionally, without *no*.

He'd be *no great shakes*. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. IV, 24.

Carriages themselves were *great shakes* too. Mrs. GASK, Mary Barton, Ch. IX, 94.

**share**: in *to go shares* (= *to go snacks* = *to go snips* = Dutch *half staan*, also *gelijkop deelen*); *on shares* (= Dutch *tegen de halve opbrengst*).

- i. \* *Go shares* with me. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. IV, 33b.

You'd want to *go shares* in my money. W. W. JACOBS, Odd Craft, D, 86.

\*\* None of them replied solely upon that interest without a present to the s-ty, with whom some of the c— *went snacks*. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XVIII, 117.

- ii. That the place might not fall to ruin before he could reside in it himself, he had placed a country-hollow with his family, in one wing, with the privilege of cultivating the farm *on shares*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 109.

**side**: in *to takes sides* (= Dutch *partij kiezen*).

M. Brand subsequently disclaimed any desire on the part of the State *to take sides* in the great controversy of God and no-God. Rev. of Rev., CCVII, 238b.

We do not wish *to take sides* in the squabble. Westm. Gaz.

**sky**: in *to commend* (*exalt, extol, laud, praise*) *to the skies* (= Dutch *hemelhoog verheffen*). In rhetorical diction also frequent in other combinations.

- i. Graham was shortly heard *lauding her to the skies*. CH. BRONTE, Villette, Ch. II, 14.

We *exalted* Steerforth *to the skies*. DICK., Cop., Ch. VII, 51a.

Your discernment and intelligence will be *extolled to the skies*. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, II, 47.

- ii. The *skies* were tinged with pink. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. VIII, 89.

**sort**: in *out of shorts* (= Dutch *van streek*).

She looked confused and *out of sorts*. DICK., Cop., Ch. III, 21a.

'Tan't lawful to be *out of sorts*, and I am *out of sorts*; though God knows I'd sooner bear a cheerful spirit. Id., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, II, 54.

**star**: in *to thank one's stars* (= Dutch *zijn gestarnte zegenen*). I *thanked my stars* a thousand times for the happy discovery. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XX, 136.

Your mother-in-law is always within hearing, *thank our stars* for the attention of the dear women. THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. III, 313.  
He was *thanking his stars* that he was not as Ribot. DU MAURIER, Trilby, I, 207.  
*Thank your stars*, girl, that it was not you, I killed, but the cur. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. IV, 37.

Compare: His soldiers had ceased to confide in his *star*. MAC., Fred., (689b).

**starts:** in *by starts . . . by starts* (= *sometimes . . . sometimes* = Dutch *nu eens . . . dan weer*); *by fits and starts* (See above, under *fits*).

And, in these later years, when he had made you the companion of his misery, he has been *by starts* your pedagogue *by starts* your tormentor, but never, Mordaunt, never your father. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. XXXIII, 360.

**straw:** in *to split straws* (= Dutch *haarkloven*). Compare pag. 235, s. v. *hair*.

We won't waste time in *splitting straws*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. X, 86.

**table:** in *to turn the tables* (= Dutch *de bordjes verhangen*).

Not that I ever suffered from them (sc. governesses): I took care *to turn the tables*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVII, 214.

I think I should have *turned the tables on* him. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 227.  
*The tables had been turned on* the Peers. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.* Ch. XXIV, 366.  
 If you can't see that *the tables are turned* at last, you're a duller knave than I take you to be. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 374.

**tale:** in *to tell (bear, bring, carry) tales (out of school)* (= Dutch *niet de school klappen, klikken*).

Go and *tell tales* of me. THACK., *Lovel the Widower*, Ch. III, 50.

There is no use in *telling tales* out of school. Id., *Denis Duval*, Ch. I, 183.

No doubt the worthy gentleman was accusing himself of *telling tales* out of school and had come to a timely repentance. Id., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XII, 150.

Neither you nor yours shall henceforth *carry tales* of my godson. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. II, 136.

**turn:** in *to take turns in (at)* + gerund (= Dutch *bij beurten (beurtelings)* + inf.; *to wait turns* (= Dutch *zijn beurt afwachten*); *by turns* (= Dutch *bij beurten*).

i. The peasants *take turns* in receiving travellers. LONGF., *Rural Life in Sweden*.

We *took turns* at holding a candle, as, of course, there was no light. TIMES.

ii. A group of people *were waiting turns* at the telescope. E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. IV.

iii. They kept watch *by turns*. FOLK LORE.

**volume:** in *to speak (express) volumes*, and analogous expressions (= Dutch *veel zeggen, fig.*).

i. Two letters have passed between these parties, letters which are admitted to be in the handwriting of the defendant, and which *speak volumes* indeed. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 310.

Her blush *spoke volumes*. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

ii. I questioned age; it heaved a heavy sigh, | *Expressing volumes*. ANON. (*Rainb.* I, 20).

iii. Henry shook his head, gazed into the ashpit, and *smiled volumes* of ironical knowledge. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. VIII, 71.

iv. *Volumes* could not have *said* more. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIII, 105.

**water:** in *to fish in troubled waters* (= Dutch *in troebel water visschen*); *still waters run deep* (= Dutch *stille waters hebben diepe gronden*). Frequently also in certain combinations in poetic or rhetorical diction.

i. And behind these groups there is always the dim figure of the old Sultan *fishin*g *in troubled waters*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 4977, 1b.

ii. My mind misgives me that he is *in deep waters*. STEPHENSON, *Dr. Jekyll*, 82.  
 He *went through deep waters*. W. RALEIGH, *Shakespeare*, Ch. II, 62.

I had not the precious faculty of being able on occasions to sit and let *the rich waters of life* flow over me. THEOD. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XV, Ch. IX, 441.

**wind:** in *to send (fling) to the winds* (= Dutch van zich afschudden, aan de winden prijsgeven).

Maggie, if you loved me as I love you, we should *throw* everything else *to the winds* for the sake of belonging to each other. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. XI, 415. We see him *sending* care *to the winds* under the influences of good-fellowship. W. GUNNYON, Biographical Sketch of Burns, 36.

If there were a hundred Anglo-Japanese treaties, they would all be torn to pieces and *flung to the winds* rather than that such a foul fratricidal contest should take place. Rev. of Rev., CCV, 3b.

22. Nouns denoting things thought of without limits naturally do not admit of being used in the plural. This applies in the first place to the names of substances, the so-called material nouns, and to the names of actions, states and qualities, the so-called abstract nouns.

As in Dutch, the plural is possible with many such nouns when they occur in a modified meaning: i. e. material nouns may be used in the plural when they have become ordinary object-nouns, or when varieties are meant; abstract nouns are often found in the plural when separate instances or repeated phenomena are referred to, and also, of course, when they have assumed a concrete meaning.

Some of these words are in all, or in certain of their modified meanings practically pluralia tantum. Some are chiefly confined to certain collocations or phrases. For instances see the preceding §§.

23. a) As to material nouns English usage is essentially the same as Dutch. Thus English has *coppers*, *grains*, *ices*, etc. as object-nouns; and, although for the above the Dutch has no analogous equivalents, it is not without instances of such words used in similarly altered meanings: *ijzers*, *papieren*. Nor do the two languages present any essential difference as to the use of material nouns to denote varieties. Thus *mineral waters* = *minerale wateren*.
- b) For the plurals in the following quotations the Dutch would, however, have the singular of the ordinary equivalent:

Oft have we seen him at the peep of dawn | Brushing with hasty steps the *dews* away. GRAY, Elegy, 99.

The *dews* of the evening may endanger the life of her for whom only I value mine. SHER., Rivals, II, I, (216).

Mary, two more tumblers, two more hot *waters*, and two more goes of gin. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 19.

There is sweet music here that softer falls | Than petals from blown roses on the grass, | Or *night-dews* on still waters between walls | Of shadowy granite, in a gleaming pass. TEN., Lotos-Eat, Chor. Song., I.

I find that all plain *foods*, plainly cooked, agree with me. Rev. of Rev., CCXIX, 246a.

The *snows* and frosts of an arctic winter. STOF., Handl., III.

## 24. a) As to abstract nouns English usage differs materially from Dutch.

In Dutch another word expressing an individualized conception is sometimes used to express the modified meaning. Thus we have *doeleinden*, *raadgevingen*, *sterfgevallen*, *verdrietelijkheden* etc., as the plural of *doel*, *raad*, *dood*, *verdriet* etc. When no such word is available, another turn of expression is chosen or the noun simply kept in the singular.

In English many abstract nouns admit of being used in an individualized meaning with an ordinary plural. See also 33, and compare Ch. XXXI, 38.

But there is a considerable number of abstract nouns which hardly admit of being used in the plural. Such among many others are *bravery*, *compassion*, *courage*, *freedom*, *happiness*, *haste*, *honesty*, *hunger*, *hurry*, *integrity*, *luck*, *might*, *moderation*, *obedience*, *patience*, *pity*, *quiet*, *sadness*, *temperance*, *willingness*, *wisdom*.

When necessity arises to express plural instances of the notions for which these nouns stand, certain individualizers, such as *piece*, *fit* etc. are often put into requisition (36).

**belief.** The lecturer's *beliefs* exactly coincided with all his ready-formed notions. EDNA LYALL, DONOVAN, I, 83.

**births, deaths, handwritings.** Here on the table was a grand old folio Bible, the names, *births* and *deaths* of a century of Fieldings appeared in rusty ink and various *handwritings* upon its fly-leaf. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. II, 34.

**colds, heats.** Neither the *colds* of winter nor the *heats* of summer seemed to have any influence on his bodily health. ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. Comp., § 21.

The party soon sallied from the castle towards the spot in which Montreal had designed their resting-place during the *heats* of day. LYTTON, Rienzi, III, Ch. II, 131.

**fears, imaginings.** Present *fears* | Are less than horrible *imaginings*. MACB., I, 3, 138.

**fears, doubts, misgivings.** She was a great deal too happy to have *fears*, *doubts* or *misgivings*. THACK., Van. Fair, I.

**griefs.** Little Sharp with her secret *griefs*, was the heroine of the day. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVI, 168.

Religion has consoled many *griefs*. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. VII, 85.

**hopes, fears.** If *hopes* are dupes, *fears* may be liars. REV. E. J. HARDY. How to be happy though married, Ch. II, 20.

**hopes, vanities.** The dearest *vanities*, ambitious *hopes*, had all been there. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIV, 247.

Considerable *hopes* of a settlement were excited by the announcement that another conference has been agreed upon for Tuesday. Graph.

**solicitudes.** To her the destinies of mankind, seen by the light of Christianity, made the *solicitudes* of feminine fashion appear an occupation for Bedlam. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. I, 2.



**talks.** The conversation runs on with such admirable naturalness, that we can but take it as the echo of such *talks* as were once the staple of conversation at Chilvers-Colon. LESLIE STEPHEN, *George Eliot*, Ch. VI, 93.

**wait.** Acted without any *waits* whatsoever, Henry VIII, as it is written, would take at least three hours and a half in the playing. BEERBOHM TREE, *Henry VIII*, 91.

**weathers.** Destitute people . . . have been in the habit every night of haunting the Embankment, where they have slept in all *weathers* on the seats and in any corner they could find. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3686, 834c.

- b) Especial mention may be made of certain gerunds which in their altered meaning are chiefly used in the plural.

**(mis)doings.** There are few, if any, records left of his *doings* at the University. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. I, 5.

We often read in the papers of the rare *doings* going on there. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 56.

The *misdoings* of the Trades' Unions are no argument against the extension of the suffrage. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Pref., 103.

(Compare; It is his *doing* and his money. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 21.

**dosings, drowsings.** The *dosings* and *drowsings* of old people during the day are mild torpors from exhaustion. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXIII, 273a.

**forebodings.** i. Many a sad pang would have been spared to him, many a gloomy *foreboding* ward off. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 39.

ii. They trembled lest, her engagement being off with Osborne, she should take up immediately her other admirer and Captain. In which *forebodings* these worthy young women no doubt judged according to the best of their experience. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 189.

**gossipings.** They never failed, whenever they talked those matters over in their evening *gossipings*, to lay all the blame on Dame van Winkle. WASH. IRV., *Rip van Winkle*.

**greetings.** He stopped at the outer door to bestow the *greetings* of the season on the clerk. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 18.

**happenings.** Throughout his long life he daily noted down the *happenings* of the previous twenty-four hours. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCIV, 644a.

Every dire prophecy as to the effects of sending the Chinese back has been falsified by the actual *happenings*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 2a.

**journeyings.** Earl Grey's official *journeyings* in the Canadian West. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCI, 459a.

**misgiving(s).** i. Had I only hearkened to my own *misgiving* about the miscreant. THEOD. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. XI, 116.

ii. The stanzas are *misgivings* in the hour of despondency and prospect of death. BURNS, *Note to 'A Prayer'*.

Hitherto it had been impossible for the discontented Whigs not to feel some *misgivings*. MAC., *Pitt*, (292a).

**rejoicing(s).** i. But soon conquests of a very different kind filled the kingdom with pride and *rejoicing*. *Ib.* (307a).

ii. The *rejoicings* in England were not less enthusiastic or less sincere. *Ib.*, (695a). Scarcely had Parliament voted a monument to Wolfe, when another great event called for fresh *rejoicings*. *Ib.* (307b).

The crowning of the New King of Norway took place last month amid great popular *rejoicings*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIX, 6a.

5. The singular preceded by the definite article is sometimes used instead of the plural to denote the whole of a class, nation, sect, etc. Thus *the fowl* may stand for *the fowls*, *the Spaniard* for *the Spaniards*, *the Heathen* for *the Heathens*.'

This application is limited, being at all usual only of certain names of nationality, to which it imparts a ring of homeliness. In their grammatical construction these singulars seem to be mostly dealt with as singulars, except *heathen*, which is understood as an adjective denoting a class of persons in a general sense (like *the faithful*), and is, accordingly, construed as a plural.

*The Turk* may also be understood to mean *the sultan of the Turks*, *the Chief Turk*, *the Grand Turk* (Comp. Dutch *de Groote Heer*). In the following quotations *the Dane* is similarly applied:

HOR. Friends to his ground. MAR. And liegemen to *the Dane*. HAMLET, I, 1, 15 (= *the king of Denmark*).

You cannot speak of reason to *the Dane*, | And lose your voice. *Ib.*, I, 2, 44.

- i. **brute, fowl.** I am monarch of all I survey; | My right there is none to dispute; | From the centre all round to the sea | I am lord of *the fowl* and *the brute*. COWPER, *Solitude of Alex. Selk.*, I.

**leaf.** The bursting of the buds and the fall of the *leaf*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XI, 95.

- ii. **Frenchman.** We purpose to try Dover. — You will not take it. *The Frenchman* has strengthened it with one of his accursed keeps. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XXII, 95a.

**Pagan.** Our good Arthur broke | *The Pagan* yet once more on Badon Hill. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 279.

**Polack.** His nephew's levies, which to him appear'd | To be a preparation 'gainst *the Polack*. HAMLET, II, 2, 63. (Now obsolete.)

**Roman.** For when *the Roman* left us, and *their law* | Relax'd its hold upon us [etc.]. TEN., *Guin.*, 453.

**Spaniard.** He has believed for years that he was called and sent into the world only to fight *the Spaniard*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXI, 234b.

Their able modern historian has well likened their first struggle — that between Civilis and the Roman, to their last — that between William the Silent and *the Spaniard*. *Id.*, *Hereward*, Ch. IX, 49a.

The men who fought *the Spaniard* under Elizabeth. Preface to *Nursery Rhymes* (Books for the Bairns, III).

**Turk.** They had nothing now to fear from *the Turk*, for they had concluded a truce with *him*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIX, 218a.

Nothing has been done to save our miserable 'protégés', whom Lord Beaconsfield thrust under the heel of the *Turk* in 1878. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCIV, 564a. Germany, and even Austria, may appear one day as the Protector of *the Turk* against the Powers who are pressing *him* to open the Dardanelles. *Westm. Gaz.*

- iii. **heathen.** \* And his delight in their walks was to tell Larry of the glories of his order, of its martyrs and heroes, of its Brethren converting *the heathen* by myriads. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. III, 28.

*The heathen* are upon him. TEN., *Last Tourn.*, 86.

D'ye call yourself a Heathen? Ye lie, ye cur, *the Heathen were* not without the starlight from heaven. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 5.

\*\* Far other is this battle in the west | Whereto we move, than when we strove in youth, | And brake the petty kings, and fought with Rome, | Or thrust *the heathen* from the Roman wall, | And shook *him* thro' the north. TEN., *Pas. of Arth.*, 69.

Compare: Cheerfulness of Mind is very conspicuous in the Characters of those who are looked upon as the greatest Philosophers among *the Heathens*. Spect., No. 383.

What is a fat living compared to converting a hundred thousand *heathens* by a single sermon? THACK., *Henry Es.*, I, Ch. III, 28.

26. Some nouns that have the character of collective nouns of the second kind (i. e. such as denote conceptions thought of without limits), and are, consequently, singulars, mostly correspond to Dutch plurals.

*abuse* = scheldwoorden; *advance* = vorderingen; *business* = zaken; *evidence* = bewijzen; *expenditure* = uitgaven; *knowledge* = kundigheden, kennis; *information* = inlichtingen; *intelligence* = berichten; *medicine* = medicijn(en); *merchandise* = koopwaren; *physic* = medicijn(en); *produce* = voortbrengselen; *progress* = vorderingen; *revenue* = inkomsten.

When single instances are to be expressed, most of these nouns have to be preceded by such an individualizing word as *piece*, *item* (36); some may be thus used without any such word. Some of the above nouns, in other meanings, are also used as ordinary single-unit nouns with an ordinary plural.

**abuse.** i. At length the rivals proceeded to personal *abuse* before a large company. MAC., Pitt, (290a).

She was indifferent to *abuse*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII. § III, 376.

ii. Voltaire was always eager to expose the *abuses* of the Parliaments of France. Clive.

**advance.** i. Those gentlemen must have quaked with fear and envy when they heard of Mr. Warrington's prodigious successes and the *advance* which he had made in their wealthy aunt's favour. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVIII, 289. The aeroplane has made more rapid *advance* than the motor-car in the same time. Westm. Gaz., No. 5089, 1c.

ii. He made wonderful *advances* in scholastic learning THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 47.

**business.** i. The manufacturers are overwhelmed with *business*. *Business Letter-Writer*, XIII.

ii. On the order paper there were two *items of Government business*, the Public Libraries Bill and the Army Annual Bill, down for consideration. *Morning Leader*.

iii. The summons, unseasonable as it appeared, seemed to link me on again to the petty *businesses of life*. CH. LAMB, *Last Es. of El.*, *The Convalescent*, (314).

Gimblet and I are going to make our *businesses* one. *All the Year round*.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> SATTler, E. S., X.

Now they were busy with their Saturday evening *businesses*. RUDY KIPLING, *Stalky & Co.*, 73.<sup>1)</sup>

**evidence(s).** i. All the abundant and trustworthy *evidence* which we now possess, leads to the conviction that . . . these structures are the most marked cerebral characters common to man with the apes. HUXLEY, *Essays*, II, 93.

No *evidence* is forthcoming to establish accurately. WHITAKER'S *Alm.* 1901, 246*b*.

There was no *evidence* that Miss Holland had been murdered. *Times*.

ii. Among the clearest *pieces of evidence* of the great part which the bicycle plays in modern life is the International Cyclists Congress. *Times*.

iii. \* These *evidences* of an incompatability of temper induced Miss Betsey to pay him off. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 120.

In America there is a touch of shame when a man exhibits the *evidences* of large property. EMERSON, *English Traits*, *Wealth*, 113*b*.

The more the subject was investigated, the more clearly were the *evidences* of pressure made out. TYNDALL, *Glac. of the Alps*, I, Ch. I, 7.

\*\* Miss Williams gratified the two *evidences* with one half. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXIII, 161.

**expenditure.** i. Before any work is taken in hand, an estimate of its *expenditure* is submitted to the council. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. V, 59.

The Foreign Secretary declared that there was a fair prospect that national *expenditure* could be reduced considerably without endangering national safety. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVIII, 558*a*.

ii. The remaining \$ 10,000,000 Bonds . . . can be issued only . . . to reimburse the Railway Company for *expenditures* made to complete, finish or improve the lines of railway. *Private Correspondence*.

**information.** "But all he's got to do", said Paul, boldly offering his *information* to the very doctor himself, "is to keep on turning as he runs away". DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 103.

The map of Asia has been carefully revised according to the latest *information*. *Times*.

ii. At this very time the horrid practice of poisoning was so common, that, during part of the season, a Prætor punished capitally for this crime above 3000 persons in a part of Italy; and found *informations* of this kind still multiplying upon him. HUME, *Essays*, III, 23.

**intelligence.** i. As the council seemed solicitous for *intelligence*, they had it in abundance. WASH. IRV., *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 86).

Latest *intelligence* from abroad. *Punch*.

ii. It was no other than Tommy Traddles who gave this *piece of intelligence*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VI, 42*b*.

Doctor Kettle looked not a little dismayed at this *piece of intelligence*. EMILY LAWLESS, *A Colonel of the Empire*, Ch. VIII.

iii. \* *An intelligence* that startled me more. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, XIII, Ch. V, 346.

\*\* The faithful still kept *intelligences* with one another in the colony. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 958.

**knowledge.** i. He that increaseth *knowledge* increaseth sorrow. Bible, *Eccles.*, I, 18.<sup>2)</sup>

One might say that no kind or amount of human *knowledge* were too much for woman. M. D. CONWAY, *Earthenw. Pilgr.*, XVIII, 220.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. We must determine the relative value of *knowledges*. SPENCER, *Education*.<sup>3)</sup>  
We may say that in the family of *knowledges*, Science is the household drudge. *Id.*<sup>3)</sup>

1) KONRAD MEIER, E. S., XXXI, 320. 2) MURRAY, s. v. *knowledge*, 11.

3) KONRAD MEIER, E. S., XXXI, 335.



**medicine.** i. Health restored without *medicine*. Advertisement.

ii. Stores of *medicines* and strengthening food were decaying in places where no one wanted them. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 149.

**produce.** The value of the *produce* of the soil far exceeded the value of all the other fruits of human industry. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 306.

**progress.** i. \* With all his advantages Dolf made little *progress* in his art. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 109).

\*\* I spent my nineteenth summer... at a noted school, to learn mensuration, surveying, dialling etc., in which I made a *pretty good progress*. BURNS, Letter to Dr. Moore.

ii. Queen Elizabeth in one of her *progresses* stopped at Crawley to breakfast. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VII, 66.

Queen Elizabeth, whose *progresses* are so famous, confined them to her own kingdom of England. Times.

**revenue.** The Russian monarchy, the youngest of the great European states, but in population and *revenue* the fifth among them, ... sprang from a humble origin. MAC., *Fred.*, (658*b*).

Steps have been taken to utilise available surplus *revenue* for the permanent improvement of the country. Lit. World.

27. Many nouns which in their ordinary meaning are single-unit nouns with an ordinary plural, may also be used as collective nouns of the second kind (i. e. such as denote ideas without limits). In their modified meaning, they are not, however, found preceded by a word denoting number (numeral or noun), which distinguishes them from those mentioned in the next §. See, however under *shot*. Such as denote persons are construed partly as plurals, partly as singulars. For details see also SATTler, E. S., XII; LANNERT, An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Acc., II, A, 2; and MURRAY under the respective words. In the case of some nouns a few quotations are added exhibiting their ordinary application. We may distinguish:

a) names of trees:

The chalk hills break into cliffs that overhang the Thames, or form valleys clothed with *beech*. MRS. SHELLEY, Note on 'The Revolt of Islam'. The mansion surrounded by woods of *oak* and *beech*, looks out upon a spacious lake. MAC., *Fred.*, (661*b*).

And the yellow down | Border'd with *palm*. TEN., Lotos-Eaters, III. I enter'd, from the clearer light, | Imbower'd vaults of pillar'd *palm*. Id., *Recol. of the Arab. Nights*, IV.

The dusty high-road lay through a forest of *pine*. H. K. DANIELS, *The Simpler Life* (in Norway), II (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5418, 2*c*).

b) the following, among many others:

**adventure.** He was fond of *adventure*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 115).

**anecdote.** i. It is a sad thing to think that a man with what you call a fund of *anecdote* is a humbug, more or less amiable and pleasant. THACK., *Notes on a Week's Holiday*.

That fellow is full of *anecdote* and fun. Id., *New c.*, I, Ch. XII, 150.

His stores of military *anecdote* were falling low. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. III, 158.

ii. It is one of the chief *pieces of literary anecdote* of our times that he (sc. Thackeray) offered himself fruitlessly to Dickens as an illustrator. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. III, 151.

iii. The event was combined with traditionary and genealogical *anecdotes*. SCOTT, *Brid. of Trierm.*, Pref.

**ball.** The pistols were seldom loaded with *ball*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 17.

Having been long since out of powder and *ball*, they turn southward toward home. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXII, 239b.

**brick.** They soon approached a mansion of dull red *brick*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 37.

**cartridge.** i. They fired a volley of ball *cartridge* over our heads. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVIII, 618a.

The men themselves were debarred from giving any help beyond marching hither and thither and firing blank *cartridge*. *Graph.*

The police authorities say they believe that Sipido fired with blank *cartridge*. *Morning Leader*.

So serious was the rioting in Belfast last evening that the troops were ordered to fire ball *cartridge*. *Daily Mail*.

Even when one of the officers fired a shot in the air, laughter and jeering followed, and cries were raised that only blank *cartridge* was being used. *Times*, No. 1808, 675a.

ii. Something has been said about blank *cartridges*. *Id.*, No. 1809, 695b.

**ceremony.** Immigrants, pauper or otherwise, were treated with scant *ceremony*. *II. Magaz.*

There was no occasion for standing on *ceremony*. EMILY LAWLESS, *A Colonel of the Empire*, Ch. X.

**chronicle.** The neighbourhood, at the time of which I am speaking, was one of those highly-favoured places which abound with *chronicle* and great men. WASH. IRV., *The Leg. of Sleepy Hollow*, (364).

**cliff.** Long lines of *cliff* breaking have left a chasm. TEN., *En. Arden*, I.

**coin.** i. There were piled up, after the usage of Indian princes, immense masses of *coin*. MAC., *Clive*, (521b).

He searched his pockets for the loose *coin* he usually carried about him in such abundance. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. III, 45.

Pushing my hand through the hole in the lid, I drew it out full of gold pieces. "Ah!" I said, replacing the *coin*, "we shall not go back empty-handed". RIDER HAGGARD, *King Sol. Mines*, 249.

Imperial gold *coin* was issued to the value of £ 5,780,446. *Times*.

The *coin* was imported into Malta. *Morn. Leader*.

ii. There was also a considerable increase in the silver *coins* struck for the colonies. *Times*.

**connection.** i. \* I have some *connection*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LXIV, 529.

The Miss Carkers had caught the trick of the place and piqued themselves upon their 'aristocratic *connection*'. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. VII, 124.

She had absolutely no literary *connection*. RID. HAG., *Mees. Will*, Ch. IV, 41.

\*\* Brough was a great man among the Dissenting *connexion*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 11 (= religious society).

It is my object to increase the *connexion* of the office as much as possible. *Id.* Ch. VII, 80.

\*\*\* He looked for support, not to a strong aristocratical *connection*, but to the middle class of Englishmen. MAC., *Pitt*, (287b).

ii. The motives which may lead a politician to change his *connections* or his general line of conduct are often obscure. *Ib.*, (298a).

Will's relationship in that distinguished quarter did not, like Lydgate's high *connections*, serve as an advantageous introduction. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 341.

Note. The plural is also used in the meaning of *acquaintance*, *friendship*. Sir, I solicit your *connections*. *SHER.*, *Rivals*, II, 1, (227).

**crime.** The Conservatives are more concerned to make capital from Irish *crime* than to see the disaffected districts restored to a state of contentment. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4937, 2a.

**enemy.** The scrub is alive with *enemy*. RUDY. KIPLING, *The light that failed*, Ch. II, 23.

**fable.** I made myself familiar with all its places famous in history or *fable*. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch - Bk.*

**fact.** He ordered an investigation, and the Report of the investigators convinced him that *fact* once more was more terrible than fiction. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVIII, 565a. *Fact* is usually less entertaining than fiction. BRADLEY, *Eng. Place-Names*.

**incident.** The charm of variety there was not, nor the excitement of *incident*. CH. BRONTE, *Villette*, Ch. I, 2.

**invective.** i. The chief topic of Pitt's *invective* was the favour shown to the German dominions of the House of Brunswick. *MAC.*, *Pitt*, (296b).

A nation convulsed by faction, a throne assailed by the fiercest *invective* [etc.]. *Ib.*, (310a).

ii. His sermons abound with the sharpest *invectives* against those very practices. *Id.*, *Bacon*, (583b).

His name was already a mark for the *invectives* of one half of the writers of the age. *Id.*, *Com. Dram.*, (584a).

Colonel Picquart, whose splendid devotion to the cause of justice made him the mark for the savage *invectives* of the then dominant party. *Rev. of Rev.*, CC, 120a.

**metaphor, simile.** In both (see his sermons and his poems) there was an exuberance of *metaphor* and *simile* entirely original. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 49.

**proof.** i. We do not dispute Pitt's integrity; but we do not know what *proof* he had given of it, when he was turned out of the army. *MAC.*, *Pitt*, (295a).

Pitt, on subsequent occasions, gave ample *proof* that he was one of those penitents. *Ib.*, (295b).

Mr. Stamboulloff has given ample *proof* of courage and ability. *Graph.*

ii. The kindness, the earnestness of Eleanor's manner in pressing her to stay, and Henry's gratified look on being told that her stay was determined, were such sweet *proofs* of her importance with them, as [etc.]. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. XXVIII, 213.

The *proofs* were all against him. *Mrs. MULOCK*, *The Sculptor of Bruges*. He found in South Africa gratifying *proofs* of the success of the experiment. *Il. Lond. News*.

**provision.** The English fleet found themselves growing short of *provision*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXXII, 239.

**remark.** Mrs. Jennings at the Wharf, by appearing the first Sunday after Mr. Gilfil's death in her salmon-coloured ribbons and green shawl, excited the severest *remark*. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 71.

**shell.** i. A vessel armed with six other guns firing *grape-shell*. HOBART PASHA.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XII.

Storm'd at with shot and *shell*, | Boldly they rode and well. TEN., Charge of the Light Brigade, III.

- ii. Engaging batteries at Barcelona with shot and *shells*. MARRYAT.<sup>1)</sup>  
They threw *shells* across the bridge. W. RUSSELL.<sup>1)</sup>

**shot.** i. \* discharges of a gun. Snares or *shot* may take off the old birds foraging without. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XII, 148.

\*\* projectiles. Are forty men without *shot* as good as eighty men with? CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXIII, 168b.

The air is dark with the explosion of shells and the hail of flying *shot*. Punch.

Note. The following is an instance of *shot* in this meaning rejecting the mark of the plural after a number-indicating word:

Before I leave this place, I'll give you my fowling-piece; she will put a *hundred swan-shot* through a Dutchman's cap at eighty paces. SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. VIII, 97.

\*\*\* persons discharging a gun. The banks of the Ganges seemed in a moment alive with *shot*. McCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 187.

- ii. \* discharges of a gun. Two led horses, which in the field always closely followed his person were struck down by cannon *shots*. MAC., Hist., VII Ch. XX, 220.

The inspector of police had been firing a few *shots* into a crowd who had been stoning the military. Graph.

The new quick-firing gun is capable of discharging 20 *shots* in a minute. Times. He killed him with three *shots* from a revolver. Pall Mall Mag.

They will have heard the *shots*. BONER.<sup>1)</sup>

The *shots* we had heard were fired at us. Daily News.

\*\* projectiles. The surgeon had extracted the *shots* from the leg. Mrs. WOOD, Orville College, 22.

\*\*\* marksmen. They'll be good *shots* one of these days. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 163.

**stone.** One can see by the mounds or heaps of *stone*, where the Glasgow water-works are carried. QUEEN VICTORIA, More Leaves.<sup>1)</sup>

The violence of the torrents has brought quantities of *stone* with them. Ib.<sup>1)</sup>

**subject.** The levies, | The lists and full proportions, are all made | Out of his *subject*. Haml., I, 2, 33.

Why this watch so nightly toils the *subject* of the land. Ib., I, 1, 72.

**verse.** i. The majestic aspect of Nature ministered such thoughts as he afterwards enwove in *verse*. MARY SHELLEY, Note on 'The Revolt of Islam'.

He was now beginning to translate classical passages into excellent English *verse*. Life and Poems of Gray (Clar. Press).

- ii. "Hast thou flown far, thou restless bird of night?" asks Father Tom, who loves speaking in blank *verses*. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XXV, 281.

If much of Leigh Hunt's prose must be called journalism rather than literature, practically the whole of his labours in metre must be called *verses* and not poetry.

J. H. LOBBAN, Sel. from Leigh Hunt, Intr.

**vote.** The Liberal *vote* has fallen from 72,548 in 1906 to 61,366 in 1908. The Unionist *vote*, on the other hand, has gone up from 41,517 in 1906 to 92,168 in 1908. Rev. of Rev., CCXXII, 564b.

Note. From the practice exhibited by the above nouns we must distinguish the occasional use of the singular for oratorical (poetic) effect, as in:

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XII.



His words came feebly, from a feeble chest, | But each in solemn order followed each, | With something of a lofty utterance drest — Choice word and measured *phrase*, above the reach | Of ordinary men. WORDSWORTH, *Resolution and Independence*, XIV.

She shall see whatever is famous in old *story* and in modern *record*. CH. BRONTË, *Janë Eyre*, Ch. XXIV, 317.

28. Many nouns not only present the same variety of use as those described in the previous §, but may also be found preceded by a word (numeral or noun) denoting number without taking the mark of the plural. Grammatically they are then on a par with such a word as *people*, which in all respects is dealt with as a plural, although a singular in form: *people say*, *these people*, *a hundred people*, *many (few) people*. Only the noun *fish* and the names of some varieties of fishes are sometimes, at least partly, construed as singulars.

a) The nouns here referred to are especially the names of certain wild animals when described as hunted or caught for sport or for profit. When these animals are spoken of in another way, for instance as objects of natural history, as vermin, or as enemies to man's safety, the plural form is used in the majority of cases. Thus it is in accordance with ordinary practice to say *to catch fish*, *to shoot wildfowl*, *to hunt pig* etc.; but *the story of the three fishes*, *to keep fowls*, *to rear pigs*, *to kill lions*, etc.

Thus also we say *to kill duck*, *pig*, when the wild animals, *to kill ducks*, *pigs*, when the domesticated animals are meant.

The language is, however, in this respect rather irregular and inconsistent, i. e. not only is the rule often disregarded with one and the same noun, but to a great many names of wild animals it does not apply at all.

SWEET (N. E. Gr., § 1966 ff.) thinks that the frequent use of what he terms *collective singulars* is due to the analogy of old unchanged plurals (8, a, Obs. II). His view has been endorsed by JESPERSEN (*Growth and Struct.*, § 192). This analogy may be the most important of the factors that have determined the rise of the idiom so far as the names of quadrupeds are concerned, but, as has been pointed out by EILERT EIKWALL in a singularly pains-taking and exhaustive treatise (*On the Origin and History of the Unchanged Plural in English*, Lund, C. W. K. Gleerup), it does not satisfactorily account for the changed application of numerous names of fishes and birds. As to these latter EIKWALL ascribes the rise of what he prefers to call *unchanged plurals* to the frequent use of many fish- and bird-names in a material sense, and subsequently as collective nouns with singular construction as an intermediate stage. Mr. EIKWALL'S treatise unfortunately came to hand only when the manuscript was already at the printer's, and could not, therefore, be turned to account. Much valuable material bearing on the subject has also been collected by SATTLER (E. S., X and XI). Many of the following quotations have been drawn

from his collections. Compare also KRUISINGA A Gram. of the Dial. of West-Somerset (Bonner Beitr. XVIII, 111).

1) names of quadrupeds:

**antelope.** i. You may kill *a few antelope*. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. I sighted *two antelopes* grazing. PINTO, Africa.<sup>1)</sup>

The true *antelopes* are remarkable for the graceful symmetry of their bodies  
CARPENTER.<sup>2)</sup>

**bear.** I resolved on a trip to the Lobab Valley to shoot *some black bear*. Graph. I heard of a man now living who has killed *bear* on the site of the Central Lake Park. FRED. HARRISON, Impressions of America.

**beaver.** i. Ever caught so many fishes, | Ever killed so many reindeer, Ever trapped so *many beaver*? LONGFELLOW, Hiaw.<sup>3)</sup>

ii. How the *beavers* built their lodges. Ib., III, 153.

**bison.** A herd of *four thousand bison* endeavoured to cross the river. Good Words.<sup>1)</sup>

**boar.** i. I have always found great plenty, particularly of wild *boar*. LADY MONTAGUE.<sup>3)</sup>

ii. The well-trained dogs rarely fail to drive *a few boars* within reach of the sportsmen. BOCK, Borneo.<sup>1)</sup>

**buck.** Presently the *buck* were within range of some of the guns. RID. HAGGARD. Jess, X, 89.

On the following Monday, John . . . departed in a rough Scotch cart . . . to shoot *buck* at Hans Coetzee's. Ib., Ch. X, 82.

**buffalo.** i. Beyond Denver we crossed the great prairies where seven years ago the wild *buffalo* were feeding in thousands. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. XX, 330.

ii. *A few buffaloes* wandered about. BOCK Borneo.<sup>1)</sup>

**elk.** i. There is much more sport in hunting *elk* after the Norwegian manner. All the Year Round.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. In hunting *elks* you must not think of winking. Ib.<sup>1)</sup>

**gaur.** I have killed *a good many gaur* in various parts of India. Chamb.<sup>1)</sup>

I came upon *three gaur* or bison. BELL, Jungle Life.<sup>1)</sup>

**giraffe.** Tracks of *giraffe* and larger game were frequently seen. Graph.

**guanaco.** i. The plain was apparently as bare of *guanaco* as it was of grass. DIXIE, Patagonia.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Immense numbers of *guanacos* covered the plain in all directions. Ib.<sup>1)</sup>

*Guanacoes* resemble our deer, but are much larger. J. HAWKSWORTH.<sup>2)</sup>

**moose.** There are probably *a hundred moose*, and a thousand deer for every dog in that part of the Commonwealth. Harp. Weekly.

*Between four and five hundred moose* are annually eaten at the forts. BUTLER, Gr. North Land.<sup>1)</sup>

**pig.** i. Here we had fine sport . . . killing *a few pig*. Chamb.<sup>1)</sup>

He told me of the deer and the *wild pig* in the forests. JOHN MASEFIELD, Lost Endeavour, Ch. VII, 52.

ii. This time there were *several pigs*, which were quietly driven through the second line. BOCK, Borneo.<sup>1)</sup> [Compare also: The recreations suited to a prince were . . . to kill *wild hogs*. MAC., Fred., (660b)].

**roe.** Deer and *roe* are said to be there. LADY BLOOMFIELD, Reminisc.

**zebra.** A lion makes a kill about every other day, that is to say he consumes nearly 200 *zebra* and *antelope* per annum. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 12a.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., X.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.    <sup>3)</sup> TEN BRUG., Taaltst., VI.

Thus also *quarry*.

Eighteen packs of hounds pursue various kinds of *quarry*. H. A. BRYDEN, *French Hunting* (Ninet. Cent., CCCXCIX, 900).

Further illustration is afforded by the following quotations:

France is still a land of great forests, wherein roam *wild red deer, roe, and boar*, as well as *foxes and wolves*. BRYDEN (Ninet. Cent., CCCXCIX, 909). This number compares not altogether unfavourably with the 471 (sc. packs of hounds) which pursue *fox, hare, stag, and otter* in Great Britain. *Ib.*, 907.

The district provides not only *many rhinoceros*, but numerous *tigers, wild elephants, marsh deer, sambur and wild boar*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3793, 1113b.

There are many *tigers* in the neighbourhood, as well as *rhinoceroses, wild boars, wild elephants, samburs and marsh deer*. *Ib.*, No. 3796, 93.

These chapters treat of *buck, buffalo, elephant and lion*, and the various cats. *Ib.*, No. 3816, 894a.

*Wild stags . . . and hinds . . .* have been hunted on Exmoor certainly since the days of Elizabeth. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6017, 11c.

2) names of birds:

**duck.** i. Are those *duck* or mergansers? W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.

*Wild duck* generally feed during the night. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5454, 17c.

ii. \* Streaming files of *wild ducks* began to make their appearance high in the air. WASH. IRV., *The Legend of Sleepy Hollow*, (360).

Many thousands of square miles would appear as moors overgrown with furze, or fens abandoned to *wild ducks*. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 277.

\*\* The farmers provided him with a horse. Their wives sent him baskets of chickens and *ducks*. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 198.

Fowls and farmyard *ducks* are eaten also. BIRD.<sup>1)</sup>

**fowl.** i. \* And let *fowl* multiply in the earth. Bible, Gen., I, 22.

And let them have dominion . . . over the *fowl* of the air. *Ib.*, I, 26.

And lightnings play'd about it (sc. Excalibur) in the storm, | And all the little *fowl* were flurried at it. TEN., *Gar. and Lyn.*, 78.

Divers, kittiwakes and other strange *fowl* had been recently seen there. Graph. There *were* no wild *fowl* of any kind to be seen. *Id.*

\*\* With its abundance of refuse grain, no country ought to produce turkeys and other *fowl* more abundantly and cheaply. Times.

Hadn't I better kill a couple o' *fowl* and have th' aunts and uncles to dinner next week? G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. II, 4.

\*\*\* These (sc. the introductory pages) were those which treat of the haunts of *sea-fowl*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I, 2.

A jungle abandoned to *waterfowl* and alligators. MACAULAY.

The noise made by the bookmakers was like that of ten thousand *seafowl* on a rock. HALL CAINE, *Christ.*, II, 236.

Women, however contemptible for their weakness, appeared to her as better than *barn-door fowl*, or vermin in their multitudes gnawing to get at the cheese-trap. G. MEREDITH, *Lord Ormont*, Ch. II, 34.

*Pea-fowl* occur in a wild state only in the Indian Peninsula and Ceylon. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5329, 5a.

In later times *pea-fowl* were looked upon as a great delicacy of the table. *Ib.* The *wildfowl* on the coast, which *were* so numerous this year as to recall to the older men memories of the good old days . . . *these fowl*, too, showed *their* foreknowledge of the changes by a marked restlessness. *Ib.*, No. 5219, 4c.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XII.

- ii. \* Behold the *fowls* of the air. Bible, Matth., VI, 26.

This lonely domain is a very agreeable haunt for many sorts of wild *fowls*. WHITE.<sup>1)</sup>

The turkey — the largest and most savoury of all our domestic *fowls*. CHAMBERLAIN.<sup>1)</sup>  
We shall confine the remainder of this letter to the few domestic *fowls* of our yards. WHITE.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* I laid in a stock of boiled flesh of rabbits and *fowls*. SWIFT, GUL-TRAV., IV, Ch. X, (211a).

The *fowls* were all gone to roost. ADAM BEDD.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* *Guinea fowls*, heavy as they are, get up into apple-trees. WHITE.<sup>1)</sup>

*Pea-fowls* climb to the highest tops of the highest trees for security. IB.<sup>1)</sup>

***grouse***. Immense heaths and downs are paved with quails, *grouse* and woodcock. EMERSON, English Traits, Land, 84a.

I fancy there are close on sixty brace of *grouse*. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. VIII.

***gull***. Besides these, Mother Carey's chickens skimmed over the water like swallows, with other small varieties of *gull*. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. V, 76.

***plover***. A flock of *seventy-five golden plover* were massacred by a man with a punt-gun. Westm. Gaz., No. 4919, 2b.

***snipe***. i. Two or three more *snipe* spring wild at the sound. Macm. Mag.

*Snipe* are not nearly so numerous in Ireland as they once were. Ib.

*Snipe* will now and then perch on trees, but never, so far as I have seen, on a tree with foliage. Westm. Gaz., No. 5107, 4c.

*Snipe* were shot in Battersea fields by Mr. John Burns at a much later date. Punch, No. 3651, 504c.

ii. Others of a more domestic turn hunt hogs, and shoot *snipes*. THACKER, Van Fair, II, Ch. VIII, 84.

What cared he to know how many *snipes* Lieutenant Smith had shot! Ib., 87.

***teal***. A string of *teal* scared from some reedy pool on the bog-edge go spreading towards its centre. Macm. Mag.

The moorland was full of *snipes* and *teal*. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XII, 72. (Note the plural form *snipes*.)

***whinchat***. If we go out looking for *whinchat*, with our minds obsessed too much with that little bird, we shall see it almost to a certainty in every hedge-sparrow. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 5b.

***woodcock***. The woods of Bosahan are alive with game-pheasants and *woodcock* abounding. Id., No. 4937, 3b.

It is a habit that makes all the difference in the bags of *woodcock* in different parts of England. Id., No. 5219, 4c.

The result is that all the West Country, Wales, and Ireland are filled up with *cock*, and that the eastern gunner has very few. For *they*\* do not go back again. Ib.

With the above compare the names of birds illustrated in the following quotations, which, apparently, never throw off the mark of the plural: The recreations suited to a prince, were ... to kill wild hogs, and to shoot *partridges* by the thousand. MAC., Fred., (660b).

*Wagtails* will roost in thick bushes, but if they perch on trees during the day, they almost always choose an out-jutting branch with very little screen of leaf about it ... So, too, with the *swallows* and *martins*; you may see them perching on the bare branches, but very rarely on the leaf-clad ones. Westm. Gaz., No. 5107, 4c.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XII.



For many kinds, such as *tits*, *finches*, *warblers* and so on, the familiar position is resting or climbing, or hopping on their feet. *Ib.*

The *wild swans* come to our East Coast when the Cattegat and the neighbouring sea is frozen. *Id.*, No. 5219, 4c.

- 3) names of fishes. According to SATTLE's investigations (E. S., XII), the following names of fishes are regularly kept in the singular: *bass*, *bream*, *brill*, *burbot*, *char*, *cheven*, *chub*, *cod*, *coalfish*, *dace*, *dogfish*, *flatfish*, *grayling*, *green*, *grilse*, *hake*, *humber*, *jack*, *ling*, *lythe*, *mackerel*, *menhaden*, *mullet*, *murrel*, *parr*, *pike*, *plaice*, *pouting*, *roach*, *ruft*, *saithe*, *seer*, *skate*, *squid*, *sturgeon*, *sythe*, *tench*, *vendace*, *whitebait*, *whiting*, *willis*.

The following regularly take the mark of the plural: *alli*, *anchovy*, *bloater*, *conger*, *cuddy*, *dab*, *dorce*, *dory*, *eel*, *fireflaw*, *flounder*, *goby*, *grig*, *gurnard* (= *gurnet*), *homeling*, *kipper*, *lamprey*, *latchet*, *lump*, *pilchard*, *poggy*, *pope*, *porgy*, *roker*, *ruff*, *sardine*, *smeer-dab*, *smelt*, *smolt*, *sole*, *sprat*, *stickleback*, *thornback*, *whitch*.

With the following usage is more or less unsettled: *barbel*, *bleak*, *carp*, *conger-eel*, *gold-fish*, *gudgeon*, *haddock*, *herring*, *halibut*, *minnow*, *perch*, *rock-codding*, *salmon*, *shad*, *shark*, *trout*, *tunny*, *weaver*.

The above lists are not, of course, complete; nor can the result of Mr. SATTLE's painstaking and elaborate investigations, however valuable, be accepted as an exhibition of strictly observed usage.

The following quotations, collected by ourselves, are intended to show the varied usage with the noun *fish* and the ordinary or regular practice as regards the names of some of the most common varieties of fishes:

**fish.** i. \* Fresh-water *fish* are more valued for the sport they provide for anglers than for the market. *Suggestive Lessons*, I, 97.

Large *fish* have been caught inside of which have been found other *fish*, and others again inside *these* last. *Ib.*, 103.

*These* noble *fish* are caught by thousands. *Ib.*, 97.

The Dogger Bank is the breeding ground for *myriads* of *fish*. *Ib.*, I, 98.

*These* *fish* were once round *fish*, as they are now at birth. *Ib.*, 104.

They had caught *three* or *four* coarse *fish* and a perch. *HUGHES*, Tom Brown, I, Ch. II, 24.

I have caught *forty* *fish*. *JEROME*, Three men in a boat, Ch. XVII, 219.

He had caught *ten* *fish*. *Ib.*, 220.

\*\* Lastly the 'sculch' or foul *fish* is hurled overboard. *Ib.*, 100.

ii. We have here but five loaves and two *fishes*. *Bible*, Matth., XIV, 17.

Tom and East had learned to swim like *fishes*. *HUGHES*, Tom Brown.

The aquariums have greatly added to our knowledge of the habits and nature of *fishes*. *Suggest. Les.*, I, 102.

*Fishes* of every size prey upon others which are smaller. *Ib.*, I, 103.

The mackerel tribe belongs to the division of oily *fishes*. *Ib.*, 116.

If these *fishes* (sc. herrings) were as rare as they are plentiful, their delicate flesh would rank as a luxury for the rich. *Ib.*, I, 117.

c) names of fishes that are regularly or ordinarily kept in the singular:

**carp.** The moats were turned into preserves of *carp* and pike. *MAC.*, Hist., I, Ch. III, 285.

**cod.** i. The banks of New-Foundland abound with *cod*. Suggest. Les., I, 97.  
 ii. Fresh *cod* is brought from the North-Sea fishing grounds. Ib., I, 97.

**dace.** I had caught absolutely nothing, except a few dozen *dace* and a score of jack. JEROME, *Three men in a boat*, Ch. XVII, 218.

**haddock.** *Haddock*, cod, ling and whiting are gutted in heaps and washed down with buckets of salt water. Suggest. Les., I, 100.

**hake.** When the shoals appear off the coast, they are followed by *hake* and dogfishes. Ib., 117.

**halibut.** The so-called flatfish, turbot, brill, plaice, soles, flounders and *halibut* swarm on the North-sea sandbanks. Ib., I, 100.

**jack.** I had caught absolutely nothing, except a few dozen *dace* and a score of jack. JEROME, *Three men in a boat*, Ch. XVII, 218.

**mackerel.** *Mackerel* are caught in the British Channel. Suggest. Les., I, 115.

**perch.** I caught fifteen dozen *perch* yesterday-evening. JEROME, *Three men in a boat*, Ch. XVII, 217.

**roach.** The river Avon in which chub, dace, *roach* and other coarse fish are plentiful enough. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*.

**salmon.** \* The bridge where *salmon* wait for autumn floods. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 1a.

Did you get many *salmon* after I left Strathavron? W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XV.

Severn *salmon*, also, are esteemed. Suggest. Les., I, 103.

*Salmon* are said to be gregarious. Ib., 109.

\*\* In former days *salmon* was rarely seen in many parts of England. Ib., I, 108.

**trout.** These *trout* are usually small, and no skill goes to their catching. 11. Lond. News, No. 3618, 882c.

Mr. Malloch is able to throw new light on not a few of the mysteries connected with the life-history of salmon and *trout*. Truth.

**turbot.** *Turbot* and brill die hard. Ib., I, 106.

names of fishes that regularly or ordinarily take the mark of the plural:

**bloater.** Herrings when only half salted, or bloated, are called *boaters*. Suggest. Les., I, 119.

**chick.** Flocks of Digby *chicks* take there the place of the Cornish pilchards. Ib., 119.

**flounder.** The so-called flatfish, turbot, brill, plaice, soles, *flounders* and halibut swarm on the North-Sea sandbanks. Ib., 100.

**herring.** The rivers and the surrounding sea spawn with fish; there are salmon for the rich, and sprats and *herrings* for the poor. In the northern lochs the *herring* are in innumerable shoals. EMERSON, *English Traits*, Land, 84a. (Note the varied practice.)

They are taken, like *herrings*, in drift-nets. Suggest. Les., I, 116.

Over three billions of *herrings* are taken out of the North-Sea every year. Ib., I, 117.

**pilchard.** *Pilchards* are migratory fish. Ib., 124.

Flocks of Digby *chicks* take there the place of the Cornish *pilchards*. Ib., 119.

**shark.** The wreck was haunted by *sharks*. 11. Lond. News.

**sole.** *Soles*, plaice and skate die more quickly. Suggest. Les., I, 100.  
*Soles* are such diet that they are in great request. Ib., I, 105.

**sprat.** You could hardly tell from their looks whether they (sc. pilchards) were small herrings or large *sprats*. Ib., 124.

*Sprats* are a winter fish. Ib., 125.

## 4) names of animals popularly included among fishes:

**clam.** i. Pools, where mussel, *clam*, and wilk, | Clove to their gravelly bed. D. MOIR.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Spangles of the richest colours, glowing from a number of large *clams*. COOK.<sup>1)</sup>

**turtle.** The south side of the island swarmed with *turtle*; *they* covered the whole beach. SWEET, Story of two Englishmen.

Note. The names of most fishes, and also of some other animals, may be used as pure material nouns, chiefly to denote an article of food, as in *On Fridays they have fish (lamb, grouse, cod) for dinner*. Also in other applications, however, some are material nouns.

*Worm* was the favourite lure. II. Lond. News, No. 3618, 882a.

He also fishes with *worm* (and) with *minnow*. Ib.

b) Also *cannon* and *youth*, and occasionally *horse* present the same grammatical features. *Cannon* is sometimes preceded by the individualizer *piece* (36). Compare also LANNERT, An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Acc., II, A, 2.

As regards *horse* the use of the singular instead of the plural form, a survival of Old English practice, seems to be now confined to poetry. See also MURRAY, s. v. *horse*, I, 1, b. The singular, however, is regular in the title *master of the horse*.

*Youth* in a collective sense is also construed as a singular.

**cannon.** i. \* All that day from morning until after sunset the *cannon* never ceased to roar. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXII, 350.

In that dark row of gaunt sheds the Armstrong *cannon are* forged. ESCOTT, England, Ch. VI, 89.

In 1372 small *cannon were* used on board French ships. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 621a.

\*\* Havelock was now moving forward from Allahabad towards Cawnpore with *six cannon*, and about a thousand English soldiers. M<sup>C</sup>CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 189.

They had each so many thousand infantry and cavalry, and so *many cannon*. SPENC., Educ., Ch. I, 27b.

ii. More than two hundred vessels had been assembled, carrying generally ten *pieces of cannon*. MOTLEY, Rise, IV, Ch. II, 572b.

iii. *Cannons* are made of iron, brass, bronze, and sometimes of steel rods welded together. WEBST., Dict.

The Armada was provided with 2500 *cannons*. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, Sect. VI, 419.

**horse.** \* MACB. I did hear the galloping of *horse*: who was't came by? — LENNOX. 't is two or three, mylord, that bring you word Macduff is fled to England. MACB., IV, 1, 140.

A thousand *horse*, and none to ride! BYRON, Mazeppa, XVII.

A thousand *horse*, the wild and free, | Like waves that follow o'er the sea, Came lightly thundering on. Ib.

The waves charging "like Phantom hosts of warrior *horse*". Athen., No. 4434, 437c.

\*\* Equerries are certain officers of the royal household in the department of the *master of the horse*. ANNANDALE, Conc. Dict.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *clam*<sup>2</sup>, 1.

**youth.** i. \* Home-keeping *youth* have ever homely wits. Two Gentl., I, 1, 2.  
He admired Pen quite as much as any of the other *youth* did. THACK.,  
Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 193.

Soon the couples became leavened with rustic *youth* to a marked extent.  
HARDY, Tess, I, Ch. I, 17.

A great deal may be learnt by docile *youth* from work in the Lake  
Country. Times.

\*\* Such accounts have been inspected by the parents of *many* university  
*youth*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XX, 209.

The expense of educating *ten thousand youth* is not ten or five times that  
of one thousand. BELLAMY, Look Backw., 101.

The joke has afforded a moment's amusement to *many generations of*  
*youth*. EARLE, Phil., § 228.

A moderate system of obligatory naval or military training for *all our youth* is  
eminently desirable in the interest of the national physique alone. Times.

ii. At the sixth round there were almost as many fellows shouting out "go it,  
Figs", as there were *youths* exclaiming "go it, Cuff". THACK., Van. Fair,  
I, Ch. V, 46.

The story will interest *youths* of an adventurous spirit. Lit. World.

iii. What follies will not *youth* perpetrate with *its* own admirable gravity and  
simplicity? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 187.

But he was young and *youth* is curious. Ch. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. I, 1b.

The spiritual and intellectual dangers which beset ardent and intelligent  
*youth* on *its* entrance into the world. NOWELL C. SMITH, Wordsworth's  
Lit. Criticism, Introd., 4.

29. A few nouns often retain the singular form, although not felt  
as collective nouns of the second kind (26). They bear some  
resemblance to those mentioned in 8, and in another respect to  
those mentioned in the preceding §. From the former they differ  
in that they are not devoid of a plural form, from the latter in  
that they cannot be stripped of the mark of the plural unless  
preceded by a modifying word. As to this latter point compare  
for instance: *Fish are caught in various ways* with *Hundreds*  
*are caught every day by anglers*.

As to some of the nouns here referred to the frequent want of  
inflection is a survival of their declension in Old English, in which  
certain neuters had the same form for the plural as the singular in the  
accusative as well as the nominative (8, Obs. II); with others it is due  
to the action of analogy.

We may distinguish:

a) names of measure;

1) such as denote a set of a definite number. These nouns retain  
the mark of the plural when not preceded by a numeral, definite  
or indefinite. In other cases usage is with the majority of them of  
a varied nature. The nouns in question are *brace*, *couple*, *pair*, *yoke*;  
*leash*; *dozen*; *score*; *gross*; *hundred*; *thousand* and *million*.

*Brace* originally used of dogs, afterwards came to be applied  
also to other animals, especially kinds of game and fish; to  
things, especially pistols; more rarely, and with a touch of  
humour or contempt, to persons. The plural form (*braces*) is  
exceedingly rare.



**Couple** is often used in the same connections as *brace*. In these it appears to retain the singular form as regularly. In other combinations the plural form is frequent enough.

**Pair**, now denoting only a set of two, was anciently also used of a set of an indefinite number, at least in connection with certain nouns. In *pair of stairs (steps)* this old application survives. (20.) In its present meaning the plural form is quite as common as the singular, and seems to be the rule after an indefinite numeral.

**Yoke** is used especially of oxen. The singular form seems to be preserved regularly.

**Leash**, denoting a set of three, is found, especially in sporting language, when the reference is to hounds, hawks, foxes, hares, deer etc. The plural form is, apparently non-existent.

**Dozen** regularly retains the singular form when partitive *of* is dropped, no matter whether the preceding numeral denotes a definite or an indefinite number. The plural is more frequent than the singular when *of* is not suppressed, at least when the preceding numeral denotes an indefinite number.

**Score** exhibits the same peculiarities as *dozen*.

**Gross**, which does not admit of the dropping of partitive *of*, mostly retains the singular form when a definite numeral precedes, the plural being the rule after an indefinite numeral.

**Hundred and thousand,**

- (1) when not followed by partitive *of* mostly retain the singular form, except:
  - (a) when they stand for *hundred (or thousand) pounds (men, etc.)*, and are preceded by an indefinite numeral;
  - (β) in the combinations *tens (or hundreds) of thousands*.
- (2) when followed by partitive *of* mostly take the mark of the plural. When it is absent, this is due to a noun being mentally supplied after them, so that they are felt as adnominal words used absolutely. (Ch. IV, 6, c, 1, Note.)

**Hundred**, when denoting a subdivision of a county, as in *the Chiltren Hundreds*, of course, takes the plural like an ordinary noun.

**Million** in the majority of cases is dealt with as *hundred and thousand*, but takes the mark of the plural:

- (1) regularly (or at least usually):
  - (a) when it stands for *million pounds (men, etc.)*, no matter whether a definite or an indefinite numeral precedes;
  - (β) when it is followed by *half* or another fractional numeral.
- (2) occasionally when another numeral follows.

All the above nouns regularly take the mark of the plural when not modified by any number-indicating word: *dozens, scores, hundreds, etc. of letters*.

**brace**. i. \* The gillie was leading or rather holding in *two brace* of remarkably fine *setters*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.  
*Ten brace* of *pointers*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*.

\*\* He shot *five brace* of *birds*. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 55.

I fancy there are close on *two brace* of grouse. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.

There were a *couple of brace* of cold woodcock. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, II, 169.

I rose and hooked *six brace* of capital fish. F. FRANCIS.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* *Three brace* of pistols. MARTINEAU.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\*\* A lusty *brace* of twins may weed her of her folly. TEN., *Princ.*, V, 453.

- ii. It could be easily carried by a *couple of braces* or so of trained elephants. *Punch*.<sup>2)</sup>

**couple.** i. \* They killed in one day 14 brace of hares, 16 *couple* of rabbits, 24 brace of pheasants, 13 brace of partridges and 16 *couple* of woodcocks. TROL.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\* Away they all went, *twenty couple* at once, . . . all top couples at last. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 45.

Full *fourteen couple* . . . had retired in an exhausted state. Id., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 255.

- ii. *Twenty-one couples* intend to be married at the same time and place. *Graph*.<sup>2)</sup>  
Only three *couples* had ventured to claim the bacon. *All the Year round*.<sup>2)</sup>

**pair.** i. \* *Two pair* of boots. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 55.

*Four and twenty pair* of partners. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 47.

*Three pair* of eyes were watching her from within the shop. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 18.

\*\* Mr. Harthur lives *three pair* high. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 302.

It is number 92, up *four pair* of stairs. Id., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXX, 341.

- ii. \* They sent me home *three pairs* of pantaloons. Id., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 69.  
The old gentleman begged me to get him *six pairs* of lamb's-wool stockings. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 88.

He was provided with *two pairs* of pistols. *Lit. World*.

In the same tree *three pairs* of jackdaws, *two or three pairs* of starlings . . . were bringing up their respective families. *Il. Mag.*

There was no knowing *how many pairs* of legs the new proprietor would require hose for. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXV, 250.

\*\* The Opposition have cancelled all their *pairs*. *Daily Mail*.

**yoke.** I have bought *five yoke* of oxen. Bible, Luke, XIV, 19.

I have seen a man ploughing with *six yoke* of oxen. *All the Year round*.<sup>2)</sup>

**leash.** I have acquired precisely *nine hundred and ninety-nine leash* of languages. *Münchhausen's Trav.*<sup>3)</sup>

**dozen.** i. \* *Three dozen* knives. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 55.

I caught *fifteen dozen* perch yesterday evening. JEROME, *Three men in a boat*, Ch. XVII, 218.

"You must taste old Narramore's port wine", said her entertainer. "The fellow sent a *couple of dozen*". G. GISSING, *Eve Madeley's Ransom*, Ch. XX. A *few dozen* very ancient coin were turned up. *Chamb.*<sup>2)</sup>

\*\* He had *three dozen* of eggs from Alice. MARRYAT.<sup>2)</sup>

A book-case containing a *couple of dozen* of law-books. RID. HAGGARD, *Mees. Will*, Ch. XV, 154.

- ii. About 350 *dozens* of Stilton were pitched at the Cheese Fair. *Graph*.<sup>2)</sup>

**score.** i. \* The days of our years are *three score* years and ten. Psalm XC, 10.

*Four score* years. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 55.

Across *two score* towns, I saw the great metropolis itself. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 48.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *brace*, 15. <sup>2)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XVI. <sup>3)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *leash*, 2.

She is in the middle way between *three score* and *three score* and ten years. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 360a.

\*\* Stage-coaches carry you from one end of the kingdom to another in a *few score* hours. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. III, 30.

Tavern beloved of artists *many score* years! Id., Newc., I, Ch. XXVII, 300.

- ii. What signifies breaking *some scores* of solemn promises. SHER., Rivals, IV, 2 (264).

*How many scores* of thousands of good English dinners have been cooked. Il. Lond. News.<sup>1)</sup>

I have *so many scores* of visits to pay. MACAULAY.<sup>1)</sup>

- gross. i. At last we were persuaded to buy the *two gross* between us. GOLDS., Vicar.

*Ten gross* of buttons. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 55.

"How much are the telegraph forms?" He admitted with reluctance, that they were free. — "I will take a *dozen gross*." Punch, No. 3674, 414c.

- ii. The fatherless little stranger was already welcomed by *some grosses* of prophetic pins. DICK., Cop., Ch. I, 3a.

One will outlast *many grosses* of the best steel pens. Advertisement.

- hundred, thousand. i. \* *Two hundred (thousand)* pounds.

A *few hundred* years ago. Miss BURNETT, Little Lord Fauntleroy, 165.

\*\* The garrison is not *two hundred* strong. COLERIDGE.

A man who could get *ten thousand* a year by staying at home, was a fool to risk his life abroad. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 218.

Trumbull himself is pretty sure of *five hundred*. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XXXV, 244

\*\*\* Poor Mrs. Cranch was half moved with the consolation of getting *any hundreds* at all without working for them. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XXXV, 247.

\*\*\*\* Many thousands are in want of common necessities, *hundreds of thousands* are in want of common comforts. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, I, 14.

To *tens of thousands* that are killed, add *hundreds of thousands* that survive with feeble constitutions. SPENCER, Education, Ch. I, 23b.

The famine seems likely to claim its victims by *tens of thousands*. Rev. of Rev., CCVI, 117b.

- ii. \* In the neighbourhood a town, inhabited by *many thousands* of natives, had sprung up. MAC., Clive, (409a).

At a very early stage of his progress, the learner will find himself able to compile a list of *some hundreds* of German words which have an obvious likeness to the English words with which they agree in meaning. H. BRADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. I, 2.

\*\* How many *thousand* of my poorest subjects | Are at this hour asleep! Henry IV, B, III, 1, 4.

I'm not angry with the British public, but I wish we had a *few thousand* of them scattered among these rocks. RUDY. KIPLING, The light that failed, Ch. II, 16.

*Several hundred* of the enemy's horses have been captured. Times.

- million. i. \* According to these reports the number of his English subjects must have been about *five million* two hundred thousand. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 279.

\*\* 42,706,835: *forty-two millions*, seven hundred and six thousand, eight hundred and thirty-five. YOUNG, Arithmetic.

\*\*\* Over *two million* copies of the Author's work have been sold. Lit. World.

\*\*\*\* The capital of the company . . . is *five millions* sterling. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 69.

We repented and voted over *twenty millions* to clear ourselves of the reproach. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 43.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XVI.

Baron Hirsch is said to have left *twenty millions* sterling, apart from his real estate. *Il. Lond. News.*

The total number of registered electors is over *ten millions*. *Id.*

\*\*\*\*\* The conclusion at which he arrived was that the population of England was nearly *five millions and a half*. *MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 278.*

Then it was agreed that the indemnity already mentioned should be paid by the Chinese Government — some *four millions and a half* sterling, in addition to one million and a quarter as compensation for the destroyed opium. *MC CARTHY, Short. Hist., Ch. II, 28.*

- ii. Difference in opinions has cost *many millions* of lives. *SWIFT, Gul. Trav., IV, Ch. V, (197b).*

There were only *two millions* of human beings. *MAC., Hist.*

The wheat he estimated at less than *two millions* of quarters. *Id.*

A *good many millions* of money now spent would be in the pockets of the taxpayers. *FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. II, 41.*

- 2) denominators of fractional numbers. These nouns sometimes stand without the mark of the plural, when placed immediately before the noun modified, which is their ordinary position in the language of arithmetic and statistics. In all other positions the mark of the plural is regularly retained. Compare *Ch. XLII, 14*, and see also *SATTLER, E. S., II.*

- a) *quarter* never takes the mark of the plural when followed immediately by a noun.

New York has now attained the respectable antiquity of *two-and-three-quarter* centuries. *Graph.*

He received the arrears of *two-and-three-quarter* years of sipping in one attack of delirium tremens. *RUDY. KIPLING, Plain Tales, No. XXIII, 177.*

We did the 20 miles in *six and three-quarter* hours. *Times.*

This final catastrophe happened at 2.20 a. m., at or about *two-and-three-quarter* hours after the vessel had first struck the iceberg. *Id., No. 1846, 387b.*

- β) With ordinal numerals used as denominators of fractions, usage is divided, but the prevalent practice seems to be to place them in the plural, no matter whether or no they are followed by partitive *of*.

- i. The longest sword is *twenty-seven and five eighth* inches. *CHAMB.<sup>1)</sup>*

Of the remaining *three-fourth* parts of my said father's estate, one-fourth part of the *three-fourth* parts I give and bequeath [etc.]. *STEVENSON (Daily News).<sup>2)</sup>*

- ii. \* It was a dodgy sum, and the right answer was *one and seven-eighths* donkeys, which, of course, looks as if it must be wrong. *BARRY PAIN, A Change of Rôle, Ch. I.*

He found that he wanted half *thirty-one and three-eighths* inches from the corner. *JEROME, Three men in a boat, Ch. III, 27.*

They are better in design and only half to *two-thirds* the cost. *Times.*

\*\* I was told in the strictest confidence that the house one year with another divided a good seven thousand pounds, of which Brough had half, Hoff had *two-sixths*, and the other sixth went to old Tudlow. *THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 12.*

*Three-fourths* of the Upper House walked in solemn order from their usual place of assembling to the tribunal. *MAC., War. Hist., (648b).*

*Nine-tenths* of my customers have been English gentlefolk. *Times.*

About *two-thirds* of the population are Protestants. *Cassell's Conc. Cycl., s. v. Prussia.*

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., II.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.



The white people say they pay *nine-tenths* of the taxes. W. ARCHER (Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 13b).

Note: Possession is *nine-tenths* of the law. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIX, 190. (= nine points of the law.)

- 3) compounds and word-groups with *worth*. With such as contain the word *penny* or *shilling* usage is divided; those which contain the word *pound* seem to be regularly kept in the singular. Usage is also varied in other respects, for which see Ch. IV, 10, Obs. II.

i. I can prepare for, and put up with a regularly bad day, but these *ha'porth* of all sorts of days do not suit me. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VII, 72. Take a cup of chocolate with *two pennyworth* of butter and cake. PUNCH. He bought *three shillings' worth* of liquor.

We fell to with our swords, and had her (sc. the ship) in fifty minutes, and *fifty thousand pounds' worth* in her. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVIII, 214.

They got *a couple of thousand pounds' worth* out of me. MARIE COR., *Sor. of Sat.*, I, Ch. XVI, 215.

*Three thousand pounds worth* of Louis d'or and Napoleons. II. Lond. News.

ii. When they could eat no more, Mr. Pecksniff and Mr. Jonas subscribed for *two sixpennyworths* of hot brandy-and-water, which the latter gentleman considered a more politic order than one shillingworth. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. VIII, 63b.

*A few pennyworths* of lollipops. (?), Miss Providence, Ch. XVIII.

One of the most interesting *five-shillings'-worths* he can buy. Lit. World.

- 4) compounds of *weight*.

i. The stone weighs *ten hundredweight*. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>31</sup>, § 55.

Such an acre of potatoes will produce *six thousandweight* of solid nourishment. ADAM SMITH.<sup>1)</sup>

Reduce 5 tons *13 cwt.* 2 qrs. 9 lb. 13 oz. 10 drs. to drams. PENDLEBURY, *Arithmetic*, § 76.

Reduce 6 oz. *13 dwt.* and 8 oz. 19 *dwt.* to grains. Ib.

ii. If my fool's head weighed four pound, and Jack's three pound three ounces and three quarters, *how many pennyweights* heavier would my head be than Jack's? G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, Ch. XXI, 204.

In the Mediterranean shoals of tunny, a giant mackerel, weighing *several hundredweights*, are captured for their wholesome food and oil. Suggest. Les., I, 116.

- 5) the nouns *horse-power* and *stone* as names of measure. A stone = 14 pounds. *Horses-power* as the plural of *horsepower* seems to be in occasional use. *Stone* occasionally takes the mark of the plural.

**horsepower.** i. It is estimated that the so-called lean gases discharged from the blast furnaces of Germany are capable of developing *one million horsepower*. Rev. of Rev., CCIII, 491b.

The German liner 'Kaiser Wilhelm der Grosse' had a tonnage of 14349 and *28000 horsepower*. Id., CCXIV, 342a.

Orient Company's S.S.-"Ormuz", 6465 tons register, *9,000 horsepower*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4943, 11a.

The very up-to-date electric installations on the Jhelum River are expected to produce some day *a quarter of a million horsepower*. Ib., No. 5173, 10b.

ii. These engines are guaranteed to exert *6600 horses power*. Inscription in South Kensington Museum.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XVI.

- stone.** i. George and Harris and Montmorency are not poetic ideals, but things of flesh and blood — especially George, who weighs about *twelve stone*. JEROME, *Three men in a boat*, Pref.
- ii. A full-grown man in Western Europe averages about *eleven stones*. All the Year round.<sup>1)</sup>  
He has brought down a splendid royal stag weighing *eighteen stones*. Graph.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. Thus also other compounds of *power*, such as *candle power*, retain the single form when multiples are meant.

Where the electrical pressure on any supply is between 100 and 120 volts, the metallic filament lamps must be at least *16 candle power*: with a pressure of 200 volts and over these lamps must be at least *40 candle power*. Advert.

Observe also the humorous nonce-formation in the following quotation: "What is the matter with Miss Smithers?" said the lady abbess, as the aforesaid Miss Smithers proceeded to go into hysterics of *four young-lady power*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVI, 147.

- 6) the noun *pound* when followed by a bare numeral denoting shillings, and the noun *foot* when followed by a mere numeral denoting inches.

**pound.** i. Bolder's father was *ten pound ten* short. DICK., *Nich. Nickleby*, Ch. VIII, 47b.

"I should say *three pound ten* was plenty", said Mr. Limbkins. Id., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 9a.

- ii. \* I have sold him for *three pounds, five shillings and two pence*. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. XII, (304).

Having in his pocket *four pounds two shillings* [etc.]. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXIII, 354.

\*\* "The money we brought with us," said Martin, "is reduced to a few shillings less than *eight pounds*". DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXI, 180a.

Incomes of *40,000 pounds* at the time of the accession of George III were at least as rare as incomes of *100,000 pounds* are now. MAC., *Clive*, (525b).

**foot.** i. I'm only *five foot four*. THACK., *Lovel the Widower*, Ch. III, 49.  
He looked round the huge assembly, from his vantage ground of *six foot four*. EDNA LYALL, *We Two*, I, 192.

- ii. Who stood about *five feet* in their shoes. HT. MARTINEAU, *Loom and Luger*, I, vii, 115.<sup>2)</sup>

Note I. In other cases *pound* and *foot*, like the names of other measures not mentioned above, reject the mark of the plural only in vulgar or colloquial style and in dialects. MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>3)</sup>, § 55; TEN BRUGGENCATE, *Taalstudie*, VI; FRANZ, E. S., XII; STORM, *Phil.*<sup>2)</sup>, 777.

Ask Mrs. Rouncewell how long she has been here, and she'll answer: "*fifty year*, three months and a fortnight, by the blessing of Heaven, if I live till Tuesday. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. VII, 52.

They'd have taken care on her, the Union — *eight and twenty mile* away from where we live. Id., *Chimes*<sup>3)</sup>, II, 55.

She grudged me a *hundred pound* to get me out of quod. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XIX, 298.

The gentleman without the elephant is worth *five pound*. Ib., I, Ch. XIV, 150.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XVI.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

We measured the heap, as I am a christened man, *seventy foot long, ten foot broad, and twelve foot high*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 2a.

What with rent etc. my birds cost me close on *fifteen shilling* apiece. Graph.

II. After *one and a half, one and a quarter, one and three quarters*, and, perhaps, other mixed numbers whose first element is *one*, the name of the measure seems to be occasionally kept in the singular.

About  $\frac{1}{2}$  *mile* due north of the City of Salisbury stands the imposing ancient monument known as Old Sarum.<sup>1)</sup>

*One and a half hour*. Mod. Lang. Quart., 1904, Oct., 127.1)

III. The practice of keeping names of measures in the singular was formerly more common than it is now.

One sound cudgel of *four foot*. Henry VIII, V, 4, 19.<sup>2)</sup>

*How many fathom* deep I am in love. As you like it, IV, 1, 210.<sup>2)</sup>

This idol they placed in the highest part of the house, on an altar erected about *three foot*. SWIFT, *Tale of a Tub*, Sect. II.

There was *four foot* water in the hold. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 10.

Instructive, from an historical point of view, is Pope's changing *year* into *years* in the following lines from SHAKESPEARE:

*Twelve year* since, Miranda, *twelve year* since | Thy father was the Duke of Milan and | A prince of power Temp., I, 2, 51.

According to A. SCHMIDT (*Shakespeare Lexicon*) SHAKESPEARE has *fathom* 7 times, *fathoms* 3 times; *mile* 6 times, *miles* 18 times; *pound* 29 times, *pounds* 13 times. For details about the practice as regards the names of measures about the beginning of the 18th century see especially LANNERT, *An Investigation into the Lang.* of Rob. Crus., *Accid.*, II, A.

TENNYSON archaically keeps the name of the measure in the singular in:

All round from the cliffs and the capes. | Purple or amber, dangled a *hundred fathom* of grapes. The Voyage of Maeldune, 56. (Compare with this: And star'd with a *myriad blossom* the long convolvulus hung. lb., 40.

They might have crop't the *myriad* flower of May. Id., Bal. and Bal., 582.)

- b) the following nouns: *counsel* in the sense of legal adviser; *head* when used as an individualizer before certain collective nouns of the second kind (26), especially *cattle* and *game* (36); *sail* in the sense of sailing-vessel or ship of any kind; *stand* when used as an individualizer before *colours*, *arms*, *muskets*, etc. (36).

After a numeral the plural form of these nouns is rarely met with. MURRAY does not give a single instance under *counsel* and *head*. SATTLER (E. S., XVI) gives a few instances of *heads*. The plural *sails* may be instanced from SHAKESPEARE. The plural form of these nouns may be more usual when no numeral precedes, but the evidence is very scanty.

**counsel.** i. Who happen to be in the Lord Chancellors Court this murky afternoon besides the Lord Chancellor, the *counsel* in the cause, *two or three counsel* who are never in any cause? Dick., *Bleak House*, Ch. I, 2.

<sup>1)</sup> KRUISINGA, *A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 321.

<sup>2)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, VI.

Jenny's position was exceedingly like that of a witness being examined and cross-examined by *two counsel* who are not at all scrupulous about asking leading questions. 'Mrs. GASKELL, Cranford, Ch. X, 197.

The *counsel were* by no means fairly matched. MAC., Hist., III, Ch. VIII, 189.

- ii. *Counsel* usually *begin* in this way. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXIV, 308.

Those gentlemen in silk gowns in the front row are Queen's *counsel*. The gentlemen in stuff gowns on the back benches are junior *counsel*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. XXIV, 422.

- head.** i. We thus saw about 6300 *head* of cattle. Contemp. Review.<sup>1)</sup>

We ought to bag a *good many head* of game to make up for turning out in this wet mist. EDNA LYALL, Donovan, I, 276.

*Thirty thousand head* of swine. ADDISON.<sup>2)</sup>

He undertook to walk six miles in one hour, with 300 *head* of asparagus. CHAMB.<sup>1)</sup>

They killed more than a *quarter of a million head* of vermin. Ib.<sup>1)</sup>

We killed *fifty head* of wild-fowl. MALMESBURY.<sup>1)</sup>

The "Hunt" generally pays Reynard's poultry bill — estimated by one authority to amount to at least £ 50.000 annually for *nearly half a million head* of poultry. Westm. Gaz., No. 5448, 14a.

- ii. I hope this season to bag *as many heads* as my father. LYTTON, Night and Morning.<sup>1)</sup>

Wealth is reckoned by *heads* of cattle. CHAMB.<sup>1)</sup>

The Count killed 9302 *heads* of game during his sporting career. Graph.

- sail.** i. Their force consisted of *twenty sail* of the line. SOUTHEY, Life of Nelson, Ch. IX, 242.

Admiral Louis, with *six sail*, had been detached for stores and water to Gibraltar. Ib., Ch. IX, 247.

The little fleet of *five sail* assembled in Cawsand Bay. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XI, 97.

The British fleet was but *fifteen sail* of the line strong. Il. Lond. News.

- ii. I have *fifty sails*, Cæsar none better. Ant. and Cleop., III, 7, 50.

**stand.** *Fifty stand* of colours fell into the hands of the Prussians. MAC., Fred., (693a).

100000 *stand* of arms occupy the two store-rooms. Il. Lond. News.

He offered him at a bargain *ten thousand stand* of probably obsolescent muskets. HOWELLS.<sup>1)</sup>

30. Separate mention must be made of certain nouns which as to their grammatical possibilities differ from the nouns mentioned in the preceding §§ and from their Dutch equivalents.

- a) *Acquaintance* is often found, especially in older writers, as a collective noun, either of the first or the second kind [i. e. denoting a conception either within or without limits (Ch. XXVI, 7)]. When used as a single-unit noun preceded by a numeral, it seems occasionally to stand without the mark of the plural. See the quotation under ii. Compare also LANNERT, An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Accid., II, A, 2.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XVI.    <sup>2)</sup> WEBST.



- i. \* I wish I had *a large acquaintance*. JAN AUSTEN, North. Abbey, Ch. II, 1.  
The wish of *a numerous acquaintanc* in Bath was still uppermost with Mrs. Allen. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 13.

\*\* In reality bosom friends and intimate *acquaintance* have a kind of natural propensity to particular females at the house of a friend. FIELDING, Tom Jones, III, Ch. VI, 37b.

Most of my *acquaintance* no sooner perceived my change of temper than they abandoned me. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXII, 157.

Girls who have been spoilt for home by great *acquaintance*. JANE AUSTEN, North. Abbey, Ch. XXX, 233.

I am weary of stringing up all my married *acquaintance* by Roman denominations. CH. LAMB, Es. of Elia, A Bachelor's Complaint, (264).

The two caps reflected on the window-blind were the respective head-dresses of *a couple* of Mrs. Bardell's most particular *acquaintance*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXVI, 235.

All his *acquaintance* were aware that he was carrying on a desperate flirtation with Mrs. Crawley. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIX, 309.

These three brethren told casual *acquaintance* that they were spending their Whitsun holidays in a walking tour through the Vale of Blackmoor. HARDY, Tess, I, Ch. II, 16.

- ii. They had *many acquaintance* in common. JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. XXV, 144.

- iii. He had never been introduced to any of Rawdon Crawley's great *acquaintances*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXVIII, 322.

George was so occupied with his new *acquaintances* that he and William Dobbin were by no means so much together as formerly. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 309.

Mr. Hobbs had not many very close *acquaintances* who were earls. Miss BURNETT, Little Lord, 269.

Quarters were found for the traveller at 44 George Street, Portman Square. by some Irish *acquaintances*. STEPH. GWENN, Thomas Moore, Ch. I, 19.

- b) *Mane* is regularly used as an ordinary single-unit noun in English. It is however, placed in the plural when the growth of hair of several animals is referred to.

- i. John Gilpin, at his horse's side | Seized fast the flowing *mane*. COWPER, John Gilpin, XXIII.

A quantity of dark, grizzled hair, wild as *a mane*, hid its head and face. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXVI, 358.

When enraged he (sc. the lion) likewise erects his *mane*. DARWIN, Descent, II, Ch. XVIII, 526.

- ii. It (sc. the river Nile) ran for a hundred and fifty days' journey through deserts where nothing but flying serpents and satyrs lived, and the very lions' *manes* were burnt off by the heat. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Ch. III, 14a.

- c) *Offspring* is used as a single-unit noun, or as a collective noun of the nature of *cattle*. It is, apparently, never preceded by a word denoting number, but is occasionally met with in the plural form.

- i. *Every offspring* is like its parent. HUXL., Darw., Ch. II, 32.

The extent to which *an offspring* differs from its parent is slight enough. *Ib.*, 34.

- ii. Their mongrel *offspring* are very generally, but not universally, fertile. DARWIN (in HUXL., Darw., Ch. II, 49).

As physical maturity is marked by the ability to produce *offspring*; so mental maturity is marked by the ability to train *those offspring*. SPENC., Educ., Ch. III, 70a.

It is conceivable that two hermaphrodites, attracted by each other's greater beauty, might unite and leave *offspring*. DARWIN, *Descent of Man*, Ch. IX, 264.

- iii. The widows and the *offsprings* of the poorer, the indigent clergy. TOLDERVY.<sup>1)</sup>

How much do these beloved *offsprings* add to our love and happiness! Mem. Female Philos.<sup>1)</sup>

- d) *Vote*, preceded by an adjective, or a word doing duty as such, is frequently found in a collective sense.

The narrow majority is dependent entirely on the Irish *vote*. Times.

The majority in its favour against the combined Tory and Irish *vote* was about 200. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 560a.

Mr. Hughes, the Republican candidate, wins by a majority of 55000, out of a recorded *vote* of 1.617.786. Ib., CCIV, 656a.

31. When a noun in the common-case form is placed adnominally before another noun, either as an independent word, or as part of a compound, and also when it is part of an adnominal word-group, it is mostly placed in the singular. This is even the usual form when it represents a plural idea as in *rose cultivation*, *foot-warmer*, *tooth-brush*, *apple-tree*, *cycle-manufacturer*, *three-volume novel*, *five-act comedy*, *five-foot rope*, *three-quarter-inch spikes*. The singular form is also retained when the head-word is plural, except in the cases mentioned in 16, c, 2. Thus *despot-kings*, *brother-volunteers*, etc.; but *gentlemen boarders*, *women-servants*, *knights-hospitallers*, *lords-justices*, etc. The plural common-case form is however used:

- a) when the singular would convey a distinctly different meaning, as in *teeth-rim* (SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, § 21).
- b) in the names of acts, bills, committees of Parliament, such as *the Crimes Act* (Times), *the Inebriates Act* (id.), *the Aliens Act* (Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 339b), *the Highways Committee* (id., CCVI, 125a).
- c) when the adnominal noun is one of certain pluralia tantum,
- 1) standing by itself:

**bellows**, e. g.: *bellows-maker*, *bellows-treader*, etc.

**clothes**, e. g.: *clothes-brush*, *clothes-horse*, etc. [Comp. a).]

**commons**, e. g.: *the Commons House of Parliament*. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 566b). [Comp. a).]

**gallows**, e. g.: *gallows air* (WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, E), *gallows-bird*, *gallows-foot* (SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIV, 257), *gallows-rope*, etc.

**goods**, e. g.: *goods station*, *goods traffic*, *goods-train*, etc. [Comp. a).]

**hustings**, e. g.: *hustings-court*, *hustings-orator*, *hustings-speech*, etc.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *offspring*, 4b.

Especial mention may here be made of such pluralia tantum as are geographical names (19, 1). When used adnominally these, apparently, retain the mark of the plural regularly.

I swear to the *Netherlands* People that I will maintain the constitution. *Rev. of Rev.*, 15 Oct. 1898, 358.

The *Netherlands* railway. *Times*.

The *United States* Government. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6101, 1c.

The latest company of castaways rescued from the *Antipodes Islands* were the crew of the four-masted French barque 'President Felix Faure'. *Id.*, No. 5179, 3b.

In the following quotations *Netherland* may be apprehended as a pure adjective, of a similar nature as *inland*:

The pistol of the insignificant Gérard destroyed the possibility of a united *Netherland* state. *MOTLEY, Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 898a.

The ancient rugged tree of *Netherland* liberty. *Id.*, 898b.

## 2) in conjunction with other words:

**goods**, e. g.: *dry-goods* store (*Il. Lond. News*), *fancy-goods* sale, etc.

**quarters**, e. g.: the new *headquarters* seat (*Graph.*).

**stairs**, e. g.: the *down-stairs* room (*Mrs. WARD, Dav. Grieve*, I, 227), the *up-stairs* window (*G. ELIOT, Mill*, VII, Ch. V, 483).

Note I. Most pluralia tantum, however, are placed in the singular when used adnominally. Thus:

**ash**, e. g.: *ash-bin*, *ash-heap*, *ash-tray*, etc.

**billiard**, e. g.: *billiard-ball*, *billiard-marker*, *billiard-table*, etc.

**checker**, e. g.: *checker-board*, *checker-book*, etc.

**colour**, e. g.: *colour-sergeant*.

**domino**, e. g.: *domino-box*.

**draught**, e. g.: *draught-board*, *draught-book*, etc.

**gymnastic**, e. g.: *gymnastic-master*, *gymnastic-entertainment*, etc.

**skittle**, e. g.: *skittle-alley*, *skittle-ground*, etc.

**spirit**, e. g.: *spirit-bottle*, *spirit-phials* (*DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 239), etc.

**wage**, e. g.: *wage-receiver* (*Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm.*, I, 264).

Thus also in such compounds as are illustrated in:

Others devoted themselves to the sodden and *lec-dyed* pieces of the cask. *DICK., Tale of Two Cities*, I, Ch. V, 43.

II. With some pluralia tantum usage is variable. Thus with:

**custom**. i. *custom-collector* (*MURRAY*), *custom-gatherer* (*id.*), *custom-house* (*id.*).  
ii. *customs-duties* (*id.*), *customs-laws* (*id.*), the *French-Customs* authorities (*Times*), the *customs-officers* (*Graph.*), a *customs-house* clerk (*JEROME, Diary*, 44).

**door**. i. the out and *in-door* servants (*G. MOORE, Esth. Waters*, Ch. V, 33), *out-door* work (*WASH. IRV., Rip van Winkle*).

ii. *out-of-doors* reading (*CH. LAMB, Last Essays of Elia*, [301]), *out-of-doors* life (*MISS YONGE, Heir of Redc.*, Ch. V, 65), *out-of-doors* tea-drinking (*EDNA LYALL, Donovan*, I, 129), *out-of-doors* statue (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5048, 4a).

**revel**. i. This Lord of Misrule, or *revel-master*, was sometimes termed a Christmas Prince. *Penny Cycl.*, XIV, 151/1.

ii. At the disposal of the actors were all the properties, scenery and dresses of the *Revels* Office. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3816, Sup. XV.

**scissor.** i. *scissor-bill* (WEBSTER), *scissor-tail* (id.).

ii. a *scissors-grinder* (CON. DOYLE, *Sherlock Holmes*, I, 40).

**trouser.** i. *trouser-pockets* (G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLI, 306).

ii. *trousers-pocket* (RID. HAGGARD, *King Solomon's Mines*, 16).

MURRAY has only *the Middle-age* (*Middleage*) as the adnominal form, but *the Middle-Ages* is also met with:

I attribute the quarrelsome nature of *the Middle-Ages* young men entirely to the absence of the soothing weed. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 79.

III. The official language has, or at least had, *parcels post* by the side of *book-post* and *sample-post*. MURRAY has only *parcel-post*, and this may be the present official term. The plural form, however, seems to be common enough:

The *book-post*, the *sample-post* and the *parcels-post*, although under the same management, seem to be all competing together. *Graph.* (Compare: The cash-on-delivery system has already been adopted by the *parcel-delivery* companies. *Id.*

The *Samples-Depôt* is particularly useful to representatives of English firms coming to Vienna. *Il. Lond. News*, 3815, Sup. VIIIc.)

MURRAY (*s. v. hand*, 19) has *hour-hand*, *minute-hand*, but *seconds-hand*.

By the *seconds-hands* of the big old chronometer the defunct doctor had felt many a patient's pulse in his time. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 184.

IV. The plural seems to be the regular form when the noun modified in the adnominal word group is an ordinal numeral as in:

Such a vote requires a *two-thirds* majority. *Westm. Gaz.*

V. Observe also the practice in: We were strictly instructed by Authority to shoot only the half or *three-quarter grown* ones (*sc. rabbits*. HOR. HUTCHINSON (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6011, 2c).

32. Obs. I. Owing to the relation between modifier and head-word being often analogous to one of those commonly expressed by a classifying genitive, and owing to the sameness in sound of the common case plural and the genitive plural, we sometimes find plural modifiers with the apostrophe of the genitive. (Ch. XXIV, 56, Obs. I.)

It may here be observed that the application of such typographical symbols as commas, hyphens, apostrophes, etc. is a matter which in England is largely left to the discretion of press-readers and compositors.

Digging his hands deep in his *trousers'* pockets. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. IV, 41.

He buried his hands in his *trousers'* pockets. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 194.

A *United States'* security. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 26.

He threw her out of a *two pair of stairs'* window. *Id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. I, 2b.

The *parcels'-post* van on the Embankment by electric light. ANSTEE, *Fallen Idol*.

The genitive plural even seems to be the ordinary form of the names of measures of time when forming part of an adnominal word-group together with a numeral. For illustration see also Ch. XXIV, 42, *b*, 2; 56, Obs. I and II.



- i. \* Lady Godiva . . . sat . . . in her bower, with her youngest son, a *two years'* boy, at her knee. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 9a.  
It will be a *ten days'* break for him at any rate. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, II, 273.  
Then good morning, my *four months'* cousin. HARDY, *Tess*, II, Ch. XII, 98.  
\*\* The question . . . was whether the Marshal was to be "the President of a *seven-years Republic*", or "the *seven-years President* of a Republic." Periodical.<sup>1)</sup>

There was equal animation in the *three-and-a-half days* discussion on the Welsh-Disestablishment Bill. - II. *Lond. News*, No. 3813, 788c.

- ii. A special *four-year* Course of Geography is required. Schoolmaster's Year-book, 1906, Advert., 32.

An *eight or ten hour* day. Rev. of Rev., CCIV, 332a.

An immediate advance of 2 s. a week to all grades who do not receive the *eight-hour* day. Ib.

Lord Haldane's *three-day* visit to Berlin caused . . . the greatest interest. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3800, 225.

The *fifteen-day* circular ticket . . . down by boat and back by rail, has again been arranged. Id., No. 3813, 788c.

WENDT (*Synt. des Adj.*, 21) quotes the following instance of the genitive plural of the name of a measure of length in a similar position:

A *fifty miles'* cruise. H. NORMAN, *The World's Book*.

The ordinary practice, however, is to retain the name of the measure of length in the singular in adnominal word-groups of this description:

If you wish to thoroughly enjoy your dinner, take a *thirty-mile* country walk after breakfast. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, XI, 183.

We went on, looking into everything, laughing, wondering every step of our *five-mile* journey. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

We settled down to our *seven-mile* drive. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6029, 9b.

- II. If the noun *year* enters into an adnominal word-group together with a numeral and the adjective *old*, it is, apparently, almost regularly kept in the common case singular.

- i. Nearest her mother sits the *nine-year-old* Patty. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. II, 19.

"Hold the horse, Willy," said Mrs. Moss to the *twelve-year-old* boy. Ib., Mill, VI, Ch. XI, 413.

He is only a *two-year-old* fox-terrier. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VIII, 123.

*Sixty-year-old* brandy. JAMES PAYN, *Glow. Worm. Tales*, II, D, 52.

His *eighteen-year-old* daughter was attacked by appendicitis. Rev. of Rev., CCXVI, 558a.

After being four days missing, Thomas Martindale, a *ten-year-old* Penrith boy, who strayed into the fells near Ullswater last Tuesday, turned up safely at Troutbeck on Saturday. *Daily Mail*.

- ii. She was a chronicle of *fifty-years'-old* scandal. THACK., *Sam. Titm.* Ch. II, 24.

- iii. She picked up the revolver, and, aiming at her head, missed and that her *two-years-old* girl Winifred. *Yorkshire Post*, 26/8, 1912.

In other adnominal word-groups made up of numeral + name of measure of time + adjective the name of the measure seems to stand regularly in the plural, whether common case or genitive.

1) WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 109.

- i. \* Scrooge had not bestowed one thought on Marley, since his last mention of his *seven-years'*, *dead* partner that afternoon. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 19. (Compare: And yet that face of Marley, *seven years dead*, came like the ancient Prophet's rod, and swallowed up the whole. *Ib.*, I, 21.)

\*\* That day Sir Lancelot at the palace craved | Audience of Guinevere, to give at last | ... The *nine-years-fought-for* diamonds. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 1160.

- ii. \* Mother and daughter were seen in the evenings one with a baby at her breast, the other with an *eighteen-months'-old* child in her arms. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. III, 22.

\*\* At an inquest on the body of Joseph Enoch Robinson, the *four-months-old* child of an Army Reservist [etc.]. *Times*.

A *four-months-long* winter. MERRIMAN.<sup>1)</sup>

Names of measures of length, except *foot*, are probably as a rule kept in the singular when entering into such adnominal word-groups.

- i. His Imperial Majesty rode along the *two-mile long* lines. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3794.
- ii. The dusty high-road lay through a forest of pine backed on one side by a *three-thousand-feet-high* fjeld. H. K. DANIELS, *The Post-Boy* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5418, 2c).

After the indefinite article such a word-group as *five-year-old boy* is mostly replaced by *boy of five* or *boy of five years old*, in which latter collocation *old* seems to have crept in through the influence of such a sentence as *he is five years old*. Compare also ONIONS, *Advanc. Eng. Synt.*, § 94, and Ch. XLII, 4.

- i. A lad *of twelve*. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Int.*, I, Ch. II, 33.

- ii. A heifer *of three years old*, and a she-goat *of three years old*. *Bible Genesis*, XI, 9.

A child *of twelve years old*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. III, 20.

Note the varied practice in:

She busied herself with sprinkling the linen dried during the daytime, in company with her *nine-year-old* brother Abraham, and her sister Eliza-Louisa *of twelve and a half*. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. III, 25.

Observe also: We do not admire such phrases as 'the *sixteen-year*ed bride'. *Athen.*, No. 4436, 511a.

- III. The use of the plural form of measures other than of either time or length, when connected with a numeral to form an adnominal word-group, does not seem to be so infrequent as we often find it stated: You build a *45.000 tons* hotel of thin steel plates. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, May, 308. You are at night on the bridge in charge of a *150.000 tons* ship. *Ib.* Its *one-hundred-pounds* projectile is the heaviest that can be man-handled. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3800, 247.

- IV. Instead of *twopenny* (etc.)-*halfpenny* some people prefer to say *twopence* (etc.)-*halfpenny*.

Two dozen stamps and a dozen *twopence-halfpenny* ones. SWEET, *Prim. of Spok. Eng.*

Note also the disparaging sense often conveyed by *twopenny* or *twopenny-halfpenny*.

The reason of all this misery, rage and dissension, lies in a poor little *two-penny* dinner-party in Lilliput Street. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Tim.*, Ch. III, (312).

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 109.

Can you fancy a *twopenny-halfpenny* baroness of King Francis's time patronising Bayard? *Id.*, New c., I, Ch. VII, 83.

If she made Firkin a *twopenny-halfpenny* present, (she) accompanied it with so many compliments, that the twopence-halfpenny was transmuted into gold in the heart of the grateful waiting-maid. *Id.*, Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIX, 195.

33. Contrary to Dutch practice nouns are frequently placed in the plural when the things for which they stand are referred to each of the individuals separately of a group of persons. The plural is even the rule with many names of actions and states. (24.) See also Ch. XXXIII, 13, a.

i. \* Some were seen to put their *tongues* in their *cheeks*. WASH. IRVING, Sketch-Book, E.

The boys took their *places*. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 8a.

Mr. and Mrs. Fizziwig took their *stations*, one on either side the door. *Id.*, Christm. Car., II, 47.

She asked him to change *seats* with her. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XXXV, 246.

They grasped each other's *hands*. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., II, 258.

With your advantages you might turn the *heads* of half the girls in town. EDNA LYALL, Don., I, 140.

Englishmen, as a rule, have broad *backs* and somewhat tough *hides*. Graph.

\*\* Both brothers held their *breaths*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIX, 146a.

We all three held our *breaths*. MISS BRAD., My First Happy Christm. (STOF., Handl., I, 71).

The three occupants with their *joys* and *sorrows*, their *hopes* and *fears*, were each living out an absorbing life story. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norseman, Ch. XVIII, 165.

The saddest moment in the *lives* of these two persons was over and done with. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., III, 218.

The only odd part is that we have waited thirty-five years before making up our *minds*. Graph.

It is to our advantage to grow accustomed to taking deep *breaths*. RIPPMMANN, Sounds of Spoken English, § 4.

- ii. \* The poor soldiers of the Temple will not alone place their *foot* upon the necks of the kings. SCOTT, Ivanhoe.<sup>1)</sup>

You will see how they pine for their *desk* or their study. STEVENSON, Virginibus Puerisque, 118.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\* It influenced their *life*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VI, 57.

They sent this little spar out of the wreck with their *love* to good Mrs. Sedley. *Ib.*, Ch. XVII, 176.

We drew our *breath* again. MISS BRAD., My First Happy Christm. (STOF., Handl., I, 73).

Note. This use of the plural seems to have been more common in Early Modern English than it is now. Thus the Clarendon Press Editors commenting on *whither you will*, *so I were from your sights* (Richard II, IV, 1, 315) observe "that the plural is frequently used by SHAKESPEARE and writers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries when designating an attribute common to many, in cases where it would now be considered a solecism". As further instances they cite

many passages in SHAKESPEARE, as *Lear* IV, 6, 35; *Rich.* III, iv, 1, 25; *Timon of Athens*, I, 1, 255; *Pericles*, I, 1, 74; *Two Gentlemen*, I, 3, 48, 49; *Henry VIII*, III, 1, 68, etc. It is a significant fact that POPE in the above line from *Richard II*, changed *sight*s into *sight*. Also in the following quotations the plural seems to stand at variance with Present-English usage:

Do you consent we shall acquaint him with it, | As needful in our loves, fitting our duty. *Hamlet*, I, 1, 173.

That you vouchsafe your rest here in our court | Some little time; so by your companies | To draw him on to pleasures. *Id.*, II, 2, 14.

34. In indicating different varieties of a thing by an adjective the non-repetition of other modifiers, such as the definite article, a possessive pronoun, etc., mostly entails the use of the plural form. Thus we ordinarily say *the Dutch and English languages*, but *the Dutch and the English language*.

i. \* It (sc. the Latin) is at this day the basis of *the French, Spanish and Portuguese languages*. *Mac.*, Hist., I, Ch. I, 4.

The simple words in which the writer of Genesis records the proceedings of *the fifth and sixth days of the Creation*. HUXLEY, Col. Es., VIII, i, 35.

In the course of the strife of *the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries* England had claimed the whole and occupied much of French territory. SIDNEY LEE. *The French Renaissance in England*, I, Ch. VIII, 30.

\*\* Whichever (course) is adopted, it is of supreme importance that it should be accepted whole-heartedly by *the Liberal and Labour Party*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5225, 1c.

ii. The parities of circumstance between *the Irish Church and the Welsh Church* are very remarkable. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, July, 625.

35. The singular is sometimes used instead of the plural for some oratorical effect, especially in enumerations.

**field and highway.** And busily all the night (the snow) | Had been heaping *field and highway* | With a silence deep and white. J. RUSSELL LOWELL, *The first Snowfall*, I.

**ghost and spirit.** It was now the witching hour consecrated to *ghost and spirit*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. XII, 71.

**town and village.** *Town and village* were harried and burnt. GREEN.<sup>1)</sup>

36. It does not seem amiss that at the conclusion of this chapter a few words should be devoted to certain nouns that are constantly put into requisition before certain pluralia tantum, collective nouns of the second kind (26; Ch. XXVI, 7), and some other words when separate specimens or instances are meant. These nouns are mostly indispensable after the indefinite article or a numeral, but may also be met with after other modifiers. It is hardly necessary to observe that they have certain meanings of their own. Compare also COBHAM BREWER, *Dict. of Phrase and Fable*, s. v. *number*. The following are among the most interesting:

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 274.



**article**, as in an *article of furniture, belief, dress*, etc.

**bit**, as in a *bit of news, advice*, etc.

The best *bit of news* that has reached us this Christmas time is that C. B., at Biarritz has been taking a thorough rest. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXVII, 5a.

**body**, as in a *body of troops*, etc.

One of his generals, with a large *body of troops*, was taken at Maxen. *Mac.*, *Fred.*

**bout**, which is mostly preceded by a gerund, as in a *drinking bout, a shooting bout*, or followed by a gerund, as in:

In the meantime we can take an occasional *bout at shooting and fishing*. *WASH. IRV.*, *Dolf Heyl*. (*Stof.*, *Handl.*, I, 138).

Dick had come to that part of the poem, wherein the bard describes as blandly as though he were recording a dance at the opera, or a harmless *bout of bucolic cudgelling at the village fair* [etc.]. *THACK.*, *Henry Esm.*, II, Ch. XI, 245.

**clump**, as in a *clump of bushes, brushwood, briers*, etc. See *MURRAY*, s. v. *brake*.

**display**, as in a *display of fireworks* (20).

**fit** as in a *fit of fever, coughing, rheumatism, illness*, etc.

The agonies of grief and remorse with which she was seized, occasioned her a severe *fit of illness*. *MISS BURNEY*, *Evelina*, II, 6.

At last she was interrupted by a violent *fit of coughing*. *THACK.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 24.

I hope you won't have a *fit of the blues* when you are left all alone at this festive season. *Mrs. ALEX.*, *For his sake*, II, Ch. II, 39.

**flight**, as in a *flight of stairs, steps* (20), *arrows*.

They shot another *flight* (sc. of arrows) into the air. *SWIFT*, *Gul. Travels*, I.

**head**, as in a *head of cattle, game, poultry*, etc. (29, b; Ch. XXVI, 8, Obs. II.)

Ladislav won't be shipped off like a *head of cattle*. *G. ELIOT*, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIX, 359.

Note. *Head* is sometimes dispensed with before *cattle* (Ch. XXVI, 8, Obs. I); conversely it is sometimes used where it is not absolutely necessary.

i. Innumerable waggons, *innumerable cattle* remained in the power of the conquerors. *MAC.*, *Clive*, (519a).

During the last two years the lives of more than 700,000 *cattle* had been saved. *Times*.

ii. Next year, twenty *head of black men*, direct from Africa, were landed from a Dutch ship, in James River, and were immediately bought by the gentleman of the Colony. *OLMSTED*.<sup>1)</sup>

**item**, as in an *item of news, crime, mortality*, etc.

What a number of *items of human crime, misery, slavery* go to form that sum-total of glory. *THACK.*, *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. IV, 70.

In this workhouse was born . . . the *item of mortality* whose name is prefixed to the head of this chapter. *DICK.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. I, 19.

Every month brings *items of news*, small in themselves, but significant of much. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXV, 445a.

**lot**, as in a *lot of goods*.

**pack**, as in a *pack of cards, servants* (see under *parcel*, etc.).

<sup>1)</sup> *MURRAY*, s. v. *head*, I, c.

*pair*, as in *a pair of breeches, compasses, etc.*, (19, *a*), *indentures*. The application of *pair* in the obsolete meaning of *set* (of almost any description), as in *a pair of gallows, harness, numbles, armour, beads, cards, organs (clavichords, bagpipes, etc.)*, *drawers*, survives only in *a pair of stairs, a pair of steps* (20).

Will his vouchers vouch him no more of his purchases, and double ones too, than the length and breadth of a *pair of indentures*. HAMLET, V, I, 119:

*parcel*, as in *a parcel of servants, fools, etc.*

A book, sir, that tells the story of a *parcel of servants*, and of a *pack of footmen* and ladies' maids fuddling in ale-houses. THACK., NEWCASTLE, I, Ch. IV, 46.

*park*, as in *a park of artillery*.

The Shah of Persia, finding that his Duma had become the centre of political agitation, dissolved it by the summary process of bombarding it with a *park of artillery*. REV. OF REV., CCXXII, 6b.

*peal*, as in *a peal of bells, laughter, etc.*

A fine new *peal of ten bells* has been hung in place of the former eight. 11. LOND. NEWS, No. 3678, 539.

*piece*, as in *a piece of news* (19, *g*); *evidence (expenditure, information, intelligence, etc.* (26); *anecdote* (27); *cannon* (28, *b*); *advice, artillery, business, folly, furniture, good fortune, goods, money, service, statistics, water, etc.*

He at one time advised her to send him to sea, a *piece of advice* only given in the most desperate cases. WASH. IRV., DOLE HEYL. (STOF., HANDL., I, 105).

Some very trifling *piece of business* was alleged as a reason for the call. MRS. GASK., CRANF., Ch. VIII, 141.

That secret marriage between Katharine and John turned out to have been such a *piece of folly*. MAR. CRAWF., KATH. LAUD., II, Ch. XV, 284.

Considerable sensation has been excited by a startling *piece of good fortune* which has befallen James Plush Esq. THACK., THE DIARY OF C. JAMES DE LA PLUCHE, Esq.

Not only not a misfortune, but probably the greatest *piece of good fortune* which could have come to Clara. DOR. GER., THE ETERN. WOMAN, Ch. III.

It's a wonderful *piece of goods*. THACK., SAM. TITM., Ch. II, 23.

Change. Small *pieces of money* which may be given for larger pieces or for bank-notes. WEBST., Dict.

They were both of that decent phlegmatic order of people, to whom one may at any time safely communicate a remarkable *piece of news*. CH. BRONTË, JANE EYRE, Ch. XXXVIII, 553.

It is owing to her recollection of this *piece of good service* that I have the permission of wandering through these deserted halls. SCOTT, FAIR MAID, Introd., 11. A little *piece of statistics* is worth a great deal of theoretical talk. ENG. REV., 1912, Oct., 467.

To this *piece of water* his only passage lay through one deep canal. MOTLEY, RISE, IV, Ch. II, 573.

Ferry. The place or passage where boats can pass over a narrow *piece of water* to convey passengers. ANNANDALE, CONC. Dict.

*range*, as in *a range of steps* (20).

*round*, as in *a round of ammunition, shot, etc.*

The majesty of the law fired blunderbusses in among them, loaded with *rounds of shot and ball*. DICK., TALE OF TWO CITIES, I, Ch. I, 17.

**set**, as in *a set of gallows* (19, j), *dominoes*, *draughts*, *teeth*, *twins*.

Besides the two men, a notched and disfigured bench,... with a draught-board,... a *set of draughts*,... a *set of dominoes*. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. I, 2b.

He was the father of two *sets of twins*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 8b.

**show**, as in *a show of fireworks* (20).

**spell**, as in *a spell of work*, *coughing*, *sneezing*, etc.

The consciousness that after a long *spell of work* he was entering upon a well-earned holiday, was a very welcome and comfortable thing. W. BLACK., *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VI.

**stand**, as in *a stand of arms*, *colours* (20).

**stroke**, as in *a stroke of paralysis*.

Just before the *stroke of paralysis* he had begun to gain strength Times.

**turn**, as in *a turn of work*.

To chare. To do, accomplish (*a turn of work*), arch. or obs. MURRAY.

**suit**, as in *a suit of clothes*, *sables*, etc.

I made a *suit of clothes* wholly of these skins. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*.

We must fancy our American traveller to be a handsome young fellow, whose *suit of sables* only made him look the more interesting. THACK., *Virg.* Ch. I, 7.

**volley**, as in *a volley of shot* (27), *oaths*, *laughter*.

The captain seized him by the throat with a *volley of oaths*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XI, 67.

He and Osborne fired off a ringing *volley of laughter*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 60.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

### CONCORD.

1. The way in which certain elements of a sentence, or a complex or clauses, are related, causes a certain analogy or agreement in number, person, gender and case, which is called concord. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 91.

Owing to the fact that the accusative and dative of nouns and their attributive modifiers were made uniform with the nominative long before the Modern-English period, there are no instances of concord as to case to register, except when the genitive is in question. Even here the extensive use of the group-genitive has obliterated almost all traces of concord. For details see Ch. XXIV, 3—4.

#### CONCORD OF NUMBER.

2. Concord of number is exhibited by:
  - a) the subject and its finite verb;
  - b) the subject and the nominal part of the predicate;
  - c) a (pro)noun and its attributive or predicative adnominal modifiers;
  - d) a noun and the pronouns referring to it.

Note. As to concord a compound subject is essentially equivalent to a single plural subject.

Thy body and thy mind *are* alike unfit | To trust each other. BYRON, *Manfred*, II, 1.

3. These different manifestations of concord mostly co-incide, i. e. the number of the subject is mostly the same not only as the number of the finite verb, but also of that of the nominal part of the predicate and, in case the subject is a noun, of that of its adnominal modifiers and the pronouns used in referring to it.

*These boys have been fast friends* since fortune brought *them* together.

"Why do you doubt your *senses*?" — "Because," said Scrooge, "a little thing affects *them*. A slight disorder of the stomach makes *them* *cheats*." DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, 1, 24.



## CONCORD WITH SINGLE ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE.

4. a) Want of concord is the most commonly met with between the subject and the nominal part of the predicate.

Note I. It deserves notice that in this case the finite verb rigidly follows the subject, at least in carefully written English. For apparent exceptions see 6.

Sometimes some difficulty is experienced in deciding which is the subject, and which is the nominal part of the predicate. This difficulty, however, need not last long, if it is borne in mind that, except for communications in which some part is thrown into prominence from being contrasted with some idea mentioned before or after, the predicate, as containing the information about what we are thinking about, has the stronger stress. TERWEY, *Taal en Letteren*, II, 138 ff.; DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, I, 7, Opm. 2; PAUL, *Princ.*, § 88; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 156.

i. \* *All is but toys.* Macb., II, 3, 99.

Soon after our dinner was served in, *which was* right good viands. BACON, *New Atlantis*, (274).

*His meat was locusts* and wild honey. Bible, Matth., III, 4.

Her *part* in the world *was deeds*. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXV, 261. The *nation* is but the *individuals* who compose it. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XXI, 347.

The *result* of that marriage *was four children*. HUXL., *Darwiniana*, Ch. XI, 405.

There's an infallible guide both for you and me, and *that's* the Holy Scriptures. Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 238.

\*\* Not the least interesting *feature* of this Supplement *are the illustrations*.

II. Lond. News, No. 3830, 374b. (The subject has back-position.)

The only *difficulty* in Finnish *are the changes* undergone by the stem. SWEET.<sup>1</sup>) ('d.)

Their peculiar *haunt*, it is said, *are the deep gorges* of the mountain. Huc's *Trav. in Thibet*, II, 100.<sup>2</sup>) (Id.)

- ii. A crowd is not company, and *faces are* but a *gallery* of pictures, and talk is but a tinkling cymbal where there is no love. BACON, *Essays*, Of Friendship, (74).

*My slumbers* — if I slumber — *are not sleep*, | But a continuance of enduring thought. BYRON, *Manfr.*, I, 1, 3.

The *waves are our pillow*, | Our cradle the sea, | The rougher the billow, The happier we. (?), *Our Home is the Ocean*, I.

The Scotch *Lowlands were* not, in the eleventh century; the poor and barbarous *country* which some have reported them to have been. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. II, 20a.

Portuguese *officials* in Delagoa Port *are the most corrupt lot* in the world. Times.

The *peasants are* still the dark *horse* of the situation. Rev. of Rev., CCIII, 457b.

II. In the following quotations the discrepancy between the number of the subject and that of the finite verb seems to be due to mere carelessness:

„Stop here,” *was Amyas's first words*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XXV, 190b.

<sup>1</sup>) The King's English, 65.    <sup>2</sup>) HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, III, 131.

The *pages* which describe how the 34th Osake Regiment wiped out the tradition that had survived since the Saigo rebellion is a typical *piece* of description. *Times*.<sup>1)</sup>

People do not believe now as they did, but the moral *inconsistencies* of our contemporaries is no *proof* thereof. *Daily Telegraph*.<sup>1)</sup>

- b. There may also be discrepancy as to number between the subject and a predicative adnominal noun of the second kind (7) standing after a passive verb. In this case it is also the subject which determines the form of the finite verb.

i. *It was* considered bad *manners* to put food into the mouth with the knife. GÜNTHER, *Leerboek*, 71.

ii. These *pictures were* considered a very valuable *acquisition*.

5. The following are the most important instances of discrepancy in number between the subject and the nominal part of the predicate or the predicative adnominal adjunct.

- a) The nominal part of the predicate is the interrogative *what*, the subject is a plural noun.

*Debts? What were his debts? They were* a trifle. THACK., *Pend.*, I. *What were those masses? G. ELIOT, Mill*, VII, Ch. V, 482.

- b) The subject is the condensed relative *what* (Ch. XV; Ch. XXXIX, 7), the nominal part of the predicate or the predicative adnominal adjunct is a plural noun. See also WENDT, E. S., XV.

i. I visited *what were* at the time the principal *sights* of the town.

ii. The New-Testament Revised Version of 1881 . . . has not won the place expected for it in the affection of the majority of readers. This failure is largely due to *what were* considered its many needless *alterations* in the old version. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6017, 15b.

- c) The nominal part of the predicate is the numeral *many* placed in front-position, the subject is a singular noun or substantival equivalent. (Ch. XL, 93, b.)

*Many's* the *day*, and *many's* the *way* in which he has backed me. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. X, 63a.

*Many's* the *one* of us that has drunk to the Frenchman's memory over our wine. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. VI, 97.

*Many was* the young *fellow* about town who looked with wonder at the number of these notes. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 2.

- d) The subject is the anticipating *it* representing a substantive clause, the nominal part of the predicate is a plural noun.

*It is* my *orders* to you that you publish these banns no more. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, IV, Ch. II, 206.

*It was* the *Normans* who began to build that fine old hall. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. XII, 103.

- e) The nominal part of the predicate, whether or no preceded by an adjective, denotes a quality (Ch. XXIII, 14, ff.), and differs in number from the subject.

i. Fanny was well enough, but *Biddy was* no great *things*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 113 (= Dutch *beteekende niet veel*).

<sup>1)</sup> The *King's English*, 65.

I han not seen th' oud ladies since their sorrows, and *it's* but *manners* to go and ax after them. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXV, 261. *She was nuts* on public-houses, was England's Virgin Queen. JEROME, *Three men in a Boat*, Ch. VI, 61.

*He is all faults* who has no fault at all. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 132. She said that she had been taught that *it was bad manners* to do so in a mixed company. MRS. EWINGS, *Jackanapes*, 4.

- ii. *All these are very good fun.* TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. VIII, 173. I like ponies. *They are* so little *trouble*. MARRYAT, *Making the Best of it* (ROBINSON, *The Advanced Reader*, 34). All the *weapons are* dummy. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6029, 1c.

f) The subject is plural and the nominal part of the predicate is kept in the singular because it has more or less the character of an adjective. (Ch. XXIII, 16, d.)

*They turned Christian.* RUDY. KIPLING, *Plain Tales*, I, 11.

Note I. A very common instance of want of concord in Dutch, that of a singular demonstrative pronoun used as the subject of a plural nominal part of the predicate, as in *Dit zijn mijn vrienden*, is unknown in English, the demonstrative being made to agree with the nominal part of the predicate: *These (those) are my friends*. When, however, the latter denotes a quality (e), its subject may be a singular demonstrative: *This is bad manners*.

II. There are, of course, also cases in which there is want of concord between the accusative and a noun as nominal part of the predicate in the construction accusative with infinitive, but these will not be discussed in detail as being unimportant.

Calenture. A disease incident to sailors within the tropics, characterized by delirium in which the patient, it is said, fancies *the sea to be green fields*, and desires to leap into it. MURRAY.

III. The singular form of the nominal part of the predicate seems to be improper in:

The thought that these *strangers* had been *a witness* to the scene was intolerable to her. RICH. BAGOT, *The Just and the Unjust*, I, Ch. VI, 208.

IV. In the phrase *to be friends with a man* (Ch. XXV, 21) the use of the plural is probably due to the blending with another construction, viz: *A and B are friends*. Compare also KELLNER, *Hist. Outl. of Eng. Synt.*, § 17; and ONIONS; *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 24.

6. The other cases of want of concord as to number are mostly due to discrepancy between the form of a noun and the meaning it conveys: the former may be singular, while the latter is plural, and vice versa. Here the English language occupies a unique position among the modern languages. On the one hand it is quite common, or even usual, for a singular noun with a plural meaning to be construed as a plural, on the other hand we meet with frequent instances of a plural noun denoting a singular idea being dealt with as a singular. Anything of this kind is only occasionally found in either French or German or Dutch.

7. Singular nouns with a plural meaning, commonly called collective nouns, are of two kinds: i. e. the idea they express is thought of either within or without limits. Of the first kind are such nouns as *party, army, flock, herd, wood, grove*, etc.; of the second such as *people, clergy, vermin, cattle, game*, etc.

Some nouns belong now to this, now to that group. Thus *people* is a collective noun of the first kind in *The English are a wealthy people*; while in *The Wards are wealthy people, You were away the last time she had people there* (TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. I, 9) it is a collective noun of the second kind.

8. Obs. 1. A peculiar feature of some English collective nouns of the second kind is that they admit of being modified by a word (numeral, adjective or noun) denoting number. Compare Ch. XXV, 36.

**cattle.** The sound was like that of fifty breaks, with six blood *cattle* in each. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XLIX, 456.

Innumerable waggons. *innumerable cattle* remained in the power of the conquerors. MAC., Clive, (519a).

There was little to inclose except *a few cattle*. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. VIII, 110.

*A few cattle* were lifted here and there. EMILY LAWLESS, A Colonel of the Empire, Ch. VII.

During the last two years the lives of more than 700.000 *cattle* had been saved. Times.

**clergy.** You see me at the head of a staff of *six clergy*. HALL CAINE, The Christian, I, 37.

There were *eighty clergy*. Ib., II, 67.

*A number of clergy* were present. Times.

Note. According to MURRAY this use of *clergy* as a 'numeral plural' is rare.

**farrow.** Pour in sow's blood, that hath eaten | Her *nine farrow*. Macb., IV, 1, 65.

**folk(s).** He laid his hands upon *a few sick folk* and healed them. Bible, Mark., V, 6.

His humble rural petitioner could hardly hope to get a hearing among so *many* grand *folks*, who attended his levee. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. I, 13.

Beatrice's *three kinsfolk* looked at one another at this intelligence. Id., Henry Esmond, III, Ch. X, 415.

*Many folk* will be anxious to know what Shakespeare's flame was like. Academy.

About *half a million old folks* received their pension in England and Ireland on New Year's Day, in Scotland on January 2nd. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 4a.

**gentry.** The *six gentry* went forward in the order of *their* rank. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. VIII, 118.

The *three gentry*... were dismayed by the loss of *their* best swordsmen. Ib., 120.

**people.** There might have been *twenty people* there. DICK., Christm. Car. This morning a single-handed Negro Entertainer gave his performance on the sands to quite *five people*. Punch.

Three *people* had been shot. Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 226b.



**police.** Jenkins had got in this man to help him till *some* more *police* should arrive. Mrs. WARD, Marcella, II, 75.

Barkly East was relieved yesterday by Captain Wooler with *fifty* Cape *Police* and Captain Penny with twenty Hershel Mounted Volunteers. DAILY CHRON. A body of *50* burgher *police* were ambushed near Pretoria on the 10th. Times. The magistrate accompanied by *20* *police* has gone to Palmet Fontein. Ib.

Springing wildly from the platform, he passed through the excited shouting crowd towards *a few* *police* who stood a short distance from the stand. Graph.

Now and then an officer took with him *a few* *police* and got near enough to hear the fiery harangues. Ib.

A similar feature may also be observed:

a) in such single-unit nouns as *fish*, *fowl*, *cannon*, etc., which, when used in a collective sense, do not take the mark of the plural (Ch. XXV, § 28);

β) in certain names of troops, as *infantry*, *cavalry*, *rank and file*, *horse*, *foot*, etc. (Ch. IV, 15).

Also *swine* now practically belongs to the same category of nouns. (Ch. XXV, 8, a, Note II.)

- II. Some collective nouns of the second kind do not admit of a similar use with a preceding number-indicating word; others require an individualizer (Ch. XXV, 36) when separate units are meant. Thus we can say *He expected company* but not \**He expected several company*; and *We saw traces of game*, but not \**We traced several game* for *We traced several head of game*.

These collective nouns may be modified by the singular *much* and *little* (*less*, *least*). Compare also Ch. XL, 62, c.

**company.** There was but *little* *company* when I went. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VIII, 88.

There was *little* *company* kept at the Manor. G. ELIOT, Scenes, II, Ch. IV, 110. Her parents see *much* *company*. Id., Mid., III, Ch. XXXI, 218.

**game.** The King return'd from out the wild, | He bore but *little* *game* in hand. TEN., The Victim, IV.

The *less* small *game* there is about, the better the chances are of successful stalking. Westm. Gaz., No. 5448, 14a.

**society.** They had dwelt in solitude, seeing *little* or *no* *society*. R. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. I, 12,

Thus also they can be preceded by *a great* (*good*) *deal* *of*, not by *a great many*:

They had *a great* *deal* of genteel *company* from Theobald's Road. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXV, 253.

**Poultry** is found with a numeral denoting either quantity or number.

i. He could not raise as *much* *poultry* as that. All the Year Round.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The poorest occupier of land can commonly maintain *a few* *poultry*. ADAM SMITH.<sup>1)</sup>

- III. When collective nouns of the second kind are preceded by the definite article, a genitive or a possessive pronoun, they are, practically, no longer distinguished from those of the first kind.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., X.

9. Collective nouns of the first kind are construed as singulars as far as the demonstrative pronouns are concerned: *this family*, *that party*, etc.

The following quotation affords an instance of a plural demonstrative before a collective noun of this description:

When you and *those* poor *number* saved with you | Hung on our driving boat.  
Twelfth Night, I, 2, 10.

Usage varies as to the finite verb and as to the personal, possessive and reflective pronouns used in referring to them. These are singular when the individuals making up the collection are thought of jointly, plural when thought of separately. Thus it is easy to account for the alternate use of the singular and the plural in *This jury returns a verdict of guilty* and *This jury are kept without food*.

The singular pronouns used in referring to collective nouns are mostly neuter, but the masculine pronouns may also be met with. See the quotations below under *enemy*, *foe*, *public*.

It is but natural that writers and speakers do not always pause to think whether the communication given applies to the individuals of which a collection is composed jointly or separately, nor is this always clear from the circumstances of the situation described, so that there is a good deal of vacillation and, apparently, even incongruity in the choice of the number.

Some particulars about generally observed usage may, however, be given.

- a) 1) The singular construction is regular, or all but regular, when the collective noun denotes a body of things, or of animals to which no personal qualities are ascribed: *wood*, *fleet*; *shoal*, *swarm*, etc.
- 2) It is the ordinary construction:
  - a) when the collection is a large body of persons, so that it is difficult to think of its constituent members separately: *army*, *community*, *detachment*, *force*, *nation*.
  - β) when the collective noun, mostly preceded by *all the* or *the whole* is equivalent to *everybody*: *town*, *world*, *country*; similarly when proper names are used in an analogous way.
- b) 1) The plural construction is regular, or all but regular:
  - a) when the collective noun denotes mere number: *hundred*, *thousand*, *million*; *generality*, *half*, *majority*, *number*, *remainder*, *remnant*, *rest*, etc. Thus even also when the reference is to things;
  - β) when the collective noun denotes a section of society with distinct reference to some quality: *aristocracy*, *gentry*, *nobility*, *peasantry*; *sex*, etc.;

- γ) when the collective noun is felt to be more or less equivalent to the Dutch *men* (German *man*, French *on*): (*the*) *people*, (*the*) *public*.
- 2) It is the usual construction when the collective noun denotes a small body of persons, even when joint rather than separate action is in question: *board*, *committee*, *company*, *council*, *couple*, *court*, *crew*, *family*, *government*, *pair*, *party*, *race*, *staff*, etc.
- c) Although the choice of number is to some extent a matter of personal predilection, attentive reading will show that on the whole the plural construction is more in favour than the singular, especially in the choice of the person-indicating pronouns, the use of the singular *it*, *its* and *itself*, primarily suggesting absence of sex, being more or less distinctly felt as incongruous in speaking about persons. The plural construction is also, naturally, preferred when the collective noun is the subject of a plural nominal predicate. For particulars see also BAIN, H. E. Gr., 301; id., Comp., 282 ff.; ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., 18.

Here follow some illustrative quotations; those in which the construction seems to go counter to the sense conveyed are marked with a dagger (†). It must be understood that, when only one construction is illustrated, this does not necessarily mean that the alternative is impossible or even unusual.

**admiralty.** i. The *Admiralty* has shown a lack of skill or energy in advertising the Navy. Eng. Rev., 1912, Sept., 283. (Thus throughout in the article in question.)

ii. The *Admiralty* have increased the standard of chest measurement by half an inch. Standard.

It has been stated this week that the *Admiralty* were contemplating a programme of six or seven Dreadnoughts. Westm. Gaz., No. 5543, 2a.

**aristocracy.** Who says that the *aristocracy* are proud. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XI, 206.

The Cranford people were grateful to the *aristocracy* who *were* so kind as to live near the town. Ib., Ch. X, 181.

**army.** i. The *army* was led into the defile. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>31</sup>, § 380.

ii. † The *army* of the Queen *mean* to besiege us. Henry VI, C, I, 2, 65.

**artillery.** The *Artillery* are back in camp. Punch, No. 3712, 172b.

**assembly.** i. The *Assembly* has decreed. BAIN, H. E. Gr., § 301.

† The *Assembly* put on *its* hats and went out. JER., Three men in a Boat, Ch. II, 23.

ii. † The *assembly* of these magistrates by theory possessed an authority *they* had neither the power nor the courage to exert. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. II, 19.

**association.** We cannot believe for a moment that the British Medical Association will advise *its* members to stand out. Westm. Gaz., No. 6059, 2d.

**audience.** i. † Conscious how indifferent his *audience* is to the naked truth of his poem, his history gradually becomes a romance. SCOTT, Brid. of Trierm., Pref.

ii. Then he rebukes his *audience* because *they* will not listen to the truth. TROL., Thack., Ch. IV, 108.

**board.** i. † (Mr. Bumble) informed him that the *board* had said he was to appear before *it* forthwith. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 27.

The *Board of Trade* has issued *its* new rules for the equipment of vessels at sea. Westm. Gaz., No. 6017, 2b.

- ii. The *board* were sitting in solemn conclave, when Mr. Bumble rushed into the room in great excitement. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 33.

The *board* made periodical pilgrimages to the farm, and always sent the beadle the day before, to say *they* were going. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 33.

**bridal.** And issuing from the Gothic arch | The *bridal* now resumed *their* march. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, xx.

**bulk.** i. † And the public, the great British public? The *bulk* no doubt *is* still but little influenced by anything not prodigiously advertised. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6023, 7b.

- ii. The *bulk* of the Presbyterian clergy *are* as fierce as the slave-holders against the abolitionist. HT. MARTINEAU, *Soc. Amer.*, III, 279.<sup>1)</sup>

It is unlikely that the *bulk* of those who polled against Mr. Shaw *were* influenced by any one specific grudge against the policy of the party for which he stood. *Sat. Rev. (Westm. Gaz., No. 6023, 16c).*

**cabinet.** i. † The *Cabinet* would, in any case, be bound to keep *its* own counsel. *Times*.

- ii. The *Cabinet incline* to the Lord Advocate's opinion. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVII, 227a.

**camp.** † The *camp* rose to *its* feet as one man. BRET HARTE, *The Luck of Roaring Camp*, 6.

**cavalry.** i. *Cavalry* is superior to infantry for making wide turning movements. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s. v. *cavalry*.

- ii. The *cavalry* were fifteen thousand. MAC., *Clive*, (518b).

The *cavalry* particularly distinguished *themselves*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 150.

**childhood.** *Childhood* is poetic and creative. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 483, 163a.

**class.** There is a numerous *class* of readers who *imagine* that the same words cannot be repeated without tautology. WORDSW., Pref. Note to 'The Thorn'. You need not to suppose that your *class are* martyrs. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. V, 78.

**clergy.** In our church the *clergy do* not marry. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, I, Ch. III, 26.

The *clergy were* all men of enlarged men and varied culture. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. IV, 151.

The new Protestant *clergy were* often unpopular. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VIII, § 3, 378.

The publican has thrown his weight into the same scale and the *clergy* certainly *have* not remained at home. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5219, 2a.

**club.** † In the summer weather the *club takes* to tents, *migrates* to the forest, and *holds* high jinks in Dionysic fashion. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XX, 320.

**commission.** The *Commission were* of opinion that bovine tuberculosis could be communicated to man. *Athen.*, No. 4425, 167a.

**committee.** i. A *committee* of wine-growers exercised undisputed authority over the entire region. *Its* orders were obeyed, while the authorities remained helpless spectators. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXI, 6b.

The *Committee recommends* the abolition of a separate classification for motorcycles. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3832, 480c.

- ii. † The *Committee declare* that the funds entrusted to General Booth have been devoted only to objects set forth in the appeal. *Graph*.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *bulk*, 6.



† The *Committee* chosen to examine Dr. Cook's records *have* decided against the explorer's claim. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3689, 4.

The *Committee*... *were* faced with the task of [etc.]. *Ib.*, No. 3832, 480*b*.

**community.** The *community* created the decedents' wealth, *it is* entitled to a large portion of it as they pass away. *ANDREW CARNEGIE* (Rev. of Rev., CCV, 29*b*).

**company.** All the *company* are convulsed with laughter. *MAC.*, Addison, (755*b*). The ship's *company* were mustered. *MARRYAT*, *Midshipsman Easy*, Ch. XXVII.

† A *company*, called the Ohio Company... found *themselves* invaded in *their* settlements by French military detachments. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. VI, 63.

The *company* still *control* the catering. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3813, 788*c*.

**conference.** The *Conference* could do nothing, for *its* constitution forbids any discussion of the internal political affairs of any of *its* members. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXII, 114*a*.

**congregation.** † You shall go to church to-morrow morning, and see how the whole *congregation* will turn away from *its* books and prayers, to worship the golden calf in your person. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXIV, 251.

**congress.** The American *Congress* *has* cut down the proposed programme of naval construction by nearly one half. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXIX, 234*a*.

He (sc. President Taft) replied. "My dear lady, I do not make the law, *Congress* does that." *RITA*, *America — Seen through Eng. eyes*, Ch. V, 102.

**constituency.** The Independent imperatively demanded to know whether the *constituency* of Eatonswill *were* the grand fellows they had always taken them for. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIII, 105.

**council.** The Federal *Council*... *has* declared *its* opinion. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 2*b*.

**country.** The whole *country* *applauds*. *KING EDWARD VII* (Rev. of Rev., CCXII, 120*b*).

**couple.** The young *couple* *are* just setting out for Scotland. *GOLDSM.*, *Good-nat.} man*, III.

This *couple* *were* desirous to consummate long ago. *FIELDING*, *Joseph Andrews*, IV, Ch. II, 205.

If a married *couple* *come* to settle in the town, somehow the gentleman disappears. *MRS. GASKELL*, *Cranf.*, Ch. I, 9.

He was more often inclined to leave the young *couple* to *themselves*. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 70.

**court.** i. \* The *court* *feels* indignant that *it is* conquered. *CARLYLE*, *French Rev.*, I, Ch. III, 146.

† The *court* *is* in mourning. *THACK.*, *A little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. III, 316.

\*\* The Constitution is what the Supreme *Court* *makes* it. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCV, 6*a*.

ii. So with the morning all the *court* *were* gone. *TEN.*, *Mar. of Ger.*, 156.

It's time the *Court* *go* home to dinner. *THACK.*, *The four Georges*, I, 6.

**crew.** All the *crew* *were* amazed. *WASH. IRV.*, *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 88).

The Cambridge *crew* *have* already gone into training. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, § 183, *b*.

The *crew* *were* saved by lifeboats. *Times*.

The *crew* *have* been dismissed. *Ib.*, No. 1909, 707*c*.

**crowd.** i. At the foot of the Capitol, an immense *crowd* *was* assembled. *LYTTON*, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IX, 55.

† There's a *crowd*, Monsieur Rigaud, and *it doesn't* love you. *DICK.*, *Little Dorrit*, Ch. I, 7*b*.

A very large *crowd* *for* Edinburgh *was* assembled in the streets. *Times*, No. 1803, 573*b*.

† The great *crowd* *was* most enthusiastic. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3835, 573.

- ii. The *crowd are gone*, the revellers at rest. BYRON, *Lara*, I, XXIX.

It's not at all necessary for a *crowd* to know what *they are* cheering about DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIII, 105.

The *crowd were* deeply affected — but *they* uttered no shouts. LYTTON, *Rienzi* II, Ch. VIII, 118.

**democracy.** The *democracy are* going to vote on the Act. Westm. Gaz., No. 6041, 1c.

**detachment.** A *detachment* of two hundred men *was* immediately sent. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 303.

**Duma.** The *Duma* hesitated, discussed and postponed *its* decision. Rev. of Rev., CCXI, 8b.

**electorate.** The *electorate show* it (sc. that the people of this country are converted to the idea of national military service). Outlook (Westm. Gaz., No. 6035, 16c).

**enemy.** i. \* The French admiral beheld the new manner in which his *enemy was* advancing. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, 255.

The *enemy was* discovered about seven miles out of Ladysmith. Times.

\*\* They encountered the *enemy* wherever *he* showed *himself* and defeated *him*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IV, 33.

The *enemy was* surrounded, but *he* fought for four hours. Morning Leader. Our naval guns have temporarily silenced the *enemy's* best guns with which *he has* been bombarding the town. Times.

- ii. Look, yonder *are* the *enemy*. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, 257.

Suppose the *enemy arrive*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXVII, 346.

Even the *enemy were* fellow-creatures. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. IV, 38.

The *enemy appear* to be in large numerical superiority. Times.

The *enemy were* cut to pieces by the Lancers. Id.

**establishment.** † Half the *establishment was* writhing and crying, before the day's work began; and how *much of it* had writhed and cried before the day's work was over, I am really afraid to recollect. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 45a.

**Europe.** All *Europe was* on tip-toe with expectation to see how Philip would avenge himself. MOTLEY, *Rise*.

**family.** i. Her *family has* disgraced *itself*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 221.

Our *family has* done her quite enough injury already. *Id.*, 223.

Her *family was* about to arrive. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. II, 12.

Each *family* in the colony sent one or more of *its* young ones. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 35.

† We must have a goose to give to this gentleman in place of the one which your *family is* now devouring. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *The Blue Carbuncle*.

- ii. The *family still resolve* to hold up their heads. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. XI.

*Are* the *family* well at the house, Robert? CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 269.

As for her husband's *family* of Warrington, *they were* as naught in her eyes. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IV, 36.

**firm.** i. The *firm found itself* in sudden and urgent need of fifty thousand dollars. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Panther's Cub*, I, Ch. III, 28.

- ii. All the time he must have known what the *firm were* meditating. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Horseman*, Ch. X, 84.

The *firm* sent him away to manage a branch of *their* publishing business in Bombay. Miss FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. XIII, 84.

The manuscript was submitted to a publishing *firm*, who... handed it to *their* professional reader. W. L. PHELPS, *Es. on Mod.* Nov., II, 38.

Note. The plural construction is decidedly the rule, as is also the case with substantive genitives denoting a firm. (Ch. XXIV, 50, Obs. III.)

**fleet.** i. The British *fleet* was but fifteen sail of the line strong. II. Lond. News. The American *Fleet* has made a very successful circuit of the South American continent. Rev. of Rev., CCXIX, 234a.

Thus also: The great *Armada* is vanquished. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXXII, 238b.

ii. The *fleet* finding *themselves* growing short of provision, *turn* southward toward home. Ib., Ch. XXXII, 239b.

The *fleet* are still bombarding the town. Punch, 1893, 159a.

The *fleet* have approached closer. Ib.

Note. In these last quotations the word *fleet* is indicative rather of persons than things.

**flock.** This exceptional ringing may be caused in two ways — by the rapid feeding of the sheep bearing the bell, as when *the flock breaks* into new pasture. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. V, 39.

**foe.** i. No tidings of the *foe* were brought, | Nor of *his* numbers knew they aught, | Nor what in time of truce *he* sought. SCOTT, Lay, III, xxxi.

ii. And now the *foe* *their* covert quit. BYRON, The Giaour, (203a).

The sun is not yet risen, and the *foe* | Sleep. MATTHEW ARNOLD, Sohrab and Rustum, 36.

**force.** I. A naval *force* is a very unsure defence. BURKE.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. † William by a feint of flight drew a part of the English *force* from *their* post of vantage. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. II, § 4, 80.

**generality.** The *generality* of his hearers were favourable to his doctrines. BAIN, H. E. Gr., § 301.

**generation.** i. Each *generation* of men goes about *its* business and *its* pleasure with immense energy and zest. W. RALEIGH, Six Es. on Johns., V, 98.

A later *generation* rises against them. Ib., VI, 176.

ii. At this moment the rising *generation* are supplied with the best of their mental aliment by writers whose names are a dead letter to the mass. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 28.

The young *generation* nowadays do not read Scott. Westm. Gaz., No. 5484, 4c. The rising *generation* in Scotland simply do not care for Scott. Ib. (In the sequel of the controversy on this subject, which was continued for a considerable time in the same paper, all the correspondents who took part in it construed the word as a singular.)

**gentry.** The *gentry* rode *their* own horses or drove in *their* own coaches. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. III, 50.

**government.** i. How can any *government* be well served, if those who command *its* forces are at liberty, without *its* permission, without *its* privity, to accept princely fortunes from *its* allies? MAC., Clive, (522a).

The German *Government* feels *itself* once more master in *its* own house. Rev. of Rev., CCVI, 115b.

ii. † The *Government* have apologized to the British consul for having blown up his house and stables. Punch.

The *Government* will act wisely for *their* own interests if *they* effect the required improvements. Graph.

The *Government* are not entirely *their* own masters. Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 2a.

**group.** An excited *group* was gathered round it (sc. the diligence). BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 30.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *force*, 7.

- guard.** i. The *guard* of the trenches *is* divided into two bodies. Mil. Engineering<sup>3</sup>, I, II, 15.1)
- ii. All the *guard* were asleep. RUD. KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*, (200).
- half.** i. One *half* the world *does* not know how the other *half* lives. Punch, No. 3710, 135.
- ii. One *half* of men *do* not know how the other *half* live. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 300.  
One *half* of the men *were* seriously ill. MURRAY.
- herd.** i. \* The common *herd* was glad he refused the crown. Jul. Cæs., I, 2, 266.  
The *herd* has been eating and drinking and marrying as usual. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyperborea*, Ch. II, 7b.  
\*\* A valley in which a *herd* of horses was pasturing. Rev. of Rev., Annual 1906, 8a.  
The *herd* of fallow deer which *was* generally to be found on the broad expanse of grass. Westm. Gaz., No. 5261, 7b.
- ii. The lowing *herd* wind slowly o'er the lea. GRAY, *Elegy*, I.
- House.** i. The *House* (of Commons, or of Lords) *resolves*. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 301.  
(This was) one of the most sophistical and quibbling speeches that the *House of Commons* has ever listened to. Outlook (Westm. Gaz., No. 6059, 16c).
- ii. † In this business the *House of Commons* *have* no weight. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 301.  
† The *House of Lords* *have* no legislative powers whatever in regard to any money bill. Times, No. 1811, 744b.
- household.** † All the *household* was gone to bed. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. V, 55.  
† All the *household* was equally instructed to pay him honour. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. III, 30.
- humanity.** The three combined (sc. presentiments, sympathies and signs) make one mystery, to which *humanity* *has* not yet found a key. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 268.  
The girl looked around for a moment as if to assure herself that all *humanity* was out of view. HARDY, *For from the Madding Crowd*, I, Ch. III, 18.  
*Humanity* is not averse from showing the Creator how things should have been done. Truth, No. 1802, 83a.
- jury.** i. If it's near dinner-time, the foreman takes out his watch when the *jury* *has* retired. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 304.
- ii. The *jury* then retired to *their* private room to talk the matter over. Ib., Ch. XXXIV, 319.  
Counsel usually begin in this way, because it puts the *jury* on the very best terms with *themselves*. Ib., 308.  
The *jury* *were* unable to agree. Times, No. 1807, 660c.  
The *jury* *were* absent for ten minutes. Ib.
- majority.** i. Is it to be held that this election has settled nothing, except the passage of the Budget? . . . We are certain that the *majority* will take no such view. It cherishes a deep and passionate feeling on the question of the Lords. Nation (Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 16c).
- ii. A large *majority* of the boys . . . *were* visited with similar instances of notice, as Mr. Creakle made the round of the school-room. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. VII, 45a.  
The *majority* of Englishmen *are* tall. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 116.
- manhood.** English *manhood* is not peculiar in being lectured from time to time on *its* manners. Westm. Gaz.
- mankind.** i. \* Beggar-my-neighbour is not exactly the game in which *mankind* should waste *its* resources. Rev. of Rev., CCXIX, 232b.  
\*\* Not only can *mankind* do nothing to avoid earthquakes, but even what *he* can do to mitigate their worst consequences is very small. Spectator.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *guard*, 9.



- ii. All *mankind* are indifferently liable to adverse Strokes of Fortune. STEELE, Tatler, No 57.

*Mankind* are equal to but one thing at a time. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. V, 77.

**mass.** i. † A large *mass* of intelligent people . . . is now showing deep interest in the drama. Westm. Gaz., No. 6023, 7b.

- ii. The *mass* were deeply interested. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. V, 46.  
The *mass* of the men did not change *their* nature because *they* had learned to pray to Christ. S. R. GARDINER, Outline of English History.  
The *mass* of Tariff Reformers *are* as determined as ever to treat a victory at this election as a victory for Tariff Reform. Westm. Gaz., No. 5478 1b.

**million.** † It was commonly believed that *half a million of human beings* was crowded into that labyrinth of lofty alleys. MAC., War. Hist., (627a).

**ministry.** i. The *ministry* is afraid to refuse. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 2b.

- ii. The *ministry* also were tottering. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. I, 6.

The *ministry* were to be out within five days. 1b.

**mob.** i. The *mob* was dispersed. BAIN, H. E. Gr., § 301.

Is the *mob* more bold, more constant? LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. VIII, 52.

- ii. The *mob* are so pleased with your honour. FROTHIER, Recruiting Officer, I, 1.

It's always best on these occasions to do what the *mob* do. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIII, 105.

**multitude.** i. The *multitude* is the only proper judge of those arts whose end is to move the multitude, RUSKIN, Mod. Paint, I, 2, Note. 1)

- ii. The *multitude* were of one mind. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 380.

**nation.** Happily for *itself*, the *nation* preferred another dynasty. THACK., Virg., Ch. III, 26.

It is a complete and comprehensive statement of all their actions of which the *nation* has reason to complain. Rev. of Rev., CCV, 88b.

A *nation* which is feeling *its* way through a new country should not have any laws like those of the Medes and Persians. Ib., CCVI, 7b.

**neighbourhood.** The children idolise him, and so indeed *does* the whole *neighbourhood*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. LVII, 526.

The whole *neighbourhood* talks about the house. WASH. REV., Doll Heyl. (STOEF., Handl., I, 113).

**number.** A large *number* of the aristocracy *are* expected. THACK., Pend., Ch. XXXVIII, 396.

**opposition.** 1. The *Opposition* shows no signs of pulling *itself* together. It is as one of *its* adherents bitterly complains, the Sick Man of British Politics. Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 218a.

The *Opposition* is not unitedly behind the Carsonites in sowing "rebellion" in Ireland. Westm. Gaz., No. 6029, 8d.

- ii. The whole *Opposition* rose to *their* feet. Daily Mail.

The *Opposition* are now alive to the gravity of destroying an unwritten Constitution. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 1b.

For some time it appeared that the *Opposition* were gaining the victory. Times, No. 1807, 664b.

**pair.** i. They (sc. eagles) not only pair, but continue in pairs all the year round: and the same *pair* procreates year after year. Encycl. Brit.<sup>7</sup>, XVI, 733.1.2)

- ii. 'T is when a youthful, loving, modest *pair*, | In other's arms, *breathe* out the tender tale. BURNS, The Cotter's Saturday Night, IX.

The newly-married *pair* were installed in a compartment by *themselves*. A. B. EDWARDS, Debenham's Vow, Ch. LXIII. 2)

1) MURRAY, s. v. *multitude*, 4.    2) MURRAY, s. v. *pair*, 3.

**parish.** i. Ecod! mother, all the *parish* says you have spoiled me. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, V, (227).

ii. † You speak like a lady — all the *parish* notice it. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. IV, 36.

**Parliament.** Until *Parliament* meets next month, there will be little stirring. Graph. The *Parliament*, however, was too strong for him (sc. the Shah of Persia). Rev. of Rev., CCXVII, 14a.

*Parliament* is dealing with something that it does not understand. CHESTERTON (II. Lond. News, No. 3812, 714).

**part.** i. † A *part* of the population has refused to eat meat. Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 2b.

ii. The chief *part* of Sir Brian Newcome's family were assembled together. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XIV, 164.

**party.** i. † When this little *party* has gone out smiling to take its walk on the sea-shore, the colonel sits down and resumes the interrupted dessert. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XV, 179.

The *party* had better not count its chickens before they are hatched. Westm. Gaz. The Liberal *Party* is in difficult straits. Rev. of Rev., CCXII, 119a.

ii. The whole *party* sprang upon their feet. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 131).

Strong in faith and hope, the Liberal *Party* are beginning to count their chickens. Times.

In such circumstances the Government could do nothing but leave the Irish *party* to follow their own course. Westm. Gaz., No. 5231, 1c.

The Labour *Party* are determined to support the Government. Ib., No. 5029, 8d.

**peasantry.** The *peasantry*, brooding over their misery and their wrongs, were equally stirred by the news from France. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, Sect. IV, 814. So far as the *peasantry* are concerned, no very serious opposition to the Czar's will is to be expected. Academy.

The *peasantry* evidently have not lost their faith in it (sc. the Duma). Rev. of Rev., CCVI, 117b.

**people.** i. How the *people* shakes itself as if it had one life. CARLYLE.

The English *people* showed that it cherished no animus against France and that it was anxious to live on good terms with its nearest neighbour. Daily Mail.

ii. There is but one way to restore the greatness of a people — it is an appeal to the *people themselves*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 52.

The Irish *people* saw in this pretended compromise only an attempt to get the thin end of the wedge inserted; while the main grievance which had set their patriotism on fire — the invasion of their national rights, and the attack on their national dignity — remained unabated. D. LAING PURVES, *Life of Swift*, 30. Tell the *people* how much I have loved them always. ANNIE BESANT, *Autob.*, 331. The *people* of England will never consent to undertake the burden on their time and on their purse which a conscript army would involve. Rev. of Rev., CCXI, 13.

**populace.** If the excited and irritable *populace* knew I was here, I should be torn to pieces . . . I should be the victim of their fury. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LI, 470. A miscellaneous and indignant *populace* were assembled. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. III, 21.

**population.** The Roman *population* retained an inordinate notion of their own supremacy. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 18.

**posterity.** i. *Posterity* has not yet confirmed honest Hogarth's opinion about his talents for the sublime. THACK.

*Posterity* has done nothing for us. Daily News, 1899, May, 2, 6/6.

- ii. In so far as *posterity* are concerned, a cultivated intelligence based on a bad physique is of little worth. SPENCER, *Education*, Ch. IV, 118*b*.
- priesthood.** i. The *priesthood* . . . is interested solely in theological questions . . . and its representatives in the third Duma were anything but a progressive force. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6011, 2*b*.
- ii. The *priesthood* are doing their best to prepare the country for disestablishment. *Ib.*, No. 6117, 2*c*.
- procession.** To the assize court the *procession* took *its* way. Mrs. Wood, *The Channings*, Ch. I, 1.
- profession.** i. The medical *profession* has not a high character: *it has* an infamous character. BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, Pref., xiv.
- ii. The whole *profession* in Middlemarch *have* set *themselves* tooth and nail against the Hospital. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, Ch. XLIV, 325.
- proportion.** A large *proportion* of the names on our maps *are* of great antiquity. H. BRADLEY, *Eng. Place-Names* (A. C. BRADLEY, *Es. and Stud.*, I, 9).
- prosecution.** It was announced that the *prosecution* *were* in possession of a fact which would supply an adequate motive for even a crime so terrible. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 493, 482*c*.
- public.** i. \* Do you suppose that the *public* reads with a view to *its* own conversion. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 343.
- It is playing it a little too low down upon the British *public* to ask *it* to throw up *its* hat and rejoice over this signal victory over Trusts. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCIV, 568*a*.
- The *public* *has* frankly given up the attempt to understand the problem of the Army. *It has* a shrewd idea that even now, after years of Army reform, *it* does not get *its* money's worth. *Ib.*, CCXI, 12*a*.
- \*\* If the *public* *desires* the assistance of an unqualified person, *he* is at liberty. of course, to employ such. *Truth*, No. 2801, 24*a*.
- ii. The *public* *were* a good deal surprised that Lord Palmerston had taken such a place as that of Home Secretary. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, 128.
- The *public* *are* not admitted into the Stock Exchange. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VIII, 108.
- The *public* *are* requested to protect *their* own property. *London Parks*.
- rabble.** The *rabble* *call* him lord. *Hamlet*, IV, 5, 101.
- Theognis complains that the *rabble* *rule* the state with monstrous laws. SYMONDS, *Greek Poets*, Ser. I, III, 86.<sup>1)</sup>
- race.** i. The . . . proscription under which their whole *race* *is* placed. FR. A. KEMBLE, *Resid. in Georgia*, II, 2)
- ii. His numerous and high-born *race* *were* proud of their descent. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 75.
- If the matter stopped there, the black *race* would not feel *themselves* so very much aggrieved. W. ARCHER (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4957, 13*b*).
- rank-and-file.** If the *rank-and-file* of the Liberal Party *set themselves* to do the spade-work of persuasion and demonstration in the constituencies, we shall have no fear of the result. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5054, 2*a*.
- rascaldom.** How *has* this turbulent Alexandrian *rascaldom* been behaving in my absence? CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. II, 7*b*.
- regiment.** i. The *regiment* with *its* officers *was* to be transported in ships provided by His Majesty's government for the occasion. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 292.
- ii. Idle People use to gather about a *Regiment* that *are* exercising their Arms. STEELE, *Tatler*, C.
- The *regiment* *are* out already. RUDY. KIPLING, *Wee Willie Winkie*, (207).
- That *regiment* *are* devils. *Ib.*, 205.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v *rabble*, 2, c.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *race*, 2, b.

**Reichstag.** When the *Reichstag* meets again, it will be asked to discuss a proposal for setting up an Imperial petroleum monopoly. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6039, 2b.

**remnant.** i. And many more (sc. knights) when Modred raised revolt, | Forgetful of their troth and fealty, clave | To Modred, and a *remnant* stays with me. *TEN.*, *Guin.*, 440.

ii. The *remnant* of the English were already to be seen. *COOPER*, 1)

**rest.** The *rest* | That are within the note of expectation, | Already *are* i' the court. *Macb.*, III, 3, 9.

He observed that the *rest* of my family were not to be sacrificed to the peace of one child alone. *GOLDSM.*, *Vic.*, Ch. XXVIII, (430).

**royalty.** And so the *Royalty* of France is actually fled. *CARLYLE*, *French Rev.* *Royalty* in most countries is fond of the stage, but merely as a spectator. *LL.* *London News*.

**school.** *School* was dismissed. *CH. BRONTË*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. VIII, 78.

It was often his delight, after *his school* was dismissed in the afternoon, to stretch himself on the rich bed of clover. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, *The Leg. of Sleepy Hollow*, (348).

**senate.** i. The *Senate* is of opinion. *BAIN*, *H. E. Gr.*, 301.

ii. The *senate* have concluded | To give, this day, a crown to mighty Caesar. | If you shall send *them* word you will not come. | *Their* minds may change. *JUL. CÆS.*, II, 2, 92—96.

**set.** They are in the *set*, you know, which *runs* these big capitalists in return for early tips. *RICHARD BAGOT*, *The Just and the Unjust*, I, Ch. IV, 143.

**sex.** Our *sex* are like poor tradesmen that put all their best goods to be seen at the windows. *GOLDSM.*, *Good-nat. man*, IV.

I never heard that when men were unhappy, our *sex* were less their friends. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. VI, 66.

**shipping.** And the *shipping* where are *they*? *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXX, 225a.

**society.** It need hardly be said that the *society* of Lynchester was refined, select, aristocratic in the highest sense. In short butter would not melt in *its* delicate refrigerated mouth. *Mrs. ALEX.*, *For his Sake*, I, Ch. II, 23.

*Society* has the right to defend *itself* against injury. *MCCONNELL* (*Athen.*, No. 4437, 557c).

**staff.** i. A wise manager will never feel that his *staff* is complete without at least one woman as a member of *it*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6065, 19.

ii. All my *staff* are trained nurses. *Tit-bits*.

The Bulgarian *Staff* have undoubtedly to reckon with a formidable concentration of Turks to the south of Adrianople. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6059, 1b.

**table.** Until King Arthur's *table*, man by man | Had fallen in Lyncness about *their* Lord. *TEN.*, *Morte d'Arthur*, 3.

**throng.** In an instant the whole *throng* were divided by the hereditary wrath of faction. *LYTTON*, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 23.

**town.** The *town* has asserted that I never yet patronized a man of merit. *GOLDSM.*, *Good-nat. man*, IV.

The *town* talks of nothing else. *SHER.*, *School for Scand.*, I, 1, (368).

The whole *town* knows it. *G. ELIOT*, *Mill*, VI, Ch. VIII, 393.

**tribe.** He — all, all his *tribe* are blind. *LYTTON*, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 53.

**wardrobe.** † I could give away all my *wardrobe*, and go naked for *them*. *DRYDEN*, *Marriage à la Mode*, III, 1.

1) MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 152



**whole.** The *whole* of these goods *are* now on view. Truth, No. 1802, 119.

**world.** i. All *the world loves* him. GOLDSM., Good-nat. man, I.

The *world is* no stranger to your generosity. *Ib.*, IV.

All *the world eats* too much. Mrs. WARD, Lady Rose's Daughter, I, Ch. II, 18*b*.

Just now all *the world is* visiting busily. Graph.

ii. The *world have* paid too great a compliment to critics. FIELDING, Tom Jones, V, Ch. I, 63.

The *whole world are* aware that this assumed complaisance is a matter of ceremony. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXVI, 327.

All *the world were* there. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXXV, 304.

**youth.** i. \* What follies will not *youth* perpetrate with *its* own admirable gravity and simplicity? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 187.

But *youth is* ever so confident. *Id.*, Barry Lyndon, Ch. III, 54.

*Youth is* not romantic. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 469, 569*a*.

\*\* *Youth 'repairs* | *His* wasted spirits quickly, by long toil | Incurring short fatigue. COWPER, Task, I, 27.

ii. The *youth* of other nations who worked or idled near them, *were* sometimes caught in the spreading movement. G. ELIOT, Mid., II, Ch. XIX, 138.

We are speaking of a time before Casinos were, and when the British *youth were* by no means so active in dancing practice as at the present period.

THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XIV, 136.

The innocent dancing *youth* who pressed round her, attracted by her beauty, *were* rather afraid, after a while, of engaging her. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 270.

In the first group of quotations *youth* may also be understood to express a personified abstraction. Compare: I questioned *age* (sc. What was life); *it* heaved a heavy sigh, | Expressing volumes. ANON., What is Life? (RAINB., I, 20).

Note I. Proper names of towns used as collective nouns are, apparently, regularly construed as singulars.

*Cranford* had so long piqued *itself* on being an honest and moral town that *it* had grown to fancy *itself* too genteel and well-bred to be otherwise. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. X, 180.

All *London* was talking of Rummun Loll. TROL., Thack., Ch. IV, 115.

All *Putney* was in tears. THACK., Lovel the Wid., Ch. II, 41.

(Observe, however, that *Eton*, etc. may stand for *the Eton team*, etc. and, accordingly, be construed as a plural.

*Eton were* said to have one of the finest elevens that the school had ever had. Truth, No. 1800, 1685*a*.

At the Oval on Wednesday *Kent were* beaten by an innings and 345 runs. Times.

II. The following quotations must speak for themselves:

i. † About 30 per cent of our population *is* underfed. Eng. Rev., 1912, Oct., 453.

ii. Ninety-five per cent of the human race *suffer* from chronic blood-poison. BERN. SHAW, The Doctor's Dilemma, I, 15.

10. Of the collective nouns of the second kind those which may be modified by a number-indicating word (8, Obs. I) are all but regularly construed as plurals throughout, also as far as the demonstrative pronouns are concerned. The others mostly have the demonstrative pronouns in the singular, and for the rest are treated as singulars or plurals according to the same principle as underlies the construction of collective nouns of the first kind.

For the constructions of nouns that are properly single-unit nouns, but are also used in a collective sense, such as *fish*, *fowl* etc., see Ch. XXV, 28.

Note I. *Folk* is now only archaically used as a collective noun of the first kind. As a collective noun of the second kind it has from an early date been largely replaced by the plural *folks*, the singular being now archaic or dialectical. Both *folk* and *folks* are now chiefly colloquial and mostly expressive of kindness or familiarity. In the literary style they imply slight contempt. Sometimes *folk* = *kind of folk*.

In the following quotation *a folk* is used in the sense of *a person*:  
Poor fellow! He likes us better than the fine folks, who don't care for him now — now he is no longer *a fine folk* himself. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LX, 625.

II. The construction of *people* as a singular seems to be confined to vulgar language. See, however, the quotation from CH. BRONTË below.

III. *Vermin* is also met with as a single-unit noun, preceded by the (in)definite article.

**cattle.** i. Of all the different substances, *cattle* is that of which the price rises first to this height. ADAM SMITH.<sup>1)</sup>

The whole price of cattle would fall, and along with it the profit of all those lands of which *cattle* was the principal produce.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The *cattle* were driven from the hill. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. IV, 36.

The *cattle* are grazing | Their heads never raising, | They are forty feeding like one. WORDSWORTH, *A Morning in March*.

These *cattle* had not been sent up from the south. CAPT. TAYLOR.<sup>1)</sup>

**company.** i. Here comes more *company*. As you like it, IV, 3, 73. (See 18, b.)  
Last night there was *company* to dinner. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. II, 10. (See 18, b.)

ii. Other *company* were there. DICK., *Tale of Two Cities*, Ch. V, 48.

There were shabby people present, besides the fine *company*, though these latter were by far the most numerous. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 396.

**folk(s).** i. It . . . did not hold back the Bible from the *folk*. *Academy*, 7 Aug., 85 2. 4)

ii. \* What seemed particularly odd to Rip was, that though these *folk* were evidently amusing themselves, yet they maintained the gravest faces, the most mysterious silence, and were withal the most melancholy party of pleasure he had ever witnessed. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *Rip van Winkle*.

"A small matter," said the Ghost, "to make these silly *folks* so full of gratitude." DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 48.

These little *folks*, having threaded the mighty flood of Regent Street, debouched into the quiet creek of Beak Street. THACK., *Lovel the Wid.*, Ch. I, 15.

The great country *folk* repair thither at stated intervals. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. V, 57.

The old *folks* are much too content with home, they won't travel. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VI.

\*\* Our Virginian gentry were a grave aristocratic *folk*. THACK., *Virg.*<sup>1)</sup>

**fruit.** i. The *fruit* is at thy feet. SHELLEY, *Revolt*, *Ded.*, 16.

ii. The gods give all these *fruit* of all their works. SWINBURNE, *Atalanta*, 380.

**fry.** i. A race obscene, | Spawned in the muddy beds of Nile | . . . And the land stank — so numerous was the *fry*. COWPER, *Task*, II, 832.

ii. The *fry* of the aquatic races are almost as different from their parents as the caterpillar from the butterfly. WOODWARD.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XII.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

A large sea-going steamer following immediately after *these* smaller *fry*. SAVAGE, *My Official Wife*, 245.

The smaller *fry* are masters of the citadel. Athen., No. 4426, 191c.

**furniture.** i. *My furniture is* getting shabby.

Why should they buy many books when they bought so *little furniture*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. VI, 218.

ii. † *My furniture were* all in *their* places. Mrs. A. M. BENNETT, *Beggar Girl*, V, 197.1)

**game.** i. The *game* of the royal parks and forests . . . *was* to him a source of profit. MAC., *Fred.*, (673*b*).

Then (we) touch'd upon the *game*, how scarce *it was* | This season. TEN., *Audley Court*, 31.

Lions are generally found where *game* is plentiful. *Graph*.

People in England are very much under the impression that big *game* is to be found in all parts of South Africa except just in the neighbourhood of Cape Town. 1*b*.

The *game* in view *was* rabbits. HOR. HUTCHINSON (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6011, 2*c*).

The *less* small *game* there is about, the better the chances are of successful stalking. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5448, 14*a*. (See 16, *d*.)

ii. Elephants, rhinoceroses and other great *game* *were* abundant. *Lit. World*.

The bleak heights which the black *game* *love*. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. III, 39.

"I was ever moderate in my desires," said the Cardinal with a smile; "I shoot at none of *these* high-flying *game*." SHORTHOUSE. 2)

In the following quotation *were* is probably to be regarded as a past subjunctive: I asked them whether any man-jack of them would be a ha'porth better off if there *were* no *game*. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 246.

**gentry.** (in this application expressing contempt). Reader, if thou meetest one of *these* small *gentry* in thy early rambles, it is good to give him a penny. CH. LAMB, *Es. of Elia*, In Praise of Chimney-Sweepers.

A woman should be very careful when one of *these* *gentry* from the sewers of society presents himself as a lover. SARAH GRAND, *Man and Maid*, 88.

You see what sort of an opinion *these* *gentry* *have* of the country. RIDER HAGGARD, *She*, Ch. IV, 48.

*These* *gentry* of the alarmist clique see red all the time. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXV, 437*b*.

**kin.** Is this another case where our *kin* across the Atlantic *are* more careful of undefiled English? *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6039, 4*b*.

**people.** i. *People* even for some years *was* not absolutely certain of her existence. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 525.

ii. While the young *people* *were* making *themselves* perfectly happy, old Lobbs got down the pipe and smoked it. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 154.

The *people* pressed round the learned man, with open *mouths*; now turning *their* eyes to the picture, now to Pandulfo. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IX, 56.

**police.** The *police* *were* upon us with uplifted truncheons. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 324.

The *police* *are* organized after European models. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s. v. *Japan*.

The *police* *have* strict orders to *take* into custody any person found shooting soil or rubbish on this land. *Notice*.

During this time a good many of *these* *police* go round in the evening. 11. *Lond. News*, No. 3685, 791.

**poultry.** i. No other *poultry* *is* reared elsewhere on that farm. All the Year Round.)

Those who require to purchase *poultry* *have* to pay so much for *it*. *Chamb.* 3)

1) MURRAY, s. v. *furniture*. 2) WINDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 93.

3) SATTLER, E. S., X.

- ii. The *poultry are* yours and I will send *them* for you. MARRYAT.<sup>1)</sup>  
 There *are* hardly any *poultry* now. HARDY, *Tess*, VI, Ch. LI, 460.  
 The *poultry are* being fed. ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 18.
- soldiery.** The Baron's *soldiery are* ready at all hours. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 163.  
*Japanese soldiery were* poured into the country. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXII, 115b.
- stock.** i. Some of the best *stock has* been kept in poor buildings. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s. v. *farm*.  
 ii. *Stock are* now doing well. *Graph.*<sup>1)</sup>
- vermin.** i. \* And once the laces of a helmet crack'd | And show'd him, like *a vermin* in its hole. TEN., *The Last Tourn.*, 65.  
 An idle person only lives to eat the fruits of the earth, like *a vermin* or a wolf. TAYLOR.<sup>1)</sup>  
 \*\* A weasel taken in a trap was charged with misdemeanours, and the poor *vermin* stood much upon *her* innocence. L'ESTRANGE.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. Next time that you do me the honour to come here, I trust that we shall have cleared all *these vermin* from my estate. CONAN DOYLE, *Refugees*, 337.  
 I never anywhere saw so many of *these* detestable *vermin*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XV, 234.  
 The factor asked if *these vermin were* not offensive. ANDREW LANG, *Blue Fairy Book*, *History of Whittington*.  
*Vermin are* dreadful in a court. *Ib.*

11. Obs. 1. Substantive genitives when denoting a firm govern the plural form of the finite verb of which they are the subject. (Ch. XXIV, 50, Obs. III.)

II. Inconsistencies are not infrequent; i. e. collective nouns denoting persons are often found construed as singulars in the beginning of the discourse, naturally mostly as to the finite verb depending on them, while in the sequel they are dealt with as plurals, especially as to the personal pronouns used in referring to them. The change of construction is the natural outcome of the fact that on first observing a body of persons physically or mentally, the speaker or writer is apt to view it as a unit, while he grows more and more aware of its constituent members as he becomes more closely acquainted with it and proceeds in his discourse. Change of construction in the opposite direction cannot, therefore, be expected; nor are instances ever brought forward in discussions dealing with this subject. See also the King's English, 69; and especially C. ALPHONSO SMITH, *A Note on the Concord of Collectives and Indefinites in English* (*Anglia* XXIII, 242ff), where a great many instances are given.

**army.** "*Comes his army on?*" — "*They mean* this night in Sardis to be quartered." *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 2, 27.

A fearful *army*, led by Caius Marcius | Associated with Aufidius, *rages* | Upon our territories; and *have* already | O'erborne their way. *Cor.*, IV, 6, 75.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XII.



**board.** Our *board meets* on Saturday, and never fear I'll account for it to *them* before I drive you down. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 18.

**class.** There *was* another *class* of emigrants *who were* not disposed to recognise his supremacy. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 106 (See 18, b.)

**clique.** Supplehouse belongs to a *clique* which *monopolizes* the wisdom of England. or, at any rate *thinks that it does*. But the worst of them is that *they* are given to talk leading articles. TROL., Framley Pars., Ch. III, 28.

**club.** Our *club* however *has* frequently caught him tripping. at which times *they* never *spare* him. ADDISON, Spect., No. 105.

**crowd.** There *was* a *crowd* of people of all sorts outside the tenement house when Glory returned to Brown's Square, and even the stairs were thronged with *them*. HALL CAINE, The Christian, IV, Ch. XV, 281. (See 18, b.)

**family.** The *family* was away, and in *their* absence John cared very little for *their* relatives. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 22.

*My family . . . has* always been accustomed to have faithful friends round about 'em. Ib., Ch. XXXIX, 409.

**Government.** Hence the astonishing absence of any strong popular feeling against the *Government*, which *has* expelled the religious Orders . . . The *Government* *believe* that so long as *they* are not driven to shut up the churches or to imprison the clergy, *they* may do as *they* please. Rev. of Rev., CCVI, 126b.

**House.** The fact is . . . that the *House* *does* not in the least understand what *it* is about; . . . doesn't know what *it* wants. The question I should like to ask *them* is: *do they* intend that the Queen shall have a government, or *do they* not? *Are they* prepared to support such men as Sidonia and Lord De Terrier? If so, I am *their* obedient humble servant; but I shall be very much surprised, that's all. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXIII, 217.

**nation.** The *nation* was becoming daily more enraged at the presence of a man in whom *it* beheld the incarnation of the religious oppression under which *they* groaned. MOTLEY, Rise, II, Ch. IV, 203b.

**pair.** There *goes* a *pair* that only *spoil* each other. GOLDSM., She Stoops, I, (169). (See 18, b.)

**party.** In nearly every house a bright fire was burning and tea was ready on the table: in some a happy family *party* was just sitting down to *their* evening meal: in all there was an air of comfort and rest. O. F. WALTON, A Peep behind the scenes, Mother Mannikin's Chairs, Ch. XX.

The Liberal *Party* is in difficult straits. *They* are pledged to social reforms which *they* cannot carry through without money. Rev. of Rev., CCXII, 119a.

**people.** Blessed is the *people* that know the joyful sound: *they* shall walk, O Lord, in the light of thy countenance. Psalm LXXXIX, 15.

But thou, O Lord, | Aid all *this* foolish *people*; let *them* take | Example, pattern: lead *them* to thy light. TEN., St. Simeon Stylites, 219.

**public.** The general *public* has an even more intimate interest, for it is *they* who will be the principal sufferers. Rev. of Rev., CCXIV, 332b  
That is not what *the public* is concerned to know. What *the public* want to know, and what alone *they* want to know, is how the disaster came about. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 499, 673b.

**society.** *Society* finds no more enjoyable way of spending a vacation than drinking unpalatable waters and mingling with *their* fellows. Eng. Rev., Aug., 1912.

**vermin.** And I will track *this vermin* to *their* earths. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 517.

Also in the following quotation the language is inconsistent:

Not *one fourth* of provincial tradesmen or farmers ever *take* stock; nor, in fact, *does one half* of them ever keep account-books deserving the name.  
BAIN, H. E. Gr., 302.

12. Nouns which, though plural in form, are more or less distinctly felt to denote singular ideas, are sometimes, especially in colloquial language, construed as singulars; i. e.:

- a) they may have the finite verb of which they are the subject in the singular;
- b) they may have their adnominal modifiers placed in the singular;
- c) they may be referred to by singular pronouns;
- d) they may be preceded<sup>4</sup> by the indefinite article.

It must be understood that a given noun not always exhibits all these peculiarities at once, i. e. it may be dealt with as a singular in one respect and as a plural in another.

Again we sometimes find that the singular construction is more or less regular, sometimes it seems to be used almost indifferently with the plural, sometimes it is only exceptionnally met with, and sometimes, especially in the case of foreign plurals, it is due to misapprehension. In many cases the available evidence is not sufficient to draw reliable conclusions from as to the generally prevailing practice. For details see also STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 686; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 189; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 271.

13. Among the plural nouns that, as far as the evidence given in the preceding chapter goes, are construed wholly or partially as singulars,

- a) the following have or may have the finite verb of which they are the subject in the singular: *alms* (12), *Alps* (19, i), *amends* (19, j), *bellows* (19, a), *Commons* (19, g), *damages* (20), *gardens* (20), *glanders* (19, c), *hards* ( *herds*, *hurds* (19, e), *head-quarters* (20), *innings* (19, f), *lees* (19, e), *marbles* (20), *matins* (19, j), *measles* (19, c), *news* (19, g), *odds* (19, g), *pains* (20), *scissors* (19, a), *tidings* (19, g). *United States* (19, i), *vespers* (19, j), *wages* (19, j), and some nouns in *ics*.
- b) the following have or may have the demonstrative pronouns in the singular: *first-fruits* (20), *news* (19, g), *pains* (20), *shanks* (19, j), and some nouns in *ics* (19, g).
- c) the following have or may have the indefinite numerals in the singular: *amends* (19, j), *brains* (20), *means* (20), *news* (19, g), *pains* (20), *thanks* (19, j), *tidings* (19, j), *victuals* (19, g), *wages* 19, j).
- d) the following are or may be referred to by singular pronouns: *bellows* (19, a), *Commons* (19), *contents* (20), *marbles* (20), *news* (19, g), *United States* (19 i), and some nouns in *ics* (19, g).

- e) the following are or may be preceded by the indefinite article: *alms* (12), *amends* (19, j), *Alps* (19, i), *assizes* (20), *barracks* (19, j), *bellows* (19, a), *betters* (19, h), *colours* (20), *diggings* (19, f), *first-fruits* (20), *gallows* (19, j), *goods* (19, h), *head-quarters* (20), *hustings* (20), *innings* (19, f), *j(o)usts* (19, j), *links* (20), *means* (20), *measles* (19, c), *mews* (20), *ruins* (20), *scales* (20), *scissors* (19, a), *sessions* (20), *shambles* (20), *stables* (19), *stairs* (20), *stores* (20), *sweepstakes* (19, j), *thanks* (18, j), *trousers* (19, a), *United States* (19, i), *vaults* (20), *vespers* (19, j), *works* (20).

Additional instances:

It's hardly the thing for a lady to visit *a chambers* at that hour of the night. FERGUS HUME, *The Piccadilly Puzzle*, 74.

P. volunteered to pull it out with *a smith's pincers*. *Sat. Rev.*, 1902, 26 Feb.

I got *a shears*. HICHENS, *Garden of Allah*, II, 226.

With *a tweezers* we got the intruder out. CONAN DOYLE, *Hark. Munro Letters*, 148.

Some foreign plurals are sometimes apprehended as singulars, chiefly in a collective sense. (Ch. XXV, 19, h.) Those that appear in this singular meaning only through ignorance on the part of the writer are marked with an \*.

*agenda*, *\*antipodes*, *\*arcana*, *\*effluvia*, *errata*, *\*insignia*, *\*memo-randa*, *\*paraphernalia*, *propaganda*, *\*regalia*.

14. It will not seem strange that the singular form of the finite verb is also the ordinary one,

- a) when the subject is the name of a measure modified by a numeral larger than one, and the thing measured is thought of as singular. BAIN (H. E. Gr., 302) compares: *Nine tenths of the misery and vice of mankind proceeds from idleness* with *Nine tenths of the miseries and vices of mankind proceed from idleness* (CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller*, II, 68).

- i. Three parts of him | *Is* ours already. JUL. CÆS., I, 3, 155.

Forty Yards *is* a good distance. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 3, (388).

Two thirds of my income *goes* in paying the interest of mortgages. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 283.

Nine-tenths of every man's happiness *depends* upon his reception among his fellows in society. CARLYLE, *Life of Schiller*, II, 68.

With thee a thousand years *is* as one day. *Ib.*, 284.

I believe it is by persons believing themselves in the right that nine-tenths of the tyranny of this world *has* been perpetrated. THACK., *The Four Georges*, III, 77.

Five pounds *is* a deal of money to a man with a family. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIII, 245.

The apparent increase is £43.645.085. But of this £30.046.000 *was* arrears from 1909—10. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5507, 1c.

- ii. Two-thirds of the works *have* now been completed. *Graph.*

In the following quotation the construction seems to go counter to the meaning. See, however, 18, *b*.

There *happens* to be just about forty millions of people in the States. 11. Lond. News.

Note. It seems rational to say *twice two is four*, etc., not *twice two are four*, etc.; *four farthings makes a penny*, etc., not *four farthings make a penny*, etc. The ordinary practice, however, is to use the plural form of the verb. MAS., Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 482: BAIN, H. E. Gr., 305, N.

i. \* Three times one *are* three. ANNIE BESANT, *Autob.*, 145.

Three times 6 *are* 18, | Pussy, that is very mean. Books for the Bairns, XVIII.

\*\* 4 farthings *make* 1 penny. PENDLEBURY, *Arithmetic*, § 66.

24 grains *make* 1 pennyweight. *Ib.*, § 72.

ii. Twice two *is* four. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 482.

*b*) when a plural subject is the proper name of a book, a house, etc.

'The Three Pigeons' *expects* me down every moment. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, I.

Johnson's 'Lives of the Poets' *is* a work of great interest. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 482.

'The Pleasures of Memory' *was* published in 1792. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 302.

'The Jolly Beggars' *was* written in the year 1785. Note to this Poem.

'Poems by Two Brothers' *was* published with the date 1827. ANDREW LANG, *Tennyson*, 6.

Note. Sometimes the particular nature of the subject-matter occasions the plural number.

In 1842 *were* commenced 'The Confessions of George Fitz-Boodle', which *were* continued into 1843. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. II, 67.

'The Memoirs of Barry Lyndon' *are* very pleasant to read. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 72.

'Gulliver's Travels' ... *were* published in two parts or volumes. The Works of the Rev. Jon. Swift, *Introd. to Gul. Trav.*, 110 (William P. Nimmo).

*c*) occasionally in other cases when a plural subject is meant to represent a singular idea.

O father Abram! what these Christians are, | Whose own hard dealings *teaches* them suspect | The thoughts of others. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 3, 161. (See the note to this line in the 'Clar. Press' edition.)

Moneys *is* your suit. *Ib.*, I, 3, 120.

All things *is* ready. *Taming of the Shrew*, IV, 1. (*All things* is evidently understood as equivalent to *everything*.)

Two dead languages *is* too much to impose upon the generality of students. BAIN, *Comp.*, 283.

No landlord *is* my friend and brother, no chambermaid loves me, no waiter worships me, no boots *admires* and *envies* me. DICK., *Uncom. Trav.*, Ch. I, 11.

15. Instead of *these* or *those* we often meet with *this* or *that* before numeral + name of measure, when the idea to be expressed is thought of as a singular rather than a plural: i. e. when it is understood in a collective sense. The practice is especially common



in colloquial language. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 309; FRANZ, Eng. Stud. XII and XVII; Id., Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 316; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 257; ELLINGER, Verm. Beit., 15; id., E. S., XXXI.

There's *that ten guineas* you were sending to the poor gentleman. GOLDSM., Good-nat. man, I.

I haven't seen her *this two hours*. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. V, 30.

I am sick of this — And so am I . . . and have been any time *this two years*. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 19.

I suppose you will be going over to help him in his canvassing *this next few weeks*. MRS. WARD, Marc., I, 223.

Your wife has been waiting *this two years* for you. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., I, 232.

The lapse of a year between the age of leaving school and the possibility of street trading may be something for the lads. In *that twelve months* their parents may have seen the wisdom of putting them to some occupation which gives them promise of the future. Westm. Gaz., No. 5613, 2b.

Regularly is the singular in the combination *this many a day, year*, etc.

How does your honour for *this many a day*? Haml., III, 1, 91.

I for you | *This many a year* have done despite and wrong | To one whom ever in my heart of hearts | I did acknowledge nobler. TEN., Lanc. and El., 1205.

16. a) The singulars *much* and *little* (*less*, *least*) may modify or refer to plural nouns when it is rather quantity than number that is thought of.

Just. Did you perceive anything in my chocolate cup...? SER Nothing,... unless it was *a little grounds*. SHER., St. Patr. Day, II, 4.

*So much victuals* had been cooked at once as were necessary to feed all the mouths which were clamouring around her. SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. XII, 130. A silly, ill-bred, conceited fool . . . with as *little manners* as wit in his empty coxcomb. Ib., Ch. XII, 141.

The old fogies, as you call them at Bays's, are some of the first gentlemen in Europe, of whom you youngsters had best learn *a little manners*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. VII, 72.

Pen had never in his life drunk *so much spirits-and-water*. Ib., I, Ch. V, 63.

*Much solitary pipes* and ale make a cynic of you. Ib., I, Ch. XXXII, 349.

Too *much* of such *comforts* will unfit them for their home. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXXVI, 350.

Too *little* is better than too *much* of these *details*. ALFRED NOYES, William Morris, Pref. Note.

*Much vegetables* and *potatoes*. Our German Cousins (Daily Mail) There had once been a great trouble about him. That was a good many years ago — perhaps as *much* as seventeen years ago. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander, Ch. VI, 88.

- b) *Much* is repeatedly found in Early Modern English before plurals and collective nouns of the second kind, such as *people*, *cattle*, etc.; ALDIS WRIGHT, The Bible Word-Book; MURRAY, s. v. *much*, 2, b and d.

And I will say to my soul, thou hast *much goods* laid up for many years. Bible, Luke, XII, 19.

Cornelius gave *much alms* to the people. Id., Acts, X, 2.

After dinner walked to my Lord's, and there found him and *much* other guests at table at dinner. PEPYS, *Diary*, 1664, 17 July.

**cattle.** And should not I spare Nineveh, that great city wherein are more than sixscore thousand persons that cannot discern between their right hand and their left; and also *much cattle*. Bible, *Jonah*, IV, 11.

**people.** They taught *much people*. Bible, *Acts*, XI, 26.

And *much people* followed him. Id., *Mark*, V, 24.

They destroyed *much people* of Israel. Id., *Maccabees*, A, I, 30.

Thus also archaically in: A nameless city in a distant sea, | White as the changing walls of faërie | Thronged with *much people* clad in ancient guise. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Paradise*, Prol., 3a.

**youth.** Let us know | If 'twill tie up thy discontented sword, | And carry back to Sicily *much* tall youth | That else must perish there. Ant. and Cleop., II, 6, 7.

- c) *Less* is sometimes met with even when the plural expresses an idea estimated as to number. According to MURRAY (s. v. *less*, A, I, 1, c) this application is now regarded as incorrect. His latest instance bears date 1579. Late Modern English instances, however, are not at all uncommon.

They have left *less signs* of their existence than London. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 76.

The coasts of Devon show even *less signs* of Roman occupation than of British. JOHN LLOYD WARDEN PAGE, *The Coasts of Devon and Lundy Island*, Ch. I, 8.

The fine old face showed *less traces* of fatigue than did the girlish features. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, III, Ch. IX, 306.

Bloomfield Bonning on hills *less people* than you do. BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, I, 28.

If you can't get more boats, then sell *less tickets*. Eng. Rev., 1912, July, 591.

The use of *less* instead of *fewer* seems to be regular in the combination *more or less*, as in:

I do not care about *more or less* blows of a cane. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. VI, 92.

- d) In the following quotations *less* may express rather an idea of significance than of number:

He will find no *less odds* against him than this. COWLEY, *The Dangers of an Honest Man in much Company*, 149.

(He told) the Jury that, if they acquitted this prisoner, they must expect to suffer no *less pangs* and agonies than he had told the other Jury they would certainly undergo, if they convicted that prisoner. DICK., *Old Cur. Sh. p.* Ch. LXIII, 230b. I am heartily thankful that my *temptations* are *less*, having quite enough to do with those of the present century. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLI, 427.

He would very likely have followed in the steps of his father and grandfather with *less means* at his disposal, and, consequently, greater temptations than theirs. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XII, 8.

The *losses* which we have suffered are numerically *less* than a couple of shells judiciously planted might be expected to cause in a European war. Times.

- No doubt the *receipts* in December 1909 were *less* than normal. Westm. Gaz., No. 5507, 1c.

- e) Quite common is the use of the absolute *less* instead of *fewer* in the combination *no (one, two, etc.) less than*; even when the following plural calls forth an idea of number.

*No less than* three *pupils* of her father had trifled with those young affections. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VIII, 87.

He was followed by *no less than* ... three *persons*. MIS BURNETT, *Little Lord Fauntleroy*, 263.

How many *claws* has a tiger? — One *less than* a woman. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, I, 138.

*No less than* 360 *cycles* are manufactured daily. *Il. Lond. News*.

There is now ample accommodation for them here, *no less than* five hospital *ships* being available. *Daily Chronicle*.

Compare with the above the following quotations, in which the grammatically correct *fewer* is used:

i. The *fewer people* and the more air the better. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 247.

ii. In the East End, however, in the whole of the Tower Hamlets the occupation *voters* are *fewer* in number than the inhabited houses. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5501, 3c.

The *failures* recorded during the past year have been *fewer* than for twenty-three years past. *Ib.*, 2b. °

iii. The reader gets *no fewer than* 28 distinct *poems* in the 176 pages of the book. *Lit. World*.

*No fewer than* 400 (sc. peers) attended *fewer than* ten *times*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVI, 161a.

In the course of his journeyings the President is expected to deliver *no fewer than* seventy-five set *speeches*. *Times*.

## 17. The indefinite article may also be met with:

- a) before a word-group, consisting of a numeral and a plural noun, denoting a certain unit, especially when this word-group is preceded by an adjective, or by *second*, *other* or any equivalent modifier. MATZN., *Eng. Gram.*, III, 189; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 16.

i. We hadn't been *a three months* man and wife when that man [etc.]. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXVIII, 225.

Since that time twelve months have passed, but what *a twelve months*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCII, 373a.

ii. What was Tom Claypool... with... his heirdom to *a poor five thousand acres*, compared to this young American prince and charming stranger? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XLV, 467.

He turned out 50.000 lines in *a single four years*. *Lit. World*.

True you can save *a paltry twelve shillings* by subscribing for one year. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, October, Adv. XXVI.

iii. But this task occupied *a second five months*. W. H. DIXON, *Life of W. Penn*, II, 2.1)

May she live on an unshaken throne yet *another fifty years*. SARAH A. TOOLEY, *The Queen* (L. v. D. WAL, London Pictures, 1).

1) ELLINGER, E. S., XXXI, 156.

It is well worth paying *an extra two guineas*. EVA ANSTRUTHER (Westm. Gaz., No. 4972, 9a).

The movement is dead and buried, and will not be resurrected for *another twenty years*. Rev. of Rev., CCX, 572a.

May 6 was the last day for the denunciation of the treaty of alliance between Germany, Austria and Italy, the arrangement being automatically renewable for *a further six years*, unless one of the contracting parties should give a year's notice of an intention to denounce it. Times.

Compare with the above the following quotation where the word-group is referred to by *one*, which shows that it is understood as a singular:

We are by no means sure that when history comes to be written, the *first six months* will not rank as *one* of the most important of our time. Westm. Gaz., No. 5371, 1b.

Note I. In *twelvemonth*, *fortnight* (= fourteen night) *sennight* or *se'nnight* (= seven night) the word-group has become a compound. Of a similar nature is the word-group instanced in:

She...died in less than *a three week*. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. X, 117.

II. The once common practice of placing the indefinite article before a numeral to remove its definiteness or to express an approximate estimate (MURRAY, s. v. a, 2), survives only as an archaism, except before the adjective *good*, when it is still quite common.

i. I have not past *a two shillings* or so. BEN JONS., Every Man in his Hum., I, 4.1)

*An eight days* after these sayings. Bible, Luke, IX, 28.

He had never been in here for a drop of liquor since she went, except *a ten days* ago. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIV, 119b.

Each bar (sc. of silver) was) between *a thirty and forty pound weight*. Ib., Ch. I, 2a.

ii. He came to me, *a good six years* ago, and robbed me. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 408.

The vessel was now *a good ten miles* to the eastward. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIX, 140a.

I'll be bound her waist's *a good five-and-twenty inches*. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norsem., Ch. XIII, 109.

It was *a good four miles* of a walk. CON. DOYLE, Rodney Stone, I, Ch. III, 66.

There is *a good two inches* of water in the boat. JEROME, Three men in a boat, Ch. II, 18.

b) in colloquial or jocular language before certain plural nouns denoting the things with which a person is chiefly occupied professionally.

I won't always *a boots*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XVI, 137.

Don't you know what *a Sawbones* is? Ib., Ch. XXX, 266.

He engaged *a buttons*. Queer Stories from Truth, 1908, 201.

Note. Such a word does not undergo any alteration for the plural, but takes the 's of the genitive.

i. There's a couple o' *Sawbones* downstairs. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 266.

ii. I could worm ev'ry secret out o' the *boots's* heart in five minutes. Ib., Ch. XVI, 139



- c) before certain word-groups consisting of an adjective and a plural noun, containing some humorous allusion to a person's disposition.

He's a *sly old boots*. THACK.<sup>1)</sup>

You are an old, old *Grave-airs*. Id., Henry Esmond, III, Ch. III, 330.

I am afraid she is a *lazy-boots*. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. XIII, 222.

She was something of a *light-skirts*. HENLEY, Burns, 285.

Note. Of the Dutch practice of using the indefinite article before a plural after exclamatory *wat* (*welk*) and *zulk* (*zoo*), as in *wat een menschen*, *zulk een* (*zoo'n*) *menschen*, there is no analogue in English. Compare the following quotations:

i. *What* fearful *shapes* and *shadows* beset his path amidst the dim and ghastly glare of a snowy light! WASH. Irv., Sketch-Bk., XXXII, 349. *What* *myriads* of women have cried over it (sc. the teapot), to be sure! *What* *sick-beds* it has smoked by! *What* *fevered lips* have received refreshment from out of it! THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXII, 347.

ii. The rain descended in *such torrents* as absolutely to spatter up and smoke along the ground. WASH. Irv., The Storm-Ship (STOF., Handl., II, 83).

18. In some cases the grammatical anomaly seems to go counter to the sense conveyed.

- a) When the subject together with (an)other (pro)noun(s) stands before the predicate, the latter is often, by attraction (Ch. XXXII, 4), made to agree with the nearest (pro)noun instead of the real subject (19, a). This construction is especially met with in the older writers, but is by no means uncommon in Present English, especially in the language of the uneducated. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 117; BAIN, H. E. Gr., 300; The King's English, 66; ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 412; HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, III, 132; ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., § 17.

i. \* The *posture* of your *blows* are yet unknown. Jul. Cæs., V, 1, 33. Giving you no further personal power | To business with the king more than the *scope* | Of these delated *articles* *allow*. Hamlet, I, 2, 38. The *amount* of that woman's *charities* are unheard of. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. V, 55.

\*\* *Every one* of these *letters* are in my name. Twelfth Night, II, 5, 153. *Not one* of *them* know the situation of doors, windows, or chimnies. BICKERSTAFF.<sup>2)</sup>

*Nothing* but dreary *dykes* ... occur to break the blank grey monotony of the landscape. F. W. FARRAR, St. Winifred's, Ch. XXI, 237.<sup>3)</sup>

ii. The venom *clamours* of a jealous *woman* | *Poisons* more deadly than a mad dog's tooth. Com. of Errors, V, 1, 70.

All special *rights* of *voting* in the election of members was abolished. J. R. GREEN.<sup>4)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> HOPPE, Supplem. Lex.    <sup>2)</sup> MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, II, 148.

<sup>3)</sup> HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, III, 133.    <sup>4)</sup> The King's English, 67.

In the following quotation the anomaly cannot even be excused on the plea of nearness of the governing noun:

Pray *what are* become of the *books*? SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 3, (401).

Note I. Quite common is this ungrammatical construction, also in Present English, when the subject is the singular distributive (*n*)*either* followed by a plural (pro)noun. EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVII, 67; HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 155; *The King's Eng.*, 69.

i. *Neither* of the *sisters* *were* very much deceived. THACK.<sup>1)</sup>

*Neither* of *them* *are* remarkable for precision. BLAIR.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. *Either* of *them* *are* enough to drive any man to distraction. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, 8, 11.<sup>3)</sup>

*Have either* of *them* told you that I made an offer to your sister? TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXI, 302.

I don't mean that *either* of the *writers* I name *are* absolutely thus narrow in their own views. RUSKIN, *Val d'Arno*, 119.<sup>3)</sup>

Compare with the above the grammatically more correct construction in:

In all the years we've been married *neither* of *us* *has* made jokes. SAKI (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5388, 9b).

*Neither* of *us* *has* any right to lock up the other on any principle conceivable outside chaos. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3816, 869c).

II. Very common also is the use of the plural instead of the grammatically correct singular when the subject is either *kind* or *sort* followed by *of* + plural noun. The mistake is no doubt in a large measure due also to the subservient nature of the nouns *kind* or *sort* as compared with the following noun. SWEET, *Spoken Eng.*, 35; KELLNER, *Hist. Outl. of Eng. Synt.*, § 12; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 701; MURRAY, s. v. *kind*, 14, b. Compare also c.

There *are* a *sort of men*, whose visages | Do cream and mantle like a standing pond. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 1, 88.

What *kind of trees* *are* those? MURRAY.

Such *kind of pamphlets* *work* wonders with the credulous multitude. T. FLATMAN.<sup>1)</sup>

b) When the subject stands after the (finite verb of the) predicate, we sometimes find the latter in the singular, although the former is plural.

1) This anomaly is especially frequent, when the sentence opens with *There (Here, Where) is (was)*, and was common in Early Modern English. Compare the French *il y a*. In Present English it is considered more or less vulgar or dialectal. ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 335; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 672; HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, III, 142; LOHMAN, *Anglia*, III, 137; A. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lexic.*, I, 82; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 151. Compare also MURRAY, s. v. *be*, A, I, 3.

*There's daggers* in men's smiles. *Macb.*, II, 3, 146.

<sup>1)</sup> BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*    <sup>2)</sup> MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 149.

<sup>3)</sup> EINENKEL, *Anglia*, XXVII, 67.    <sup>4)</sup> MURRAY.

For thy three thousand ducats *here is six*. Merch. of Ven., IV, 1, 84.  
*There's* the two Miss Hoggs. GOLDSM., She stoops to conquer.  
*Where's* her traps? THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 171.

*There was* in his countenance *none of those winning looks* which often told so powerfully with his young friends. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XXVII, 264.  
*There's things* you might repent of. G. ELIOT, Mid., III, Ch. XXXII, 226.  
 At his aunt Pullet's *there was* a great many toads to pelt in the cellar-area. Id., Mill, I, Ch. VII, 51.

I told him *there wasn't* many months in the year as I wasn't under the doctor's hands. Ib., 50.

*There was* eighty-six men and boys went down first shift. Mrs. WARD, Sir George Tressady, III, Ch. XXIII, 202a.

You wicked child! *where's* your commandments? JEROME, Paul Kever, I, Ch. I, 14a.

- 2) Analogously other intransitive verbs are sometimes ungrammatically placed in the singular when preceded by weak *there*.

*There lies* two kinsmen digg'd their graves. Rich. II, III, 3, 169.

*There comes* an old man and his three sons. As you like it, I, 2, 105.

- 3) Much rarer is this ungrammatical singular when there is no weak *there*, as in:

Just before us *lies* a couple of Lions in the way. BUNYAN, Pilg. Progr., 173.  
 To-morrow *ends* thine earthly ills. BYRON, Manfr., II, 3.

- 4) Postposition of the subject may also be responsible for the anomaly in:  
 That spirit upon whose weal *depends* and *rests* | The lives of many. Haml., III, 3, 14.

At this hour | *Lies* at my mercy all mine enemies. Temp., IV, 1, 259.

Upon the next session of Parliament *hangs* the destinies of Liberalism for many a year to come. Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 218a.

- 5) In the following quotations the ungrammatical singular seems to be due to the interrogative *what* being mistaken for the subject:

*What cares* these roarers for the name of King? Temp., I, 1, 17.

*What is* your tidings? Macb., I, 5, 31.

*What means* these dreadful words and frantic air? G. LILLO, Fatal Curiosity, III, 2, (310b).

But *what matters* a few failings? THACK., Pend., XLVI.

- c) In adnominal clauses the verb is often placed in the singular although the antecedent is plural, when the latter is preceded by the numeral *one* + partitive *of*. The mistake is apparently due to *one* being erroneously taken for the antecedent. STOF., Es., XXVII, 253; HOLTHAUSEN, E. S., XXXV, 186; HODGSON, Errors, 144; HORN, Herrig's Archiv, CXIV, 368, No. 2; ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., § 65b.

This is *one* of the very best *treatises* on money and coins that *has* ever been published. J. R. McCulloch, Lit. and Pol. Econ., 163.1)

This is *one* of the pleasantest *books* about Russia that *has* appeared since the publication of Mr Sutherland Edward's delightful 'Russians at Home'. Spectator, 1871, 3 June, 671.

1) HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, 145.

This is the epoch of *one* of the most singular *discoveries* that *has* been made among men. HUME.<sup>1)</sup>

I resemble *one* of those *animals* that *has* been forced from its forest to gratify human curiosity. GOLDSMITH.<sup>1)</sup>

Compare the grammatically correct:

The neighbourhood, at the time of which I am speaking, was *one* of those highly-favoured *places* which *abound* with chronicle and great men. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 364.

This is *one* of the few good *books* that *have* been written. ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 62b.

- d) Sometimes the predicate is placed in the singular when its subject is the word-group *more than one*.

*More than one* who took a part in the more extreme developments of the work *has* since been conspicuous on the rationalistic side of more recent discoveries. OAKELEY, *Hist. Notes Tract. Novement*, 103.<sup>2)</sup>

- e) In the vulgar language the third person singular of the present tense is often used throughout for all persons singular and plural.

The *terms* *is* agreed upon. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XII, 103.

If the *clothes* *fits* me half as well as the place, they'll do. *Ib.*

*I* *takes* it (sc. the prescription) reg'lar. *Ib.*, Ch. XX, 179.

*I* *spells* it (sc. my name) with a 'V'. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXIV, 317.

The *Papers* *is* full of observations. *Id.*, *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 13.

- f) The subservient nature of *kind* or *sort*, as compared with that of the following noun, causes the plural of the demonstrative pronouns to be used instead of the grammatically correct singular in such word-groups as *these (those) kind (sort) of apples*. The practice may be traced to quite early times. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 316, Anm. 2; HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>2</sup>, 156; ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 36.

*These kind of knaves* I know. *Lear*, II, 2, 107<sup>2</sup>.

I leave *these kind of things* entirely to them. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, II, (184).

It would surprise you to hear how ready he is at all *these sort of things*. SHER., *School for Scandal*, I, I, (369).

I know many of *those sort of girls*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVI, 154.

I don't like *these kind of apples* so well as those we had yesterday. SWEET, *Spok. Eng.*, 35.

At *these kind of 'afternoon teas'*. MARIE CORELLI, *Murder of Delicia*, Ch. I, 27.

Thus also there is often discrepancy in number when *sort* (or *kind*) of + plural noun is the nominal part of the predicate and the demonstrative pronoun is the subject.

*These are the sort of rooms* . . . which ought to be provided by the country for the use of its bishops. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXIX, 278.

Conversely *thing* or *person* is kept in the singular in the colloquial collocations *this sort (kind) of thing (person)*.

<sup>1)</sup> BAIN, H. E. *Gr.*, 308.    <sup>2)</sup> MURRAY, S. V. *more*, B, 3.



If you'll be so kind as to give me your keys, I'll attend to all *this sort of thing* in future. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV, 24a.

One does not, mercifully, often come into contact with *that sort of person*. RICH. BAGOT, *The Just and the Unjust*, II, Ch. V, 130.

- g) There also seems to be an anomaly in the regular use of the singular instead of the plural in the collocation *all manner of* + plural noun, where, however, *all* may be understood in the sense of *any*. The whole phrase is, evidently, apprehended as expressing but one idea, so that the individual meaning of *manner* is disregarded.

When a political party has been kept too long in opposition, it is inclined to adopt *all manner of wild-cat theories*. Rev. of Rev., CCVIII, 341a.

19. a) Owing chiefly to the want of a singular pronoun of the third person of the common gender, i. e. one that may indicate either a male or a female person (33), the plural pronoun of the third person is often used in referring to:

- 1) the indefinite pronouns *anybody* (-one), *each* (-one), *everybody* (-one), *nobody* (-one), *many a one*, the interrogative pronoun *who*, and the numeral *one*.
- 2) a noun of common gender when accompanied by an indefinite modifier, or by the numeral *one*.
- 3) two or more (pro)nouns of a different gender connected by *or*. See also BAIN, H. E. Gr.<sup>2</sup>, 310; TEN-BRUG., *Taalst.*, IX; C. ALPHONSO SMITH, *Anglia*, XXIII, 242 foll; HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 152, H. WILLERT, *Anmerk. zur Eng. Gram.*

- i. \* How can *anybody* be happy while *they're* in perpetual fear of being seen and censured. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (281).

Do not you remember how *any one* can ever tear *themselves* away from the country? MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 16.

It is worth while to be crushed by *any one* who can give so much ground for *their* knowledge. *ib.*, I, 162.

*Anybody* could sing, if *they* were taught. W. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*.

\*\* He was one of those precious men whom *everybody* would choose to work for *them*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, II, Ch. XXII, 165.

Nothing could be heartier. His niece looked just the same. So did Topper when he came. So did the plump sister, when she came. So did *every one* when *they* came. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, V, 109.

\* \* *Nobody* prevents you, do *they*? THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. II, 19. *Nobody* mistook *their* pew for *their* fourposter during the sermon. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, Ch. VII, 83.

\*\*\*\* *Many a one* has been comforted in *their* sorrow by seeing a good dish upon the table. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XIV, 256.

\*\*\*\*\* *Who* is without *their* drawback, *their* scourge, *their* skeleton behind the curtain? *Id.*, *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 261.

\*\*\*\*\* There is not *one* in a hundred of either sex who is not taken in when *they* marry. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. V, 46.

ii. \* The winds play about his house in so riotous a manner that *a person* must poise *themselves* in a very exact manner to maintain *their* ground. ELIZ. MONTAGU, Letters (Westm. Gaz., No. 5201, 5a). Whenever *a person* does that, it looks as though *their* course were weak. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XLI, 397.

As for love, flattery is its very life-blood. Fill *a person* with love for *themselves*, and what runs over will be your share. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, II, 48.

Any one who knows . . . how full of gladness and beauty and wonder all creation is to *a child*, how little *they* know of fear or anxiety [etc.]. SWEET, Old Chapel.

\*\* If *either party* fix *their* attachment upon the substantial comforts of a rental or a jointure, *they* cannot be disappointed in the acquisition. SCOTT.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* *Every person* has a right to take care of *themselves*. DICK., Christm. Carol, IV, 91.

\*\*\*\* Not *one novelist* in a thousand ever does tell us the real story of *their* hero. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, IV, 59.

iii. When *a man or woman* loves to brood over a sorrow, and takes care to keep it green in *their* memory, you may be sure it is no longer a pain to *them*. Ib., II, 32.

Go out into the street, and ask the first *man or woman* you meet what *their* taste is, and if *they* answer candidly, you know them body and soul. ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. Compared, § 107.

Let *him or her* join *themselves* unto me and work with me for that especial end. Rev. of Rev., CXCV, 225.

Note I. Also when no difference of sex is in question, the plural pronouns are sometimes met with.

Both these men's eyes followed George into the house, and *each* had a strong inclination *they* were bent on concealing. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. II, 34.

For any white *man* to marry out of *their* own colour is to commit social suicide. Daily Mail.

II. Even *everything* is sometimes found referred to by a plural pronoun.

The fire irons shone like silver and *everything* in the room was as neat and clean and bright as it was expected for *them* to be. O. F. WALTON, A Peep behind the scenes, The Little Pitcher, Ch. XVIII. *Everything* appeared to have gone wrong with him since Nina left; and the worst of it was that he was gradually ceasing to care how *they* went, right or wrong. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. XX.

b) In order to avoid this discrepancy, precise speakers often prefer to use the singular pronouns of the masculine and feminine gender in succession. In the case of *every*, *each* or *either* the difficulty may be met by substituting respectively *all* or *both*.

*Everybody* called for *his* or *her* favourite remedy. BAIN, H. E. Gr. (Otherwise: All called for their favourite remedies.)

*Some person* who had pledged *his* or *herself* to do what can be done. Rev. of Rev., CXCV, 225.

<sup>1)</sup> BAIN, H. E. Gr., 311.

This practice, which is mostly felt as unbearably pedantic, is sometimes justified by the circumstances of the situation described, or used for humorous effect.

Mr. and Mrs. Fezziwig took their stations, one on either side the door, and shaking hands with *every person* individually as *he or she* went out, wished *him or her* a Merry Christmas. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 47.

The penny fare enables *every one*, even the poorest working man and woman, to drive to *his or her* destination. GÜNTHER., *Leerb.*, 74.

To push on in the crowd, *every* male or female *struggler* must use *his or her* shoulders. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VIII, 86.

c) Sometimes there is a halting between two practices:

The institution of property reduced to its essential elements, consists in the recognition, in *each person*, of a right to the exclusive disposal of what *he or she* has produced by *their* own exertions. J. S. MILL.

d) As the finite verb is now almost regularly kept in the singular when any of the above indefinite words or word-groups is the subject, we sometimes meet with harsh discrepancies.

*Everybody has their* failing, and *everybody has* a right to do what *they* like with *their own* money. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. XVI, 126.

*Every one was eating their* best and drinking *their* worst. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXII, 99a.

Just because a woman is on the stage, *everybody thinks* they may throw stones at her. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 292.

If *anybody knows* what I am going to tell, *they* are not to say one word until it is over. MRS. EWINGS, *A Hero*, 84.

If *any one calls*, tell *them* I will be back in half an hour. SWEET, *Spok. Eng.*, 36.

SHAKESPEARE and other Early Modern English writers sometimes have the finite verb in the plural. ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 12.

Now leaden slumber with life's strength doth fight; | And *every one* to rest themselves betake. | Save thieves, and cares, and troubled minds, that wake. *The Rape of Lucrece*, 125.

Such smiling rogues as these '... smooth *every* passion | That in the natures of their lords *rebel*. *Lear*, II, 2, 81.

Such instances as occur in later Modern English seem to be due to attraction, a plural noun, forming part of an adnominal modifier of the subject, intervening between the latter and the finite verb.

*Every one of our unknowing actors and actresses were* to be implicated, more or less, in the catastrophe. THACK., *Catherine*, 66a.<sup>1)</sup>

How could he help taking his part in maintaining undivided that fair realm of America, which *every one of his countrymen love* as Queen Elizabeth's yeomen loved the realm of England. BESANT and RICE, *Golden Butterfly*, 162.<sup>1)</sup>

It is true that *not one of the bright particular stars of Polish history were* of that line or age. *Saturday Rev.*, 1865, 19 July, 242.<sup>2)</sup>

And so *each of his portraits are* not only 'a piece of history', but [etc.]. STEVENSON.<sup>3)</sup>

Thus also in: *Every one of these letters are* in my name. *Twelfth Night*, II, 5, 154.

<sup>1)</sup> H. WILLERT, *Anm.*, 17.

<sup>2)</sup> HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 152.

<sup>3)</sup> *The King's Eng.*, 68.

Even *every thing* may be found with a plural predicate.

And here I swear by all the Roman gods, | Sith priest and holy water are so near, | And tapers burn so bright and *every thing* | In readiness for Hymenæus *stand*, I will not re-salute the streets of Rome, | Or climb my palace, till from forth this place | I lead espoused my bride along with me. Titus Adronicus, I, 1, 325.

Compare with this the construction in the following quotation, where the plural is used after *all* (— *everything*) + relative *that*.

No sympathy, no kindness . . . but *all that irritate and offend*. CH. LEVER, *A Day's Ride*, I, 86.<sup>1)</sup>

- e) Very rarely do we find compounds of *body* (*one*) coupled with a plural noun as nominal part of the predicate.

The unaccustomed visitor from outside naturally assumed *everybody* here to be *prisoners*. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VIII, 45a.

- f) Compare with the quotations under *a—e* above the following with the regular grammatical construction:

*Who* can be angry at those assiduities which are meant to please *him*? GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (186).

England expects *every man* to do *his* duty. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*. He did not know the stories that were told of him. *Who* knows the stories that are told of *him*? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVIII, 290.

It seems natural that *every mother* should nurse *her* own child. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*

20. The concord of *none* requires some special discussion. (Ch. XL, 135 ff.) Though the descendant of the Old English *nān* (= *ne ān*), corresponding to Modern English *not one*, and consequently decidedly singular in import, *none* is mostly construed as a plural.

- a) When used absolutely, in which case it is felt as equivalent to either *not one* or *not any*, the singular construction is not uncommon, although less common than the plural.

- i. *None* of my nephews... *deserves* to receive any benefits at your hands. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. XXXIII, 229.

*None* of the survivors *puts* the time at more than 15 minutes. *Times*. It is probable that *none* of the parties to the arrangement *has* reached such a pitch of blameless perfection as to be entitled to throw stones at the others. *Ib.*

- ii. I must confess he is not without faults, love. — *None* of us *are*. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXX, 254.

*None* of us in the house *have* liked her. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 64.

I hope *none* of you *forget* church. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 17.

What has happened at the Théâtre Français may easily be repeated at any of the theatres. *None*, with the exception of the Opera, *are* better protected against fire. *Daily Chronicle*.

- b) When used substantively, in which case it is almost exclusively used of persons, it is now mostly construed as a plural. The singular construction is, however, common enough, especially in the older writers, after *here* and *there*. (18, b.) In Present English the singular *none* has given way to *nobody*, or is used as an archaism.

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL, *Dict.*, s.v. *all*, II, 8.



- i. \* *There is none* but he | Whose being I do fear. *Macb.*, III, 1, 64.

*There is none* that doeth good, no not one. *Psalm*, XIV, 3.

By midday *there was none* in the court who had not heard of the tidings.

CONAN DOYLE, *Refugees*.

\*\* *None* but the brave *deserves* the fair. DRYDEN, *Alexander's Feast*, l.

The Chief is young and jealous of his rank — *none knows* the reason better than thou, friend Glover. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXVII, 279.

Had not his poor heart | Spoken with That, which being everywhere | Lets *none*, who *speaks* with Him, seem all alone, | Surely the man had died of solitude. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 615.

Thus frequently in proverbs:

*None* ever gives the lie to him that praiseth him.

*None* goes to the gallows for giving ill counsel.

*None* is so wise, but the fool overtakes him.

*None knows* the weight of another's burden.

- ii. *None* wed the second (sc. husband) but who kill'd the first. *Hamlet*, III 2, 192.

*None*, except his intimate friends, *know* he has a great deal of wit. *Spectator*, II,

*None* are so deaf as *those* who will not hear. *Proverb*.

*None* are so blind as *those* who won't see. *Id.*

*None know* how they are born. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. II, 9.

In many cases the context does not show whether *none* is felt as a plural or a singular.

*None* of woman born | Shall harm Macbeth. *Macb.*, IV, 1, 80.

He was never known to be subject to that punishment which it is generally thought, *none* but a cherub can escape. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. IX, 87.

*None* can say what effect the triumph of the Revolution might have upon the Social Democrats of Germany. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIX, 4b.

#### CONCORD WITH COMPOUND ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE.

21. Also when the subject is compound, the English language in determining the number of the words dependent on it for their form is essentially led by the meaning conveyed, i. e. this number is the singular when the compound subject calls forth a singular idea. This is often symbolized by the fact that the modifiers of the first noun are not repeated before the others. Compare:

*A needle and thread* was given her, but she could not sew the button on.

*A needle and a thread* were given her, but she could not thread the needle. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 305.

For a discussion see also BAIN, *Comp.*, 285; ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, 22b.

It is in accordance with the above principle that the singular number is used:

- a) when the different members of a compound subject designate the same person or thing.

When the duke died, *his son and namesake and successor* was an infant. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 303.

A similar principle sometimes causes the singular to be used when the members of the compound subject are thought of as synonymous terms, or as representing only different aspects of the same idea.

- i. The sceptre shows the force of temporal power | Wherein *doth* sit the *dread* and *fear* of kings. *Merch. of Ven.*, IV, 1, 192.

The very *head and front* of my offending *hath* this extent. *Othello*, I, 3, 80.

The *hardship and exposure* of a savage life speedily *destroys* those who are not of a robust constitution. *BAIN, H. E. Gr.*, 303.

The *peace and good order* of society was not promoted by the feudal system. *HALLAM*.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. Our *yoke and sufferance* show us womanish. *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 3, 84.

- b) when the nouns making up a compound subject are the names of the component parts of anything, or of things, actions, qualities, etc. thought of, some way or other as constituents of one whole. See *ABBOT, Shak. Gram.*, § 336.

All is but toys: *renown and grace* is dead. *Macb.*, II, 3, 99.

ANT. Is your *gold and silver* ewes and rams? SHYL. I cannot tell: I make it breed as fast. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 3, 97

*Hill and valley rings*. *MILTON, Par Lost*, II, 495.

*To recover Silesia, to humble the dynasty of Hohenzollern to the dust* was the great object of Maria Theresa's life. *MAC., Fred.*, (683a).

*Hodge and Smithers* is a most respectable firm. *THACK., Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 57.

The *wheel and axle* was out of repair. *BAIN, H. E. Gr.*, 305.

*Bread and butter* is my usual breakfast. *Ib.*

The *long and short* of the matter is [etc.]. *Id.*, *Comp.*, 285.

The *ebb and flow of the tides* is now understood. *Ib.*

The *composition and resolution of forces* was largely applied by Newton. *Ib.*

*Trial and error* is the source of our knowledge. *Ib.*

The same usage is sometimes met with where the unity is less apparent.

*Hanging and wiving* goes by destiny. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 9, 83.

Thy weal and woe are both of them extremes, | *Despair and hope* makes thee ridiculous. *SHAK., Ven. and Ad.*, 988. (Note the varied practice.)

The wild swans come to our East Coast when the *Cattegat and the neighbouring sea* is frozen. *HORACE HUTCHINSON, Weather Wisdom of the Birds (Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 4c).*

In the following quotations the singular might be used for the plural:

No sooner was the doctor out of sight than *pestle and mortar* were abandoned. *WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl.*, I, 110).

*Blue and yellow* make green. *MASON, Eng. Gram.*<sup>2)</sup>, § 335, N.

Sometimes one of the two nouns is by hendiadys connected with the other by *and*, but in reality stands for an adnominal adjunct. In this case also the singular number is sometimes used. *FRANZ, Shak. Gram.*, § 673.

- i. The *blood and courage* that renowned them | *Runs* in your veins. *Henry V.*, I, 2, 118. (= *courageous blood.*)

<sup>1)</sup> *BAIN, H. E. Gr.*, 303.

- ii. The public opinion of the great is the opinion of their equals — of those whom *birth and accident cast* for ever in their way. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 86. (= *the accident of birth.*)

On the principle designated above (*b*), it seems more rational to say *two and two is (makes) four* than *two and two are (make) four*. The former practice, however, is far less common than the latter. See also BAIN, H. E. Gr., 305, N.

When will you acknowledge that *two and two make four*, and call a pikestaff a pikestaff? THACK., *Snobs*, Ch. XVII.

I help men to carry out their own principles, if they please to say, *two and two make five*, I assent, so they will but go on and say, *four and four make ten*. BROWNING, *Soul's Trag.*, II.

*Two and two are four*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VII, 112.

The ordinary matter-of-fact citizen who believes that *two and two make four*, naturally takes alarm at this prospect. Rev. of Rev., CCXX, 330a.

*8 and 4 make 12*. PENDLEBURY, *Arithmetic*, § 30.

*Two and two are four, and two are six*. Eng. Rev., 1912, July, 582.

It was as though a distinguished mathematician had inadvertently said that *two and two made five* and his audience had afterwards accused him of inconsistency when he said *they were four*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 2a.

Sometimes the idea of unity is symbolized by some word, such as *this*, *that*, *all this (that)*, gathering up the different items of the compound subject. When the bare *all* (not followed by the demonstrative) is used for this purpose, the plural seems to be the rule.

- i. To be the leader of the human race in the career of improvement, to found of ancient intellectual dynasties a more prosperous and more enduring empire, to be revered by the latest generations as the most illustrious of the benefactors of mankind, *all this was* within Bacon's reach. MAC., Bacon, (372a). To think of a story is much harder work than to write it. The author can sit down with the pen in his hand for a given time, and produce a certain number of words. That is comparatively easy, and if he have a conscience in regard to his task, work will be done regularly. But to think it over as you lie in bed, or walk about, or sit cosily over your fire, to turn it all in your thoughts and make things fit — *that requires* elbow-grease of the mind. TROL., Thackeray, Ch. V, 123.

- ii. Everything about him, his coat, his wig, his figure, his face, his scrofula, his St. Vitus's dance, etc., etc., *all are* as familiar to us as the objects by which we have been surrounded from childhood. MAC., Boswell's Life, (178a).

His face, his figure, his mode of speech, his habit of thought, *all were* masculine exceedingly. Rev. of Rev., CXCX, 306.

22. Sometimes the use of the singular seems to be due to the predicate being connected in thought only with that member of the compound subject which stands nearest to it. This is especially the case.

a) when the predicate stands before the subject.

And now *abideth faith, hope, charity*, these three; but the greatest of this is charity. Bible, Cor., A, XIII, 13.

Here comes Bassanio, your most noble kinsman, | *Gratiano, and Lorenzo*. Merch. of Ven., I, 1, 57.

*So doth the Prince of Hell | And his adherents*. MILTON, Par. Lost, X, 621.

Sir, here *hath* been *Peachum*, and his daughter *Polly*. GAY, *Beggar's Opera*, III, 1.  
 Upon this there was a *fearful cry from heaven*, and *great claps of thunder*.  
 WASH. IRVING.<sup>1)</sup>

b) when the members of the subject form a climax.

- i. *My purse, my coffer, and myself* is thine. MARLOWE, *Jew of Malta*, III, 4.<sup>2)</sup>
- ii. *Honour, justice, religion itself, were* derided by these profligate wretches. M'CULLOCH.<sup>3)</sup>

23. The opposite of the principle referred to in 21 often takes effect:

a) when a singular subject is connected with another noun by the preposition *with* having the force of *and*.

- i. *The captain with his men* were saved, BAIN, H. E. Gr., 305.  
*The king with his lords and commons* constitute our government. *Ib.*, 306.  
*Old Sir John with many more* are at the door. ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 22b.  
*Poor Mrs. B.'s crippled baby, with all his many other failures*, were at once forgotten by his patients. JN. HOLLINGSHEAD, *Ways of Life*, 139.<sup>4)</sup>  
 We get a glimpse of the temperament, which is destined to play such havoc when you meet her for the first time, as *she, with other boys and girls*, are amusing themselves child fashion in a garden. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 504, 2c.
- ii. *The empress herself, with her mother Prisca*, was condemned. GIBBON.<sup>1)</sup>

b) when a singular subject is modified by two or more adjuncts connected by *and*, so that actually two or more things are meant. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 176; *id.* Comp., 304; HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, III, 136.

*The logical and the historical analysis of a language* generally in some degree coincide. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 307.  
*The material and mental world* have their points of union. W. J. Fox, *Works*, III, 280.<sup>5)</sup>  
*Ornate and grotesque music* have common faults. ROB. BUCHANAN, *Life of David Gray*, 47.<sup>5)</sup>

The same practice is sometimes erroneously observed when there is no such plurality.

*A moral and honourable mode of action and thought* are enforced as a duty. MAYHEW, *German Life*, II, 95.<sup>6)</sup>  
*An attention to order, neatness and propriety of dress, and manners too*, are perfectly consistent with the engaging virtue of which I am treating. MISS APPLETON, *Early Education*, 139.<sup>6)</sup>  
*His knowledge of French and Italian literature* were far beyond the common. *Life and Let. of F. W. Robertson*, 46.<sup>6)</sup>  
*To be active in the affairs of one's native corporation, and in settling controversies among one's friends there*, are employments of the most laudable kind. MELMOTH, *Pliny*, VII, 15.<sup>7)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> BAIN, H. E. Gr., 304.

<sup>2)</sup> MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 163.

<sup>3)</sup> HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 148.

<sup>4)</sup> MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, II, 160.

<sup>5)</sup> HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, III, 137.

<sup>6)</sup> *Ib.*, 134. <sup>7)</sup> *Ib.*, 140.



24. As contracted sentences cannot always be strictly distinguished from such as have compound elements, they also exhibit a good deal of vacillation as to the choice of number. Leaving out of account the cases when contraction is grammatically inadmissible (Ch. IX, 7), this vacillation naturally becomes manifest only when the subjects of both (all) members of the contracted sentence are singular. The following are the chief points of interest:

a) When the members of the contracted sentence are connected by *as well as*, the singular is much more common than the plural.

i. *Africa, as well as Gaul, was* gradually fashioned by imitation of the capital. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 306.

*The opulence of the monks, as well as the number of them, in the time of Henry II, was enormous.* Ib.

ii. *Your sister, as well as myself, are* greatly obliged to you for the comparison. FIELDING.<sup>1)</sup>

*At least, my family, as well as myself, have* hands. Id., Jos. Andrews, IV, Ch. II, 206.

*The control, as well as the support, which a father exercises over his family, were,* by the dispensation of Providence, withdrawn. REV. W. LEGGATT, Account of Ten Years' Educational Experiment among Destitute Boys, 8.<sup>2)</sup>

b) Usage seems to be equally divided when the union is effected by *nor*, the plural being, however, preferred in the case of the subjects differing in person. It stands to reason that the plural is practically regular when one of the members is plural. For reasons of euphony this plural is placed after the singular. Compare also MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>3)</sup>, § 449 and § 484 (which, by the way are incompatible; ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., § 22.

i. *Neither this nor that is* the thing wanted. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 307.

*Neither John, nor Thomas is* mistaken. MAS.; Eng. Gram.<sup>3)</sup>, § 484.

*I will go where there is neither French nor English, Jew nor Gentile, bond nor free, but all are alike in the eyes of Him who made them.* CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XX, 88a.

*Neither the party nor the nation knows* where it stands, nor what are the proposals put forward by a future Unionist Administration. Westm. Gaz., No. 5430, 1c.

*Neither Russia nor Austria...intends* to make any proposals which will deprive the Allies in any important respect of the fruits of their victory. Ib., No. 6083, 1c.

ii. \* *Nor heaven, nor earth, have* been at peace to-night. Jul. Cæs., II, 2, 1.

*Neither Kent nor Sussex were* among the greatest of the kingdoms which our forefathers found in Britain. FREEMAN.<sup>3)</sup>

*Neither he nor my aunt have* ever said a word about taking me abroad with them. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. XIV, 244.

<sup>1)</sup> MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2)</sup>, II, 161.

<sup>2)</sup> HODGSON, Errors<sup>8</sup>, 141.

<sup>3)</sup> BAIN, H. E. Gr., § 307.

**\*\* Neither my master nor I drink the waters.** SHER., *Rivals*, I, 2 (214).  
*Not thou, | Nor I alone, are injured and abused.* BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, I, 2 (357b).

*Neither you nor I are ever going to say a word about it.* MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Lauderdale*, I, Ch. XV, 281.

*Neither you nor I are to blame.* FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Bankrupt Heart*, II, 226.

*Neither my sister nor I want his money.* CHARLES DANCE, *The Bengal Tiger*.

**\*\*\* Neither John nor his brothers are to blame.**

*Neither the Emperor nor his people desire war.* ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 23.

- c) The singular is the rule when the connecting link is *or*, except when this conjunction is not alternative, i. e. equivalent to *and*, or when the subjects differ in person. In this latter case the plural is preferred, and this is, naturally, the case also when one of the subjects is a plural.

- i. \* *John, James, or Andrew intends to accompany you.* BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 307.  
 It was clear that either *Monmouth or his uncle* was rightful king. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 156.

When *Harris or George* makes an ass of himself on dry land, I smile indulgently. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XVIII, 233.

**\*\* Death, emigration, or personal slavery were the only alternatives.** FREEMAN.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. \* *Life or death, felicity or lasting sorrow, are in the power of marriage.* JER. TAYLOR.<sup>1)</sup>

**\*\* For whatsoever knight against us came | Or I or he have easily overthrown.** TEN., *Balin and Balan*, 34.

**\*\*\* I asked the boy whether he or his parents were acquainted with the Scripture and ever read it.** GEORGE BORROW, *The Bible in Spain*, Ch. I, 11 (*The World's Classics*).

"After all," the average Radical will say, "*either the Commons or the Lords, either plutocracy or democracy, are to govern this country.*" *The Nation* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5329, 16c).

#### CONCORD OF PERSON.

#### 25. Concord of person is exhibited by:

- a) the subject and its finite verb: *I am, thou art, he is*, etc.  
 b) a noun or pronoun and the pronouns referring to it: *I and my friends, he conducted himself with decorum.*

In the following §§ a few special points are touched upon.

#### 26. a) In an attributive clause in which the relative pronoun is the subject, the finite verb conforms to the antecedent.

I have done nothing but in care of thee, | Of thee, my dear one, thee my daughter, | Who *art* ignorant of what thou art. TEMP., I, 1, 18.

Why should I pry into the cares of others, | Who *have* so many sorrows of my own? G. LILLO, *Fatal Curiosity*, III, 1 (318).

<sup>1)</sup> MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, II, 162.

A poor industrious devil like me, who *have* toiled . . . to gain my ends, . . . may in pity be allowed to swear and grumble a little. SHER., RIV., IV, 3, (269). You say this to please me, who *have* no ancestors. LYTTON, Lady of Lyons, II, 1.

I dedicated them (sc. the verses) to you, who *were* my public and my critic. MRS. BROWN., Ded., To my Father.

It would ill become me, who *have* been a humble servant to each of them, to give either any preference. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 50.

- b) But when in the head-sentence the subject or object is a personal pronoun and the antecedent a (pro)noun in the function of nominal part of the predicate, the verb in the attributive clause is often made to conform to the former. ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., § 63*b*.

i. I am . . . a plain blunt man, | That *love* my friend. JUl. Cæs., III, 2, 222. Thou art the God that *doest* wonders. Psalm, LXX, 14.

If thou beest he who *didst* outshine myriads. MILTON, Par. Lost, I, 84.

I am the person that *have* had some demands upon the gentleman of this house. GOLDSM., Good-nat. man, III.

ii. You I take to be a prudent old fellow, who *have* got money to lend. SHER., School for Scand., III, 3 (399).

Note. For further irregularities in Early Modern English see ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 247.

- c) Sometimes we find the person of the finite verb in the adnominal clause depending on a possessive pronoun in the head sentence. (Ch. XXXIX, 6.)

I'm acting for the innocent and good, and not for *my own self*, who *have* done no wrong. MRS. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXIII, 245.

And when I call'd upon *thy* name as one | That *doest* right by gentle and by churl [etc.]. TEN., Last Tourn., 74.

Father, you call me wilful, and the fault | Is *yours* who *let* me have my will. Id., Lanc. and El., 746.

- d) When the antecedent is a vocative, the finite verb is mostly placed in the second person, but the third person is also met with. ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 247.

i. Our Father which *art* in heaven.

Oh Lamb of God: that *takest* away the sins of the world. Book of Common Prayer.

ii. O Lord, that *lendst* me life, | Lend me a heart replete with thankfulness! Henry VI. B, I, 1, 20.

27. When the subject is the personal pronoun *it*, representing a substantive clause (Ch. XV, 6; Ch. XXXIX, 7, 22 ff.), the finite verb is regularly placed in the third person singular, while the verb of the clause mostly conforms in person (and number) with the nominal part of the predicate in the head-sentence, probably owing to the fact that this latter is mistaken for the antecedent of the following relative. (Ch. XXXIX, 23, *b*, 1; 24, *b* Note II; 25.)

This practice is exhibited by the following paradigm:

It is *J* who (that) *am* to blame. It is *we* who (that) *are* to blame.

— *thou* — — *art* — — — *you* — — *are* — —

— *he* — — *is* — — — *they* — — *are* — —

*It is I that absolve* you from an engagement which is impossible in our present misery. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 191.

*It is you who make* dress pretty, and not dress that *makes* you pretty. G. ELIOT, Scenes, I, Ch. III, 3.

- ii. Nay, this time *it is thou who forgets*. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXI, 315. You ask me, Charles, | for I pretend | 'Tis *you that asks* |, to recommend books to beguile the weariness | Of travelling on the Scots Express. P. C. BAINBRIDGE (Westm. Gaz., No. 6005).

The Modern English practice is like the French and may have arisen through French influence. In Old English we find *Ic hit eom* (= I it am) or *Ic eom hit*, which in Middle English became *It am I*. ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., § 25.

Who coude rymen in English proprely | His martirdom? for sothe, *it am not I*. CHAUCER, Cant. Tales, A, 1460.

I am thy mortal fo, and *it am I* | That loveth so hote Emelye the brighte. Ib., 1736.

Traces of the Modern English practice occur, however, in Middle English.

*It is I that dede* him kyller. Coventry Mysteries, 291.1)

*It is not he that slewe* the man, *hit is I*. Gesta Romanorum.1)

28. When persons of distinction are addressed or referred to by the name of a quality preceded by a possessive pronoun, as in *Your* (*His, Her, Their*) *Majesty* (*Lordship, Ladyship, Majesties, Lordships, Ladyships*),

a) the finite verb is placed in the third person singular or plural as the case may be,

b) the pronouns used in the sequel of the discourse agree in number person and gender with that of the possessive pronoun before the name of the quality.

I heard say *your lordship* was sick: I hope *your lordship*, though not clean past *your* youth, hath yet some smack of age in *you*, some relish of the saltness of time; and I most humbly beseech *your lordship* to have a reverent care of *your* health. HENRY IV, B, I, 2, 104—110.

Why looks *your grace* so heavily to-day? RICH. III, I, 4, 1.

Am I really to conceive *your lordship* to be out *your* senses? FIELDING, Tom Jones, VI, Ch. V, 103a.

I should think *your ladyship* condescended a great deal below *yourself*. Id., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. VIII, 18.

His lordship, my kind patron, bade me to come and watch over him, and I am here accordingly, as *your ladyship* knoweth. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXV, 365.

*Your Grace* hath been | More merciful to many a rebel head | That should have fallen, and may rise again. TEN., Queen Mary, V, II, 3.

*Her Majesty* counts much on Fortune, I wish *she* would trust more in Almighty God. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, Sect. III, 373.

Ah! that *your Excellency* but saw the great duel which depends on *you* alone. CH. KINGSLEY, Hypatia, Ch. II, 8a.

If *your Majesty* would condescend to state *your* case, I should be better able to advise you. CONAN DOYLE, Sherl. Holmes, I, 22.

1) KELLNER, Hist. Outl. Eng. Synt., § 80, 280.

H. POUTSMA, A Grammar of Late Modern English. II.



29. a) When the subject consists of a word-group containing *of* or *among* + personal pronoun, the pronouns used to refer to it in the sequel of the discourse mostly depend on that personal pronoun.

*Not one of us . . . will resign our weapon, or quit this hall, unless we are assured at least of our King's safety.* SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXVII, 355.  
*I doubt whether the wisest of us know what our motives are.* THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 330.

There are *few of us* that are not rather ashamed of *our* sins and follies as we look out on the blessed morning sunlight. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. VI, 123.

O purblind race of miserable men | How *many among us* at this very hour Do forge a life-long trouble for *ourselves*. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 3.

Even *those of us* who have the courage to be frank with other people, are seldom plucky enough to be frank with *ourselves*. BEATRICE HARRADEN, *The Fowler*, Ch. IV, 183.

Mind this, if *any of you* say a word against him, *you'll* be dismissed instantly. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXX, 230.

*Few of us* are the worse for not having too sharp an eye to keep on *our* own interests. ASCOTT R. HOPE, *Old Pot*.

I hope *none of us* will fail to do *our* duty in preserving the Constitution. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5167, 4a.

*Many of us* have been using *our* utmost efforts to get this most desirable object carried into effect in this country. *Times*.

The pronouns of the third person are used only by way of exception.

The Lord grant you that ye may find rest *each of you* in the house of *her* husband. Bible, *Ruth*, I, 9.

In commerce and credit we are so much members of one another that it is becoming extremely doubtful whether *any of us* can wage a successful war without inflicting almost as much damage upon *himself* as upon the opponent *he* sets out to destroy. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5376, 1c.

- b) When the subject is followed by a clause of comparison containing a personal pronoun, the latter, apparently, determines the person of the pronouns used in the sequel of the discourse.

"When ladies as young, and good, and beautiful as *you* are," replied the girl steadily, "give away *your* hearts, love will carry *you* all lengths. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XL, 375.

When such as *I . . .* set *our* rotten hearts on any man and let him fill the place that has been a blank through all *our* wretched lives, who can hope to cure *us*? Ib.

30. When pronouns must be used to refer to subjects of different persons, the first person is mostly used when one of the subjects is of the first person, the second when one of the subjects is of the second person and the other(s) of the third person.

*You and I* have *our* duties to perform.

*You and your friends* have manfully fulfilled *your* duties.

It was some time before either *I* or *the captain* seemed to gather *our* senses. STEVENSON, *Treas. Island*, Ch. III, 30.

The rule is, however, apparently often disregarded and the pronoun made to agree with the last member of the compound subject.

Your safety, for the which *myself* and *them* | Bend *their* best studies, heartily request | The enfranchisement of Arthur. King John, IV, 2, 51.

My Lord Mayor, — I do not know how to find words adequately to thank *you* and the members of the Common Council for the honour they have done me. CHAMBERLAIN (Times).

It is all the time what *you* and *your party* think convenient to *themselves*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5173, 5b.

31. a) In the rare case that the members of a compound subject differ in person and the singular form of the finite verb of the predicate seems preferable, the latter agrees as to person with the member that is placed nearest to it. Instances are especially found in Elizabethan writers.

How dost thou and thy master agree? Merch. of Ven., II, 2, 107.

Rosalind lacks then the love | Which teacheth thee that thou and I am one. As you like it, I, 3, 94.

My thoughts and I am for this other element, water. BEN JONSON, Cynthia's Rev., I, 1.

Both death and I | Am found eternal and incorporate both. MILT., Par. Lost, X, 815.

- b) This also applies to contracted sentence with the conjunctions *or* and *nor*.

Either my brother or I am going. ONIONS, Advanced Eng. Synt., § 23. Neither you nor he is in fault. Ib.

Note. Such constructions are, however, mostly avoided. Thus the above quotations would by careful speakers be replaced by:

Either my brother is going, or I am, etc.

32. This is, perhaps, the best place to devote a few words to the pronouns which are found to refer to the indefinite pronoun *one* as an independent word, i. e. when not used as a prop-word after an adnominal word. (Ch. XL, 149 ff; Ch. XLIII.)

- a) When the independent *one* has a meaning similar to that of the French *on*, German *man*, Dutch *men* (Ch. XL, 151), the pronouns now used by careful writers and speakers to refer to it are *one*(*'s*), *oneself*.

I think if *one* has music in *one*, nothing will drive it out. JESSIE FOTHERGILL, Made or Marred.

California is a pleasant country with good people in it. If *one* had to live *one's* life over again, *one* might do worse than make *one's* home there. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. XX, 321.

*One* never realises *one's* blessings while *one* enjoys them. SAKI (Westm. Gaz., No. 6017, 9a).

But in Early Modern English *he* and *him*, and especially *his* and *himself*, were mostly used instead. Altogether *one's* and *oneself* are rather recent formations, the latter not being met with in SHAKESPEARE. Thus in: To know a man well, were to know *himself* (Hamlet, V, 2, 144), *himself* stands for *oneself*.

The same practice has never fallen entirely into disuse, and seems to be especially in favour with American writers. Modern literature also presents not a few instances in which other equivalents of the French *on*, such as *we*, *you*, and *they*, and their corresponding possessive and reflective pronouns, are used to refer to *one*. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 292, § 310, Anm. I; *Id.*, *Eng. Stud.*, XVII; TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, IX; BAIN, *Companion*, 62; *Id.*, *H. E. Gr.*, 32; MURRAY, s. v. *one*, 21; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 46; HODGSON, *Errors*<sup>8</sup>, 155.

- i. The more *one* sickens, the worse at ease *he* is. As you like it, III, 2, 22. HASTINGS. How can you ever expect to marry? — MARLOWE. Never, unless, as among kings and princes, my bride were to be married by proxy. If, indeed, like an eastern bridegroom *one* were introduced to a wife *he* never saw before, it might be endured. GOLDSMITH, *She stoops to Conquer*, II, (180).

When *one* has a bad case to conduct, *he* is very apt to fall into contradictions. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 47.

And then comes the waking, which is as though *one* fell asleep upon *his* beloved's bosom and awoke among thorns and having a crown of thorns about *his* brows. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. X, 174.

Baggage = the collection of property in packages that *one* takes along with *him* on a journey. MURRAY.

*One* has to take the conjunct sale over the whole world before *he* is able to gauge with precision the popularity of an author. Bookman, No. 253, 43b.

- ii. As though *one* went to tea with a woman for the sake of talking about the very same things *you* have been doing all day. Mrs. WARD, *Sir George Tres*, I, Ch. V, 34a.

There are so many things I want to do here and *one* can do nothing if everything is against *you*. *Id.*, *Marcella*, I, 111.

*One* could not help but laugh, however much *you* were annoyed. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, July, 534.

- iii. I grant there is one subject on which it is pleasant to talk on a journey, and that is what *one* shall have for supper when *we* get to *our* inn at night. HAZL., *On going a journey* (PEACOCK, *Sel. Eng. Es.*, 267).

*One* feels *we* are being done in thus paying twice over for the same thing. *Il. Lond. News*.

People may slur their words or clip them so that half the letters are left out, but *one* does not miss them as *we* miss the *h*. *Id.*

- iv. *One* must love *their* friends with all their failings. REV. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. IV, 47.

*One* must be on *their* guard against "bargains" that are worthless. *Id.*, Ch. XII, 128.1)

- b) The independent *one* when it is a kind of determinative (Ch. XL, 152), is regularly referred to by *he*, *him*, *his*, *himself*, or *she*, *her*, *herself*.

Few came to see the last of *one* who had left none to mourn *him*. HALL CAINE, *Christian*, II, 248.

Who would have dared to make a mortal enemy of *one* who might, ere many weeks were past, have the lives and fortunes of the whole court in the hollow of *her* hand. CON. DOYLE, *Refugees*, 121.

1) TEN BRUG. *Taalst.*, IX.

It may be added that, although the ordinary word used in referring to the indefinite *a man* and its synonyms *a body*, *a fellow*, *a person*, when devoid of any determinative force (Ch. XL, 195, *a*, 1) is *he* or a modification of *he*: *his*, *him*, *himself*, the indefinite pronoun *one* or its modification *one's*, *oneself*, is also occasionally met with.

- i. *A man's* religion is the chief fact about *him*. CARLYLE, *Hero Worsh.*, I, 12.
- ii. Do you think it fair that *a man's* whole career should be ruined for a fault done in *one's* boyhood almost? OSCAR WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, II.

The same practice is sometimes observed in connection with plurals when used in an indefinite way.

Divisions in *one's* own ranks are always the hardest things for *politicians* to bear. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 471, 617b.

The indefinite *a man*, etc. when determinative in function (Ch. XL, 195, *a*, 2), are always referred to by *he* etc.

The English can't stand *a man* who is always saying *he* is in the right, but they are very fond of *a man* who admits that *he* has been in the wrong. OSCAR WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, II, 28.

#### CONCORD OF GENDER.

### 33. Concord of gender is exhibited only by the pronouns of the third person singular used in referring to nouns.

In Modern English the gender of a noun is determined by the sex of the person, animal or thing of which it is the name.

A noun is of the masculine (feminine) gender, when it is the name of a male (female) person or animal or of any thing thought of as a male (female) being: *actor*, *actress*.

A noun is of the neuter gender, when it is the name of any thing without sex and not thought of as a living being.

Some nouns are of variable gender. The variability sometimes depends on a difference in meaning or a difference of associations, but is often due to an arbitrariness of usage. Thus *church* is neuter when the building is meant, but mostly feminine when it denotes an organized body. (38, 2,  $\beta$ .) Most names of animals are either masculine or neuter, according to the individual fancy of the speaker or writer.

Names of persons that may denote either male or female individuals are said to be of common gender.

Persons, and especially animals, are sometimes spoken about without their sex being taken into account. In this case the want of a singular pronoun not expressing either sex is a serious inconvenience. Sometimes the neuter pronouns are then put in requisition, sometimes masculine or feminine pronouns, the latter occasionally from a fancied prevalence of masculine or feminine qualities in the animal spoken about. BRADLEY, *The Making of English*, Ch. II, 48.

This inconvenience is also felt when a pronoun must be used to refer to singular (pro) nouns of different gender. (19, *a*, 3.) The following quotation affords a rare instance of the neuter *it* being employed to meet the difficulty:

The juice of it (sc. that flower) on sleeping eye-lids laid | Will make or man or woman madly dote | Upon the next live creature that *it* sees. MIDS., II, 1, 172.



Difference of gender in nouns does not now occasion any difference in their own declension, nor in that of their modifiers, as was the case in Old English, and is still the case in many European languages. The differences of declension which depended on difference of gender, were lost long before the Modern English period. The consequence is that the gender of nouns is now often shown only by the pronouns of the third person singular used in referring to them; or conversely the choice of these pronouns is often the only means to enable us to determine whether the nouns they represent, or are supposed to represent, indicate male or female individuals, or things without sex.

34. From the preceding observations it follows that only when the gender of the noun is not apparent from its meaning, is there any difficulty in the choice of the pronouns, and it is only with such cases that we shall be concerned in the following §§.

The nouns whose gender is not apparent from their meaning naturally fall into three groups: *a)* such as are names of persons, *b)* such as are names of animals, *c)* such as are names of things personified.

35. The names of persons that do not indicate sex are:  
*a)* nouns of common gender,  
*b)* names of creatures of the imagination, or of beings that are but dimly perceived by the senses.

36. *a)* The persons that are indicated by nouns of common gender are but rarely spoken of without their sex being known or more or less distinctly thought of by the speaker. When this is done, they are referred to by the masculine pronouns.

Who is a neighbour, *he* who shows love, or *he* who shows it not? FRENCH, *Parables*.<sup>1)</sup>

Children, however, are often spoken of without their sex being matter of thought. In this case it is the neuter pronouns that are mostly used. It follows then that the pronouns used in referring to such nouns as *baby*, *child* and *infant* are neuter, or either masculine or feminine according as the sex is thought of or no. Sometimes practice is variable in speaking of the same child. Thus THACKERAY in relating the incidents attending the birth and early death of Sam. Titmarsh's first-born, first uses the neuter pronouns, which some lines further on he exchanges for the masculine, while in the concluding sentences of the narrative the neuter pronouns are used throughout. See Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 163—166.

I have given suck and know | How tender 't is to love the babe that milks me: | I would, while *it* was smiling in my face, | Have pluck'd my nipple from his boneless gums, | And dash'd the brains out. Mac b., I, 7, 56.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

And she (sc. Haidée) bent o'er him, and he lay beneath, | Hush'd as the *babe* upon *its* mother's breast. BYRON, *Don Juan*, II, cXLVIII.

During the past week scarcely a night had gone over my couch that had not brought with it a dream of an *infant* . . . dabbling *its* hands in running water. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXI, 268.

In utter amazement, Silas fell on his knees and bent his head low to examine the marvel: it was a sleeping *child* — a round, fair thing with soft, yellow rings all over *its* head. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, Ch. XII, 97. (In the sequel of the tale, when Silas has observed the child more attentively, it is referred to by feminine pronouns.)

She had to pass our door where stood Mrs. Todd and the *baby*. *It* stretched out *its* little arms to her. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. X, 109.

The individual set up from *its* cradle in the corner such a terrific squall that we two young men beat a precipitate retreat. *Ib.*, Ch. X, 105.

ii. The terrible announcement that the *baby* had been taken in the act of putting a doll's frying-pan into *his* mouth. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 53.

iii. And when thou wouldst solace gather, | When our *child's* first accents flow, Wilt thou teach *her* to say "Father!" | Though his care *she* must forego? BYRON, *Fare thee well*, IX.

Seeing that the *child* in his arms had opened *her* eyes, and was looking about *her*, he checked himself to say a word or two of foolish prattle in *her* ear. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, II, 53.

The *child* who was thrown under a train at Birmingham on the 6th instant is progressing as well as can be expected, in spite of the fact that *she* has lost both arms and a leg. *Times*.

In the following quotation Punch makes mock of the uncertainty of the gender of such words as *baby*, *child* and *infant*:

Don't object to my calling the baby "*it*". I didn't know *he* was a *girl*.<sup>1)</sup>

Sometimes when an unknown child is spoken about, or a child is referred to in a generalizing way, the sex is taken for granted.

The attentive sage assured my parents that their first-born would be a great traveller; that *he* would undergo many dangers and difficulties. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. I, 8. The real objection to a child being a Socialist or Anti-Socialist is that *he* is something much better, a child. CHESTERTON, *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3815, 828c.

The use of the neuter pronouns in referring to children when the sex is distinctly thought of, expresses kindly and familiar feelings or good-natured slight. Thus in *Romeo and Juliet* the nurse in speaking of Juliet, her foster-child, uses *it*. This practice seems to be confined to the earlier stages of the language.

'Tis since the earthquake now eleven years: | And she was weaned . . . but as I said, | When *it* did taste the wormwood on the nipple | Of my dug and felt it bitter, [etc.]. *Rom. and Jul.*, I, 3, 30.

And yet I warrant, *it* had upon its brow | A bump as big as a young cockerel's stone. *Ib.*, I, 3, 52.

The neuter pronouns are similarly found in childish language replacing the pronoun of the second person.

ELI. Come to thy grandam, child. CONST. Do, child, go to *it* grandam, child; Give grandam Kingdom, and *it* grandam will | Give *it* a plum, a cherry, and a fig. *King John*, II, 161. (*it* grandam = *its* grandam. See Ch. XXXIII, 6.)

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 98.

In this connection mention may also be made of the occasional use of the neuter pronouns in speaking of grown-up persons, which mostly springs from profound contempt, but may also be prompted by the same feelings as in the case of children. The practice seems to be rare now.

CAP. What, is my daughter gone to Friar Laurence? — NURSE. Ay, forsooth. — CAP. Well, he may chance to do some good on her: | A peevish self-will'd harlotry *it* is. ROM. and JUL., IV, 2, 14.

KING. A blister on his sweet tongue, with my heart, | That put Armada's page out of his part! — BIRON. See where *it* comes! Behaviour, what wert thou Till this madman show'd thee? and what art thou now? LOVE'S LABOUR'S LOST, V, 2, 337.

Here's Wart; you see what a ragged appearance *it* is. HENRY IV, B, III, 2, 279. SUR. I'll win this Lady Margaret. For whom? | Why, for my king: tush, that's a wooden thing! — MAR. He talks of wood: *it* is some carpenter, HENRY VI, A, V, 3, 96.

Cousin Tony promises to give us more of his company at home. Indeed he shan't leave us any more. *It* won't leave us, Cousin Tony, will *it*? GOLDSM., SHE STOOPS, IV, (214).

According to KRUISINGA (A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng., § 353) vulgar English still has the neuter pronouns to express contempt. He quotes:

"Where did ye find *it*?" asked Mord Em'ly of Miss Gilliken, with a satirical accent. — "Who are you calling '*it*'?" demanded Mr. Barden aggressively. "P'r'a'ps you'll kindly call me '*im*' and not '*it*'.

- b) Beings that are but creatures of the imagination, or about whose essence the mind can have formed but a shadowy conception, are often thought of as belonging to no particular sex, with the result that they are referred to by neuter pronouns.

angel. Talk of an *angel* and *its* wings appear. EDNA LYALL, HARDY NORSEMAN, Ch. XIII, 109.

apparition, figure, ghost, phantom, spectre, spirit, etc.

His colour changed though, when, without a pause *it* (sc. the ghost) came on through the heavy door. DICK., CHRISTM. CAR.<sup>5</sup>, 22.

Though he looked the phantom through and through, and saw *it* standing before him [etc.]. IB., 18.

NOTE. The ghost, also called an apparition, phantom, spirit, spectre and vision in the sequel of the narrative, is referred to by the masculine pronouns when recognized as Marley's ghost. With regard to the three other spirits in the tale, which are, of course, much more shadowy than Marley's ghost, the neuter pronouns are used throughout.

figure. In the deep shade, at the farther end of the room, a *figure* ran backwards and forwards. What *it* was, whether beast or human being, one could not, at first sight, tell: *it* grovelled, seemingly on all fours; *it* snatched and growled like some strange wild animal; but *it* was covered with clothing, and a quality of dark grizzled hair, wild as a mane, hid *its* head and face. CH. BRONTË, JANE EYRE, Ch. XXVI, 358.

The street was empty but for a solitary *figure* sitting on a post with *its* legs dangling, its hands in *its* trousers-pockets. DU MAURIER, TRILBY, I, 241.

demon. "Alastor" is the Greek name for a vengeful *dæmon*, driving *its* victims into desert places; and Shelley prompted by Peacock, chose *it* for the title of a poem which describes the Nemesis of solitary souls. SYMONDS, SHELLEY, Ch. IV, 86.

**Heaven.** We ought to be thankful to *Heaven* for *its* mercies. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 3.

*Heaven* does not choose *its* elect from among the great and wealthy. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 48.

**Providence.** Thus we lived several years in a state of much happiness; not but that we sometimes had those little rubs which *Providence* sends to enhance the value of *its* favours. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. I, (237).

Something told her to change her mind and come on Friday instead of Saturday. It was *Providence* she said. — I wish *Providence* would mind *its* own business and not interfere in my affairs. JEROME, *Diary of a Pilgrimage*, 22.

A scholar of the Middle Ages driven to madness by the loss of his manuscript by fire knocked at the church door with his head and called *Providence* to witness that all relations between him and *it* were sundered. "Hear what I say, for I am in earnest and resolved. If by chance at the point of death I should be so weak as to address you, do not pay any attention". *Il. Lond. News*.

The use of the masculine pronouns as in the following quotation seems to be rare:

I think *Providence* knew what *He* was doing when *He* refrained from sending you that child. A. and E. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, Ch. IX, 104.

37. Most names of animals do not indicate sex. Nor are animals often spoken of with their sex taken into account, and it would be only rational to use the neuter pronouns in speaking of creatures that are practically thought of as sexless. This is not, however, by any means the uniform practice. Except for the cases that an animal is spoken of in a generalizing way or as a mere object of zoology, the masculine pronouns are quite as frequently met with in referring to such animals as are represented more or less as man's companions or as familiar realities. They are almost the rule in lively narrative and in poetry. Feminine pronouns are rare, except in talk about a particular cat or parrot, and in the language of sportsmen about a particular hare.

On the other hand in referring to a male or female animal in a generalizing way, sex is sometimes so little matter of the speaker's thoughts that the neuter pronouns are used. See the quotations below, under *cow*, *female*, *hen*.

It stands to reason that when animals are spoken about as the emblems of certain qualities, or when particular qualities are ascribed to them, the masculine or feminine pronouns are used according as these qualities are supposed to be peculiarly masculine or feminine. Compare CONHAM BREWER, *Dict. of Phrase and Fable*, s. v. *animals*.

Finally it must be observed that usage is highly irregular and arbitrary. This will quickly be brought home to any one who takes the trouble of skimming through the pages of an ordinary reading-book where animals are spoken about. STORM, *Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 1018; WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 99–100. For the practice in DEFOE'S *Rob. Crusoe* see LANNERT, *An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus.*, *Accid.* II, B.



**animal.** Every *animal* has *his* proper instincts and inclinations, appetites and habits. WEBST., s. v. *proper*.

**badger.** The *badger* made *his* dark hole on the side of every hill. MAC., Hist.<sup>1)</sup>

**bird.** There is a *bird* who by *his* coat, | And by the hoarseness of *his* note, | Might be supposed a crow. COWPER, Jackdaw, I. (The masculine pronouns are regularly used in the sequel of the poem.)

A *bird* in a cage very little bigger than *himself* makes a mournful rattle now and then in hopping on *his* perch. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 39a.

Not a *bird* of them all was there but liked to have it done to *him*. BLACKMORE, Lorna Loone.

**blackbird.** The *blackbird* trolls *his* notes far away. Il. Magazine.

**bullfinch.** It'll be the death of the little *bullfinch* in the shop, that draws *his* own water. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XLIX, 383a.

**butterfly.** A brilliant *butterfly* fluttered past her, and she said quickly: "I must catch *him*." EDNA LYALL, DONOVAN, I, 135.

**cat.** i. The *cat* looked from one sister to the other blinking; then with a sudden magnificent spring leaped on to Agnes's lap and coiled *herself* up there. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 124.

ii. A *cat's* liking for fish is proverbial, and *its* aversion to water equally so. (?).

**cow.** The *cow* 'moos' to *its* calf.<sup>2)</sup>

**dog.** Meanwhile the older *dog* that was basking in front of Captain Waveney, whether *it* was impatient of this uncertainty on the part of the younger companion, or whether *it* was jealous, managed unobserved to steal forward a foot or two, until *it* suddenly stopped rigid. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. VIII.

**donkey.** They tied a bell to the *donkey's* tail when *it* was charged with two panniers of eggs. MRS. HENRY WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. V, 74.

**elephant.** i. Pliny tells us that an *elephant* having been punished for *his* inaptitude in executing some feat, was observed at night to practise what *he* had vainly attempted during the day. Athen.

ii. The African *elephant* is chiefly hunted for *its* ivory. Cas. Conc. Cyclop.

The Indian *elephant* is distinguished by *its* concave head and *its* small ears. Ib.

**feather-poke.** The *feather-poke* built *his* beautiful little nest there. SWEET, Old Chapel.

**female.** A mammal is an animal of the highest class of vertebrates characterized by the *female* suckling *its* young. WEBST., Dict.

**finch.** There you will hear the distinctive whistle of the *hawfinch*; but, stalk ever so quietly, you will rarely get a glimpse of the handsome bird, for *he* is among the-shyest of birds. Westm. Gaz., No. 6029, 13a.

**fox.** Some few ignoble souls hide themselves behind hedges so that should the *fox* do as *he* is expected, they may have the advantage of a start. TROL., Good Words, 1879 (STOF., Leesb., I, 45). (Thus throughout in this article.)

**goldfinch.** A patriarchal *gold-fish* apparently retains to the last *its* youthful illusion that *it* can swim in a straight line beyond the encircling glass. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. VIII, 65.

**grass-hopper.** That is the *grass-hopper's* (voice) — *he* takes the lead | In summer luxury — *he* has never done | With *his* delights. JOHN KEATS, The Poetry of Earth is never dead, 5.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 83.

<sup>2)</sup> KRUISINGA, A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng., § 356.

The great green *grass-hopper* and *his* family are among the comparatively few insects in which there exists a visible organ for the perception of sound. Leisure l'our.<sup>1)</sup>

**hare.** i. First catch you *hare*, then cook *him*. Prov.

ii. The *hare* is crouching in *her* form. SCOTT, *The Palmer*, V.

The *hare* is running races in *her* mirth; | And with *her* feet *she* from the splashy earth | Raises a mist. WORDSWORTH, *Resolution and Independence*, II.

iii. Here they found the unfortunate girl, seated, or rather couched like a *hare* upon *its* form. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXXIII, 310.

A *hare* was roused by the adjutants in a potato-field. The Minister ran after *it* and brought *it* to the King. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 480, 65b.

**kingfisher.** We have disturbed a *kingfisher* who was watching for *his* prey. *He* has *his* nest in a sandy bank by the side of the pond. II. *Magaz.*

**hen.** A *hen* which had laid *its* thousandth egg.<sup>2)</sup>

**lion.** And dar'st thou then | To beard the *lion* in *his* den, | The Douglas in *his* hall? SCOTT, *Marm.*, VI, xiv.

**mouse.** Between us we caught the *mouse*, and there *he* is in a pail of water. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. College*, Ch. VI, 91.

**nightingale.** The crow doth sing as sweetly as the lark, | When neither is attended, and I think | The *nightingale*, if *she* should sing by day, | When every goose is cackling, would be thought | No better a musician than the wren. Merch. of Ven., V, 1, 103. (A writer in *Notes and Queries* 1891, 285a observes: "It is not often that we catch Shakespeare tripping as a field-naturalist; but he has fallen into one or two popular errors concerning the nightingale. The first is that the female bird is the songster, and her song is one of sorrow. Whereas the singer is the male bird, and the song is a buoyantly exulting as that of the lark.")

**parrot.** A *parrot*, from the Spanish main, | . . . came o'er, | . . . to the bleak domain | Of Mulla's shore. | To spicy groves where he had won | *His* plumage of resplendent hue, . . . He bade adieu. CAMPBELL, *The Parrot*. (Thus throughout the poem.)

**pelican.** Ask of the bleeding *pelican* why she | Hath ripp'd *her* bosom. Had the bird a voice, | *She'd* tell thee 'twas for all *her* little ones. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, I, 2, (357a).

The *Pelican*, tearing up *her* breast to feed her young with her own blood was an early symbol of our redemption through Christ. Mrs. JAMESON.<sup>3)</sup>

**pig.** In his devouring mind's eye he pictured to himself every roasting-pig running about with a pudding in *his* belly. WASH. Irv., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 351.

**robin.** Cheerily the *robin* sings to *his* mate who is sitting on five eggs in a nest-box in the apple-tree. II. *Magaz.*

**sheep.** Even a *sheep* will face about a little when *she* has lambs. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VI, 34.

**spider, fly.** That is how the *spider* waits for the *fly*. The *spider* spins *her* web. And if the *fly* shows a strength that promises to extricate *him* how swiftly does *she* abandon *her* pretence of passiveness, and openly fling coil after coil about *him* until *he* is secured for ever. M. CH. BRABY.<sup>4)</sup> Compare. It has never struck me that the *spider* is invariably *male* and the *fly* invariable *female*. Per.<sup>4)</sup>

**stag.** When the *stag* cries, *he* is said to bell. GOLDSMITH, *Nat. Hist.*<sup>5)</sup>

The *stag* at eve had drunk *his* fill. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, 1.

1) FOELS-KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 83.

2) KRUISINGA, *A Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 356.

3) MURRAY. 4) WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 100.

5) MURRAY, s. v. *bell*.

**stickleback.** The first *stickleback* was a splendid fellow, with fabulous red and blue gills. Tom kept *him* in a small basin till the day of *his* death. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. II, 24.

**stock-dove.** Over *his* own sweet voice the *stock-dove* broods. WORDSWORTH, *Resolution and Independence*, I.

**tortoise.** When the United States puts a navy on the high seas, it is like a *tortoise* which puts *its* head out of *its* shell. Rev. of Rev., CCXVII, 9b.

**turkey.** It was a *Turkey!* *He* never could have stood upon *his* legs, that bird. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, V. 106.

**wren.** The *wren* comes forth from the garden hedge and sings *his* shrill little morning song. II. Magaz.

The following short extracts in which two or more animals are spoken of, may be taken as fairly exhibiting ordinary practice:

We heard *his dog* barking loudly, and ran to the place as quick as we could, and saw *him* with a long *snake* in *his* mouth, and shaking *it* furiously, while *it* writhed in *his* jaws and sent out a most pungent and venomous smell. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

The next moment we again heard *the dog* bark, and when we came up to *him*, we found *him* with a prickly ball, nearly as big as one of our heads, rolling *it* about —. Ned was delighted, and cried out, 'A *hedgehog*, a *hedgehog*!' Then he said, "Shall my dog kill *it*? It isn't every day that can kill a *hedgehog*. Mine can: let *him* alone a minute, and you'll soon see. Ib.

If *pussy* lives to be old, *she* is usually allowed to expire with peace and honour on the parlour hearth-rug. Much the same may be said of the *dog*, except that *his* end, when he grows mangy and snappish, is sometimes hastened with prussic acid. With the *horse* it is far otherwise. *His* career is almost always one of constant deterioration, and if *he* could only see in the future (which we hope *he* cannot), *he* would be the most miserable of animated beings. Graphic.

Sometimes the pronouns used in referring to a given animal are varied.

We have scotch'd the *snake*, not kill'd *it*: | *She* 'll close, and be *herself*; whilst our poor malice | Remains in danger of *her* former tooth. Macb., III, 2, 13.

In proportion to *its* size the strength of the *mountain cat* is prodigious, and though *he* is not a fast animal, *his* agility in climbing is astonishing.<sup>1)</sup>

Some little mice sat in a barn to spin; | *Pussy* came by, and *she* popped *her* head in; | "Shall I come in, and cut jour threads off?" | "Oh! no, kind *sir*, you will snap our heads off." GÜNTH., *Leerb.*, I, 55.

*This dog* had been sucked and reared by a cat, having lost *its* own mother. *He* always showed the cat-like dread of wet feet. LEIS. Hour.<sup>2)</sup>

The strength of the *lion* is such that he can carry off a heifer as a cat carries a rat .. *It* was anciently much more common in Asia .. If compelled to defend *himself* *he* manifests great courage .. *It* has a horror of fires and torch-lights .. The mane is not fully developed till *he* is six or seven years old. Chamb. Encycl.<sup>3)</sup>

38. As to personification of inanimate objects we must distinguish between such as is usual in ordinary literary language, such as is confined to the higher flights of poetry, and such as is only met

1) SATTLER. 2) FOELS-KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 83.

3) WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 99.

with in homely style, in dialects and in the vernacular of particular trades or professions. STORM, Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 1017.

a) In ordinary literary language we often find:

1) the masculine pronouns in referring to the sun.

i. *The sun* was shining in all *his* splendid beauty, but the light only seemed to show the boy his own lonesomeness. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. VIII, 20a. *The sun's* diameter is 111 $\frac{1}{2}$  times that of the earth. *His* density or compactness is about one quarter of that of the earth. YOUNG, Arithmetic. *The sun's* mean distance from the earth is about 93 millions of miles. *His* diameter is about 865000 miles and *his* mass is 330000 times as great as that of the earth. CAS. CONC. CYCLOP.

ii. *The sun* performs one revolution about *its* own axis in about 25 days, 9 hours and 56 minutes. YOUNG, Arithmetic.

2) the feminine pronouns in referring to:

a) the earth and the moon.

**earth.** i. The moon is the name given to the satellite by which *our earth* is attended in *her* usual course round the sun. CAS. CONC. CYCLOP.

ii. *The earth* revolves on *its* axis in 23 hours, 56 minutes and 4 seconds. YOUNG, Arithmetic.

*It* travels in space in the same manner as the other members of the solar system. CAS. CONC. CYCLOP.

**moon.** i. Soon *it* (sc. the east) would boast *the moon*; but *she* was yet beneath the horizon. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXIII, 302.

*The moon's* diameter is 2160 English miles, *her* mean distance from the earth 237519, and *her* magnitude  $\frac{1}{49}$ th of that of the earth. YOUNG, Arithmetic.

The clouds were driving over *the moon* at their giddiest speed: at one time wholly obscuring *her*; at another suffering *her* to burst forth in full splendour and shed *her* light on all the objects around: anon driving over *her* again with increased velocity and shrouding everything in darkness. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XLIX, 448.

Eclipses of *the moon* can only occur at *her* full. CAS. CONC. CYCLOP., s. v. *eclipse*.

ii. *The moon* is the name given to the satellite by which our earth is attended in *her* usual course round the sun. *Its* large size is entirely due to *its* proximity to us. CAS. CONC. CYCLOP.

See *the bright moon*! High up before we know it: making the earth reflect the objects on *its* breast like water. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXVI, 285a.

β) certain social or political institutions, considered as organized bodies, especially the Church and the University, and states.

**church.** i. The *Church* of Rome actually regained nearly half of what *she* had lost. MAC., Popes, (541a).

Many quitted the Established *Church* only because they thought *her* in danger. ID., Hal., (56a).

While the sins of the *Church*, however heinous, were still such as admit of being expressed in words, the sins of the heathen world against which *she* fought, were utterly indescribable. CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp., Pref., 1a.

You have said yourself that you are the eldest son of the *Church*. If the eldest son desert *her*, then who will do *her* bidding? CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 222.

The *Church* has brought all *her* tribulations upon *herself*. Rev. of Rev., CCVI, 127b.



- ii. Against this vast organisation *the Church* had been fighting for now four hundred years, armed only with *its* own mighty and all-embracing message. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Pref., 1b.

Henry was the Head of *the Church*. From the primate to the meanest deacon every minister of *it* derived from him his sole right to exercise spiritual powers. The voice of *its* preachers were the echo of his will. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 1, 349

The *Church*, however, we may be sure, will shortly accommodate *itself* to the new situation. Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 220a.

Note. The collective notion dimly implied in *church* is responsible for the plural construction in:

The *Church* have no power to inflict corporal punishments. BAIN, H. E. Gr., 301.

University. i. A process of purification was going on rapidly in *the University*; and I must alter my words if I meant to give the working man a just picture of *her*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alt. Locke*, Pref., 90.

We cannot regret that *the University of Oxford* has taken the time to consider the advantages and disadvantages of making so great a change in the scope of *her* studies. Times.

It is not the least achievement of *the University* that *she* does somehow or other manage to impress a certain stamp on so many different kinds of metal. A. D. GODLEY, *Aspects of Mod. Oxf.*, Ch. II, 47.

- ii. We may then expect to see women as well as men in the birthday honours list, or even among those upon whom an ancient *University* deigns to confer *its* degrees. Rev. of Rev., CCXI, 15a.

Oxford gave him *its* D. C. L. in 1839. SAINTSBURY, *Nineteenth Cent.*, Ch. II, 51.

states. i. Though *England* was even then the first of maritime powers, *she* was not, as *she* had since become, more than a match for all the nations of the world together. MAC., *C11ve*, (500b).

He was only twenty-seven, yet *his country* already respected him as one of *her* first soldiers. Ib.

Under the system of free trade *England* opened *her* ports to the goods and manufactures of all the world. ESCOTT, *England*. Ch. VIII, 114.

*Austria* had been exerting *herself* . . . in the interests of peace, and after the fall of Sebastopol *she* made a new effort with great success. M'CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 159.

On the 25th of September 1792 *France* was declared to be a republic. On the 22nd of September *she* has practically to say whether *she* will remain a republic still. Graphic.

*England* was made by *her* adventurers. Inscription on Greenwich Hospital. I have sometimes thought that if the Cabinets were all dismissed and an admiral installed in the place of each, *Europe* would get on better than *she* does now. Times.

*England* is a huge fortress with a great wet ditch and like any other fortress *she* may be forced to surrender. Academy.

- ii. In Pitt's eyes the danger of *Ireland* lay above all in the misery of *its* people. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, § IV, 814.

For a matter of three years the prospect was that *the United States* would henceforth feed Europe cheaper than *it* would feed *itself*. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VIII, 116.

Like the other self-governing colonies of the British Empire, *the Dominion of Canada* is already virtually independent in all respects but one. *It* cannot make treaties with foreign powers without the consent of the Imperial Government but if this veto were to be withdrawn the bond of Union between the Mother Country and *its* offspring across the Atlantic would be one of a purely nominal character. Graphic.

In spite of official civilities and individual friendships *the Great Republic of the West* has no love for the British Empire. In accordance with Monroe-doctrine traditions *its* citizens deplore the fact that the British flag should wave over such a large portion of the American continent. *Ib.*

An abominable campaign of insult and calumny has been kept up for years past by the Jingo-Unionist Press against *Germany* and *its* Kaiser. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCV, 117a.

We desire to maintain *the Chinese empire* to prevent *its* falling into ruins. *Times*. The Emperor expressed his belief that *the German Empire* would show more than sufficient patriotism, if *it* were called upon to assume those further burdens which must be borne for the sake of the honour and the security of the Fatherland. *Graph*.

That is an outcome of the recent crisis upon which *Europe* has every reason to congratulate *itself*. *Westm. Gaz.*

Compare the following quotations in which geographical areas rather than political bodies are referred to:

*Holland* is a conquest by man over the sea, *it* is an artificial country; the Hollanders made *it*, *it* exists because the Hollanders preserve *it*; *it* will vanish whenever the Hollanders shall abandon *it*. *Lit. World*.

The new and revised edition of "*Holland and its people*", translated by Miss Caroline Filton from the Italian of Signor Edmondo de Amicis, appears in an attractive form. *Ib.*

The use of the masculine pronoun in the following quotation is probably due to the name of the country denoting its ruler:

Such news might create a panic at Vienna, and cause Russia to drop *his* cards. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

γ) **ships.** The use of the feminine pronouns originated with the language of seafaring men, and has now become universal and, except, perhaps, for smaller craft, is now almost regular.

i. It is impossible not to personify *a ship*; everybody does, in everything they say — *she* behaves well; *she* minds her rudder, *she* swims like a duck; *she* runs *her* nose into the water; *she* looks into a port. *EMERSON*, *English Traits*, *Voyage to England*, 81b.

The *Calypso* has been duly fitted out by the Admiralty and is now ready to proceed to *her* station. *Times*.

ii. Our *steamer* slackened speed and presently a little boat put out from the shore. *Its* only passengers were a woman and a child. *Il. Mag.* The *wherry* held *its* course. *Lit. World*.

The *boat* was attacked by a constant fire from both banks as *it* drifted along. *MCCARTHY*, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 188.

A curious instance of inconsistency is afforded by the following lines:

One summer evening I found | A little *boat* tied to a willow tree | Within a rocky cave, *its* usual home. | Straight I unloosed *her* chain, and stepping in Pushed from the shore. *WORDSWORTH*, *Prel.*, I, 357—362.

δ) In the higher literary style, especially in poetry, personification is not, of course, confined to any particular object. It is even extended to conceptions that are mere products of our imagination or reasoning faculties.

It is hardly necessary to observe that the assigning of either sex is largely dependent on the individual fancies of writers or speakers. Yet as a general rule we find that:

- 1) winds; mountains, rivers, the ocean; the seasons, Time, Day, Morn; Fear, Anger, Discord, Despair; War, Murder, Law, etc. are mostly spoken of as male persons.
- 2) cities; Nature; the Soul; Night, Darkness; arts and sciences; Liberty, Charity, Victory, Mercy, Religion, etc. are mostly spoken of as female persons.

i. **death.** And *Death*, whenever *he* comes to me, | Shall come on the wild unbounded Sea! BARRY CORNWALL, *The Sea*, IV, (*Rainbow*, I, 20).

*Death* relaxed *his* iron features. LONGFELLOW, *The Norman Baron*, VII.  
Compare however: Lo, in the vale of years beneath | A griesly troop are seen, | The painful family of *Death*, | More hideous than their *Queen*. GRAY, *Ode Eton College*, IX.

**law.** *Law* is full of absurdities. When once *he* gets the whip-end, he drives us in strange ways. HUGH CONWAY, *Called Back*, 64.

**love.** And *love*, as *he* is wont, came in the wake of fortune. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 93.

*Love himself* stood at the gates with sympathetic face. WALT. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, 66.

**mountains.** And, like a glory, the broad sun | Hangs over sainted *Lebanon*, Whose head in wintry grandeur towers, | And whitens with eternal sleet, | While Summer, in a vale of flowers, | Is sleeping rosy at *his* feet. TH. MOORE, *Paradise and the Peri*.

**pot.** The earthenware *pot* cannot become a brass pot whatever *he* may pretend. W. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, 13.

**rivers.** The *river* glideth at *his* own sweet will. WORDSWORTH, *Sonnet Composed upon Westminster Bridge*, 12.

But in scarce longer time | Than at Caerleon the full-tided Usk, | Before *he* turn to fall seaward again, | Pauses, did Enid . . . behold | . . . Three other horsemen waiting. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 117. (Compare: Say, *father Thames*, etc. GRAY, *Ode Eton Col.*, 21).

**time.** *Time* rolls *his* ceaseless course. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, 1.

On the brow of *Dombey Time* and *his* brother *Care* had set some marks as on a tree that was to come down in good time. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. I, 1.

So does *Time* ruthlessly destroy *his* own romances. HARDY, *Tess*, VI, Ch. XLIX, 443.

**trees.** Even the *oak* | Thrives by the rude concussion of the storm: | *He* seems indignant, and to feel | The impression of the blast with proud disdain, | Frowning as if in *his* unconscious arm | *He* held the thunder. COWPER, *Task*, 228.

The poplars yonder rustle that their quivering leaves may see themselves upon the ground. Not so the *oak*; trembling does not become *him*; and *he* watches *himself* in *his* stout old burly steadfastness, without the motion of a twig. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXVI, 285*b*.

ii. **commerce.** Commerce on other shores displayed *her* sail. GOLDSMITH, *Traveller*, 140.

**freedom.** Mine shall be the first voice to swell the battle-cry of *freedom* — mine the first hand to rear *her* banner. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 41.

**labour.** Light labour spreads *her* wholesome store. GOLDSMITH, *Des. Vil.*, 59.  
**liberty.** Although strange things are done in the name of *Liberty*, *she* is still very much esteemed by those who have lost her. II. Lond. News.

**mountains.** Handsome masses of cumulus hang over and hide the caps of *Snowdon* and *her* neighbouring peaks. Westm. Gaz., No. 6171.



**nature.** Nature hath fram'd strange fellows in *her* time. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 1, 51.  
The love of *nature* and the scenes *she* draws, is Nature's dictate. *Cowper*,  
*Task*, 228.

The sight of *Nature*, in *her* magnificence, or in *her* beauty, or in *her* terrors,  
has at all times an overpowering interest. *Scott*, *Pirate*, Ch. VII, 81.

The subtle lawyer (was) accustomed by habit and profession to trace *human*  
*nature* through all *her* windings. *Id.*, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XIX, 195.

Not only were times bad and produce overcheap, but even *Nature herself*  
seemed to have gone against them, as shown by the last inclement season.  
*Manchester Guardian*.

(They) exemplify some touches of *Dame Nature* in *her* work of animal develop-  
ment. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3814, 795c. (*Dame Nature* == Dutch *Moeder*  
*Natuur*.)

**remembrance.** *Remembrance* wakes with all *her* busy train. *GOLDSMITH*,  
*Des. Vil.*, 81.

**rivers.** Tiber trembled beneath *her* banks. *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 1, 50.

**sciences.** "History has fared ill in many hands", writes the duke of Argyle. "But  
in no hands has *she* ever fared worse than in those of party leaders. When  
they engage *her* as their maid-of-all-work, *she* sinks to the level of a slattern."  
*Lit. World*.

*Science* is not to be trifled with. *She* demands all or nothing. *MAX PEMBERTON*,  
*Doct. Xavier*, Ch. V, 25b.

**sea.** I never was on the dull, tame shore, | But I loved the great *sea* more  
and more, | And backwards flew to *her* billowy breast, | Like a bird that seeketh  
its mother's nest. *BARRY CORNWALL*, *The Sea* (*Rainbow*, I, 20).

**towns.** *Troy* in our weakness stands; not in *her* strength. *Troilus and*  
*Cressida*, I, 3, 137.

I lived and toil'd a soldier and a servant | Of Venice and *her* people. *BYRON*,  
*Mar. Fal.*, I, 2, (357a).

*Rome* waits but the occasion to rise simultaneously against *her* oppressors.  
*LYTTON*, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 42.

*Rotterdam* is the most enterprising of Dutch cities, and *she* bids fair by *her*  
more aggressive policy to rival *her* elder and wealthier sister Amsterdam. *Lit.*  
*World*.

A few examples will suffice to show that the above and similar  
things, although personified, may also be referred to by neuter  
pronouns.

**age.** I questioned *age* (sc. What was life); *it* heaved a heavy sigh, | Expressing  
volumes. *ANON.*, *What is Life?* (*Rainbow*, I, 20.)

**law.** Hard it is upon the part of the *law* that *it* should be so confoundedly  
down upon us unfortunate victims. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVII, 227a.

**nature.** Spontaneous joys where *Nature* has *its* play. *GOLDSMITH*, *Des.*  
*Vil.*, 255.

**reason.** *Reason* still keeps *its* throne, but *it* nods a little, that's all. *G. FARQUHAR*,  
*The Recruiting Officer*, III, 2, (295).

**virtue.** *Virtue* makes the mind invincible. *It* places us beyond the power of  
Fortune, though not beyond her malice, which that Goddess sometimes seems  
to show. *W. BESANT*, *Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XV, 53.

- c) In homely style, often affected in poetry, in dialects and in the ver-  
nacular of particular trades or professions inanimate objects often have  
sex ascribed to them, with a decided prevalence of the female sex.  
Thus *THOMAS RUSSELL* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4983, 13) observes: "Have



"you remarked that to every craftsman his instrument is feminine? The "sailor's ship, the soldier's gun, the driver's car are all she".

- i. **book.** "You are provided with the needful implement — a *book*, sir?" — "Bought *him* at a sale", said Mr. Boffin. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend.*<sup>1)</sup>

**Excalibur.** Take *Excalibur*, | And fling *him* far into the middle mere. TEN., *Pas. of Arthur*, 204. (Thus throughout the poem.)

**pillar-box.** A brand-new *pillar-box* stood before me. It shone in the sun-light. "Isn't *he* a dear?" said Felicity. "Look at *his* mouth. I think *he* has the darlingest expression." *Punch*, No. 3651, 498*b*.

**pudding.** There was four of 'em, for I reckoned 'em up when I had 'em, meat one, beer two, vegetables three, and which was four? — why *pudding*, *he* was four. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend.*<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. **bath.** "It's (sc. the rubber bath) not watertight". I said bluntly — I am blunt sometimes. "Oo ay", said *he* (sc. the Scotchman). "*She's* pairfitly watertight". *Punch*, No. 3651, 408*c*.

**coach.** He ascertained from the boots and ostler that *the Tally-ho* was a tip-top goer, ten miles an hour including stoppages, and so punctual that all the road set their clocks by *her*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 66.

"All right", was the reply. "Off *she* goes!" And off *she* did go — if coaches be feminine, amidst a loud flourish from the guard's horn. DICK., *Nich. Nickle*, Ch. V, 26*b*.

**fiddle.** My *fiddle* sounds the music — *She's* more wit than I have. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 9.

**fowling-piece.** Before I leave this place, I'll give you my *fowling-piece*; *she* will put a hundred swan-shot through a Dutchman's cap at eighty paces. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. VIII, 97.

**kettle.** Mr. Venus . . . adjusting the *kettle* on the fire, remarked to himself: "*She'll* bile in a couple of minutes." DICK., *Our Mut. Friend.*<sup>1)</sup>

**party.** THE NEW MAN. — William Harcourt (who has left the situation). "Well, 'Enry Bannerman, so you've took the place, 'ave you? I wish you joy! *She* used to be a liberal old *party*, but now *she's* that contrary there's no living with *her*." *Punch*, 1899.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

### SEX DENOTED BY NOUNS.

1. The names of live beings may be divided into:
  - a) such as indicate sex,
  - b) such as do not indicate sex.
2. The first group contains:
  - a) pairs of words indicating either the male or the female sex, which may be divided into:
    - 1) such as are not, or only remotely, etymologically related: *king, queen; father, mother.*
    - 2) such as are etymologically related: *murderer, murderess; actor, actress.*
  - b) words that have no companion-word to denote the individual of the opposite sex: *carpenter, nurse.*
3. The pairs of words that are not, or only remotely, etymologically related include:
  - a) names of persons, e. g.:

<i>boy (lad)</i>	— <i>girl (lass)</i>	<i>sir</i>	— <i>madam</i>
<i>brother</i>	— <i>sister</i>	<i>sire</i>	— <i>dame, dam</i>
<i>father</i>	— <i>mother</i>	<i>sloven</i>	— <i>slut, slattern</i>
<i>husband</i>	— <i>wife</i>	<i>son</i>	— <i>daughter</i>
<i>king</i>	— <i>queen</i>	<i>swain</i>	— <i>nymph</i>
<i>monk (friar)</i>	— <i>nun</i>	<i>uncle</i>	— <i>aunt</i>
<i>nephew</i>	— <i>niece</i>	<i>wizard</i>	— <i>witch.</i>
<i>papa</i>	— <i>mamma</i>		

The years revolves, and I again explore | The simple Annals of my Parish  
poor; | What Infant-members in my flock appear, | What pairs I bless'd in  
the departed year; | And who, of Old or Young, or *Nymphs* or *Swains*,  
Are lost to Life, its pleasures and its pains. CRABBE, *Parish Reg.*, 8.  
I have reared him as became a youth of gentle blood; for on both sides,  
lady, he is noble, though an orphan, *motherless* and *sireless*. LYTTON,  
*Rienzi*, IV, Ch. I, 155.

## b) name of animals, e. g.:

<i>boar</i>	— <i>sow</i>	<i>colt</i>	— <i>filly</i>
<i>buck</i>	— <i>doe</i>	<i>hart</i>	— <i>roe (hind)</i>
<i>bull</i>	— <i>cow</i>	<i>milter</i>	— <i>spawner</i>
<i>bullock (steer)</i>	— <i>heifer</i>	<i>ram (wether)</i>	— <i>ewe</i>
<i>cock</i>	— <i>hen</i>	<i>stallion</i>	— <i>mare.</i>

4. As to words that are etymologically related, we find that in almost every case the name denoting the individual of the female sex is a derivative of the name denoting the individual of the male sex. The chief suffix by which this derivation is effected is *ess*, which is attached:

## a) to the unmodified base, for instance in:

<i>authoress</i>	from <i>author</i>	<i>patroness</i>	from <i>patron</i>
<i>baroness</i>	„ <i>baron</i>	<i>priestess</i>	„ <i>priest</i>
<i>countess</i>	„ <i>count</i>	<i>quakeress</i>	„ <i>quaker</i>
<i>heiress</i>	„ <i>heir</i>	<i>seeress</i>	„ <i>seer</i>
<i>jewess</i>	„ <i>jew</i>	<i>shepherdess</i>	„ <i>shepherd</i>
<i>manageress</i>	„ <i>manager</i>	<i>tutoress</i>	„ <i>tutor.</i>

Here we may mention also such words as *goddess* from *god*, *princess* from *prince*.

## b) to the modified base, for instance in:

<i>actress</i>	from <i>actor</i>	<i>inheritress</i>	from <i>inheritor</i>
<i>adulteress</i>	„ <i>adulterer</i>	<i>instructress</i>	„ <i>instructor</i>
<i>adventuress</i>	„ <i>adventurer</i>	<i>laundress</i>	„ <i>launderer</i>
<i>ancestress</i>	„ <i>ancestor</i>	<i>monitress</i>	„ <i>monitor</i>
<i>arbitress</i>	„ <i>arbiter</i>	<i>murderess</i>	„ <i>murderer</i>
<i>conductress</i>	„ <i>conductor</i>	<i>negress</i>	„ <i>negro</i>
<i>directress</i>	„ <i>director</i>	<i>portress (also</i>	
<i>doctress</i>	„ <i>doctor</i>	<i>porteress)</i>	„ <i>porter</i>
<i>electress</i>	„ <i>elector</i>	<i>sculptress</i>	„ <i>sculptor</i>
<i>empress</i>	„ <i>emperor</i>	<i>sorceress</i>	„ <i>sorcerer</i>
<i>enchantress</i>	„ <i>enchanter</i>	<i>traitress</i>	„ <i>traitor</i>
<i>foundress</i>	„ <i>founder</i>	<i>translatress</i>	„ <i>translator</i>
<i>governess</i>	„ <i>governor</i>	<i>votaress</i>	„ <i>votary</i>
<i>huntress</i>	„ <i>hunter</i>	<i>waitress</i>	„ <i>waiter.</i>

**actress.** She is the finest *actress* in the world. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 57. Good heavens, what an *actress* this woman is! Miss BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secret*, II, Ch. III, 43.

**ambassadress.** Miss Crawley could not wait for the tardy operations of her *ambassadress*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XV, 150.

**ancestress.** That portrait was an *ancestress* of mine. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 10.

I often wonder whether my *ancestress*, Fenella Stanley, had any traditional knowledge of the Queen of Death. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, IX, Ch. II, 274.

**arbitress.** With that he (sc. Arthur) turned his head aside, | Nor brooked to gaze upon, her pride, | As, with the truncheon raised, she sate | The *arbitress* of mortal fate. SCOTT, *The Bridal of Triermain*, II, xxii.

**authoress.** There are naturally many names that we look for in vain in any list of living *authoresses*. Lit. World.

He dared not talk to her of her books, for he did not even know the names of them; but he let her understand that he knew she was an *authoress*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XXI.

**benefactress.** This great *benefactress* was buried at Hughendon and lies in the same vault containing the remains of the famous author and statesmen. Lit. World.

**conductress.** As a *conductress* of Indian schools, and a helper amongst Indian women, your assistance will be to me invaluable. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXII, 451.

**directress.** Not a soul in Madame Beck's house, from the scullion to the *directress* herself, but was above being ashamed of a lie. Id., *Villette*, Ch. IX, 99.

**doctress.** My mother herself is something of a *doctress*. Id., Ch. XVI, 217. The woman holds the position of village *doctress* and nurse. Mrs. GASKELL, *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 122.

**editress.** Miss van Norden who acted for some years as *editress* of the 'Deliverer' at the Army Headquarters. Rev. of Rev., CCI, 239a.

**enchantress.** The lady is rather unhappy and applies to a sort of *enchantress*. JEFFREY, *Thomas Moore*.

**giantess.** Not that she was a *giantess*, by any means. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, I, 167, (T.)

**huntress.** Beyond the outmost wall she stood, | Attired like *huntress* of the wood. SCOTT, *Bridal of Triermain*, II, ix.

**inheritress.** She was Marcella Boyce... the *inheritress* of one of the most ancient names in Midland England. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 10.

**instructress.** She was received by the surgeon as the *instructress* of his daughter. Miss BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secret*, I, Ch. I, 7. He did not find this a disagreeable task, especially when he had so fair an *instructress* as Bessie. RIDER HAGGARD, *Jess*, Ch. IV, 29.

**manageress.** The counter of the confectioner's shop is presided over by an alert and short-tempered *manageress*. PUNCH.

**mistress.** She was too far gone to resist, and when she was *mistress* of herself again, she found herself in the library with some water in her hand. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, III, 243.

**monitress.** Let me to-morrow, in the face of Heaven, receive my future guide and *monitress*. Riv., V, 1, (271).

**patroness.** Institutions, of which, in life, she was the munificent *patroness*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. IV, 38.

**poetess.** Fel. Dor. Hemans ranks high among English *poetesses*. COURTH. BOWEN, *Stud. in Eng.*, 11.

The tradition of a more direct self-disclosure than is common among later poets, has been continued without visible break by the *poetesses*. Academy.

**portress.** Henceforth on Rosine, the *portress*, devolved that duty. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. VIII, 85.

**prophetess.** Even Miss Pole herself, whom we looked upon as a kind of *prophetess*, was breathless with astonishment. Mrs. GASKELL, *Cranf.*, Ch. XII, 224.



**protectress.** Oliver . . . was led into the room by his benevolent *protectress*. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 26.

**Quakeress.** I pass over the stories of his juvenile loves — of Hanna Lightfoot, the *Quakeress*, to whom they say he (sc. George III) was actually married. THACK., *The Four Georges*, Ch. III, 72.

**sculptress.** The *sculptress* died in June last. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXV, 511a.

**seeress.** Fenella Stanley seems in her later life to have set up as a *seeress*. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 34.

The painter had evidently seized the moment when Fenella's eyes expressed that look of the *seeress* which Sinfi's eyes, on occasion, so powerfully expressed. *Id.*, VII, Ch. III, 256.

**traitress.** And so did you, *traitress*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. V, 38a.

**tutoress.** Love was Miss Amelia's last *tutoress*, and it was amazing what progress our young lady made under that popular teacher. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 119.

**visitress.** "You are come at last", said the meagre man, gazing on his *visitress* with hollow eyes. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, II, Ch. XVI, 327.

Keenly, I fear, did the eye of the *visitress* pierce the young pastor's heart. *Id.*, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXII, 451.

**waitress.** A couple of *waitresses* are endeavouring, with but indifferent success, to satisfy every one at once. *Punch*.

5. Obs. I. The suffix is not used to form feminine names of animals, *lioness* and *tigress* being adoptions from the Old French lion(n)esse, tigresse. MURRAY, s. v. *ess*; BRADLEY, *The Making of Eng.*, Ch. II, 58.

*Pantheress* is, however instanced by no fewer than four quotations in MURRAY. We copy one:

Mary Stuart . . . was something between Rachel and a *pantheress*. FROUDE.

- II. *Abbess* (masc. *abbot*), *duchess* (masc. *duke*), *marchioness* (masc. *marquess* or *marquis*), are anglicized foreign feminines.

*Mistress* is a modification of the Old French *maistresse*.

- III. The suffix *ess* came into English from the French. At one time, especially in the 16th century, derivatives in *ess* were formed very freely. Many of these are now obsolete or little used. In the present stage of the language the process may be said to have become extinct. Thus of almost all agent-nouns in *er* there is no corresponding noun in *ess*, the former being used indifferently for males and females.

Occasionally we meet with recent formations used in sport, such as:

**bishopess.** Clive is full of humour, and I enclose you a rude scrap representing the *bishopess* of Clapham. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. III, 35.

**citizeness.** Difficult to get any of the free democratic citizens or *citizenesses* to come. MRS. STOWE.

The French nation saw the English citizen and *citizeness* — no caricature, but the living reality — and their indignation exploded in laughter. JEROME, *Three men on the Bummel*, Ch. VIII, 147.

**cockneyess.** The country dances formed by bouncing cockneys and *cockneyesses*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 55.

**millionairess.** She is a *millionairess* now. DOR. GERARD, *The Eternal Woman*, Ch. XVIII.

The young *millionairess*, instead of squandering her fortune, takes her chief pleasure in adding to it. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4055, 15b.

Note. In SHAKESPEARE the forms *heirress*, *priestess*, *Jewess* and *tigress* are unknown; the plural *princes* is used to include both sexes (SHAKESPEARE's contemporaries also have the singular *prince* as a feminine); *traitor* is the ordinary word also to denote a female traitor, the form *traitress* being used only once (in *All's Well*, I, 1, 184), apparently as a term of endearment; both *votary* and *votarist* occur as feminines by the side of *vo(a)ress*. See A. SCHMIDT, under the respective words; and FRANZ, *Die Wortbildung bei Shakespeare*, E. S., XXXV.

6. Of the Old English terminations used to form feminines only two have left traces in Modern English:

- a) *en*, which is still seen in *vixen* (= *she - fox*, *fox's cub* of either sex, but mostly *ill-tempered woman*). *Vixen* is derived from *vox*, in Old English a dialectical variety of *fox*.
- b) (*e*)*stre*, which is still seen in 1) *spinster*; 2) *fibster*, *huckster*, *maltster*, *punster*, *seamster* (also *sempster*), *songster*, *tapster*, *trickster*; 3) many proper names of persons, such as *Baxter*, *Bowster*, *Webster*; 4) *oldster*, *youngster*; 5) *teamster*, *tonguester*.

With the exception of *youngster*, *oldster*, *teamster* and *tonguester*, all these nouns in *ster* are agent-nouns, formed from verbs. *Oldster* formed on the analogy of *youngster* is rare, and so is *tonguester*.

The words in *ster* have long since ceased to be felt as nouns denoting female agents. Hence the formation of such words as *seamstress* (also *sempstress*) and *songstress*.

*Spinster* is the only word in *ster* which has retained an exclusively feminine meaning, but is no longer a *nomen actoris*, meaning only unmarried woman. SHAKESPEARE still has it in the original meaning. SCOTT has *spinstress* in the sense of unmarried woman, which seems to show that he did not feel *spinster* to be an indubitably feminine word.

In *fibster*, *punster* and *trickster* the ending *ster* expresses a bad habit. For further details see also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1593, and especially FRANZ, *Die Wortbildung bei Shakespeare*, E. S., XXXV.

**oldster.** Major Bagstock . . . said of Florence that her eyes would play the devil with the youngsters before long — "and the *oldsters* too, Sir, if you come to that." DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. X, 87.

We *oldsters*, be we ever so old, become boys again, as we look at that familiar old tomb. THACK., *New c.*, II, Ch. XXXVII, 396.

I rather think that we two *oldsters* are in your way. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, 58.

**seamster (-stress), sempster (-stress).** Tom was a good *seamster*, as all travellers should be. KINGSLEY, *Two Years Ago*, I, x, 159.<sup>1)</sup>

1) MURRAY.

Izaak Walton followed the trade of a *sempster* or haberdasher. N. H. NICOLAS Walton's Angler, Life, 2 Note.<sup>1)</sup>

The wrongs and hardships of the *seamstress* and the milliner have been set forth in thrilling poetry. Daily News, 1872, 24 July.<sup>1)</sup>

Among the prisoners . . . were two women — a *sempstress* and a servant. Id., 1871, 6 Nov.<sup>1)</sup>

**spinst**er (-stress). O. fellow, come, the song we had last night. | Mark it Cesario, it is old and plain; | The *spinsters* and the knitters in the sun | And the free maids that weave their thread with bones | Do use to chant it. Twelfth Night, II, 4, 45.

He actually ventured to salute the withered cheek of the *spinstress* SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. XII, 132.

**songster** (-stress). The caged *songster* can at least exercise his sweet voice unrestrained. Graphic, 1889, 278.

The song had left tears in the eyes of the reprobate Sacha himself, though they did not wash out the love-glances that he threw at the *songstress*. SAVAGE, My Official Wife, 140.

**teamster**. The wagons are propelled by means of mules driven by rough *teamsters*. ALVAREZ, Mexican Bill, 38.

**tonguester**. Perchance in lone Tintagil, far from all | The *tonguesters* of the court, she had not heard. TEN, The Last Tourn., 392.

**trickster**. Good heavens! what an actress this woman is. What an arch *trickster* — what an all-accomplished deceiver! Miss BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, II, Ch. III, 43.

## 7. The following feminines are of foreign coinage:

a) <i>infanta</i>	from <i>infante</i>	e) <i>administrix</i>	from <i>administrato</i>
<i>khediva</i>	„ <i>khedive</i>	<i>arbitratrrix</i>	„ <i>arbitrator</i>
<i>signora</i>	„ <i>signor</i>	<i>coadjutrix</i>	„ <i>coadjutor</i>
<i>sultana</i>	„ <i>sultan</i> .	<i>dictatrix</i>	„ <i>dictator</i>
b) <i>heroine</i>	„ <i>hero</i> .	<i>executrix</i>	„ <i>executor</i>
<i>landgravine</i>	„ <i>landgrave</i>	<i>inheritrix</i>	„ <i>inheritor</i>
<i>margravine</i>	„ <i>margrave</i> .	<i>mediatrix</i>	„ <i>mediator</i>
c) <i>czarina</i>	„ <i>czar</i> .	<i>prosecutrix</i>	„ <i>prosecutor</i>
d) <i>suffragette</i>	„ <i>suffragist</i> .	<i>spectatrix</i>	„ <i>spectator</i>
		<i>testatrix</i>	„ <i>testator</i> .

Instead of some of these feminines in *trix*, forms with the more familiar *ess* are more frequently used. Thus we constantly meet with *coadjutress*, *dictatress*, *inheritress*, *spectatress*, etc.

**inheritrix** (-ess). i. I think we acknowledge in the *inheritrix* of his sceptre a wiser rule and a life as honourable and pure. THACK., The Four Georges, IV, 120.

ii. Marcella Boyce *inheritress* of one of the most ancient names in England. Mrs. WARD, Marcella, I, 10.

**mediatrix**. She obligingly consented to act as *mediatrix* in the matter. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. X, 105.

**prosecutrix**. Not one of them had compassion enough to mollify my *prosecutrix*. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXIII, 166.

A photograph of the *prosecutrix* in the costume she wore the day she bicycled to Ockham, showed her clothed from the crown of her head to the soles of her feet. *Times*, 1899, 217b.

**spectatrix (-ess).** i. She had been a *spectatrix* of the same scene at a play. ANON., *Paul Ferr*, 219.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The unfortunate Hinda is at last a *spectatress* of the lofty fate of her lover. JEFFREY, *Thomas Moore*.

8. a) *Woman* has sprung from a compound of *man*, being a modification of *wifman*, in which *man*, of course, is used as a noun of common gender like the Dutch *mensch*.

*Man* and *woman* form numerous compounds, which require no comment. In some cases the compound of *man* answers to a compound of *maid*, e. g.: *milkman* — *milkmaid*.

- b) On tracing back *lord* and *lady* to their original forms, it will be found that they have both sprung from compounds which have the word *hlāf* (= Mod. Eng. *loaf*) in common: *lord* = Old Eng. *hlāford* (once *hlāfweard*) Mod. Eng. *loaf-keeper*; *lady* *hlæfdige* = Mod. Eng. *loaf-kneader*.

- c) Sometimes a pure alien is used, because the masculine does not allow of having a feminine formed from it. Such are *comédienne*, *vicereine* corresponding respectively to *comedian* and *viceroi*. Mention may here also be made of the only partially naturalized *beau* and *belle*.

**belle.** Lady Audley is considered the *belle* of the country. MISS BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secret*, II, Ch. III, 49.

**comédienne.** Comedian succeeded *comédienne* with monotonous regularity. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCI, 255a.

**vicereine.** Americans were extremely proud of the distinction which fell to Lady Curzon as *Vicereine* of India. *Daily News*.

Just before he went to Canada, Lord Minto married a lady who is suddenly going to make one of the most successful of *Vicereines* who have ever ruled in India. *Ib.*

Life at Government House, Calcutta, although it flows easily, entails a vast amount of hard work on the Viceroy and *Vicereine*. *Titbits*.

9. *Widower* affords an instance of the name of the male individual being a derivative of that of the female.

Also of the two words *bridegroom* and *bride* the feminine is the original, from which the masculine has been formed. In the 15th and 16th centuries, however, *bride* was used of either sex. *Groom* was substituted for *gome*, the Middle English representative of the Old English *guma* (= *man*), when this word had become obsolete.

10. The nouns that have no companion-word to indicate the individual of the opposite sex are:

<sup>1)</sup> FLÜGEL.



- a) names of occupations or stations (at one time) practised or held (almost) exclusively by either men or women: *carpenter judge, minister, milliner, nurse, peasant, surgeon*, etc.;
- b) some names of nationality: *Greek, Spaniard, Turk*.
- c) some other names of persons: *citizen, devil, fellow, pedant*.

Also some compounds of *man*, and of *woman, wife or maid* are without a companion-word to denote the opposite sex: e. g. *postman* (11, Obs. II), *clergyman, exciseman, midwife, fishwife, barmaid*.

11. Obs. I. Some of the masculine names of persons mentioned in the preceding § are also occasionally used to denote the corresponding individual of the female sex. They may then be considered as nouns of common gender.

**citizen.** Her dress was entirely without ornament, except the two narrow purple stripes down the front which marked her rank as a Roman *citizen*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 6a.

In 1885 it became the property of a *citizen* of the United States, Mrs. Abby E. Pope of Brooklyn. ERNEST RHYS, Preface to 'Morte d'Arthur', 8.

The Spartan woman was accustomed from her youth up to account herself a *citizen*. NETTLESHIP, *Dict. Clas. Antiq.* 377b.

**devil.** An ill-tempered little *devil*! She'll be in a passion all her life, will she? *SHER.* *Riv.*, III, 3, (250).

**fellow.** Let me alone two months, that I may go up and down upon the mountains, and bewail my virginity, I and my *fellows*. *Bible*, *Judges*, XI, 37.

She is a good *fellow*, too. Mrs. ALEX., *For his sake*, I, Ch. XI, 180. Gillian's outreaching fancies set her above and somewhat apart from her *fellows*. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. V, 40.

**peasant.** I am a lowly *peasant* and you a gallant knight; | I will not trust a love that soon may cool and turn to slight. WHITTIER, *King Volmar and Elsie*.

**pedant.** But she (sc. Elizabeth) was far from being a mere *pedant*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, Sect. III, 370.

**Spaniard.** He had discovered her to be a *Spaniard*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVII, 209b.

Rumour called her a *Spaniard*. G. MEREDITH, *Lord Ormont*, Ch. II, 39.

**statesman.** Victoria was a *statesman* when the Tsar and the Kaiser were in their cradles. *Periodical*.<sup>1)</sup>

**stripling.** Laura had grown to be a fine young *stripling* by this time. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 193.

**youth.** *Youths* of both sexes invade the class-rooms at the summons of the vesper bell. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5335, 7b.

- II. But in the majority of cases, when the necessity of denoting sex arises, some sex-indicating word is substituted or added in the same way as in the case of nouns of common gender. (12.)

<sup>1)</sup> WENDE, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 98.

- i. The *post-woman* brought two letters to the house. I say *post-woman*, but I should say the postman's wife. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIII, 235. Causes in which both parties are women are determined by *women-judges*. BELLAMY, *Looking Backward*, 120.
- ii. Another direction was given to our thoughts, by an announcement on the part of the principal shopkeeper at Cranford, who ranged the trades from grocer and cheesemonger to *man-milliner*, as occasion required, that the spring fashions, were arrived. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XII, 231.
- III. Besides *chairman*, also *chairwoman* is occasionally met with to denote the female incumbent of the chair:
  - i. Edinburgh's School Board. *Chairman*, Miss Flora Stevenson. Morning Leader.
  - Lady Randolph Churchill, *chairman*. Graph.
  - ii. Then Tressady perceived that the *chairwoman* had called upon Lady Maxwell to move the next resolution. Mrs. WARD, Sir George Tres., III, Ch. XIV, 114a.

12. The names of live beings that do not indicate sex include:

- a) nouns of common gender: *acquaintance*, *agent*, *artist*, *child*, *christian*, *companion*, *cousin*, *friend*, *guest*, *liege*, *neighbour*, *orphan*, *slave*, etc.; *novelist*, *pianist*, *vocalist*, etc.; *attendant*, *correspondent*, *dependant*.

Among these we may also reckon most names of persons in *er*, *or*; mostly agent-nouns, which, though chiefly and, perhaps, originally denoting only men, are now currently used for women also: *reader*, *writer*, etc.; *cottager*, *outsider*, *villager*, *Londoner*, etc.; *foreigner*, *southerner*.

The noun *lover* is now almost exclusively applied to the male sex, except in the plural when no particular sex is implied in the word. Conversely *love* mostly denotes a female person, except in address, when it is as frequently used of the male sex. Sometimes it is preceded by *lady* to denote the female sex more explicitly (*lady-love*).

In SHAKESPEARE, and occasionally in later writers, *lover* as a noun of common gender, is also used in the sense of *friend* or *well-wisher*.

**agent.** Why should not Miss Matty sell tea — be an *agent* to the East India Tea Company which then existed? Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XXIV, 261.

**artist.** The baronet's daughter, who was an excellent horsewoman, and a very clever *artist*, spent most of her time out of doors. Miss BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. I, 6.

**christian.** I shall end this strife, | Become a *Christian*, and thy loving wife. Merch. of Ven., II, 3, 19.

**companion.** Rebecca easily found a means to get rid of Briggs, her *companion*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 165.

**composer.** Who is that remarkably handsome girl? — That's Lady Adela's sister, Lady Sibyl, the *composer*. WILLIAM BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus. Ch. XXI.

**sser.** The *dresser* had been told she would not be wanted yet awhile. Ch. I.

**liege.** Queen, | Lady, my *liege* in whom I have my joy, | Take, what I had not won except for you, | These jewels. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 1173.

**love.** i. When my *love* swears that she is made of truth, | I do believe her, though I know she lies. SHAK., *The Pas. Pilgr.*, I.

ii. \* I could interpret between you and your *love*, if I could see the puppets dallying. Hamlet, III, 2, 259.

And in such a night | Did pretty Jessica, like a little shrew, | Slander her *love*, and he forgave it her. *Merch. of Ven.*, V, 1, 22.

O, then, what graces in my *love* do dwell, | That he hath turn'd a heaven unto a hell! *Mids.*, I, 1, 206.

'Tis he! well met in any hour, | Lost Leila's *love*, accursed Giaour. BYRON, *The Giaour*, 444.

\*\* "Why, my stupid *love*", she would say, "we have not done with your aunt yet." THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXX, 318.

"Dearest *love*", she said, "do you suppose I feel nothing?" *Ib.*, 319.

iii. Let not me be a witness of the delight which you and your new *lady-love* will take in each other. F. J. ROWE, Note to *Lanc. and El.*, 1210.

**lover.** i. In her first passion, woman loves her *lover*. BYRON, *Don Juan*, III, III.

ii. He . . . swears brave oaths and breaks them bravely, quite traverse, athwart the heart of his *lover*. As you like it, III, 4, 45.

It is as easy to count atomies as to resolve the propositions of a *lover*. *Ib.*, III, 2, 246. The thought struck him that he should find out who this Platonic *lover* would be, and in due course he discovered that she was a Miss Williams, a lady of some property living in the neighbourhood. *Lit. World*.

You will drive me to be a priest, for this must end one way or another. My parents hate me in earnest, but my *lover* only loves me in jest. CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. IX, 49.

iii. But love is blind, and *lovers* cannot see | The pretty follies that themselves commit. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 6, 36.

iv. Roman, countrymen, and *lovers!* hear me for my cause. *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2, 13. I slew my best *lover* for the good of Rome. *Ib.*, III, 2, 49.

The earth was foe to him, | Let the sea be *lover*. W. K. JOHNSTON, *Terra Tenebra*, 34.1)

**novelist.** Beginning with Hannah More and ending with George Eliot the series includes six of our famous *novelists*. *Lit. World*.

**possessor.** The gas-light showed her the *possessor* of bright brown eyes. Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 232.

**reader.** Miss Boyce was a good *reader*. *Id.*, *Marcella*, I, 165.

**singer.** Madame Svengali, the greatest *singer* in Europe, had suddenly gone out of her mind. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 17.

**slave.** Well, Julia, you are your own mistress, yet have you, for this long year, been a *slave* to the caprice, the whim, the jealousy of his ungrateful Faulkland. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (218).

**speaker.** 'Just because a woman is on the stage, everybody thinks they may throw stones at her', cried the *speaker*, growing half embarrassed as she spoke. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 292.

*The speaker.* Mrs. Caxton, was a middle-aged lady. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, I, 125.

**successor.** William IV was lying dead in Windsor Castle, while the messengers were already hurrying off to Kensington Palace to bear to his *successor* her summons to the throne. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 1.

1) MURRAY.

**teacher.** There is a daughter also, I find — a *teacher* in a school. Mrs. WOOD, *Orville College*, Ch. VI, 89.

The only reference she gave was to a lady at a school at Brompton, where she had once been a *teacher*. Miss BRAD., *Lady Audley's Secret*, I, Ch. I, 7.

**visitor.** "Dearest Amelia, you are unwell!" the *visitor* said, putting forth her hand to take Amelia's. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXI, 334.

**writer.** Miss Hope is a clear and animated *writer*. *Lit. World*.

The elder *writer* did not begin her literary career until after her marriage. *Ib.*

- b) the bulk of the names of animals, i. e. of all animals whose sexual characteristics are not conspicuous enough for the people to feel the necessity of distinct names for the male and the female: *elephant, eagle, whale* etc.

The nouns *dog* and *horse*, though not usually indicating sex, are also used specifically to denote the male (adult) animal; similarly *duck* and *goose* may specifically denote the female, although more ordinarily implying neither sex in particular.

13. When the necessity of denoting sex is felt, and the context has no indications regarding this matter, the nouns mentioned in the preceding § are coupled with other words indicating sex. Such words are:

- a) the adjectives *male* and *female*, which may be placed before any of the above nouns.

It is by no means improbable that old Lobbs would have carried the threat into execution, if his arm had not been stayed by the... *male cousin*, who stepped out of his closet and walked up to old Lobbs. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 153.

She was as jealous of her as every well-regulated woman should be of her husband's *female friends*. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. III, (312).

- b) the nouns *boy* — *girl*, *gentleman* — *lady*, *lord* — *lady*, *man* — *woman* (*maid*), which are placed mostly before, sometimes after such of the above nouns as denote persons. Thus we have:

- i. *boy-friend* — *girl-friend*, *gentleman-cousin* — *lady-cousin*, *man-servant* — *woman-servant* (or *maid-servant*);
- ii. *orphan-boy* — *orphan-girl*, *liege lord* — *liege lady*, *liege-man* (*liege man*) — *liegewoman* (*liege woman*), *servant-man*, *servant-maid* (more commonly *servant-girl*).

It may here be observed that some of these nouns may have other adnominal functions than that of sex-indicating words. Thus *gentleman* and *lady* often indicate rank: *gentleman farmer*, *lady wife*.

**gentleman.** If Deborah had been alive, she would have known what to do with a *gentleman-visitor*. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. III, 58.

**lady.** I. His influence made Marcella a rent-collector under a *lady-friend* of his in the East End. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 29.



*My lady-readers*, I am aware, will protest at this. BELLAMY, *Looking Backward*, 11.

Readers of "The Lady's Pictorial" are already familiar with its bright and picturesque sketches of some of our well-known *lady-novelists*, now re-published under the title of Notable Women-Authors of the Day. *Lit. World*, 1893, 59.

The lives of the twelve *lady-writers* that fill the pages of this pleasant book, embrace a wide period of time. *Ib.*, 1893, 10a.

- ii. We wished to ignore the whole affair until our *liege lady*, Mrs. Jamieson, returned. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XII, 231.

I may not yield to any dame the palm of my *liege lady's* beauty. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, III, Ch. II, 132.

- iii. The individual for whom the second place was taken, was a personage no less illustrious than Mrs. Dowler, *his lady wife*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXV, 323.

**man.** Bring forth *men-children* only. Mac b., I, 7, 72.

The epithet "blue-socking", was at first given not to the clever women who attended Mrs. Montagu's informal receptions, but to her *men-friends*, who were allowed to come in the grey or blue worsted stockings of daily life, instead of the black silk considered 'de rigueur' for parties. G. E. MITTON, *Jane Austen and her Times*, Ch. I, 7.

**woman.** I have many married *women-friends*. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXIX, 116.

She had two or three *women-friends* in the country. Mrs. WARD, *Mar.*, I, 82.

- c) the nouns *cock* — *hen*, *bull* — *cow*, *boar* — *sow*, *dog* — *bitch*, *buck* — *doe*, *colt* — *filly*, which are placed mostly before, occasionally after the names of certain animals. Thus we have *cock-sparrow* — *hen-sparrow*, *peacock* — *peahen*, *bull-elephant* — *cow-elephant*, *bull-calf* — *cow-calf*, *boar-pig* — *sow-pig*, *dog-fox* — *bitch-fox*, *buck-rabbit* — *doe-rabbit*, *colt-foal* — *filly-foal*.

The base of *peacock*—*peahen*, which in Old English was *pawa*, seems to have gone out of use at an early date, so that for a long time there was not a common noun for the male and the female. *Peafowl* is quite a modern word, the earliest instance quoted by MURRAY dating 1804.

Mr. Roosevelt ... shot a big *cow-elephant*. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3679, 586. Parched with thirst they had at last managed to find a waterpool, but a *rhino cow*, with her calf, was bathing in it, and had made it too foul to drink. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 12a.

*Pea-fowl* occur in a wild state only in the Indian Peninsula and Ceylon. *Id.*, 5329, 5a.

- d) the pronouns *he* and *she*, which are placed before the names of certain animals. Thus we have *he-cat* — *she-cat*, *he-bear* — *she-bear*, *he-fox* — *she-fox*, *he-goat* — *she-goat*, *he-wolf* — *she-wolf*.

Once he routed two wolves by the power of the human eye and the display of the kodak; once a *she-bear* and her cubs fled from him through a snowstorm. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5201, 13b.

14. Obs. I. For *female* and *male* we sometimes find respectively *fair* and *gallant*, as more elegant words.

Distinguishable above all, though not loud, was the sonorous voice of the master of Thornfield Hall, welcoming his *fair* and *gallant* guests under his roof. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVII, 201.

The superscription was in a pretty delicate female hand, marked "immediate" by the *fair* writer. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 13.

Occasionally the *fair* author herself came and dined with us. MARIE CORELLI, *Sor. of Sat.*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 95.

- II. The use of *masculine* and *feminine* to denote sex, as in the following quotations, seems objectionable:

King Behanzin's warriors, both *feminine* and *masculine*, had evidently grown tired of fighting against the invincible column. Graph., 1893, 630a.

Not to mention that now perished generation of *feminine* singers, who combined a sort of belated Byronic romanticism of style with a rather humdrum domesticity of sentiment — not to mention this now defunct school in the stronger voiced women-poets from Mrs. Browning, through Miss Christina Rossetti to their later-risen sisters, — we still find in full force the intensely personal note and the necessity of heart-declaration which seem to be the normal characteristics of songstresses' song. Acad., 1891, 179c.

Isn't this a joy to the *feminine* shopper? RITA, *America—Seen through English eyes*, Ch. II, 55.

- III. Also proper names of person, particularly such as are in familiar use, are sometimes, especially in colloquial language, placed before names of animals to denote sex: *billy-goat* — *nanny-goat*, *jack-ass* — *jenny-ass*, *tom-cat* — *tib-cat*.

For *tom-cat* we also find *gib-cat*, now only archaically or dialectally. *Gib* is an abbreviation of *Gilbert*.

In *jackdaw*, *robin-redbreast*, *jenny-wren* and *philip-sparrow*, *tomtit* the proper names do not indicate sex.

*Jackass* is often opprobriously applied to a stupid or foolish person.

For who, that's but a queen, fair, sober, wise, | Would from a paddock, from a bat, a *gib*, | Such dear concerns hide? *Hamlet*, III, 4, 190.

Melancholy as a *gib-cat* over his counter all the forenoon, I think I see him making up his cash . . . with tremulous fingers. CH. LAMB, *Es. of El.*, *The South-Sea House*.

- IV. In Early Modern English we sometimes find *he* and *she* used as nouns indicating persons, the former not always distinctly implying sex. (Occasional instances occur in the latest English as archaisms. FRANZ, *E. S.*, XVII.

- i. I am that *he*, that unfortunate *he*. As you like it, III, 2, 414.

Now let me see the proudest | *He*, that dares most, 'but wag his finger at thee. *Henry VIII*, V, 3, 131.

I'll spend my penny with the best *he* that wears a head. FARQUHAR, *Rec. Offic.*, I, 1, 613.

The sheep-skin you scorn, I value it more than the skin of any *he* in Tergou. CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XII, 63.

- ii. The *shes* of Italy should not betray | Mine interest and his honour. *Cymb.*, I, 3, 29.

You are the cruellest *she* alive. *Twelfth Night*. I, 5, 259.

I know the rest — you are the charming *she*, and I the happy man. FARQUHAR, *The Const. Couple*, V, 3, 538.

Compare with this the vulgar use of *him* and *her* in Present English, as in:

"You have a son, I believe", said Dombey. — "Four of 'em, sir. Four *hims* and a *her*. All alive. DICK., *Dombey*, Ch. II, 16.

In Early Modern English *he* and *she* are also found before names of persons to denote sex. In later English this use implies great contempt. You would think a smock were a *she-angel*. The Winter's Tale, IV, 4, 211. If thou wilt curse, thy father, that poor rag, | Must be thy subject, who in spite put stuff | To some *she-beggar* and compounded thee | Poor rogue hereditary. Timon of Athens, IV, 3, 273.

My *he-cousin*, Thomson the butcher, is dead or dying. SWIFT, Journ. to Stella, LXI.

As for the old weather-beaten *she-dragon* who guards you. SHER., Riv., III, 3. The gipsy . . . exerted them (sc. her powers of persuasion) with the usual tact and success of all *she-things*. BYRON (LYTTON, Life of Lord Byr., 25a).

She is about as elegantly decorated as a *she-chimneysweep* on May day. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 219.

I saw the whole business at once; here was this lion of a fellow tamed down by a *she Van Amburgh*. Id., Men's Wives, Ch. II, (329).

Note also *He Bible* and *She Bible*, a distinction which is based on the different readings of Ruth III, 15 in the two issues of the Authorized Version of the year 1611. The first issue had *And when she helde it, he measured sixe measures of barley, and laide it on her: and he went into the citie*; the second . . . and *she went into the citie*.

- V. When the persons mentioned in the discourse are of different sex, the distinction of sex is never expressed.

The *vocalists* were Miss Anna Williams, Mrs. Brereton, and Mrs. Iver McKay, who were all in good voice. ACADEMY, 1890, 229b.

- VI. Also some of the masculine nouns mentioned in § 4 and § 7 may be met with as nouns of common gender, i. e. they are sometimes used, either without the feminine suffix, or preceded by the adjective *female* or the nouns *woman* or *lady*, to denote the individual of the female sex.

Comparing § 4 and § 12, it follows then that agent-nouns in *er* and *or* are of three kinds: a) such as exclusively denote male persons, b) such as mostly denote male persons, but may also be used for female, c) such as are indifferently used for females and males, there being no companion word in *ess* to denote the female.

In some of the following quotations the use of the masculine forms may be due to the predicative function in which they are employed. (Ch. XXIII, 16, d.)

**author.** The Lady Emily was her brother's senior by many years, and took considerable rank in the serious world as *author* of some of the delightful tracts before mentioned. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXIII, 360.

Two of these women, Lady Duffus Hardy and Jessie Fothergill, the latter the gifted *author* of 'the First Violin', have passed away. Lit. World.

**dictator.** She was self-appointed *dictator* and ruled by right of being in a sense the foundress of Shawbridge. (?), The Mischiefmaker, Ch. I.

**heir.** Hero, the daughter and *heir* of Leonato. Much ado, I, 3, 57.

My wife was *heir* to the property. THACK., Cox's Diary, January.

Compare: The death of your brother makes you sole *heiress* to my estate. G. FARQUHAR, Recruiting Officer, II, 2, (270).

**jew.** Adieu! tears exhibit my tongue. Most beautiful pagan, most sweet *Jew*.  
*Merch. of Ven.*, II, 3, 19.

Note. According to R. G. WHITE *jewess* is a modern word, but it occurs in the Authorized Version of 1611 (*Acts XVI*, 1) and in the earlier versions, even in that of Wiclif. (Note to *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 5, 42 in Clar. Press.)

**manager.** Her husband — he could not be called the landlord, for Mrs. P. was *manager* of the place — had been, in happier days, captain or lieutenant in the militia. *THACK., Lovel*, Ch. I, 8.

**poet.** The *poet* (sc. Eliz. Barrett Browning) was in her thirtieth year when Miss Mitford saw her for the first time. *Literature*.

In 1828 the *poet* was advanced in her twenty-third year and had long been a published author. *Ib.*

Miss E. H. Hickey is best known as a *poet*. *Lit. World*.

**regent.** Appointed Governess (or *Regent*) of the Netherlands when only twenty-seven, she displayed an ability which was really astonishing. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXIX, 81a.

**translator.** The *translator* remarks in her preface that it is only within the present century that the original text of the *Parzifal* has been collated from the manuscripts. *Academy*.

The English *translator* has done her work well. *Athenæum*.



## CHAPTER XXVIII.

### GENERAL OBSERVATIONS ON ADJECTIVES.

#### 1. Adjectives are used:

##### a) as restrictive adnominal adjuncts:

- 1) to classify substances: *difficult problems*, *black swans*, *red ink*.
- 2) to individualize substances: an *East-Indian* voyage (Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIV, 121a), an *Alpine* accident (Times), the *Russian* Foreign Office (ib.).

##### b) as continuative adnominal adjuncts: that *awkward* mistake, this *troublesome* boy, the *ambitious*, *pushing* Melbourne (FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. VII, 93), the *mighty*, *opulent* Amsterdam (Mac., Hist., III, 47).

For information about the terms restrictive, classifying, etc. see Ch. IV, 1. Compare also Ch. XVI, 1; Ch. XX, 3; Ch. XXI, 2.

Note. When a continuative adnominal adjunct, the adjective sometimes implies some emotion on the part of the speaker. Thus in: As I spoke, *poor* Mr. Burchell entered the house (GOLDSMITH, Vicar), the adjective *poor* implies a sense of pity, while in: All the conspirators save only he, | Did that they did in envy of *great* Cæsar (Jul. Cæs., V, 5, 70), the adjective *great* implies a sense of admiration. Ch. XXXI, 27, b.

#### 2. Like adnominal nouns, whether in the common case or in the genitive (Ch. XXIII, 3; Ch. XXIV, 7, 40), adjectives may express:

##### a) qualities: a *mild* cigar, a *beautiful* seascape, a *wooden* bench.

##### b) relations: the *foremost* ranks, the *left* hand; the *present* reign, the *last* century, my *daily* avocations; *French* wine, *musical* instruments, *nervous* system.

He took a keen interest in the larger aspects of *public* affairs, in the *French* revolution, the *Napoleonic* Wars, the Abolition of Slavery, *Catholic* Emancipation, *Parliamentary* Reformation, the Poor Law, Factories Education. NOWEL C. SMITH, Wordsworth's Lit. Critic., Introd., I.

#### 3. Obs. I. The relations that may be indicated by adjectives are of an equally varied and vague nature as those that may be expressed by adnominal nouns in the common case. (Ch. XXIII, 12.) They may be roughly divided into:

- a) such as may also be expressed by a noun in the genitive.  
i. e. by a noun:

- 1) in the genitive of possession: Oh, who can tell? not thou *luxurious* slave!...| The exulting sense. BYRON, *Corsair*. (= slave of *luxury*.)  
What a special clatter, crowd, and outcry there was in the *Jewish* quarter. THACK., *Notes on a Week's Holiday*. (= *Jews'* quarter.)  
In his eyes there was the expression which has always appealed to me more than any other expression, whether in *human* eyes or the eyes of animals. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. I, 415. (= *man's* eyes. Compare *the eyes of animals* at the end of the sentence.)

The *public* health. *Times*. (= health of *the public*.)

What shall be said of Mr. Taft, however, whom the American people have just placed in the *Presidential* chair? *Westm. Gaz.* (= the chair of *the President*.)

Thus also by participial adjectives, as in: Come to my woman's breasts, And take my milk for gall, you *murdering* ministers! *Macb.*, I, V, 49. (= ministers of *murder*.)

Note. *Almighty* wisdom, goodness etc. may be understood as wisdom, goodness, etc. of the Almighty.

Implicitly relying upon *Almighty* wisdom and goodness, he looked danger in the face with a constant smile. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VIII, 898a.

What one sees symbolised in the Roman churches in the image of the Virgin Mother with a bosom bleeding with love, I think one may witness (and admire the *Almighty* bounty for) every day. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 30.

- 2) in the genitive of origin: He didn't understand politics himself — thought they were a *natural* gift. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VII, 64. (= a gift of *nature*.)

- 3) in the subjective genitive: Hail to the virtues which that perilous life, Extracts from Nature's *elemental* strife. WORDSWORTH, *Composed by the Seashore*, 22. (= strife of *the elements*.)

Our Peking correspondent once more sends us a disquieting proof of *Russian* action in North China. *Times*. (= *Russia's* action.)

The *public* aid has been invoked for this object. *Times*. (= aid of *the public*.)

It is thought that he would have *capitalist* support. *Times*. (= support of *capitalists*.)

- 4) in the objective genitive: This attracted to his house the most eminent *musical* performers of that age. *Mac.*, *Mad. d'Arblay* (704a). (= performers of *music*. Compare: She appears to have been by no means a *novel* reader. *Ib.*, (703a).)

These things are hidden, except from *popular* science. ANDREW LANG, *Tennyson*, Ch. I, 4. (= science (intended) to teach *the people*.)

The Government is not pursuing any purpose of *territorial* aggrandisement. *Times*. (= aggrandisement of *territory*.)

We entertain vast schemes of *territorial* conquest. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXII, 260b.  
The *Royal* Funeral Number of the *Graphic*. (= funeral of *the Queen*.)

Note a) Also in the following quotation the adjective represents a kind of objective genitive. Compare Ch. XXIV, 21, Obs. II.

That life was a *noble* *Christian* epic. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 898b. (= epic of a *noble Christian*.)

β) When the adjective answers to a classifying genitive, it may also indicate a quality. (Ch. XXIV, 40, b).

His boy's face gave him quite a *sheepish* look. *Dick.*, *Cop.*, Ch. III, 15a.

- b) Such as are also expressed by a noun preceded by specializing of (Ch. IV, 4, Obs. IV; Ch. XXIII, 12, b): Forget not in your speed, Anto-

nius, | To touch Calpurnia: for our elders say, | The barren touched in this holy chase, | Shake off their *sterile* curse. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 8 (= their curse *of sterility*.)

Their rising senses | Begin to chase the *ignorant* fumes that mantle | Their clearer reason. TEMP., V, 1, 67 (= the fumes *of ignorance*.)

The *watery* kingdom, whose ambitious head | Spits in the face of heaven, is no bar | To stop the foreign spirits. MERCH. OF VEN., II, 7, 44 (= the kingdom *of the waters*.)

My resentment was restrained by *prudential* reasons so effectually, that I never so much as thought of obtaining satisfaction for the injuries he had done me. SMOLLETT, ROD. RAND., CH. VII, 40 (= reasons *of prudence*.)

So sore was the *delirious* goad, | I took my steed and forth I rode. SCOTT, MARM., IV, XIX (= the goad *of delirium*.)

Oh, who can tell . . . | The *exulting* sense — the pulse's maddening play, That thrills the wanderer of that trackless way? BYRON, CORSAIR (= the sense *of exultation*.)

I had no death to fear, nor wealth to boast, | Beyond the *wandering* freedom which I lost. IB., II, IV (= the freedom *of wandering*.)

The descendant of such a gentleman a hundred years later was proud of the *English* name. MAC., HIST., I, CH. I, 16 (= the name *of Englishman*.)

Then compass'd round by the blind wall of night | Brook'd not the *expectant* terror of her heart. TEN., EN. ARD., 488 (= terror *of expectancy* or suspense.) So mighty was the mother's *childless* cry. ID., DEM. AND PERS., 31 (= cry *of childlessness*, i. e. cry caused by childlessness.)

His (sc. William the Silent's) intellectual faculties were various and of the highest order. He had the *exact*, *practical* and *combining* qualities which make the great commander. MOTLEY, RISE, VI, CH. VII, 899 (= the qualities *of exactness, practicalness, and combination*.)

A certain *mysterious* feeling . . . steals over me again. DICK., COP., CH. VI, 43b. (= feeling *of mysteriousness*. Compare: I listen to all they tell me, with a vague feeling *of solemnity and awe*. IB.)

That poor sinner, Foker, with whom we have all come to sympathise, in spite of his vulgarity and *fast* propensities. TROL., THACK., CH. IV, 111 (= propensities *of fastness*.)

This was received by his companion with an *incredulous* shrug of the shoulders. BUCHANAN, THAT WINTER NIGHT, CH. III, 34 (= shrug *of incredulity*.)

A *generous* impulse rushed into Pot's open heart. ASCOTT R. HOPE, OLD POT (GRONDH. & ROORDA, III) (= an impulse *of generosity*.)

For *educational* purposes they are unrivalled. REV. OF REV., CXCV, 317b (= purposes *of education*.)

Instances occur also in Dutch, especially in colloquial language: Dat maakt een *slordige* indruk. (= een indruk *van slordigheid*.)

It is hardly necessary to observe that adjectives as applied in the above quotations, are virtually transferred epithets. (9.)

- c) Such as are also expressed by an attributive adnominal adjunct containing a preposition other than specializing *of*: He wants the *natural* touch. MACB., IV, 2, 10 (= touch or feeling *in the nature* of all human beings. Compare: One *touch of nature* makes the whole world kin, | That all with one consent praise new-born gawds. TROILUS AND CRES., III, 3, 175.) Love, like a *cradled* infant, is lulled by a sad melody. SHER., DUENNA, I, 1, (311) (= an infant *in a cradle*.) I have endeavoured in this *Ghostly* little book to raise the Ghost of an Idea. DICK., CHRISTM. CAR., PREF. (= book *about ghosts*.)

I daresay those impudent wretches made jokes about the miserable creature's having preferred a *watery* grave to me. *Id.*, *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. IV, 56 (= grave *in the water*.)

Then like a *musical adept*. | To blow the pipe his lips he wrinkled. *BROWNING*, *Pied Piper*, 101 (= adept *in music*.)

The reports of the *Parliamentary* debates have suddenly become the most interesting feature in the daily newspapers. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIV, 227a (= debates *in Parliament*.)

If Dr. Schofield's principles were acted upon, they would lead to something like a revolution in the treatment of *nervous* sufferers. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 10b (= sufferers *from nerves*.)

- d) Such as are also expressed by a noun used as predicative adnominal adjunct of the first kind. (Ch. XXIV, 40, b.) This affection had originally been caused by the extremities of hunger, suffered in my *boyish* days. *DE QUINCEY*, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 11 (= days *as a boy*.)

It was during one of my *childish* visits to Switzerland that I learnt an important fact in connection with my father and his first wife. *TH. WATTS DUNTON*, *Aylwin*, I, Ch. VI, 37 (= visits *as a child*.)

Mowbray House continues to be my *editorial* and *managerial* head-quarters. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIV, 319b (= head-quarters *as editor and manager*.)

These last adjectives may also be understood to represent adverbial relations (of time). Thus *my childish visits* = *my visits as a child* or *my visits when I was a child*. Compare Ch. VI, 7. This applies especially to such adjectives as do not correspond to a noun in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct, as in:

A patriarchal gold-fish apparently retains to the last its *youthful* illusion that it can swim in a straight line beyond the encircling glass. *G. ELIOT*, *Mill*, I, Ch. VIII, 65 (= illusion *when young*; not: *when a youth*.)

- II. Relation-expressing adjectives, like relation-expressing adnominal nouns, often imply a quality in a more or less marked degree. This may also be said of several of the adjectives in the quotations cited above. Sometimes they have become purely qualitative. Thus *Parisian novelties*, which is almost equivalent to *fashionable novelties* (Compare: *Paris boulevards*, in which the modifying noun expresses a pure relation); *Bavarian beer*, which is now brewed in many places out of Bavaria. In the following quotations the adjectives have become purely qualitative:

The *Parisian* opinions spread fast among the educated classes beyond the Alps. *Mac.*, *Popes*, (560b). (= enlightened.)

In fact we are getting *autumnal* tints even now. *Daily News*.

No *funereal* gloom hung over the proceedings. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIV, 227b.

(Compare with this the relation-expressing noun *funeral*, as in: While through the meadows | Like fearful shadows, | Showly passes | A *funeral* train. *DOSSETT*, *Afternoon in Febr.*, I.)

- III. Sometimes there is an adnominal noun by the side of an adjective, also expressing a relation, but of a different description. Thus *an East India Company* is a company trading to East India, *an East Indian Company* is one established in East India.

This differentiation is not, however, rigidly kept up, i.e. the adjective is sometimes used where by analogy the substantive would be expected. Compare the two following groups of quotations:



- i. To whom he taught all the mysteries of the *Turkish* business. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 11.

He had procured his son a writership in return for electioneering services done to an *East Indian* Director. *Id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. VIII, 97.

- ii. The chairman of the directors was the great Mr. Brough of the house of Brough and Hoff, Crutched Friars, *Turkey* merchants. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 10.

Mr. John Lidderdale was a *Russia* merchant. *Times*.

- IV. In Early Modern English we find a much freer use of adjectives than in Present English. This often gives rise to obscurity and misconception. See especially ALEX. SCHMIDT, *Shak. Lexic.*, *Gram. Obs.*, 1415—1417.

What tributaries follow him to Rome | To grace in *captive* bonds his chariot-wheels? *Jul. Cæs.*, I, 1, 39.

BRUT. A word, Lucilius; How he receiv'd you, let me be resolv'd. — Luc. With courtesy and with respect enough; | But not with such *familiar* instances, | Nor with such free and friendly conference, | As he hath us'd of old. *Id.*, IV, 2, 16. (= instances of *familiarity*.)

And though we lay these honours on this man (sc. Lepidus), | To ease ourselves of divers *slandrous* loads, [etc.] *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 1, 20 (= loads of *slander*.) Our high-placed Macbeth | Shall live the lease of nature, pay his breath | To time and *mortal* custom. *Macb.*, IV, 1, 100 (= custom (law) of *mortality*.) Let our *just* censures | Attend the true event. *Id.*, V, 4, 14 (= the *justice* (correctness) of our censures (opinions).)

Direness, familiar to my *slaughterous* thoughts. | Cannot once start me. *Id.*, V, 5, 14 (= thoughts *running on slaughter*.)

And finding | By this encompassment and drift of question | That they do know my son, come you more nearer | Than your *particular* demands will touch it. *Ham.*, II, 1, 12 (= demands or questions *regarding particulars*.)

Of special interest in this respect are participial adjectives in *ed*, as in: His *banished* years. *Rich.* II, 1, 3, 210 (= his years of *banishment*.)

At our more *consider'd* leisure. *Ham.*, II, 2, 71 (= at a time *fitter for consideration*.)

This free use of adjectives sometimes causes an apparent exchanging of adjective and substantive. Thus *murderous shame* (SHAK., *Son.* IX) seems to stand for *shameful murder*.

Sir, here is newly come to court Laertes; believe me an absolute gentleman full of most *excellent* differences. *Ham.*, V, 2, 112 (= *different excellences*.) In companions | . . . Whose souls do bear an equal yoke of love, | There must be needs a *like proportion* of lineaments, of manners, and of spirit. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 4, 14 (= *proportionate likeness or similarity*.)

There is also a transposing of modifier and head-word in:

But (she) communed only with her little maid, | Who pleased her with a *babbling heedlessness*, | Which often lured her from herself. *TEN.*, *Guin.*, 149 (= *heedless babbling*.)

Cold and clear-cut face, why come you so cruelly meek, | Breaking a slumber in which all *spleenful folly* was drown'd. *Id.*, *Maud*, I, III (= *foolish spleen*.)

- V. A relation-expressing adjective is sometimes joined to a past or present participle.

- i. A *foreign-born* resident of a country. WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. *alien*. (= born in a *foreign country*.)

*American-made boots; foreign-manufactured goods.* Times.

The Opposition propose a *Canadian-built and Canadian manned Navy.* Westm. Gaz., No. 6101, 1b.

ii. The *foreign-residing Briton.* Times.

VI. A comparison of Dutch and English brings out the fact that in a great many cases for a relation-expressing adjective the Dutch has an adnominal noun as part of a compound. Thus *naval hero* = *zeeheld*, *naval battle* = *zeeslag*, *nautical almanac* = *zee-almanak*, *Maritime Fisheries* (Times) = *zeevisscherij*, *maritime powers* = *zeemogendheid*, *marine shells* = *zeeschelpen*; *native country* = *geboorteland*; *mercantile marine* = *handelsvloot*; *musical instrument* = *muziekinstrument*.

4. Adjectives are either independent or relative, i. e. they either make complete sense by themselves or require a (prepositional) object.

Instances of independent adjectives are *high*, *warm*, *good*, etc., as in *a high tree*, *a warm country*, *a good boy*, etc.

Relative adjectives are such as are instanced in the following quotations:

He is *averse* to active pursuits. WEBST., Dict.

He was *bent on* a day's lark in London. THACK., *Pend.*, I, CL. XVII, 173.

The ship is *bound* for Cadiz. SKEAT, *Etym. Dict.*

The port to *which* we were *bound*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. II, 30.

The ships were *bound* on a voyage of discovery. LOUIS BECKE, *A First Fleet Family*, Ch. XII.

The Boer ideas about the private property of strangers are not *consonant* with the highest administrative integrity. *Daily Chron.*

He was deeply *conversant* in the ancients, both Greek and Latin. BAIN, *Comp.*, 143.

He seemed to be very *conversant* on the subject. MADAME D'ARBLAY, *Evelina*, XVII, 67.

Further instances in a subsequent Chapter.

5. Many relative adjectives may become independent through having the prepositional object absorbed into them. This is especially the case when the prepositional object is vague or indefinite. Thus *sensitive*, which is relative in *I am not very sensitive to pain* (E. W. HORNUNG, *No Hero*, Ch. V), has become an independent adjective in *I did not know that you were so sensitive*. The change from relative into independent is analogous to that of transitive into intransitive, for which see a subsequent chapter. Further instances are seen in: *able for* the struggle — when I was young and *able*; *angry with* a person, *angry at* a thing, *angry with* a person *for* a thing — nothing could make him *angry*.
6. According to its grammatical function an adjective is said to be used
- a) attributively, i. e. connected with its head-word without the aid of a verb: *the Old World and the New*, *the present poet laureate*.

b) predicatively, i. e. connected with its head-word by the aid of a verb, either as nominal part of the predicate or as predicative adnominal adjunct: *The man is ill, I found the man ill. This made the man ill.*

7. Some adjectives hardly admit of being used predicatively. Such are:  
a) material adjectives. Compare Ch. XXIII, 7, Obs. II.

Note I. Instances of material adjectives used predicatively are very rare. The following are the only ones found up to the moment of writing:

The chariot of the grey dawn is represented as silver, just as the chariot of the bright sun is *golden*. ROWE AND WEBB, Notes to TEN., Tithonius, 76. He (sc. Moloch) was *brazen* and had a bull's head. II. Lond. News, No. 3816, Sup. VII.

The material adjective is used rather absolutely (11) than predicatively in:

On either hand stood candle-sticks, two of silver and two *brazen*. WALT. BESANT, Bell of St. Pauls, I, Ch. IV, 56.

II. Not infrequent, however, is the predicative use of material adjectives in figurative meanings, i. e. when only part of the attributes they suggest are thought of. Ch. XXIII, 7, Obs. II. See also FIJN VAN DRAAT, Rhythm in Eng. Prose, The Adj., § 28.

*ashen*. Her lips grew *ashen*. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., II, 272.

*brazen*. The deficient buttons on his plaid frock had evidently been supplied from one of Mr. Jellyby's coats, they were so extremely *brazen*, and so much too large. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XIV, 113.

I shouldn't have minded her lie so much if she hadn't been so *brazen* about it. Queer Stories (Truth, No. 1802, 100b).

*flaxen*. She wished that her hair was golden instead of *flaxen*. MAR. CRAWF., Adam Johnstone's Son, Ch. V.

*golden*. *Golden* indeed were the expectations with which hopeful people welcomed their historic Exhibition. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. IX, 106. (She looked out) upon the greensward where the deepening light lay *golden*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. IV, 150.

Her hair . . . shone well-nigh as startlingly *golden* as Emerald's own. Ib., III, Ch. III, 253.

*leaden*. The sky was gray and *leaden*. EDNA LYALL, Knight Er., Ch. XIX, 168.

*silvern*. We can fancy that his (sc. Swinburne's) hero and heroine would be persons in (?) whose lips speech would be golden and silence *silvern*. Periodical.<sup>1)</sup>

*wooden*. The staircase was as *wooden* and solid as need be. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. IV, 22a.

At the commencement they are so *wooden* and so stiff. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie, 74.

The Wilhelmstrasse is *wooden* in its methods like all bureaucratic institutions. Eng. Rev., 1912, March, 677.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., 111.

- b) adjectives denoting a pure relation. (2, b.) These adjectives have arisen from the want of an attributive word to represent an adverbial or genitive idea, and it is but natural that they are discarded when this want is no longer felt. Thus we say *a daily journal* as a much more convenient form than *a journal that appears daily (every day)*, but there is no occasion to say *The journals are daily* because such a form as *The journals appear daily (every day)* suits our purpose quite as well.
- c) some others; among the rest:

**joint.** Our *joint* property.

**live.** A *live* mouse.

**lone.** Where | Waterfalls leap among wild islands green, | Which framed for my *lone* boat a *lone* retreat. SHELLEY, *Revolt, Dedic.*, 16.

Note. Also *little* is mostly used attributively, but its application as a predicative word is not so infrequent as is often believed.

And though she be but *little*, she is fierce. *Mids. Night's Dream*, III, 2, 325.  
Being too *little*... (she) stood on tiptoe to embrace him. *Dick., Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 41.

When they were *little*. G. ELIOT, *Silas Mar.*, II, Ch. XVII, 133.

We feel so helpless and *little* in the great stillness. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. VI, 70

8. Some adjectives are used only or mostly predicatively. This is especially the case with:

a) relative adjectives (4).

The attributive use of these adjectives would entail their being placed before the noun together with their prepositional objects, which is contrary to the genius of the language. It will be easily understood that when these adjectives have got rid of this encumbrance, i. e. when they have become independent, they are often used attributively: *an able man, his angry brother*, etc.

Also when they absorb their object (5), relative adjectives may be used attributively.

Leaving the keyhole to the fog and even more *congenial* frost. *Dick., Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, Ch. I, 17.

"And it (sc. the job) comes — at last father", said Meg, with a touch of sadness in her pleasant voice. "Always," answered the *unconscious* Toby. *Id., Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 20.

The *conscious* footman turned pale. CROKER, *Three Advices*.

He obtained a *like* ticket. G. GISSING, *Eve's Ransom*, Ch. V.

- b) adjectives with the prefix *a*, which, indeed, is mostly a weakened preposition. ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 25.

Houses that seemed to have got *afloat*. *Dick., Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 29.

I had left the lamp *alight*. (?), *Evening Shadows*.

All wide earth and deep sky *agasp* in the naked blaze of the sun. MAART., *My Lady Nobody*, I, 9.

Note I. A considerable number of such adjectives used attributively are given by FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Rhythm in Eng. Prose*, *The Adj.*, § 19 (*Anglia*, XXIV). We copy the following:



A tall figure of a serious *adust* look. STERNE, *Sent. Journ.*, 118 (Tauchn.)  
No such sweet *ashamed* emotions. HOPE, *O sra*, 206 (Tauchn.)

Here is another: In person he (sc. the Duke of Alva) was tall, thin, erect, with a small head, . . . *adust* complexion [etc.]. MOTLEY, *Rise*, III, Ch. I, 339a.

II. Of some of these adjectives there is an attributive representative without the prefix. Thus *live* corresponds to *alive*, *lone* to *alone*. (7, c.)

c) the following:

**badly**, an illiterate word for *poorly*. I wur terrable feard a meakaan mesel *badly* agayn. MRS. WHEELER, *Westmrl.*, Dial., 45.<sup>1)</sup>

**ill**, in the sense of *out of health*. i. My friend is seriously *ill*.

ii. A solemn clergyman . . . summoned to administer consolation to a very *ill* man. MAMIE DICK., *My Father*, 66.<sup>1)</sup>

**nicely**, only in illiterate use. "How's your brother?" — "Oh, he's *nicely*, thank you." ONIONS, *Advanced Eng. Synt.*, § 35.

**poorly**. His wife had . . . been *poorly*. MAC., *Hist.*<sup>1)</sup>

**well**, in its varied applications. i. He tries to be *well* with both. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VII, (322).

He was quite as *well* at the alehouse as at the castle. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. II, 22.

Will it not be as *well* if you join him? LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. IV, 106.

If I were rich and happy in mind and circumstance, *well* and good. Id., *Caxtons*, XII, Ch. VI, 323.

He does not feel quite *well* to-day.

ii. But neither pills nor laxatives I like, | They only serve to make the *well* man sick. DRYDEN, *The Cock and the Fox*, 401.

For further instances of attributive *well* see FLÜGEL.

9. Adjectives do not always logically belong to the noun they modify grammatically. Sometimes they express in reality a quality of what is expressed by the predicate. Ch. V, 13, 14. More frequently they are what have been called transferred epithets. BAIN, *Eng. Composition*, 24. Compare also 3, Obs. I, b.

*weeping* tears (As you like it, II, 4, 49); a *sleepy* potion. SWIFT, *Gul.*, I, Ch. I, (117a). *tender* years (age). THACKERAY, *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. I, 16, 17. a *drunken* row. Rev. of Rev., CCXI, 3a.

The detailed discussion of transferred epithets does not belong to the department of grammar, but rather to lexicography. We will, therefore, confine ourselves to a few observations.

- a) In poetry, especially in SHAKESPEARE, the use of transferred epithets often gives rise to obscurity.

What *prodigal* portion have I spent that I should come to such penury. As you like it, I, 1, 34 (= What portion have I spent *in prodigality*, or as a *prodigal* man.)

I have five hundred crowns, | The *thrifty* hire I saved under your father. Ib., II, 3, 39 (= the hire I saved *by thrift* or as a *thrifty* man.)

Oppress'd with too *weak* evils, age and hunger. Ib., II, 7, 132 (= evils *causing weakness* or *making a man weak*.)

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- b) Some adjectives in *able* and *ible*, chiefly denoting a capability, are sometimes found to indicate a more active meaning.

He is too *disputable* for my company. As you like it, II, 5, 31 (= *disputatious*, *fond of argument*.)

Yet have I left a daughter, | Who, I am sure, is kind and *comfortable*. King Lear, I, 4, 328 (= *able to comfort*.)

Be *comfortable* to my mother, your mistress, and make much of her. All's well that ends well, I, 1, 86. (= *comforting*.)

The most *comfortable* sacrament of the body and blood of Christ. Communion Service.

This was an *uncomfortable* coincidence. Dick., Cop., Ch. V, 35a.

- c) The transferring of the epithet is often one from subject (normally the name of a person) to object (normally the name of a thing), with the frequent result that the transferred or objective meaning is more usual than the original or subjective meaning. DEAN ALFORD, The Queen's English, § 238; ABBOT, Shak., Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 3. The following list might be added to almost indefinitely:

**anxious.** i. The counsellors of Charles were *anxious* for their own safety. Mac., Hist.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. His affairs were in an *anxious* state. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIV, 274.

**careful.** i. I shall be *careful* about getting into these scrapes again. G. MEREDITH, Ordeal of Rich. Fev., Ch. XI, 69.

ii. By Him that rais'd me to this *careful* height | From that contented hap which I enjoyed, | I never did incense his majesty | Against the Duke of Clarence. Rich. III, I, 3, 83.

This latter use of *careful* is said by MURRAY to be archaic and obsolete.

**careless.** i. How can you be so *careless*!

ii. To throw away the dearest thing he owed, | As 't were a *careless* trifle. Macb., I, 4, 11.

**fearful.** i. God knows that fond heart was *fearful* enough when others were concerned. THACK., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. XI, 251.

Wilderspin is *fearful* that she may not turn up to day. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, IX, Ch. I, 271.

ii. Fear this glorious and *fearful* name, the Lord thy God. Bible, Deut., XXVIII, 58.

Oh, God! it is a *fearful* thing | To see the human soul take wing | In any shape, in any mood. BYRON, Pris. of Chil., VIII.

**hopeful.** i. Joubert *hopeful*. Daily Chron.

ii. Here comes his *hopeful* nephew. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. man, I.

**quarrelsome.** i. Men who are ill-natured and *quarrelsome* when they are drunk. FIELDING, Tom Jones, V, Ch. IX.

ii. It staved off the *quarrelsome* discussion as to whether she should or should not leave Miss Matty's service. Mrs. GASK., Cranf., Ch. XIV, 256.

This latter use of *quarrelsome* is rare.

In *reverent* and *reverend* we find the distinction marked by a difference of form.

10. When several adjectives qualify the same noun we may distinguish between two cases:

1) MURRAY.

- a) All the adjectives denote separate qualities of what is expressed by the following noun: *a long, straight street; a rich and generous man; the poor but happy man.*

In this case the adjectives should be separated by a comma or connected by a conjunction. They have equal stress and their order of arrangement is immaterial, although in a measure fixed by tradition or euphony.

- b) One of the adjective forms a kind of unit with the following noun, which is qualified by the other adjective: *excellent Rhenish wine.*

In this case the comma should not be used, nor is it possible to interpose a conjunction between the adjectives. The adjective immediately preceding the noun has weak stress as compared to the other adjectives and the order of arrangement cannot be changed.

11. An adjective is said to be used absolutely when it is detached from its head-word, i. e. when the noun to which it refers is understood because it occurs in a previous or subsequent part of the discourse. When found in immediate connection with the noun it modifies, which mostly follows, but occasionally precedes (Ch. VIII, 84 ff.), it may be said to be used conjointly. Most adjectives may also be turned wholly or partially into nouns, in which case they are said to be used substantively.

The absolute use of adjectives is common only when the noun they modify is found in a subsequent part of the discourse, as in *the biggest of the boys, white and red roses*. But the English language, unlike the Dutch, is on the whole averse to the absolute use of an adjective when the noun modified precedes. To obviate the monotony which the repeating of this noun would entail, it is mostly replaced by the indefinite pronoun *one* used by way of prop-word.

Sometimes an adnominal word, though not modifying a noun actually found in the discourse, is yet distinctly associated with a noun that is implied by some element of the sentence. In this case it may also be said to be used absolutely.

He lost the *last* of his money. TROL., THACK., Ch. I, 8.

In the first place, he half-poisoned all his neighbours, and they in turn were always on the look-out to pounce upon *any* of his numerous live-stock. HUGHES, TOM BROWN, Ch. III, 238.

The subject will be repeatedly reverted to in the discussion of the different kinds of adnominal words.

The use of the prop-word *one* will be discussed in a subsequent chapter.

Details about the substantival use of adjectives are found in the next chapter.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

---

### CONVERSION OF ADJECTIVES INTO NOUNS.

1. a) When an adjective is totally converted into a noun, it has all or most of the peculiar grammatical characteristics of a noun; i. e. so far as its meaning admits, it may be used as the subject or the object of the sentence; it may be preceded by a preposition; it may be preceded by the ordinary noun-modifiers: articles, adjectives, adnominal pronouns and numerals; and it admits of inflection for the genitive and the plural.

Thus we find all the characteristics of a pure noun in such a word as *liberal*, most of them in (my) *bettors*, (the) *deep*, (pure) *salt*. For illustration see below.

In the case of total conversion the meaning of the adjective often appears specialized, i. e. the quality or relation it expresses is represented as being pre-eminently found in certain classes of persons or things. Thus *a brilliant* is a diamond of particular brilliancy. Compare also:

He lived on plain wholesome *roast* and *boiled*. THACK., *The Four Georges*, III, 80 (in which *roast* and *boiled* stand respectively for *roast beef* and *boiled beef*).

- b) When an adjective is partially converted into a noun, it is still to a certain extent felt as an adnominal word, i. e. we are more or less distinctly sensible of a noun being understood after it, wherefore it lacks most of the above characteristics, at least the most typical, i. e. that of being inflected for the plural.

Thus in such a sentence as *The blind are much to be pitied*, the word *blind*, indeed, indicates persons, but it strikes us as equivalent to *the blind people*. It may, it is true, be used as the subject, object etc., of the sentence; it may be preceded by a preposition, but it is found with no other modifiers than the definite article and admits of no inflection whatsoever.

Similarly *the English* in *The English are proud of their country* is almost equivalent to *the English people*. It may be used in the same grammatical functions as *the blind*. In the place of the definite



article, the ordinary modifier, we occasionally find a demonstrative pronoun or even a numeral. But, although distinctly felt as a plural, it does not take the inflection for the plural, neither does it admit of being placed in the genitive, so that we have no hesitation in pronouncing *English* in the above application a partially converted adjective. See also 15.

Even when an adjective, or adjectival equivalent, exhibits such an indubitably substantival characteristic as inflection for the genitive, there may be something lacking in its conversion: i. e. the inflection for the plural may be wanting. This, among other cases, applies to *poor* (14, c), to certain past participles (18, b), and to certain comparatives (19).

Once or twice when he ventured on it (sc. the subject nearest his heart), *the latter's* countenance wore an ominous look. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VII, 71.

Compare: His eldest son . . . led his little brothers into mischief . . . A couple of *the latter* were sitting on the door-step. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 60.

Modification by the indefinite article normally infers capability of inflection for the plural. (See, however 13 and 14, c). Therefore in the first section of the present chapter some adjectives have been included which stand with the indefinite article, although at the moment of writing no documentary evidence of pluralization was available.

c) Many adjectives admit of both total and particular conversion, each sometimes in a great variety of meanings.

As the meaning of the converted adjective is often one that is incompatible with the notion of plurality, it is sometimes impossible to tell whether we have to deal with total or partial conversion. Such doubtful applications will be for the most part discussed under partial conversion. Anything like an exhaustive treatment of the various senses of converted adjectives cannot be attempted in these pages, but must be looked for in the dictionary. We will here confine ourselves to a detailed tabulation of one, taking as an instance the adjective *good*, which has a very extensive sense-development.

α) total conversion: i. The *goods* have not yet come to hand. *B. S. Let. Writer*, XII.

ii. To me it seems that a year *could* never bring anyone a more substantial *good* than the certitude of having helped another to bear some heavy burthen. G. ELIOT, *Letters* (*Times*, No. 1809, 703d).

There is a weird opinion, held by modern stupid people, that Work 'per se' is a *Good*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6035, 6b.

iii. It is no *good* hiding the truth. RIDER HAGGARD, *Mr. Mees. Will*.

iv. She was a charitable woman, and did a great deal of *good*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. VIII, 86.

v. The world enjoyed what *good* was in them. CARL., *Sart. Res.*, Ch. III, 11.

I can't help thinking that there must be some *good* in him. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 181.

Out of such friendship no *good* comes in the end to honest men. *Id.*, Ch. XIII, 180.

I dare say he has *good* about him. *Id.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XII, 151.

Mrs. Doria would hear no *good* of Lucy. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXXV, 314.

- vi. The chances are that she'll come to no *good*. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 36.  
He wished he might come to *good*. *ib.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 45.  
He came, as most men deem'd, to little *good*. MATTHEW ARNOLD, *The Scholar Gipsy*, IV.
- vii. The Tunbridge waters did no *good* to his deafness. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXIX, 299.  
Much *good* may it do you! Much *good* it has ever done you! DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 11.
- viii. It was his dearest wish and prayer to have it in his power to keep his children under his own eye, till they could discern between *good* and evil. BURNS, *Letter to Dr. Moore*, (51a.)  
Should he repay *good* with evil? BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. IX, 81.
- ix. Mrs. HARDC. Wasn't it all for your *good*, viper? Wasn't it all for your *good*? — TONY. I wish you would let me and my *good* alone, then. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, II (194).  
"It is for their *good*, my dear young sir! for their temporal and their spiritual *good*!" cried Mr. Trail. "And we purchase the poor creatures only for their benefit." THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 5. (Note the use of *benefit* as an alternative word for *good*.)  
All is ordered for our *good*. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. IV, 32.  
He was gone to the sea for the *good* of his health. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXVI, 155.
- x. The Duke of Connaught's presence . . . can only make for *good*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5436, 2a.
- xi. I was with an equal — one with whom I might argue — one whom, if I saw *good*, I might resist. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 500.
- §) partial conversion, some applications of a doubtful nature.
- i. Where the *good* cease to tremble at tyranny's nod. SHELLEY, *Death*.
- ii. True knowledge of any thing or creature is only of the *good* of it. RUSKIN, *Pleasure Eng.*<sup>1)</sup>  
He was going to get all the *good* out of this. HOWELLS, *Silas Lapham*.<sup>2)</sup>
- iii. \* He could not possibly hold out much longer, not a hundred thousand francs to the *good*, I am told. MAART. MAART., *My Lady Nobody*, I, 28.  
(= as a balance on the right side.)  
\*\* After the first day's polling the Unionist Party were three seats to the *good*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5484, 1b. (= in advance.)  
Income-tax is up to now £100.000 to the *good*. *Id.*  
\*\*\* Lord Selborne's declaration that the Opposition will repeal the Parliament Act is, of course, all to the *good* of the Liberal Party. *Id.*, No. 6029, 8d.  
(= to the advantage.)  
The opening of the Austrian Exhibition at Earl's Court naturally brings about a closer intercourse between the subjects of Edward VII and Francis Joseph. That is to the *good* and only to the *good*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVIII, 565a.
- iv. You've got rid of him for *good* and all. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. III, 38.  
She had quitted Wales for *good*. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XVI, 463.
- v. The misery with them all was, clearly, that they sought to interfere, for *good*, in human matters, and had lost the power for ever. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 30.  
A God who ordered all things for *good*. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. VI, 51.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *good*, C, II, 2b. — 2) *ib.*, 4.

- d) There is no conversion in the proper sense of the word, when the head-word is simply omitted for the sake of brevity.

Lassale insisted that she should go to the house of some friend; and he led her to Madame R., there to remain until things returned to *normal*. (sc. conditions.) *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 468, 521c.

The name "Kropp" and "Made in England" on the tang of the blade identifies the *genuine*. (sc. razor, or article.) *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3833, Advert.

#### TOTAL CONVERSION.

2. Total conversion was more usual in Early Modern English than it is now. (14, *b*, Obs. II.) In the latest English, however, it seems to be on the increase. It is spreading from the language of business, where brevity is particularly aimed at, and often practised regardless of the genius of the language. Thus it is convenient to use *empties* for *empty bottles*, *packing-cases*, *jars*, etc.; *balds* for *bald people*. American English is especially prone to this kind of formations. For instances of late conversion see especially 12.

It must, furthermore, be observed that it is especially adjectives belonging to the foreign (Romanic) element of the language that afford frequent instances of total conversion. With such as belong to the native element instances are less common. Many totally converted adjectives are practically *pluralia tantum*. Such of these as have already been illustrated in Chapter XXV, 19, *g*, will be passed over in silence in the following discussions. For information on the subject in hand see also DEN HERTOOG, *Nederlandsche Spraakkunst*, III, § 47; WENDT, *Die Syntax des Adjektivs im heutigen English*; FIJN VAN DRAAT, *De Drie Talen*, XIV, 39 ff; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 22.

According to certain characteristics most of the adjectives that admit of total conversion, may be united into certain groups, which are sometimes overlapping.

3. A large group is made up by such as end in certain suffixes belonging to the foreign element of the language. Some of these seem to be (still) more or less unusual in their changed function. In the following illustrations they are marked with a †.

Note that the plural form is uniformly used of any converted adjective giving its name to a bill or an act of Parliament. (Ch. XXV, 31, *b*.)

Some converted adjectives are used in several meanings. The defining of these meanings belongs to the department of lexicography, and has not, therefore, been attempted in these pages.

The suffixes referred to above are chiefly: *able*, *al*, *an*, *ant*, *ar*, *ary*, *ate*, *end*, *ent*, (*i*)*al*, (*i*)*an*, *ien*, *ible*, *ic*, *ile*, *ine*, *ior*, *ist*, *ite*, *ive*, *ute*, among which especially those printed in spaced type afford many instances.

**adulterant.** The quantities of *adulterants* employed are not to be perceptible at any time to the senses. *Times*.

**aggressive.** Austria . . . (is) certainly in no position to support a German *aggressive*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6177, 7a.

**alien.** As to their citizenship in the language, words may be classed as Naturals, Denizens, *Aliens* and Casuals. MURRAY, *Dict. Pref.* to Vol. I, 19.

**annual.** *Convolvulus minor* and *major* are florist's names of well-known garden *annuals*. MURRAY, s. v. *convolvulus*.

**astrigent.** A gargle with some *astrigent* will be found a simple remedy. WALT. RIPPMAHN, *Sounds of Spok. Eng.*, § 15.

**barbarian.** I passed through many regions of Asia, among the *barbarians* of the mountains as a pilgrim. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XII, 73.

**captive.** The English *captives* were left at the mercy of the guards. Mac., Clive.

**casual.** See under *alien*.

**ceremonial.** This was in fact a revival of a Pagan *ceremonial*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 20.

**classic.** He is a *classic* and worthy to tread measures with Molière. GEORGE MEREDITH, *Intr. to Congreve's 'The Way of the World'*.

The extract from his letters to Madame Novikoff will probably do more to preserve Kinglake's memory to future generations than his *classic* of the Crimean War. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXXI, 275b.

**cleric.** The new method of locomotion should be restricted to *clerics* of lesser rank. *Westm. Gaz.*

**clerical.** She is a *clerical*, which offends the Portuguese people. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCX X, 260b.

**confidant.** Whatever his sensations might have been, however, the stern old man would have no *confidant*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 384.

**consumptive.** I remember reading in New Zealand some proposed regulation for the exclusion of *consumptives*, who may frequently be met travelling in search of recovery in that part of the world. *Times*.

**constituent.** The impolicy of alienating and exasperating the majority of the *constituents* of a colony which had just been trusted with self-government, is obvious. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 53.

**contemporary.** The object of the book is to show the relation of these great ones to the work of their predecessors and *contemporaries*. *Acad.*, No. 1765, 209a.

**cordial.** See under *lenitive*.

**corrective.** I found myself forced to contemplate administering to him a sharp *corrective* in the presence of his school-fellows. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIV, 270.

† **degenerate.** The prisoner . . . belongs to that class of semi-responsible *degenerates* who offer such a singularly difficult problem to the moralist and the jurist. *Times*, No. 1816, 1b.

**dependant.** His generosity made him courted by many *dependants*. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XVI, 98.

† **detrimental.** Victor Mowbray, if his uncle does not make him his heir, is all that any man could desire, but if not his uncle's heir, a mere *detrimental*. Mrs. HUNGERFORD, *The Three Graces*.<sup>1)</sup> (= *undesirable suitor*, e.g. *younger son*, slang.)

It was a thousand pities he was such a *detrimental*. KATH. TYNAN, *Johnny's Luck*.

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *De Drie Talen*, XIV.



**dissuasive.** No *dissuaves* could alter her resolve. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 39.  
**domestic.** The Prince now saw all the *domestics* cheerful. JOHNSON, *Ras.*, Ch. XX, 118.

† **eccentric.** Wilderspin is one of the noblest-minded and most admirable men now breathing, but a great *eccentric*. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. VI, 429.

**ecclesiastic.** The *ecclesiastics* and reactionaries who had engineered the counter-revolution. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4983, 1b.

† **electric.** The new trains are so clean that passengers are beginning to give the steam trains the 'go by' and wait for an *electric*. *Times*.

† **effeminate.** I can feel thy follies too, and with a just disdain | Frown at *effeminates*. COWPER, *Task*, II. 1)

**elastic.** See under **rigid**.

† **epileptic.** The hundred or so acres of land are being reserved for the physical incapables, the *epileptics* and so forth. H. NORMAN, *The World's Work*. 2)

† **exclusive.** He is as much among *exclusives* as if he were at St. James's. LYTON, *England and the English*. 1)

**exotic.** Vases of *exotics* bloomed on all sides. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVII, 200.

† **expectant.** Lord Cardigan was an *expectant* of death. KINGLAKE, *The Invasion of the Crimea*.

† **exquisite.** His style is exquisite certainly, as is the style of an *exquisite* who takes too much and too conscious pains about his dress. *Truth*, No. 1802, 82a. (= *coxcomb*, *fop*.)

† **extravagant.** Must I confess that Charles -- that libertine, that *extravagant*, that bankrupt in fortune and reputation -- that he it is for whom I am thus anxious and malicious? SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1 (364).

**familiar.** i. I whispered to one of the *familiars* and begged an interpretation of the strange scene before me. WASH. IRVING, *Sketch-Bk.*, *The Art of Book-making*, 37a.

Timothy's Bess, though retaining her maiden appellation among her *familiars*, had long been the wife of Sandy Jim. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 14. His genius made him the *familiar* of princes. D. LAING PURVES, *Life of Swift*, 39.

ii. The road, bat, and cat were supposed to be *familiars* of witches and acquainted with their mistresses' secrets. *Note to Hamlet*, III, 4, 190 in *Clar. Press*. (= *spirit*.)

It (sc. the "Holy Office") having its *familiars* in every house. MOTLEY, *Rise*, II, Ch. III. (= *person rendering certain services in the Pope's or some bishop's household*.)

**fanatic.** I hope they will at length put a check to the inordinate capacity of some *fanatics* for believing evil of political opponents. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6153, 4b.

† **fashionable.** A very pleasing and witty *fashionable*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XIV, 146.

The *fashionables* wore boots. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 22.

A host of *fashionables* . . . entered the room. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXV, 270.

1) FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV.

2) WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adject.*, 44.

† **flippant**. The stern were mild when thou wert by, | The *flippant* put himself to school | And heard thee. TEN., In Memoriam, CX.

The *flippants* and pragmatics who infest all the highways of society. Fraser's Mag., XII, 269.<sup>1)</sup>

† **fundamental**. All the Commissioners are agreed on what we may call *fundamentals*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4931, 1a.

It is one of the *fundamentals* of our politics that legislation which has for its object the grant of public money or the imposition of burdens upon the taxpayer, is under the entire control of the House of Commons. Ib., No. 5060, 1b.

**gallants**. *Gallants* who had served a campaign in Flanders. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. III, 317.

† **human**. For days too, the dry, tight cold had drawn up the nerves of the *humans* in it (sc. the high Alpine valley) to a sharp, thin pitch of exhilaration. Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 3c.

As far as science is concerned, the present *humans* will still continue to wallow in the mire of ignorance. Ib., No. 6111, 13a.

I almost wish I were a *human*. Ib., No. 5412, 8d.

**illiterate**. Mr. Barton's Bill excludes not only idiots and criminals, but *illiterates*, and persons likely to become paupers. Times.

Think of our 75 per cent of *illiterates*, of our undeveloped resources, of the ruins which lie around us. Rev. of Rev., CCXIX, 260b.

† **imaginative**. Mr. Keary considers that Scott was an Intellectual rather than an *imaginative*.<sup>2)</sup>

**imbecile**. It is unfair to put handcuffs on *imbeciles*. CHESTERTON (Il. Lond. News, No. 3850, 132c).

**immorta**. Alas! O goddess, if thou slayest me, | What new *immortal* can I serve but thee? W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Atalanta's Race, 36b.

Thus for a few shillings, the reader may have a whole bookshelf, of the *immortals*. Advert. Everyman's Libr.

† **incapable**. See under **epileptic**.

The ravages committed by this unfortunate rendering her dismissal necessary, she was succeeded by a long line of *incapables*. Dick., Cop., Ch. XLIV, 318b.

It cannot be said too strongly that every part of the world is too crowded to want an *incapable*. Truth, No. 1802, 112b.

The mental incapacity, but physical vigour of certain negroes suggests, at least, that we may make a sub-distinction in our class of *incapables*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6035, 10a.

† **incidental**. Apart, then, from the *incidentals* of these particular volumes, there is more to be hoped for from a study of sixteenth or seventeenth century Holland, than from a similar study of Holland in the succeeding centuries. Westm. Gaz., No. 6111, 11b.

It is this question which Russia was called upon to settle as an *incidental* in the last rites to the Grand Duke. Ib., No. 4937, 1b.

† **incompetent**. She stood out from this grotesque rabble of *incompetents*. BLACK., Highland Cousins.<sup>3)</sup>

† **inconstant**. But, alas! the *inconstant* had no intention to return. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. XXII, 150.

1) MURRAY. 2) WENDT, Die Synt. des Adject., 44.

3) FIJN VAN DRAAT, Drie Talen, XIV.

**incurable.** A serious and useful scheme to make an hospital for *incurables*. SWIFT, *Title of a Treatise*. (Thus *passim*.)

† **indifferent.** You only begin to do things, when you have... driven the waverers and *indifferents* into one camp or the other. Westm. Gaz., No. 6153, 4a.

† **inevitable.** These are *inevitables* of the situation. Westm. Gaz., 6165, 1b.

† **infuriate.** *Infuriates* dashed at the carriage and horses' heads. FORBES, *Memories and Studies*.<sup>1)</sup>

**innocent.** i. Wouldst thou have had this *innocent* grow up to the grossness and indocility which too often accompany maturer swinehood? LAMB., *Dis. upon Roast Pig*, (257).

What an example you set to this *Innocent*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. L, 518.

Thus wandered these poor *innocents*, | Till death did end their grief. (?), *The Children in the Wood*, XVI (Rainbow, I, 51).

Note: a) *Innocents' Day* = Dec. 28, festival of the slaughter of children by Herod (Matth. II, 16). β) *Massacre of the Innocents* = (in Parliamentary slang) sacrifice of measures at the end of the session for want of time. This is alluded to in: Why should we make haste to clasp hands still dripping with the blood of *massacred innocents*. Rev. of Rev., CXCIX, 3b. Beside this annual *slaughter of the innocents*, the massacre which made King Herod infamous, pales into insignificance. Ib., CC, 210a.

ii. "Go along with you!" exclaimed Susan, giving him a push. "*Innocents* like you, too! Who'll begin next?" DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XXII, 207. (= *idiot*.)

† **inseparable.** Now, Christine Bacon was Marian's 'dearest friend' — all girls have such an *inseparable*. BROOKS, *A Trip to Washington*, 2.<sup>2)</sup>

† **insolent.** I was forced to draw aside to the wall, and wait until the hoary *insolent* swept by. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 41.

† **insolvent.** He opposed the cruel laws against *insolvents*. DOWDEN, *The French Rev. and Eng. Lit.*

† **intellectual.** i. See *imaginative*. (Compare also: *The King's English*, 22, where it is stated that so recently as 1905 the word was apologized for by *The Spectator* as 'a convenient neologism'.)

ii. I could wish that men of tolerable *intellectuals* would rather trust their own natural reason. SWIFT, *Letter to a Young Clergyman*, (469b).

† **intermittent.** Ague = the cold fit or rigor which precedes a fever or a paroxysm of fever in *intermittents*. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*

**intimate.** Mrs. Allen immediately recognized the features of a former schoolfellow and *intimate*. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. IV, 19.

He has been an *intimate* of courts and royal personages. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 496, 577b.

† **irreconcilable.** We need not give a second thought to the deliberately disloyal utterances of a few Irish *irreconcilables*. Times.

† **irrepressible.** It all seemed so very quiet and solemn that even our young *irrepressibles* were awed into wondering whispers. Brooks, *A Trip to Washington*, 46.<sup>2)</sup>

**juvenile.** The old hands, of course, take no notice of this order to look joyful. Not so the *juveniles*, who, during many days, cultivate the 'Commercial smile', and look as if afflicted with face-ache. Westm. Gaz., No. 5376, 3a.

Judging from these specimens of aged *juveniles* the stage does not seem to sap the vitality of those who tread its boards. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 360a.

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV. <sup>2)</sup> ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 22.

† **legitimate**. Your *legitimates* always get fat. MOORE, *The Fudge Family*, III.<sup>1)</sup>

**lenitive**. We really think it right not to harass him any longer with nauseous remedies, but rather to throw in cordials and *lenitives*, and wait in patience for the natural termination of the disorder. JEFFREY, *Wordsworth*.

**mandatory**. France is the *mandatory* of Europe. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 313b.

**mercenary**. *Mercenary* fought not *mercenary*. LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 20.

† **miserable**. Sacha, that *miserable*, has ruined himself for ever. SAVAGE, *My Official Wife*, 269.

In their pride of cheap success (they) belaboured unmercifully the *miserables* of the commune. FORBES, *Memories and Studies*.<sup>1)</sup>

† **militant**. King Ferdinand appears to have succeeded once more in controlling his *militants*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6005, 2a.

**moderate**. The allegations of the Standard have elicited from a leading *Moderate* a repudiation of its charges. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCVI, 125a.

**mortal**. I am a *mortal* and liable to fall. DICK, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 36.

† **national**. England is powerless to protect her *nationals* against the fiat of Russia. *Times*

The Powers ... have taken precautions for the safety of their *nationals*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6071, 1b.

**native**. A rich *native* whom he longed to plunder, had taken refuge at Calcutta. MAC., *Clive*, (513a.)

† **natural**. i. See under *alien*.

ii. Fortune makes Nature's *natural* the cutter-off of Nature's wit. As you like it, I, 2, 44. (= *half-witted person*.)

You always were the greatest *natural* that ever was let loose out of leading-strings. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 228.

**necessary**. Love is a *necessary* of life to her. BERN. SHAW, *Getting Married*, (219).

**negative**. Two *negatives* make an affirmative. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXIV.

† **neutral**. The invitation of the Russian government to meet at the Hague in July to consider the questions of the rights of *neutrals* [etc.]. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXC VII, 448b.

† **notable**. February has carried off many *notablès*. *Ib.*, CCVII, 289a.

† **obstructive**. The *obstructives* had the game in their own hands. *Ib.*, CXC VII, 486.

**ordinary**. They seem for the most part shabby in attire, dingy of linen, lovers of billiards and brandy, and cigars and greasy *ordinaries*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 293.

**orient**. The toughest pearl-diver may dive to his utmost depth, and return not only with sea-wreck but with true *orients*. CARLYLE, *Sart. Res.*, I, Ch. II, 5. (= *precious pearls*.)

**oriental**. *Divan* = among the Turks, and other *orientals*, a court of justice. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*

Europeans are essentially envious, while *Orientals* accept in principle the status quo, because they believe it to be the result of a fatal evolution. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXII, 65a,

**original**. i. \* All that know me do me the honour to say I am an *original*. WYCH., *Plain Dealer*, II, 1.

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV.



\*\* I can read Dante in the *original*. SPENCER, *Education*, Ch. I, 27a.

ii. Kindly return the testimonials, as they are *originals*. Everybody's Letter Writer.

The reader familiar with Adonais will recognize the passage in that poem of which we here have the *originals*. WIL. MICH. ROSSETTI, Shelley's Adonais, 68.

**particular.** When he had asked Ned a few *particulars*, he looked up. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

**Peculiar.** This menace is kept before the public by the Peculiar People. The *Peculiar*s, as they are called, have gained their name by believing that the Bible is infallible. BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, Pref., XVII (= *one of the Peculiar People, a modern religious sect having no church organization and relying on prayer alone for cure of disease*. Now obsolete in this sense. MURRAY, s. v. *peculiar* B, 1, b.)

A modern doctor thinks nothing of . . . going into the witness-box and swearing a *Peculiar* into prison for six months. *Ib.*

† **pragmatic.** See under **flippant**.

† **persuasive.** Had all the artifice of hell been employed in composing a *persuasive*, it could not have had a more instantaneous or favourable effect. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXII, 154.

† **pertinent.** The whole farm with all its *pertinents* is let to six tenants. THE DUKE OF ARGYLL, *Scotland as it was and as it is*.<sup>1)</sup>

† **politic.** The morality . . . was made use of not only by the good people who wanted to instruct, but also by the *politics* and fanatics who wanted to convince or confute. J. J. JUSSERAND, *Lit. Hist. of the Eng. People*, V, Ch. V, 9.

† **political.** The gaol was crowded with prisoners, many of whom were '*politicals*'. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXC VII, 495a.

**preliminary.** The exegetical and theological discussions, which are the *preliminary* of dining, have not been quite so spirited as usual. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VI, 48. She would go to see him without *preliminary*. *Ib.*, Ch. VII, 58.

**private.** The party moved on again, the two amateurs marching with reversed arms like a couple of *privates* at a royal funeral. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.

**proficient.** A correspondence followed, which may be studied with advantage by those who wish to become *proficients* in the ignoble art of flattery. MAC., *Fred.*, (353b).

**progressive.** This makes a solid bloc of *Progressives* 218 strong. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXC VII, 456b.

**reactionary.** The Conservative Republicans hold the Centre and the *Reactionaries* the extreme Right. *Ib.*, 455a. (See also under *ecclesiastic*.)

† **regular.** The chief part of the French *regulars* were gone upon expeditions northward. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LI, 533.

† **religious.** Most *religious* spent a large part of their working day in the cloister itself.<sup>2)</sup>

**requisite.** The most important *requisite* for the practical phonetician is facility in handling phonetic notation. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, *Introd.*, 6.

**reverend.** The *Reverends* F. V. Morris, I. G. Ward, etc. *Macm. Mag.*

**revolutionary.** In the past he has never hesitated to defend even the excesses of the *Revolutionaries*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXC VI 352b.

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV.

<sup>2)</sup> WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adj.*, 44.

**rigid.** For convenience we may describe the two sections as the *Rigids* and the *Elastics*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6153, 5b.

† **romantic.** Here was exactly the kind of problem that called on a *romantic* for a solution. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 474, 714b.

Justin McCarthy lived and died a *romantic*. *Id.*, No. 495, 546a.

† **royal.** The Kaiser and the *Royals*.<sup>1)</sup>

† **solitary.** At least, if one had to dispose of a deserted child, the experiment of dropping it by the cottage of a *solitary* in the hope that he would bring it up to its advantage and to his own regeneration, would hardly be tried by a judicious philanthropist. *LESLIE STEPHEN*, *George Eliot*, Ch. VII, 106.

Downward from his mountain-gorge | Stept the long-hair'd long-bearded *solitary*. *TEN.*, *En. Ard.*, 632.

**specific.** This bad success, in all appearance, attached him the more to his *specific*. *SMOL.*, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XIX, 126.

**stimulant.** I supposed she required strong *stimulants* to excite her to come out of her apathy. *Mrs. Gask.*, *Cranf.*, Ch. XVI, 311.

† **ultimate.** Before the *ultimate* is arrived at, a great deal of international legislation will be necessary to keep these half-ton birds of the air (sc. aeroplanes) from endangering the lives of the citizens of the countries over which they fly. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 314b.

† **undesirable.** Her crew were refused permission to land, on the score that they were destitute *undesirables*. *The Eng. Newspaper Reader*, 151.<sup>2)</sup>

**unfortunate.** i. She thanked you in the name of France for all your benevolence towards our *unfortunates*. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXIV, 380.

The aforesaid Martin was one of those *unfortunates* who were at the time quite out of their places at a public school. *HUGHES*, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237. His first idea was that some *unfortunate* had thus ended his life and his miseries. *Mrs. CRAIK*, *The Sculptor of Bruges*.

See also under **incapable**.

ii. Now we have again the same co-workers, a policeman and an *unfortunate* *Sat. Rev.*<sup>3)</sup> (= *prostitute, especially a homeless street-walker*. Probably, in the first place, the popular usage arose from a misreading of Hood's lines: One more *Unfortunate*, | Weary of breath, | Rashly importunate, | Gone to her death.)

**unseizable.** Public curiosity will make a stand for the extradition of another *unseizable*. *Id.*<sup>3)</sup>

† **unusual.** We soon grew to understand and feel that there was an "unusual" amongst us. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 500, 709a.

**vegetable.** I have dinner at 2 o'clock, fish occasionally, joint or poultry always, two, and sometimes three, *vegetables*. *G. R. Sims* (*Rev. of Rev.*, CCXIX, 240b).

**visitant.** There are some nations that send few *visitants* to Palestine. *JOHNSON*, *Ras.*, Ch. XI, 66.

**voluntary.** Sitting down to the piano, she rattled away a triumphant *voluntary* on the keys. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XIII, 140.

The organ begins a little *voluntary*. *I. ZANGWILL*, *The Next Religion*, I, 54. (= *organ solo played before, during, or after service*.)

**voluptuary.** This led many to regard him as a sensual and intellectual *voluptuary*. *Mac.*, *Fred.*, (664a).

1) WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adj.*, 44. 2) ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 22.

3) FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV.

† **vulgar.** i. What *vulgars* call a bore. STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. We talk of a credulous *vulgar*, without always recollecting that there is a vulgar incredulity. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Introd., 13.

#### 4. Some denote a nationality. These include:

a) names in *an*: *American, Australian, Belgian, Italian, Prussian, Russian*, etc.

b) a few others: *Arab, Asiatic, German, Greek, Norman, Roman, Saxon*.

Cannot the *Asiatics* and *Africans* invade their coast? JOHNSON, Ras., Ch. XI, 66.

The *Persians* are called the French of the East; we will call the *Arabs* Oriental *Italians*. CARLYLE, Hero Worsh., 44.

The *Arabs* have a fable that the Great Pyramid was built by antediluvian kings, and alone, of all the works of men, bore the weight of the flood. MAC., Popes, (562a).

We must look cautiously at theories as to the Ocean and island routes by which *Asiatics* may have migrated to people the New World. EDWARD B. TYLOR, Anthropology, Ch. III, 105.

Note. Nationality-names in *ese* and the word *Swiss*, although having no inflection for the plural, also come under this heading. (Ch. XXV, 8, b.) Those ending in *sh* or *ch* (15), on the other hand, admit only of partial conversion. When these latter nouns are used to denote a language they must, however, be regarded as true nouns. (5.)

They deserted together with three others: one *Swiss*, one *Austrian*, and one a *Russian*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVI, 313a.

#### 5. Some are names of languages.

These adjectives may be regarded as but partially converted into nouns when, as is sometimes the case, they are preceded by the definite article. In the last group of the following quotations they may also be considered to be used absolutely, with the noun *language* which occurs in a preceding or subsequent part of the discourse, understood. This view however, loses some plausibility from the fact that the definite article might have been suppressed, apparently, without detriment to idiomatic correctness.

i. \* *English*, like all living languages, changes from generation to generation. SWEET, Sounds, § 4.

\*\* But supposing my own skill in *the ancient Scottish* were sufficient to invest the dialogue with its peculiarities, a translation must have been necessary for the benefit of the general reader. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Intr., 16. By this compromise the wretched curate was put more than ever into the power of his pupil, and *the Greek* and mathematics suffered correspondingly. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VI, 68.

The elder (sc. of the young men) seems to know a power of Latin, though, and speaks *the French* and *the German* too. Id., Virg., Ch. LXI, 632.

Can he speak *the High Dutch*? Ib.

Even Frederic William, with all his rugged Saxon prejudices thought it necessary that his children should know French, and quite unnecessary that they should be well versed in German. *The Latin* was positively interdicted. MAC., Fred., (662a).

1) FIJN VAN DRAAT, Drie Talen, XIV.

From the Atlantic to the vicinity of the Rhine *the Latin* has, during many centuries, been predominant. *Id.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 4.

- ii. The rich and energetic language of Luther driven by *the Latin* from the schools of pedants, and by *the French* from the palaces of kings, had taken refuge among the people. *Id.*, *Fred.*, (675*b*).

The flexional languages are not all equally flexional, this character has its degrees. *The Greek* is not so rigidly flexional as *the Latin*. But both of them are far more so than any of the languages of modern Europe. Of the great languages, that which has most shaken off inflexion is *the English*, and next to *the English, the French*.- *EARLE*, *Phil.*, § 223.

Quotations, words, phrases, proverbs and colloquial expressions from *the Greek, the Latin* and modern foreign languages. *WEBST.*, *Appendix*.

It may here be observed that in some combinations the definite article does not bear being suppressed. *WENDT*, *E. S.*, XV, 471.

- i. What is *the French* of 'I do not understand?' Think of *the French* (sc. equivalent). Compare *the French* (sc. equivalent).
- ii. The book has been translated from *the German*. (But: Translate this from *German* into *English*.)

## 6. Many denote a creed, sect or party.

Most of these end in *al*, *an*, *ant*, *ic*, *ite*, *ive*: *Radical, Lutheran, Protestant, Catholic, Methodist, Jacobite, Conservative*. (See also 3.)

The *Moderates* swept the *Progressives* from the field. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXX, 331*a*.

## 7. Some are comparatives, which in their altered application are mostly preceded by a possessive pronoun or a genitive. Those belonging to the native element are usually found in the plural: *better, elder, younger; junior, senior, inferior, superior, major, minor*.

To these we may add the adjectives *coeval, equal* and *like*, as also indicating the result of a comparison.

Note that *elder(s)* sometimes means practically the same as *parent(s)*. As *MURRAY* marks this sense as obsolete, it seems advisable to produce all the available evidence to disprove *MURRAY*'s opinion.

**better.** i. Thou wretched, rash, intruding fool, farewell! | I took thee for *thy better*. *Hamlet*, III, 4, 32.

It never entered his head, while conversing with Jack and Tom, that he was in any respect *their better*. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 317.

The American was his match in most things, and his *better* in many. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 159.

- ii. The family endeavour to cope with *their betters*. *GOLDSMITH*, *Vic.*, Ch. X. It isn't for a poor chaplain to meddle with *his betters'* doings. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 321.

**elder.** i. \* Holding his own opinion, and asserting his rights as a wise *elder*. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. X, 87*b*.

"A cursory visit," said the Doctor, "a formal inspection — you cannot fairly judge boys by that. They will naturally be reserved and contrained in the presence of an *elder*." *F. ANSTEY*, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 370.

Sara Bernhardt is *another* youthful *elder* who sets time at defiance. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCVI, 360*a*.

\*\* Clive felt a tender admiration for his father's goodness, a loving delight in contemplating *his elder's* character. *THACK.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. XIV, 164.



Half the girl's heart went out to *this rugged elder* whose honour was so touchy. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. VII, 99.

- ii. \* *Our elders* say | The barren touched in this holy chase, | Shake off their sterile curse. JUL. CAES., I, 2, 7.

When we left the Jews' quarter, *the elders of our party* wished to return to the hotel. G. ELIOT, The Lifted Veil, 309.

Our concern is for the group of youths from sixteen to twenty-one, who are going the same way as *their incorrigible elders*. TIMES.

\*\* While Becky Sharp was on her own wing in the country, Amelia lay snug in her home of Russell Square; if she went into the world, it was under the guidance of *her elders*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XII, 118.

*Theo's elders*, thankfully remembering their own prime, sit softly by and witness this pretty comedy performed by their young people. Id., Virg., Ch. LXVIII, 717. He ruled with me . . . that the matter had gone out of the hands of the parents on either side; that having given their consent some months previously, *the elders* had put themselves out of court. Id., Ch. LXXVII, 819. (Here *elders* occurs, apparently, to obviate the repeating of *parents*.)

A stray 'Waverley' came in her way; and when that was returned to its owner before she had finished it, she began writing out the story for herself, till *her elders* got it back for her. LESLIE STEPHEN, G. Eliot, Ch. I, 11.

She accepted everything with the quiet confidence of a child who is vaguely conscious that there is trouble in the house, but is quite certain that *its elders* will soon make it all right. EDNA LYALL, Knight Err., Ch. VII, 53.

\*\*\* *The elders* of the synagogue, the *elders* in the Apostolic Church. WEBST., Diet.

The Kirk Session is composed of the Minister of the parish and of *lay-elders*. McCULLOCK.<sup>1)</sup>

**junior.** i. Percy Bysshe Shelley, the elder of the two (sc. Shelley and Keats) was *Byron's junior* by four years. SAINTSBURY, Ninet. Cent., Ch. II, 81.

ii. Persons of Age and Authority spoke kindly to *their juniors*. BENTLEY.<sup>1)</sup>

**senior.** i. The Colonel told *his senior* briefly, and in broken accents, the circumstances of the case. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XIX, 203.

He was *the girl's senior* by several years. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. IV, 40.

ii. Mr. Long waylaid three or four of *the seniors* as they were filing into the school-hall after chapel. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VII, 96.

**younger.** He was *his younger* by many years. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. V, 40b.

Note. This seems to be the only application of *younger* as a (quasi-)noun. Note the use of *younger ones* as compared with the preceding *elders* in:

Children of all ages, *the elders* doing their share in portage, *the younger ones* held by the hand. TIMES, No. 1808, 685a.

**coeval.** He is forlorn among *his coevals*; *his juniors* cannot be his friends. LAMB., Essays of Elia.<sup>2)</sup>

**equal.** i. I never saw *your equal*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVI, 165.

ii. Friendship is a disinterested commerce between *equals*. GOLDS., Good-nat. man, I.

**like.** i. Every *like* is not the same. Proverb (HUNT, Note to Jul. Cæs., II, 2, 129.)

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *coeval*, B, 1.

- ii. \* Therefore 't is meet | That noble minds keep ever with *their likes*. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 308.

Pass, and mingle with *your likes*. TEN., Princ., VI, 321.

\*\* Are there no harems still left in Stamboul for *the likes of thee* to sweep and clean? DU MAURIER, Trilby, 210.

*The likes* of her doesn't condescend to look at *the likes of me*. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander, Ch. III, 41.

She's not for *the likes of me*. WILL H. OGILVIE, (Westm. Gaz., No. 5409, 3a). And that is all very well for him and for "*the likes of him*". HOR. HUTCHINSON (Westm. Gaz., No. 6053, 2c).

Note I. From the fact that in the last quotation this latter application of *like* is apologized for by means of inverted commas, it would seem that it is now hardly admissible in Standard English.

II. In the following quotations *like* appears only partially converted:

- i. George hated Jack Firebrace and Tom Humbold, and all *their like*. THACK., Virg., Ch. V, 46.

These people and *their like* gave the pompous Russell Square merchant pompous dinners back again. Id., Van. Fair, II, Ch. VII, 77.

You and *your like* have your fixed ideas of the upper class and the lower. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., III, 205.

To her and *her like*, birth itself was an ordeal of degrading personal compulsion. HARDY, Tess., VI, Ch. LI, 464.

- ii. My aunt did . . . *the like*. DICK., Cop., Ch. LII, 371a.

And lastly . . . he said blasphemously that I and mine had cheated your ladyship . . . out of many a fat manor ere now . . . with more of *the like*, which I blush to repeat. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. I, 9b.

Such dresses, such diamonds — you never saw *the like*. HALL CAINE, The Christian, I, 331.

8. Some denote the most characteristic quality of a substance: *bitter, fat, lean, liquid, salt, sweet*, etc.

Some *bitter* o'er the flowers its bubbling venom flings. BYRON, Child Harold, I, LXXXII.

9. Some are names of periodicals, e.g.: *daily, weekly, fortnightly, bimonthly, quarterly*. Thus also (*a penny*) *dreadful*, etc.

Destined to perish in shilling *dreadfuls*. F. HARRISON, Choice Books, 67.<sup>1)</sup>

10. Some are names of colours, and have in their altered function a great variety of meanings. To give an instance: *blue* - 1) blue colour, 2) pigment of a blue colour, 3) blue clothing or dress, 4) blue species or variety of (animals, objects or substances), 5) blue sky, 6) blue sea, 7) Blue-coat boy, scholar of Christ's College, 8) blue-stocking, 9) female learning or pedantry, 10) second ring from the centre of the largest coloured blue, 11) a man wearing blue as a badge. As a plural tantum we find *blues* in the sense of 12) company of troops distinguished by wearing blue, 13) blue-devils. MURRAY.

The other names of colours are found in an equal variety of meanings.

- i. A night my shallop . . . drove | The fragrant, glistening deeps, and clove | The citron-shadows in the *blue*. TEN., Recol. of the Arabian Nights, II.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *dreadful*, C.

I'm on the sea! I'm on the sea! | I am where I would ever be; | With the *blue* above, and the *blue* below, | And silence wheresoe'er I go. BARRY CORNWALL, *The Sea* (Rainbow, I, 19).

As Harry speaks very low, in the *grey* of evening, with sometimes a break in his voice, we all sit touched and silent. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 990 (Compare: When I wake at night..., in the *greyness* of the evening, ... some vague image seems to hover on the skirt of vision. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XX, 114.)

- ii. The three shadows throw their *crimsons*, and *clarets*, and *bronzes* upon the fringe of the deep blue sheet of water. CONAN DOYLE, *Ref.*, 289. There have been no risings of *blacks* against *whites* in the Transvaal. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 47.

You sit out there (sc. in Paris) on the boulevard after dinner, and all the world goes gaily by — English, Americans, Russians, Germans, Spaniards, Italians and Turks — *Whites*, *Yellows*, *Blacks*, *Browns* — all colours, shapes and sizes. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. VII, 53.

Note I. Peculiar to English is the substantival use of the names of colours when modified by an adjective or an adnominal noun of a classifying import, the whole being preceded by the indefinite article. When a preposition precedes, such a noun as *colour* or *shade* is readily supplied, and the adjective may then be considered to be only partially converted. But this is less plausible when there is no preceding preposition. In this latter case the Dutch practice, which rejects the article and, which accordingly, has an adjective that is preceded by an adverbial modifier, is also met with in English.

- i. His nether garments were *of a bluish grey*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IV, 23b. Its colour had changed *from a gaudy blue* to a faint lack-lustre shade of grey. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 13b.
- ii. The head-waiter got to be *a bright-scarlet*. *Ib.*, Ch. LIII, 415b. Meg had turned *a deadly white*. *Id.*, *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 34. Its nose is *a delicate red* with black spots. JEROME, *Three men*, Ch. VI, 67. You know my hair is a sort of golden brown, and *a dark red* matches it beautifully. *Ib.*, 75. Their eyes were blue or grey, their hair *a light brown*. W. ARCHER (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 13b). In his last days the hair had become *a silver white*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 483, 162c.
- iii. The eye was *dark blue* with an expression both majestic and benignant. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. I, 54a.
- II. In such a sentence as the following the converted adjective is used in a collective sense, denoting *clothes*, while the preceding word is an ordinary adnominal modifier:  
Lady Winterbourne was dressed from heart to foot in *severe black*. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 163.

11. Many do not answer to a general description. In their changed grammatical function some of these have developed a great variety of senses, for which see the dictionary.

- a) such as belong to the native element, among many others: *black* (Ch. XXV, 19, g), *cold*, *cool*, *dark*, *deep*, *dry* (by analogy to *wet*, as yet only in occasional use), *eastern*, *flat*, *good* (1c), *holy* (in *the Holy of Holies*), *left*, *odd* (Ch. XXV, 19, g), *open*, *right*, *rough*

{Ch. XXV, 19, *g*), *round* (Ch. XXV, 34), *runaway*, *shallow*, *sweet* (Ch. XXV, 19, *g*), *thoroughbred*, *three-year-old* (as the name of a horse, compare: the *three-year-old* = the three-year-old children), *upright*, *wanton*, *well*, *western*, *wet*, *white* (Ch. XXV, 19, *g*), *wild* (Ch. XXV, 19, *g*), *worthy*.

**cold.** The *cold* became intense. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 16.

He was left out in the *cold*. FOWLER, *Conc. Oxf. Dict.* (= not looked after.)  
He has caught (a) *cold*.

**cool.** The *cool* of the day, the *cool* of the evening or the morning. WEBST., *Dict.*  
In the *cool* of the evening Dr. Riccabocca walked home across the fields. LYTON, *My Novel*, I, Ch. IX, 31.

Go out into the *cool*. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XXII, 201.

**dark.** (He turned out) after *dark*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 2 (= after *nightfall*).  
I reached home after *dark*, drenched to the skin. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. V, 37.

Can you walk in the streets at *dark*? LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 53 (= at *night*).  
Father, I am lonely in the *dark*. DICK., *Crick.*, II, 47 (Compare: Even in the *darkness* they have no fear of lying down. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XX, 117.)

**deep.** i. If a storm should come and awake the *deep*. | What matter? I shall ride and sleep. BARRY CORNWALL, *The Sea*, II (Rainbow, I, 19).

ii. Knight my shallop, rustling thro' | The low and bloomed foliage, drove | The fragrant glistening *deeps*. TEN., *Recol. of the Arab. Nights*, II.

Love and hate and greed go down into the *deep* of Nature, but boundaries are our own invention. TRUTH, No. 1802, 83a.

**dry.** Such remarks are generally made in the *dry*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 3a.

**eastern.** To how many maimed and mourning millions is the first and sole angel visitant, him *easterns* call Azrael. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XVII, 224.

When *Easterns* of some education say to me: "We can't respect our women; they are not like you English," I give the obvious retort "Because we are brought up differently." Westm. Gaz., No. 5555, 4a.

**flat.** i. \* Striking the *flat* of his hand against that which the armourer expanded towards him. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. III, 37.

\*\* He was blowed if he didn't think Pen was such a *flat* as not to know what coaching meant THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 41.

ii. The military cleared the piazza with the *flats* of their swords. Manch. Exam.<sup>1)</sup>

**left.** He made a movement as if he would perform the feat of writing with his *left*. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. I, 3.

The long-nosed lad, who sat on the other side of the table on Mr. Swindles' *left*, was everybody's laughing-stock. G. MOORE, *Esth. Waters*, Ch. II, 15.

**open.** Together let us beat this ample field. | Try what the *open*, what the covert yield. POPE, *Essay on Man*, I, 10.

I should like to draw attention to the historical incident which brought this question out into the *open*. Westm. Gaz.

**right.** He sat on the *right* of Mrs. Brough. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 74.

**rough.** Wholesale wreckage by an East-end *rough*. Police News.

**round.** i. His social obligations compel him to make a *round* of visits. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. I, 9.

He made him turn, and stop, and bound; | To gallop, and to trot the *round*. MICH. DRAYTON, *A Fairy Prince* arming himself for Battle (Rainb., I, 24).

ii. The guns and 70,000 *rounds* of ammunition were seized. Daily Chronicle.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



**runaway.** They (sc. the policemen) must also be expert wielders of the lasso, which is often used to stop the *runaway*. 11. LOND. NEWS, No. 3679, 581. The *runaway* is never brought to a sudden stop with the lariat. Ib.

**thoroughbred.** Don't take *thoroughbreds* for cart-horses. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. VII, 134.

**three-year-old.** The race was only open to *three-year-olds*. (Thus also occasionally similar combinations with other numerals: Tell me something else about the emotions of the *fifty-year-olds*. EL. GLYN, Refl. of Ambrosine, III, Ch. II, 291. Compare also: They make the prettiest, quaintest groups you need wish to see, these London bairns, especially the babies, who toddle in twos and threes, the *six-year-old* leading the *four-or three-year old*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5185, 14a.)

**upright.** gallows = an apparatus for inflicting the punishment of death by hanging, usually consisting of two *uprights* and a cross-piece. MURRAY, s. v. *gallows*.

**wanton.** i. Philip of Spain wondered how "a *wanton*" could hold in check the policy of the Escorial. GREEN, Short. Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 371.

What was she after all but a mere capricious *wanton*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 468, 522b.

ii. My husband squandered my fortune among *wantons*. WALT. BESANT, Beyond the Dreams of Avarice.<sup>1)</sup>

**well.** We wish *well* to the Empire and people over whom the venerable Emperor Francis Joseph rules. Westm. Gaz.

**western.** Japan and China are reorganising themselves without direct European influence, and their commerce benefits more than ever from *Westerns*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXII, 65b.

**wet.** The leaves were thick upon the trees, and heavy with *wet*. DICK., Cop., Ch. L, 356a.

In the *wet* these boys dwindled, one by one, and shifted into the large empty barn. Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 3a.

**worthy.** Such were the two *worthies* to whom Mr. Pickwick was introduced. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 267.

"Oh, Barker" — as that *worthy* presented himself — "has Miss Norah returned yet?" AGN. AND EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, I, Ch. V, 67.

b) such as belong to the foreign element, among many others:

*common* (Ch. XXV, 19, g), *expert*, *extreme*, *future*, *gentle*, *infidel*, *modern* (Ch. XXV, 19, g), *mute*, *noble*, *past*, *opposite*, *present*, *quiet*, *reverse*, *sage*, *saint*, *savage*, *simple*, *sovereign*, *strait* (Ch. XXV, 19, g).

**extreme.** It was Milner who drove Chamberlain to *extremes* much more than the other way about. Rev. of Rev.

It is difficult to believe that Mr. Asquith and his colleagues can feel that the result of the elections will justify them in pushing matters to *extremes*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 16c.

**future.** I would soon carve out a *new future* for us both. C. JAMES.<sup>2)</sup>

My sacrifice to Jasper's *future* might not have been in vain. LYTTON, What will he do with it?, II, Ch. VIII.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, Drie Talen, XIV.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

**gentle.** *Gentles*, perchance you wonder at this show. *Mids. Night's Dream*, V, I, 126.

All Cheltenham was drawn out into the High-street, the *gentles* on one side and the commons on the other. *Mad. D'ARBLAY, Diary*, 1788, 16 Aug.<sup>1)</sup>

The simples are not bound to pick up what the *gentles* throw away. *Mrs. Raven's Tempt.* III, 8.<sup>1)</sup>

There is a *gentle's* voice under a dark cloak. *DISRAELI, Viv. Grey*, V, Ch. III.<sup>1)</sup> "What! *gentles*," said he, "have ye finished already? *LYTTON, Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 36.

**Note.** Now only archaically, or as a comic vulgarism for *gentlefolks*.

**mute.** We tied on our cloaks as sadly as *mutés* at a funeral. *Mrs. GASK, Cranf.*, Ch. X, 197.

**noble.** When the news reached Norman William, he called his *nobles* to council. *DICKENS*.

**past.** The Lords of Life and Death would never allow Charlie Mears to speak with full knowledge of his *pasts*. *RUDYARD KIPLING*.<sup>1)</sup>

**sage.** The *sages* who instructed them told them of nothing but the miseries of public life. *JOHNSON, Ras.*, Ch. II, 10.

**savage.** The *savages* of the island put our whole party to death. *Mrs. INCHBALD, Nature and Art*, Ch. X, 31.

**simple.** I bought an unction of a mountebank, | So mortal that but dip a knife in it, | Where it draws blood, no cataplasm so rare, | Collected from all *simples* that have virtue | Under the moon, can save the thing from death | That is but scratch'd withal. *Hamlet*, IV, 7, 145.

The hermit, skill'd in all | The *simples* and the science of that time, | Told him that her fine care had saved his life. *TEN., Lanc. and El.*, 857.

**Note.** The use of *simple* to denote a person is usual only when it is contrasted with *noble* or *gentle*. See above under *gentle*, and compare 25.

They had sworn to spare neither *noble* nor *simple*. *MOTLEY, Rise*, IV, Ch. II, 572a.

## 12. Finally mention should be made of a conversion that is felt as unusual and more or less at variance with the genius of the language.

a) Many adjectives are frequently found converted into nouns from a desire of convenience, brevity or jocular effect, to denote either persons, or things. Several instances have already been given in 2, and also in Ch. XXV, 19, g. Of especial frequency is conversion of certain opprobrious adjectives, particularly in (reported) emotional sentences, such as *I never saw such a stupid!* *What a stupid you are.* *He called us stupid*s, etc. Compare also 18, d, and see *STORM*, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2)</sup>, 769. Sometimes inverted commas are used by way of apologizing for the colloquial neologisms.

**bald.** Since then there have been fewer *balds*. *Advertisement*.

**brave.** *Braves* of the tribe were these, and brothers gigantic in stature. *LONGFELLOW, Courtship of Miles Standish*, VII, 30.

There is no concealing the horrors which have accompanied the recent operations against Bambaata and his Zulu *braves*. *Daily News*.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**Note.** This use of *brave* has been applied since 1800 chiefly to warriors among the North American Indians (after the French in N. America). MURRAY.

**disorderly.** The drunk and *disorderlies* had been disposed of in the morning. CAMDEN PRATT, *Unknown London*.<sup>1)</sup>

**droll.** Such a thoroughly light-hearted *droll*. LOCKHART, *Scott*.<sup>1)</sup>

**friendly.** Near Fort Inugu some "*friendlies*", while gathering corn, have been killed by the rebels. *Times*.<sup>1)</sup>

**gay.** Courtesy is a gallant *gay*. SCOTT, *Rob Roy*.<sup>1)</sup>

**gawky.** What a *gawky* it was. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 48.

**good.** Very good people indeed, you will notice, dress altogether in black, even to gloves and neckties, and they will probably take to black shirts before long. *Medium goods* indulge in light trousers on week-days, and some of them even go so far as to wear fancy waistcoats. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, XIII, 221.

**grown-up.** As a child — I never knew what it was to be lonely. But clumsy *grown-ups* come along and tramp right through the dream-garden. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiog.*, 41.

Children as well as *grown-ups* have their foolish moods. JEROME, *Paul Kever*, I, Ch. I, 15a.

Gift-books for *grown-ups*. *Westm. Gaz.*

**have-not.** Personal service in aid of the *have-nots* of the world. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVIII, 517a.

**nondescript.** The *nondescript* replied in encouraging terms. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. IX, 47a.

**out-of-work.** This winter the *out-of-works* were seventy-five thousand in Chicago. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXIX, 295a.

A recruiting sergeant was stopped by . . . no fewer than fourteen *out-of-works*. *Tit-Bits*, No. 1291, 388c.

**powerful.** We find that it consisted of three tribes, termed in the tract 'Of the History of the Men of Alban' the three *powerfuls* in Dalriade. SKENE, *Celtic Scotland*.<sup>1)</sup>

**red.** He was a Radical, a *Red*. MRS. WARD, *David Grieve*, II, 92.

The 'crowds of foreigners would, some people said, naturally include large numbers of the '*Reds*' of all continental nations. MC. CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. IX, 108. (Compare: It was more of the *red men* and the blacks that we were afraid. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XC, 955.)

**silly.** O, don't bother, Maggie! you're such a *silly*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 27. You're just an old *silly*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, I, Ch. III, 39. (Compare: Who'd 'a thought you was so wilful? — you that any one might have taken for one of the *silly-softs*. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXX, 250)

**stalwart.** He was a *stalwart* of the *stalwarts* in the war against war. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIX, 12b.

An interval of less than a week covers the loss of two *stalwarts* of the older Liberalism. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5555, 2a.

The Lords Lieutenant have come in for their share of blame, no doubt, in the opinion of the mover of the resolution and the 39 *stalwarts* supporting him on this "burning question". *Times*, No. 1826, 1053b.

**suspect.** He soon had under lock and key a vast number of '*suspects*'. MC CARTHY, *A Hist. of Our Own Times*, V.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV.

**stupid.** Men can't bear clever women, and a woman's ideal man is some one she can call a 'dear old *stupid*'. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VIII, 128.

Won't misess storm and call us *stupid*s? HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XXXII, 245.

- ii. **cast-off.** The poor curate's wife with the legion family clothed from the odds and ends of her rich sister's *cast-offs*. C. JAMES, *Rom. Rigmarole*, 148.<sup>1)</sup>

**empty.** Deductions for *empties* returned must not be made from remittances. Price List.

These (sc. nuts) were no empty shells; or if there were but the empty shells to find occasionally, these *empties* were but in the proportion of something like one in seven or eight to those in which you would find the fat nut. HOR. HUTCHINSON (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6159, 7a).

**encyclical.** His *Encyclical* thus raises far more searching questions. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCI, 237a.

**homeward-bound.** A *homeward-bound* went down with her crew. ELIZA COOK, 'T is a wild Night, XII (*Rainbow*, I, 38).

**left-over.** What not to do with *left-overs*. HENRY STEAD, *Good House-keeping*.

**pretty-pretty.** Thus the famous closing apparatus on the bridge, paraded as a device of greater safety, with its attachments of warning bells, coloured lights, and all these *pretty-pretty*s, was, in the case of this ship, little better than a technical farce. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, July, 582.

There are no carpets, curtains, cushions or *pretty-pretty*s of any kind. *Punch*, No. 3723, 392a.

**raw.** The literary dispute of which I had seen the beginning, was a "raw", the slightest touch of which made them wince. MRS. GASK, *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 33.

**tailor-made.** Types in *tailor-mades*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6129, 15a.

**ugly.** Well, it gave me pleasure, with all the *uglies* looming in the future, just to try it (sc. my ball dress) on. EL. GLYN, *Reflect. of Ambrosine*, I, Ch. III, 35.

**wireless.** The wonders of his *wireless* are now familiar to all. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3481a, Sup., VII.

The following quotation contains several instances of these convenient formations:

He had been told of the special organisation that works exclusively for Self-ridge's;...how "*regulars*", "*longs*", "*shorts*", and "*stouts*" are again subdivided into all sorts of special fittings. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6129, 1c.

- b) Sometimes this occasional conversion is conditioned or favoured by the adjective appearing in connection with its opposite.

**generals.** The boy seemed to have begun with the *generals* of life, and never to have concerned himself with the *particulars*. HARDY, *Jude the Obscure*.<sup>2)</sup> (The conversion of *particular* is not confined to this combination. See 3.)

**right(s)...wrong(s).** Don't try to go confounding the *rights* and *wrongs* of things in that way. DICK., *Our Mutual Friend*, I, Ch. I, 7.

I never heard the *rights* and *wrongs* of the case. FLOR. MARYAT, *Open Sesame*, 184.

Two *wrongs* don't make one *right*. Proverb.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, S. V. *legion*.

<sup>2)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV.



*The rights and wrongs* of the matter are not affected by these incidents Westm. Gaz., No. 6159, 2a.

*The wrongs* so far outweigh the *rights*. Eng. Rev., 1912, Sept. 287 (For *rights* see also Ch. XXV, 20.)

**short(s) ... long(s).** Two *shorts* (sc. short syllables) are equivalent to one *long*. Tom Hood, Eng. Versific.

**sweets ... sour.** Matrimony is a delicious mixture of *sweets* and *sours*.<sup>1)</sup> (*Sweets* is also common enough when standing by itself. Ch. XXV, 19.)

- c) In SHAKESPEARE and in the older Modern English writers we also find converted adjectives that have the value of Present-English abstract nouns (in *ness*). ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 20; FRANZ, Shak. Gram., § 77.

A sudden *pale* usurps her check. Venus and Adonis, 589.

Say what you can, my *false* o'erweighs your *true*. Meas. for Meas., II, 4, 170.

Let no face be kept in mind | But the *fair* of Rosalind. As you like it, III, 2, 84.

Demetrius loves your *fair*. Mids., I, 1, 182.

Go off; I discard you: let me enjoy my *private*: go off. Twelfth Night, III, 4, 100.

SHYL. This is *kind* I offer. — BASS. This were kindness. — SHYL. This kindness will I show. Merch. of Ven., I, 3, 143.

They (sc. the orators) hurried away with such a torrent of *sublime* and *pathetic* that they left their hearers no leisure to perceive the artifice by which they were deceived. HUME, Es., of Eloquence, XIII, 104.

We find this practice archaically in:

Thou | I love him heartily. I can spy already | A strain of *hard* and *headstrong* in him. TEN., Beck., Prol., (696a).

Thy mortal eyes are frail to judge of *fair*. Id., CEnone, XIII.

How many among us at this very hour | Do forge a life-long trouble for ourselves | By taking *true* for *false*, or *false* for *true*. Id., Ger. & En., 4.

Children learn by such | Love's holy earnest in a pretty play And get not over-early solemnised, | But seeing, as in a rose-bush Love's *divine* | ... Become aware and unafraid of Love. Mrs. BROWN., Aur. Leigh, I, 57.

Thus, perhaps, also after certain interrogative or indefinite pronouns (or numerals) + partitive *of*. (26, b.)

Some words, primarily adjectives, in which, however, the adjectival character has now become more or less obliterated, exhibit a survival of the old practice. Such are:

**evil**, in many applications for which see MURRAY, s.v. *evil*, B.

- i. Sufficient for the day is the *evil* thereof. Bible, Matth. VI, 34.

The greatest of all mysteries — the origin of *evil*. TAIT and STEWART, Unseen Univ., VII, 269.<sup>2)</sup>

The world is a mass of injustice, and a little more or less *evil* makes no difference. EDNA LYALL, Don., I, 263.

- ii. He does no *evil*. LYTTON, Zanoni, 29.<sup>2)</sup>

**good**, in almost all the abstract senses illustrated in 1c.

**ill** in many applications, for which see MURRAY, s.v. *ill*, B.

- i. Oh yet we trust that somehow good | Will be the final goal of *ill*. TEN., In Mem., LV.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN. Beck., Faalst., VI.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

ii. Strange natures made a brotherhood of *ill*. SHELLEY, Rev. of IsI., X, vi (= *depravity, wickedness*).

iii. I can think no *ill* of him. MURRAY.

To speak *ill*. FOWLER, Concise Oxf. Dict.

iv. Sick art thou — a divided will | Still heaping on the fear of *ill* | The fear of men, a coward still. TEN., Two Voices, 107.

*short*, in the collocation *for short*, in which *for* = for the sake of.

Gustavus Adolphus (they call him "Gusty" downstairs *for short*) is a very good sort of dog. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VIII, 119.

His baptismal name was Chantilly, but I called him Tilly *for short*. PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, K, 183.

Compare: What is *for shortness* called science. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent., Ch. VII, 327.

Note. With *for short* compare *for good* as instanced above 1, c ( $\beta$ , iv and v) and *for any one's good* ( $\alpha$ , ix), in which also *for* has the meaning of *for the sake of* or *on account of*. Frequent instances of similar combinations occur in Middle English. For an exhaustive discussion of the idiom see especially STOF., Int. & Down-ton., 18—25.

#### PARTIAL CONVERSION.

13. Adjectives are found partially converted into nouns in varied degrees and in different applications, sometimes confined to certain combinations.

Note. Leaving the grammatical function in the sentence out of account, as the least important, the changed nature mostly extends no further than the capability of taking the definite article. Sometimes we also find other modifiers, i. e. a genitive or its equivalent, a possessive or demonstrative pronoun, an adverbial or adnominal adjunct, and even a numeral or the indefinite article, and occasionally inflection for the genitive is possible. But even when preceded by a numeral or the indefinite article, or placed in the genitive, we cannot pronounce these adjectives to have become pure nouns, since they reject inflection for the plural. (1, b.)

In the following §§ the different ways in which an adjective may be partially converted into a noun are passed under review.

14. a) Most adjectives and participles denoting a quality or a state may be used to denote a class of persons in a generalizing way. (Ch. XXXI, 5, b.)

i. He maketh His sun to rise on *the evil* and on *the good*, and sendeth rain on *the just* and on *the unjust*. Bible, Matth., V, 45.

From ignorance our comfort flows, | *The only wretched are the wise*. PROR. To the Hon. Charles Montague.

He frequented *the voluptuous* and *the frugal*, *the idle* and *the busy*, the merchants and the men of learning. JOHNSON, Ras., Ch. XVI, 98.

I grow weary to behold *The selfish* and *the strong* still tyrannize | Without reproach or check. SHELLEY, Laon and Cythra, Prelude.

It is seldom that *the young* know what youth is, till they have got beyond its period. Mrs. SHELLEY, Pref. to First Col. Ed. 1839.

Where *the good* and *the bad* and *the worst* and *the best* | Have gone to their eternal rest. POE, *The City in the Sea*.

He, by some law that holds in love, and draws | *The greater to the lesser* long desired | A certain miracle of symmetry. TEN., *Gard. Daught.*, 10.

Everybody pilgrimized who could, even *the poorest* and *the lowest*. WALT. BES., *London*, I, 69.

*The poorest* could go as well as *the richest*, because the pilgrim wanted no money. *Ib.*

*The blind* are objects of compassion, not of sorrow. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 342.

It has always been my wish to look with an impartial eye alike upon *the just* and upon *the unjust*. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. IV, 26.

Note I. Generalization is not incompatible with some limitation as to time, place or other circumstances, and the converted adjective may, accordingly, be accompanied by some specializing adjunct, i. e. a genitive or its equivalent, a possessive pronoun, a classifying adjective or adnominal noun, an adnominal word-group or an adverbial adjunct. Frequently the specializing element is not expressed. (Ch. XXXI, 5, b.)

- i. \* I mark thee in the Marble All, | Where *England's loveliest* shine. THACK., *Diary of Jeames de la Pluche*, (329).

But signs are not wanting that the passion for justice and for liberty, which thrill through the veins of *the world's greatest in the past*, has not yet died wholly out of the hearts of men. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 331.

\*\* *The lowest vulgar of Athens* were his (sc. the orator's) sovereigns and the arbiters of his eloquence. HUME, *Es.* XIII, *Of Eloquence*, 105.

*The unsoaped of Ipswich* brought up the rear. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIV, 219.

Whitehall was filled with *the most corrupt of mankind*. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 318.

Lo, the leader in these glorious wars | Now to glorious burial slowly borne, Follow'd by *the brave of other lands* [etc.]. TEN., *Ode on the Death of Duke of Wel.*, VIII, 194.

That only shows how mistaken *the wisest of us* may be every now and then. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. V, 36.

\*\*\* Our gentlefolks tremble at the brink (sc. of matrimony) . . . and wait for whole years, until they find a bridge or a gilt barge to carry them across; *our poor* do not fear to wet their bare feet, plant them in the brook, and trust to fate and strength to bear them over. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXI, 853.

The wiseacres who look after the education of *our young* have been mortified to observe that the last thing in the world the children have been learning is English. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5412, 8d.

\*\*\*\* This at least is certain, in respect of the lot of *the decent poor*, that a great deal of superfluous pity is often thrown away upon it. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXXI, 853.

Is it right or fair to suggest that war is due to the action of *the idle rich*? *Athen.*, No. 4405, 361.

This (sc. fiscal policy) is scouted as fantastic by *the Tariff Reform faithful*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6117, 1c.

\*\*\*\*\* Bob's mind was absorbed in possible expedients for the safety of *the helpless in-doors*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VII, Ch. V, 480.

Persecution makes *the stronger among us* bitter; *the weaker among us* hypocrites. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiog.*, 173.

There is also shewn in the plays the most perfect knowlege of . . . the manners and the methods of *the greatest in the land*. SIR EDWIN DURNING-LAWRENCE, *Bacon is Shakespeare*, To the Reader.

\*\*\*\*\* *The truly modest and stout* say least and are least exceptions. WYCH., *Plain Deal.*, II, 1.

*The mentally deficient, the constitutionally idle, the sick at heart, the pure in spirit, the deaf to music.*<sup>1)</sup>

There are human tempers, bland, glowing and genial, within whose influence it is as good for *the poor in spirit* to live, as it is for the *feeble in frame* to bask in the glow of noon. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XIX, 245.

The art of biography has its peculiar difficulties, no doubt, in dealing with *the recently dead*. Athen., No. 4405, 357a.

In France the decrease in number of *the classically trained* has elevated the standard of attainment. Ib., No. 4463, 514b.

- ii. Only five hundred of *the vanquished* were slain. MAC., *Clive*.

*The besieged* were not without hopes of succour. Id., *Fred.*, (688a).

Till down she came And found fair peace among *the sick*. TEN., *Princ.*, VII, 29.

We justified our conquest to ourselves by taking away the character of *the conquered*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III.

The inspector of police had been firing six shots into a crowd, who were stoning *the military*. Graph.

- II. The converted adjective may also be preceded by an adjective of continuative function.

The lordly manner in which one of your correspondents suggests that cooks and tweenies should be included in the list of *the Great Tipped* makes one almost think that he must be at least the father, or at best the follower, of cook or scullery-wench. Westm. Gaz.

He may look very well on the outside, but I detect at once in his speech the flavour of *the great unwashed*, the mob, the commonalty. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

- III. Partially converted adjectives are sometimes used adnominally like ordinary nouns. Ch. XXIII. See also WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adj.*, 21; id., *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 109.

A *sick(-)room*, a *deaf-and-dumb* asylum, the *retired* list (= the list of those retired from active service), *mad-doctors*, *madhouse*.

- IV. Sometimes an abstract noun takes the place of the adjective.

The *rank*, *talent*, and *beauty* of Great Britain joined in the solemn requiem with which the funeral service closed. *Introd. to Ten.'s Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wel.* (Macm., *Eng. Clas.*).

Also word-groups whose primary function is not that of adjectives are sometimes used as converted adjectives.

But the most miserable and, therefore, *the most urgently in need of assistance* are those convicted of the unpardoned crimes. *Periodical.*<sup>1)</sup>

Nothing short of the wilds of Niagara this picture would conjure up in the minds of *the matter of fact*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6029, 9c.

- b) When no class in a generalizing sense is meant, and also when one person is spoken of either in a generalizing or in an indefinite way, these adjectives now usually stand with a noun or the indefinite *one* by way of prop-word.

- i. Each family in the colony sent one of *its young ones*. FROUDE, *Occ.*, Ch. III.

The object of this book is to show the relation of *these great ones* to the work of their predecessors. Acad., No. 1765, 209a.

Try to think of those ten patients as *ten shipwrecked men* on a raft. BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, I, 31.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 117.



ii. \* Never saw I *the righteous man* forsaken. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. III.

*The prudent man* may direct a state; but it is the enthusiast who regenerates it, — or ruins. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. VIII, 54.

The Bible is *the poor man's* comfort and *the rich man's* warning. CH. KINGSLEY, Alton Locke, Pref., 18.

\*\* Mortality is an event by which *a wise man* can never be surprised. JOHNSON, Ras., Ch. XVIII, 109.

Oppression drives even *a wise man* mad. Rev. of Rev., CCVIII, 341b.

Note I. The use of prop-words after adjectives when a whole class of persons in a generalizing way is meant is uncommon. (Ch. XLIII, 6; compare also 18, c).

To edge his way along the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance, was what *the knowing ones* called "nuts" to Scrooge. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, I, 8.

*The wise ones* of the earth may ridicule love's mysterious sympathies. MRS. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., E, Ch. III, 116.

Of more frequent occurrence is the use of the determinative *those* followed by the adjective (or the adjective equivalent) to serve the same purpose. (Ch. XXXVI, 12, c, Note; Ch. XL, 152.)

Mistakes are occasionally committed even by *those most experienced*. Times, No. 1851, 491, c.

A mere list of *those eminent in literature* . . . would be a dull string. Periodical.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. In Early Modern English prop-words were often dispensed with in the case referred to under *b*, and even in the Latest English instances of the ancient practice are not infrequent as archaisms. The adjective *fair* seems at all times to have been often used as a singular.

i. Let the dead bury *their dead*. Bible, Matth., VIII, 22.

So spake the seraph Abdiel, faithful found | Among the faithless — faithful only he | Among *innumerable false*. MILTON, Par. Lost, V, 898.

The prince, unable to conceal his pain, | Gazed on *the fair* | Who caused his care. DRYD., Alexander's Feast.

I'll sacrifice it all to thee, *my generous fair*. FARQUHAR, Constant Couple, I, 2 (57).

I have served at home, sir, for ages served *this cruel fair*. Ib., III, 2 (298).

Show me *the fair* would scorn to spy, | And prize such conquest of her eye. SCOTT, Lady, II, v, 15.

And after, oft the knight would say, | That not when prize of festal day | Was dealt him by *the brightest fair*, Who e'er wore jewel in her hair, So highly did his bosom swell, | As at that simple mute farewell. Ib., II, vi, 7.

I trust . . . in my rightful cause, more than in a vain resistance, which would but cost the lives of *my best and bravest*. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXVII, 355. As safe to me the mountain way | At midnight as in blaze of day, | Though with *his boldest* at his back, | Even Roderick Dhu beset the track. Id., Lady, II, XXXV, 25.

"I was not always," she said, "that which I now am. I was not always *the wise, the powerful, the commanding*, before whom the young stand abashed, and the old uncover their grey heads. SCOTT, Pirate, Ch. X, 113. (Observe the different application of the two last adjectives.)

Here thy *Wisest* look'd his last. BYRON, Cors., III, i.

And his glance follow'd fast *each fluttering fair*. Id., Lara, I, xxi.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., 118.

Ginevra Fanshawe was the belle, *the fairest and the gayest* present. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XIV, 176.

I'm acting for *the innocent and good*, and not for my own self. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 245. (The speaker is referring to her lover.)

The King sent a message to the Commons expressing his deep regret that so eminent a person as the Chancellor should be suspected of misconduct. His Majesty declared that he had no wish to screen *the guilty* from justice. MAC., *Lord Bacon*, (379b).

There are *enough unhappy* on this earth. TEN., *Cenone*, 235.

It may be I have wrought some miracles, | And cured *some halt and maimed*. Id., *St. Simeon Stylites*, 136.

For in those days | No knight of *Arthur's noblest* dealt in scorn. Id., *Guin.*, 40.

So let me pass, | My father, howso'er I seem to you, | Not all unhappy, having loved *God's best* | And *greatest*. Id., *Lanc. and El.*, 1087.

The mamma of *my loveliest* smiled radiantly upon her child. MISS BRADDON, *Captain Thomas*.

Lord Jocelyn asked that industrious *idle*, or idle *industrious*, if he knew the object of the building. W. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. XXXVIII, 255.

They had assembled to take leave of, to see, perhaps, for the last time, *their nearest and dearest*. II. *Lond. News*.

Their partner is dancing with *another fair*. *Sat. Rev. (Westm. Gaz., No. 5543, 16c)*.

He (sc. Cardinal Wolsey) was forced to borrow the bare necessities of life. *The mighty* had fallen indeed! BEERBOHM TREE, *Henry VIII*, II, 43.

He could not rid himself of the sense that he was a weak-knee'd idler, staying at home among women while *his youngest* fought for him. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. VII, 98.

- ii. *The poor* is hated, but *the rich* has many friends. Bible, *Prov.*, XIV, 20.

None but *the brave* deserves *the fair*. DRYDEN, *Alexander's Feast*.

Was *the Righteous* ever forsaken? Did the Just man ever have to beg bread? THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXIX, 841.

My tale is here — let *the inquisitive* take his answer from it. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. I, 2.

- c) Especial mention may be made of the archaic use of comparatives preceded by the indefinite article to denote a single person. As the plural is never used analogously, there is no total conversion in the proper sense of the term. (1, b.)

Such men as he are never at heart's ease | Whiles they behold a *greater* than themselves. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 209.

A *braver* never to battle rode. SCOTT, *Lay*, I, *Intro.*, 51.

A *braver* never drew a sword; | A *wiser* never at the hour | Of midnight spoke the word of power. Id., *Marm.*, III, xix.

"We talked but now of Wolfe," said I. "Here, indeed, is a *greater* than Wolfe." THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 989.

Jilted for a *wealthier*. TEN., *Locksl. Hall, Sixty Years After*, II.

Loudly spake the Prince, "Forbear: there is a *worthier*". Id., *Ger. & En.*, 556.

The sea is mighty, but a *Mightier* sways | His restless billows. BRYANT, *A Hymn of the Sea*, I, I.

O Time! great Chronos! and is this your power? Have you dried up seas and levelled mountains and left the tiny human heart-strings to defy you? Ah, yes! they were spun by a *Mightier* than thou. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*.

Like a *greater* than himself, to the critical question at the critical time he did not answer. HARDY, *Tess*, VII, Ch. LVIII, 515.

The use of a converted comparative to denote a thing, as in the following quotation, seems to be very rare:

Something wild within her breast, | A *greater* than all knowledge, beat her down. TEN., Princ., VII, 223.

d) Special mention must also be made of the archaic use of adjectives as vocatives.

*Infirm of purpose!* give me the daggers. Macb., II, 2, 52.

*High and mighty*, You shall know I am set naked on your kingdom. Hamlet, IV, 7, 43.

*Dull*, that thou art! DRYDEN, All for Love, V, I, (106).

*Outcast of Nature*, man! the wretched thrall | Of bitter dropping sweat, of sweltry pain. THOMSON, Castle of Indolence, I, xi.

*Go, perverse and obstinate!* SHER., School for Scand., III, 1.

I ne'er before, believe me, *fair*. | Have ever drawn your mountain-air. SCOTT, Lady, I, xxii.

"Off, *abject!*" said Tressilian. Id., Kenilw., Ch. IV, 50.

*Fleet-limbed and beautiful*, farewell! Mrs. CAROLINE NORTON, The Arab to his Horse, II (Rainb., II, 5).

"*Insolent!*" cried the Orsini. "Knowest thou him whom thou addressest thus arrogantly? LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. V, 39.

O *fairest*, hear me now who do thy will. W. MORRIS, Atalanta's Race, 36b. Not even you, *beloved*, can I admit to this hour. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. VIII, 205.

Note I. In the language of rebuke some adjectives are currently thus used after *you*, also in Present English.

A handsome young fellow, *you impudent!* begone out of my sight. Wych., The Plain Dealer, II, 1.

I've swopped all my marls with the little fellows, and cobnuts are no fun, *you silly*. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. V, 26.

Compare: This is your doing, Peggotty, *you cruel thing*. Dick., Cop., Ch. IV, 22b. I don't want your money, *you silly thing*. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. V, 27.

II. Quite common is the use of certain adjectives (or equivalent participles), especially *dear(est)*, *sweet*, as vocatives after *my*.

Really, *my dear*, answered she, "I can't say". MAR. EDGEW., Patron., II.1) Look at the birds, *my pretty*, look at the birds. Dick., Little Dorrit, I, Ch. I, 3b.

"Is that my brother?" asked the child, pointing to the Baby. — "Yes, *my pretty*," answered Richards. Id., Domb., Ch. III, 20.

*My sweet*, I am only going to reason. Id., Cop., Ch. XLIV, 317a.

"And, *my sweet*," she continued after the curtains had been accorded [etc.]. THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's.

"*My sweet*," she said, "as yet I am not wise." W. MORRIS, Earthly Par., Pygm. and the Im., 170a.

For two days she was with me, *my beloved*. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiog., 126. *My dearest*, how can you be so rude? BERN. SHAW, You never can tell, I, 220.

Oh, that's all right, *my precious*. Id., Overruled.

But most adjectives used as vocatives preceded by *my*, now seem to require a noun or the prop-word *one*.

How beautiful! how beautiful thou seemest! My boy, *my precious one*, my rose babe! THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. I.

1) MURRAY.

III. Some of these vocatives of endearment are also used without the possessive pronoun.

*Sweet*, leave me here awhile. *Hamlet*, III, 2, 237.

*Sweet*, adieu. I'll keep my oath. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 9, 77.

I want to speak to you. Only one word, *dearest*. *Dick.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XLIX, 456.  
 "And have you answered them (sc. the letters), *Blanche*?" she asked, putting them back. — "Oh no! not for worlds, *dearest*," the other said. *Thackeray*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 257.

I am not in the clouds, *dear*; I am only anxious. *Miss Braddon*, *Cloven Foot*.<sup>1)</sup>  
 Forget it, *sweet*! *W. Morris*, *Earthly Par.*, *Doom of King Acris.*, 81b.  
 "O *sweet*," he said, "this thing is even love. | Whereof I told thee. *Ib.*, *Pygm.* and the *Im.*, 170a.

So long, *old dear*. If we must part, it's nice to part friends. *Punch*, No. 3728, 494.

IV. In colloquial language *dear* with the mark of the plural is often used as a vocative, in addressing more persons than one.

i. Now hear me, *my dears*. *Dick.*, *Bleak House*, Ch. XIII, 112.

I know, *my dears*, that we shall not quarrel easily among ourselves. *Id.*, *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 101.

I know, *my dears*, all the Hoskinses in England. *Thackeray*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 27.

ii. Good-bye, *dears*. *Id.*, *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. V, (322).

Thus also, occasionally, *pretty*.

Back to back, *my pretties*. *Goldsmith*, *She Stoops*, II.

V. *Dear* has further developed into a pure noun with a possessive pronoun or an (in)definite article and with the mark of the plural when more than one individual is referred to: *my dear*, *your dear*, *his dear*; *a dear*, *the dears*. Most of these developments are as yet met with only in colloquial style.

*Dear* is also a pure noun in such interjectional expressions as *Dear knows!* (= Goodness knows, or Heaven knows, I do not), *Dear bless you!* *Dear help you*. *Murray*, s. v. *dear*, C.

i. Be it ounce, or cat, or bear, | Pard, or boar with bristled hair, | In thy eye that shall appear | When thou wak'st, it is *thy dear*. *Mids.*, II, 2, 33.

John Gilpin's spouse said to *her dear*. *Cowper*, *John Gilpin*, II.

You are she, *my dearest dear*, | Therefore it shall be done. *Ib.*, V.

I met *my dear*. He found *his dear*. *Murray*.

ii. She is no longer very young, or beautiful but *a dear* for all that. *Hall Caine*, *The Christian*, I, 332.

Jack Belsize liked to dine with Lady Kew. He said "she was *an old dear*, and the wickedest old woman in all England;" and he liked to dine with Lady Julia, who was "*a poor suffering dear*, and the best woman in all England." *Thackeray*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. X, 125.

You are such *a devoted old dear*. *Miss Braddon*, *Just as I am*, Ch. XLV.

iii. Things Are somehow echoed to the pretty *dears*. *Byron*, *Don Juan*, XV, LXXVI.

*Dearest* and *sweet*, indeed, may stand with a possessive pronoun in other functions than the vocative, but exhibit no further development into pure nouns.

What feat do ye | This eve in honour of *my sweet* and me? *W. Morris*, *Earthly Par.*, *Doom of King Acris.*, 80b.

<sup>1)</sup> *Murray*.



e) The adjective *poor* seems to occupy a unique position, inasmuch as it is used not only to denote a class in a generalizing way, but also a specialized number of persons. It may, accordingly, be preceded by the definite article, a genitive or its analogue, by a possessive pronoun, and even by a demonstrative pronoun or (in)definite numeral. As for these last kinds of modifiers, instances are infrequent, some prop-word being mostly added. When *poor* is modified by a genitive or its analogue or by a possessive pronoun, it is not always clear whether a class in a generalizing way or a specialized number is meant.

- i. \* He firmly believed that he was doing right, and defending the cause of *the poor* against the wealthy. MAC., Fred., (675a).  
It only concerned the daughters of *the poor*. Rev. of Rev., CXCv, 307a.  
He has taken much interest in the housing of *the poor*. Ib., CXCvi, 350b.  
\*\* The intimate knowledge of *the London poor*. Athen., No. 4463, 514b.
- ii. \* *England's poor* are at least as well cared for as those of most other European countries.  
\*\* The proverbial kindness of the poor to the poor is nowhere displayed more abundantly than among *the poor of Little Ireland*. Good Words.  
How *the poor of Windsor* showed their affection to the Queen. Graph.  
Money left to *the poor of the parish*. MURRAY, s. v. *poor*, II, 7.  
\*\*\* The surface of England began to look pleasant . . . still *her poor* were wretched. CH. BRONTË, Shirley, I, Ch. X, 214.  
Thou noble Father of her Kings to be, | Laborious for her people and *her poor*. TEN., Idylls, Ded., 34.  
They were too proud to let *their own poor* wander into another parish to beg. Times.
- iii. \* Mamma had to attend to *her poor*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLV, 466.  
Sir Miles regaled his tenants with notoriously small beer, and *his poor* with especially thin broth. Ib., Ch. L, 513.  
They spend their lives among *their poor*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVI, 309b.  
\*\* How could I do aught but sympathise with any combination that aimed at the raising of *these poor*? ANNIE BESANT, Autobiog., 100.  
\*\*\* He has taken *several poor* off our hands. FIELDING, Jos. Andrews, IV, Ch. III, 208.  
Are there no beggars at your gate, | Nor *any poor* about your lands? TEN., Lady Clara Vere de Vere, IX.  
Shall I find *no poor* at Mellor, — no work to do? Mrs. WARD, Marcella, I, Ch. II, 17.  
Compare: At that time a *great many poor people* had to quit the country from want of employment. CROKER, Three Advices (GÜNTHER, Handb., 50).

Note I. In certain collocations or compounds we even find *poor*, as a class-indicating word, in the genitive.

He that read the loudest, distinctest and best, was to have a halfpenny on Sunday to put into *the poor's* box. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. IV.

She draws her mouth till it positively resembles the aperture of a *poor's* box. SHER., School for Scand., II, 2, (380).

I pay a good deal towards *the poor's* rates DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. IV, 11b.

The use of an adjective denoting a class of persons in the genitive may have been more common in an older stage of the language.

Thine eyes that taught the dumb on high to sing | And heavy ignorance aloft to fly | Have added feathers to *the learned's* wing. SHAK., Son., LXXVIII.

The man, in life wherever pleased, | Hath happiness in store, | Who walks not in *the wicked's* way, Nor learns their guilty lore. BURNS, The First Psalm, I.

But this practice is at variance with the genius of late Modern English. Thus for *poor's box* and *poor's rates* we now find respectively *poor-box* and *poor-rates*. (14, a, Note III.) Compare also *poor-house*, *poor-law*, etc. MURRAY, s. v. *poor*, II, 7, d.

The *Poor-laws* ground to the dust not only the paupers, but those who had just risen above that state, and were obliged to pay *poor-rates*. Mrs. SHELLEY, *Note on the Revolt of Islam*.

If you have no work of your own, I can supply you from the *poor basket*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. VII, 74.

If she were to turn you off, you would have to go to the *poor-house*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 8.

He built a school and a *poor-house*. LESLIE STEPHEN, G. Eliot, Ch. I, 3.

We were at a *poor-school* a few mornings ago. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5183, 14a. Compare also: "I am the *Poor Man's Friend*", observed Sir Joseph, glancing at the poor man present. DICK., *Chimes*, II, 32.

II. Of the use of *poor* preceded by the indefinite article + adjective to denote a class of society, as in the following quotation, no further instances have been found:

Café's and restaurants abounded on either hand, electric trams flashed by, crowded with a *prosperous poor* returning to their homes. MAX PEMB., *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. XVI, 84b.

III. The construction in the following quotation is probably due to sheer inadvertency on the part of the writer or the compositor:

Our poor is numerous enough already. FIELDING, *Joseph Andrews*, IV, Ch. II, 205.

IV. Finally it may be observed that *rich* and, perhaps, other adjectives are, by analogy, occasionally made to assume some of the peculiar applications of *poor*.

Wherever there are *any poor* she relieves them; wherever there are *any sick*, she [etc.]. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LIV, 560.

The Prussian system of dividing the payers of direct taxation into three classes, each with approximately equal voting power, so that *the few rich* in a constituency may counterbalance *the many poor*, was described by Prince Bismarck as the most wretched of all systems. *Westm. Gaz.*

- f) Also the application of *young* as a converted adjective requires some comment. Not only is it used to denote a class of persons in a generalizing way, like the adjectives mentioned above under a), but we find it also in the sense of *offspring* (of animals). In this meaning it is employed to indicate α) a class, naturally with some limitation as to the species of the parent animal, β) a definite or indefinite number of animals.

Instead of *young* we also find *young ones*, which seems to be the ordinary term when a particular specimen is referred to. (Ch. XLIII, 3.) In familiar style *young one(s)* is also met with in the sense of *young man (men)*. (Ch. XLIII, 5.)

The modifiers by which *young* may be accompanied, are the definite article, a genitive or its analogue, or a numeral. Sometimes any modifier is absent.

In the first of the following quotations *old* is used to denote a class of animals by analogy with the preceding *young*; but for the rest it does not, apparently, admit of the extended application of its antonym.

- i. *The young* and *old* of both sexes are alike. DARWIN, Desc. of Man, II, Ch. VIII, 238.  
*The young* are coloured in nearly the same manner as their parents. Ib.
- ii. The eggs disclosed *their* callow *young*. MILTON.<sup>1)</sup>  
 Round *her* new-fallen *young* the heifer moves, | Fruit of her throes. POPE.  
 Iliad, XVII, 6.  
 Here they hatch out and feed *their young*. II. Lond. News.
- iii. We know that the annual produce of every pair is from one to perhaps a *million young*. HUXLEY, Darwiniana, Ch. I, 18.  
 These burrows are generally used by the sows wherein to deposit their litter of *three or four young*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5048, 13a.  
 A single oyster can produce 16.000.000 *young*.  
 The squirrel is monogamous, and in the spring usually rears *two or three young*. Id., No. 6059, 13a.
- iv. The bitch is with *young*.<sup>2)</sup>
- v. It is interesting to note the manner in which the parent bird gets *its young ones* from the ground. II. Lond. News.  
 An eagle that had *young ones*. Æs. Fables, 22.
- vi. \* Give *the young one* a glass, R., and score it up to yours truly.  
 THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 42.  
 \*\* The man whom all *the young ones* loved to look at, was now the object of conversation at freshmen's wine-parties. Ib., I, Ch. XIX, 203.

15. a) Adjectives denoting a nationality and ending in the blade-point sibilant (spelled *sh* or *ch*) or the blade sibilant (spelled *se*), are quite commonly used to denote the nation at large (i. e. in a generalizing way), mostly without any limitation, but also frequently with some limitation as to place, time or other circumstances. Occasionally they are also found expressing a (mostly indefinite) number of individuals. Accordingly they are generally found preceded by the definite article, less frequently by a genitive or its analogue, by a possessive pronoun, by a demonstrative pronoun (in this position always depreciative, Ch. XXXVI, 2), by a number-indicating word(-group); and sometimes without any modifier or no other modifier than an adjective:

- i. In India *the English* and *the French* had been employed, ever since the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, in cutting each other's throat. MAC., Pitt, (300b).  
 We promised to protect them from *the Dutch*. FROUDE, Oc., Ch. III, 51.  
*The Dutch* are slow to move, but when moved, are moved effectually. Ib.  
 Sigtryg threw up an earthwork, and made a stand against *the Cornish*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. V, 38b.  
 Our Englishmen are as good as any two Norsemen, as the *Norse* themselves say. Ib., Ch. XV, 66a.
- ii. *William's French* are as good as those Norsemen. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XV, 66a.

1) WEBST. 2) FLÜGEL.

iii. What said you, my good Lord, that *our* brave *English* | Had sallied out from Calais and driven back | The Frenchmen from their trenches? TEN., *Queen Mary*, V, 2 (642*b*).

iv. No people were ever so little prone to admire at all as *those French* of Voltaire. CARLYLE, *Hero Worship*, 13.

They all stick together, *those Irish*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 315.

Harp they can, *these Cornish*, like very elves. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. III, 26*b*.

*Those English* have ever been a thorn in our sides. CON. DOYLE, *Ref.*, 95. He (sc. McCarthy) took his share with the other Irish, when *those Irish* behaved like rebels and were treated like outlaws. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3814, 795*b*).

v. \* *Five hundred English*, under command of Colonel Edward Chester, abandoned the fortress of Valkenburg. MOTLEY, *Rise*, IV, Ch. II, 567*a*.

As yet only *ten thousand English* and the same force of Belgian troops had been able to assemble. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, § IV, 835.

\*\* Monte Nero being the resort of *many English*, we did not wish to find ourselves in the midst of a colony of chance travellers. MRS. SHELLEY, *Note on Poems* of 1821.

The *few English* that could be brought to resist him would perish at their posts. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 351.

There's *a lot of Irish* here. *Id. Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 315.

*Many British* are said to have been wounded. *Times*.

*A considerable number of Colonial Dutch* are reported to have joined the Boers. *Id.*

The first shipload of refugees, consisting mainly of native Jews, with *some* Italians, *Spanish* and *French*, nearly all of the poorest class [etc.]. *Daily Mail*.

vi. There are some English there; one can live wherever there are *English*. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 230.

*You English* are strange. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. VII, 196.

Cooperation between *Irish* and Liberals is a familiar fact. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 1*b*.

Liberals, *Irish* and Labour must, therefore, still fight their own battle and trust to their own right hands. *Id.*, No. 5243, 1*c*.

We cannot respect our women, they are not like you *English*. *Id.*, No. 5555, 4*a*. Every sort of language seems to be spoken, and one hustles, or is hustled by, Greeks, Turks, Italians, Russians, *Dutch*, German, Swedes, Poles, Hungarians, and a large element of foreign Jews. RITA, *America — Seen through English eyes*, Ch. II, 49 (The use of *German* as a partially converted adjective seems to be very rare.)

\*\* Because they are chiefly *home-bred English*, they say you have insight. RUDY KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. III, 37.

b) But when it is not the nation at large which is meant, these adjectives are generally followed by a noun by way of prop-word, this prop-word often making up a kind of compound with the preceding adjective.

It has been said, with what truth we do not know, that Locke is to-day better known by educated *Frenchmen* and Germans than by his own country-men.<sup>1)</sup> The Boers had, or imagined that they had, a list of grievances as long as an *Irishman's*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 45.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adj.*, 38.



Note I. These compounds are occasionally met with to denote the nation at large with some limitation.

"I say come, Amelia," the civilian went on; "never mind what she says; why are we to stop here and be butchered by *the Frenchmen*?" THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXII, 353.

King James was flying, *the Dutchmen* were coming. Id., Henry Esme., I, Ch. IV, 35.

South Africa can only be ruled constitutionally by conciliating *the Dutch people* there. FROUDE, O.c., Ch. III, 61.

II. A few nationality names, such as *Jewish*, *Swedish*, *Spanish* are never used to denote the nation at large, *the Jews*, *the Swedes*, *the Spaniards* being used instead.

16. Some quality-expressing adjectives preceded by the definite article, may be used to denote what appears a person in a generalizing way, chiefly as objects of the verb *to do* and occasionally of other verbs, especially *to commit* and *to play*. Instances are infrequent. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *do*, 11, *j*; *play*, 34.

i. For my part I watched our new friend with some curiosity and amusement, especially when Caroline and Matilda appeared, trying *to do the amiable*. Mrs. CRAIK, *Domest. Stor.*, II, 185.

The young gentlemen of our party began to buck up and tried to outvie each other in *doing the amiable*. DE BONELLI, *Travels in Bolivia*, I, 28.<sup>1)</sup>

They *do the grand* at our expense. TEN BRUG., *Eng. Woordenb.*, s. v. *grand*.

ii. (The pig) was lying with his head in her lap, and making no effort *to play the agreeable* beyond an occasional grunt. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. I, 72.

iii. He had always a great notion of *committing the amiable*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 125.

Note I. In the above combinations the converted adjective may also, with some justice, be understood to indicate a quality in a generalizing sense. (31.) This is decidedly the more plausible view as regards the adjectives in:

One confesses, goes to mass, and *does the proper*. R. H. R., *Rambles in Istria*.<sup>2)</sup>

She *affected the masculine* in her attire. (?) Marcia in Germany, Ch. IV, 44.

II. After *to play* it seems to be more usual to place the pure adjective without the article.

When you condescended *to play agreeable*. THACK., *Martins*.<sup>1)</sup>

She stood *playing pretty* with it (the candle) in her hand. SCOTT, *Black Dwarf*.<sup>3)</sup>

But we must not *play sad* now, my dear. LOCKHARDT.<sup>2)</sup>

III. Compare with the above the following quotations in which a noun, or a noun preceded by an adjective, is similarly used in a generalizing sense:

He is accused of having *acted the hypocrite*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 87.

I made a point *to act the fine gentleman* completely. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 48.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *buck*, VI.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>3)</sup> FLÜGEL.

17. Some adjectives when denoting attributes of particular beings or things, often appear partially as nouns from their head-word being suppressed. They are then virtually proper nouns, may take the inflection of the genitive (as far as their meaning admits), and differ from other proper nouns only in that they are preceded by the definite article. Even this last trace of their originally adnominal nature disappears when they are used as vocatives. We may distinguish:

a) epithets of the Supreme Being, such as *the Almighty*, *the All-Good*, *the All-Seeing*, *the All-True*, *the All-Powerful*, *the Eternal*, *the Everlasting*, *the Highest* (*the Most High*), *the Omnipotent*, *the Supreme*, etc.

i. He is in God's Hand now, and *the All-Powerful* is likewise *the All-Merciful*. MRS. GASK., *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 277.

The eye of the *All-Seeing* is upon thee, and the hand of the *All-Powerful* shall protect. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 164.

Doubt no longer that *the Highest* is the wisest and the best. TEN., *Faith*. We have put up our thank-song to *the Supreme*. MEREDITH, (*Athena*), No. 4434, 438b).

If it should please *the Almighty* to spare him for a few years longer. MURRAY.

In sudden whirlwind... | The Spirit of *the Highest* came. WHITTIER, *Ezekiel*, IV.<sup>1</sup>)

After the last solemn messages had been delivered, *the All-Merciful* bade our father rest. Rev. of Rev., CCXVII, 23b.

ii. This day, at height of noon, came to my sphere | A spirit, zealous, as he seemed, to know | More of *the Almighty's* works. MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, IV, 566.

I only want to live like one of *the Almighty's* creeturs. DICKENS, *The Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, II, 54.

His instinct of the oneness of mankind in *the Eternal's* eyes was equally intense. STOPFORD A. BROOKE, *Stud. in Poetry*, Ch. I, 2.

iii. Do thou, *All-Good!* for such thou art, | In shades of darkness hide. BURNS, *A Prayer*.

b) epithets of sovereigns placed after the proper name, as *Tarquin the Bold*, *William the Silent*, *Louis the Desired* (THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 351).

Note I. Such epithets are also occasionally met with after personal pronouns. See also ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 22.

Paint him *the ruthless*, *the daring*, *the ambitious*. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, *Intro.* 14.

And she, *the weakly*, was left behind, while the strong man was taken. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. VIII, 85.

Does he — *the cautious*, *the wily*, *the profound* — does he build fortresses and erect towers, and not see from his battlements the mighty fabric that I, too, have erected? LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 53.

And never knightly deed of arms was done | By him, *the frank*, *the chivalrous*, *the bold*, | Which more enduring fame hath nobly won | Than with this simple legend is enrolled. BERN. BERTON, *Sir Philip Sidney*, X.

<sup>1</sup>) MURRAY.

II. Epithets standing after proper names may, in a measure, also be considered as ordinary attributive adjectives placed after their head-words. This view will seem plausible when they are compared with ordinal numerals in the same position as in *Henry the Eighth*.

The different views are sometimes symbolized by the absence or use of the comma.

- i. If Hereward will... help us against Harold *the perjured*, then will William do for him all that Harold would have done, and more beside. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XV, 65*b*.  
Torfrida was the most beautiful woman in the room; more beautiful than even Richilda *the terrible*. *ib.*, XIV, 62*a*.
- ii. And Lady Godiva called for old Abbot Ulfketyl, *the good and brave*; and fell upon his neck, and told him all her tale. *ib.*, Ch. XX, 87*b*.
- c) epithets of seas, machines, ships, etc. as *the Pacific*, *the Adriatic*, *the Atlantic*, *the Mediterranean*; *the Swift* (bicycle), *the Splendid* (stove); *the Majestic* (ship), *the Oceanic* (ship), etc.

Note. Mention may here also be made of the derisive *the many-headed* = the many-headed beast or monster, after HORACE Ep. I, 1, 76: *Belua multorum es capitum*.

Then there came a turnip, then a potato, and then an egg: with a few other little tokens of the playful disposition of *the many-headed*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 170.

18. a) Some participles may be used to denote (a) single individual(s), either with the definite article or with a genitive or its analogue. The practice is common only with some; with not a few, especially those which are marked with a dagger (†) in the illustrations following below, it seems to be more or less unusual.

**accused.** Ourselves will hear | The accuser and *the accused* freely speak. *Richard II.*, I, 1, 17.

Miss Fodge rushed forward and placed herself between Mr. Barton and the *accused*. G. ELIOT, *Scenes I*, Ch. II, 24.

*The accused* was found guilty. MRS. CRAIK, *The Sculptor of Bruges*.

**adored.** Being well fed and *the adored of his mistress* Ammonia had naturally two loaded pin-fire cartridges. RUDY KIPLING, *The Light that failed*, Ch. I, 8.

**anointed.** Would *God's anointed*, accountable to God alone, pay homage to the clamorous multitude? MAC., *Lord Bacon*, (380*a*).

**bereaved.** She could not go to comfort *the bereaved*. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*.

*The bereaved* married within a year. *Tit-bits*.

† **caressed.** He was *the caressed of the waiters*. CH. LEVER.<sup>1)</sup>

**chosen.** i. They regarded her not only as the favourite, but as *the chosen*. HARDY, *Tess*, IV, Ch. XXVIII, 229.

ii. She was one | Made but to love, to feel that she was his | Who was *her chosen*. BYRON, *Don Juan*, II, ccli.

1) WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 108.

To offer them a place in the ranks of *His chosen*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 494.

Alas! for this gray shadow, once a man — | So glorious is his beauty and thy choice, | Who madest him *thy chosen*, that he seem'd | To his great heart none other than a God. TEN., *Tithonus*, 13.

Mr. J. Dumphreys is *the chosen of the Unionists*. II. Lond. News, No. 3679, 573.

**condemned.** Drop = small platform or trap-door on the gallows, on which *the condemned* stands with the halter round his neck, and which is let fall under his feet. MURRAY, s. v. **drop**, 117.

**deceased.** On returning to the inn, I learned the whole story of *the deceased*. WASH. IRV., *Sketches*, XXX, 323.

**departed.** Here am I . . . with hardly enough to . . . enable me to live so as not to disgrace the memory of *the dear departed*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. III, 28.

**doomed.** In the black prison of the Conciergerie *the doomed* of the day awaited their fate. DICK., *Tale of Two Cities*, III, Ch. XIII, 386.

† **drowned.** The priest hurried to the spot, and immediately flung off his coat and began the usual methods for restoring *the apparently drowned*. Periodical.<sup>1)</sup>

**elder-born.** Royd's wife . . . thought suddenly of Rupert, *her elder born*. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. II, 36.

**eldest-born.** He should have been here to claim his right, as *the eldest born*, to take Kit's place. Id., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. IV, 62.

**elect.** If the Gods have ceased to guide nations, they have not ceased to speak to *their own elect*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 6b.

They (sc. the deputies) are *the elect of the people*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 515b.

**employed.** The savage outbreaks of industrial war have had the effect of very thoroughly arousing the national consciousness to the importance of securing more effective means for solving disputes as they arise between employers and *their employed*. Times, No. 1815, 823b.

† **envied.** He had succeeded ignominiously in his examinations, but he was *the envied of some who had taken honours*. Periodical.<sup>2)</sup>

† **fallen.** Mary, who had seen it (sc. the fight) all, had no pity this time for *the fallen*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. VIII, 121. (The reference is to one person.)

**first-born.** i. I do believe that, every day of her life, the mother thinks of *the first-born*, that was with her for so short a while. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 165.

ii. And all the *first-born* in the land of Egypt shall die, from the *first-born of Pharaoh*, that sitteth upon his throne, even unto the *first-born of the maid-servant* behind the mill, and all the *first-born of beasts*. Bible, Exodus, XI, 5. When *his first-born* was put into his arms, he could see that the boy inherited his own eyes. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVIII, 556.

Note. In the following quotation *first* = *first-born*: For Minnie whom I loved the worst Died mad in childbed with her *first*. MASEFIELD, *The Everlasting Mercy*, 65.

† **forsaken.** *Pen's forsaken* was consoling herself. THACK., *Pend.*<sup>3)</sup>

**injured.** Across all her anxiety for the loved and *the injured*, those words shot again and again, like a horrible pang. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VII, Ch. III, 458.

**last named.** How you hated every man she shook hands with, every woman she kissed — the maid that did her hair, the boy that cleaned her shoes, the dog she nursed — though you had to be respectful to *the last named*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 94.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 119.      <sup>2)</sup> Ib., 118.

<sup>3)</sup> FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV, 33.



lost. The two gentlemen who were there, turned their heads away. *The lost* was found again. The dead was alive. The prodigal was on his brother's heart, — his own full of love, gratitude, repentance. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XL, 511.

**long-lost.** I could no longer confirm her belief that *the long-lost* was really here. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XV, 297.

**oppressed.** *The oppressed* can save himself by martyrdom, but the oppressors must bear the full consequence of moral enfeeblement. Times, No. 1842, 309b.

**ordained.** And you — *God's ordained!* I. ZANGWILL, *The Next Relig.*, I, 35.

**possessed.** And they that kept them (sc. the swine) fled, and went their ways into the city, and told every thing, and what was befallen to *the possessed of the devils*. Bible, Matth., VIII, 33.

† **rejected.** It is possible that *the rejected of Manchester* may become *the accepted of Dundee*. Newspaper.<sup>1)</sup> (The reference is to Mr. Winston Churchill, who was defeated at the poll at Manchester.)

† **ruled.** The ruler (sc. the spirit) is governed by *the ruled* (sc. the body). FRANCIS THOMPSON, *Health and Holiness*, 31.

**saved.** A later message from the Carpathia, which rescued *the saved*, gives the number of survivors aboard her as 705. Times, No. 1842, 301b.

**slain.** The death of the Roman boy was soon forgotten, forgotten almost by the parents of *the slain*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 17.

† **undefiled.** My dove, my *undefiled* is but one; she is the only one of her mother. Bible, Solomon's Song, VI, 9.

**vanquished.** Whoever lands on the island (sc. St. Helena) flies to Longwood, where *the vanquished* of Waterloo resided and was buried. Daily Mail.

This is no rough-and-tumble fight, with no quarter for *the vanquished*. FRANCIS THOMPSON, *Health and Holiness*, 31. (The reference is to the fight between the body and the spirit.)

**younger-born.** Maurice, *the younger-born*, would go out with the Rising; but Rupert must be left behind. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. III, 61.

**youngest-born.** i. My lord Percy said he would have *the youngest-born* or none. Id., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. IV, 58.

ii. Old Richard passed through the chattering throng, and looked for Kit, his *youngest born*. Ib., Ch. IV, 60.

Note. Thus also in *She's an Australian born* (AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Panther's Cub*, I, Ch. IV, 42) the word-group *Australian born* may be apprehended as an instance of partial conversion (Ch. XXVIII, 3, Obs. VI), although, of course, it seems more plausible to understand *Australian* as a noun modified by *born*.

- b) Some participles occur also with other modifiers, i. e. a demonstrative pronoun, the indefinite article, an indefinite numeral; or without any modifier. A few are also found in the genitive and in the plural, in which last case they have, of course, become pure nouns.

i. One week we were congratulating him on being an advocate, the next *this* fair *unknown* had lured him on to the stage. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XVIII, 163.

Soon . . he must . . render the account of his doings towards *this youngest-born*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. XII, 201.

<sup>1)</sup> WINDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 119.

- ii. What is thy beloved more than *another beloved*, O thou fairest among women. Bible, Solomon's Song, V, 9. (For the rest *beloved* occurs only with a possessive pronoun in this book.)  
Catharine and *an unknown*. Catharine driving at a foot's pace, and *the unknown* walking beside her. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 126.  
*A first-born*, who died an infant, was yet *the eldest son*. DEAN ALFORD, The Queen's Eng., § 215.
- iii. Arnold stands, at the beginning of the twentieth century, by virtue alike of his work and its influence, among *the few*, *the very few elect* of his generation. ARTHUR WAUGH, Introd. to Matth. Arnold's Poems, 5.
- iv. There has been a rush of *unemployed* across the border. Rev. of Rev., CCXVI, 562.
- v. I am *my beloved's*, and my beloved is mine. Bible, Solomon's Song, VI, 3.  
Dr. Johnson felt *the deceased's* pulse before prescribing. Titbits.  
And then comes the waking, which is as though one fell asleep upon *his beloved's* bosom and awoke among thorns and having a crown of thorns about his brows. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. X, 174.  
The Prison Chaplain entered *the condemned's* cell for the last time. Westm. Gaz., No. 4983, 9a.
- vi. What is the reason that men fall in love with me... and desert their chosen *intendeds*. DICK., Nich. Nickleby, Ch. XII.<sup>1)</sup>  
The suburb huts where *base-borns* dwelt. EDWIN ARNOLD, The Light of Asia.<sup>2)</sup>  
Craving food of *low-borns*. Ib.<sup>2)</sup>  
Others talk of their *beloveds*, and they shall be made to hear of mine. SPURGEON.<sup>3)</sup>

- c) With most of the above participles constructions with some prop-word would seem to be unusual. Such combinations as *the accused* (*adored*, *beloved*, *bereaved*, etc.) *one* (*man* or *person*) would hardly be considered ordinary English. (14, b, Note I.) Less unusual, although also uncommon are such constructions as *the man* (or *person*) *accused* (*adored*, *beloved*, *bereaved*, etc.). Here follow some quotations exhibiting the unusual practice. See also Ch. LIII, 6.

Again David gathered together all the *chosen men* of Israel, thirty thousand. Bible, Samuel, B, VI, 1.

Directly she set eyes on Tess, she divined that she was to be *the chosen one* of somebody who was no common outdoor man. HARDY, Tess, IV, Ch. XXXII, 264.

He who called my boy a coward . . . , because he would not join some crack-brained plan against the valley, which sheltered his *beloved one*! BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXV, 208.

Note I. In the following quotations the genitive is responsible for the use of *one*:

Silence seemed, on the face of it, best for *her adored one's* happiness. HARDY, Tess, IV, Ch. XXXI, 251.

Coralie noted . . . the large mourning ring of black enamel . . . that flashed upon *the bereaved one's* finger. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste, II, Ch. VII, 185.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *intended*.      3) Id., s. v. *beloved*.

2) FIJN VAN DRAAT, Drie Talen, XIV.

II. With other participles, on the other hand, the last-named construction is the usual one.

*The man addressed* came slowly forward. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 9b.

The construction illustrated by the following quotations would seem to be unusual, pre-position of the participle being, perhaps, due to rhythmic considerations. FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Rhythm in Eng. Prose*. (Anglia, XXIV, 17 ff.)

*The plundered man* described his loss. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, III, Ch. VII, 79.

The sergeant, however, again accused him of being the *wanted* man. *Times*.

III. Another substitute for the converted adjective, which is more frequent than that with *one*, is the construction with the determinative *those*. (Ch. XXXVI, 12, c, Note; compare also 14, b.)

The chief amongst *those confined* was Francis Bonnivard. *Introd. to BYRON'S Pris. of Chil.* (Allman's Clas.).

- d) Analogous in nature to the above participles are the adjective *dead* and the participial adjective *living*, which exhibit similar peculiarities in their applications.

*Dead* is used to indicate a class; a single individual, in which case it may be preceded by the definite or indefinite article or by a possessive pronoun; and also a definite or indefinite number of individuals; but it allows of no inflection for the plural, and cannot, therefore, be considered to have become a pure noun. The use of *dead* after the indefinite article, and as a plural without any preceding modifier, seems to be rare. Except for military reports, this may also be said of the use of *dead* after a number-indicating word. See also 20 and Ch. IV, 15.

- i. Let *the dead* bury *their dead*. Bible, *Matth.*, VIII, 22.

Around them, still and silent as *the dead*, clustered the whole English army. DICKENS.

Are they here —! *The dead* of other days? BRYANT, *The Prairies*, 40.

- ii. \* *The dead* speaks still to you and commends to your care her children. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 104.

The funeral was over: *the dead* shovelled away. *Ib.*, 41.

She spoke in whispers and walked softly, as if *the dead* could be disturbed. *Dick., Cop.*, Ch. IX, 64.

The tablet in the parish church is a tardy recognition of *the illustrious dead* who sleeps there. *Times*.

\*\* Lo (As ye lie asleep, so must you lie), *a dead*. EDWIN ARNOLD, *The Light of Asia*.)

\*\*\* The mother was still beside *her dead* making arrangements for the burial. Mrs. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 307.

I would have none touch *my dead* save myself, AN. BES., *Autobiog.*, 126.

- iii. \* In the heap on the left are *forty-nine dead* and dying. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3841, 803a.

\*\* They buried *a lot of dead* where they fell. *Times*.

She asks in bewilderment, "Where are the dead?" He answers, "There are *no dead*", and the curtain falls. CHESTERTON (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3689, 4c) It is quite useless to tell children that there are *no dead*. *Ib.*

\*\*\* The field was strewn with *dead*. *Times*.

Compare: *Dead men* tell no tales. Proverb.

Heaps upon heaps of *dead men* lay strewn all over the ground. *Dick.* (GÜNTH., *Handb.*, 63).

1) FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Drie Talen*, XIV, 33.

*Living* may indicate both a class of persons and a single individual; in the latter application, apparently, only in conjunction with *dead* similarly employed. In its converted function it is always preceded by the definite article.

i. The land of *the living*. Bible, Psalm XXVII, 13; LIII, 5.

The true way to mourn the dead is to take care of *the living* who belong to them. BURKE, Cor.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Still, there was a deep difference between that devotion to *the living* and that indefinite promise of devotion to the dead. G. ELIOT, Mid., V, Ch. XLVIII, 355.

Every night before I lie down to rest, I look at the pictures and bless both *the living* and the dead. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 27.

e) Here also mention may be made of such collocations as *your obedient* for *your obedient servant*, in which the adjective has the value of a present participle turned into an adjective.

Ladies, *your most obedient*. SHER., School for Scand., II, 2, (380).

Mr. Snake, *your most obedient*. Ib., I, 1, (305).

"Mr. Surface, *your most obedient*." — "Sir, *your very devoted*." Ib., I, 1, (366).

*Your most obsequious*. Ib., V, 1, (421).

19. The superlatives *first* and *last*, and the comparatives *former* and *latter*, are often used to refer to one or more particular individuals out of a series (of two), spoken of in a preceding part of the discourse. They are then preceded by the definite article or a demonstrative pronoun. (Ch. XXX, 11.) The comparatives admit of inflection for the genitive. The use of other superlatives and comparatives to denote single individuals is now archaic. (14, b.)

i. He was always *the first* himself to cry at their (sc. of those wonderful Irish ballads) pathos. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. V, 58.

If you dare utter a word against me, you will find that as I am *the last* to care for a threat, so I am *the first* to resent an injury. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 153.

ii. *The former's* phlegm was a check upon *the latter's* vivacity. L. MURRAY, Eng. Gram.<sup>1)</sup> I, 102.<sup>1)</sup>

He would have been afraid to offer more, lest he should offend *the latter's* delicacy. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. V, 58.

The dispute had raged between mother and son during the whole of *the latter's* last days in Virginia. Id., Virg., Ch. LV, 569.

iii. The young one is to come first. He is to marry an heiress, and, when he has got her, up is to rise the elder brother! When did this elder brother show? Why, when *the younger's* scheme was blown, and all was up with him! Ib., Ch. LIII, 552.

20. In referring to the casualties of battles or accidents such participial adjectives as *killed*, *slain*, *wounded* etc. are often used to indicate persons in any grammatical combination, without, however, ever taking the inflection for either the genitive or the plural. These words thus used may also be understood as a variety of undeveloped clauses. (Ch. IV, 15.)

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



Wagons and long country carts laden with *wounded* came rolling into the town. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 348.

*Our own wounded* require my attention. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. VI, 59.

The total losses are *24 killed* and *46 wounded*. *Times*.

He was lying surrounded by *a mass of Dervish slain*. *Ib.*

The *killed* on British railways last year was 1.117. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 308a.

*Dead* and *dying* lying about owing to lack of transport. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3841, 803a.

In the heap on the left are *forty-nine dead and dying*. *Ib.*

Note. The same practice is sometimes extended to cases more or less analogous to that mentioned above.

To how *many halt* or *maimed* has Robert taken you? *Mrs WARD, Rob. Elsm.* A trainload of 250 cripples and *115 blind* arrived at Hunstanton recently for a day's outing. *Tit-bits*, No. 1291, 404c.

The list of *saved* is mainly composed of women. *Times*, No. 1842, 301c.

"What is your average list of *killed* in a pheasant battue?" — "What — what kind of *killed*?" I asked laughing. "Guests or beaters or dogs — anything but the birds." *EL. GLYN, Refl. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. VIII, 174.

21. Some adjectives admit of denoting a quality in a generalizing way. They are then normally preceded by the definite article. Compare a similar use of nouns, as in *The lion is a beast of prey*. (Ch. XXXI, 5, b; 31 ff.)

The same combination, definite article + adjective, is used to denote a class of persons (14), but the context mostly precludes all ambiguity. Moreover, when the converted adjective is the subject, the singular or the plural form of the finite verb sometimes brings out whether a quality or a class of persons is referred to.

There was nearly half as much of *the entertaining* as of *the contemptible* about the man. *POE, Purloined Letter*, 183.

These poems are specimens of *the burlesque* and *fanciful*. *Mrs. SHELLEY, Postscript to sec. Ed.*

In this Shelley resembled Plato; both taking more delight in *the abstract* and *the ideal* than in *the special* and *tangible*. *Id., Pref. to first collected Ed.*, 1839.

Their scope was to awaken mankind to aspirations for what he considered *the true* and *good*. *Ib.*

The mirth of Mr. Bob Sawyer was rapidly ripening into *the furious*; Mr. Ben Allen was fast relapsing into *the sentimental*. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 352. Going from *the general* to *the particular*, we may say that nowhere was a deeper consternation spread than in the electoral division of West Barsetshire. *TROL., Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVII, 355.

In the buildings good sense and good taste combine to produce a happy union of *the comfortable* and *the graceful*. *MAC., Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 314.

His (sc. hair) has too much o' *the red* in it. *Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton*, Ch. XII, 137.

She passed from *the temporal* to *the eternal*. *Id., Life of Ch. Brontë*, 297. We needs must love *the highest* when we see it. *TEN., Guin.*, 654.

This led him to fly at *the highest*, while he overleaped the facts of ordinary life. *SYMONDS, Shelley*, Ch. II, 13.

It is worse than useless to deplore *the irremediable*. *Ib., Ch. I*, 1.

*The beautiful* can never die. *CH. KINGSLEY, Hyp.*, Ch. II, 66.

In their education *the useful* has of late been trenching on *the ornamental*. SPENCER, Education, Ch. I, 10.

The early Methodists were firm believers in *the miraculous*. W. MOTTRAM, The True G. Eliot, Ch. II, 28.

Nothing is certain but *the unforeseen*. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. VII, 99.

If let alone, with some allowance for his habits and opinions, the Cape Dutchman would have acquiesced in *the inevitable*. *Id.*, Ch. III, 45.

*The impossible* has to be proved impossible, before men will consent to limit their endeavours to the compassing of *the possible*. LEWES, Hist. Phil., 60.

We played and set aside for an hour only the obstinate claims of *the actual*. ANTH. HOPE, The King's Mirror, Ch. II, 37.

Sin is the deliberate and wilful act of a free agent who sees *the better* and chooses *the worse*, and thereby acts injuriously to himself and others. Sir OLIVER LODGE, The Substance of Faith.

Note. Many adjectives thus converted occur chiefly or exclusively in peculiar idioms.

**bad.** i. Stephen would very likely *go to the bad* altogether. EDNA LYALL, Don., II, 149 (= Dutch *de slechte weg opgaan*.)

Would not most men have *gone to the bad* altogether? Mrs. WARD, Marc., I, 116.

ii. He was between £ 70 and £ 80 *to the bad*. Pall Mall Gaz., 1884, 6 Feb., 4. (= Dutch *te kort*.)

Even if we allow that the population has increased ten per cent in that time, that will leave us still 100 millions *to the bad*. Rev. of Rev., CCXIII, 250b.

The actual decrease in the nine months is £ 5,029,000, or £ 2,800,000 *to the bad*. Westm. Gaz.

**better.** i. *The better* is the enemy of good. Proverb (BAIN, H. E. Gr., 29).

ii. His perseverance *got the better of me*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XIII, 183. (= Dutch *de baas zijn, te slim af zijn, overwinnen*.)

I am sure I could have tripped his old heels up easily enough, and *got the better of him* in five minutes. *Id.*, Denis Duval, Ch. VI, 254.

There is not the slightest doubt that one of the ways in which many animals *have the better of man* is in being very much more sensitive to and quickly aware of coming changes in the weather. HOR. HUTCHINSON, Weather Wisdom of the Birds (Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 4c). (= Dutch *een voor-sprong hebben*.)

iii. The illness of the Prime Minister has taken *a decided turn for the better*. Times. (= Dutch *ten goede*.)

Affairs in the Near East have taken *a decided turn for the better* this week. Westm. Gaz.

Thus also: *to alter (or change) a thing for the better, a change for the better*.

**collective.** Women *in the collective* must make the sacrifice, for the highest civilisation has no value once it is doomed to destruction. Westm. Gaz., No. 5519, 8d. (= Dutch *als een geheel, met elkaar*.)

**common.** He stood impassive as if he had witnessed nothing *out of the common*. HUGH CONWAY, 'Called Back', 87. (= Dutch *buitengewoons*.)

The two who waited for him saw nothing *out of the common* in his appearance. JOHN OXENHAM, The Simple Beguiler (SWAEN, A Selection of Eng. Prose and Poetry, II, 140).

Compare: There is something romantic in it — *out of the common way*. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. III, 358. (See also under *ordinary* and *usual*.)

**defensive.** They compelled him *to keep the defensive*. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXIV, 366. (= Dutch *een verdedigende houding bewaren*.)

Thus also: *to be on the defensive, to stand on the defensive, to assume the defensive, to act on the defensive*.

**extreme.** It is regrettable *in the extreme*. Times. (= Dutch uiterst, uitermate.)

**full.** i. The moon is behind, and *at the full*. COLERIDGE, Christ., I, 18. (= Dutch vol.)

ii. This young Columbian was succeeded by another *to the full* as eloquent as he who drew down storms of cheers. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXI, 184a. (= Dutch ten volle.)

Accepting *to the full* his altered situation. Graph.

He meant *to the full* all that he said. JOHN OXENHAM, Great-heart Gilian, Ch. IX, 69.

Thus also: *fed to the full*.

**gross.** Shall only man be taken *in the gross*? POPE, Mor. Es., I, 17. (= Dutch in zijn geheel.)

They have been able to find few flaws in his nature, and therefore have denounced it *in the gross*. MOTLEY, Rise, VI, Ch. VII, 902b. (Compare: But the full sum of me | Is sum of nothing; which, to term *in gross*, | Is an unlessoned girl, unschooled, unpractised. Merch., III, 2, 160.)

**loose.** i. \* Of this (sc. collection of cigar ends) about 1½ cwt. was sold *in the loose* to a tobacco manufacturer at 1 s. per lb. Westm. Gaz.<sup>1)</sup> (= not made up into or prepared in a particular form, Dutch in ruwen staat.)

\*\* *In the loose* both packs did well, but the Oxford men were more brilliant. Ib.<sup>1)</sup> (*loose* = that part of the game of Rugby football in which the ball travels freely from player to player, as distinguished from the 'scrimmage'.)

ii. Having to appear at the police court in order to give evidence for one of your fast friends who has been out *upon the loose*. Punch.<sup>1)</sup> (= on the spree, Dutch aan de rol.)

**main.** *In the main* he has devoted himself to an analysis of the Free Trade case. Times, No. 1808, 683b. (Dutch in hoofdzaak.)

**offensive.** It is clearly evident that Kuropatkin in his own half-hearted fashion, nourished an intention of *assuming the offensive*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5249, 14a. (= Dutch een aanvallende houding aannemen.)

Thus also: *to be on the offensive*, *to keep on the offensive*, *to stand on the offensive*, *to act on the offensive*.

**mean.** *To observe the golden mean*. Proverb. (= Dutch de gulden middelmaat.)

**ordinary.** So far there was nothing *out of the ordinary*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5060, 1c. (Dutch buitengewoons.) Compare: *common* and *usual*.

**right.** It is certain that, whoever might originally have been *in the right*, Prussia had submitted. Mac., Fred., (666a). (= Dutch het bij het rechte eind hebben.)

**right about.** If it (sc. the arrangement) don't act well, or don't quite accord with our mutual convenience, he can easily *go to the right about*. DICK., Cop., Ch. XV, 111a (= Dutch rechtsomkeert.)

Professor Emanuel *had sent me to the right about*. Ch. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XX, 258.

**rough.** \* (He was) a good and gallant but unpolished man, a sort of diamond *in the rough*. Ch. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XIV, 165. (= Dutch in ruwen staat.)

\*\* Contemplating people *in the rough*. WEBST., Dict. (= Dutch in het algemeen.)

1) MURRAY.

\*\*\* My objections to certain parts of it (sc. the Budget), when it was outlined *in the rough*, were exactly in proportion to my belief in other parts of it. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 4a. (= Dutch *in ruwe trekken*.)

Note. Sometimes without the definite article: Such *in rough* is the Draft Constitution. *Ib.*, No. 4925, 1c.

sly. i. He had cunning ways of doing you a mischief *by the sly*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, II, Ch. III, 145. (= Dutch *in het geniep*.)

I can hardly bear to think of all the rough work she did with those lovely hands all *by the sly*. *Id.*, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VII, 55. (= Dutch *in stilte*.)

ii. This diversion was enjoyed *on the sly* and unknown to the ladies of the house. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 157. (= Dutch *in stilte*.)

sudden. Following the fliers at the very heels, | With them he enters; who *upon the sudden*, | Clapp'd to their gates. *Coriol.*, I, 7, 52.

Then Galahad *on the sudden* and in a voice | Shrilling along the hall to Arthur, call'd [etc.]. *TEN.*, *Holy Grail*, 288.

Oliphant grew hot *on the sudden*. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. II, 34.

Note. Apparently only archaic and literary, (*all*) *on a sudden*, and, more frequently, (*all*) *of a sudden* being mostly used instead.

usual. My request is so *out of the usual* that I feel an embarrassment. *Eng. Rev.*, Aug. 1912, 31. (= Dutch *iets buitengewoon*.) Compare: *common* and *ordinary*.

worse. Lord's on the Eton and Harrow match-day has suffered a *change for the worse*. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. VIII, 54. (= Dutch *ten kwade*.)

Either it (sc. Liberalism) or Europe, or both, have gravely *changed for the worse*, since the middle-aged men of to-day were young. *For the worse*, we say, but not for the worst. *Nation* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5255, 16). (Observe the nonce-formation *for the worst*.)

wrong. He has forgiven it, although he was *in the wrong*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XIII, 178. (= Dutch *het mis hebben*.)

Nor was the public much *in the wrong*. *MAC.*, *Fred.*, (671b).

Note also: He had a nose inclining to *the aquiline*. *SMOL.*, *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XXII, 148.

He thought the story a little *on the extravagant*. *WASH. IRV.*, *Legend*, *Postscript*.

22. Obs. I. Sometimes the converted adjective denotes at once a quality in a generalizing way and all the objects in which this quality is found. Thus in *He admires (is always in quest of etc.) the beautiful and the picturesque* we think not only of beauty and picturesqueness in a generalizing way, but also of all things beautiful and picturesque.

He (sc. Scott), the adorer of *the old*, . . . saw in the fresh movement of humanity that which would destroy all he loved. STOPFORD BROOKE, *Stud. in Poetry*, Ch. II 1, 63.

The language is, however, scarcely capable of expressing a purely concrete generalized idea by a converted adjective. Thus for the Dutch *Het oude is somtijds meer waard dan het nieuwe* we could not say *\*The old is sometimes more valuable than the new*. The English for this would run (*The old things are sometimes more valuable than (the) new*. (For the use of the article see Ch. XXXI, 33, a.)



Also when the generalizing must be understood with some limitation (Obs. IV), the construction with the converted adjective is mostly unavailable. Thus the Dutch *Hij verkocht het oude en behield het nieuwe* would be translated by *He sold what(ever) was old (everything that was old, all the old things), keeping what(ever) was new (everything that was new, all the new things)*; not by *\*He sold the old, keeping the new*.

Some converted adjectives, however, admit of expressing a notion which resembles a generalized concrete idea with some limitation.

**fat.** All the way down from London, I had a rogue of a fellow in front of me, eating *the fat of the land* before me. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXIII, 132. They live on *the fat of the land*. Graph.

**mortal.** The black earth yawns: *the mortal* disappears. TEN., Ode on the Death of the Duke of Wel., IX, 269 (= *all that is mortal of him*. This application of *mortal* seems unusual.)

**quick.** He bites his nails to *the quick*. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict. Stung to *the quick*. ANNAND., Conc. Dict.

The powerlessness of the strong man touched my heart to *the quick*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXVII, 54.

These creatures had now found out a way of galling him to *the very quick*. MAC., Fred., (678a).

In truth, his misfortunes had now cut to *the quick*. Ib., (690a).

**raw.** If he accuses me of this monstrous and almost heroic vulgarity, he will have hit me on *the raw*. CHESTERTON, (Il. Lond. News, No. 3684, 751c).

Special mention may be made of certain superlatives, such as:

**best.** Eliza... now came trying to sit on my knee, and kiss me, and give me *the best* of the pan. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXII, 126.

**worst.** When they hear 'king's service' cried, they give me *the worst* of everything. Ib., Ch. XXIII, 132.

## II. Instead of the converted adjective we sometimes find:

a) a noun indicating a person or animal which is regarded as the embodiment of the quality. Such a noun may stand with or without the definite article.

i. Again I might desert fair virtue's way: | Again in folly's path might go astray; | Again exalt *the brute* and sink *the man*. BURNS, Stanzas in the Prospect of Death.

But 't was a face more frank and wild | Betwixt *the woman* and *the child*. SCOTT, Brid. of Triermmain, II, xiv.

*The woman* in her was yet deeply asleep. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, I, Ch. II, 29.

ii. An alarming amount of *devil* there. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. II, 348.

He held that a revolutionary fanatic was a mixture of *fool* and *scoundrel*. LESLIE STEPHEN, George Eliot, Ch. I, 2.

And in that mystery | Where *God-in-man* is one with *man-in-God*, | Prayed for a blessing on his wife and babes. TEN., Enoch Arden, 187.

β) an abstract noun, which, when denoting a generalized quality, normally stands without the definite article. (Ch. XXXI, 34, a.)

Then the inspiring love of *novelty* and *adventure* came rushing in full tide through his bosom. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl. I, 124).

There were many striking contrasts in the character and behaviour of Shelley, and one of the most remarkable was a mixture, or alternation, of *awkwardness*

with *agility* — of the clumsy with the graceful. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. II 24. (Note the varied practice.)

At last it was the turn of the good old-fashioned dance which has the least of *vanity* and the most of *merriment* in it. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. X, 407.

- III. Sometimes the abstract noun is identical in form with the adjective. In this case the absence or use of the definite article alone determines the character of the word, abstract nouns standing as regularly without it when denoting generalized ideas as adjectives in this function stand with it. (Ch. XXXI, 31, *a*; 34, *a*.) Thus *my own conception of right or wrong* (SHELLEY) = *my own conceptions of the right or (the) wrong*. Compare: *my own apprehensions of the beautiful and just* (SHELLEY).

- IV. As in the case of a class of persons (14, *a*, Note), the generalizing of a quality is sometimes to be understood with some limitation, which finds expression in an adverb, an adnominal word-group containing a preposition, or an adnominal clause, or must be understood from the context.

i. The sole aim of art is to attain *the supremely beautiful*.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. For indeed I knew | Of no more subtle master under heaven | Than is the maiden passion for a maid, | Not only to keep down *the base in man*, | But teach him high thought [etc.]. TEN., Guin., 476.

O Loyal to *the royal in thyself*. Id., To the Queen, I.

Never dissociate your ideas from *the real of life*. G. MEREDITH, (Athen., No. 4434, 438a).

He has all *the best of me* without *the bad of me*. HARDY, Tess., VII, Ch. LVIII, 514.

Charlotte rubbed her smooth cheek affectionately against *the rough woollen of her sister's frock*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XII, 229.

iii. The poet might as wisely and as easily determine that his mind should no longer be the mirror of all that is lovely in the visible universe, as exclude from his contemplation *the beautiful which exists in the writings of a great contemporary*. SHEL., Pref. to Prom. Unbound.

iv. In recording the doings of a large school *the bad* has to be told with *the good*. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 92.

It is *the sweet and bitter* mixed that gives life its flavour. JOHN OXENHAM, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. VII, 52.

In conclusion, I think from *the foregoing* I have proved how futile it is for statesmen to continue the controversy regarding the fiscal policy of this country. Eng. Rev., Sept. 1912, 280.

Note. Adjectives before the names of such generalized qualities seem to be usually continuative; adverbs in this position may correspond to sentence modifiers:

i. Presently *the rude Real* burst coarsely in — all evil, grovelling and repellent as she too often is. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XII, 134.

His (sc. Sott's) force had made *the beautiful dead* alive. STOPFORD BROOKE, Stud. in Poetry, Ch. II, 1, 66.

And he would have looked round for *the eternal feminine* for an explanation. Westm. Gaz. No. 6135, 3b.

ii. *The clearly inevitable* has duly happened in Parliament.<sup>1)</sup> (= *what is clearly inevitable*, not *what is clear inevitableness*.)

- V. But for some special cases, for which see Obs. VI, the converted adjective is mostly replaced by another construction when the limitation is one

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, Die Syntax des Adjektivs, 39.

that is or would be expressed by an adnominal word-group or clause. This construction is:

a) an abstract noun:

He was much struck by *the novelty of this idea*. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 57.  
They laughed and jested at *the absurdity of the notion*. MAC. CLIVE, (513b).  
We expected that the Dutch should recognize as instantaneously as ourselves *the wickedness of the institution*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 44.

β) a word-group consisting of *all* (or *everything*) + adnominal clause, or a substantival clause introduced by *what(ever)*.

He was liberal in his commendations of *all that he thought beautiful* in the poem.

In every venerable precedent they pass by *what is essential*, and take only *what is accidental*, they keep out of sight *what is beneficial* and hold up to public imitation *all that is defective*. MACAULAY.<sup>1)</sup>

Thousands who were incompetent to appreciate *what was really valuable in his speculation* eagerly welcomed a theory which [etc.]. Id.<sup>1)</sup>

Death is there associated...not...with *everything that is most endearing* in social and domestic charities; but with *whatever in darkest* in human nature and in human destiny. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 195.

Grant me, I pray you: have your joys apart. I doubt not that however changed, you keep | So much of *what is graceful*. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 1212.

γ) an adjective followed by *thing* by way of prop-word.

*The next thing* I remember is waking up with a feeling as if I had had a frightful nightmare. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. III, 16.

*The strangest thing about it* was that from the crown of its head there sprang a bright, clear jet of light. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, II, 34.

*The very first thing that I saw* on entering the drawing-room was a little group composed of Hilda, Lady Mildred Bracknell and Jim. MORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. IV, 29.

*The strange thing* is that even in this he has no real fire. STOPFORD BROOKE, *Stud. in Poetry*, Ch. II, II, 68.

I thought that the Government had done *the right thing*. TIMES.

VI. The special cases referred to in the preceding Observation are the following:

a) The converted adjective is used for epigrammatic effect. This is especially done when there are two placed in juxtaposition expressing opposite notions.

i. *The long and short of the matter* is that, if I cannot procure 5000l. before Saturday, our concern is ruined. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 131.

Note. Also with the order of the adjectives reversed, and in Older English *the short of the thing (matter)*:

\* Indeed, *the short and the long* is, I serve the Jew. MERCH. OF VEN., II, 2, 135.

*The short and the long* is, our play is preferred. MIDS., IV, 2, 35.

And *the short and the long of the matter* was that...not one would help us to defend the inn. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. IV, 31.

\*\* *The short of the thing* is, that if you like me, and I like you, we may chance to swing in a hammock together. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, III, 3 (250).

ii. As to arguing with himself about *the right and wrong of the matter*, such a notion never occurred to him. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. VI, 49.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Die Synt. des Adj.*, 39.

- β) The converted adjective appears in a materially modified meaning in certain locutions.

**the dead of night.** *At the dead of night* a sweet vision I saw. THOM. CAMPB., *The Soldier's Dream*, II.

**the dead of winter.** *In the dead of winter*, when nature is without charm. WASH. IRV.<sup>1)</sup>

**the full of the season.** Very good time to come — *the very full of the season*. THACK., *Newc.*, L, Ch. VI, 70. (Compare: arrayed in *the very height of fashion*. Ib.)

**the thick of a town, a crowd** etc. Good Heavens! have I often and often thought in the midst of a song, or *the very thick of a ball-room*, can people prefer this to a book and a sofa, and a dear, dear cigar-box? THACK., *Fitzboodle*, Pref. (219).

If you rode straight away from my door here at a round trot for an hour and a half, you would still be *in the thick of London*. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. X, 72.

I gave him the flat of my hand on his head, and down he went in *the thick of the milk-pans*. BLACKM., *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXII, 126.

I don't like to think of that child in *the thick of such a crowd*. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. IX, 59. (Compare: I am for going into *the throng of temptations*. WYCHERLEY, *Gent. Danc. Mast.*, I, 1 (140).)

- γ) The adjective is one of certain superlatives. As is evidenced by the following quotations, the conversion seems to depend with most of them on the presence of an adjunct containing the preposition *of*, the prop-word *thing* being mostly required when there is no such adjunct.

**best.** i. \* It is sufficient to add in general terms, that he did *the best he could* for Mr. Pickwick; and the best, as everybody knows, on the infallible authority of the old adage, could do no more. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 319.

*The best I can wish my readers* is, that they may be mercifully preserved from finding it anywhere. F. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 383.

This, of course, offers no immediate redress to Turkey, but it is *the best that can be done* and by no means a bad best. Westm. Gaz.

We have done *the best we could* to your kind order. Bus. Let. Writer, IX. (= Dutch *Wij hebben van uw vriendelijke bestelling gemaakt wat wij konden*.)

\*\* Our books contain *the best of us*. G. MEREDITH (*Athen.*, No. 4434, 437c). You have so plainly here *the best of it*. BROWNING, *Luria*, I, 1.

\*\*\* The fathers and the mothers laugh; but the young ones have *the best of them*. BLACKM., *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXIV, 206.

And now both Annie knew, and I, that we had gotten *the best of mother*. Ib.

\*\*\*\* To make *the best of a bad matter*, he formed a project in his head to call an assembly of the rest of the foxes. Æsop's *Fables*, LXVI, 145.

To make *the best of a bad matter* [etc.] CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 8b  
When things are inevitable, what can a wise man do but make *the best of them*? NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. V, 36.

\*\*\*\*\* He made *the best of his way* for town as soon as the bats began to flit about in the twilight. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF, *Handl.*, I, 112)

The two brothers made *the best of their way* towards Bristol. FREEMAN, *Norm. Conq.*, II, Ch. VII, 154.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *dead*, B, 2.



\*\*\*\*\* To *the best of his means and ability* he comments on all the ordinary actions and passions of life almost. THACK., Eng. Hum., Swift, 2.  
A whole crowd formed to see me dance, which I did to *the best of my power*.  
Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 52.

I will obey you to *the best of my ability*. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. IX, 62.

- ii. One way or other all would turn out *for the best*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 124).

I dare say all will work out, somehow or other, *for the best*. Ib., 143.

She did not hesitate to aver that all was *for the best*. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. IV, 26.

All is *for the best* in the best of possible worlds. Ib., 32. (An adaptation of the French: Tout est pour le mieux dans le meilleur des mondes possible.)

I did it all *for the best*. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, D, 55.

I know; you meant *for the best*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, III, Ch. VI, 277.

**first.** We shall be able to stem *the first of the flood*. MARRYAT, Poor Jack, XXII.<sup>1)</sup>  
Note. According to MURRAY (s.v. *first*, II, 5, c), now obsolete in this application, except in the phrases *the first of the ebb, flood or tide*.

**highest.** i. We heard from him when the ship stopped at Queenstown, when he was in *the highest of hope*. DICK., Uncom. Trav., Ch. II, 25.

- ii. His fury was wrought to *the highest*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXVII, 389.

**hottest.** Snatching a shield from a soldier, and otherwise unarmed, Cæsar throws himself into *the hottest of the fight*. MOTLEY, Rise, I, Ch. I, 7a.

**last.** \* When Gladys came back after seeing *the last of her two visitors*, she found her mother alone. EDNA LYALL, Donovan, I, 216.

Francesca was just in time to see *the last of the planet*. Id. Knight Er. Ch. X, 86.  
Few had come to see *the last of one* who had left none to mourn him. HALL CAINE, The Christian, II, 298.

I should like to see *the last of him*. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. II, 38.

\*\* That was *the last* they saw of Svengali. G. DU MAURIER, Trilby, II, 176.

\*\*\* In *the last of May*. WEBST., Dict.

\*\*\*\* In carrying that on, he lost *the last of his money*. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 8.

**least.** It was unlucky, to say *the least of it*, that he should have taken such a long time to discover her beauty. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. VIII, 56.

**strangest.** This is strange: and yet *the strangest* is behind. MAC., Mach., (30a).

**thickest.** He through *the thickest of the fight* had led | The fearless on to Victory and to fame. BERNARD BARTON, Sir Philip Sidney, V. (Compare: Thus at seventy-two years of age he fell *in the thickest battle*. MAC., Fred., (689a).

**ut(ter)most.** i. *The utmost I can say for him* in this respect is that he performed those functions with undeviating attention to brevity and despatch. G. ELIOT, Scenes, II, Ch. I, 73.

It was *the utmost I could do*, to look at him half-gravely. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXI, 120.

Let *the utmost possible* be done to show everything at its best. Rev. of Rev., CCXXII, 538b.

- ii. I hope you are . . . enjoying your holiday *to the utmost*. G. ELIOT, Letters. (Times, No. 1809, 703d.)

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

In him woke | With his first babe's first cry, the noble wish | To save all earnings  
to *the uttermost*. TEN., En. Ard., 86.

Had he not striven to *the utmost*? EDNA LYALL, DONOVAN, II, 213.

I trust you will give me credit for having exerted myself to *the utmost*. BUS.  
LET. WRITER, XVII.

Its splendid fighting qualities have been largely neutralized by want of foresight  
on the part of those whose business it was to utilize the fighting qualities to  
*the utmost*. TIMES.

Even when relations between this country and other States have been strained  
to *the utmost*, Lord Salisbury has, with scarcely any exceptions worth  
mentioning, been spoken of with undeviating respect. *ib.*

**worst.** i. \**The worst that could have happened* to him would have been no  
such serious matter in his case. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. I, 10.

\*\* The enemy seem to have had *the worst of it*. TIMES.

Note. For this SCOTT has *the worse*: I believe the Clan Chattan will have  
*the worse*. FAIR MAID, Ch. XXVI, 274.

ii. \* He feared *the worst*. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. XVIII, 358.

The general view seems to be that *the worst* had been experienced. Truth,  
No. 1802, 93*b*.

\*\* *If the worst come to the worst*, ye can but walk the two days back  
again and risp at the manse door. STEV., Kidnapped, Ch. I, 1.

(I hoped) that she might have to hold by me, *when the worst came to the  
worst of it*. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XX, 117. (Note the unusual  
addition of *of it* in the last quotation.)

Thus also after the following words that have the value of superlatives:

**chief.** She could perceive that *the chief of it* was overheard by Mr. Darcy.  
JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. XVIII, 102.

She was never satisfied with the day unless she spent *the chief of it* by the  
side of Mrs. Thorpe. *Id.*, North. Abb., Ch. V, 24.

**extreme.** Sam was . . . waving his hat about, as if he were *in the very last  
extreme of the wildest joy*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXIV, 219.

The use of *next* without the prop-word *thing*, as in the following  
quotation, seems to be rare.

*The next* he knew, he was dimly aware that his tongue was hurting. JACK  
LONDON, The Call of the Wild, I, 17.

VII. The suppression of the specializing element has in some cases almost  
reduced the converted adjective to an ordinary noun, the definite  
article being the only trace of its original function. This applies  
especially to some applications of certain superlatives, such as *first*,  
*highest*, *last* and *lowest* and to *future*, *past* and *present*. For a dis-  
cussion of *at (the) first* and *at (the) last* see Ch. XXX, 38.

**first.** \* This is *the first* I've heard of it. SHER., School for Scand., III, 3.

\*\* Marjory has been my enemy *from the first*. MRS. ALEX., A Life Interest,  
I, Ch. IV, 76. (= *from the beginning*.)

When I remember how good you have been to me *from the first*, I could cry  
to think of the answer. HALL GABINE, The Christian, II, 302.

**highest.** Glory to God in *the highest* (An adaptation of the Latin in excelsis).  
Hosanna in *the highest*. TEN., En. Arden, 501.

**last.** \* Puertorico will be next considered, the Philippines being reserved  
for *the last*. TIMES.

\*\* Be patient *till the last*. JUL. CÆS., III, 2, 12.

It was not *until the last* that he expressed the wish. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. III, 19a.

Madame de Bernsteyn stayed at the assembly *until the very last*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 402.

\*\*\* She would *to the last* fain have married Pen. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. IV, 111.

It is certain that he was, *to the last*, honoured by his soldiers. MAC., *Hist.* Ch. I, 137.

*To the last* he declared he would never consent to make peace with John. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, II, 297.

His composure remained undisturbed *to the last*. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. V, 37.

To struggle *to the last* against the new and vulgar superstitions. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 6b.

Cronjé says he will fight *to the last*. *Daily Chronicle*.

\*\*\*\* *Towards the last* the pain seemed to leave him, and his end was very peaceful. MURRAY, *s. v. last*, 9, e.

**lowest.** The Bright one in the highest | Is brother of the Dark one in *the lowest*. TEN., *Dem. and Pers.*, 94.

**future, past, present.** Till *the future* dares | Forget *the past*, his fate and fame shall be | An echo and a light unto Eternity. SHELLEY, *Adonais*, I.

It was part of their plans, for *the present* and *the future*. DICK., *Black House*, Ch. XIV, 112.

He did not seem disposed to dwell upon the subject, nor indeed any other that was connected with *the present* or *future*. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVII, 112.

**Note.** Of particular interest are the phrases:

*for the present* — as for, or as regards the present, Dutch *voorloopig*.

Monmouth declared that he could prove himself to have been born in lawful wedlock, and to be, by right of blood, king of England, but that, *for the present*, he waived his claims. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 144. (Compare: How I have thought of this, and of these times, I shall recount hereafter; *for this present*, I would not, so with love I might entreat you, | Be any further moved. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 165.

*For the future* (— as for, or as regards the future); *in the future* (— α) in the time subsequent to some moment of the past or the moment of speaking or writing; β) at an indefinite time or date of the future; γ) from the present moment; *in future* (— α) from the present moment, henceforth; β) at some or any time or date of the future).

*For the future* can, in practice, hardly be distinguished from *in the future* (γ) and *in future* (α). Instances of *in the future* (γ) and of *in future* (β) seem to be infrequent.

The ordinary Dutch equivalents of *for the future*, and also of *in the future* (γ) and *in future* (α) are in het vervolg or voortaan; of *in the future* (α) in de toekomst; of *in the future* (β) mettertijd, and of *in future* (β) te eeniger tijd.

- i. The insinuation put me upon observing the behaviour of my mistress more narrowly *for the future*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. XIX, 125.

The sky, though far from cloudless, was such as promised well *for the future*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXII, 297.

I'm going to be a good boy *for the future*. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVII, 111.

I turned again and again on my pillow and said that my life *for the future* would be little more than a curse to me. HUGH CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. I, 3.

Will you undertake to behave better *for the future*. F. ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIX, 377.

He had better be careful *for the future*. W. W. JACOBS, *Odd Craft*, H, 145.

He promised amendment *for the future*. *Punch*, No. 3709, 129c.

- ii. \* There seemed no order in these latter visions, save that they were *in the future*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 101.

*In the future*, as *in the past*, Germany and Britain will never meet on the field of battle, save as comrades and as allies. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVIII, 522b.

Attempts to combine contradictory methods will lead *in the future* as they have led in the past, to confusion and failure. FROUDE, *Oc.*, Ch. III, 62.

\*\* All that will be altered *in the future*. *Times*.

However great the relief may be when martial law ceases, some of its restrictions are likely to be adopted *in the future*. *Ib.*

Lord Kitchener told Botha not only that even a modified form of independence could not be discussed, but that anything of the kind was barred as likely to lead to renewed war *in the future*. *Ib.*

\*\*\* I will be better *in the future*. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 29.

I trust ... that you will bear my protest in mind and regulate your actions by it *in the future*. ETH. M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, II, Ch. XII, 95.

- iii. \* I promised them that never a week should pass *in future* that I did not visit them. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXIV, 478.

Here they proposed to reside *in future*. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. IV, 27.

I hope you will behave yourself properly *in future*. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 29.

\*\* Whenever, *in future*, you should chance to fancy Mr. Rochester thinks well of you, take out these two pictures and compare them. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XVI, 194.

VIII. The converted adjective is largely used in certain adverbial phrases in which the loss of the definite article has obliterated almost all trace of the converted nature of the adjective. Some of these are found in various shades of meaning, for which see the dictionary. It may be observed that the preposition has so closely coalesced with the following word as to have become little more than a prefix.

**in brief.** *In brief*, (he) had no imperfection but that of keeping light company at a time. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XIV, 53b. (Compare: *In very brief*, the suit is impertinent to myself. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 2, 146.)

**in common.** The odour of whisky-and-water was even more decided than *in common*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. IX, 102. (= *commonly*, *ordinarily*.)

**at full.** Yet I thy hest will all perform *at full*. TEN., *Morte d'Arthur*, 43.

**in full.** If on receiving the oil paintings they are not according to your taste, you will be at liberty to exchange them for others, or if preferred, the money will be refunded *in full*. *Correspondence*.

**in general.** Edmund might still look grave, and say he did not like the scheme *in general*, and must disapprove the play *in particular*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XVII, 164.

Note. In the older writers we often find *in the general*, occasional instances occurring somewhat archaically in Present English (FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 268).



Your observation, *in the general*, is undoubtedly just. RICH., *Clar.*, VII, 337.<sup>1)</sup>  
 What boy at school ever is a coward, — *in the general*? TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. IV, 110.  
**at large.** i. He spoke *at large* of many things. TEN., *Mil. Daught.*, XX.  
 (= Dutch in den breedte, breedvoerig.)

If we went *at large* into this most interesting subject. MAC., *Popes*, (655b).  
 Compare: The Academy *largely* described. SWIFT, *Laputa*, Ch. V, Arg.  
 He expatiated *largely* on its having been done 'after dinner'. DICK., *Pickw.*  
 Ch. III, 28.

Compare also: *in broad outline* (= Dutch in breedte trekken): It might  
 be instructive to trace briefly, *in broad outline*, the development of that branch  
 of study. TIMES.

ii. You are speaking of London. I am speaking of the nation *at large*. JANE AUSTEN,  
*Mansfield Park*, Ch. IX, 96. (= Dutch in het algemeen.)

In his own day he was the poet of England *at large*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*,  
 Ch. VII, § 7, 415.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. I think it might be done, if you really wished to be more *at large*. JANE AUSTEN,  
*Mansf. Park*, Ch. X, 103. (= Dutch vrij in zijn bewegingen, in  
 vrijheid.)

**in large.** i. There I saw my name *in large*. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch.  
 XXIII, 133. (= Dutch in groote letters.)

ii. Where the strong and the weak, this world's congeries, | Repeat *in large* what  
 they practised *in small*. BROWNING, *Old Pictures in Florence*, XXI.<sup>1)</sup>  
 (= Dutch in het groot.)

**in little.** i. The quintessence of every sprite | Heaven would *in little* show. As  
 you like it, III, 2, 129. (= Dutch in een klein bestek.)

A miniature of loveliness, all grace | Summ'd up and closed *in little*. TEN.,  
*Gardener's Daught.*, 13.

ii. Those that would make mows at him while my father lived, give twenty, forty,  
 fifty, an hundred ducats a-piece for his picture *in little*. HAML., II, 2, 388.  
 (= Dutch in miniatuur.)

iii. They call Brussels Paris *in little*. JEROME, *Diary of a Pilgrimage*, 46.  
 (= Dutch Parijs in miniatuur, Parijs in het klein, klein Parijs.)  
 Here in the land of Craven a civil war *in little* was imminent. HAL. SUTCL.,  
*Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. II, 27.

**of old.** In the times *of old*. PSALM, XLIV, 1.

From *of old* they had been zealous worshippers. CARLYLE, *Hero Worship*, 145.  
 In the brave days *of old*. MAC., *Lays*, Hor.

**in ordinary.** i. A physician or chaplain *in ordinary* is one in actual and constant  
 service. An ambassador *in ordinary* is one constantly resident at a foreign  
 court. ANNAND., *Conc. Dict.*

ii. A ship *in ordinary* is one not in actual service, but laid up under the direction  
 of a competent person. Ib.

iii. Their talk took place in the wainscoted parlour where the family had taken their  
 meals *in ordinary* for at least two centuries past. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IV, 42.  
 (= *on ordinary occasions*, in this sense now obsolete.)

**in particular.** One obelisk *in particular* signalized itself from all others by its  
 exceeding grace and beauty. TYNDALL, *Glac. of the Alps*, I, Ch. I, 14.

**at short.** It is, of course, impossible to deal in anything like a comprehensive  
 manner with this huge mass of material, or to offer *at short* anything in the way  
 of a considered judgment of its general bearing. TIMES. (= at short notice,  
 Dutch voetstoots.)

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

for short (12, e).

**in short.** *In short* she adopted without reservation the doctrine that whatever is right. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. IV, 26.

**in small.** See **in large**.

Note. Numerous are the combinations of the preposition *at* with a superlative, the latter sometimes with, sometimes without the definite article (Ch. XXX, 41).

i. Life is *at best* very short. WEBST., *Dict.*

ii. The thing must have weighed three pounds *at the least*. JEROME, *Sketches*.

IX. a) *East, west, north and south* and their compounds such as *north-east*, etc., as used in the following quotations, are adverbs turned into quasi-nouns, the intermediate step being that of adjectives.

i. \* The Wind just shifted from *the East*. POPE, *Ep. Cobham*, 64.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Barking is 7 miles *to the east of* London. MURRAY.

*To the north* Rhodesia extends into the heart of the continent; but S. Rhodesia, bounded *on the north* by the Zambesi, may be included in S. Africa. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s. v. *South Africa*.

\*\*\* In *the same East* men take off their sandals in devotion. ROBERTSON, *Serm.*, Ser. III, III, 38.<sup>1)</sup>

Heavy clouds hang over *the Near East*. *Westm. Gaz.*

ii. The blustering *East* shall blow. BRYANT, *Return of Birds*, IV.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. Instead of *to the east* (etc.) *of* we also find *east* (etc.) *of*. The traces left by ages of slaughter and pillage were still distinctly perceptible many miles *south of* the Thames. MACAULAY.<sup>2)</sup>

The viceroy has sanctioned the construction of 550 miles of tramway-railways in the districts *north and south of* the North-West provinces. *Times*.

β) Thus also *eastward, westward*, etc. as in *to the eastward*, etc. are adverbs used as quasi-substantives. The definite article is occasionally suppressed.

i. The ship had passed them during the night and was now a good ten miles *to the eastward*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 140a. Don Guzman sailed *to the eastward*. *Ib.*, 141a.

They were to attempt their original plan of landing *to the westward* of the town. *Ib.*, 142b.

ii. The hurricane roars past them *to northward*. *Ib.*, Ch. XVIII, 135a.

Note. In this collocation *eastwards*, etc. sometimes appears for *eastward*, etc.

The Olympic . . . had turned out into the Solent from Southampton Water, shaping her course for Spithead *to the eastwards*. *Times*, No. 1812, 2b. (Compare in the sequel of the sentence: and the Hawke was coming into Spithead *from the westward*.)

23. Certain superlatives partially converted into nouns, and in their altered function denoting a quality thought of substantively, may be modified by a *possessive pronoun*, sometimes in several shades of meaning.

i. I knew *his best* and his worst. THOM. W. GORING.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. She is conscious of looking *her best*. MELVILLE BROOKES.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. I did *my best* to hold my peace. BLACKM., *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XX, 114.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

<sup>2)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 265.

- iv. Dressed in *her best* she went to church. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. III, 29.  
He dressed himself in *his very best*. Id., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 298.  
He dressed himself "all in *his best*" and at last got into the street. DICK., Christm. Car., V, 107.

- v. Mr. Warrington always asked everybody to sit and drink, and partake of *his best*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXVII, 387.

**first.** Many unrough youths that even now | Protest their *first* of manhood. Macb., V, 2, 11.

**highest.** Lord Randolph probably reached *his highest* at Dartford on October 2nd 1886. Rev. of Rev., CXCI, 92a.

- last.** i. Some time after the receipt of *your last*, I embarked for Bordeaux. GOLDSM., Letter.

In *my last* I tried to divert thee with some half-forgotten humours of some old clerks defunct. CH. LAMB, Elia, Oxford in the Vacation.

- ii. She (sc. the cat) left the cares of life behind, | And slept as she would sleep *her last*. COWPER, The Retired Cat, 44.

Here thy Wisest look'd *his last*. BYRON, Cors., III, 1.

The dying day breathes out *her last*. JEROME, Three Men in a Boat, Ch. II, 15.

- iii. Have you heard *Professor X's last*. MURRAY, s. v. *last*, 3, d.

**worst.** i. Do *your worst*. BROWNING, Pied Piper.

- ii. Even if Thackeray's idea of nabobs be taken at *its worst*, the comforting fact remains that nabobs must have been scarce. Times, No. 1808, 683a.

(See also under **best**.)

**ut(ter)most.** i. Try *your utmost*. ANNANDALE, Conc. Dict.

- ii. Nerves and brain were strained to *their uttermost*. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 226.

Note I. Here mention may also be made of:

- a) word-groups consisting of *at* + possessive pronoun + superlative, which are equivalent to predicative superlatives, whether or no preceded by the definite article (Ch. XXX, 36, b);

- b) the same word-groups mostly without *at*, which are used to express the highest effort in the matter of an action (Ch. XXX, 37).

- i. The dock was now at *its busiest*. STEPHENSON, Treas. Isl., 67.

- ii. \* The birds were singing *their loudest*. Punch.

\*\* He led me, in a courtly manner, stepping at *his tallest*, to an open place beside the water. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXI, 119.

II. Finally we call attention to the peculiar idiom *on one's lonesome* (= Dutch op zijn eentje), as in:

With the advent of the holiday season the old, old conundrum as to whether a married man should enjoy his annual vacation *on his lonesome* or in the society of his friends is cropping up once more. Pick-me-up, 8/8, 1903.

24. The superlatives *first* and *last* and the comparatives *former* and *latter* are often used to refer to one particular matter out of a series (of two), mentioned in a preceding part of the discourse. They are then preceded by the definite article, or, less commonly, by a demonstrative pronoun. (Ch. XXX, 11.)

- i. \* They yield bear and potatoes, much of *the first* is used in distillation. PENNANT, Tour in Scotl. in 1772, 238.<sup>1)</sup>

1) MURRAY, s. v. *first*, II, 5, a.

\*\* The age was either eagerly republican, eagerly patriotic or eagerly materialist, and as *the last* conquered in the end, the age became not sad, but contentedly apathetic to ideas, to anything but peace and pride and a full purse. STOPP. BROOKE, *Stud. in Poetry*, Ch. II, II, 69.

\*\*\* Civilities were exchanged; Brooke opened the door, and Tremaine rang the bell. "Come, Tremaine," said *the former*, "we two have been trespassing on Mrs. Rashleigh's time" Mrs. ALEX., *For his sake*, I, Ch. II, 31.

\*\*\*\* They would try a new venture with new hopes, perhaps new dangers; they were inured to *the latter*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXIII, 169a.

- ii. \* "Oh, they liked you well enough, I daresay. I like you, but I like to get rid of you sometimes." There could be no doubt as to *this last*. JER., *Paul Kelper*, I, Ch. I, 14a.

Presently therefore I slipped away from the noise, and mirth and smoking (although of *that last* there was not much). BLACKM., *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXIX, 174.

I don't think we believed *this last*, quite. JOHN MASEFIELD, *Lost Endeavour*, I, Ch. II, 13.

\*\* I have had a great deal to do both with English and American locomotives, and the result of this experience shows that in point of fuel economy the English are the better, but for facility of erection and running repairs, the Americans stand first. *This latter* is owing to the complication in the English, due to the use of plate framings and inside cylinders. *Times*.

25. Partially converted adjectives are used to indicate an indefinite number of *persons* only when they occur in pairs of opposites. In this application they stand without any modifier.

*Great and mean* | Meet massed in death. SHELLEY, *Adonais*, XXI.

*High and low*, all made fun of him. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 41.

There must be classes — there must be *rich and poor*. *Ib.*, II, Ch. XXII, 241.

I am not surprised at *young or old* falling in love with her. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XI, 117.

*Worst and best* alike vow themselves to the pursuit of an object which can be attained only by purity. G. C. MACAULAY, *Pref. to Tennyson's Holy Grail*, 14.

An attempt is being made to bridge the abyss that at present separates *brown from white*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXIII, 218a.

Upon the whole the tyranny of the world is that of *male over female* rather than that of *rich over poor*. CHESTERTON, (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3718, 124c).

*Gentle and simple* came to him with their plans. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. IV, 55.

Note I. Thus also when one of the words is a noun.

What was the connection of *employers and employed*. SPENCER, *Education*, Ch. I, 29a.

The key-note of the entire system, whether as applied to *teachers or to taught*, is organisation. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. XVI, 299.

- II. In the following quotation the adjective may be understood to be totally converted (11, b):

The butler is especially warned not to allow *noble or simple* to go into the cellar. THACK., *Four Georges*, I, 3.

Conversely there is only partial conversion in:

I always said *the gentle* had all the frolic, while *the simple* had to sit and nurse the bairns at home. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. VIII, 119.



26. More varied is the use of partially converted adjectives to indicate an indefinite number of things. We find them in this application:

a) in certain sayings in which they occur in pairs (of opposites).

I take thee . . . to my wedded wife, to have and to hold from this day forward, *for better for worse, for richer for poorer*, in sickness and in health, to love and to cherish till death us do part. Book of Com. Pray.

And such as I am love indeed | In fierce extremes — *in good and ill*. BYRON, *Maz.*, V (319a).

I started — seeming 'to espy | The home and sheltered bed, | The sparrow's dwelling, which, hard by | My father's house, *in wet or dry* | My sister Emmeline and I Together visited. WORDSWORTH, *The Sparrow's Nest*, 8. *O'er rough and smooth* she trips along. *Id.*, Lucy Gray, XVI.

Away they went *through thick and thin*. WASH. IRV., *Legend*, Sketch-Book, 372.

He was determined to throw his lot *for good or ill* with Maud's brother. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XXXIX, 423.

Then after a long tumble about the Cape | And frequent interchange of *foul and fair*, [etc.]. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 529.

And *over rough and smooth* he rode. W. MORRIS, *Earthly Par.*, *The Man born to be King*, 41b.

Just after something has befallen us which, *for good or ill*, will make a great change in our lives, what a totally new aspect the common everyday things about us are apt to wear! ANSTEY, *Vice Versa*, Ch. XIII, 252.

If the present administration were indeed the only possible one, the plain duty of all Liberals would be to support it *through thick and thin*. *Daily News*.

What we are witnessing is a stubborn fight between *old and new*. *West m. Gaz.*, No. 6153, 4a.

*For good or ill* I should have weighed all the political consequences before voting. *Ib.*, No. 6141, 4c.

b) archaically after partitive *of* preceded by the interrogative *what* (Ch. XXXVIII, 8, b), the relative *what* (?) (Ch. XXXIX, 24, d), certain indefinite pronouns or numerals: *all* (Ch. XL, 3, Obs. III), *enough* (?) (Ch. XL, 47, b, Note), *little, less, least* (?) (Ch. XL, 67, Obs. II; 77, Obs. I; 83, Obs. I), *much, more, most* (?) (Ch. XL, 93, Obs. III; 100, Obs. II; 105), *ought* (Ch. XL, 24, Obs. IV), *something, anything* (?), *everything* (?), *nothing* (?), Ch. XLIII, 38, Obs. II), or by the compounds *whatever* (?) and *whatsoever* (Ch. XLI, 10, Obs. I).

Up to the time of writing no instances have been found after the words marked with a (?). It may, however, be safely assumed that a more prolonged search would have brought some to the light.

i. *What* is there *of ill* in't? WYCHERLEY, *Plain Deal.*, II, I.

*What* is there *of good* to be expected? JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLIX, 295.

That unutterable something which springs from the soul, and which our sculptors have imparted to the aspect of Psyche, gave her beauty I know not *what of divine and noble*. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. I, 12b.

(I) could hear the lips that kiss'd | Whispering I knew not *what of wild and sweet*. TEN., *Tithonus*, 61.

O what to her shall be the end? | And *what* to me remains of good?  
Id., In Memoriam, VI, xi.

- ii. You shall hear *all* I have learnt of *extraordinary* in other countries. DRYDEN, Marriage à la Mode, I, 1.

For *all of wonderful and wild* | Had rapture for the lonely child. SCOTT, Lay, VI, xxi.

Conversant with speculations of the sublimest and most perfect natures, the vision in which he embodies his own imaginations unite *all of wonderful, or wise, or beautiful*, which the poet, the philosopher, or the lover could depicture. SHELLEY, Alastor, Preface.

*All of great, | Or good, or lovely*, which the sacred past | In truth or fable consecrates, he felt | And knew. Ib., 72.

From the Capitol to the Lateran swept, in long procession, *all* that Rome boasted of *noble, of fair, and brave*. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV. Ch. V, 175.

And when the heat is gone from out my heart, | Then take the little bed on which I died | For Lancelot's love, and deck it like the Queen's | For richness, and me also like the Queen | In all I have of *rich*, and lay me on it. TEN., Lanc. and Elaine, 1113.

*Of all* that such a recollection implies of *saddest and sweetest* to both of us, it would become neither of us to speak before the world. ELIZ. BARRETT BROWNING, Dedic. To My Father.

He taught his friend *all* that he knew of *good, brave and generous*. SYMONDS, Sir Ph. Sidney, Ch. IV.

- iii. Stones like those at Stonehenge have but *little of new or marvellous* for him who has seen the rocks beyond the Atlantic. MOORE, Mem., VI, 337.

For that inscription there, | I think *no more of deadly* lurks therein, | Than in a clapper clapping in a garth. TEN., Princ., II, 208.

His eyes had *more of gray* and *less of blue* in them. EDNA LYALL, Hardy Norseman, Ch. II, 15.

Pilgrim... became again... the tender patient nurse who had mothered the lonely child so many years and to whom she had stuck, as the saying goes, through so *little of thick* and *so much of thin*. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, What became of Pam, I, Ch. XIV, 102.

- iv. I would not *ought of false*. TEN., Princ., V, 392.

- v. The other answers as if *something of extraordinary* had past betwixt us. DRYDEN, Marriage à la Mode, IV, 4.

That fulness and luxuriance of life's life . . . has in it *something of divine*. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. VII, 51.

- vi. *Whatsoever of strange* | Sculptured on alabaster obelisk, | Or jasper tomb, or mutilated sphinx, | Dark Æthiopia in her desert hills | Conceals. SHELLEY, Alastor, 112.

Our bond is not the bond of man and wife. | This good is in it, *whatsoever of ill*, | It can be broken easier. TEN., Lanc. and El., 1200.

27. Obs. I. In most of the above quotations the converted adjective may also be understood as an abstract noun (12, c). This view finds corroboration in the use of indubitable abstract nouns in the same position, and mostly in practically the same meaning.

He has, I know not *what*, | *Of greatness* in his looks. DRYDEN, Marriage à la Mode, IV, 3.

Your looks have *more of business* than of love. Ib., V, 5.

*All* earth can give, or mortal prize | Was mine of *regal splendour*. BYRON, Hebrew Melodies, All is Vanity, I.

- II. When any of the above words is followed by an adjective without partitive *of*, there is no conversion, the adjective having the value of an undeveloped clause: *anything* (*everything*, *nothing* or *something*) *beautiful* — *anything* (*everything*, etc.) *that is beautiful*. See Ch. IV, 17. c. Thus also in:
- i. *What* is there *real* in either (sc. life and the stage) to live or care for? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 23.  
*What lovelier* of his own had he than her? TEN., *Aylmer's Field*, 22.  
*What better* could a poor lady do? CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. VIII, 48a.  
*What worse* can you say of English Ministers than that they should be led by a woman? MRS. WARD, *Sir George Tres.*, Ch. II, 8b.
  - ii. To thee whose temple is all space, | Whose altar, earth, sea, skies, | One chorus let *all being* raise; | All nature's incense rise! POPE, *Univ. Pray.*, XIII.
  - iii. There was *little grand* that I could see in this journey. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XX, 330.  
 There was indeed *little new* to be communicated. W. BLACK, *Sunrise*, II, 57.  
 There was *little praiseworthy* in the cricket. *Daily News*.
  - iv. I had a belief she loved me even when she left me: that was an atom of sweet in *much bitter*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 546. (*Bitter* like the preceding *sweet*, may also be apprehended as the name of a substance [8].)
  - v. Whatever there had been which was disastrous in her fortune — *whatever* there was *miserable* in her dwelling, it was easy to judge... that neither years, poverty, misfortune, nor infirmity had broken the spirit of this remarkable woman. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. III, 45.
- III. The comparative *worse*, perhaps on the analogy of its positive *ill* or *evil*, is frequently used to denote an indefinite number of things independently of the constructions mentioned in 26 a) and b).  
 God grant, that some, less noble... | Deserve not *worse* than wretched Clarence did. RICH. III, II, 1.  
 Never so rich a gem Was set in *worse* than gold. MERCHANT OF VEN., II, 7, 55.  
 And me and mine he spared from *worse* than woe. BYRON, *Cors.*, II, XIII.  
 And one, in whom all evil fancies clung | Like serpent eggs together, laughingly  
 Would hint at *worse* in either. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 478.  
 This was bad enough, but there was *worse* to follow. HALL CAINE, *The Christian*, I, 268.  
 If this was bad, *worse* was to come. ANSTEE, *Vice Versa*, Ch. VI, 131.  
 Happy for him if he does not learn *worse* from me. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XV, 64a.
- Note I. The comparative *better*, apparently, occurs less frequently in this application.  
 I never look'd for *better* at his hands. RICH. III, III, 5, 50.  
 There is no hope of *better* left for him | No place for *worse*. TEN., *Queen Mary*, IV, 3 (630b).  
 This truth within thy mind rehearse, | That in a boundless universe | Is boundless *better*, boundless *worse*. ID., *Two Voices*, IX.
- II. The use of *bad* in this application, as illustrated by the following quotations may be due to its being coupled with *good* or *worse*:
- i. If God sends us *good*, he seems to send *bad* too. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. II, 19.
  - ii. Thus *bad* begins and *worse* remains behind. HAMLET, III, 4, 179.  
 So *bad* proceeded propagated *worse*. WORDSWORTH, *Son. Liberty*, II, XLVI.

III. In the following quotation *worse* seems to be used absolutely, the prop-word *one* which occurs after the preceding *bad*, supplying the place of a noun.

He's a bad 'un; but there's *worse* that put him on. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. III, 27.

- IV. This seems to be the most suitable place to mention the curious idioms in *to make light of* (= to treat, consider or represent as of small or no importance), and *to make short of a long story* (= to make (cut) a long story (tale) short). (Ch. XVIII, 24, Obs. V.)

i. *Making light of* what ought to be serious. JANE AUSTEN, *Emma* 1)

It seemed to Mark as though Mr. Forrest *made very light of* the whole transaction. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XII, 117.

ii. *To make short of a long story*, I am afraid I have wanted an object. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. LI, 425.

Note. With *to make light of* compare *to make little of* (Ch. XL, 67, Obs. VI) and *to make much of* (Ch. XL, 93, Obs. IX):

Mr. Forrest *had made so little of* the whole transaction that he felt himself justified in *making little of* it also. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XII, 118.

He *made as little of* his real wound as he made much, the day before, of his imaginary one. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 139a.

28. The adjective *own*, preceded by a genitive or a possessive pronoun, is used as a partially converted adjective both with regard to persons and things, mostly in a collective sense.

According to MURRAY (s. v. *own*, 3) this use of *own* is, except for certain phrases, archaic.

i. \* And pass his days in peace among *his own*. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 47.

Like one who does his duty by *his own*. *Id.*, 329.

The cup from which our lord I drank at the last supper with *his own*. *Id.*, *Holy Grail*, 47.

Keats was a Cockney, and Cockneys claimed him for *their own*. *Blackw. Mag.*  
The moor loves *her own*, as human mothers do. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. I, 9.

\*\* We both have undergone <sup>1</sup> That trouble which has left me thrice *your own*. *Id.*, *Ger. and En.*, 736.

Within a few days Francesca might be *his own*. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. I, 10.

- ii. \* My gracious lord, I come but for *mine own*. *Rich.* II, III, 3, 191.

Is it not lawful for me to do what I will with *my own*? Bible, *Matth.*, XX, 15.

An honest man may rob himself of *his own* at any time. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, III, (199).

When rogues fall out, honest men come by *their own*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 117.

Others observed with a shrug that if the devil did carry off the youngster, it would but be taking *his own*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 126).

"Well," said the first. "Old Scratch has got *his own* at last, hey?" DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 88.

To them he (sc. Monmouth) was still the good Duke, the Protestant Duke, the rightful heir, whom a vile conspiracy kept out of *his own*. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 145.

1) MURRAY.



And here enters the railroad rebate — the modern battering-ram for crushing those who fight to save *their own*. Miss TARBELL (Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 417b).

\*\* If she gives you the garnets, take what you can get. The jewels are *your own already*. GOLDSM., *She Stoops to Conquer*, III, (201). (= *in your possession*.)

\*\*\* Charity ... seeketh not *her own*. Bible, Corinth., A, XIII, 5. (= *her own profit or interest*.)

\*\*\*\* And if the fool should come again, I would tell him *his own*, I warrant you, cousin. WYCHERLEY, *Gent. Danc. Mast.*, I, 1, (138). (= *his own shortcomings*.)

Note I. Of especial interest are *to hold one's own* ( = to maintain one's position or standing against opposition or rivalry. MURRAY), the colloquial or vulgar *on one's own* (= on one's own account, responsibility or resources), and *to come into one's own* (= to come into one's element).

i. I had much ado *to hold mine own* against old Gurth. TEN., *Har.*, I, 1, (657b).  
Until now the boat barely *held her own*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. I, 3.

She had quite spirit enough *to hold her own*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 318.  
Compare: You — Gentlemen! by dint of long seclusion! From better company, *have kept your own*! At Keswick. BYRON, *Don Juan*, Dedication. V.

ii. One can greet the play '*on its own*', to borrow a popular phrase, *Westm. Gaz.*<sup>1)</sup>  
The Times... appear to have inserted the notice *on their own*. *Law Notes.*<sup>1)</sup>

iii. With the founding of the "Overland Monthly" Bret Harte began to *come into his literary own*. *Acad. and Lit.*

Little Billie would have *come into his own* again. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 31.  
And shall we ever *come into our own* again? HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. I, 6.

II. In address we also find *own*, after *my*, indicating a single person, very much in the same sense as *dear* or *sweet* (14, d, Note II).

Did you speak, *my own*? CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXVII, 214.

*My own heart's heart* and ownest *own*, farewell. TEN., *Maud*, I, XVIII, 74.

III. In such turns of expression as *This is a house of my own*; *He has several houses of his own*; *She has no children of her own*; we have to deal with an adjective used absolutely.

IV. In the following quotations *own* may be understood as either absolute or substantial:

Her faults were mine — her virtues were *her own*. BYRON, *Manfred*, II, 2.

The poem is written in Spenserian stanzas, with a rapidity of movement and a dazzling brilliance that are *Shelley's own*. SYMONDS, *Shelley*, Ch. V, 96.  
(Compare: There is a richness and energy in this passage (sc. Byron, *Childe Har.*, III, xxxiii), which is *peculiar to Lord Byron*. JEFFREY.)

Here at least his thoughts were *his own*. BARRY PAIN, *The Culmin. Point*.  
His house is *his own*. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2116.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *own*, 3, c.

## CHAPTER XXX.

### DEGREES OF COMPARISON.

1. Degrees of comparison are observed in:

a) adjectives and adverbs denoting:

1) a quality or state (DEN HERTOOG, Ned. *Spraakkunst*, III, § 9, Opm. 5, b): *quick, quickly; sick*.

2) a distance in space or time: *near, far, early, soon*. Here also belong the prepositional adverbs *in, up*, etc.

b) the indefinite numerals *much (many)* and *little (few)*.

Note I. For nouns that have a comparative or a superlative see Ch. XXIII, 4, II; and 17, d.

II. A quality or a state is often expressed by a word-group having for its chief component parts a preposition and a noun, e. g.: *at liberty, at leisure*. Such a word-group is often furnished with the intensive adverbs *more* or *most*, which does not essentially differ from placing it in the comparative or superlative degree.

As soon as I am a little *more at leisure*, I mean to look in at their rehearsals too. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XVIII, 173.

2. There are two ways of forming the degrees of comparison, viz. the Germanic way, which is effected by the suffixes *er* and *est*, and the French way, which is effected by the adverbs *more* and *most*. The first mode may be called terminational, as opposed to the periphrastic, by which term the second is commonly designated.

Note I. To express different degrees of a quality in a falling line the language has no terminations, but mostly applies the adverbs *less* and *least*. These forms with *less* and *least* may, of course, with equal justice be called periphrastic comparison as those with *more* and *most*, but present no features requiring any comment in this connection.

II. Some adjectives belonging to the foreign element of the language have the value of comparatives or superlatives, without either of the above suffixes. Such are α) *major, minor; anterior, posterior; inferior, superior*; and other Latin comparatives in *ior*; β) *chief, principal, premier, extreme, supreme*.

Some of these are sometimes understood as positives (30).

The *major* part of the conversation was confined to Mrs. Weller and the reverend Mr. Stiggins. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 244.

None but a few very privileged visitors were allowed to go near the sheds. Therefore, the honour of seeing some of the *premier* flying-men of the world, as it were, at home was all the more appreciated by those able to do so. 11. Lond. News, No. 3679, 565.

The razor, which excels all others, ... has attained and kept its *premier* position by virtue of its reliable qualities. *Ib.*, No. 3777, 427*b*.

Whichever (course) is adopted, it is of *supreme* importance that it should be accepted whole-heartedly by the Liberal and Labour Party. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5225, 1*c*.

3. In Old English the comparative was usually formed by *or* (*ur*), the superlative by *ost* (*ust*, *ast*, *est*). The full termination *or* (*ur*) was only found in the comparative of adverbs; in the comparative of adjectives the *o* was elided; thus: *lēof* (= dear) — *lēofra*, *lēofre*, *lēofre* — *lēofost*.

A few words showed vowel-mutation, of which only *eald* — *ieldra* — *ieldest*; *nēah* (adv.) — *nēarra*, *nēar* (adv.) — *nēahst*, *nēhst*, *nēxt* (adv.) have left traces in Modern English.

In some English words we find the relic of another comparative suffix, viz. *ther*; thus in *other*, *either*, *neither*, *whether*, *further*. These forms are only used when two (groups of) persons or things are thought of.

In a few superlatives, whose positives only occur as adverbs, we find an older termination *m*; thus in *forma* (= first). When the meaning of this ending was forgotten, the other, viz. *ost* (*est*), was superadded, and the new double ending *mest* was at an early date written *māst*, through confusion with *māest*, the superlative of *much*. Hence *fyrmost* was made into *formest*, *fercmost*; *ȳtemest*, *utemest* into *utmost*, etc. In these and others (see below) *most* is not, therefore, to be regarded as the superlative of *much*, though all these compounds arose under the direct influence of this superlative. *STOF.*, *Taalstudie*, I, 30; *SWEET*, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1043; *COOK—SIEVERS*, *Old Eng. Gram.*, § 314, Note II. For illustration see below.

For Old English *aftermost* (= last) and *niȝemost* (= lowest) Middle English severally substituted *aftermost* and *neȝermost*, the forms *after* and *neȝer*, although originally comparatives, being understood as positives. *Undermost* was formed on the analogy of *neȝermost*. Other superlatives of place now came to be formed directly from comparatives by adding *most*; thus *furthermost*, *innermost*, *lowermost*, *uppermost*. From *furthermost* was formed the double comparative *furthermore*.

The ancient forms *innerest*, *utterest*, etc. are occasionally met with archaically.

And all of them redder than rosiest health or than *utterest* shame. *TEN.*, *The Voyage of Maeldune*, 65. (The reference is to apples.)

In the Modern English *former* the comparative suffix *er* was added to the old superlative *form(a)*.

CHAUCER has *forme-fader* for Present English *fore-father*.

And moreover whan our lord hadde creat Adam our *forme-fader*, he seyde in this wyse [etc.]. *Tale of Mel.*, § 15, *Cant. Tales*, B, 2292.

4. Some adjectives and adverbs undergo a slight modification in spelling before the suffixes *er* and *est*.

a) Final *e* is dropped: *large* — *larger* — *largest*, *free* — *freer* — *freest*.

b) Final *y* preceded by a consonant is changed into *i* in the case of all adjectives or adverbs of two or more syllables: *pretty* — *prettier* — *prettiest*.

Of adjectives of one syllable the *y* is usually retained: *sly* — *slyer* — *slyest*, *spry* — *spryer* — *spryest*, *shy* — *shyer* — *shyest*.

In the comparative and superlative of *dry*, however, the *y* is mostly changed into *i*: *dry* — *drier* — *driest*.

The *y* is, of course, regularly retained when preceded by a vowel, as in *gay* — *gayer* — *gayest*.

- c) A final consonant when single and preceded by a stressed vowel is doubled: *big* — *bigger* — *biggest*.

The *l* is also doubled when preceded by an unstressed vowel: *cruel* — *crueller* — *cruellest*.

5. Some adjectives and adverbs, many of which are among those most frequently met with, form the degrees of comparison in an irregular way. This is also the case with the numerals *much* (*many*) and *little*. We may distinguish the following groups:

- a) words that have the comparative and superlative derived from an obsolete base different from that of the positive: *bad*(ly), *il*(ly), *evil*(ly) — *worse*, *worser*, *badder* — *worst*; *good* — *better* — *best*; *little* — *less*, *lesser*, *littler* — *least*, *littlest*; *many* — *more* — *most*.
- b) adjectives and adverbs that have the comparative and superlative formed from the positive, but show epenthesis, contraction or vowel-change. Some of these have also regular forms with different meanings, one has cumulative formations in *more* and *most* (3): *far* — *farther*, *further*, *farthermore*, *furthermore* — *farthest*, *furthest*, *farthermost*, *furthermost*; *late* — *later*, *latter* — *latest*, *last*; *near* — *nearer* — *nearest*, *next*; *old* — *older*, *elder* — *oldest*, *eldest*.
- c) adverbs that are also used as prepositions either of the same form or with some prefix, and have the superlative formed by *most*, which is attached either to the positive or the comparative (3): *(be)fore* — *former* — *foremost*, *first*; *(be)hind* — *hinder* — *hind(er)most*; *in* — *inner* — *in(ner)most*; *(be)neath* — *nether*, *nethermore* — *nethermost*; *off* (originally *af*) — *after* — *aftermost*; *out* — *outer*, *utter* — *out(er)most*, *ut(ter)-most*; *(ab)ove* — *over* — *overmost*; *up* — *upper* — *up(per)most*.

Note. Superlatives like the above are sometimes formed of words which are ordinarily compared regularly. Thus the ordinary degrees of comparison of *low* are *lower* — *lowest*, but besides *lowest* we also meet with *lowermost* as in:

It (sc. the bladder) is situated at the *lowermost* point of the abdomen. Pears' Cycl., s.v. *bladder*.

- d) adjectives and adverbs, which have one or other degree wanting: *ere* — *erst*; *mid* — *middest*, *midst*, *midmost*; *middle* — *middlemost*; *under* — *undermost*; *eastern* — *easternmost*, etc.

To these we may add *rath*(e) — *rather* — *rathest*, *ratherest*, of which only the comparative is now in common use in standard English.



In the following discussions the observations under *a*) deal with the form and grammatical function, those under *b*) with the meaning of the respective adjectives and adverbs.

6. *Bad (badly, ill, illy, evil, evilly) — worse — worst.*

*a*) 1) *Illy* is now only met with in dialects. MURRAY.

2) In Middle English *worse* was pronounced in two syllables, as in: Now is my prison *worse* than befor. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, A, 1226.

The dissyllabic *worse* may afterwards have suggested the form *worser*, which is repeatedly found in SHAKESPEARE, mostly us an adjective, but also as an adverb.

i. QUEEN. — O Hamlet thou hast cleft my heart in twain. HAML. — O throw away the *worser* part of it. HAML., III, 4, 154.

I wis your grandam had a *worser* match. Rich., III, 1, 3, 102.

ii. "How do you now, lieutenant?" — The *worser* that you give me the addition | Whose want even kills me. Oth., IV, 1, 105.

Is he married? | I cannot hate thee *worser* than I do, | If thou again say 'yes'. Ant. & Cleop., II, 5, 90.

In Late Modern English *worser* is used archaically in poetry, and in the language of the illiterate. FRANZ, E. S., XII; id., Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 217.

i. Or at the *worser* end (sc. of life) | A quiet grave till doomsday rend the earth. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., ProL., 6a.

Nay, friends, believe your *worser* life now past. Ib., 15a.

Lest unto thee there fall a *worser* thing. Id., The Proud King, 93a.

ii. "Who, Joe? None of the servants, I hope." — "*Worser* than that," roared the fat boy in the old lady's ear. DICK., Pickw., Ch. VIII, 68. But in sooth Mr. Slope was pursuing Mrs. Bold in obedience to his better instincts and the Signora to his *worser*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXVII, 225. (Here, evidently, due to the preceding *better*, the sentence not being the utterance of an uneducated man.)

3) Originally *worse* and *worst* belonged only to *ill* and *evil*, *bad* being compared *badder* — *baddest*. The latter forms were supplanted by *worse* and *worst* when *bad* had assumed the meaning of *evil*, its original sense being, probably, *hermaphrodite*. *Badder* and *baddest* occur in the literature from the 14<sup>th</sup> to the 18<sup>th</sup> century (in Defoe, 1721). MURRAY. In Present English it is still found in dialects.

He is very bad, sir; *badder* than ever, I do think. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. XIII, 130.

*b*) *Worse* is sometimes used in the meaning of *less*, in like manner as *better* sometimes stands for *more*. (7, b, 1, a.)

I hadn't the pleasure of knowing his distresses till he was some thousands *worse* than nothing. SHER., School for Scand., III, 1.

7. *Good (well) — better — best.*

*a*) Down to the end of the 16<sup>th</sup> century, and archaically in occasional instances after that date, we meet with the form *bet* as a comparative, both as an adverb and as a predicative adjective. Compare the Dutch *betweter*, *betovergrootvader*.

i. We dezerve full *bet* then they. FERNE.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- ii. *Bet* is to dyen than have indigence. CHAUCER, Cant. {Tales, B, 114.  
*Bet* is to be wedded than to brinne. Ib., D, 52. (*brinne* = to burn.)

*Best* shows the same contraction as *last*.

*Gooder* is sometimes jocularly used for *better*. MURRAY does not acknowledge this form.

It's *gooder* to be back. RUDY. KIPLING, The Light that failed, Ch. XI, 151.

- b) 1) *Better* is sometimes used in the meaning of a) *more* or *longer* (STOE., E. S., XXXI, 264), β) *greater* in the *better part*, *half*. Compare b, 3.
- i. Lady B. is *better* than three months advanced in her progress to maternity. BYRON (LYTTON, Life of Byron, 22a).  
 "Wy, Sammy," said the father, "I han't seen you for two year and *better*."  
 DICK., Pickw., Ch. XX, 177.  
 Rather *better* than twelve years ago. Id., Little Dorrit, Ch. X, 61.
- ii. \* But were I not the *better part* made mercy, | I should not seek an absent argument | Of my revenge, thou present. As you like it, III, 1, 2.  
 The *better part* of valour is discretion. Henry IV, A, V, 4, 121.  
 \*\* Forced to sell the *better half* of his estate. SWIFT, Let.

Note also the following idioms:

- i. \* And be good to her, do you hear? Else I'll let you *know better*.  
 G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. V, 30.  
 They would *know a great deal better* than to insult a sister of mine. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXX, 177.  
 I hope you *know better* than to tempt her to disobey me. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. I, 18.  
 \*\* If I let you shriek your abominable little throat hoarse, you'll *learn better* than to torment your uncle. JOHN HABBERTON, Helen's Babies, 39.  
 For further instances see also Ch. XVIII, 7, Note; 28, e.
- ii. Mr. Acland appeared disconsolate at the breakfast-table, feeling keenly his utter dependence on his *better half*. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Int., I, Ch. V, 79.  
 Of the following idiomatic applications no Late English instances have been found:
- iii. His health was never *better worth* than now. Henry IV, A, IV, 1, 27.  
 (= *more worth*.)  
 The very train of her worst wearing gown was *better worth* than all my father's lands. Henry VI, B, I, 3, 89.
- iv. He damns himself to do and dares *better* be damned than to do it. All's Well, III, 6, 96. (= *dares rather*.)  
 Surrey *durst better* have burnt that tongue than said so. Henry VIII, III, 2, 253.
- v. I can be no *better*. Meas. for Meas., V, 169. (= It must, alas! have been been so.)
- 2) *Bettermost* formed on the analogy of *uppermost*, *uttermost*, etc., although by MURRAY pronounced to be a colloquialism, seems to occur also in ordinary literary English. Its meaning is rather that of a comparative than a superlative. MURRAY's definition is "*best* (relatively rather than absolutely)".  
 Others, — those that work with their hands, even the *bettermost* of such workers — could live in decency and health upon even such provision as he could earn as a clergyman. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XIV, 139.
- 3) *Best* is used in the sense of *greatest* or *greater* in the collocation *the best part* (33). Compare b, 1.

Admiral Bowster stared during the *best part* of the service, his very hardest. Miss BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., Handl., I, 70). She will sit up wi' him *best part* of the night. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XIII, 130.

STOF. (E. S. XXXI, 264) observes that *best* has the sense of *most* in the epithet *best-abused*, as in *the best-abused statesman in the United kingdom*.

## 8. *Little — less, lesser — least.*

- a) Except for *lesser*, which now occurs almost exclusively as an attributive adjective, these forms are used as adjectives, indefinite numerals and adverbs.

*Little* as a predicative adjective is uncommon (Ch. XXVIII, 7, c), its place in this application being mostly taken by *small*. As an indefinite numeral it is used both attributively and predicatively.

*Less*, both as an adjective and an indefinite numeral, is applied both attributively and predicatively.

*Least* as an adjective is used only attributively, as an indefinite numeral both attributively and predicatively.

SHAKESPEARE has *lesser* also as a predicative adjective and as an adverb. *Lesser-known* occurs as a rhythmical variant of *less-known*.

- b) As adjectives *less* and *least* mostly refer to significance, seldom to size, i. e. they correspond rather to the Dutch *geringer* and *geringste*, than to the Dutch *kleiner* and *kleinste*. The line of demarcation between significance and size cannot, however, always be strictly drawn. According to MURRAY (s. v. *less*, A, I, 2, a) the use of *less* in the sense of "of lower station, condition or rank; inferior" is now obsolete, except in phrases like "no less a person than". Late Modern English instances cannot, however, be said to be infrequent. According to the same authority (s. v. *least*, I, 2) the use of *least* in the sense of "lowest in power or position; meanest" is now archaic.

With regard to size, *smaller* and *smallest* are the ordinary substitutes, *littler* and *littlest* being occasionally met with, chiefly archaically and dialectically, sometimes to express some emotional notion.

*Small* and its degrees of comparison are quite frequently used to denote significance, *small* and especially *smallest* sometimes in a way which makes it difficult to distinguish them from *little* and *least* as indefinite numerals, i. e. as equivalents of the Dutch *wenig* en *minste*.

*Smaller* is also used as a variant of *lesser*.

In some combinations *slight* and its superlative *slightest* are in especial favour when an idea of significance is to be expressed. Also such superlatives as *faintest*, *remotest*, etc. are in some combinations practically equivalent to *least*.

*Lesser* mostly denotes one (group) of two (groups of) persons or things which is of minor importance or significance as compared with the other. It is, accordingly, mostly preceded by the definite article, which, indeed, when occasion requires, is replaced by another modifier: a demonstrative pronoun, or a genitive or possessive pronoun. Less frequently does it denote the least important of a

larger number than two, in which case we may find it preceded by the indefinite article, or, if the following word is a plural or an abstract noun without a plural, by a numeral or no modifier at all. Not infrequent is the use of *lesser* to denote size, i.e. in the sense of the Dutch *kleiner*.

In some cases *lesser* may have been preferred to *less*, and vice versa, for the sake of rhythm or metre. Compare FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Rhythm in Eng. Prose, The Adj.*, § 34.

For illustration of *little*, *less* and *least* as indefinite numerals and adverbs see Ch. XL, 64 ff. For the application of *less* with reference to a plural see Ch. XXVI, 16.

**little.** She was called tall and gawky by some and a Maypole by others of her own sex, who prefer *littler* women. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 213.

The *littler* the maid, the bigger the riddle to my mind. HARDY, *Under the Greenwood Tree*, II, Ch. V, 109.

**littlest.** Where love is great, the *littlest* doubts are fear. HAMLET, III, 2, 183.

To hold | The poorest, *littlest* page in reverence. BEAUM. and FLETCH., *Queen of Corinth*, IV, 1.

It wants constant attention in the *littlest* things. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, III, Ch. V, 84.

I suppose in these days anybody who held such a doctrine as that would have been saluted as the *littlest* Roman. SIR W. HARCOURT (*Times*).

I have lost him now for ever . . . and he will not love me the *littlest* bit ever any more — only hate me. HARDY, *Tess*, VII, Ch. LVI, 497.

**less**, as an adjective, used a) attributively, 1) to denote significance: You may be assured I'd not sell my freedom under a *less* purchase than I did my estate. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, IV, 1, (306).

I meekly told the waiter that I had bought beer at Jerusalem at a *less* price. THACK., *Notes on a Week's Holiday* (PARDOE, *Sel. Eng. Es.*, 450).

To have seen her, quiet in her coffin, would have been a *less* surprise. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVIII, 232a.

It would probably be a rare exception to find any large property in the present day on which the contract system does not exist to a greater or *less* extent. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. III, 28.

Some forty others were injured in greater or *less* degree. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3777, 412.

When a country is conquered by a new tribe or race, its earlier inhabitants are rarely entirely supplanted by the invaders, a greater or *less number* of the former usually being preserved in the more remote and inaccessible places. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6035, 13a.

2) to denote size: If he were ever a big old man, he has shrunk into a little old man; if he were always a little old man, he has dwindled into a *less* old man. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. XXXI, 187a.

3) in the sense of *lesser*: So doth the greater glory dim the *less*. *Merch. of Ven.*, V, 1, 93.

What great ones do the *less* will prattle of. *Twelfth Night*, I, 2, 33.

James the Greater... James the *Less*. COBHAM BREWER, *Dict. of Phrase and Fable*, s.v. *apostles*.

Add together the sum, difference, product and quotient (the greater being divided by the *less*) of  $\frac{3}{4}$  and  $\frac{7}{8}$ . YOUNG, *Arithmetic*.

b) predicatively, 1) to denote significance: "But is the fever *less*?" — "Sometimes *less* and sometimes more, I imagine." TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVI, 346.



- 2) to denote size: Or ask of yonder argent fields above, | Why Jove's satellites are *less* than Jove. POPE, *Es. on Man*, I, 42.

Little as she had always looked, she looked *less* than ever when he saw her going into the Marshalsea lodge passage. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. IX, 53a.  
In stature it (sc. the quagga) is rather *less* than the well-known zebra. Cassell's *Conc. Cycl.*

The average size of the antlers of wild stags to-day . . . is considerably *less* than it was even a few years ago. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6035, 13a.

- lesser** used a) attributively, 1) denoting significance, a) with regard to two:

- i. the *Lesser* Antilles, the *Lesser* Bear.

And God made two great lights: the greater light to rule the day, and the *lesser* light to rule the night. Bible, *Gen.*, I, 16.

Woman is the *lesser* man. TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 151.

As the more important schemes could not be commenced at a moment's notice, she would begin with the *lesser*. WALT. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. VI, 39.

Perpetrators of larcenies of the *Lesser* kind. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. IV, 48.

In comparing two words A and B, belonging to the same language, of which A contains the *lesser* number of syllables, A must be taken to be the more original word, unless we have evidence of contraction or other corruption. SKEAT, *Etym. Dict.*, 23.

Note. In *Lesser Asia* (now mostly *Asia Minor*) the definite article is dropped. (Ch. XXXI, 28, a.)

- ii. Lear rebuked him and said that *these lesser* evils were not felt, where a greater malady was fixed. LAMB, *Tales*, *Lear*, 160.

- iii. England's *lesser* colonies, our *lesser* poets.

- β) with regard to more than two: i. If I had had a *lesser* bribe to offer you at the moment, I should only have given you that. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 81.

By taking one third you would only get a *lesser* share. JOHN BLOUNDELLE BURTON, *The Hispaniola Plate*, Ch. XXXIV, 108.

The majority who took up arms at the second call, were men who shouldered a rifle at 5 s. a day, considering it a *lesser* evil than semi-starvation in the seaboard towns. *Times*.

The power of feeling without actually touching . . . seems to be present to a greater or *lesser* extent in most animals accustomed to moving in the dark. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6047, 13a.

- ii. It (sc. the king's majesty) is a massy wheel, | Fix'd on the summit of the highest mount, | To whose huge spokes *ten thousand lesser* things | Are mortis'd and adjoin'd. Hamlet, III, 3, 19.

- iii. \* In wearing mine (sc. my favour) | Needs must be *lesser* likelihood, noble lord | That those who know should know you. TEN., *Lanc. and El.*, 365.

\*\* *Lesser* officials of all kinds, fifty years ago, affected Primness as a part of Personal Dignity, which has been since so largely lost. WALT. BESANT, *Bell of St. Paul's*, I, Ch. II, 41.

Such genius as his (Shakespeare's) has its own laws and privileges, and cannot very well be brought in as an element when discussing the procedure of much *lesser* men. *Westm. Gaz.*

The far-reaching questions which Burke raised before the High Court of Parliament are now raised almost daily by *lesser* Burkes in the High Court of the Press. *Times*, No. 1808, 683b.

- 2) denoting size, Dutch *kleiner*. Which of the two was daughter of the duke | That here was at the wrestling — Neither his daughter, if we judge by manners; But yet indeed the *lesser* is his daughter. As you like it, I, 2, 284.

Laurence saw before him a young man of his own age, but of slighter build and *lesser* stature. WALT. BESANT, *The Bell of St. Paul's*, I, Ch. II, 31.  
Her breathing now was quick and small, like that of a *lesser* creature than a woman. HARDY, *Tess*, VII, Ch. LVIII, 516.

- b) predicatively: *Lesser* than Macbeth and greater. *Macb.*, I, 3, 65.  
c) adverbially: Some say he's mad, others, that *lesser* hate him, | Do call it valiant fury. *Id.*, V, 2, 13.  
He has since travelled in New Guinea, the Solomons and many of the *lesser-known* islands which lie north and north-east of Australia. *Athen.*, No. 4467, 627a.  
It is to the Zoological Gardens that one must go to get into contact with the *lesser-known* species. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6264, 13a.

Note. In the following quotation *lesser*, like *greater*, is merely used as a vocable:

We rejoice at the common-sense which clears away notions of *greater or lesser* in such matters. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5501, 2a.

- least:** a) denoting significance: Not in the *least* degree. *MASON*, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>34</sup>, 34.

How strange that she should never had the *least* idea. *MISS BRADDON*, *Captain Thomas*.

A stanza is the *least* group of lines involving all the peculiarities of metre and arrangement of rhymes, characteristic of the piece where it enters. *BAIN*, *Eng. Composition*, 241.

The system ... contains nothing the *least* cranky. *Punch*, No. 3712, *Advertisement*.

- b) denoting size: "Upon my life, the whole social system is a system of princes' nails!" said this *least* of women. *DICK.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXII, 164b.  
Little Emily was sitting by my side on the lowest and *least* of the lockers. *Id.*, Ch. III, 16b.

Little Dorrit seemed the *least*, the quietest, and weakest of Heaven's creatures. *Id.*, *Little Dorrit*, Ch. IX, 50a.

- c) denoting station or rank: "Thy fear," said Zephon bold, | "Will save us trial what the *least* can do | Single against thee, wicked, and thence weak." *MILTON*, *Par. Lost*, IV, 865.

In these days Mrs. Proudie considered herself to be by no means *the least* among bishops' wives. *TROL.*, *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVII, 163.

- small**, denoting quantity, corresponding to the Dutch *weinig*:  
Thyrsis and Menalcas would have had hard labour to count them, and *small* time, I fear, for singing songs about Daphne. *LYTTON*, *Caxtons*, XVII, Ch. I, 449.

The little volume ... gave *small* promise as to his Lordship's future hours being well employed. *Id.*, *Life of Lord Byron*, 15b.

So with *small* food and much of Homer and the accordion, a week passed over the heads of the outcasts. *BRET HARTE*, *Outcasts*, 29.

- smallest**, denoting quantity, corresponding to the Dutch *minste*:  
She had not the *smallest* remorse or compunction for the victim whom her tongue was immolating. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 199.

There was not the *smallest* hope now. *EDNA LYALL*, *Donovan*, I, 190.

He took not the *smallest* spoken notice of her. *MRS. WARD*, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 301.

- smaller**, as a variant of *lesser*: Our *smaller* colonies. *Graph*.

- slight**. He was suffering from a *slight* indisposition.

This is only a *slight* mistake.

**slightest, faintest, remotest**, etc. i. \* I don't think he has the *slightest* idea where she is. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XXIV. There cannot be the *slightest* doubt that Mr. Gladstone's words inspired the Boers with new courage and new hope. JUST. MCCARTHY, *The Transvaal*. \*\* Your lady and mistress is not at all impressed by your cleverness and talent, my dear reader — not in the *slightest*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, XXIII, 229.

ii. You never gave me the *faintest* hint that you had a wife. BERN. SHAW, *Overruled* (Eng. Rev. No. 54, 183).

iii. I haven't the *remotest* idea how old you are. BAR. V. HUTTEN, *Pam*, V, Ch. V, 264.

## 9. Much (many) — more — most.

a) These words are now used only as indefinite numerals or as adverbs, and as such are, therefore, discussed in Ch. XL. Here we may observe that *much* represents the Old English *micel*, which was used in the sense of both *great* and *much*, the modern *many* being the equivalent of the Old English *manig* and *fela*. The degrees of comparison of *micel* were *mara* (*mā*) — *māst*, the form *mara* being chiefly applied as an adjective, *mā* as a numeral or adverb, *māst* either as an adjective or as a numeral or adverb.

b) 1) The use of *much* as an adjective is now quite obsolete. When modifying certain abstract nouns, it often varies, however, with adjectives, especially *great*. It is, perhaps, owing to these adjectives being felt more or less as indefinite numerals that the indefinite article is sometimes dropped before the nouns they modify. See, however, Ch. XXXI, 38, f.

i. There does not seem to have been *much* harm done. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXI, 206.

A difficulty which had not caused him *much* dismay at that period. *Ib.*, Ch. XXIII, 219.

Lord Brock and the gods had had *much* fear as to their little project. *Ib.*, 222.

ii. \* I think wit is out of place where there's *great* beauty. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXV, 278.

I had *great* pleasure in hearing Mr. Brough . . . declare a dividend of six per cent. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 84.

If he does do so (sc. admire you very much), . . . it would give me very *great* pleasure. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XX, 200.

\*\* You seem to take a *great* interest in Mr. Middlewick. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, I.

Some fathers set too *great* a value on books. *Ib.*

I had a *great* respect for Mr. Meadows. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. IX, 97.

iii. I replied that I was a young gentleman of *large* fortune. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 51.

iv. He bared his head, as it was always his custom to do, when he saw my aunt, for whom he had a *high* respect. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LI, 360a.

Note. The semi-adjectival *much* is sometimes preceded by a possessive pronoun, especially in Early Modern English.

Thanks for *thy much* goodness. *Meas. for Meas.*, V, 534.

I am sorry for *thy much* misgovernment. *Much ado about nothing*, IV, 1, 100.

I pray thee that thou blot from this sad song | All' of *its much* mortality and wrong. SHELLEY, *Epipsychidion*, 36.

The King in utter scorn | Of thee and *thy much* folly hath sent thee here | His kitchen-knave. TEN., *Gar. Lyn.*, 899.

- 2) Also *more* as a pure and indubitable adjective is now quite obsolete. Instances are, however, frequent enough in Early Modern English. In SHAKESPEARE (*the*) *more and less* is a standing expression.

i. O, take his mother's thanks, a widow's thanks, | Till your strong hand shall give him strength | To make a *more* requital to your love. King John, II, 1, 34.

ii. Both *more and less* have given him the revolt. Mac b., V, 4, 13.  
Now, when the lords and barons of the realm | Perceived Northumberland did lean to him | *The more and less* came in with cap and knee. Henry IV, A, IV, 3, 68.

And *more and less* do flock to follow him. Henry IV, B, I, 1, 209.

*The more part* is still in use as an archaism.

*The more part* of them perished by falling over the rocks. FREEMAN, *Norm. Conq.*, IV, XVIII, 117.<sup>1)</sup>

I led ashore *the more part* of our men. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *Prol.*, 16b.

Thus also in (*the*) *more is the pity* and *the more fool* (you) we may consider *more* as an equivalent of *greater*, i. e. as a kind of adjective. There's no amends I can make ye, lad — *the more's the pity*. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, V, Ch. XXXVIII, 349.

It is true enough, *more is the pity*. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. I, 8.  
*The more* great big blundering fool you, for giving the gold piece to him. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 54.

Before the names of certain abstractions *more* varies with *greater* etc., in like manner as *much* varies with *great*, etc. Thus in: *He had more respect for his father than anybody else* we could replace *more* by (a) *greater* or (a) *higher* or a word of like import.

Also in the applications illustrated by the following quotations *more* may be understood as adjectival.

i. Kind hearts are *more* than coronets. TEN., *Lady Clara Vere de Vere*, 55.

Honour and shame were scarcely *more* to him than light and darkness to the blind. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. I, 168.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. These doubts that grew each minute *more and more*. W. MORRIS, *Atalanta's Race*, LXXXV.

And the individual withers, and the world is *more and more*. TEN., *Locksley Hall*, 142.

- 3) *Most* as an indubitable adjective has also disappeared from the language, except in the common phrase *for the most part*. (Ch. XXXI, 19.) The combination *most and least* is a poetic survival.

i. So grace and mercy at your *most* need help you, | Swear. Haml., I, 5, 180.  
The sense of death is *most* in apprehension. Meas. for Meas., III, 1, 78.  
For I was sunk in silence — lost | In this last loss, of all the *most*. BYRON, *Pris. of Chil.*, VIII.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



- ii. Boys and women are *for the most part* cattle of this colour. As you like it, III. 2, 435.

How many thousands of people are there, women *for the most part*, who are doomed to endure this long slavery. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXII, 242. The currents *for the most part* set in towards the French coast. Times.

- iii. Forth he spurred, | Taking no thought of *most or least*. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Paradise, The Man born to be King, 41b.

And nigh him in his glorious hall (he) Beheld his sages *most and least*. Ib., 40a.

Before the names of certain abstractions *most* varies with *greatest* etc. in like manner as *much* varies with *great* etc. Thus *more* could be replaced by *the greatest* or a word of like import in:

This was the part of his life on which he afterwards looked back with *most* pride. MAC., Clive, (530a).

**10. Far — farther, further, farthermore, furthermore — farthest, furthest, farthermost, furthermost.**

- a) 1) *Further* and *furthest* are not, probably from *forth*, as is sometimes believed, but from *fore*. *Further* was formed from *fore* by the comparative suffix *ther*, and the notion that it is the comparative of *forth* has sprung from the false assumption that *fur—ther* was to be divided *furth—er*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1047; SKEAT, Et. Dict., s.v. *further*; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 220. The *th* in *farther* and *farthest* has intruded through analogy with *junther* and *furthest*. The vowel in *further* and *furthest* happens to coincide with the vulgar and dialectal form for *far* = *fur*.

And all as we've got to do is to trusten, Master Marner — to do the right thing as *far* as we know, and to trusten. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn II, Ch. XVI, 126.

- 2) *Far*, *farther*, *further*, *farthest* and *furthest* are used both as adjectives and adverbs. As an attributive adjective *far* is freely used to denote that of two (groups of) things which is farthest removed from the speaker: *the far end*, *corner*, etc., varying with *the farther end*, *corner*, etc.; *the Far East*, *West*, etc.; all of them distinctly suggesting the existence of the opposite, *the near end*, etc. In other applications the current use of the attributive *far* is confined to certain combinations, such as *a far traveller*, *a far stretch*, *a far cry*, *at far intervals*. Collocations like *far countries*, *far relatives* are either unusual or impossible, *far* being replaced by *far-distant*, *far-off* or *far-away*, or by such synonyms as *distant*, *remote*.

*Farthermost* and *furthermost* are used only as attributive adjectives.

- b) *Farther* and *further* are to a large extent used indifferently. UHRSTÖM (Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Rich., 13) observes that they are used by RICHARDSON without the least distinction. According to MURRAY "*farther* is usually preferred in standard English where 'the word is intended to be the comparative of *far*, while *further* 'is used where the notion of *far* is altogether absent.'" Both *farther* and *further* are sometimes used to indicate that side of a river, canal, lake, sea, street, etc. where the speaker is not standing, i.e.

as a synonym of *other*; the ordinary alternative being *this* and the literary *hither* (Ch. XL, 165, *a*). For this the Dutch has in ordinary language *de ander(e)*, in literary language *gene*.

As a conjunctive adverb *further* is used almost to the exclusion of *farther*, and it is decidedly preferred to the latter in the meaning of *more*, *other*.

Finally we may observe that *further* is sometimes used substantively in the sense of *more*.

*Furthermore* varies with *further*. (Ch. VIII, 64, *e*; Ch. X, 14.) *Farthermore* is quite obsolete.

*Furthest* and *farthest* are used in the same shades of meaning, but the latter is the ordinary word.

*Furthermost* and *farthermost* are comparatively rare, and seem to be used indiscriminately.

**far**, as an attributive word: Mrs. Reed, herself, at *far* intervals, visited it (sc. this room) to review the contents of a secret drawer in the wardrobe. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. II, 9.

In that *far* land. MRS. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, E, Ch. II, 114.

In the centre of the church seats were raised in an amphitheatre, at the *far* end of which was a scaffolding a little higher than the rest. LYTON, *Rienzi*, Ch. III, 91. It is not a *far* cry from Fifeshire to East Lothian. *Pall Mall Mag.*

It is a *far* cry from humanity to the cochineal insect. *T. P.'s Weekly*, Vol. XVIII, No. 467, 492a. (= Dutch *een heele sprong*).

Women who go with their menfolk to *far* corners of the Empire [etc.]. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5137, 15b.

The outer door is in the wall on the left at the near end. The door leading to the inner rooms is in the opposite wall, at the *far* end. BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, III, 53.

**far-away**, etc.: i. They gave a cheer that started the echo in a *far-away* hill. STEVENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, Ch. XIII, 97.

ii. The bard . . . was then pursuing on *far-distant* shores that mysterious career, which excited almost as much of the marvel as of the admiration of his countrymen. LYTON, *Life of Byron*, 11a.

His mind goes back to the *far-distant* days when he talked over the same kind of thing under different conditions with the English Marquis of Carabas. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 53, 122.

iii. The *far-off* places in which he had been wandering. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, II, xiv. 1)

**farther**. *a*) used adjectively 1) in the ordinary meaning: *Farther* India. *The British Colonial Pocket Atlas*.

I stood at the *farther* end of the table. SWIFT, *Gul. II*, Ch. I, (141a).

He had still three more boys to help at the *farther* end of the table. BARRY PAIN, *The Culminating Point*.

2) in the meaning of *other*: Just below our encampment flowed a little stream on the *farther* side of which was a strong slope. RIDER HAGGARD, *King Solomon's Mines*, 61.

3) in the meaning of *additional*: Let us leave the house this instant, for fear he should ask *farther* questions. GOLDSM., *Good-nat. man*, IV. However, I am very sorry you have put any *farther* confidence in that fellow. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, 1.

Moses shall give me *farther* instructions as we go together. *Ib.*, III, 1.  
 My lord, the *farther* tidings are heavy for me to tell. SCOTT, Quent.  
*Durw.*, Ch. XXVII, 351.  
 I hope there will be no *farther* delay. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*,  
 Ch. VI, 59.

- b) used adverbially, 1) in the ordinary meaning: Fanny could listen no *farther*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. XII, 123.

Tell me in the first place, if you will, — and upon my honour it shall go no *farther* — about this Insurance Company of yours. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 79.

A skilful artist will make a few simple pleasing phrases go *farther* than ever so much substantial benefit-stock in the hands of a mere bungler. *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 197.

You can, if you please, decline to pursue my story *farther*. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. V, 39. (Another edition has *further*.)

- 2) in the meaning of *more*: I will ask no *farther*. GOLDSMITH, *The Good-nat. man*, IV.

In that case, I should have no fear of your not caring to know what *farther* befell the Rev. Amos Barton. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. V, 39.

**further**, a) used adjectively, 1) in the ordinary meaning: *Further* India. Cassell's *Conc. Cycl.*

The British and French possessions in *Further* India. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6017, 106.

All the young men take their places at the *farther* end of the table. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XIII, 154.

He stepped across to the *farther* window. CON. DOYLE, *The Refugees*, 8.

- 2) in the meaning of *other*: And looking round (he) beheld a brook right fair, | That ran in pools and shallows here and there, | And on the *farther* side of it a pool. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *The Proud King*, 93a.

- 3) in the meaning of *additional*: I found on *farther* investigation that this was so. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XVII, 124b.

I am very sorry to make any *farther* objection. *Id.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.  
 His *farther* remarks were cut short by the sound of the front-door bell. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 271.

If ever poet were a master of phrasing, he was so, and the fact that he was so is quite unaffected by the *farther* fact that he was sometimes unconsciously indebted to his predecessors. A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. to Ten. In Mem.*, Ch. VI, 75.

A *farther* British blue-book. *Times*.

Note the use of *further* in: Mr. Preston did not take any notice of her letter, *further than* to return it. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 123 (= beyond returning it).

- b) used adverbially, 1) in the ordinary meaning: Stop! said Mr. Pickwick, after they had gone a few yards *farther*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 164.

Reuben did not know what to make of him — However, a mile *farther* on he made another attempt. MRS. WARD, *David Grieve*, I, 112.

I didn't get home till near one, and some of us had *farther* to go. SWEET, *Railway Excursion*.

- 2) in the meaning of *more*: Tell me now *further*, what the things are. BENJAN, *Plig. Prog.*, (146).

Mr. Casaubon did not question *further*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIV, 324.

It is to be hoped that his policy may be allowed to pass over without inflaming still *further* the international jealousies connected with the Moroccan question. Rev. of Rev., CCXVIII, 132*b*.

The Germans, however, are understood to desire to reduce it still *further*. Ib., CCXIX, 232*b*.

- c) used substantively in the meaning of *more*: Here is one fyfte of Harold's pilgrimage: | Ye who of him may *further* seek to know  
Shall find some tidings in a future page. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, xciii.

**farthest.** It has become a holiday pastime to ride on a bicycle from the Land's End to the *farthest* shores of Scotland. Arch. Geikie.

We should see straggling huts built of wood and covered with thatch, where we now see manufacturing towns and seaports renowned to the *farthest* ends of the world. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. III, 277.

**furthest.** If the fame of that treatise were to extend to the *furthest* confines of the known world. Dick., Pickw., Ch. I, 3.

The very *furthest* end of Freeman's court. Ib., Ch. XX, 171.

At the *furthest* end of the room. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowh.*, Ch. IX, 57.

At Morton's *furthest* point he was able to discern on the opposite of Smith Sound a lofty mountain. Il. Mag., 1803, 738.

His two companions were much younger men, the one *furthest* from Donovan was faring badly. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 232.

**farthermost.** The *farthermost* expansion of Smith's strait. KANE, *Arct. Expl.*<sup>1)</sup>

**furthermost.** He instantly sets himself, to flee to the then *furthermost* West. PUSEY, *Min. Proph.*<sup>1)</sup>

We find demands on native villages for so much rubber per month, ... meaning attempted flight into the *furthermost* recesses of the forest. *Athenæum*, No. 4452, 211*c*.

**hither.** On the *hither* side of thy dark grave. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *The Proud King*, 95*a*.

She delighted in having discussions which turned ... upon such things as seem to promise a link between the *hither* and the further side of death's boundary. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. V, 91.

The Hainault is still called the Hainault upon stamped paper beyond the frontier line, while on the *hither* French side living speech alone recalls it. H. BELLOC, *Mons* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5317, 5*a*).

## 11. Late — later, latter — latest, last.

- a) 1) *Last*, from *latst*, syncopated from the Old English *latost*, affords an illustration of the law that the *t* is apt to be assimilated to a following sibilant. Cf. *best* from *betst*.

- 2) *Late*, *later*, *latest* and *last* are used both as adjectives and as adverbs, *latter* occurs chiefly as an attributive adjective. We find it also used absolutely and as a partially converted adjective.

- b) 1) The positive *late* is often used in the sense of *recent*, i. e. without any notion of a series, where the Dutch commonly has the superlative *laatste*, e. g.: *the late storm* = *de laatste storm*, *de storm van onlangs*. Note especially of *late years* (= *these last few years* = *in de laatste jaren*), which admits of no such variation as of *late days*, *weeks*, *months*, etc. Instead we find *in these later* (*latter* or *last*)



*days, weeks, months, etc.*, a construction which is, of course, also used with *years*. In *late years* is an occasional variant of *of late years*. *Of later days* is met with in THACKERAY, *of latter years* in TROLLOPE. In *these late days*, as a metrical variant of *in these later (etc.) days*, occurs in BYRON.

Thus also *of late* answers to the Dutch *in den laatsten tijd*.

- 2) **Later**, both as an adjective and as an adverb, is used only with regard to time.
- 3) **Latter** is now chiefly used with regard to position in a series, i. e. to denote what has been mentioned last in a series of two, rarely of a larger number. As such we sometimes find it preceded by *this*. (Ch. XIX, 19, 24.) Its opposite is *former*, also (*the*) *other(s)* is occasionally met with as such (Ch. XL, 165, Obs. I, d), but frequently it stands without either of these alternatives. For *latter* in this application we also find in some connections *last-named (-mentioned)*. Sometimes *latter* simply means *the last of two*, without any distinct notion of things placed in a series, as in: *exploit is accented on the latter syllable*.

More or less archaically we also find *latter* in the sense of *subsequent* or *more (or most) recent*. In this shade of meaning it is now especially common in the collocation *latter days*, and before *part, half* and *end*, where it is used practically to the exclusion of either *last* or *latest*. Compare *the latter half (part, end) of the 19th century*, etc. (*of a sultry afternoon, etc.*) with *the last quarter of the 19th century*, etc. and *the later portion of the letter S* (MURRAY); also *the latter half, part or end* with *the first half, part or end* (rarely *former half, etc.*), and *the latter days of July* etc. with *the last days of Pompeii*, etc.

*Latter days* or *years* sometimes stands for *last days* or *years* of a man's life (= Dutch *laatste levensjaren*); *latter end* for *death*.

Note furthermore *Latter-day Saints*, the name by which the Mormons call themselves. Similarly by analogy *Latter-day Philistines*, etc.

In the Authorized Version *the Latter Day* — the Last Day — the Day of Judgement.

From *latter* in its archaic meaning the adverb *latterly* has been formed: *latterly* = a) *later on, afterwards* ß) *lately*, sometimes *very lately* (= Dutch *in den allerlaatsten tijd*).

- 4) **Latest** is now chiefly used with regard to time, both in the sense of *most late*, i. e. as the opposite of *earliest*, and in the sense of *most recent*, i. e. as the equivalent of the Dutch *jongste, nieuwste*. In the latter sense it implies that the end of a succession or line of things has not yet been attained. In literary English it is frequently met with to denote position in a series, i. e. as the opposite of *first*. In this case it seems to be equivalent to *last*, from which it is, perhaps, only distinguished in being more solemn and more emphatic: *latest* = *very last*. Thus the two last lines of the Introduction to the first canto of SCOTT's *The Lay of the Last Minstrel* run: *And, while his harp responsive rung, 'T was thus the Latest Minstrel sung*. Here as well as in other passages *latest* may have been preferred simply for the sake of the metre. Compare FIJN VAN DRAAT, *Rhythm in Eng. Prose*, The Adj., § 34.

Thackeray has *to his latest day* and *up to his last day* in one and the same §. See below.

*Latest* also varies with *last* in the expression *the latest word*, in which it means *final*. Instances, however, appear to be rare.

Occasionally we find it, in literary language, denoting a pure relation of place: *the last in point of place*.

- 5) *Last* mostly refers to position in a series. As an adjective it occurs chiefly in two meanings:

α) *following all the others* in a series mostly of more than two, occasionally of two. In connection with a numeral *last* is now commonly placed first, the order being reversed before the 17th century. When used as part of the name of a period in connection with such words as *days*, *months*, *years*, etc., it is mostly followed by either a definite numeral or the indefinite *few*. The latter seems to be superfluous and is, perhaps, sometimes inserted for the sake of rhythm. Compare the similar use of *few* with *first* (14) and *next* (12). *Few* appears to be mostly absent in such names of periods as contain the demonstrative *these*. Except for these last combinations, *past* sometimes replaces *last* in names of periods.

Note *the Last Day* — the Day of Judgement; *the Last Supper* — the Eucharist.

β) *immediately preceding* (= Dutch *voorgaande*, *verleden*). In this sense it is used mostly with regard to the moment of speaking or writing, less commonly with regard to a moment in time past. Note especially the frequent *last year*, *half*, *quarter*, *month*, *week* or *night* without the definite article, in which *last* corresponds to the Dutch *verleden*. *Last evening* instead of *last night* is unusual. Also *last century* would appear to be rare, the ordinary expression being *in (during) the last century*. Likewise *the last night* etc. for *the night before*, etc. occurs only occasionally.

Further meanings are: γ) *lowest* (in rank); δ) *only remaining*, often with the secondary notion of 'most unlikely, most unwilling, most unsuitable'; ε) *final*, chiefly in *last word*; ζ) *utmost*, chiefly in *of the last importance* or *consequence* (= *of the first importance*, 14), *in the last straits*, *in the last degree*; η) *farthest*, *utmost*; θ) *most recent* (= Dutch *jongste*, *nieuwste*). In this last meaning *latest* is much more common.

**late**, α) corresponding to the Dutch *laatste*: The *late* sad event has, I feel, made me more apprehensive. Mrs. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 278. I remember well wishing my lot had been cast in the troubled times of the *late* war. *Ib.*, 266.

The *late* events in the south of India had increased the financial embarrassments of the Company. Mac., *War. Hist.*, (629b).

After his *late* mistake about the cow he thought he had better consult his mother first. Jack and the Beansfalk (GRONDI. and ROORDA, *Eng. Leesb.*, I, 68).

Compare: The *recent* fire. *Times*.

The *recent* great fire in the City. *II. Lond. News*.

- b) in the collocations of *late years*, *of late days*, *in late years*:
- i. The public appetite for the consumption of memoirs has been wonderfully sharpened of *late years*. W. P. COURTNEY.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

Compare: *Of recent years* the American learned book has shown a perilous tendency towards the involved periods and the dryness of statement and method characteristic not of the best, but of the average, German practice. P. J. HARTOG, *The Writing of English*, 103.

*Of recent years* the bad feeling upon both sides has increased. *Times*, No. 1813, 783.

ii. The tone of freedom and almost impertinence which young George Esmond had adopted *of late days* towards Mr. Washington had very deeply vexed and annoyed that gentleman. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 91.

iii. i have heard allude, *in late years*, to Lord Palmerston as one who had often been associated with him then in the mimic military duties which they had to perform. MRS. GASK., *Life of Charl. Brontë*, Ch. III.

c) in the collocation *of late*: Everything beautiful in form or colour was beginning *of late* to have an intense fascination for me. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Ch. IV, 72.

In their education the useful has *of late* been trenching on the beautiful. SPENC., *Educ.*, Ch. I, 10a.

d) in the collocation *in these late days*: Yet this existed long before, and never | Till *in these late days* did I see you thus. BYRON, *Mar. Fal.* II, 1, (361a).

**later**, a) used adjectively, 1) in miscellaneous combinations: Milton alone was of a *later* age, and not the worse for it. HAZLITT, *Lect. Eng. Poets*, Ch. III, 59.

The change of opinion seems to have taken place between the composition of the earlier and *later* cantos of *Childe Harold*. TOZER, *Childe Harold*, Intr. 18.

During the *later* months of his life the Prince Consort had been busy in preparing for another great international Exhibition to be held in London. MC CARTHY, *Short. Hist.*, Ch. XVIII, 251.

We should have liked a more liberal citation of Windham's strangely introspective Diary, published in 1866, particularly during his *later* years. *Athen.*, No. 4448, 85a.

Volumes IX, X will contain the *later* portion of the letter S, and the letters T—Z. MURRAY.

2) in the collocations *in these later days*, etc. Soon shall thy voice be lost amid the throng | Of louder minstrels *in these later days*. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, II, XCIV.

(You) have never walked forth with the younger members of my family; meaning (for I am very young) my elder brothers born *in these later years*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 58.

It is difficult for us *in these later days* to conceive the profound and stirring influence of such an alteration on thought and literature. G. H. MAIR, *Eng. Lit.: Modern*, Ch. I, § 1, 13.

We have restored Egypt to a position of prosperity, such as she has never known *in these later centuries*. *Times*.

3) in the collocation *of later days*: Mr. Esmond often rode to Windsor, and especially, *of later days*, with the Secretary. THACK., *Henry Es.*, III, Ch. II, 327.

b) used adverbially: The Admiral ran up the signal . . . and *later* on sent the Bittern and Beacon to assist in the work. *Times*, 1882, 12 July, 5.

**latter**, a) denoting position in a series of two, 1) preceded by *the*: i. Alfieri thought Italy and England the only countries worth living in: *the former* because there nature vindicates her rights, and triumphs over the evils inflicted by the governments; *the latter* because art conquers nature,

and transforms a rude, ungenial land into a paradise of comfort and plenty. EMERSON, *Eng. Traits*, 83a.

ii. His hands and wristbands were beautifully long and white. On *the latter* he wore handsome gold buttons given to him by his Royal Highness the Duke of York, and on *the others* more than one elegant ring. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 1.

iii. He and Foker drove down in *the latter's* cab one day to the Grey Friars. *ib.*, I, Ch. XVII, 174.

Dobbin accommodated Mr. Osborne with a few pound notes, which *the latter* took after a little faint scruple. *Id.*, *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 125.

Dick followed Torpenhow wherever *the latter's* fancy chose to lead him. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. II, 21.

The day after I had been introduced to Busl, *the latter* asked us to dine with him. *West. Gaz.*, No. 5388, 8c. (Here the use of *the latter* instead of *he* (or *this gentleman*) seems uncalled for.)

2) preceded by *this (these)*: There were shabby people present, besides the fine company, though *these latter* were by far the most numerous. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 396.

I have had a great deal to do both with English and American locomotives, and the result of this experience shows that in point of fuel economy the English are the better, but for facility of erection and running repairs the Americans stand first. *This latter* is owing to the complication in the English, due to the use of plate framings and inside cylinders. *Times*.

3) denoting one of two without any distinct notion of things placed in a series: Exploit, accented on *the latter* syllable. DEIGHTON, Note to *Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 317.

*The latter* end of the Rhine is not so romantic as its earlier career in Germany. G. E. MATHESON, *About Holland*, 10.1)

b) in a series of more than two: Mr. Gunter, of Berkeley Square, supplied the ices, supper, and footmen, — though of *the latter* Brough kept a plenty. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 50.

c) in the meaning of *subsequent*, or *more* (or *most*) *recent*, 1) in miscellaneous combinations: I do not doubt, | As I will watch the aim, or to find both, | Or bring your *latter* hazard back again. *Merch. of Ven.*, I, 1, 151.

One is somewhat at a loss to what cause we may ascribe so sensible a decline in eloquence in *latter* ages. HUME, *Es.* XIII, *Of Eloquence*, 102.

There seemed no order in these *latter* visions. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, IV, 101.

Pale as grass, or *latter* flowers. SWINBURE, *Atalanta*, 1397.

2) in the collocations *latter days*, (*years, months*, etc.) *end, part* and *half*.

i. Mansions which have in *latter days* been subdivided into several tenements. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXV, 242.

In the *latter days* of July in the year 185—, a most important question was for ten days hourly asked in the cathedral city of Barchester. TROL., *Barch. Towers*, Ch. I, 5.

Objection might be raised to the inclusion of naturalists of so recent a date as the *latter years* of the eighteenth century. *Athen.*, No. 4422, 95a.

A fine proof of the prosperity of Australia is made available from the returns of the revenue paid to the States during the *latter six months* 1906.7. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXX, 392a.

ii. I will sing it in the *latter end* of the play. *Mids.*, IV, 1, 223.



At the *latter end* of the spring of 588. M. PATTISON, E.S., I, 17<sup>1</sup>).

Quietist. One who believes in or practises quietism; especially applied to one of a sect of mystics originated by Molinos, a Spanish priest in the *latter end* of the seventeenth century. ANNANDALE, Conc. Dict.

- iii. We can only hope that the gentle reader has not found the *latter part* of the last chapter extremely tedious. SCOTT., *Pirate*, Ch. V, 49.

It was in the *latter part* of a calm, sultry day, that they floated gently with the tide between these stern mountains. WASH. IRVING, *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF. Handl., I, 125).

- iv. Masque. A form of amateur histrionic entertainment, popular at Court and amongst the nobility in England during the *latter part* of the 16th. c. and the *first half* of the 17th. c. MURRAY. (Note the use of *first* as the opposite of *latter*.)

- 3) in the collocation in these (few) *latter days*:

- i. They were rough, but they had rude virtues; which are not the less virtues, because in these *latter days* they are growing scarce. FROUDE, *Oceanic*. Ch. III, 46. In these *latter days* of civilisation, however, we see that in the dress of men the regard for appearance has in a considerable degree yielded to the regard for comfort. SPENCER, *Education*, Ch. I, 10a.

Manifestly toys are becoming too elaborate and far too costly in these *latter days*. Times, No. 1826, 1049d.

- ii. Liddy seemed literally to have dwindled smaller in these few *latter hours*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LIV, 451.

- 4) in the collocation of *latter years*: Mr. Plomacy had never worked hard, and of *latter years* had never worked at all. TROL., *Barth. Tow.*, Ch. XXXV, 305.

- 5) in the collocation *latter days or years*, meaning the last days or years of a man's life (= Dutch laatste levensjaren): Our good Colonel's house had received a coat of paint, which, like Madame Latour's rouge in her *latter days*, only served to make her careworn face look more ghastly. THACK., *Newcomes*, I, Ch. XIX, 205.

She has retired into private life in her native town of Newcome, and occupies her *latter days* by the management of a mangle. Ib., I, Ch. XIV, 167.

The time had been — in the *latter days* of his father's life-time — when he was the greatest man of the close. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XL, 385.

All the *latter days* of aged men are overshadowed with its gloom. JEFFERSON.<sup>1)</sup>

- 6) in the collocation *latter end*, meaning death: Would'st thou thy every future year | In ceaseless prayer and penance drie (= endure, suffer); | Yet wait thy *latter end* with fear — | Then daring Warrior, follow me. SCOTT., *Lay*, II, V. It was time for me to lay by and think o' the *latter end*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. III, 10.

- 7) in the combination *Latter-day Saints*, etc.: Alas, alas, it is very hard to break asunder the bonds of the *Latter-day Philistines*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IX, 88.

- 8) in the collocation the *Latter Day*: For I know that my Redeemer liveth, and that he shall stand at the *Latter Day* upon the earth. Bible, Job, Ch. XIX, 25.

- latterly. i. I must introduce myself to you as Captain Frewin — formerly of the steamer Astick, *latterly* of the Metora. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, I, 245.

Beauchamp had *latterly* favoured me with a good deal of his company. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVI, 109.

1) MURRAY.

When separated from the Red Cross Knight, a lion fawns on her and becomes her attendant. *Latterly* she is married to the Red Cross Knight. ANNANDALE, *Concise Dict.*, s. v. *Una*.

*Latterly*, there was a rude attempt to decorate this bower with flowers and sweet-smelling shrubs. BRET HARTE, *The Luck of Roaring Camp*, 12.

- ii. He was a meeker man *latterly* than he used to be. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol*. She has *latterly* suffered the worst tortures that American newspaper notoriety can bring upon a sensitive person. *Morning Leader*.

*Latterly* officials have been breaking into closed stores, and removing whatever they thought necessary. *Times*.

It (sc. *serviette*) may now be regarded as naturalized, but *latterly* has come to be considered vulgar. MURRAY, s. v. *serviette*.

- latest**, a) as an adjective, 1) in the ordinary meaning of *most late*:

Every group fresher than the last and bent on staying to the *latest* moment. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXII, 188a.

He was rescued from the chronic state of impecuniosity in which, despite constant literary work, he had long lived, by a Crown pension and some other assistance in his *latest* days. SAINTSBURY, *Nineteenth Cent.*, Ch. II, 98.

The passengers in all except the *latest* trains are, as a rule, orderly enough. *Graph*.

- 2) in the meaning of *most recent*: The last word of Count Tolstoy — at least the *latest* word in which he sums up his message to his generation — was published in the *Times* of August 31st, 1905. *Rev. of Rev.*, Annual 1906, 38b.

'Stronger than Love', by Mrs. Alexander . . . The *latest* and last of this well-known writer, whose death occurred shortly after she had revised the final proofs. *Times*.

Compare: Robert Allitsen showed her all the *newest* improvements. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, I, Ch. XII, 64.

All who give books are recommended to apply to Messrs. Methuen for details of their *newest* volumes. *Advertisement*.

The *newest* plea is that, since the proportion of raw materials in our exports to manufactured goods grows higher, the exports are in consequence deteriorating in character. *Westm. Gaz.*

- 3) as a literary, metrical or rhythmical equivalent of *last*: I still had hopes my *latest* hours to crown | Amidst these humble bowers to lay me down. GOLDSMITH, *Des. Vil.*, 20.

As my first glance | Of love and wonder was for thee, then take | My *latest* look. BYRON, *Manfred*, III, 2.

May you rule us long | And leave us rulers of your blood | As noble till the *latest* day! TEN., *To the Queen*.

For thou, the *latest*-left of all my knights, | In whom should meet the offices of all, | Thou wouldst betray me. Id., *The Passing of Arthur*, 292.

Even as she dwelt upon his *latest* words. Id., *Enoch Arden*, 451.

The mournful legend relates how the chief of the Fatimites, when all his brave followers had perished round him, drank his *latest* draught of water and uttered his *latest* prayer. MAC., *Clive*, (507a).

To his *latest* day he sang, with admirable pathos and humour, those wonderful Irish ballads which are so mirthful and so melancholy: and was always the first himself to cry at their pathos. Poor Cos! he was at once brave and maudlin, humorous and an idiot; always good-natured, and sometimes almost trustworthy. Up to the *last* day of his life he would drink with any man, and back any man's bill: and his end was in a spunging-house,

where the sheriff's officer, who took him, was fond of him. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 58 (Note he varied practice.)

Skeat has now performed the like service for the work, which next to the 'Canterbury Tales' is the *latest* and ripest fruit of the poet's genius. Athen. The present deponent ... found an interest ... in its pages as an investigation of the testimony as to all the circumstances attending the production of Dickens's *latest* work. It abounds in documentary evidence, it reveals with singular suggestiveness the evolution of Dickens's *latest* manner. THOM SECSCOMBE (Bookman, No. 254, 113a).

This is characteristic of Shakespeare's *latest* manner. Note to Temp., I, 2, 1 (Clar. Press.).

- 4) as a variant of *last* in the expression *the latest word*: *The latest word* in hotel comfort. II. Lond. News, No. 3859, 450b.
- 5) denoting a relation of place: For Philip's dwelling fronted on the street, | *The latest* house to landward. TEN., *En. Arden*, 728. (Possibly only for the sake of the metre.)
- b) as an adverb: He who comes *latest* is sometimes best served.  
Nursing the sickly babe, her *latest* born. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 150.  
There rode | Full slowly by a knight, lady, and dwarf; | Whereof the dwarf lagged *latest*. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 188.
- last**, a) as an adjective 1) referring to a series larger than two:  
A hundred times | In that *last* kiss, which never was the *last*, | Farewell, like endless welcome, lived and died. TEN., *Love and Duty*, 65.  
The kettle had had the *last* of its solo performances. DICK., *Crick.*, I, 6.  
He (sc. Mr. Lewes) used the beautiful walking-stick in the *last* days (sc. of his life). G. ELIOT, *Letters* (Times, No. 1809, 703d).
- 2) said of a series of two: I can so clearly distinguish between the criminal and his crime, I can so sincerely forgive the first while I abhor the *last*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. VI, 66.  
Very important are the researches at the 'Kolonial Institut' and the Tropical Diseases Hospital. At *this last* I made the acquaintance of Dr. Fülleborn. Sir H. H. JOHNSTON, *Germany in 1910* (Westm. Gaz., No. 5531, 5a).
- 3) followed by a numeral: The 'Spectator' cannot doubt that good will come from the crisis through which the nation has been passing in the *last ten* days. Westm. Gaz., No. 4961, 16c.  
The *last two* volumes of their new edition of Macaulay's History. Daily News.  
I am not going to discuss education; we have had enough of that, perhaps, for the moment, in the House of Commons in the *last three* days. Times.
- 4) preceded by a numeral: Chaucer, Spenser, Shakespeare, and Milton. The *two last* have had justice done them by the voice of common fame. HAZLITT, *Lect. Eng. Poets*, Ch. III, 60.  
I think he's walked a little slower than he used, *these few last* evenings. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, IV, 98.
- 5) followed by *few*: 1. \* This is only one proof more, if proof were needed, that for the *last few* hundred years physicians have been idiots. CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. II, 11.  
Here then we have the issue made plain, shorn of all the verbiage of the *last few* days. Westm. Gaz.  
Mr. David T. Day writes upon the petroleum resources of the United States, how largely they have been drawn upon during the *last few* years. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 171b.  
\*\* The cavalry and artillery ... have made great progress *these last few* years. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 468, 528b.

- ii. \* Fate had dealt him some severe blows *the last years*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5107, 2a.

Sacheverel's dark face, grown a little heavier in *the last years*, softened as the beautiful music wore on his senses. BAR. VON HUTTEN, Pam, II, Ch. I, 77.

\*\* I do not know what has come over George in *these last days*. THACK., Virg., Ch. IX, 93.

I have scarcely seen Harry at all in *these last days*. Ib., Ch. XVI, 169.

The ancient Empire of Persia has been witness in *these last days* to events in which England once would have had something to say. ROSEBERY.

I've let many an 'if' slip in and frighten me during *these last days*. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. III, 44.

- 6) replaced by *past*: The heat of *the past few weeks* had worn her down. RUDY. KIPPL., The Light that failed, Ch. XI, 138.

Of all the many cheap series of standard works to the production of which so many publishers have, *during the past few years*, devoted themselves, it is not invidious to say that "Everyman's Library" maintains its triumphant lead. Daily Telegraph.

Inter-urban trolleys have made greater progress in *the past few years* in America than the railways. Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, 240a.

- 7) in the meaning of *immediately preceding the present* (Ch. XXXI, 19): This edition contains about 90 pages more than the *last* edition. The Bookman. In your *last* issue. Academy.

The avowed Boulangists outnumbered by 18 those in the *last* Parliament. Graph.

Parties are balanced pretty much as they were in the *last* Chamber. Id.

Your conduct of *last* evening. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.

I was there late *last* evening. Mrs. ALEXANDER, For his Sake, I, Ch. X, 162. 'Balcony', 'crystalline', 'recondite' . . . in the *last* century were stressed on their second syllables. SWEET, Short Hist. Eng. Gram., § 253.

- 8) in the meaning of *immediately preceding (a night, etc.) in the past*: He made a scanty breakfast on the remains of the *last night's* provisions. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl (STOF., Handl., I, 123).

The answer at several shops was, either that they were just out of them (sc. the books), or that they never kept them, or that they had had a great many *last month*, or that they expected a great many next week. DICK., Domb., Ch. XII, 111.

They went down to the landing-place where they had left their goods *last night*. Id., Chuz., Ch. XXIII, 195a.

Mine (sc. my eyes) encountered the personage who had received me *last night*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. V, 51.

The next day, at ten o'clock, Tom was on his way to St. Ogg's, to see his uncle Deane, who was to come home *last night*. G. ELIOT, Mill, III, Ch. V, 204. I reflect that it would have been much better if I had stopped up *last night*. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VI, 77.

- 9) in the meaning of *lowest* (in rank): The *last* of nations now, though once the first. COWPER, Expost. I, 242<sup>1)</sup>.

- 10) in the meaning of *only remaining*: We ready are to try our fortunes, | To the *last* man. Henry IV, B., IV, 2, 44.

There can be no doubt that rebellion is the *last* remedy against tyranny. BUCKLE, Civiliz.<sup>1)</sup>

She was the *last* person to be approached with undue familiarity. PRESCOTT, Ferd. and Is.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



- 11) in the meaning of *final*: The personal régime has not said *its last word*. Spectator.

If you have not investigated the merits of the Blickensderfer Typewriter, you do not know *the last word* in typewriter conveniences. Advertisement.

The German Government, which has been schooled in the school of Bismarck, and which is *the last word* of efficiency and scientific method [etc.]. Westm. Gaz.

The letters . . . are certainly not to be described as the acme of perfection, or *the last word* in style. Id., No. 6029, 4b.

The Empress Hotel here (sc. in Victoria, British Columbia) spells *the last word* in luxury. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 469, 581.

- 12) in the meaning of *utmost*: i. It was *of the last importance* to her to confer with him. Mrs. ALEX., A Life interest, II, Ch. XVIII, 291.

An express *of the last importance*. BROWNING, A Soul's Tragedy, II.

ii. Such proved weapons were *of the last consequence* to their owner. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXIV, 361.

iii. To fighting he was averse from his earliest youth, as indeed to physic, the Greek Grammar, or any other exertion, and would engage in none of them, except *at the last extremity*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 25.

iv. He was *in the last straits*. II. Mag.

v. His lame attempt to seem composed was melancholy *in the last degree*. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXX, 240b.

It was tantalizing *in the last degree*. W. BLACK, The New Prince Fortunatus, Ch. IX.

Compare also: I think the advantages by the proposal which I have made are obvious and many, as well as *of the highest importance*. SWIFT, Modest Proposal, (477a).

- 13) in the meaning of *farthest, uttermost*: Her -- over all whose realms to their *last isle*, | Commingled with the gloom of imminent war, | The shadow of His loss drew like eclipse, | Darkening the world. TEN., Dedic. Id. of the King, II.

- 14) as a variant of *latter* before *part*: He has permitted his work, or the *last part* of it, to be translated into English by one whose knowledge of the language is imperfect. Westm. Gaz., No. 6111, 11b.

- 15) as a variant of *latest* in the meaning of *most recent* (Dutch *jongste, nieuwste*): Your suit is not of the very *last* fashion. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXV, 25b.

He always brought him the *last* news of the nobility. Id., Pend., I, Ch. II, 23.

She (sc. Elizabeth) could turn from talk of the *last* fashion to pore with Cecil over despatches and treasury books. GREEN., Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3. The *last* news from this region was that [etc.]. Westm. Gaz., No. 4977, 1b.

- b) as an adverb, 1) in the meaning of *after all others*: Love thyself *last*. Henry VIII, III, 2, 444.

- 2) in the meaning of *on the last occasion before the present*: When did you see him *last*? SHELLEY, Cenci, V, 2, 22.

- 3) in the meaning of *as the last thing to be mentioned or considered*: *Last*, but not least, is it not the very property of man that he is a spirit invested with flesh and blood? CH. KINGSLEY, Yeast, Ch. XVII.

- 4) in the meaning of *in the end*: The King | Mused for a little on his plea, but *last*, | Allowing it, the prince and Enid rode | . . . to the shores | Of Severn. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 42.

**last-named.** This flow of quotation and hospitality in Wegg indicated his observation of some little querulousness on the part of Venus. "Why, as to friendly move", observed the *last-named* gentleman [etc.]. DICK., *Our Mutual Friend*, III, Ch. VI, 90.

## 12. Near — nearer — nearest, next.

a) 1) *Near* is properly a comparative, the descendant of the adverb *nēar* (*nēor*), or the adjective *nēarra*, the Old English positive *nēah* (*nēh*) being represented by Modern English *nigh*, which survives in archaic, especially poetic, and dialect use. Note the literary *well nigh*. The transition from the comparative to the positive sense, which was furthered by the analogy of *here*, *there* and *far*, seems to have begun with verbs of motion, such as *to go* and *to come*, with which even now *near* is more or less felt as a comparative. Thus also with the Dutch *naar*, originally the comparative of *na*. Except for dialects traces of *near* as a comparative hardly go beyond the beginning of the 16th century. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 218; SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1048.

The *near* in blood, the nearer bloody. Mac b., II, 3, 146.

Still creeping *near* and *near* the heap. CHAPMAN, *Iliad*, XXIII, 206.

2) *Near*, *nearer*, *nearest* and *next* are partly adjectives, partly adverbs. When followed by a (pro)noun they largely partake of the nature of prepositions. For the use of *to* after these words see Ch. III, 14, Obs. III. *Next* is also used as a conjunctive adverb. See Ch. X, 17.

As an adjective *near*, unlike the Dutch *na*, is also used attributively. The premier was seating himself in a chair in his *near* neighbourhood. Punch.

b) 1) *Nearest* is used to denote proximity as to place, or as to kinship, friendship, or any other emotional tie. We also find it in the sense of *shortest*, *most convenient* or *direct*, especially in the collocation *the nearest way*. In Early Modern English it sometimes stands for *most malignant* (Dutch *ergst*, mostly before *foe* or *enemy*). Sometimes it is equivalent to *next*.

2) *Next* is now chiefly used in indicating proximity as to order or rank, or as to time. When denoting proximity as to time, it is used with regard to the moment of speaking or writing, or to some moment in the past. In the former case the definite article is almost regularly dropped, in the latter it is more commonly retained. The dropping is chiefly met with in adverbial adjuncts, only occasionally in adnominal genitives and their periphrastical equivalents. (Ch. XXXI, 19.)

Note the following idioms: *What next!* (as an exclamation of surprise); *next after* (= coming immediately after), *next to* (= coming immediately after, almost); *next-door*, *next-door neighbour*; *the next room* (= the adjoining room); (*with*) *in (for, etc.) the next few days* (in which *next* is mostly followed by *few*. Compare *last* and *first*).

In Early Modern English *next* is often used where present practice would require *nearest*. The language of the law preserves

the ancient practice. There is, accordingly, a difference between *next-of-kin* and *nearest-of-kin*; the former designating mere claims of succession, the latter also claims of blood or family feeling.

Thus also we say *my next brother* to indicate the brother succeeding in a line of brothers (= Dutch *de broer die op mij volgt*).

In the following illustrations the purely adverbial applications have been passed over as exhibiting no remarkable features.

**nearer.** "Before I draw *nearer* to that stone to which you point", said Scrooge, "answer me one question". DICK., *Cristm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 102.

You must be much *nearer* together. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, II, 119.

Never was there a time when the Navy was *nearer* to the people's heart. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 466, Y 51b.

**nearest,** a) denoting a relation of place: Mrs. Gamp took the chair that was *nearest* the door. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXV, 207a.

b) denoting a tie of kinship, etc.: These *nearest-of-kin* were naturally impressed with the unreasonableness of expectations in cousins G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXV, 243.

Vendetta. A blood-feud: the practice of the *nearest-of-kin* executing vengeance on the murderer of a relative. ANNANDALE, *Conc. Dict.*

The next three months were marked by anguished mental struggle, by a consciousness of painful separation from the soul *nearest* to his own. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II 203.

He could gratify all his *nearest* wishes. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 62.

One misty June evening Sir Michael . . . took an opportunity . . . of speaking upon the subject *nearest* to his heart. MISS BRADDON, *Lady Andley's Secret*, I, Ch. I, 13.

c) in the sense of *most malignant*: But wherefore do I tell these news to thee? | Why, Harry, do I tell thee of my foes. | Which art my *nearest* and dearest foe? HENRY IV, A, III, 2, 123.

d) in the sense of *next*: Of the numerous Oracles of Apollo in Asia Minor, that of the Didymæan Apollo . . . was of great importance, ranking *nearest* in reputation to the Delphian. II. LOND. NEWS, No. 3777, 406.

**next.** a) indicating proximity as to order: *Next* to Sir Andrew in the Club-Room sits Captain Sentry. SPECTATOR, II.

Paul's chair was *next* to Miss Blimber. DICK., *Dombey*, Ch. XII, 105.

b) indicating proximity as to rank: *Next* to the capital, but next at an immense distance, stood Bristol. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 330.

One man is *next* to another in excellence. WEBSTER.

One is *next* in rank or dignity. Id.

c) indicating proximity as to time with regard to the moment of speaking or writing: *Next* week (*next* year, *next* meeting, etc.) everything will be arranged.

In Scotch use 'next' is employed to designate the days of the following week; thus *next* Friday, the Friday of *next* week, is contrasted with this Friday, that of the present week. MURRAY.

d) with regard to so some moment in the past: i. \* 'T was *the next* day my aunt found the matter out. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (217).

*The next* Sunday Susan was busy preparing two rooms for Mr. Eden. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. VIII, 82.

\*\* *The next* day was a Sunday, when there was no business to be looked for. STEVENSON<sup>1)</sup>.

- ii. That day the indefatigable Gus was obliged to run post haste for doctor Salbs, and *next* morning a little boy was born. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 163. Susan was up betimes *next* day. Ch. READE, It is never too late to mend, I.

Compare: On *the following* morning Mr. Loftus caused Paradyne to be arrested. Mrs. WOOD, Orville College, Ch. III, 50.

- e) in certain idioms: i. Well, I'm sure! *What next*, I wonder! PUNCH<sup>2)</sup>.

- ii. He was, *next after* Lucy, by far the best news-gatherer of the country side. Miss MITFORD, Our Village<sup>2)</sup>.

- iii. Poulterers and grocers' trades became a splendid joke: a glorious pageant, with which it was *next to impossible* to believe that such dull principles as bargain and sale had anything to do. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, I, 16.

Ships, they had few; trained seamen, yet fewer; wealth, *next to none*. GROTE, Greece<sup>2)</sup>.

- iv. Trying to hide himself, behind the girl from *next door* but one. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, II, 45.

The idea is *next-door* to blasphemous. SPURGEON, Sermons, XXIV<sup>2)</sup>.

\*\* Persons who live two or three miles' distance in the country are considered as *next-door* neighbours. FIELDING, Tom Jones, IV, Ch. XII, 58b.

- v. She is only in the *next* room. SHER., Riv., IV, 1

- vi. If we can be the means of . . . keeping up her spirits for *the next few* weeks, I shall think our time well spent. JANE AUSTEN, Mansfield Park, Ch. XIII, 131. Nothing will be done in *the next few* weeks which will conflict with this plain declaration. Westm. Gaz., No. 5237, 1b.

Within *the next few* days the programme must be arranged for a fight or for a surrender. The Nation.

- f) in Early Modern English: i. They say, when a Fox is very much troubled with Fleas, he goes into the *next* pool. ADDISON, Tatler, CCXXIX<sup>2)</sup>. He was obliged to make a short confession to the *next* priest that was at hand. GOLDSMITH, Hist. Engl. II, 257<sup>2)</sup>

All the trading and maritime towns *next* the continent. Ib., I, 23<sup>2)</sup>.

Mr. Rushworth . . . had still more to say on the subject *next* his heart. JANE AUSTEN, Mansfield Park, Ch. VI, 56.

- ii. To mourn mischief that is past and gone | Is the *next* way to draw new mischief on. Othello, I, 3, 204.

Peas and beans are as dank here as a dog, and that is the *next* way to give poor jades the bots. Henry IV, A, II, 1, 9.

The *next* way from that place to Mr. Harrison's house. Cries of Blood<sup>2)</sup>.

- g) as a law-term: Wastes when improved are to be assessed to all parochial rates in the parish *next* adjoining. BLACKSTONE, Comm., I, 113<sup>2)</sup>.

Placing wooden rails on the side *next* the glebe land, and field stakes on the side *next* the plaintiff's field. Law Times, XC, 395<sup>2)</sup>.

Infants may sue as plaintiffs by their *next* friends. Rules Supreme Court<sup>2)</sup>.

- h) in expressions designating proximity of kinship: And Naomi said unto her, The man is near of kin unto us, one of our *next* kinsmen. BIBLE, Ruth, II, 20.

Having previously communicated his intentions to his five *next-of-kindred*. GOLDSMITH, Hist. Rome, I, 13<sup>2)</sup>.

The betrothal shall be made by the *next-of-kin*. JOWETT, Plato, V, 91<sup>2)</sup>.

<sup>1)</sup> GÜNTHER, Man., § 419.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.



His *next* brother William, heir-presumptive, or rather in truth heir-apparent, to the throne . . . could not refrain from lamenting his own fate and that of the house of Hohenzollern. *Mac., Fred., (689b).*

For this (sc. his victory at Aboukir) he received a pension of 2000 a year (to be continued to his two *next* heirs). *Cassell's Conc. Cycl., s. v. Nelson.*

### 13. Old — older, elder — oldest, eldest.

a) 1) *Elder* and *eldest* show vowel-mutation, and are the original forms.

2) *Elder* and *eldest* are now used only attributively. *Elder* is, consequently, never followed by *than*. The latest quotation with a predicative *elder* given by MURRAY is of the year 1683; but instances may still be met with in writers of the earlier half of the 18th century. *SATTLER, E. S., VI, 36.*

In such sentences as *He is the elder (or eldest) of the brothers*, *She is about four years the elder* (an unusual construction for *She is about four years older*), *She is the eldest of the family*, the two words cannot properly be regarded as predicative adjectives. In the first and the third they are used absolutely, in the second *elder* is partially converted into a noun.

3) *Elder* is mostly preceded by a definite modifier, chiefly the definite article or a possessive pronoun, such constructions as *an (no, some, any), elder brother of his* or *elder brothers of theirs* being uncommon. Nor is *elder* possible after an intensive, such as *far, still, much*, as in *\*a far (much, still) elder brother of his*. It is hardly necessary to add that both *eldest* and *oldest*, like all superlatives, normally have a definite modifier.

b) 1) *Elder* and *eldest* are now chiefly used as opposites of *younger* and *youngest*, less commonly of *earlier* and *earliest*, and rarely of *newer* and *newest*, *more modern* and *most modern*, *more youthful* and *most youthful*. They are, therefore, chiefly applied to persons. Before the names of things we find them only in the case of personification or as literary archaisms.

In the rare case that they are used with regard to animals, the reference is mostly to a tie of companionship.

a) *Elder* is now used to indicate:

αα) the senior(s) of two (groups of) persons that are thought of as belonging together by reason of some tie of kinship, friendship or companionship, or on account of identity of name.

ββ) the earlier of two persons bearing the same name, or of two (groups of) persons or things, belonging to different periods.

When a tie of kinship is in question, *elder* is used almost to the exclusion of *older*. More frequent is the latter when persons are spoken of as friends or companions, or connected in some other way. In American English, and in the language of the uneducated, there is a tendency to replace *elder* by *older*. *STORM, Eng. Phil., 904, 1036.*

Before proper names of persons *elder*, whether in the sense of *senior* or *earlier*, is used to the exclusion of *older*.

*Elder* varies with *older* before the names of things more

or less distinctly thought of as persons, such as *church*, *country*, *institution*, *university*, etc., and also before such words as *generation*, *branch*, *line*, etc. designating persons.

β) *Eldest* is now used to indicate that (those) person(s) of a group of persons belonging to the same family that exceed(s) all the others as to age. In contradistinction to *elder* it is not usually applied to persons that are connected by a tie other than that of kinship, but like *elder* it is found almost to the exclusion of *oldest* before nouns denoting family relationship. Instances of *oldest* for *eldest* are, however, more frequent than those of *older* for *elder*.

2) *Older* and *oldest* now replace *elder* and *eldest* in all connections not mentioned above, but as they have come into use only slowly, we frequently find in Early Modern English the irregular but original forms in cases where present usage has regular comparison. It is hardly necessary to observe that traces of the earlier practice are still met with as archaisms. Also the use of the irregular forms when years of standing, experience or membership are in question, which was still common about the middle of the 19th century, may be said to be now obsolescent.

It may further be observed that *older* and *oldest*, merely point to duration of life or (non)existence, as opposed to *elder* and *eldest*, which also imply some of the concomitants or characteristics that are commonly associated with these ideas, such as superiority in rank or station, precedence as to a right, a responsibility, etc. Hence *oldest* is the ordinary word in such combinations as express mere superiority as to age: *next oldest*, *second oldest*, *oldest surviving*, etc.; but *eldest-born*. See also page 401.

*elder*, α) used attributively, 1) denoting superiority as to age, α) before common names of persons when the reference is to some tie of kinship: There were two brothers on board, and there not being room for both of them in the only boat that wasn't swamped, neither of them would consent to go, until the *elder* took the younger by the waist and flung him in. DICK., *Dom b.*, Ch. IV, 31.

When his *elder* brother died — *elder* seems a strange word for he was only seven year old — I remember this one took it sorely to heart. ID., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. LV, 203b.

Lieutenant Colonel Newcome, C. B., a distinguished Indian officer, and *elder* brother of our respected townsman and representative, Sir Brian Newcome, Bart. THACK., *New c.*, I, Ch. XIV, 167.

Jane, the *elder* sister, held that Martha's children ought not to expect so much as the Waules. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXV, 243.

There was a strong contrast in the children. The *elder*, who was about fifteen, seemed older than he was. The younger son had scarcely told his ninth year. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 22.

My *elder* brother is five years older than I am (than me). SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2087.

β) before common names of persons when the reference is to some tie of friendship, companionship, etc.: He replied to the bullying look of his father with another so indicative of resolution and defiance that the *elder* man quailed in his return. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXI, 221.

When they parted for the night, they shook hands with the greatest cordiality:

the younger gentleman promising the *elder* not to leave Chatteris without a further conversation in the morning. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 110.

They stood a moment looking at one another, the tall, stalwart young man, so graceful and free in bearing, and the old man, languid, sickly, prematurely broken down. "Sir," said the *elder*, "I have to thank you" [etc.]. *Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal.*, Ch. XII, 123.

"But really now," urged the *younger* of the two (sc. Englishmen) with some warmth, "you can't possibly maintain such a notion. Do you think we are not improved — vastly improved — in the last two hundred years?" — "The increase of civilization gives us a better appearance, I grant," said the *elder*, "but I do not believe the sum-total of evil is lessened". *EDNA LYALL, Knight-Errant*, Ch. I, 9.

Two ragged little Neapolitans were sauntering along the Chiaja; the *elder* had flung his arms caressingly round the other's neck; the younger held in his hand a ragged cap full of cherries. *Id.*, Ch. XIV, 115.

You may have seen a younger and an *elder* boy at school, walking in some grassy spot of the playground with that tender friendship for each other which the age inspires. *SYMONDS, Shelley*, I, 10.

At Eton Shelley was not popular either with his teachers or his *elder* school-fellows. *Id.*, Ch. II, 12.

The *elder* boys are expected to take care of the younger ones. *SWEET, N. E. Gr.*, § 2090.

Eve seemed to be the *elder* of the two girls. *GEORGE GISSING, Eve Madeley's Ransom*, Ch. V.

Two or three minutes after the train had started, the *elder* man looked forward, moved slightly and spoke. *Id.*, Ch. I.

In a reserved first-class compartment were two ladies. The *elder* woman had snow-white hair, the other, her niece, was a pretty girl with a slim figure. *CROKER(?)*, *Pour Prendre Congé*, Ch. I.

γ) before or after proper names of persons: On these facts, too, William had insisted strongly in his conversation with the *elder* Osborne: and had thus been the means of reconciling the old gentleman to his son's memory, just at the close of the elder man's life. *THACK., Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXI, 346. Pendennis the *elder* had a proper and constant dread of the opinion of his neighbour. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XV, 153.

δ) before such words as *church, country, institution, university*, etc.: There are few things to me more affecting in the history of the quarrel which divided the two great nations than the recurrence of that word Home, as used by the younger towards the *elder* country. *THACK., Virg.*, Ch. I, 7.

The change I mean is an amalgamation with the infirmary, so that the Hospital shall be regarded as a special addition to the *elder* institution. *G. ELIOT, Mid.*, VII, Ch. LXVII, 506.

A solemn law, long in vogue in the *elder* university, prohibits the use of the colleges during vacation to the undergraduates. *Graph.*<sup>1)</sup>

ε) before such words as *branch, generation, line*: Of this Younger line we shall have enough to write in time and place; we must at present direct our attention to the *elder* line. *CARLYLE, Frederic the Great.*<sup>1)</sup>

She and her sons were of the *elder* branch of the Esmonds. *THACK., Virg.*<sup>1)</sup>

His favourite gods are those of the *elder* generation. *MAC., Milton*, 25.<sup>1)</sup>

ζ) before the name of an animal: Gabriel had two dogs. George, the *elder*, exhibited an ebony-tipped nose [etc.]. *HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. V, 38.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., VI.

- 2) denoting more years of standing, experience or membership: The younger clerks were miserably paid, the *elder* enriched themselves by trading on their own account. MAC., CLIVE, (499a).

She was anxious that the parish vicar should be one with whom she could herself fully co-operate . . . Should she appoint an *elder* man, this might probably not be the case to the same extent. TROL., FRAML. PARs., Ch. I, 3.

The Society was started with the idea of increasing the stipends of the *elder* curates. GRAPH., 1881, 26 March, 303.

Captain Arthur Wellesley Clarke is an *Elder* Brother of Trinity House. IL LOND. NEWS, No. 3812, 716a.

Note. The use of *elder* in the following quotations, where there is not, apparently, any reference to any tie, is archaic:

There being present, besides the bride and bridegroom, an *elder* mariner and his wife. ALL THE YEAR ROUND.<sup>1)</sup>

He was still an object of great attention and some hope for the *elder* damseis of the vicinity. LYTTON, Eug. ARAM.<sup>1)</sup>

The *elder* inhabitants pished and pshawed at the folly of the new shopkeeper. G. ELIOT, BROTH. JAC., 169.<sup>1)</sup>

The characters of journalist and novelist are joined also in *elder* men. MORLEY, Eng. Lit., 413.<sup>1)</sup>

Thus, seemingly, also in: They were more like a lot of *elder* children than servants. HUGHES, TOM BROWN, I, Ch. II, 21.

- 3) denoting earlier existence, a) before or after proper names of persons: Great Commoner: a name given to the *elder* William Pitt. MURRAY.

The time has long gone by when, as in the days of the *elder* Pitt, British commerce could be made to flourish in and by means of a war. TIMES. "Taxes," said the *elder* Pitt, "are a voluntary gift and grant of the Commons, and of the Commons alone." WESTM. GAZ., No. 5173, 1b.

The death of Pliny the *Elder* by suffocation. IL LOND. NEWS, No. 3857, 330.

The prose of his (sc. John Lyly's) school . . . owed its inspiration, in its form, ultimately to Cicero, and in the decorations with which it was embellished, to the *elder* Pliny and later writers of his kind. G. H. MAIR, Eng. Lit.: MODERN, Ch. I, § 2, 17.

- β) archaically before common names of persons: The forms of it are maintained by the *elder* authors. BULWER, KENELM CHILLINGLY.<sup>1)</sup> The *elder* writers understood but little of the pathetic. THACK., VIRG.<sup>1)</sup> 'Nugget' very nearly in its present form occurs in our *elder* writers. TRENCH, ENGLISH PAST AND PRESENT, 81.<sup>1)</sup>

- γ) archaically before names of things: Hear then, attentive to my lay | A knightly tale of Albion's *elder* day. SCOTT, MARM., INTROD., I, xvii.

Are you such a wretched Christian as to suppose I would in the present day levy war against the Ashton family, as was the sanguinary custom in *elder* times. SCOTT, BRIDE OF LAM., Ch. VIII, 185.

The mystic action of the drama recalls, not the human stir and passion of our modern tragedy, but the solemn movement of the stories of the *elder* world. VIDA D. SCUDDER, INTROD. to Shelley's PROM. UNBOUND, 3.

His style as a poet was but weakly imitative of our *elder* drama. MORLEY, Eng. Lit.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> SATTler, E. S., VI.



'Hum-bugg' may be, after all, the *elder* form of the term. II. Lond. News.<sup>1)</sup> Compare: The *earlier* dictionaries seem to have been less fortunate than usual in their collection of comparatively uncommon words. Athen., No. 4460, 421a.

- b) used predicatively, now obsolete: How much more *elder* art thou *than* thy looks. Merch., IV, 1, 251.

One of them, who was *elder* and more sunburnt *than* the rest, told him that he had a widow in his line of life. Spect., CXXX.<sup>1)</sup>

She is George's eldest Princess — next *elder* to our poor Amelia. CARL., Fred., V, 211.<sup>1)</sup>

There were few amongst them *elder than* Angelo. LYTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 154. (Compare: And at her feet lay one *older than* the rest. Ib., IV, Ch. I, 155.)

In the following quotation *elder* is essentially predicative:

I might have raised romantic ideas in *elder* minds than those of Joseph and Fanny. FIELDING.<sup>1)</sup> (= minds older than.)

- older**, a) used attributively 1) denoting superiority as to age  
a) before names of persons when the reference is to some tie of kinship: The office had passed out of the family on the death of an *older* brother of his father. MASSON, Chatterton.<sup>1)</sup>

- β) before names of persons when the reference is to some tie of friendship, companionship, etc.: i. This act of freedom inspired the *older* pupils with admiration and envy. ARNOLD, Life & Corresp.<sup>1)</sup>

Although so much senior to Roberts, there was fellowship between them almost from the first. The *older* man recognized, no doubt, in the younger that same ardent longing to achieve distinction which dominated himself. Graph.

The younger of the two men wondered ... whether Athena was aware of how dramatic had been her announcement of a singularly insignificant fact. As to the *older* man ... he had turned and deliberately looked away as the door opened. Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander, Ch. III, 50.

Note. In the opening chapter of Mrs. HUMPHRY-WARD's Lady Rose's Daughter, the senior of the two persons introduced is twice referred to by *the older*, subsequently by *the elder*:

An elderly gentleman flung himself out of his cab, and hastily went to meet a young man, who was at the same moment stepping out of another hansom.

The pleasure in *the older* man's voice rang clear, and the younger met him with an equal cordiality ...

*The older* man paused outside the line of servants waiting at the door ... "What a charming house!" said *the elder*, looking round him.

- ii. A still *older* friend than Lord Jeffrey wrote of him in not less affectionate language. TREVELYAN, Macaulay.

- γ) before such words as *church, country, institution, university, etc.*: These exercises have never been adopted at London, as, indeed, they have slowly gone out of fashion at the *older* universities. Academy.<sup>1)</sup>  
The ill-suppressed exultation in the faces of their neighbours of the *older* religion affected them with terror. All the Year Round.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> SATTler, E. S., VI.

- δ) before such words as *branch*, *generation*, *line*, etc.: Differences of pronunciation between the *older* and the younger generation are not only possible, but inevitable. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, § 7.  
The *older* generation and the younger do not speak exactly alike. RIPPMAUN, *The Sounds of Spoken English*, § 17.

It is easy to love a man who belongs to an *older* generation. MAC., *Let.*<sup>1)</sup>

- ε) before other nouns not denoting persons or personified things: The painters have no longer the stimulus of attacking the *older* and more established order of things. Athen., No. 4459, 409a.

Note. In the following quotations *older* could hardly be replaced by *elder*, because there is no notion of any tie of friendship, companionship, etc.

He was the man of whom the *older* inhabitants of Dillsborough still thought and still spoke, when they gave vent to their feelings in favour of gentlemen. TROL., *Amer. Sen.*, I, 12.<sup>2)</sup>

Younger boys than he had triumphantly redeemed *older* girls than Florence. DICK., *Dombey*.<sup>1)</sup>

When boys see *older* people smoking, no amount of severe orders will prevent them from doing likewise. Graph.<sup>1)</sup>

- 2) denoting more years of standing, experience membership, etc.: You are an *older* hand at this than I thought you, Tupman, you have been out before. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 166.

His name in gilded letters still attests his victory over many *older* competitors. MAC., *War. Hist.*<sup>1)</sup>

Ah! the truth is a thing I get rid of as soon as possible! Bad habit, by the way. Makes one very unpopular at the club . . . with the *older* members. OSCAR WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, I.

- 3) denoting earlier existence, α) before common names of persons: i. the *older* philosophers, dramatist, writers etc. (Instances with a definite modifier, although, probably, not infrequent, are not available at the moment of going to press.)  
ii. Many instances are found in Shakespeare and still *older* writers. Notes and Quer.<sup>1)</sup>

- β) before names of things: The distinction is quite of modern introduction. The *older* use of the word was more correct. FRENCH, *Glossary*.<sup>1)</sup>

The *older* banks appear to have shunned that dangerous kind of business which has involved two modern establishments in destruction. Chamb. Journ.<sup>1)</sup>

- b) used predicatively: She is ten years *older* than her sister. MURRAY.

eldest, α) denoting the greatest age, 1) before names of persons, α) when the reference is to some tie of kinship: Infante, any son of the king, except the *eldest*, or heir apparent. WEBST., s.v. *infante*.

Carlyle was the *eldest* of nine children. R. GARNETT, *Carlyle*.<sup>3)</sup>

I am your *eldest*-born. WORDSWORTH, *White Doe of Rylstone*, I, 54.

- β) when the reference is to some tie of friendship, companionship, etc.: Of all the girls at the school I was the youngest, and you were the *eldest*, or nearly the *eldest*. WILKIE COLLINS.<sup>1)</sup>

1) SATTLER, E. S., VI.

2) STORM., *Eng. Phil.*, 706.

3) MURRAY.

Examined closely, that group was far from insignificant; for the *eldest*, who was reading in the newspaper the last portentous proceedings of the French parliaments, and turning with occasional comments to his young companions, was as fine a specimen of the old English gentleman as could well have been found in those venerable days of cocked-hats and pigtails. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, II, Ch. II, 85.

- 2) before such words as generation, dynasty, etc. Instances seem to be rare: In my blood she venerates the *eldest* dynasties of earth. LYRTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, I, Ch. IV, 22b.
- b) denoting the most years of standing, experience, membership, etc.: the *eldest* member of a club, the *eldest* partner of a firm, etc. (No instances have been found in Late Modern English; this use of *eldest* may have become extinct.)
- c) denoting earliest existence. Now quite obsolete: O, my offence is rank, it smells to heaven; | It hath the primal *eldest* curse upon't, | A brother's murder. HAMLET, III, 3, 37.

**oldest**, a) denoting the greatest age, before names of persons,

- i) when the reference is to some tie of kinship: i. As far as I remember, the *oldest* was about ten years of age, and the youngest about four. MRS. GASK., *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 41. Willie Stead, my first-born and *oldest* son, was suddenly summoned hence on December 14th, 1907. Rev. of Rev., CCXVII, 18a. "I guess he means 'trunk'," said my *oldest* nephew. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 41.

It was not long before he came to the *oldest* brother's house. JOSEPH JACOBS, *More English Fairy Tales*, LXXI, 138. (Compare: He flung the ball, and off he goes as quick as lightning, and comes to the *eldest* brother's house. *Ib.*, 135. In this tale *oldest* and *eldest* are used indifferently.)

- ii. Off he went as fast as the wind, ... until he came to the *second oldest* brother's house. *Ib.*, LXXI, 134.

They have a jolly shake-hands, and off he goes to the *next oldest* brother. *Ib.*, 139.

The first-born, or the *oldest surviving* (member of a family, son, daughter, etc.). MURRAY, s. v. *eldest*, 2.

- 2) when the reference is to some tie of the companionship: He was one of the *oldest* of Prince John's followers. SCOTT.<sup>1)</sup> He was the *oldest* monk of all. LONGFELLOW<sup>1)</sup>.

The *oldest* of the tenants on Lord Derby's Estates welcomed their Majesties. II. Lond. News, No. 3873, 47.

Note. When there is no notion of any tie, *oldest* is now regularly used.

In a word, it was one of those unparalleled storms that only happen once within the memory of that venerable personage, known in all towns by the name of "the *oldest* inhabitant". WASH. IRV., *The Storm-Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 83).

Methuselah was the *oldest* man that ever lived. ALFORD, *The Queen's English*, § 215.

There should be a pause of at least five minutes in the winter, and at least ten in the summer between consecutive periods of teaching, the periods themselves not exceeding fifty minutes, even in the case of the *oldest* pupils of school age. RIPPMAUN, *The Sounds of Spoken Engl.*, § 5.

<sup>1)</sup> MätzN., *Eng. Gram.*, I, 293.

- b) denoting the most years of standing, experience membership,  
1) before nouns denoting friendship or enmity(?): If any man but you insulted her, I would tell him what I thought; but as you are my *oldest* friend, I suppose you have the privilege to doubt my honour. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 77.

The insoluble question whether he was Veneering's *oldest* friend, or newest friend. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 9. (Note the contrast: *oldest*—*newest*.)

His own neighbour was Mrs. Vandeleur, one of his aunt's *oldest* friends. OSCAR WILDE, *Dorian Gray*, Ch. II, 53.

Yesterday-evening you wrote me a very beautiful, womanly letter, asking me for my help. You wrote to me as one of your *oldest* friends, one of your husband's *oldest* friends. *Id.*, *An Ideal Husband*, IV.

Portugal is the *oldest* of all our allies. *Times*, No. 1811, 743c.

He would sacrifice his *oldest* friend to his newest dog. *Times*.

Compare: Eternal blessings crown my *earliest* friend. GOLDSMITH, *Traveller*, II.

- 2) before other nouns: The company was only three years old, and the *oldest* clerk in it had not six months more standing in it than I. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VI, 65.

He made very few foolish bets with the jolly idle fellows round about him and the *oldest* hands found it difficult to take him in. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXIX, 299.

During fifty days the young captain maintained the defence with a firmness, vigilance, and ability, which would have done honour to the *oldest* marshal of Europe. MAC., *Clive*, (506b).

The *oldest* Parliamentary hands confess themselves baffled by the present situation. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6135, 1c.

- c) denoting earliest existence: The *oldest* historian of the Conquest is William of Poitiers. CHAMB., *Sketches*, I, 79.<sup>1)</sup>

The *oldest* historical document in which Arthur is mentioned by name is the famous 'Historia Brittonum' ascribed to Nennius. W. LEWIS JONES, *King Arthur*, Ch. I, 14.

Note the alternate use of *oldest* and *earliest* in: The *oldest* documents of Finnish date back only a few centuries. Those of Hungarian are older; but even the *earliest* of them are less conservative on the whole than Modern Finnish. SWEET, *Hist. of Lang.*, Ch. VII, 133.

#### 14. (Be)fore — former — foremost, first.

- a) 1) As to the formation of the comparative and the superlative see *above* (3).

- 2) *Fore* as an adverb occurs now only as a nautical term as the opposite of *aft*, the form *before* having taken its place in other applications. As an adjective it is always attributive; its opposites are *back* and *hind*. Both as an adverb and as an adjective it is found in innumerable compounds, being, indeed, a kind of prefix, used as a living formative. Note also the expression *to the fore*, in which *fore* is an adjective partially converted into a noun.

*Former* is used as an attributive adjective and may be partially converted into a noun. A very common derivative is the adverb *formerly*.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., VI.



*Foremost* and *first* are found as adjectives, chiefly attributive, and as adverbs or predicative adnominal adjuncts. *First* often occurs partially converted into a noun.

- b) *Fore* both as an adverb and as an adjective is now used only to denote a relation of place.

*Former* is used with reference to time and to order or position in a series of two. In the former application it now mostly points merely to a period or occasion anterior to that in question (Dutch *vroeger*); in the sense of the *earlier of two* (Dutch *eerste*) we now find it only before *half* and *part*, *earlier* or *first* being, however, the ordinary word. MURRAY, s. v. *former*, 1. In the latter application it is now almost exclusively used to denote the person or thing mentioned first in a discourse, i. e. as the opposite and correlative of *latter*; in the more strictly local meaning of *standing or occurring before the other* it is comparatively rare.

*Former* in the sense of *foremost* is now quite obsolete.

*Foremost* is especially used to denote a pure relation of place (Dutch *voorste*) or of rank (Dutch *voornaamste*), as opposed to *first*, which points rather to time and to order or position in a series (Dutch *eerste*). The two ideas are not always clearly discriminated, and in some combinations the words are, apparently, used indifferently. Thus MURRAY does not distinguish between *head first* and *head foremost*.

Note the regular use of *first* in the meaning of *utmost* before *importance*, a sense which differs but little from that of *foremost*, *most important*. Compare *last*. Sometimes the two words are used in succession for more emphasis: *first and foremost*. Note also that we say *the first few days, months, years*, etc. for the Dutch *de eerste dagen, maanden, jaren*, enz. Compare the similar use of *few* with *last* and *next*.

**fore.** i. *Fore* and *aft*. MARRYAT.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The *fore* part of the tongue. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, § 14

The *fore* part of a garment. WEBSTER, *Dict.*

**to the fore.** i. If he has not me *to the fore* to prove what I said, he can do nothing. LEVER, *Daltons*, II, Ch. XXXV.<sup>2)</sup> (= *on the spot, within call*.)

ii. The steward . . . , though stricken in years, was still *to the fore*. J. PAYN, *Myst. Mirbridge*, Ch. VI.<sup>2)</sup> (= *still surviving*.)

iii. How many captains in the regiment have £ 2000 *to the fore*? THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 257. (= *ready to or at hand, to the good, forthcoming, available*.)

iv. In Paris the Panama Canal Question has again been *to the fore*. GRAPH. (= *in full view, conspicuous*.)

There is no fear of politics becoming stagnant as long as Lord Randolph Churchill is *to the fore*. Ib. (Compare: And in truth, though politics were always well *to the front* among Moore's interests, they never dominated his life. STEPH. GWENN, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. I, 16.

Here was the wily self coming *to the fore* again. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, Ch. II, 147.

1) FLÜGEL.

2) MURRAY.

**former**, a) in the sense of the Dutch *vroeger*: A new letter was written in the precise terms of the *former*. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXX, 291.

I was observing to Mr. Jarndyce and Miss Summerson that you had had two *former* husbands, both very distinguished men. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XVIII, 107.

In *former* years he had been the terror of all the careful mothers of the neighbourhood. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, II, 118.

Though it (sc. the uniform spelling) represents the pronunciation of a *former* age, we still use it. RIPPMANN, *The Sounds of Spoken English*, § 17.

- b) in the sense of the Dutch *eerste*: (They pass) their evenings at cards among each other; while the *former part* of the day is spent in spleen and envy, or in vain endeavours to repair by art and dress the ruins of time. SWIFT, *Letter to a young Lady on her Marriage*, (474b). The government of Rome during the *first half* of the tenth century. MURRAY, s. v. *pornocracy*.

Compare: It is in the *earlier half* of the fourteenth century that my story opens. LYTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 9.

- c) in a strictly local meaning: Of dissyllables, formed by affixing a termination, the *former* syllable is commonly accented. MURRAY, *Eng. Gram.*, I, 348.1)

- d) in the sense of first-mentioned: Two treaties were drawn up, one on white paper, the other on red, the *former* real, the latter fictitious. MAC., *Clive*, (517b).

- e) in the sense of *foremost*: Coming from Sardis, on our *former* ensign | Two mighty eagles fell. JUL. CÆS., V, 1, 80.

**foremost**, a) denoting a relation of place, 1) used as an attributive adjective: The king himself fought and fell in the *foremost* ranks of the battle. GIBBON, *Decline and Fall*, II, Ch. XXVI, 41.1)

The *foremost* row. PUNCH.

- 2) used as a predicative adjective: The giant was *foremost* now, but the dwarf was not far behind. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*, Ch. XIII.

- 3) used as an adverb or predicative adnominal adjunct: I am — or rather was — a prince, | A chief of thousands, and could lead Them on where each would *foremost* bleed. BYRON, *Maz.*, VII.

To put one's best foot *foremost*. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. II, 37.

He got out of bed with the wrong foot *foremost*. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XIX, 169.

He fell from his whole height, face *foremost* to the floor. STEVENSON, *Treas. Island*, 36.

- b) denoting pre-eminence, 1) used as an attributive adjective: If this man could be raised up now, what would be his *foremost* thoughts? DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 96.

He carried home the pleasing illusion that a confectioner must be at once the happiest and the *foremost* man. G. ELIOT, *Brother Jacob*, 346.

When Petrarch was crowned, it was a solemn act of homage to the *foremost* poet of the world. BOOKMAN.

Southey honestly thought himself what Wordsworth, when he succeeded him, was, the *foremost* poet of the day. Ib.

Johnson was the *foremost* man of his age. GRAPHIC.

(These books) won for Messrs. (?) and Gillen a *foremost* place among anthropological observers. MACMILLAN AND CO'S ANNOUNCEMENTS, 1911, Autumn, 9.

- 2) used as an adverb or predicative adnominal adjunct: Young, handsome: these he puts last; but I put them *foremost*. GOLDSM., *She Stoops to Conquer*, I.

**first**, a) denoting a relation of time or of position in a series, 1) used as an attributive adjective: Edmund Spenser was the *first* Poet Laureate.

followed by *few*. For the *first few* weeks she spoke only to the goat. RUDY. KIPLING, *The Light that failed*, Ch. I, 5.

- 2) used as an adverb or predicative adnominal adjunct Mr. Weller and the guard squeeze the cod-fish into the boot, *first* head *first* and then tail *first*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 245.

He was pitched out of his gig and knocked, head *first*, against a milestone. *Id.*, Ch. XLIX, 447.

Thus saying, Mr. Bumble put on his cocked-hat wrong side *first*. *Id.*, *Ol. Twist*, Ch. V, 58.

b) denoting pre-eminence, 1) used as an attributive adjective: The old fogies, as you call them, at Baga's are some of the *first* gentlemen in England. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. VII, 72.

Among his political works the Freeholder is entitled to the *first* place. MAC., Addison, (766b).

He fully expected to play a *first* part in Parliament. *Id.* (763b).

He was opposed by the *first* captains of the age. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 900a.

If they (sc. Mexico and Argentina) continue progressing at the same rate, they will soon rank among the *first* nations of the world. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXXI, 266b.

- 2) used as a predicative adjective: For street lighting the electric arc-light was still easily *first*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXIV, 139. (= *excelling all competitors*, practically equivalent to *best*.)

c) in the sense of *utmost*. The climate is of *first* importance. *Times*, 1899, 610a.

This accession of strength in the matter of long-range guns is of the *first* importance to the Ladysmith garrison. *Il. Lond. News*.

d) as the correlative of *latter*: Whatever be the reason, it is commonly observed that the early writers are in possession of Nature, and their followers of Art; that *the first* excel in strength and invention, and the latter in elegance and refinement. JOHNSON, *Rasselas*, Ch. X, 59.

e) in connection with *foremost*: Till her boy was twelve years old, she had lived for him *first and foremost*. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 79.

## 15. Hind — hinder — hind(er)most.

a) The mutual relations between these words is uncertain: only this much is an established fact that *hind(er)most* is not a double superlative like *foremost*. MURRAY.

b) All these words occur only as attributive adjectives, the corresponding adverb of the first always having the prefix *be*: *behind*.

c) *Hind*, the opposite of *fore*, is especially said of things existing in pairs, front and back, as the limbs of quadrupeds, the wheels of a wagon, etc. MURRAY.

*Hinder*, notwithstanding its comparative form, does not differ in sense from *hind*, but is more frequently used. Cf. *yon*, *yonder*. MURRAY. It is not restricted in its application to things that exist in pairs. *Hindmost* and *hindermost* have the same meaning, but the latter is archaic.

**hind.** the *hind* legs of a quadruped; the *hind* toes, the *hind* shoes of a horse; the *hind* part of an animal. WEBST., Dict.

**hinder.** the *hinder* part of a ship; the *hinder* part of a wagon. Ib.

**hind(er)most.** i. The *hindmost* wheels of Phoebus' wain. MILTON, *Comus*, 190.  
But until we all agree to cry halt, it is each for himself and the devil take the *hindmost*. Rev. of Rev., CCXIX, 232b.

ii. Then Hereward came in, and sat down on the end of the *hindermost* bench. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. IV, 33a.

## 16. In — inner — in(ner)most.

a) 1) For the formation of *innermost* see above (3).

2) *In* is only used as an adverb or a preposition; but in the former function it is often found adnominally, usually making up a kind of compound with its head-word, as in *in-patient*, *inmate*, the *in party* (= the party that is in office). The adverbial *in* has been converted into a noun, as in *the ins and outs* (= the party in and out of office), *the ins and outs of a garden* (= the nooks and corners of a garden), *the ins and outs of a road* (= the windings or turnings of a road), *the ins and outs of a character* (= the particulars of a character), etc.

*Inner*, *inmost* and *innermost* are practically used only as attributive adjectives: the first is totally converted into a noun when denoting the centre of a target, the two last may be partially changed into nouns. As a term of phonetics *inner* is occasionally met with as an adverb.

The forms *inly* and *innerly* are found used both as adjectives and adverbs; only *inly* as an adverb is at all used in ordinary standard English of the present day.

b) *Inner* in its literal sense is especially said of rooms, courts, recesses etc.; metaphorically it is chiefly used in the sense of *spiritual*, *mental*, as opposed to *physical* (cf. *outer*). Note *the inner man* (= the inner or spiritual part of man, the soul or mind), which is humorously applied also to the stomach or 'inside', as in *to refresh (fortify, strengthen) the inner man* (= Dutch *den inwendigen mensch versterken*.)

*Inmost* and *innermost* are used indifferently, literally of rooms, courts, recesses, etc. (as *inner*), and metaphorically of the human heart.

**ins and outs.** Juan stood well both with *Ins and Outs*. BYRON, *Don Juan*, XIII, xxiv.

He knew the *ins and outs* of the road better than any of us. BOLDEWOOD, *Robbery under Arms*, XXII.<sup>1)</sup>

His father-in-law knew the *ins and outs* of his character. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *Pam*, Ch. VIII, 43.

**inly.** He chuckled *inly*. LYTTON, *The Caxtons*, II, Ch. IV, 47.

Here were the covert taunt . . . the careless exaction of respect in trifles, which could not outwardly be resented, but which could not *inly* be forgiven. Id., *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. I, 157.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



**inner.** i. \* The sacred *inner* room. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. V.

She was still in the *inner* apartment. *Ib.*, Ch. XX.

And hurrying into the *inner* room, she left him waiting. Mrs. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 246.

Compare: She locked... both the *inward* and *outward* door of the tower. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVIII, 308.

\*\* She had been conscious of a strange *inner* restlessness, as they all stood waiting for the vicar of Elsmere. *Ib.*, 157.

In this *outer* life Carlo went through the series of farewell performances at New York, in his *inner* life he fought a terrible battle and came out conqueror. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XXXIII, 328.

\*\*\* The living product of the whole *inner* man. FARRAR, *Orig. Lang.*, I, 32. 1)

\*\*\*\* Opera-glasses are allowed in the Galleries, but the appearance of a newspaper brings the attendant down on you very quickly; nor are you allowed to *refresh the inner man*. *Graph.*

Being thus *fortified in the inner man*, and exhilarated in the spirit, I venture to suggest a short railway journey. *Punch.*

ii. Beginning with two *inners*, he then put together five successive bull's-eyes. *Daily News.* 1)

iii. Hence although  $\int$ ,  $\int_0$  are naturally formed more *inner* than S, Z, both classes can be retracted as well as advanced without being confused. SWEET, *The Sounds of Eng.*, § 125.

**in(ner)most.** i. In front of the second enclosure... there ran another fosse, and a third... was led between the second and the *innermost* enclosure. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. III, 50.

In the New Thames Street the air was like that of the *innermost* chamber in the Turkish Bath. WALT. BESANT, *The Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XVI, 53.

It is possible, although not natural, to form *inner* — or rather, *innermost* —  $\beta$ ,  $\delta$  as far back as the arch-rim. SWEET, *The Sounds of Eng.*, § 120.

ii. Desperately and breathlessly did Philammon drive this speech out of his *inmost* heart. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 36.

The flourish of the guard's horn went to the *inmost* hearts of the pupils from Demarara and myself. Miss BRADDON, *My First happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 68.)

In his *inmost* heart there was a passionate wish to do his duty to Sandy's orphans. Mrs. WARD, *Dan. Grieve*, I, 66.

To be the strength, the *inmost* joy of a man who within the conditions of his life seems to you a hero at every turn — there is no happiness more penetrating for a wife than this. *Id.*, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 261.

## 17. (Be)neath — nether, nethermore — nethermost.

a) 1) For the formation of *nethermost* see above (3).

*Neath* although an aphetic form of *aneath*, is understood as a shortened *beneath*, and, accordingly, often written with the apostrophe: '*neath*. *Aneath* is the northern form for *beneath*; cf. *afore*, *ahind*, the northern forms of *before* and *behind*. *Neath* is only met with as a word of poets and in dialects, the ordinary form in standard English being *beneath*.

2) *Beneath* is used only as an adverb or as a preposition. The comparative and superlative forms, on the other hand, occur only as attributive adjectives.

1) MURRAY.

- b) *Nether*, the opposite of *upper*, is especially said of the lip or jaw, the legs or their clothing, and of the earth or world when contrasted with heaven or the upper regions, in this latter combination mostly preceded by *this*. It is most frequently met with, however, before *regions* or *world* to denote what lies, or is imagined as lying, beneath the earth. For the rest it is rare and only literary, *lower* or *under*, also in the combinations mentioned above, being mostly used instead.

*Nethermore* is very rare; also *nethermost* is uncommon and merely literary, its ordinary substitute being *lowest*.

**nether.** \* A *nether* jaw protruding so hideously that his teeth could never meet. BUCKLE, *Civiliz.*, II, Ch. VIII, 469.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* His *nether* garments were of a bluish grey. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IV, 23b.

\*\*\* Neptune, besides the sway Of every salt flood and each ebbing stream,  
Took in by lot 'twixt high and *nether* Jove, | Imperial rule of all the sea-girt  
iles. MILTON, *Comus*, 20.

So slow | The growth of what is excellent, so hard | To attain perfection in  
*this nether world*. COWPER, *Task*, I, 85.

Chance people on the bridges peeping over the parapets into a *nether* sky  
of fog. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. I, 1.

The greath reservoirs of *melted* matter . . . in the *nether* regions. LYELL,  
*Princ Geol.*, I, 397<sup>1)</sup>.

**nethermore.** The heavens expelled them; | Nor them the *nethermore* abyss  
receives. LONGFELLOW, *Transl. of Dante*, *Inf.*, III, 41.<sup>1)</sup>

**nethermost.** A scoundrel from the topmost hair of his head to the *nethermost*  
atom of his heel. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XIV, 123b.

## 18. Off — after — aftermost.

- a) 1) *Off* appears in the oldest English as *af*, later as *æf* in the strong and *of* in the weak form. The termination *ter* in *after* is a modification of *ther* see above (3). *Aftermost* is now understood as a formation of *after* or the nautical *aft*, on analogy of *foremost*, *hindmost*, etc. The discussion of the form-history of *aft*, *after* and *aftermost*, and of their mutual relations, lies beyond the scope of this book.

- 2) *Off* is used as an adverb, a preposition, and an adjective.

*After* is used as an adverb, a preposition, a conjunction, and an adjective.

*Aftermost* occurs only as an adjective.

- b) The enumeration of the innumerable meanings and applications of *off* and *after* belongs to the department of lexicography. We shall, therefore, confine ourselves to some few illustrations. *Aftermost* is only met with as a nautical term.

**off.** i. to beat (keep, ward, etc.) *off*; far *off*; to shake (take, etc.) *off*; to break (leave, etc.) *off*; to clear (drink, pay, polish, etc.) *off*; well (ill, comfortably, etc.) *off*.

ii. *off* the table, my hands, etc.; to dine (breakfast, etc.) *off* beef (pork, etc.); *off* duty.

iii. the *off*-bow of a ship, the *off* horse (foot, leg, wheel) [= the *right*, as opposed to the *near*, *nigh* or *left* side].

**after.** i. Put your own first and let these come *after*. MURRAY.

Jack fell down and broke his crown | And Jill came tumbling *after*.

I never spoke to him *after*. MURRAY.

I was never so treated either before or *after*. Id.

Soon (a day, a year, etc.) *after*; the day (the year, etc.) *after*.

ii. to bawl (run, etc.) *after* a person or animal; to look (see) *after* a person, animal or thing; to ask (seek, etc.) *after* something; *after* three months (a year, etc.); *after* the custom (fashion, manner, etc.); to name *after* a man.

iii. *After* he had come.

iv. In *after* days (years, etc.); the *after* effects; the *after* cabin (guns, masts, yards, etc.).

To the friendship thus early begun Thackeray, in *long after* years, paid a gracious tribute. HALLAM LORD TEN., *Ten. and his Friends*, 89.

**aftermost.** We found a cluster of people at the *aftermost* part of the felucca. SCOTT, *Cruise of Midge*, 63.<sup>1)</sup>

Poop. The *aftermost* part of a ship; the stern; also the *aftermost* and highest deck, often forming the roof of the cabin built in the stern. MURRAY.

## 19. Out — outer, utter — out(er)most, ut(ter)most.

a) 1) For the formation of the superlatives see above (3).

The forms *utter* and *ut(ter)most* are older than *outer* and *out(er)most*. These latter came into use when the older forms ceased to show clear relationship to *out*. They are not common until the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

2) *Out* is used as an adverb, as a preposition (only when preceded by *from*), and as an adjective. The adverbial *out* has been converted into a noun, which occurs in several shades of meaning, mostly corresponding to those of the substantive *in*. Note *gentleman of three outs* (i. e. out of pocket, out of elbow, and out of credit).

*Outer* and *utter* are almost exclusively used as attributive adjectives; as a term of phonetics *outer* is also applied as an adverb. In the language of archery *outer* occurs totally converted into a noun. *Out(er)most* and *ut(ter)most* are also chiefly used as attributive adjectives; *outermost* as an adverb is instanced by one quotation in MURRAY. *Utmost* and *uttermost* are often partially converted into nouns. *Utterly* is a frequent derivative of *utter*.

b) For the different applications of *out* see the dictionary.

*Outer* and *utter* are now fully differentiated; the former being used in describing a relation of place, the latter having the meaning of *absolute*. *Utter* in the sense of *outer* occurs as an occasional archaism.

The differentiation between *out(er)most* and *ut(ter)most* has been less strictly carried out. *Outmost* and *outermost*, which are used indifferently, refer to position with regard to a central place. *Utmost* and *uttermost*, which also are practically interchangeable, are found in a spatial meaning, and in a more abstract sense. In the former they refer to position with regard to a place near the speaker and are practically equivalent to *farthest* or *furthest*, in the latter they

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

are synonymous with *greatest*, *last* or *extreme*. As 'quasi-nouns' *utmost* is the usual form, *uttermost* being, apparently, restricted to poetic language.

**outer.** i. \* Mr. Higgs looked exceedingly grave as he came into the *outer* rooms.

THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXIV, 250.

\*\* But the children of the kingdom shall be cast out into *outer* darkness.

Bible, Matthew, VIII, 12.

And cast ye the unprofitable servant into *outer* darkness: there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth. Ib., XXV, 30.

Its shrill, sharp, piercing voice resounded through the house, and seemed to twinkle in the *outer* darkness like a Star. DICK., Crick., I, 6.

\*\*\* The child was more beautiful than ever, but in other *outer* respects the Rose of Whindale had undergone much transformation. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 268.

\*\*\*\* The *outer* world was forgotten. Ib., II, 198.

Now that war has broken out, the two hostile states will be cut off from communication with the *outer* world. Times.

ii. We distinguish between inner and *outer* back. SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 98.

iii. Bewildered with talk going on all around them of *outers* and centres and bull's eyes. Macm. Mag.<sup>1)</sup>

**outmost:** This murderous Chief, this ruthless man, | This head of a rebellious clan, | Hath led thee safe, through watch and ward, | Far past Clan-Alpine's *outmost* guard. SCOTT, Lady, V, xii.

Beyond the *outmost* wall she stood, | Attired like huntress of the wood. Id., Brid. of Trierm., II, ix.

In the temple all might enter the *outmost* court. FARRAR, Early Chr., I, 422, Note.<sup>1)</sup>

**outermost.** They have likewise discovered two lesser stars or satellites which revolve about Mars, whereof the innermost is distant from the centre of the primary planet exactly three of his diameters, and the *outermost* five. SWIFT, Gul., III, Ch. III, (170a).

Longstone (is) one of the *outermost* of the Farne Islands. Mrs. McCUNN, The Story of Grace Darling.

The *outermost* of these lines, which were three in number, ran from the sea by Torres Vedras to Alhandra on the Tagus, a distance of 29 miles. ROWE & WEBB, Select. from Tennys., Note to line 104 of Death of the Duke of Wellington.

Primum mobile. The supposed *outermost* sphere, added in the Middle Ages to the Ptolemaic system of astronomy, and supposed to revolve round the earth from east to west in twenty-four hours, carrying with it the (eight or nine) contained spheres. MURRAY.

**utter.** i. He confided to me his opinion that Clavering was an *utter* scoundrel.

THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXII, 351.

He rolled that box back and forth with the most *utter* unconcern. HABBERTON, Helen's Babies, 67.

ii. Arthur's slow wain his course doth roll | In *utter* darkness, round the pole. SCOTT, Lay, I, xvii. (Compare the two quotations from MATTHEW, higher up.)

**utmost.** i. So that he was renowned into the *utmost* part of the earth. Bible, Maccabees, A, III, 9.

Then we will go together to the *utmost* reaches of the earth. HALL CAINE, Deemster, Ch. XXXI, 232.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



ii. Fifty-two or fifty-three (sc. years) is the *utmost*. SHER., School for Scand., II, 2.

"How, reverend father!" said the knight, with an air of the *utmost* surprise. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXVII, 292.

Since the author of Tom Jones was buried, no writer of fiction among us has been permitted to depict to his *utmost* power a man. TROL., Thack., Ch. IV, 108.

**uttermost.** i. Is he not yonder in those *uttermost* | Parts of the morning? TEN., Enoch Arden, 223.

People come from the *uttermost* ends of the earth, though, of course, there are many Londoners here. BEATR. HARRADAN, Ships, I, Ch. I, 4.

They were the men and women who dared to leave moderate comfort behind and go to the *uttermost* ends of the earth to seek gold. Daily Mail.

France found herself overwhelmed with demonstrations of sincere sympathy, not merely from the *uttermost* parts of the Earth, but more especially from those powers which she chooses to regard as her hereditary foes. Rev. of Rev.

ii. Verily I say unto thee, Thou shalt by no means come out thence, till thou hast paid the *uttermost* farthing. Bible Matthew, V, 26.

If he married her before his father's death, he was to forfeit the whole to the *uttermost* farthing. MAR. CRAWF., Adam Johnstone's Son, Ch. XIII. They have proved themselves to be fighting material upon which a general can rely to the *uttermost* limits of human endurance. Times.

## 20. (ab)ove — over — overmost.

a) 1) The positive *ove* does not seem to have been ever used by itself in any English of which we have any record.

*Over* is not now felt to be a comparative. For the formation of *overmost* see above (3).

2) *Over* is used as an adverb, as a preposition, and as an attributive adjective. The adverb *over* has been converted into a noun. *Overmost* is found only as an attributive adjective.

b) For the different meanings and applications of *over* see the dictionary. *Overmost* is seldom met with. MURRAY'S latest instance is dated 1649.

## 21. Up — upper — upp(er)most.

a) 1) For the formation of *uppermost* see above (3).

2) *Up* is used as an adverb and as a preposition. The adverbial *up* appears converted into a noun in the colloquial collocation *ups and downs* (= alternate states of prosperity and adversity).

*Upper* occurs only as an attributive adjective; it is converted into a noun in *uppers*, i. e. the leather used for the upper part of boots or shoes, in contradistinction to that used for the heels or soles.

*Uppermost* and *upmost* are mostly predicative adjectives. They are capable of being turned into quasi-nouns.

b) For the different meanings and applications of *up* see the dictionary. *Upper* is used with regard to place and social rank or status.

*Upmost* seems to be rare. *Uppermost* is used to denote a relation of place or superiority.

**upper.** i. Tom cast a hasty glance at the *upper* part of the house as he threw his reins to the hostler. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIV, 119.

The lower windows were shuttered, in the *upper* ones the blinds were pulled closely down. Mrs. WARD, David Grieve, I, 106.

- ii. The *upper* house of a legislature; the *upper* ten thousand. WEBST.

You and your like have your fixed ideas of the *upper* class and the lower. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., III, 205.

Note the idiom in: If he come by *the upper hand*, he will have Julian's head. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXXIII, 358.

She had *the upper hand* of the whole house. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XI, 100.

**upmost.** Ye skum | That still rise *upmost* when the nation boils. DRYDEN, Don Seb., IV, 3.<sup>1)</sup>

**uppermost.** It is our profession to turn the world upside down; and we live ever the blithest life when the downer side is *uppermost*. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXIV, 266. (Note the curious nonce-formation *downer*.)

'Well I don't mind', said poor Winkle, turning his gun-stock *uppermost*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 164.

Down came the sovereign with the Dragon *uppermost*. Ib., Ch. II, 12.

The desire of earning fame in the sports of the field, the air, and the water was *uppermost* in the breast of his friend Winkle. Ib., Ch. I, 3.

## 22. Ere — erst.

In Standard English *ere* is now used only as a preposition and as a conjunction, in the latter function now only archaically.

*Erst* is in standard English met with only as an adverb with its superlative force highly dimmed, its meanings being that of *at one time* (formerly, of old), and *not long ago* (a little while ago). In the former sense it is now archaic or poetic, in the latter almost quite obsolete. For *or* as a secondary form of *ere*, and for such combinations as *or ere*, and *or ever* see Ch. XVII, 21.

**erst.** i. Thy company, which *erst* was irksome to me, | I will endure. As you like it, III, 5, 94.

Forth skipp'd the cat, not now replete | As *erst* with airy self-conceit. COWPER, The Retired Cat, 100.

Beneath yon eastern ridge . . . Stand yet, but, Stranger! hidden from thy view, | The ivied Ruins of forlorn Grace Dieu; | *Erst* a religious House, which day and night | With hymns resounded. WORDSWORTH, Inscription for a seat in the groves of Coleorton, 5.

In the "Ours", or "sincere lover", I saw Dr. John. Did I pity him as *erst*? Ch. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XIV, 174.

ii. This . . . horrid spectacle, | Which *erst* my eyes beheld, and yet behold. MILTON, Samson Agon., 1543.

From the half-opened door there streamed | The light that *erst* far off had gleamed. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., The Man born to be King, 42a.

## 23. Mid — midst, midst, midmost.

*Mid* is now only used as an adjective, which mostly forms a kind of compound with its head-word or with which it is commonly hyphenated: *midday*, *midland*, *midnight*, *midriff*, etc.; *mid-air*, *mid-current*, *mid-ocean*, *mid-September*, *mid-wicket*, etc. Also in combinations with adjectives, such as *mid-arctic*, *mid-oceanic*, *mid-monthly*, *mid-Victorian*, etc., it is rather an adjective than an adverb.

*Middest*, an uncommon word, is also used only as an adjective.

*Midst* is chiefly found as a noun, as an adverb it is rare, as a preposition it is understood as an aphetic form of *amidst*. For a

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

comparison between *in the midst of* and *in the middle of* see a subsequent chapter.

*Midmost* is an adjective, which may be converted into a noun, and into an adverb. The adverb in its turn may be used as a preposition.

**middest.** The moon was at her *middest* height. LYTTON, *Pilgr. Rhine*, Ch. II.<sup>1)</sup>

**midst.** i. In the *midst* of his enormous labours, he has found time [etc.]. MURRAY.

From the *midst* of those smiling heavens he had seen a sword hanging. G. ELIOT, *Romola*, II, Ch. XXI, 182.

ii. On Earth join all ye creatures to extol | Him first, him last, him *midst*, and without end. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, V, 165.

iii. *Midst* others of less note, came one frail Form, | A phantom among men. SHELLEY, *Adonais*, XXXI.

**midmost.** i. High on the *midmost* bark the king appear'd. POPE, *Iliad*, VIII, 270.

The *midmost* and the brightest (sc. of the stars) lent a ray sympathetic and attent. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXXI, 289.

ii. We are made to feel the young girl's enjoyment . . . even in the *midmost* of her grief. EDINB. REV.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. Then *midmost* in the battle was I led in spirit. COLERIDGE, *Pic.*, V, III.

iv. And pardon me, | Who strive to build a shadowy isle of bliss | *Midmost* the beating of the steely sea. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, Apologue, VI. It stands *midmost* a marsh-country. Longman's Mag.<sup>1)</sup>

## 24. Middle — middlemost.

*Middle* is used as an adjective, only attributively, and as a noun. It forms frequent compounds, such as *Middle Ages*, *middle class*, *middleman*.

*Middlemost*, now somewhat rare, is also used only as an attributive adjective.

**middlemost.** Folding gates, the *middlemost* of which is of iron. J. BIGLAND, *Beauties Eng. and Wales*, Ch. XVI, 517.<sup>1)</sup>

## 25. Under — undermost.

a) 1) For the formation of *undermost* see above (3).

2) *Under* is used as a preposition, as an adverb and as an attributive adjective. In the latter function it mostly forms a kind of compound with its head-word: *under-officer*, *under-sheriff*, etc.

*Undermost* is only found as a predicative adjective.

b) For the varied meanings of *under* in its different functions see the dictionary. *Undermost* is uncommon.

**undermost.** The well-filled lips had something of the artificially compressed look which is often the sign of a struggle to keep the dragon *undermost*. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. III, 209.

My best ideas get *undermost* — out of use, you know. Id., *Mid.*, I, Ch. IX, 56.

By all the Valkyrs, they are down and Smid *undermost*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. III, 16a.

## 26. Eastern, etc. — easternmost, etc.

These words are only used as attributive adjectives. *Eastern*, *northern*,

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

etc. may be converted into nouns, varying with *easterner*, *northerner*, etc. The noun *southren* is often spelled *southron*.

Instead of *northernmost* we also find *highest northern*.

**eastern**, etc. i. *Eastern* question: a general term for the political problems relating to *Eastern* Europa. MURRAY.

ii. \* These degenerate *Easterns*, who rush at and devour French novels of the lowest type. Graph.<sup>1)</sup>

Sir Walter Scott is our common countryman. He made us *northerns* and us *southerns* conscious of one flesh and blood. Daily News.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* One hears such not seldom among us *Easterners*. LOWELL, Biglow Papers.<sup>1)</sup>

**earsternmost**, etc. i. The railway crosses this road close by the *earsternmost* end of the cottage. SMILES, Stephenson, 51.<sup>1)</sup>

The *southernmost* of the mountains. RID. HAG., King Sol. Mines, 29.

The *northernmost* of these islands they called Kotelnoi, or Kettle Island, from the fact of a kettle having been found there. Illustr. Mag.

ii. Undoubtedly to Lieutenant Lockwood belonged the honour of having penetrated to the *highest northern* point on the globe which has ever been reached by a human being. Id.

## 27. Rath(e) — rather — rathest, ratherest.

a) 1) *Ratherest* has been formed from the comparative.

2) *Rathe* (*a* and *th* as in *lathe*) and *rath* (*a* and *th* as in *lath*) are met with as adjectives, *rathe* also as an adverb. *Rathe* as an adjective is the least uncommon, *rath* being, apparently, exceedingly rare.

*Rather* now occurs almost exclusively as an adverb; as an adjective it seems to have been uncommon at all times.

Of the superlatives, which are instanced in MURRAY, both as adjectives and adverbs, only the adjective *rathest* is not marked as obsolete or dialectal.

b) The adjective *rathe* is used with regard to rapidity or eagerness of action, and with regard to time. For the different meanings of *rather* see the dictionary.

**rath**. The *rath* sower ne're borrows o' th' late. RAY, Prov., XXII.<sup>1)</sup>

Laying his head in a *rath* grave. SCOTT, Antiquary, Ch. XXXIX.<sup>1)</sup>

Beginning thy *cath* orisons here. HOGG, Allan of Dale.<sup>1)</sup>

**rathe**. i. Art there, lad? — ay youth's aye *rathe* — but look to thy sell. SCOTT, Rob Roy, Ch. VII.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. Bring the *rathe* primrose that forsaken dies. MILTON, Lycidas, 142.

Where... the *rathe* primrose decks the mead. SCOTT, Rokeby, IV, II.

Thy converse drew us with delight, | The men of *rathe* and riper years.

TEN., In Memoriam, CX. (Some editions have *rather*.)

iii. Why ryse ye so *rathe*. CHAUC., Cant. Tales, Mil. Tale, 582.

Thus is my Harvest hasten'd all too *rathe*. SPENSER, The Shepherd's Calendar, December, 98.

Till *rathe* she rose, half-cheated in the thought | She needs must bid farewell to sweet Lavaine. TEN., Lanc. and El., 338.

**rathest**. i. Blackberries in their *rathest* immaturity, JANE BARLOW, Irish Idylls.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



- ii. The enemy not knowing which to pursue *rathest*, he might the better escape.  
HUME, Hist. Douglas.<sup>1)</sup>

**ratherest.** His untrained, or rather unlettered, or *ratherest* unconfirmed fashion.  
Love's Labour's Lost, IV, 2, 19.

28. Terminational and periphrastic comparison were for a long time used indiscriminately, but by degrees the former has come to be applied chiefly to the shorter and familiar, the latter to the longer and more unfamiliar words. Terminational comparison is still the only one in use of all words that are compared irregularly.

In Present English the choice between the two forms of comparison is chiefly a matter of euphony, rhythm, convenience and diction, partly one of meaning. FRANZ, E. S., XII; id., Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 215; KLAPPERICH, E. S., XVII; ELLINGER, E. S., XX; id., Verm. Beit., 24; MÄTZ., Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, I, 299; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 682; LOUISE POUND, The Comp. of Adj. in Eng. in the XV. and the XVI. Cent.; LANNERT, An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Accid., III, A; UHRSTRÖM, Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Rich., A, 2. See also MURRAY, s. v. *more*, C, 1, *b* and *c*.

a) 1) It is euphony which causes inflectional comparison to be avoided:

- a) of words ending in a harsh consonant-group, i. e. one that offers some difficulty in articulation. This applies not only to disyllabics, such as *modest*, *robust*, etc., but with scarcely less force to monosyllabics, such as *just*, *lax*.

But there is nothing harsh in such forms as *kinder*, *-est*, *limper*, *-est*, *profounder*, *-est*, *pleasant*, *-est*, owing to the vowel-like nature of the nasals. It may also be observed that there are different degrees of harshness. Thus there is less difficulty in uttering two successive stops as in *abrupt*, *strict* etc. than in pronouncing a sequence of a sibilant and a stop as in *crisp*, *robust*, *just*, etc., a sequence in the opposite direction as in *lax* being a shade easier than the latter.

- β) of words ending in one, and especially more than one, unstressed syllable. The tendency of the language being to throw the stress on the initial syllable, it follows that the majority of polysyllabic words prefer periphrastical comparison.

αα) As to such as have more syllables than two, this practice is observed with great regularity, at least in standard English. Inflectional comparison is least uncommon with such trisyllabics as are (felt to be) opposites of disyllabics with which inflectional comparison is usual, e. g. *unhappy*, *ignoble*, *impolite*, *unpleasant*.

ββ) As to such as are made up of only two syllables, usage is much more variable. Inflectional comparison is, however,

1) MURRAY.

usual enough with those in which before the endings the vowel in the unstressed syllable is reduced to a mere glide or, at least, loses much of its sonority and length, so that the number of syllables is not really or sensibly extended beyond two. This is in greater or less degree the case with adjectives ending in *al*, *el*, *il*, *er*, *le* (preceded by a consonant), *on*, *ow*, *y*; in a less degree with such as end in *ed*, *et*, *id*, *ful*, and *some*: *dismal*, *cruel*, *civil*, *bitter*, *able*, *common*, *narrow*, *pretty*; *wicked*, *quiet*, *vivid*, *painful*, *handsome*. Compare JESPERSEN, *Elementarbuch der Phon.*, 13, 43.

It must be observed that terminational comparison is not equally frequent with all adjectives ending in the above terminations. Thus it is common enough with: *bitter*, *clever*, and *tender*, but rather infrequent with *proper*, and, apparently, impossible with *eager* and *real*.

Thus also adjectival derivatives in *ly*, such as *cleanly*, *goodly*, *lowly*, *kindly*; *princely*, etc. prefer periphrastic comparison. But *early*, which is not, of course, a similar formation, mostly has terminational comparison.

Adjectives in *ing*, such as *charming*, *taking*, etc., now admit only of periphrastic comparison, at least in ordinary written and spoken English. This applies with even greater strictness to participial adjectives in (*e*)*d*, such as *pleased*, *tired*, *staid*, etc., even when monosyllabic.

Terminational comparison is also practically impossible with adjectives in *le* preceded by a vowel, such as *agile*, *docile*.

There is nothing unharmonious in terminational comparison of adjectives of two syllables that have the stress on the last syllable, unless they end in a harsh consonant-group. It is, accordingly, quite usual with such words as *complete*, *divine*, *polite*, *remote*, *severe*, *sincere*, etc.

These observations apply in particular to superlatives and attributive comparatives, terminational comparison being less common with predicative adjectives. It is even non-existent in the case of disyllabic adjectives with the prefix *a* (Ch. XXVIII, 8, *b*), even when they end in only one consonant-sound. Thus only *more* (*most*) *apart* (*awake*, etc.).

- 2) It is also euphony which mostly causes the same form of comparison to be preferred with all of a number of adjectives that modify one and the same noun, or with different adjectives placed in parallel positions in a compound or complex sentence. In the case of periphrastic comparison the adverb *more* or *most* is sometimes placed only before the first of a series of adjectives. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 216; § 222.
- i. No system . . . was ever *wiser* than that of the ancient epicureans . . . ; nor *foolish* *her* than that of their opposites. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, XV, Ch. I, 98a.  
My uncle . . . was one of the *merriest*, *pleasanteest*, *cleverest* fellows. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XLIX, 446.  
Who has not remarked the readiness with which the *closest* of friends and *honestest* of men suspect and accuse each other of cheating when they fall out on money matters. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVIII, 186.  
He looked up with the *solemnest*, *tenderest* smile. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.* II, 285.  
She can do nothing but sing and strut about the stage in the *boldest*, *horriddest* way. MISS BRADDON, *The Venetians*, II, 215.<sup>1)</sup>

1) ELLINGER, E. S., XX.

And thus Fate plucks from me my *noblest* friend and my *justest* counsellor. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, V, Ch. III, 207.

The latter youth . . . was the *quietest*, the *clumsiest*, and, as it seemed, the *dullest* of all Dr. Swishtail's young gentlemen. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 40.

- ii. The musicians . . . now directed the melody into a *more soft*, a *more gay*, yet it may be a *more intellectual* strain. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pompeii*, I, Ch. III, 17a.

Within the limited territory comprised by a portion of the British Isles has grown up a language, which has become the speech of the *most free*, the *most energetic* and the *most powerful* portion of the human race. SHAW, *Hist. of Eng. Lit.*, Ch. I, 1.

You really are without exaggeration the *most beautiful*, the *most good*, the *most charming*, the *most divine*, the *most perfect* human creature that ever trod this earth. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*.

No man was *more foolish* when he had not a pen in his hand, or *more wise* when he had. GRAPH.

Gabriel was paler now. His eyes were *more meditative*, and his expression was *more sad*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. VI, 43.

- iii. I dare appeal to any clergyman in this kingdom, whether the greatest dunce in the parish be not always the *most proud*, *wicked*, *fraudulent*, and *intractable* of his flock. SWIFT, *Letter to a Young Clergyman*, (471b).

A shrew from Billingsgate would be a *more easy and eligible* companion. Id., *Letter to a Young Lady*, (472a).

Thus also periphrastic comparison may be occasioned by a combination with *less* or *least* following in the sequel.

London is the *most wealthy* and one of the *least commodious* capitals in the world. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. V, 69.

"Likko" has made me *more fit* and *less fat* already. PUNCH, No. 3705, 22b.

It is hardly necessary to add that the laws of euphony often practically forbid this uniformity in the mode of comparison. When several adjectives with different forms of comparison modify the same noun, euphony requires those that have periphrastic comparison to be placed last.

He is the *falsest*, *craftiest*, *meanest*, *cruellest*, *most sordid*, *most shameless* of men. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXI, (250a).

It was the *completest* and *most desirable* bedroom ever seen. Id., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 15b.

Dare any soul on earth breathe a word against the *sweetest*, the *purest*, the *tenderest*, the *most angelical* of women. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I.

- 3) Euphony being a matter of taste, it naturally differs with different persons, insomuch that we often meet with instances in which variety of comparison seems to have been deliberately aimed at. Not infrequently the variety seems to have been a matter of metre or rhythm (*b*), or indeed, of mere chance.

Christianity always made the *most easy* and *quickest* progress in civilized countries. SWIFT, *Letter to a Young Clergyman*, (171a). (Observe the exceptional precedence of the periphrastic superlative.)

Since the new system of feeding has come in, the coffins are something *narrower* and *more shallow* than they used to be. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. IV, 47.

In London one may spend the day in walking through streets, squares, and entire neighbourhoods, without encountering any, or many, visible signs that the *wealthiest* and *most luxurious* capital of the world is also the scene of the *most numerous* and, in the aggregate, *busiest* human industries ever collected together. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VI, 79.



Never had she been *kinder*, *more gentle*. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 157. His clear-cut, slightly reddish face was smooth-shaven, and the mouth was at once its *most interesting* and its *handsomest* feature. BAR. VON HUTTEN, *Pam.*, I, Ch. I, 77. (Note the exceptional precedence of the periphrastic superlative.)

The brilliant face had grown . . . *more tender*, and the smile *gentler*, than of old. *Id.*, Ch. II, 9.

No cap was ever *simpler*, nothing could be *more easy* to make, or to copy. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Mary Pechell*, Ch. III.

- b) 1) Instances of the choice of one or the other mode of comparison being determined by metre or rhythm are, of course, chiefly afforded by poetry. But attentive reading will show that these factors are also potent enough in prose. In several of the preceding quotations their influence can be traced. Thus also in:

It was only for a very brief space that the mother's sobs were apparently *softer*, and her grief *more mild*, SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVII, 299.

I find there is a *slipperier* step or two. BYRON.

There are in London several old inns, once the headquarters of celebrated coaches in the days when coaches performed their journeys in a *graver* and *more solemn* manner than they do in these days. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. X, 78.

Here his step grew *quicker and more light*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. X, 61.

In the reign of Aurungzebe the inhabitants of those regions . . . began to descend on the possessions of their *wealthier* and *less warlike* neighbours. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (620a).

For thro' that dawning gleam'd a *kindlier* hope. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 828.

Our bond, as not the bond of man and wife, | Should have in it an *absoluter* trust | To make up that defect. *Id.*, *Lanc. and El.*, 1185.

I would have all officers of state chosen by lot out of *the wisest* and *most fit*. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XIX, 144a.

Next morning when Meriem came round to the tent, Le Marchand met her with a *sadder* and *more anxious* face than usual. GRANT ALLEN, *The Tents of Shem*, Ch. XIII.

- 2) It is especially comparatives placed after their head-words which for the sake of metre or rhythm prefer periphrastic comparison.

A foot *more light*, a step *more true*, | Ne'er from the heath-flower dash'd the dew. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xviii. (Compare: A *prettier* foot, a *gayer* heart, a *more dimpled* face, or a *smarter* form, never bounded so lightly over the earth they graced, as did those of Maria Lobbs. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVII, 151).

(This) gives me now a pang *more keen* than I can express. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1. Scarcely a year but some new discovery found itself surpassed and in its turn discarded, or lessened in significance by something still *more new*. G. H. MAIR, *Eng. Lit.: Modern*, Ch. I, § 1, 13.

But the rhythm would be destroyed if terminational comparison were substituted for periphrastic in:

There, do you ever desire to see any body *madder* than that? SHER., *Critic*, III, 1 (481).

- c) 1) It is chiefly a matter of convenience that periphrastic comparison is preferred of relative adjectives, i. e. such as make complete sense only when followed by some adjunct. (Ch. XXVIII, 4.) Thus terminational comparison is impossible of *averse*, *exempt* and many other adjectives: Such chaps are *more fit* to be sent to school, and well disciplined with a cat-o'-nine tails, than to poke their heads into a play-house. MISS BURNEY, *Evelina*, XXIII.



There is sometimes a regret expressed that we have not kept our language *more free* from the admixture of Latin. TRENCH, Past and Present.<sup>1)</sup> The house seemed to my sister and to me warmer, *more full* of interest and peace in her sitting-room than elsewhere. Lady RITCHIE (Book m., No. 246, 285a). Thus, apparently, regularly with *like*.

I wonder at sister Deane — she used to be *more like* me. G. ELIOT, Mill, I, Ch. VII, 45.

But this factor often takes no effect on monosyllabic adjectives.

I have been *fonder* of you than you know. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, Pam, II, Ch. IV, 103.

When shall we think it worth while boasting of an Empire with the happiest, brightest, most cheerful people, *freest* from poverty, from distress, from misery. LLOYD GEORGE (Times, No. 1853, 522c).

The following are metrical deviations of which it would be difficult to find parallels in ordinary prose.

And earthly power doth then show *likest* God's | When mercy seasons justice.  
Merch., IV, 1, 196.

Nor feel (I) much *liker* to a God | Than when beside my sheep I trod.  
W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., The Man born to be King, 40b.

- 2) Convenience also causes periphrastical comparison to be used of groups of adjectives forming a kind of unit, such as *free and easy*, *neat and attractive*, etc.

Tongues were vastly *more free and easy*. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 158.

She was not, as some people pretended, *more clever and sensible* than the elder sister. G. ELIOT, Middlemarch.

Mrs. Glegg's front to-day was *more fuzzy and lax* than usual. Id., Mill, I, Ch. VII, 45.

Scotland is *more rugged and hilly* than England. CHAMBERS.<sup>2)</sup>

Its cottage-homes and hamlets are considered *more neat and attractive* than those of any other nation.<sup>2)</sup>

(This) brought a gleam and a giggle to the faces of even the *most sad and tired*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6111, 7b.

Note. When each of such a group of adjectives would require periphrastic comparison, the adverbs *more* or *most* are not repeated. "Oh no..." said Mrs. Jamieson in her *most delicate and ladylike* tone. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. II, 135.

- d) 1) Periphrastic comparison being more artificial than terminational, we find it especially in literary style, and applied to the longer words. Thus *prone*, *jocose*, *morose*, *verbose*, *supine*, and many other adjectives which are used only in literary diction, are never found in terminational comparison. The colloquial, and especially the vulgar language prefers terminational comparison even of adjectives in *ing* and the longer words. Unusual terminational comparison is sometimes applied to produce a ludicrous effect. Instances of terminational comparatives of adjectives of three or more syllables are, however, very rare.

i. He had not reached his fourteenth year before he was pronounced by all the neighbourhood to be a wicked dog, the *wickedest* dog in the street. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 104).

ii. "Curiouser and curiouser!" cried Alice (she was so much surprised, that for the moment she quite forgot how to speak good English). LEWIS CARROLL, Alice's Adventures in Wonderland, Ch. II, 19.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., IV.

<sup>2)</sup> FOELS.—Koch, Wis. Gram., § 100, 3.

- 2) It is, perhaps, to preclude any notion of familiarity that *the Most High* is preferred to *the Highest* as a denomination of the Supreme Being. (Ch. XXIX, 17, a.)

- i. Thou hast begun to reject the Counsel of *the Most High*. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, (154).
- ii. Let us remember that Nature, though heathenish, reaches at her best to the footstool of *the Highest*. *The Pilgrim's Scrip.* (Motto to 'Health and Holiness' by FRANCIS THOMPSON).

- e) 1) Difference in meaning between terminational and periphrastic comparison is chiefly exhibited in comparatives used predicatively: the former directing the attention to the quality expressed by the adjective as compared or contrasted with that denoted by another, the latter to the excess of the quality as found in one of two (groups of) persons or things. Thus *This division of the profits would have been fairer* may suggest some such subaudition as *although not, perhaps, so profitable to the directors*; while *This division of the profits would have been more fair* may call forth such a notion as *than the one effected by the directors*. Compare also *This made him happier, if not richer* with *This made him more happy than he could express in words*.

- i. It is both *juster* and more economical that we should apply the money at the beginning. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5607, 1c.
- ii. "Shall we spend it (sc. the hour) in the library or in the drawing-room?" ... — "The library; it is *more cosy*." EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambrosine*, II, Ch. XIV, 263.

It follows that, when a contrast is to be expressed between a positive and a comparative, the latter, also owing to the awkwardness of stressing the suffix, is mostly formed by *more*. Thus:

The tyrant thinks he is free, because he commands slaves: the meanest peasant in a free state is *more free* than he is. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 53. If evil is strong, good is *more strong*. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant* Ch. XXXIV, 340.

- 2) A further possible difference is, that periphrastic comparison, as being more explicit, is more emphatic than terminational.

In this connection it may also be observed that *more* sometimes has a meaning which differs but little from that of *rather* (Ch. XL, 103, Obs. I). It stands to reason that a combination of this *more* and a positive does not bear being replaced by a terminational comparative. Such chaps are *more fit* to be sent to school ... than to poke their heads into a play-house. MISS BURNEY, *Evelina*, Ch. XXIII, 112.

- 3) With some adjectives terminational comparison is quite common, or not uncommon, in one (or some) application(s), while it is unusual, or even impossible, in (an) other(s). Thus *ready* in the sense of *prompt*, *quick* is ordinarily compared *readier* — *readiest*, but hardly brooks terminational comparison in the senses of *prepared*, *willing*, *inclined*. The quickest, or, as they are called in the trade, the *readiest* hands. J. DEVLIN, *Shoemaker*, I, 43.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *ready*, 5.

- f) As to the adverbs that admit of comparison it is not necessary to say much.
- 1) Those of one syllable have practically only terminational comparison.
  - 2) As regards those of two syllables it is only a few with which terminational comparison is more or less common. This form is the usual one with *early* and is not unfrequent with *often*. The latter, however, is mostly replaced by *frequently* when there is occasion to use the degrees of comparison.

The numerous adverbs in *ly* have periphrastic comparison in ordinary language, poets sometimes using the terminational form for the sake of metre or rhythm. It must, however, be observed that in colloquial language the termination *ly* is often thrown off, so that the adverb is reduced to its adjectival base, and is compared like it. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1524 TEN BRUG., Taalst., V. Prose-instances of terminational comparison of adverbs in *ly* are rare.

- 3) With adverbs of more syllables than two periphrastic comparison is practically the only form.
- g) The factors which determine the choice of the form of comparison are not of equal potency, that of meaning being apparently the weakest and subservient to the others.

The following quotations, for a considerable part exhibiting exceptional rather than normal practice, may be acceptable as affording illustration not always readily accessible. For convenience of reference the alphabetical arrangement has been chosen.

#### Adjectives of one syllable.

**brief.** The ceremony of the installation could hardly be *more brief*. Times, No. 1812, 766a.

**chaste.** Adornment refined with perfect harmony and the *chastest* good keeping. Dick., Pickw., Ch. V, 131.

**dear.** I constantly think of him as of my *most dear* friend. Mrs. OLIPHANT, Ad. Graeme, I, 57. 1)

**dull.** His history is *more dull*, but by no means so dangerous, as that of Mr. Hume. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. V. 93.

**fine.** His head is as the *most fine* gold. Bible, Sol. Song, V, 11.

**fit.** I challenged the Times to say who is the man they have in their eye *more fit* than I am. Morn. Chron.

**gay.** Mr. Crawford and Miss Bertram were much *more gay*. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. X, 109.

**glad.** i. The young girl was *gladder* than she could quite explain, even to herself. BAR. VON HUTTEN, Pam, III, Ch. I, 112.

ii. In truth Mrs. Quilp did seem a great deal *more glad* to behold her lord than might have been expected. Dick., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. L, 182b.

**hard.** Most men find it *more hard* to break through a green sod than a grated door. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXX, 330.

**kind.** It would have been *more kind* and *more just*, sir. Dick., Cop., Ch. VII, 48b.

**just.** a) comparative, 1) attributive: There cannot be a *juster* and more concise definition of fine writing. HUME, Es., XX, 196.

1) ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr. 25.

No *juster* or more open-minded censor — none kinder, more capable or more considerate — ever sat in the seat of Aristarchus.<sup>1)</sup>

See also the first quotation under *e*), page 479.

- 2) predicative. \* About the middle of the eighteenth century it (sc. the Academy in France) altered the spelling of five thousand words. Perhaps it would be *juster* to say that it indicated, in the case of a number of these, what one should be adopted of several forms which were then in use. LOUNSBURY, Eng. Spel. and Spel. Reform, Ch. I, 51.

\*\* Nature was *more just* than that. G. ELIOT, Mid., II, Ch. XVII, 123.

Nowhere have these complaints been *more just* than in the China trade. Times.

- b) superlative. I am the more earnest in this matter, because it is a general complaint, and the *justest* in the world. SWIFT., Let. to a Clerg., (466a).

See also the first quotation on page 476.

**keen.** The enthusiasm stirred by the celebration of the fiftieth year of Italian unification and the prospect of a French protectorate in Morocco have doubtless helped... to make the Italian desire for territorial acquisition *more keen* than before. Times, No. 1813, 783b.

**lax.** Martha, *more lax* on the subject of primogeniture, was sorry to think that Jane was so 'having'. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XXXV, 243.

The rules which govern comic verse are not *more lax* than those which sway serious composition. TOM HOOD, Eng. Vers., 54.

**mad.** We were mad with blood; and none *more mad* than I. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. XXV, 187b.

**odd.** Amongst the many peculiar methods of fishing in the South Seas there is one that has been noticed as being, perhaps, the *most odd*: that is fishing by means of a kite. II. Lond. News, No. 3777, 393.

**proud.** A Christian, said Luther, "is the *most proud* lord of all and subject to no one". Eng. Rev., No. 54, 309.

**rare.** She is of the *most rare* beauty. LYTTON, Last Days of Pomp., I, Ch. III, 18b.

**rife.** Nowhere on earth are race ambition, race hatred, ancestral feuds, and blood-thirsty vendettas *more rife* (sc. than in the Balkan States). Eng. Rev., No. 50, 1913, Jan. 184. (Alternative practice, apparently, non-existent.)

**right.** She's been *more right* than you're aware of. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, III, Ch. IX, 308. (Alternative practice, apparently, non-existent.)

**stern.** One (sc. man) ... whose pale brow and stern features seemed by that light yet paler and yet *more stern* — appeared to be concluding some address to his companions. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. XII, 71.

**strict.** By the *strictest* computation it is very near a million to one that you have none (sc. wit). SWIFT, Let. to a Clergyman, (468b).

I found it needful, according to the *strictest* good sense and honour, to visit Lorna. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXV, 210.

**true.** i. It is a theory of mine that each... forms a *more true* estimate of his work than his keenest critic. HOLME LEE, The Beautiful Miss Barrington, II, 175.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. "People are all so different," replied the artist. "I find that *more and more true* every day. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VI, 105.

**wan.** Laura saw with alarm that the dear friend became every year more languid and weary, and that her pale cheek grew *more wan*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXI, 221. (Alternative practice, apparently, non-existent.)

1) KRUSINGA, Gram. of Pres. Day Eng., I, § 584.

2) ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 25.



**warm.** The Crawfords were *more warm* on the subject than Mr. Yates. JANE AUSTEN, Ch. XIX, 181.

**wild.** Pen used to come day after day, rushing in and galloping away, and growing *more wild* about the girl with every visit. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 70.

### Adjectives of two syllables.

**able.** i. Indeed, in such a matter as this, Mrs. Grantly was a *more able* woman than Lady Lufton. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XVI, 153.

ii. Many of the best and *ablest* philosophers, who have been perfect lights of science in matters of theory, have been wholly unable to reduce them to practice. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 166.

**agile.** I, whom Vincentio Saviola termed his nimblest and *most agile* disciple. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVII, 290.

**ancient.** One of the *ancientest* seats belonging to the Lord of Ormond. CARLYLE, *Cromwell*, II, 191.

**angry.** i. \* Angry letters to his *angrier* mistress. BURTON, *Scott. Abr.*, I, IV, 191 <sup>1)</sup>

\*\* I felt a little *angrier* with myself. SPOFFORD, *Harp. Mag.*, 1883, 130 l. 1)

ii. \* He would have been sorry even in his *angriest* moods for any harm to happen to his grandfather. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, I, Ch. XII, 106.

\*\* He never failed . . . to confront the states or the people in their *most angry* hours. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 901a.

**biting.** I have always found him the *bitingest* and lightest screw in London. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, III, Ch. XIII, 227.

**bitter.** i. \* At other times his resentment at his fate showed itself in language of even *more bitter* contempt against his race. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 466, 450a

\*\* No wind that blew was *bitterer* than he. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 7.

To ask a loan of neighbour, and be denied — it is *bitterer* than death. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 15.

ii. The next three months were the *bitterest* months of Elsmere's life. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, II, 203.

**careful.** You'll have to be a great deal *carefuller* than most people. E. ROBINS, *The Florentine Frame*, 87.

**charming.** The *charmingest* of morning robes. MRS. HUNGERFORD, *Phyllis*, II, 28.<sup>2)</sup>

**cleanly.** It was imagined that by living apart, they would be much *cleanlier*. ANSON, *Voy.*, II, II, 135. 1).

**clever.** She was very accomplished, too, and *more clever* than was always quite agreeable to her father. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 45.

**common.** Their eyes and souls were tortured by the sight of sufferings which they were unable to relieve for want of the *commonest* appliances of the hospital. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 152.

The horses distrusted the *commonest* objects. PUNCH.

**cruel.** i. He went on to be *more cruel* than ever. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, I, 25.

ii. His coming just at this time is the *cruellest* piece of ill fortune. SHER., *School for Scand.*, V, 2, (424).

If I moved in the least, she gave me the *cruellest* poke with her foot. DICK., *Cop.* Ch. V, 36a.

The *cruellest* looks would not have wounded him more than the glance of hopeless kindness. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXV, 393.

She reproached herself for the *cruellest* of women. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XI, 91b.

1) MURRAY.

2) STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 684.

**deadly.** The beating rain crushed me with a *deadlier* paralysis than I had experienced while the air had remained serene. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XV, 195.

**dismal.** The festival was the *dismallest* of all the entertainments which Amelia had in her honeymoon. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 299.

**divine.** The Host, in the eyes of the Catholics, is the *divinest* object in the world. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 310a.

**eager.** No evolutionist was ever *more eager* to find the missing link than was I on attempting to return home from the theatre in the dense fog last Wednesday. (?) Mr. Graham sees in Russia a Power *more eager* for conquest than any other country. *Athen.*, No. 4461, 453b.

**easy.** \* I have decided that we must not meet again. To make this *easier* I shall go away to-morrow. BAR. v. HUTTEN, *Pam*, V, Ch. IV, 261.

\*\* Mamma is *more easy* about him. Miss YOUNGE, *Heir of Redc.*, I, Ch. VIII, 133. It is about time something was done to make arbitration *more easy*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 311a.

**foolish.** i. I see people are much *foolisher* two and two than when there are more. E. ROBINS, *The Florentine Frame*, 261.

See also the first quotation on page 475.

ii. Upwards of five-hundred-thousand two-legged animals without feathers lie round us, in horizontal position, their heads all in nightcaps, and full of the *foolishest* dreams. CARL., *Sart. Res.*, Ch. III, 15.

**handsome.** i. She was perfectly beautiful when she was a girl; much *handsomer* than some fine ladies I've heard of. BAR. v. HUTTEN, *Pam*, IV, Ch. IX, 221.

ii. The coachman was instructed to purchase for him the *handsomest* pony which could be had for money. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXI, 229.

**happy.** i. \* I think nobody could be *happier* than we are. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, III, *Concl.*, 158.

Her letter to me about you has made me *happier* than I have been for years. BAR. v. HUTTEN, *Pam*, III, Ch. VIII, 156.

\*\* I was never displeased with those harmless delusions that tend to make us *more happy*. GOLDSMITH, *Vic.*, Ch. III, (253).

An old bachelor is far *more happy* than either a bad husband or a bad wife. *Rev. E. J. HARDY*, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. II, 27.

ii. The *most happy* being in the household was a plump, blooming lass. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.*, (*Stof.*, *Handl.*, I, 140).

**haughty.** And the knight | Had vizor up, and show'd a youthful face, | Imperious, and of *haughtiest* lineaments. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 190.

**healthy.** I assure you riding is the *most healthy* of exercises. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. II, 12.

**honest.** i. One wordliness is a little bit *honester* than another. *Ib.*, II, Ch. XIII, 92.

ii. Mr. Rawdon's marriage was one of the *honestest* actions which we shall have to record in any portion of that gentleman's biography. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVI, 165.

See also the third quotation on page 475.

**idle.** i. Never was there a *more idle* fellow. Miss YOUNGE, *Heir of Redc.*, I, Ch. VII, 111.

ii. I don't think he's *more idle* than many boys of his age. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, I, 130.

**knowing.** Mr. Deane, he considered, was the "*knowingest*" man of his acquaintance. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. VIII, 64.

**lovely.** Just look at that sea, and tell me if in your wildest pipe-dream you ever saw anything *lovelier*. BAR. v. HUTTEN, *Pam*, V, Ch. I, 238.

**lucky.** Jos and Mrs. O'Dowd, who were panting to be asked, strove in vain to procure tickets; but others of our friends were *more lucky*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXIX, 310.

**mellow.** The cuckoo flitted from place to place and uttered its deepest and *mellowest* notes. SWEET, Old Chap.

**modest.** He is the *modestest* man alive. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, I. It is certainly the *modestest* part of the business. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. V, 51.

**pleasant.** You have made my life much *pleasanter* than it could have been without you. BAR. v. HUTTEN, Pam, VI, Ch. VI, 315.

**profound.** The English have been exposed to greater political changes, and *profounder*, though *quieter*, political revolutions than any other nation. MEIKLEJOHN, The Eng. Lang., Ch. II, § 1.

**proper.** i. \* They sometimes use the Adz..., when the Ax, or some other *properer* Tool, lies not at hand. MOXON, Mech. Exerc., 120.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* What *more proper* course could any one have adopted? Times, No. 1809, 706d.

ii. Sir ANTH. My process was always very simple — in their younger days, 't was "Jack, do this;" — if he demurred, I knocked him down — and if he grumbled at that, I always sent him out of the room. — Mrs. MAL. Ay, and the *properest* way, o' my conscience! SHER., Riv., I, 2, (222).

**quiet.** She has passed a *quieter* night. Standard.

**ready.** i. \* Gave him credit for... much *readier* elocution than he really possessed. Mac., Hist., IV, Ch. I, 497.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* Every day thus unemployed was tending to... make him *more ready* to regret that some other play had not been chosen. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. XVIII, 170.

William found a *more ready* source of revenue in the settlement of Jewish traders. GREEN, Short Hist., II, § 5, 83.

ii. He is the *readiest* man living to make him sick with good Liquor. E. WARD, Wooden World Diss., 98.<sup>1)</sup>

The quickest, or, as they are called in the trade, the *readiest* hands. J. DEVLIN, Shoemaker, I, 43.<sup>1)</sup>

The Sub-prior... hastened to prescribe the *readiest* remedies which occurred to him. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXVI, 280.

**real.** Just as Lancashire and Warwickshire are *more real* to their inhabitants than any idea of world politics, so Maryland and Virginia are more essential than the Republic. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 482, 35b.

**remote.** i. Forbear, forebear. An ancestor, forefather, progenitor (usually more *remote* than a grandfather). MURRAY.

ii. I haven't the *remotest* idea how old you are. BAR. v. HUTTEN, Pam, V, Ch. V, 264.

**robust.** There is a sort of puny sickly reputation, that is always ailing, yet will outlive the *robuster* characters of a hundred prudes. SHER., School for Scand., I, 1, (370).

**severe.** i. I am by no means sure that your son, in his recklessness and ignorance — I will use no *severer* word — has not tried to raise money by holding out his future prospects. G. ELIOT, Mid., II, Ch. XIII, 93.

ii. This year the epidemic has been far *more severe* than in 1910. Times, No. 1811, 743d.

**shabby.** Marian was even stouter and redder in the face than formerly, and decidedly *shabbier* in attire. HARDY, Tess, V, Ch. XLII, 364.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- simple.** i. Let's discuss some *simpler* question. BAR. V. HUTTEN, Pam, II, Ch. V, 106.
- ii. Let us call things by their proper names. It makes matters *simpler*. OSCAR WILDE, An Ideal Husb., I.
- slender.** Being of a *more slender* figure than Mr. Jarndyce, he looked younger. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VI, 43.
- sober.** His poor brother was of a much *more sober* sort. THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 158.
- solemn.** See the fourth quotation on page 475.
- solid.** The *solidest* of men who yield the *solidest* of gossip. EMERSON.
- stupid.** You will find me *stupider* than ever. F. W. FARRAR, St. Winifred's, Ch. XVIII, 72b.
- sublime.** Mr. Tupman's process, like many of our *most sublime* discoveries, was extremely simple. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 166.
- subtle.** He had ended by seeing a very unsatisfactory reflection of himself in the coarse unflattering mirror which that manufacturer's mind presented to the *subtler* lights and shadows of his fellow-men. G. ELIOT, Mid., II, Ch. XIII, 94.
- The fastidious love for the quieter, *subtler* sorts of beauty was touched by the Elsmere surroundings. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 287.
- In a way More has less invention than some of his *subtler* followers. G. H. MAIR, Eng. Lit.: Modern, Ch. I, § 2, 21.
- sunny.** His countenance beamed with the *most sunny* smiles. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIX, 168.
- tender.** As to Mr. Lincoln's nature he was the kindest man, *most tender* husband and loving father. Athen.
- tidy.** He must learn to keep the surgery *more tidy*. EDNA LYALL, Don., I, 132.
- vivid.** Rose looked at him, at the black eyes which were much *vivider* than usual. MRS. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 293.
- wholesome.** If thou be indeed, so near the day of thy deserved doom, other thoughts were far *wholesomer* than the vain-glorious ravings of a vain philosophy. SCOTT, Fair Maid, Ch. XXXII, 339.
- wicked.** They will soon have something *wickeder* to digest. FITZGERALD (HALLAM LORD TEN., Ten. and his Friends, 113).
- yellow.** Morecombe came in pinker and *yellower* than ever. BAR. V. HUTTEN, Pam, III, Ch. VII, 150.

#### Adjectives of more than two syllables.

- absolute.** See the seventh quotation under *b*), page 477.
- comfortable.** Grief in easy circumstances and supported by the *comfortablest* springs and cushions was typified in the equipage and the little gentleman, its proprietor. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXIV, 364.
- curious.** See the second quotation under *d*), page 478.
- excentrical.** Of all the excentrically planned things from Bradshaw to the maze at Hampton Court, that room was the *excentricallest*. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, XII, 208.
- generous.** George thought he was one of the *generousest* creatures alive. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XX, 206.
- ignoble.** But besides the lesser and *ignobler* robbers, there had risen in Italy a far more formidable description of freebooters. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. II, 20.
- personable.** If I could but look *personabler*. RHODA BROUGHTON, Nancy, I, 264.<sup>1)</sup>
- slippery.** See the second quotation under *b*), page 477.
- sociable.** Sending them (sc. the children) to a public school and then to a university, does.. produce *sociabler* men. BERN. SHAW, Getting Married, Pref. (121).

<sup>1)</sup> STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 1047.



**unhappy.** She looks the *unhappiest* woman in England. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, III, 106.  
**unhealthy.** Few of us realize how recently the changes have begun which have made London the *healthiest* instead of the *unhealthiest* of cities. GRAPH.

#### Adverbs of one syllable.

**hard.** The general effect of a hot summer, even on children in great towns, on which it naturally presses *hardest*, is distinctly beneficial. *Times*, No. 1811, 743c.  
**high.** I do think your grand-daughter might look *higher*. BAR. V. HUTTEN, *Pam.*, III, Ch. III, 124.

#### Adverbs of two syllables.

**Adverbs in ly:** i. Bound am I to right the wrong'd | But *straitlier* bound am I to bide with thee. TEN., *Gar. and Lyn.*, 785.

For sure no *gladlier* does the stranded wreck | See thro' the gray skirts of a lifting squall [etc.]. *Id.*, *En. Ard.*, 823.

"Boys!" shriek'd the old king, but *vainlier* than a hen | To her false daughters in the pool. *Id.*, *Princess*, V, 318.

He (sc. John Addington Symonds) brooded darkly as a youth, *darklier* as a man in the prime of early maturity. *Acad.*, 1895, 2 Feb., 95b.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. All her (Scotland's) sons and daughters think *more highly* of their country that Burns was of it. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 50.

**often.** i. \* Then Mrs. Bangham . . . began . . . to be found, *oftener* than usual, comatose on pavements. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 38b.

He turned the conversation that way *oftener* than a well-regulated understanding recurs to any one topic. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 23.

Poor young man, he seems to come *oftener* than he need. BAR. V. HUTTEN, *Pam.*, Ch. II, 15.

\*\* Do come to us *more often*. OSC. WILDE, *An Ideal Husb.*, I.

The heron is perhaps *more often* seen alone than in company. HOR. HUTCHINSON, *The Avine Hermit* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 4c).

These sentences often are, but still *more often* are not, quotations from standard authors. FOWLER, *Concise Oxford Dict.*, Pref.

She is *more often* unconscious victim than joyous participator in sin. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 498, 642a.

ii. \* What *oftenest* offends me at the houses of married persons where I visit, is an error of quite a different description. CH. LAMB, *Elia*, *Bach. Compl.*

But the house where he visited *oftenest* and lay most on the rug, was Lydgate's. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 343.

\*\* Through the trees . . . came Pauline Yeoland and "the man", as Christopher Cazalet had *most often* heard him called. BAR. V. HUTTEN, *Pam.*, Ch. II, 8.

#### Adverbs of more than two syllables.

Touched with pathos that appeals *directliest* to the everyday sentiments of the average man. *Rev. of Rev.*, 1896, 15 Dec., 552a.<sup>1)</sup>

**Adverbs that have thrown off the termination *ly* and have thereby become capable of terminational comparison.**

*Easier* said than done. *Prov.*

He couldn't speak *finer* if he wanted to borrow. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, II, Ch. XIV, 96.

If you looked *closer* you saw that the shoulders were narrow. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 42.

As the sun sank low in the heavens, the breath came *slower* and *slower*. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 126.

<sup>1)</sup> STOF., E. S., XXIX, 90.

29. a) Compound adjectives the first of whose members is an adjective or an adverb, mostly have periphrastic comparison in the manner of polysyllabic adjectives and adverbs: *high-minded* — *more high-minded* — *most high-minded*.

But terminational comparison, particularly the superlative, of the first element is not unusual, if this element is an adjective or adverb that regularly or more or less commonly has terminational comparison. This is especially the case when the component parts of the compound are used in their primary, literal sense, and, accordingly, present to the mind distinctly separate notions and functions: thus *kinder-hearted* and *kindest-hearted* as well as *more* and *most kind-hearted*; *broadier-chested* and *broadest-chested* as well as *more* and *most broad-chested*; but only *more* and *most far-fetched*, *more* and *most near-sighted*.

Sometimes only the terminational form is current: thus only *better-behaved* and *best-behaved*, *better-regulated* and *best-regulated*, *larger-sized* and *largest-sized*.

Sometimes the superlative has only one form, while the comparative has two: thus *most well-to-do*, but *better-to-do* by the side of *more well-to-do*.

Sometimes only the comparative is in actual use, the corresponding superlative, whether terminational or periphrastical, being wanting: thus only *better-off*, the form *best-off* or *most well-off* being, apparently, never used.

The compounds are of various descriptions: i. e. they may be made up of:

- 1) adjective + substantive + formative suffix *ed*. These formations, which can practically be freely made, often have terminational comparison of the first element, especially in the case of superlatives. Very frequent are those with *better* and *best*, most of which can hardly be replaced by their periphrastical equivalents.

i. \* I would wish you to be an utter contemner of all distinctions which a finer petticoat can give you; because it will neither make you richer, handsomer, younger, *better-natured*, more virtuous or wise than if it hung upon a peg. SWIFT, Letter to a Young Lady, (474a).

Isabella ... was *higher-hearted* than any one had seen her since her girlhood. E. ROBINS, The Florentine Frame, 79.

\*\* "Oh yes you will, my dear soul," said Tom Smart, letting fall a shower of the *largest-sized* tears, in pity for the widow's misfortunes. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XIV, 126.

Here were swarthy fellows — giants in their way — doing such little acts of tenderness for those about them as might have belonged to the *gentlest-hearted* dwarfs. Id., Chuz., Ch. XV, 128a.

You are the son of my old friend Leofric of Chester; and the *hottest-hearted*, *shrewdest-headed*, *hardest-handed* Berseker in the North Seas. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. IX, 51a.

Duly after long companionship they had elected Pambo for their abbot — the wisest, *eldest-hearted* and *-headed* of them. Id., Hyp., Ch. I, 3b.

He was one of the *biggest-chested* and *longest-armed* men I ever saw. RID. HAGGARD, *King Sol. Mines*, 14.

He was one of the *noblest-minded* men I ever saw. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouv.*, 83. Wilderspin is one of the *noblest-minded* men now breathing. THEOD. WATTS-DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XV, Ch. VI, 429.

The *kindest-hearted* and gentlest of men. *Punch*, 1889, 101a.

"Gifford," George Eliot wrote, "though the *best-tempered* of men, is terribly severe with his pen." *Athen.*, 1892, 451b.

It is evident to the *dullest-witted* observers, that the *aéroplane* has conquered. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 314a.

Man is the *shortest-lived* of the beasts. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3831, 428a. Messrs. Brinsmead's latest achievement is the *lowest-priced* Semi-Cottage. *Id.*, No. 3832, *Advert.*

- ii. \* Both expressed their opinion that a more independent, a more enlightened, a *more public-spirited*, a *more noble-minded*, a more disinterested set of men than those who promised to vote for him, never existed on earth. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIII.

We live together, and a better or *more kind-hearted* fellow does not exist. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 26.

We were *more mean-minded* than other people. E. ROBINS, *The Florentine Frame*, 96.

\*\* He was always the sweetest-tempered, *most generous-hearted* boy in the world. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLIII, 243.

He is without an exception the highest-minded, the *most independent* spirited man I know. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. IV, 24b.

Swift's life has been told by the kindest and *most good-natured* of men, Scott. THACK., *Eng. Hum.*, *Swift*, 4.

The formations in the following quotation are used only for fun:

Even the ugliest, *reddest-faced*, and *turnedest-up-nosed* girl looked pretty. BESANT, *Ready Money Mortiboy*.<sup>1)</sup>

- 2) adverb — past participle of transitive verb. Also these compounds, which like the above can be freely formed, frequently have terminational comparison of the first element, particularly as regards superlatives. Formations with *better*, and especially *best*, are again those most frequently met with.

- i. \* To cumber our *better-advised* devotions. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. XXIII.<sup>2)</sup>

To learn his change of opinion... from her *better-informed* child. MRS. GASK., *North and South*, Ch. V.<sup>2)</sup>

The personality of the elder sister, Miss Miranda Hill, whose life flowed parallel with that of her *better-known* junior, shines through the comparatively small and secondary references to her. *Athen.*, No. 4463, 515b.

\*\* *Best-regulated* families. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. II.

She made the *oldest-established* families in the country... to pay the bride and bridegroom honour. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXIII, 773.

I had time... to take out my work, and to commence it amidst the profoundest and *best-trained* hush, ere M. Emanuel entered. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXI, 300.

Our forefathers were by far the *best-governed* people in Europe. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 24.

The path now lay straight forward to the accomplishment of his *longest-cherished* wishes. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, I, Ch. XV, 117.

<sup>1)</sup> KRUISINGA, *Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng.*, § 592.

<sup>2)</sup> MURRAY.

Book-lovers . . . should write for free booklet describing the least expensive, *best-made*, handsomest, and only perfect Sectional Bookcase. Eng. Rev., 1912, May, Advert.

Simplicissimus . . . is one of the *widest-read* journals in the Empire. Id., No. 51, 485.

The same summer saw the bond drawn tighter by the marriage of Lushington to the Poet's youngest and *best-loved* sister. HALLAM LORD TEN., Ten. & his Friends, 91.

It (sc. Rubáiyát of Omar Khayyám) is now certainly one of the *best-known* pieces of the kind in the language. Ib., 103.

These three organs (sc. the liver, the kidneys and the bowels) are the *hardest-worked* of any in the body. Advertisement.

The *latest-created* Knight of the Garter. Il. Lond. News, No. 3873, 52a.

- ii. Her coming there was the most unfortunate, *the most ill-judged* thing in the world. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLIII, 246.

I should expect 'All Awry' to be one of the *most widely-read* books of the year. T. P.'s Weekly, 6 Oct., 1911, 421a.

- 3) adverb + past participle of intransitive verb. These compounds, which are limited to some few combinations, seem to have terminational comparison wherever the first member admits of it.

\* There was not a *better-behaved* young woman in the whole parish. BENTHAM, Wks., X, 276.1)

\*\* He is the *pleasantest-spoken* gentleman you ever heard. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, IV, 100.

Lord Robert declares he has the *best-behaved* army in the world. Times.

What? You an Englishman — native of the *most-bathed* country in the world — and you don't know the joys of a mustard-bath? Il. Lond. News, No. 3849, 117.

- 4) adverb (or adjective) + present participle. These compounds which are fairly frequent, seem for the most part to prefer periphrastical comparison.

- i. \* A *harder-working* woman or a better mother never lived. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. LIX, 215b.

She had to admit that she was much *better-looking* than Lady Fan. MAR. CRAWF., *Adam Johnstone's Son*, Ch. IV.

Oh, younger than M. le Curé, and *better-looking*, ever so much *better-looking*.

JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. II, 16. (Compare: He was good-looking — none *better* in Guelgoat. Ib., 18.)

Children are . . . so much *harder-working* than their parents. Westm. Gaz., No. 6123, 5b.

\*\* The quietest and *easiest-going* car I have ever been in. Il. Lond. News, No. 3804, 416a.

These tyres are the *easiest-running*, *longest-lasting*, *best-looking* tyres it is possible to procure. Id., No. 3832, Advert.

- ii. \* I have seen many a face that was *more good-looking* — never one that looked half so good. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XI, 114.

\*\* His *most far-reaching* stretches of imagination. McCARTHY, *A Hist. of Our Own Times*, V, 309.

Other compounds with an adjective or adverb for one of their component parts, that admit of comparison, occur only in some few isolated instances, for some part only as more or less humorous nonc-formations.



- i. \* The reforms in process of execution operate chiefly to the advantage ~~of the better-to-do~~ peasants. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIV, 127a.

Every group should have their own helper, confidant and visitor from among the *better-to-do* neighbours. Ib., CCXXVIII, 517b.

\*\* They were the sons of his *most well-to-do* parishioners. SWEET, Old Chapel.

- ii. That would enable her to leave Johnny *better-off*. KATH. TYNAN, Johnny's Luck.
- iii. In a few moments a large circle of "*most mousy-quiet*" small people, ranging from four to fourteen, listened for full twenty minutes to the tale of "Snow-White and the Seven Dwarfs". Westm. Gaz., No. 6141, 4b.
- iv. Children almost always are *more wide-awake* than their parents. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXIV, 206.
- v. It's the old girl's birthday; and that is the greatest holiday and *reddest-letter* day in Mr. Bagnet's calendar. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XLIX, 409.
- vi. It was not so with our fortunate (or, at least, *earth-happier*) ancestors. FRANCIS THOMPSON, Health and Holiness, 22.

b) Compounds that contain no adjective or adverb normally have periphrastical comparison.

The commonest and *most out-of-fashion* colour she can think of. Punch, No. 3666, 252b.

"T. P.'s Magazine" maintains its unique position among English Magazines as the *most up-to-date* illustrated review. Advertisement.

Sometimes the ending is simply added at the end, as if the compound were an ordinary adjective. Such formations are, however, used merely for fun.

He's the best-natur'dst, *pains-taking'st* man in the parish. FARQUHAR, Recruiting Officer, V, 5.

It is the latest and *up-to-datest* woman paper. Lit. World, 1895, 13 Dec.

He's the *stuck-uppest* thing I ever saw. G. ATHERTON, Am. Wives and Eng. Husb., 20.

We believe it is the United States which claim to be "the *go-to-meetingest*" country in the world. Newspaper.<sup>1)</sup>

The most earnest student of the *fourpenny-halfpennyest* of magazines barely believes in him or takes him seriously. Periodical.<sup>1)</sup>

30. In the older writers we find numerous instances of terminational and periphrastic comparison occurring together. This use has to a large extent been preserved in vulgar English. FRANZ, E. S., XII; id., Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 217; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 778, 949; LANNERT, An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Acc., III, B.

- i. I am *more better* | Than Prospero. Temp., I, 2, 19.

This was the *most unkindest* cut of all. Jul. Cæs., III, 2, 187.

I have not art to reckon my groans: but that I love thee best, O *most best*, believe it. Hamlet, II, 2, 121.

Why do we wrap the gentleman in our *more rawer* breath. Id., V, 2, 126.

He's the *best-natur'dst*, *pains-taking'st* man in the parish. G. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, V, 5 (338).

- ii. Vell, p'raps it is a *more tenderer* word. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXXIII, 297.
- Of all the artful and designing orphans that ever I see, Oliver, you are one of the *most bare-facedst*. Id., Ol. Twist, Ch. III, 42.

1) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., 147.

(1) made myself quite conspicuous enough as it is, and if I tried to talk from the platform, I sh'd only make myself *more conspicuous* than before. W. PETT RIDGE (Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 9a).

On a par with this is the vulgar accumulation of suffixes, as in: He fixed his eyes on Mary, and replied: "I knows a *nicer*". DICK., PICKW.<sup>1)</sup> You knows much *betterer* than he. Id., CHUZ.<sup>1)</sup> "He is, ma'am," says I, "very miserable indeed — nobody could be *miserablerer*." THACK., MISC., IV, 138.<sup>2)</sup>

For the use of *worser* see 6; for that of *lesser*, which is not in any way felt as a vulgarism, see 8. Decidedly vulgar, on the other hand, is *leastest*.

Mother there, if she do have the *leastest* bit o' headache, she's to lay still and have a cup o' tea took her. M. E. FRANCIS, HONESTY, Ch. II.

Such forms as *chiefest* and *extremest* are common enough also in ordinary literary English.

- i. And you all know security | Is mortals' *chiefest* enemy. Macb., III, 5, 32.  
Must man, the *chiefest* work of art divine, | Be doomed in endless discord to repine? FARQUHAR, The Beaux' Stratagem, III, 3, (410).  
To execute any caprice or order of her patient's was her *chiefest* joy and reward. THACK., PEND., II, Ch. XVI, 164.  
For the first few weeks she spoke only to the goat, that was her *chiefest* friend on earth. RUDY. KIPLING, The Light that failed, Ch. I, 5.
- ii. He died in the *extremest* misery. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 113.  
Another performance was painfully interrupted by Farmer Boldwood's appearance in the *extremest* corner of the barn. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XXII, 170.

Also *junior* is, evidently, sometimes felt as a positive. Thus: the *juniorest* assistant. Pall Mall Mag., 1904, Nov., 389b. (Compare: He was *too junior* to be placed in supreme command. Sat. Rev., 1899, 23 Dec.)

In the following quotation the use of the comparative after *less* seems to be due to mere carelessness:

This precious stone set in the silver sea, | Which serves it in the office of a wall | Or as a moat defensive to a house, | Against the envy of *less happier* lands. Rich. II, II, 1, 49.

31. In the older writers one of two successive adjectives to be placed in the superlative is sometimes kept in the positive, when modifying one and the same noun. ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 398.
  - i. The *generous* and gravest citizens. Meas. for Meas., IV, 6, 13
  - ii. The dearest friend to me, the kindest man, | The best-conditioned and *unwearied* spirit. Merch. of Ven., III, 2, 290.
32. When two qualities are compared, periphrastic comparison is the rule, usage being, perhaps, equally divided with monosyllabics. When terminational comparison is used, the second member of the comparison is always a full clause in English. Ch. XVII, 128, Obs. III.
  - i. He is *more witty* than wise. MAS., Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 109.
  - ii. The wall was in some places *thicker* than it was high. MISS BRADDON, Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. I, 1.

<sup>1)</sup> FRANZ, E. S., XII.

<sup>2)</sup> STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 778.

33. When two persons or things are compared, the comparative is preferred to the superlative by careful speakers and writers. But the superlative is mostly used in ordinary spoken English. The latter is, perhaps, sometimes preferred as the stronger form. Thus *She is the worst of the two* approximates to *She is much worse than the other*, while *She is the worse of the two* is almost equivalent to *She is rather worse than the other*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2081; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 707; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 215, Anm. 2.

i. This line is the *longer* of the two. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 112.

If anything, Miss William was the *better* of the two. SARAH GRAND, The Heavenly Twins, I, 25.

Angelica was the dark one, and she was also the *elder, taller, stronger* and *wickeder* of the two. Ib., I, 9.

If you have reason to choose between two styles of versification, select the *more difficult*. TOM HOOD, Eng. Versific., Pref., 13.

The case for gold ought to be far and away the *stronger* of the two. PUNCH.

ii. We'll see which is the *strongest*, you or I. GOLDSM., She Stoops to Conquer, I.

Here are two men, to whom Sir Peter has acted as a kind of guardian since their father's death; the *eldest* possessing the most amiable character, and universally well spoken of — the *youngest*, the most dissipated and extravagant young fellow in the kingdom. SHER., School for Scand., I, 1.

'He's come to himself', cried the *youngest* Miss Pecksniff. DICK., Chuz., Ch. I, 6b.

"He speaks again", exclaimed the *eldest*. Ib.

Angelica is much the *worst* of the two. SARAH GRAND, Heav. Twins, I, 54.

Here are two roads; I wonder which is the *shortest*. SWEET, Spok. Eng., 35.

Note I. But the comparatives *hinder, inner, lesser, nether, outer, upper* and *utter* can hardly be replaced by superlatives. *First* and *last* are, however, occasionally used for *former* and *latter* (11, 14).

We must distinguish between fortune-hunters and fortune-stealers. The *first* are those assiduous gentlemen who employ their whole lives in the chase without ever coming at the quarry. SPECT., CCCXI, (287).

Glory and danger go together. And I am as ready to share the *last* as the *first*. LYTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. II, 162.

"You know, sir, I can't resist a card or a bottle," says Mr. Sampson. "Let us have the *last* first and then the *first* shall come last. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXI, 318.

II. The comparative is also fixed in the idiom illustrated in the following quotations:

a) Silence would surely have been the *better part*. TIMES. (In allusion to: The *better part* of valour is discretion. HENRY IV, A, V, 4.)

But in other meanings also *best part*. (7, b).

During the *best part* of it (sc. the month) I religiously followed the doctor's mandate. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VI, 73.

He (sc. Disraeli) had a nervous breakdown in his twenties, which lasted the *best part* of three years. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5448, 9c.

β) Once I had the *better end* of the staff. FARQUAR, The Beaux' Stratagem, III, 3, (397).

III. The comparative is the usual form in the collocation *the greater part* (9), and, apparently, the only form in the synonymous phrase *the greater number*.

- i. \* At the period of his death he had reduced the number of obedient provinces to two; only Artois and Hainault acknowledging Philip, while the other fifteen, were in open revolt, the *greater part* having solemnly sworn their sovereign. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 900a.

Throughout the *greater part* of the dinner my opinion of the young man rose steadily but surely. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

\*\* How is the consternation of the party to be described? To the *greater number* it was a moment of absolute horror. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. XIX, 179.

- ii. The *greatest part* of it (sc. my little fortune) was left me by my uncle. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, II, (187).

During twenty-eight years a rivalry subsisted between Francis I and the Emperor Charles V, which involved not only their own dominions, but the *greatest part* of Europe, in wars. GIBBON (*BEST, Extr. for Transl.*, No. 40).

The *greatest part* (sc. of Scripture) would be unintelligible to them. GEORGE BORROW, *The Bible in Spain*, Ch. I, 8.

Compare with the above also the collocations illustrated by:

- i. The clergy are lost in the crowds of their parishioners. They are known to the *largest part* only as preachers. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. IX, 97.

The best and by far the *largest part* of his work is prose. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. II.

- ii. Mr. Gumbo proposed to ride by the window for the *chief part* of the journey. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XX, 202.

- iii. The *major part* of the conversation was confined to Mrs. Weller and the reverend Mr. Stiggins. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 244.

His very first step would of necessity be the transfer of the *major portion* of this immense responsibility to other shoulders. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCI, 496a.

IV. Conversely the superlative could not be replaced by the comparative in such a sentence as:

He came in *first* of the two. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 208.

34. A predicative superlative mostly stands without *the*. When *the* is used, the following superlative is mostly to be understood as an adjective partially converted into a noun. This latter construction would seem to be the rule when a restrictive adjunct or clause follows. *The* is always indispensable when the superlative is emphasized by *very*.

Before a periphrastic superlative *the* may sometimes be placed to prevent its being understood as absolute. (44.)

- i. Plain speaking is *best* when the mind is made up. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 18.

Only such specimens have been chosen as seemed *worthiest*. COURTH. BOWEN, *Stud. in Eng.*, Pref., 6.

It is evident, therefore, that from a grammatical point of view 'It is not only *simplest* and *easiest*, but also *most correct* to regard 'but' in 'he is tall but not strong' as a word-conconnector. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 405.

My mother was *merriest*, for over Victoria and myself there hung a veil of unreality. ANTH. HOPE, *The King's Mirror*, Ch. II, 34.



First impressions are *deepest, freshest* and *most permanent*. Rev. of Rev., 1892, 352*b*.

- ii. He is gone on the mountain, | He is lost to the forest, | Like a summer-dried fountain, | When our need was *the sorest*. SCOTT, *Coronach*, I.  
The churches were *the freest* from it (sc. the stare of the blazing sun). DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. I, 2*a*.

The notion of its being Sunday was *the strongest* in young ladies like Miss Phipps, who was going to accompany her younger sister to the confirmation. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, III, Ch. V, 218.

He kept the sheep he had stolen till his neighbour grew *the strongest* and stole them back again. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 39.

Saturn gave the deepest tone, as being *the farthest* from the earth; the Moon gave the shrillest, as being *nearest* to the earth. LEWES, *Hist. Phil.*, 53. (Note the varied practice.)

Now and again he (sc. Thackeray) paused and blessed amid the torrent of his anathemas . . . But his anathemas are *the loudest*. TROL., *Thacker.*, Ch. IX, 208.

The caps (sc. percussion caps), being such a small item, were *the most apt* to be forgotten. HOR. HUTCHINSON (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6011, 2*c*).

- iii. \* Plain speaking is *the best* you can do.

Small holders . . . have been *the loudest* of any in their complaints. *Graph.*, No. 2257, 336.

\*\* And she was *fairest* of all flesh on earth. TEN., *Coming of Arthur*, 3.

- iv. I doubt whether the actions of which we are *the very proudest* will not surprise us, when we trace them, as we shall one day, to their source. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXI, 330.

Note *i*. In such a sentence as *First impressions are the deepest* the second superlative is, perhaps, best considered as an adjective used absolutely, the noun *impressions*, which is understood, being the nominal part of the predicate. A similar interpretation may be put on the superlatives in:

And beware of despising or neglecting my instructions, whereon will depend, not only your making a good figure in the world, but your own real happiness, as well as that of the person who ought to be *the dearest* to you. SWIFT, *Letter to a Young Lady*, (472*a*).

II. *The* as used in some of the above sentences may be considered as the definite article. But this is impossible in such a collocation as *the actions of which we are the (very) proudest*.

35. The bare superlative is also the rule with adverbs, but *the* is not infrequently met with, especially before periphrastical superlatives, which without it might be apprehended as absolute. (44.)

- i. Frequently we are understood *least* by those that have known us *longest*. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 96.

Things hardest to define are mostly those which are *least* in need of definition. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 423*a*.

I came to this town where *least* of all I thought to pitch my tent for life. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 9.

They admire *most* what they *least* understand. *Graph.*, 1891, 552*a*.

The new Government desires to keep in touch with the Powers, and with Great Britain not *least*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4931, 2*a*.

- ii. Alarm and distress were the emotions she felt *the most* and which *most* were impressed upon her speaking countenance. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VI, 47. (Observe the varied practice.)

Of all my books I like this *the best*. DICK., Cop., Pref.

I see that good and faithful servant whom of all the people upon earth I love *the best*. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 66a.

He was the greatest patriot in their eyes who brawled *the loudest* and who cared *the least* for decency. *Id.*, Chuz., Ch. XVI, 141a.

All the stout people go off *the quickest*. *Id.*, Ol. Twist, Ch. IV, 47.

It was he who was *the most* moved, sudden as the shock was to her. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XVIII, 183.

It was difficult to say which of the young men seemed to regard her *the most tenderly*. *Id.*, Pend., II, Ch. XX, 222.

Of all these boys William writes *the worst*. MAS., Eng. Gram.<sup>84</sup>, § 274.

But the mother of the king hid away the weakest child, which was born *the last*. RID. HAG., Sol. Mines, 112.

This passage led back into that very part of the house from which you thought yourself *the farthest*. MISS BRAD., Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. I, 3.

Don't you think, Eustace, good people are always *the least* understood and *the most* persecuted. GRANT ALLEN, Tents of Shem., Ch. XVI.

Note. *The* before an adverbial superlative can hardly be considered as the definite article.

It is, however, an indubitable article in the adverbial phrase *the least* used as a variant of *in the least*, which looks like the original expression. *In the least* and *the least* are used indifferently before adjectives, but only the former is used as a verb-modifier. Note that *the least* always stands before its head-word, and that this is also the ordinary place of *in the least* when modifying an adjective.

- i. \* All that I wished for was that one of those saucy, grinning footmen should say or do something to me that was *the least* uncivil. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. III, 37.

I do not recall them (sc. these sick experiences) to make others unhappy, or because I am now *the least* unhappy in remembering them. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XXXV, 300.

\*\* Everything in the house that was *in the least* pretty or ornamental had been carried together in this apartment. DOR. GERARD, The Etern. Wom., Ch. XV.

I am not *in the least* tired. *Ib.*

It is not *in the least* likely that Lord Staines would have been angry with any one. NORRIS, My Friend Jim, Ch. I, 8.

Though he has been writing for 30 years, he has never become *in the least* old-fashioned. TIMES.

\*\*\* He is a comely youth and not proud *in the least*. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. III, 25.

- ii. If I moved *in the least*, she gave me the cruellest poke with her foot. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 36a.

That does not concern me *in the least*. ANSTEY, A Fallen Idol, Ch. VIII, 118.

Thus also *the* is an indubitable article in *for the* + superlative as used in: I think that all will agree with me that I acted *for the wisest*, in withdrawing to my shelter. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXII, 196.

36. a) In comparing the different intensities of a quality in either substances, or in states or actions, as they appear in different places, at different times or in different circumstances generally, the English has a predicative or an adverbial superlative, as the case may be, almost regularly without *the*.

Before a periphrastic superlative the use of *the* may sometimes be due to a desire of preventing its being understood as absolute. (44.)

- i. \* The raw afternoon is *rawest*, and the dense fog is *densest*, and the muddy streets are *muddiest* near the leaden-headed old obstruction. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. I, 6.

At such times the hurry-scurry of the storm was always *greatest*. WASH. IRVING, *The Storm Ship* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 88).

Madame d'Arblay was *most successful* in comedy, and indeed in comedy which bordered on farce. MAC., *Mad. d'Arblay*, (727b).

Once when the church was *coldest* and the draught *most piercing*, he in the very middle of the vicar's sermon winked deliberately at us three boys. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 70).

When the sorrow is *highest*, then is the remedy *nightest*. SKEAT, *Dict.*, s. v. *next*.

The waters of a river are often *shallowest* there where they cover the widest area. EARLE, *Phil.*, § 42.

\*\* Then his conduct was *the most execrable*. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, III, 71.

The rooks settle where the trees are *the finest*. LYTTON, *My Novel*, I, Ch. V, 24.

My affections are always *the warmest* when my friends are within attainable distance. *Eliot's Life*, I, 137.<sup>1)</sup>

I find him *the most excellent* on a Sunday. CH. BRONTË, *Vil.*, Ch. III, 29.

- ii. \* Religion is a plant that flourishes *best* where life is happiest. BESANT, *All Sorts and Cond. of Men*, Ch. IX, 82.

I like the river *best* when the tide is nearly at its full. *Id.*, *The Bell of St. Paul's*, II, Ch. XIII, 11.

The indomitable spirit of Civilis flamed *most brightly* when the clouds were darkest around. MOTLEY, *Rise, Hist. Introd.*, 8a.

\*\* With waves in wild motion we love it (the sea) *the most*.

The green banks where the dew falls *the thickest*. *Lit. World*.

Observe the idiom in:

I am happy where you are, but we were *happiest of all* at Walcote Forest. THACK., *Henry Esq.*, I, Ch. I, 8. (= het allergelukkigst.)

Note. The exact grammatical function also of this *the* is hard to determine. It may be understood as the definite article before the predicative superlative of an adjective; but this cannot possibly be its character when it stands before an adverbial superlative.

- b) Instead of the bare superlative of the adjective we also find a superlative preceded by *at* + possessive pronoun. This latter construction is usual only with terminational superlatives. It does not seem to differ materially from that mentioned under a), but has a wider sphere of application, being the only available one in other functions than that of the nominal part of the predicate. WENDT, *E. S.*, IV; *id.*, *Synt. des Adj.*, 41; STOF., *E. S.*, XXVIII.

1. The dock was now *at its busiest*. STEPHENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, 67.

People are never *at their best* in a crowd. SARAH GRAND, *Our manifold Nature*, 84.

1) TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, X.

When the subject of the ball was *at its highest*, there seemed to be an extra shine on its glossy surface. *Ib.*, 63.

In the luncheon hour the house-boats are *at their gayest* and the laughter *at its earliest*. *Graph.*, 1891, 70c.

Just when I am *at my most diabolical*. *ISR. ZANGWILL, A Dict. in Distress (WEERSMA, Col. of Stor. and Sketches, 79).*

- ii. Even *at his ungainliest* and *his most wilful* Mr. Thompson sins still in the grand manner. *Academy*.<sup>1)</sup>

In 'Doctor Dick' we have the author *at his most useful*. *Lit. World*.<sup>1)</sup>

It shows the writer *at his best and liveliest*. *Athen.*, No. 4455, 308c.

Burke *at his best* is English *at its best*.<sup>2)</sup>

It was Emerald Fanny *at her most effective*, who responded. *AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. IV, 147.*

*At his most sensational* you are never aware of invention. *Punch (Westm. Gaz., No. 6047, 1a).*

Note. In this construction the neuter singular possessive pronoun is sometimes replaced by *the*, which, as the following superlative is felt as an adjective converted into a noun, may be considered as the definite article. (Ch. XXIX, 21, 23.)

She is of the house of Douglas, a house that has intermarried with mine, even when its glory and power were *at the highest*. *SCOTT, Bride of Lam., Ch. XIX, 191.*

The first Roman wall was built between the two Friths of the Clyde and the Forth, just where the island of Britain is *at the narrowest*. *Id., Tales of a Grandfather, I, 4.*

It was now sunset — the throng *at the fullest*. *LYTTON, What will he do with it?, I, Ch. I, 1.*

Things, however, were not yet *at the worst*. *MAC., War. Hist., (630b).*

Instances of the preposition *at* falling out in this construction, as in the following quotation, seem to be very rare:

The mater had been *her crossest*, and Bicky *her silentest*. *BAR. VON HUTTEN, The Halo, I, Ch. I, 13.*

Such nouns as *height* and *full* sometimes do practically the same duty as the superlative.

- i. \* The sport was *at its height*, the sliding was at the quickest, the laughter was at the loudest, when a smart crack was heard. *DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 271.*

While the fire was *at its height*, a tank containing 16 tons of creosote became ignited and burst. *Times.*

\*\* In the most interesting moment of his passage to England, when the alarm of a French privateer was *at the height*, she burst through his recital with the proposal of soup. *JANE AUSTEN, Mansfield Park, Ch. XIX, 185.*

- ii. I like the river best when the tide is *at its full*. *WALTER BESANT, The Bell of St. Paul's, II, Ch. XIII, 11.*

Compare also: My fortunes were *at their lowest ebb*. *THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. VI, 94.*

Three weeks later, when Dorlcote Mill was *at its prettiest moment* in all the year [etc.]. *G. ELIOT, Mill, V, Ch. VI, 321.*

<sup>1)</sup> *STOF., E. S., IV.*      <sup>2)</sup> *WENDT, Synt. des Adj., 41.*



37. To express the highest effort in the matter of an action, the English, like the Dutch, uses a superlative preceded by a possessive pronoun. The superlative is sometimes preceded by the adverb *very* for greater emphasis.

- i. The two women shrieked *their loudest*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 409.  
The birds were singing *their loudest*. PUNCH.  
The noise reached *its loudest* when Mr. Bartley . . . declared it to be an outrageous scandal [etc.]. TIMES.  
The emissaries from Ulster . . . worked *their hardest* to alarm the electors about Home Rule. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6311, 1b.
- ii. Admiral Bowster stared *his very hardest*. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 70.)  
Other stars — even the smallest — scintillated and sparkled *their very best*. RITA, *America — Seen through English eyes*, Ch. II, 39.

Note I. Sometimes *at* appears before this superlative.

He led me, in a courtly manner, stepping *at his tallest*, to an open place beside the water. BLACKM., *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXI, 119.

From six that morning till past noon the huge wood fire in the kitchen roared and sparkled *at its highest*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LII, 422.

II. The precise grammatical character of this superlative is somewhat hard to define. The most plausible view, apparently, is to consider it an adjective partially converted into a noun. (Ch. XXIX, 21, 23.)

38. Many superlatives form adverbial adjuncts in connection with the preposition *at*. In the majority of these the definite article is usually suppressed. The suppression is sometimes attended by a modification of meaning, but may also be a matter of metre or rhythm. The grammatical nature of the superlatives is that of an adjective partially converted into a noun. (Ch. XXIX, 22, Obs. VI, β.)

*at (the) best*. MURRAY gives two meanings, the first of which he marks as obsolete: "*a*) at the best possible pitch, in the best possible way, manner or condition; *b*) (taken) in the best circumstances, in the most favourable aspect, making every allowance, at most." In the latter meaning MURRAY mentions only *at best*, i. e. he does not mention *at the best* as an alternative form. Instances, however, occur occasionally. SHAKESPEARE has in *the best* in the sense of *at best*. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 268.

- i. \* And wel we weren esed *atte* (= *at the*) *beste*. CHAUCER, *Cant. Tales*, *Prol.*, 29. (= fully at ease.)

Good Brabantio, take up this mangled matter *at the best*. Othello, I, 3, 171.

\*\* The Orsini are tyrants — and the Colonnas are, *at the best*, as bad. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. III, 22.

It is a mad policy *at the best*. TIMES.

*At the best* we cannot expect any but a gradual return to normal conditions in France. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5436, 1c.

- ii. His pace was *at best* an awkward one in the street. DICK., *Chimes*, II, 37.  
Life is *at best* very short. WEBST.  
I am not a musician, only a musical box *at best*. DOR. GERARD, *The Etern. Woman*, Ch. XVI.

iii. Murder most foul, as *in the best* it is; | But this most foul, strange and unnatural. *Hamlet*, I, 5, 27.

**at (the) earliest.** The article is more frequently used than suppressed.

i. They were not likely to receive an answer for eight or ten weeks *at the earliest*. *Dickens*, *Chuzzlewit*, Ch. XXXIII, 268b.

I cannot hear from Dick *at the earliest* before Tuesday evening. *Mrs. Alex.*, *A Life Interest*, II, Ch. XVIII, 291.

ii. I charge thee not to attempt to travel till to-morrow *at earliest*. *Scott*, *Ivanhoe* Ch. XL, 416.

The division won't be till half past ten *at earliest*. *Mrs. Ward*, *Marc*, III, 37.

The little pink bells do not show till June *at earliest*. *John Lloyd Warden* *Page*, *The Coasts of Devon and Lundy Island*, Ch. II, 12.

**at (the) farthest (or furthest).** The article is mostly suppressed, at least in Present English.

i. *Tranio*. Travel you far on, or are you at the farthest? *Pedant*. Sir, *at the farthest* for a week or two; | But then up farther, and as far as Rome. *Taming of the Shrew*, IV, 2, 75.

Let it be so hasted that supper be ready *at the farthest* by five of the clock. *Merch.*, II, 2, 122.

"I shan't be away more than a day or two, sir, *at the farthest*" said Sam. *Dickens*, *Pickwick*, Ch. LII, 479.

ii. In two or three days *at farthest*. *Goldsmit*, *Good-nat. man*, III.

The secret complaint will kill him in a few months *at furthest*. *Flora Marryat*, *Open Sesame*, 105.

A second lieutenant considers himself very badly treated by Fate if he does not attain a lieutenancy within a couple of years *at farthest*. *Graph*.

**at fewest.** No further instances than the following have come to hand.

In all instances which I have yet investigated, the substance of this germ has peculiar composition, consisting of *at fewest* four elementary bodies. *Huxley*, *Darwin*, Ch. V, 199.

**at (the) first.** The expression with the article is found in the sense of *a) from the first, at the outset* (= Dutch *al dadelijk*); *b) in the earliest times*; *c) in the beginning* (= Dutch *in het eerst*).

*At first* is used in the sense of *a) in the beginning* (= Dutch *in het eerst, in het begin*), *b) the first time* (= Dutch *de eerste keer*), *c) at once, directly* (= Dutch *dadelijk*), *d) first* (= Dutch *het eerst*), *e) in the beginning of life*, in like manner as *at last* sometimes means *in the end of life*. In the first sense it is found in statements that are thought of as a contrast to another, which, accordingly, often opens with *but*.

These may be the principal shades of meaning of *at the first* and *at first*. Altogether it is often difficult to apprehend their precise meaning. Only *at first* in the first sense indicated above, is at all common in Present English. See also *Franz*, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 268.

i. \* Let him that moved you hither | Remove you hence: I knew you *at the first* You were a moveable. *Taming of the Shrew*, II, 197.

O, never was there queen | So mightily betray'd! yet *at the first* | I saw the treasons planted. *Ant. and Cleop.*, I, 2, 25.

"Did any of them know of your coming?" — "Yes, My Wife and Children saw me *at the first*, and called after me to turn again." *Bunyan*, *Pilg. Prog.* (151). For it was thro' me | This evil came on William *at the first*. *Ten.*, *Dora*.

\*\* Anything so overdone is from the purpose of playing, whose end, both *at the first* and now, was and is, to hold as't were, the mirror up to nature. *Hamlet*, III, 2, 23.

Thy cloud goes up, | As *at the first*, to water the great earth, | And keep her valleys green. BRYANT, A Hymn of the Sea, 8.

\*\*\* Dangerous conceits are, in their natures, poisons: | Which *at the first* are scarce found to distaste. Othello, III, 3, 327.

Lieutenant Smith, her grandfather, had been *at the first* very much averse to our union. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VIII, 87.

The very position which cripples *at the first*, often gives authority before the end. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. III, 88.

The Camp... is intended *at the first* to accommodate about forty working boys. Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 8c.

- ii. \* Just *at first* I thought there would be only one course, that of putting Paradyne away. Mrs. Wood, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 46.

\*\* Duke S. Art thou thus bolden'd, man, by thy distress | Or else a rude despiser of good manners, | That in civility thou seem'st so empty? — ORL. You touch'd my vein *at first*. As you like it, II, 7, 94.

Ruined love, when it is built anew, | Grows fairer than *at first*. SHAK., Son., CXIX. (Compare the Dutch Op oud ijs vriest het licht.)

\*\*\* Well was it fit for a servant to use his master so... | Whom, would to God, I had well knock'd *at first*, | Then had not Grumio come by the worst. Taming of the Shrew, I, 2, 34.

This worthy signior, | I thank him, makes no stranger of me; we are familiar *at first*. Cymbeline, I, 3, III.

Nothing but your passion and violence, you silly fellow, prevented my telling you *at first*. SHER., Riv., III, 1.

He thought it best to make a stand *at first*, and civilly refused such dangerous companions among his troops. MAC., Fred., (694b).

\*\*\*\* Let's each one send unto his wife; | And he whose wife is most obedient To come *at first* when he doth send for her, | Shall win the wager which we will propose. Taming of the Shrew, V, 2, 68.

"True is it, my incorporate friends," quoth he, "That I receive the general food *at first*." Coriol., I, I, 121.

\*\*\*\*\* And (I) abused not my health and my vigour *at first* | That I never might need them *at last*. SOUTHEY, The Old Man's Comfort, II.

**at the highest.** No other instances than the following have been found:

The point-blank range of the French and German rifles is 800 yards, that of the British rifle *at the highest* is 600 yards. Times, No. 1825, 1031d.

(These) suggestions... at the lowest deserve careful consideration, *at the highest*, have only to be stated to carry conviction. Times (Westm. Gaz., No. 6264, 3c).

**at (the) last.** In Early Modern English *at last* and *at the last* were used indiscriminately. FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 268. The latter is now rather uncommon and seems to be chiefly applied in the sense of *at the last moment*; compare *to the last* (= up to the last moment of life). The discourse does not, however, always bring out this meaning very clearly.

*At last* is mostly used in the sense of *at length* (— after the removal of all impediments); but is occasionally found in the meaning of *after all*. The phrase *at (the) long last*, now infrequent, represents an emphatic *at last*.

SHAKESPEARE has *in the last* in the sense of *at last*.

- i. \* Gad, a troop shall overcome him, but he shall overcome *at the last*. Bible, Gen., XLIX, 19.

*At the last* I saw, as it were, a narrow gap. BUNYAN, Grace Abounding, 312. 1)  
So that *at the last* we may come to his eternal joy. Com. Pray., Gen. Conf.

1) FRANZ, E. S., XVIII.

Sleet and rain beat hard upon the mourners, but all was sunshine *at the last*. GARNETT, *Life of Carlyle*, 165.<sup>1)</sup>

She spoke at large of many things, | And *at the last* she spoke of me. TEN., *Miller's Daught.*, XX.

So you have come back to me *at the last*. Eng. Rev., No. 52, 597.

\*\* Woman, disturb me not now *at the last*. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 869.

He was so delighted with the presentation of Dinah, and so convinced that the readers' interest would centre in her, that he wanted her to be the principal figure *at the last*. ELIOT's *Life*, II, 195.<sup>2)</sup>

Sigrid drew aside little Swanchild *at the last*, and left the father and son to have their parting words alone. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. IV, 39.

It is no uncommon thing for the mind thus to fail *at the last*. RIDER HAGGARD, *Mr. Mees. Will*, Ch. XXI, 225.

- ii. \* *At last*, to my great joy, I received notice of his safe arrival. DICK., *Uncomm. Trav.*, Ch. XXVIII.<sup>3)</sup>

\*\* Whether originally of a timid temperament or not, he was certainly possessed of perfect courage *at last*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 903a. (= *in the latter part of his life*.)

\*\*\* They hadn't ate it all *at last*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 68. (= *after all*.)

- iii. \* This Woman, I say . . . was *at the Long Last* prevail'd upon to hear the Will read. R. L'ESTRANGE, *Tables*, CXCVIII, 168.<sup>3)</sup>

We can find a useful and instructive solace in a hearty abuse of human nature, which *at the long last* is always to blame. LOWELL, *Study Wind*, 131.<sup>3)</sup>

\*\* The supremely important thing is that, *at long last*, the Russian nation is to be supplied with an articulate representative assembly. Rev. of Rev., CLXXXIX, 228a.

By this means I might, *at long last*, get together the rudiments of a Society in all parts of the English-speaking world. Ib., CXCV, 226.

We learned, *at long last*, that its career was over. RYAN, *Lit. Lond.*, 28.

Francis was a Norton, *at long last*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. II, 30.

- iv. *In the last*, | When he had carried Rome, and that we look'd | For no less spoil than glory. *Coriol.*, V, 6, 43.

**at (the) latest.** The article is not usually suppressed.

- i. Ordinary bed-time in his mind meant 10 p. m. or 10.30 *at the latest*. II. *Lond. News*.

The general belief in town and camp is that the relief column will join hands with us by Monday night *at the latest*. *Times*.

- ii. Ready to set sail on the morrow, or next day *at latest*. LONGFELLOW, *Courtship of Miles Standish*, I.

Some time that night, or *at latest* noon of the morrow, we should sight the Treasure Island. STEPHENSON, *Treas. Isl.*, 87.

**at (the) least.** When attached to a quantitative designation to indicate that the amount referred to is the smallest admissible (— Dutch *op zijn minst*), the article seems to be regularly used. Conversely suppression seems to be now all but regular, when the expression is used in the sense of *at any rate*, *at all events* (= Dutch *ten minste*). According to AL. SCHMIDT (*Shak. Lex.*), SHAKESPEARE observes no difference between *at the least* and *at least*. See also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 268 and id., *Eng. Stud.*, XVIII.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, XI.

<sup>2)</sup> Ib., X.

<sup>3)</sup> MURRAY.



i. \* She saved 600 l. a-year, *at the least*, by living with us. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. X, 115.

How many have I killed? — Nineteen, *at the least*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVIII, 138*b*.

The thing must have weighed three pounds *at the least*. JEROME, Sketches. I hope to remain for three weeks *at the least*. PAUL CHESWICK, In the Land of Dreams, Ch. I.

You look eighteen *at the least*. CON. DOYLE, Rodn. Stone, I, Ch. V, 115.

\*\* Go to thy lady's grave and call hers (sc. her love) thence | Or, *at the least* in hers sepulchre thine. Two Gentl., IV, 2, 118.

Let it suffice thee, Mistress Page, — *at the least*, if the-love of soldier can suffice, — that I love thee. Merry Wives, II, 1, 11.

*At the least* this was certain. Miss L. had no fortune or expectations. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXV, 794.

ii. *At least* we'll die with harness on our back. Macb., V, 5, 52.

**at longest.** The following is the only instance found:

*At longest* they were only twelve minutes behind another express. Westm. Gaz., No. 6323, 1*b*.

**at the lowest.** The article seems to be regularly used.

People who profess accuracy and assume a heavy responsibility, cannot escape condemnation, if they choose to accept ready-made lies from sources that ought to have aroused suspicion, or *at the lowest* to have suggested caution. Times, No. 1261, 146*b*.

Every foolish bit of gossip . . . was, of course, put forth by Mr. Dillon either as a fully-substantiated fact, or *at the lowest* as a strong presumption calling for inquiry. Ib., 146*a*.

**at (the) most.** The article seems to be mostly dropped.

i. Even *at the most*, Sparta gains nothing by these wars. LYTTON, Paus.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. After these entered a tall child, *at' most* but in her thirteenth year. Mrs. F. BROOKE, Old Maid, No. 30, 177.<sup>2)</sup>

*At most* it increases what they already possess. GOLDSMITH.<sup>1)</sup>

*At most* he was sent to make a short trip in a man-of-war. MACAULAY, Hist.<sup>2)</sup>

**at the poorest.** The following is the only instance found:

It is a challenge to the ordinary Congress-goer, who *at the poorest* is a seven-and-sixpenny person with a margin for railway-fare and for lodgment during the week, in case local hospitality cannot be found. Times, No. 1814, 803*a*.

**at (the) widest.** The only instance found is with the article suppressed.

He'll be widest yet, | Though every drop of water swear against it | And gape *at widest* to glut him. Temp., I, 1, 55.

**at (the) worst.** The article is rarely dispensed with.

i. *At the worst* or at the best, we should not be divided. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. VIII, 115.

*At the worst*, obscure honesty is better than gaudy crime. Ib., IV, Ch. I, 149.

She had probably had some experience in such matters, and felt tolerably certain of being able, *at the worst*, to manage the old gentleman in the gold spectacles. F. ANSTEY, Vice Versa, Ch. XI, 217.

Even *at the worst* an emergency service could be carried on. Times, No. 1809, 702*d*.

ii. *At worst* it was scarcely more than an exaggeration of what his state had been for months. KATH. CEC. THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. VI, 61.

1) SATTLER, E. S., XXXI, 349.

2) MURRAY.

Note. In none of the above expressions is the article ever omitted when the superlative is emphasized by *very*.

At ten o'clock *at the very earliest*. GRANT ALLEN, *Tents of Shem*, Ch. III.

39. A gradual increase of some quality is mostly expressed by two comparatives connected by *and*, the adjective being placed only after the second *more* or *less* in the case of periphrastic comparison.

i. By that time Mr. Pickwick and Sam Weller were every succeeding minute placing a *less and less* distance between themselves and the good old town of Bury St. Edmunds. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 136.

The plan was simply this, to demand *larger and larger* contributions till the Rajah should be driven to remonstrate. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (629b).

ii. \* He grew *more and more* untractable every day, and lost favour in the eyes of both the doctor and the housekeeper. WASH. IRV., *Dolf. Heyl.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 100).

\*\* The horses became *less and less* capable of control. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLII, 328c.

Note I. Either the first or the second comparative is sometimes preceded by *ever*.

i. She had sunk *ever lower and lower*. JEROME, *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. XVI, 213.

ii. And there | Her constant motion round him, and the breath | Of her sweet tendance over him, | Fill'd all the genial courses of his blood | With *deeper and with ever deeper* love. TEN., *Ger. and En.*, 927.

II. The placing of *ever* before the first comparative may occasion the suppression of the second.

The case for the Berlin bust as a genuine work by Leonardo da Vinci gets *ever thinner*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5179, 2b.

She was as sweet as before, but more aloof. The condescension was *ever more marked*, and the appeal for sympathy and pity *ever fainter*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, I, Ch. VII, 97.

III. A similar suppression of the second comparative is quite usual when the sentence contains an adverbial adjunct with *every*, *each* (Ch. XL, 54, Obs. III), or one like *daily*, *day by day*, *constantly*.

i. Onward she came, the large black hulk seeming *larger at every fathom's length*. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. VII, 83.

I think my pretty cousin looks *prettier every day*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 301. (= Dutch *ziet er met den dag aardiger uit*.)

The old man was drawing *nearer to her every day*. BEATR. HAR., *Ships*, II, Ch. II, 119.

Compare: Tom felt *more and more every day* that he stood alone. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VII, 319.

"People are all so different," replied the artist. "I find that *more and more true every day*." MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. VI, 105.

ii. I love you, if possible, *each day more truly and more tenderly*. DISRAELI, (*Athen.*, No. 4438, 578b).

iii. Their path became *daily more smooth* and easy. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXVIII, 367.

iv. The hatred against the Queen seemed to grow *deeper day by day* amongst the people. MAY WINNE, *When Terror Ruled*, Ch. III, 31.

She hated the state of tutelage with a hatred that grew *more rebellious hour by hour*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Panther's Cub*, I, Ch. VI, 66.

v. Their mutual aversion was *constantly* becoming *stronger*. Mac., War. Hast., (624b).

IV. Thus also when there is a series of successive words requiring periphrastic comparison, *and* + the second *more* is mostly suppressed. In time Labby (i. e. Labouchere) frequented it (sc. Pope's Villa) less and less, and the invitations came *more rarely* and *more scantily*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 497, 610c. (instead of *more and more rarely* and *more and more scantily*.)

V. For the sake of measure or rhythm:

a) the second comparative is sometimes made periphrastical, a synonymous word being occasionally chosen for the sake of variety.

i. Caleb's scanty hairs were turning *greyer and more grey*. Dick., Cricket, II, 37.

ii. And pressing *closer and more near*, | He whispered praises in her ear. Scott, Marm., V, xiii.

β) a positive is sometimes substituted for the comparative, chiefly in poetry. FIJN VAN DRAAT, Rhythm in Eng. Prose, Adj., § 37.

*Faint, and more faint*, its (sc. the hurricane's) failing din | Return'd from cavern, cliff and linn. Scott, Lady, I, iii, 17.

She gradually drew *near and nearer*. Id., Mon., Ch. XXV, 270.

And then advanced with stealth-like pace, | Drew softly *near* her, *and more near*. WORDSW., White Doe, VII, 105.

*Faint* she grew, *and ever fainter*. TEN., Lord of Burli., 81.

And her breath came *fast and faster*. ROSE H. THORPE, Curfew must not ring to-night. IV.

And the eastern breeze | Grows *fresh and fresher*. W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., The Proud King, 96a.

γ) the adverb *still* or *yet* is sometimes inserted where most convenient.

And hark! and hark! the deep-mouth'd bark | Comes *nigher still, and nigher*. Scott, Lay, III, xv.

It (sc. the fire) swayed or fell before the mighty gale, only to rise *higher and yet higher*, to ravage and roar yet more wildly. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. V, 46.

As the years passed, we two grew *dearer and yet more dear* to each other. RID. HAG., She, Ch. II, 20.

*Nearer* he came, *and yet nearer*. ETH. M. DELL, The Way of the Eagle, I, Ch. V, 55.

She (sc. the boat) sank *lower and yet lower*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6023, 3b.

The following quotation seems to show that of adverbs in *ly* the first may be kept in the positive in this combination.

The carriage moved forward *slowly and yet more slowly*. Times, No. 1824, 1002b.

δ) the comparatives *more* or *less* are sometimes divided by the adjective. Saint George's banner, broad and gay, | Now faded, as the fading ray | *Less bright, and less*, was flung. Scott, Marm., I, ii.

40. A proportional increase of two qualities is expressed by placing the adverb *the* before two comparatives. See also Ch. VIII, 15d; Ch. XVII, 142; Ch. XXXI, 6, b.

*The rougher* the billow, *The happier* we.

*The nearer* we drew, *the more familiar* the objects became that we passed. Dick., Cop., Ch. III, 21a.

*The more* I reflect, *the more* I am astonished at the monstrous and wicked impudence of that fellow. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 377.

*The more* we change, *the more* we remain the same. BESANT, *London*, I, 102.  
Curious that in lodgings the rule of life is reversed: *the higher* you get up in the world, *the lower* you go down in your lodgings. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, XII, 203.  
*The more* people earned, *the more* they spent on beer and spirits. Graph., 1889, 178a.

Note I. In proverbial sayings *the* is sometimes suppressed.

*More* haste worse speed. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 1944.

II. Also in the following quotation the reference seems to be to a proportional increase.

And *farther* as the Hunter stray'd, | Still *broad*er sweep its (sc. that of the lake) channel made. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xiii.

III. The adjective or adverb is sometimes divided from *the more* by other elements of the sentence.

*The more* he was calm, *the more* enraged the mother became. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 468, 522a.

IV. *The* is also found before a comparative to indicate the dependence of the increase of some quality on what is expressed in an adverbial adjunct or clause of cause. It may interest the foreign student that these adjuncts or clauses may open with a great variety of prepositions or conjunctions, *for* and *because* being, however, the usual words. For instances see also Ch. XVII, 39. An exhaustive study of the subject has been given by OLAF JOHNSON in E. S., XLIV, 212—239. For so-called errors in the application of *the* see the *King's English* 70—74; UHRSTRÖM, *Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Richardson*, 48.

i. \* Why man, you don't seem one whit *the happier* at this. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3, (268).

\*\* Mr. R. had shown a very marked interest in Mr. B's daughter — all *the more* marked *because* of the reserved manner with which it had to contend. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, Ch. III, 29.

\*\*\* I was not made *the less* so (sc. sullen, dull and dogged) *by* my sense of being daily more and more shut out and alienated from my mother. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 23.

\*\*\*\* She might stand beside any lady of the land and look *the better* for it. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXVI, 252.

A young man with long black hair that seemed *the blacker* for the whiteness of the bedclothes. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXV, 210b

\*\*\*\*\* The storm, though gathering swiftly had not yet come up; and the prevailing stillness was *the more solemn* from the dull intelligence that seemed to hover in the air, of noise and conflict afar off. *Ib.*, Ch. XLII, 326a.

\*\*\*\*\* Miss Maclean looks as if she would be *the better* of some sparkling wine. GRAHAM TRAVERS, *Mona Maclean*, 74.

"By Castor, if a man swears a woman's oath," said another something *worse* of wine, "let us not lament." WALLACE, *Ben Hur*, 101.

\*\*\*\*\* I think a little *the worse* of him *on this account*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. II, 10a.

ii. \* This worthy man found himself not *the less* attached to Pendennis, *because* the latter disliked port wine at dinner. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 325.

They (sc. the horses) stretch their shoulders up the slope towards the bridge, with all *the more* energy *because* they are so near home. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. I, 2.

\*\* They went about with muffled tread: *the rather* forasmuch as to entertain any suspicion that they were awake, was to be atheistical and traitorous. DICK., *Tale of Two Cities*, I, Ch. I, 16.



\*\*\* The bishop of Orvietto was forcibly impressed by the energy of his companion; perhaps, indeed, *the more* so *inasmuch* as his own pride and his own passions were also enlisted against the arrogance and licence of the nobles. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 42.

\*\*\*\* She (sc. Elizabeth) clung, perhaps, to her popularity *the more passionately*, *that* it hid in some measure from her the terrible loneliness of her life. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, VII, § III, 375.

\*\*\*\*\* You don't think the country would be *the better*, if we could do away with game to-morrow. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, 153.

V. Very rare is the practice of replacing the first comparative by *longer*. Compare the Dutch *hoe langer hoe* (*des te*) *beter*, etc. Pewter is pewter, and grows *the longer the duller*. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. XII, 136.

VI. The adjunct or clause is sometimes understood, or implied in the context.

The danger makes the sport only *the pleasanter*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 33.

Too languid to sting, he had *the more* venom reffluent in his blood. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, III, Ch. XXXII, 226.

The eight or nine weeks' change of scene renders him *the fresher* and the more capable of work when he returns. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. I, 15.

I have passed the Higher Standard, but I don't seem to be any *the wiser*, RUDY KIPL., *The Gadsbys*, 12.

VII. Note the idiom in: a) Why, then, don't stand as if you was afraid, woman; who's *the wiser*? DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 92. (= Dutch *Wie weet er iets van?*)

We went away to Germany together, and no one was a bit *the wiser*. G. DU MAURIER, *Trilby*, II, 189.

Heartily wishing I could be quietly dropped overboard and so come to an end at once without anybody's being *the wiser*. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 6.

I could not imagine what it was all about at first, and I was not much *the wiser*, even when I noticed that there was something in the path. PUNCH.

b) Fanny in her pity and kind-heartedness, was at great pains to teach him how to learn, . . . learning every word of his part herself, but without his being much *the forwarder*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansf. Park*, Ch. XVIII, 172.

For *not the less*, *nath(e)less*, *never the less* and *none the less* see Ch. XI, 8. For a further discussion of the idiomatic use of *none* and its variants before *the* + comparative see Ch. XL, 143, a.

VIII. The adverb *the* is sometimes omitted, apparently for the sake of the measure or the rhythm of the sentence.

Yes, it is sweet to be | Awaited, and to know another heart | Beats *faster* for our coming. LEWIS MORRIS. (Compare: 'Tis sweet to know there is an eye will mark | Our coming, and look *brighter* when we come. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CXXIII.)

All her (Scotland's) sons and daughters think *more highly* of their country, that Burns was of it. W. GUNNYON, *Biogr. Sketch of Burns*, 50.

IX. In the following quotation *yet* has approximately the same function as *the*.

How much | Hath Phœbus woo'd in vain to spoil her cheek, | Which glows *yet smoother* from his amorous clutch! BYRON, *Childe Har.*, I, LVIII.

41. To express how many times a person animal or thing exceeds another as to the intensity of a certain quality the English uses the same turns of expression as the Dutch; i. e.:

## a) a comparative preceded by a multiplicative:

He's about *twenty times stronger* than I am. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. XIV, 263.

b) a positive preceded by a multiplicative + *as*.

He is about *twenty times as strong* as I am.

42. The words denoting the measure by which a person, animal or thing exceeds another as to the intensity of a quality, either precede or follow the comparative or superlative. In the latter case they are always preceded by the preposition *by*; but when they precede, *by* is only used with superlatives.

- i. \* The other's economy in selling it to him was *more reprehensible by half*. SHER., School for Scand., III, 2, (394).

He was a better man than I was, this day twenty years — a *better* man, I should say, *by ten thousand pound*. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXVI, 283.

This gave her *more* trouble *by half* than many people take to earn a good income. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. II, 20.

He is *older by two years*. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 284.

Three turns of the wheel left him *richer by twenty pounds*. RUDY. KIPLING, The Light that Failed, Ch. III, 33.

The boy is *younger* than he *by five years*. MARK TWAIN, Pudd'nhead Wilson, 12.

\*\* He is *more than ten years older* than his brother.

- ii. \* Is this his *first* offence? Not *by a good many*. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. XI, 133.

\*\* The Spyglass was *by three or five hundred feet the tallest* hill on the island. STEPHENSON, Treas. Isl., 105.

Note. *By* is similarly used with words which imply a comparative.

*To lessen by a third*. WEBST., Dict. (= *to make less*.)

I will not *add to* or *diminish* the narrative *by any circumstance*. SCOTT, Tapestry Chamber. (= *make longer* or *make shorter*.)

The fugitive had *survived* his brother *by several months*. GRAPH., 1889, 337. (= *lived longer than*.)

43. A frequent intensive both of comparatives and superlatives, denoting an indefinite large measure by which any person, animal or thing, exceeds another as to the intensity of a quality, is the adverbial *much*. (Ch. XL, 95, d).

- i. British India is a pretty big appanage of the English crown, but British Africa promises to be a *much bigger*. GRAPH.

On our side a Reciprocal Preference would have become *much harder* to devise. TIMES, No. 1813, 783a.

- ii. The Secretary is *much the greatest* commoner in England. SWIFT, Journ. to Stella, XLII.

It is *much the genteel* attitude into the bargain. SHER., Riv., V, 2, (280).

He writes something like you, but yours is *much the best*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. VI, 68.

The quasi-historical part of the work contains *much the fullest* notice of Arthur's military exploits. W. LEWIS JONES, King Arthur, Ch. I, 14.

It was the eyes that were so *much the most expressive* feature in his face. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 467, 491c.

Note I. Frequent variants of *much* are:

- a) *far*, occasionally replaced by *by far*, when preceding a comparative; mostly replaced by *by far*, when following a comparative or a superlative; regularly replaced by *by far* when following a superlative.
- i. \* He was *far more eager* than any of his companions. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. VIII.  
This year the epidemic has been *far more severe* than in 1910. *Times*, No. 1811, 743d.  
The Canadian decision is something *far deeper* than a verdict on an economic dispute. *Ib.*, No. 1813, 782d.  
The victory of his opponents after twenty years of Opposition is *far more* than the victory of a party or a cry. *Ib.*  
\*\* The other boy, who was two years older and *by far bigger* than he, had by far the worst of the assault. THACK., *Henry Esme.*, I, Ch. VII, 67.
  - ii. \* 'Twere *better by far* | To have matched our fair cousin with young Lochinvar. SCOTT, *Marmion*, V, xi.  
\*\* Now and then exchanging a facetious snow-ball — *better-natured* missile *far* than many a wordy jest. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 59.  
You will find it *better far* to choose the best man among you, and let him fulfil the duties which I demand. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, iv, 156.
  - iii. \* Had he been able to carry out his own policy, he would have been *by far the greatest* minister that England has ever seen. *Lit. World*.  
After C. B. *by far the most conspicuous* outstanding Minister is John Burns. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIV, 132.  
I think the Lower House *by far the greatest* blow to a happy married life. OSCAR WILDE, *An Ideal Husband*, II.  
*By far the most important* is Mr. Gosse's sketch of Swinburne. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 50, 331.  
\*\* The best and *far the largest* part of his work is prose. SAINTSBURY, *Nineteenth Cent.*, Ch. II.  
Three patterns of saddlery, English, Indian and Austrian were sent out, all proving satisfactory, the Indian pattern having the advantage of being *far the cheapest*. *Times*.  
She was *far the noblest* Roman of them all. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCI, 238b.
  - iv. Our service term is *the longest by far* of any civilized nation in the world. *Times*.
- b) *far (and) away*, more or less colloquial, chiefly found before superlatives, more rarely before attributive comparatives. *Far and away*, evidently formed by hendiadys from *far away*, is much the more frequent form.
- i. The delight . . . *more far away* than I have ever received. MAD. D'ARBLAY, *Early Diary*, I, 187.<sup>1)</sup>
  - ii. \* The case for gold ought to be *far and away the stronger* of the two. *Punch*, 1893, 181b.  
\*\* The Century Dictionary bids fair to be *far and away the largest*, and best general and encyclopædic dictionary of the English language. *Athen.*  
Of the actors Lieutenant G. N. was *far and away the best*. *Punch*.
- c) (*by*) *a long chalk*, *by (long) chalks*, only in colloquial language: *by long chalks* appears to be the ordinary form.
- i. As regards the body of water . . . the Indus ranks *foremost by a long chalk*. DE QUINCEY.<sup>2)</sup>

1) MURRAY.

2) HOPPE, *Sup. Lex.*

ii. \* Her second haul was a *better* one *by long chalks* than her first. (?) Miss Providence, Ch. XXI.

\*\* They whipped and they spurred, and they after her press'd, ! But Sir Alured's steed was *by long chalks* the best. Ingoldsby Leg.<sup>2)</sup>  
He flung his glove on the parquet with the remark that, if anybody present said that Lady — wasn't *by long chalks* the prettiest girl in the room, well — he knew what he could do about it. Punch, 1912, 17 July, 50.

d) *by all odds*, apparently somewhat rare, not instanced in MURRAY.

It is *the best by all odds* of any magazine published. Chamb. Journal (Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 1a).

These companies are to-day *by all odds the greatest* power in the world. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 419b.

e) (*by*) *a long way*, apparently unusual.

i. The President made a speech too — a jolly good one; *better* than Parkinson's really, *by a long way*. Punch, 1912, 17 July, 50b.

ii. There has been no difficulty at all in awarding the prize. N. N. is *a long way first*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5027, 6c

f) *easily*, especially before *first*, after the Latin *facile princeps*, but also before other superlatives, and occasionally before a comparative.

i. \* Lord Rosebery is *easily the first* of the orators of the assembly. Westm. Gaz., No. 5261, 4a.

Individually, he (sc. Mr. Balfour) was *easily first*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 471, 617b.

\*\* Harvard has *easily the finest* gymnasium in the world. W. BLACKIE (Harp. Mag., 1883, Nov., 997).<sup>1)</sup>

ii. The chief issues in the East Edinburgh by-election are Home Rule and the Insurance Act. If question time statistics are a trustworthy guide, the latter is *easily the more absorbing* topic. Times, No. 1831, 81c.

Compare also: The collection of quotations illustrating each word is a familiar feature of the Dictionary, in which it *easily surpasses* all competitors. Athen., 4446, 33a.

M. Mengelberg is known to be a fine interpreter of Strauss's music, and his clear, powerful rendering of 'Also sprach Zarathustra' showed that as such he is '*facile princeps*'. Ib., No. 4438, 599a.

g) *a great (good) deal*: In truth, Mrs. Quilp did seem *a great deal more glad* to behold her lord that night, than might have been expected. Dick., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. L, 182b.

The article . . . aroused *a great deal more* interest and attracted far more attention, than I had any reason to hope. HOR. HUTCHINSON (Westm. Gaz., No. 6117, 3c).

h) *many times*: Two lone women are *many times braver* than one. JOHN OXENHAM, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. XIV, 99.

It is always difficult to estimate literary values; but when these are weaved in with other values that we call dramatic, the difficulty becomes *many times more* perplexed. Bookman, No. 253, 58a.

II. Other intensives of some interest are:

*Still* and *yet*, mostly immediately before or after comparatives. Metre or rhythm sometimes causes these adverbs to be shifted to other places.

i. \* You make my bonds *still greater*. Meas. for Meas., V, 8.



So severe indeed was his struggle with this disorder (sc. nervous temperament) and the *still more perilous* condition which resulted from it, that at one time . . . he (sc. Charles Tennyson) was to leave his parish for some months in search of strength. HALLAM LORD TEN., Ten. & his friends, (60).

\*\* He came *closer still*. CH. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, I, iv, 73.

\*\*\* O benefit of ill! now I find true | That better is by evil *still* made *better*. SHAK., Son., CX.

But poorly rich, (he) so wanted in his store, That, cloy'd with much, he pineth *still* for *more*. Id., Lucrece, 98.

- ii. \* It is not only for the sick man, it is for the sick man's friends that the Doctor comes. His presence is often as good for them as for the patient, and they long for him *yet more eagerly*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XV, 154.

We cannot doubt that her place (sc. that of the "Liberté") will be filled, as soon as may be, by a *yet more powerful* naval unit. Times, No 1813, 783c.

\*\* In this respect his acquaintance with Italian opened him *yet a wider* range. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. III, 31a.

*Foggier yet* and colder. DICK., Christm. Car. 5, I.

very, before superlatives: When the pheasants came, which the Major praised as the *very finest* birds he ever saw, her Ladyship said they came from Logwood. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVII, 176.

Admiral Bowster stared his *very hardest*. MISS BRADDON, My First Happy Christm. (STOF., Handl., I, 70).

44. In the higher literary style, especially in the older writers, the superlative is sometimes used absolutely, approximately in the meaning of *most* + positive.

See whe'r their *basest* metal be not mov'd. JUL. CÆS., I, 1, 76.

Hail, *divinest* Melancholy! MILTON, II Penseroso, 12.

The bright blue sky of Rome, and the effect of the vigorous awakening spring in that *divinest* climate, and the new life with which it drenches the spirits even to intoxication, were the inspiration of this drama. SHELLEY, Prom. Unb., Pref.

All the northern downs | In *clearest* air ascending, showed far off | A surface dappled o'er with shadows flung | From brooding clouds. WORDSW., Excurs., I, 4.

And first with *nicest* skill and art | Perfect and finished in every part, | A little model the Master wrought. LONGF., The Building of a Ship, 17.

The Queen's eye, however, was her own; and pity, goodness, sweet sympathy, blessed it with *divinest* light. CH. BRONTË, Vilette, Ch. XX, 268.

A stronger lens reveals to you certain *tiniest* hairlets; which make vortices for these victims. G. ELIOT, Mid., I, Ch. VI, 41.

I owed her *deepest* gratitude. EL. GLYN, Refl. of Ambr., III, Ch. V, 320.

The friendship with Lushington . . . had quickly ripened into *closest* intimacy. HALLAM LORD TEN., Ten. and his Friends, 91.

Note I. An ordinary superlative preceded by the definite article, often has the value of an absolute superlative.

In the most high and palmy state of Rome, | A little ere *the mightiest* Julius fell. HAMLET, I, 1, 114.

I valued a man according to his proficiency and taste in classical literature, and had *the meanest* opinion of all other accomplishments unaccompanied by that.<sup>1)</sup> The letter was written in *the kindest* terms. KATH. TYNAN, Johnny's Luck.

II. The modern way of forming an absolute superlative is by means of intensive adverbs of degree *very*, *highly*, *largely* etc. Also the superlative *most* is often employed for this purpose.

<sup>1)</sup> KRUISINGA, Gram. of Pres.-Day Eng., § 609.

Finally (he) accepted Mrs. Pendennis's *most kind* offer. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 69.

III. Equivalent to an absolute superlative is a word-group consisting of *of* + *the* + superlative, as in:

Although the court was *of the narrowest*, the houses opposite were mere phantoms. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, I, 5.

Inside the shop was *of the roughest*. MRS. WARD, *Dav. Grieve*, I, 311.

Spear-heads *of the finest*, swords *of the stoutest*. WALT. BES., *London*, I, 46.

His whole attire is *of the frowsiest*. GRAPH.

The information he picked up in that country was *of the slightest*. PUNCH, No. 3729, 520.

Occasionally we find this word-group followed by a positive:

His shirt was *of the finest fine*. EL. GLYN, *Refl. of Ambr.*, II, Ch. IX, 187.

IV. Also the construction illustrated in Ch. XXXI, 33, *b*: *English is the easiest of languages*, in which the generalizing definite article is suppressed before a plural noun preceded by a superlative + *of*, has the value of an absolute superlative.

45. The comparative may, in a manner, be said to be used absolutely, when it approximately expresses the same meaning as *rather* or *very* + positive, as in:

'Tis dangerous when the *baser* nature comes | Between the pass and fell incensed points | Of mighty opposites. HAMLET, V, 2, 60. (= those of rather inferior courage and address.)

Hark, how each giant-oak, and desert cave, Sighs to the torrent's awful voice beneath! O'er thee, oh King! their hundred arms they wave, | Revenge on thee in hoarser murmurs breath. GRAY, *The Bard*, I, II.

But in the fisherman's cottage | There shines a *ruddier* light. LONGFELLOW, *Twilight*, II.

Then the great stars that globed themselves in Heaven, | The *hollower* bellowing ocean, and again | The scarlet shafts of sunrise — but no sail. TEN., *En. Ard.*, 694. He (sc. Wycherley) was, indeed, a *worse* Congreve. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (578a). The following lists comprise all the strong verbs that occur in the texts given in this book, together with several others of the *commoner* ones. SWEET, *A. S. Prim.*, 24.

The mist, like a fleecy coverlet, hiding every *harsher* outline. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam. the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 1.

In the following quotation it may have the force of *too* + positive, the construction being due to classical influence:

Helpe then, O holy virgin chiefe of nine, Thy *weaker* novice to perform thy will! SPENSER, *Faery Queene*, *Prolog.*, I, II.

46. The use of such forms as *the topmost mountain* for *the top of the mountain* is due to classical influence. Thus *summus mons* = *culmen montis*.

Draw them (sc. all the poor men of your sort) to Tiber banks, and weep your tears Into the channel, till the *lowest stream* Do kiss the most exalted shores of all. JUL. CÆS., I, 1, 64.

A drawer impending o'er the rest Half open in the *topmost chest*, Of depth enough and none to spare, Invited her (sc. the cat) to slumber there. COWPER, *The Retired Cat*, III.

Behind the valley *topmost Gargarus* Stands up and takes the morning. TEN., *Cenone*, 10.

47. In Early Modern English we sometimes find the superlative used in connection with a word-group of an excluding import: *the greatest of captains since born, a man the strongest of his sons, the greatest error of the rest, the best of all other medicines, the best medicine of all others*, etc.

This is *the greatest error of all the rest*. Mids. Night's Dream, V, 250.

*Of all other affections it is the most importune*. BACON, Es., Envy.

So passed they naked on, nor shunned the Light Of God or angel, for they thought no ill: | So hand in hand they passed, *the loveliest pair*, *That ever since in love's embraces met*; Adam *the goodliest man of men since born*

His sons, *the fairest of her daughters* Eve. Par. Lost, IV, 319-324.

It (sc. the Sentimental Comedy) is *of all others* the most easily written. GOLD-SMITH (Eighteenth Cent. Lit., Clar. Press, 1909).

Note. This construction, which it has been proposed to call *inclusive superlative* (STOF., E. S., XXXI, 260 ff) bears a close resemblance to that instanced in the following quotations, in which also the excluding word-group seems to be used erroneously. For further discussion see Ch. XL, 11, Obs. IV.

*Of all men else* I have avoided thee. Macb., V, 8, 4.

I rejoice to say that the young man, whom *of all others* I particularly abhor, has left Bath. JANE AUSTEN, North. Abbey, Ch. XXVII, 208.

There was no particular reason to expect that he should be irregular on that particular day *of all others*. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. XV, 277.

## CHAPTER XXXI.

### THE ARTICLE.

#### FORM.

1. As in Dutch there are two articles in English: the definite article *the*, and the indefinite article *a* or *an*.
2. The definite article has but one form in the written and printed language; but it is pronounced in at least three different ways, i. e. with the *e* as the *ee* in *see* when full-stressed, with the *e* as in the second syllable of *picnic* when unstressed and followed by a vowel, and with the *e* as in the second syllable of *father* when unstressed and followed by a consonant. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1130.

Note 1. In Early Modern English and, archaically, in later poetry, *the* is often shortened to *th* before vowels and *h*, as in *th' enemy*, *th' hilt*, and even before other consonants, as in *th' world*, where the *w* was probably dropped. Compare Present English *he'll* for *he will*, *he'd* for *he would*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 1129; JESPERSEN, Progr., § 199; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, I, 340.

- i. *Th'one* sweetly flatters, *th'other* feareth harm. SHAK., Rape of Lucr., 172.  
If he should speak o' *th'assination*, I should be ruined. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, III, 2, (294).  
*Th'applause* of list'ning senates to command, . . . Their lot forbad. GRAY, Elegy, 61.<sup>1)</sup> (Thus throughout the works of this poet.)  
In *th'olden* time | Some sacrifices ask'd a single victim. BYRON.<sup>1)</sup>
- ii. "Thou hast not," quoth *th' miller*, "one groat in thy purse." The King and the Miller of Mansfield, V (PERCY, Rel., VIII, xxi).  
I changed o' *th' sudden* from the most fickle lover to the most constant husband in the world. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, III, 1, (288).  
Ay, there's a pattern for the young men o' *th' times*! Id., The Constant Couple, I, 1, (44).

In the language of the uneducated the practice of curtailing *the* into *th* or *t* has not yet become extinct.

- i. My missis is in labour, and, for the love of God, step in while I run for *th' doctor*, for she's fearful bad. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. III, 17.  
One day, *th' butcher* he brings us a letter fra George. Ib., Ch. IV, 28.

<sup>1)</sup> MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, I, 340.



ii. But the girls were intensely shy and reserved. As "*t' vicar's daughters*" they taught regularly in the Sunday-school, and a certain amount of visiting fell to their share. FLORA MASON, *The Brontës*, Ch. VI, 33.

II. The forms *tother* (*t'other*) and *the tother* (*the t'other*) have arisen from *that other*, in which *that* represents the old neuter definite article. When *the* had become the usual form for the three genders, *that other* and its correlative *that one* (the *w* now heard in *one* was not developed before the 15<sup>th</sup> century) kept their ground for some time. Owing to the gradual beginning of initial vowels the *t* was then understood to belong to *other* and *one*, which gave rise to *the tother* and *the tone*.

In an analogous manner the *n* of the indefinite article has joined itself to some words with initial vowel in some dialects. In Whitby (Yorkshire) *apron*, *aunt* and *ointment* are severally represented by *nappron*, *naunt* and *nointment*. In *newt* from *ewt*, a variant of *evet* or *eft*, and in *nickname* from *eke-name*, the *n* has found its way in literary language.

In the 18<sup>th</sup> century *tother* or *t'other* was very common in colloquial English, innumerable instances being found in SWIFT, ADDISON, STEELE, LADY MONTAGU, etc. In the second half it became more and more vulgar, and at the present day it is only heard from the uneducated. FRANZ, E. S., XII and XVII; id., *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 269; MATZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, I, 340; STORM, *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 779; LANNERT, *An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Acc.*, V, B, 1; JESPERSEN, *Elementarbuch der Phon.*, 621.

Sometimes we find *t'other* preceded by another modifier, e. g.: *your t'other*.

- i. And so bifel, that in the tas (= heap) they founde, | Thurgh-girt (= pierced through) with many a grevous bloody wounde, | Two yonge knyghtes liggng by and by (= in due place), | Bothe in oon armes, wrought ful richely, | Of whiche two. Arcita might ( ) was called) *that oon*. And *that other* knight hight Palamon. CHAUC., *Cant. Tales, Knightes Tale*, 156.
- ii. No man may serve two lordis, forsothe ethir he shal haat *the toon*, and love *the tother*; other he shal susteyn *the toon*, and dispise *the tothir*. WYCLIFFE, *Matth.*, VI, 24.<sup>1)</sup>  
O' *the t'other* side, the policy of those crafty swearing rascals ... is not proved worth a blackberry. Troil. and Cres., V, 4, 8.  
Now, serjeant, I shall see who is your captain by your knocking down *the t'other*. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, III, 2 (300).  
"What's *the tother* name?" said Sam. DICK., *Pickw.*, II, 47.<sup>2)</sup>  
When you mentioned *the t'other's* name, you see he couldn't stand it. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. I, 6.
- iii. I'll lean upon one crutch and fight with *t'other*. CORIOLANUS, I, 1, 246.  
She vaunted 'mongst her minions *t'other* day, | The very train of her worst wearing gown | Was better worth than all my father's lands. HENRY VI, B, I, 1, 246.  
A young poet is liable to the same vanity and indiscretion with a young lover; and the great man who smiles upon one and the fine woman who looks kindly upon *t'other*, are both of them in danger of having the favour published with the first opportunity. CONGREVE, *Love for Love, Dedication*.  
When her love-eye was fixed on me, *t'other*, her eye of duty, was finely obliqued. SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 3.

1) STORM., *Eng. Phil.*<sup>2</sup>, 780.

lb., 779.

There's a barrow *t'other* side the hedge. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIX, 163.  
Will, what a pity it was you had not George, instead of *t'other*, to your hand! THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXI, 630.

We saw the Scotch play, which everybody is talking about, *t'other* night. *Ib.*, 631. (Thus very frequently in this work.)

"Who's *t'other* man, then?" said Mrs. Tall. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LVII, 472.

- iv. Let me see *your t'other* hand. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, IV, 3, (314).

When the affairs of women come under my hands, I advise with *my t'other* friend. *Ib.*, IV, 3, (319).

3. The indefinite article has two forms. *a* and *an*, the former being used before a consonant-sound, the latter before a vowel-sound.

i. *a man, a yard, a ewe, a unit, a European*, such *a one, a once-admired* beauty, etc.;

ii. *an enemy, an uncle, an aunt*, etc.

Note I. The preservation of the *n* before vowels (8) is due to the gradual beginning of initial vowels. JESPERSEN, *Elementarbuch der Phon.*, 6, 21.

II. *An* is, of course, also used before silent *h*, i. e. before *heir, honour, honest, hour, hostler* (also spelled *ostler*) and their derivatives: *an heir, an heiress, an honour, an honourable action*, etc.

Usage is divided before weakly aspirated *h* in unstressed syllables, but the ordinary practice is to keep the *n*. It must, however, be observed that Americans and speakers hailing from the North of England are said to aspirate this *h* distinctly, and this is often done also by over-precise speakers from the South, especially ladies, who are anxious to avoid the taint of vulgarism attaching to the dropping of the aspirate. To these people the use of the shortened form of the article would naturally seem preferable. RIPPMANN, *Sounds of Spoken Eng.*, § 35.

There is no valid reason for substituting *an* for *a* before *h* in syllables with secondary stress, as in *a hippopotamus, a hypothetical clause*.

i. *an historian* [FREEMAN<sup>1)</sup>], *an historical* Arthur [J. S. MILL<sup>1)</sup>].

ii. *a hysterical* fit [SCOTT<sup>1)</sup>], *a historical* professor [FREEMAN<sup>1)</sup>], *a hysterical* manner [G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marn.*, II, Ch. XVI], *a hypothesis* [*ib.*, II, Ch. XVII, 139], *a hypothesis* [HUXLEY<sup>1)</sup>], *a historian* [MACAULAY<sup>2)</sup>], *a hereditary* possession [MAC., *Fred.*, (663*b*)], *a habitual* drunkard [ANNAND., *Conc. Dict.*, s. v. *sof*], *a hotel* [JEROME, *Three men in a Boat*, Ch. V, 52; SHAW, *Getting Married*, I, (210)], *a historian* [Westm. Gaz., No. 5329, 9*c*].

iii. *a hypothetical* clause [MASON, *Eng. Gram.*<sup>3)</sup>, § 438], *a horizontal* position [R. C. LESLIE, *Sea-painter's log*, 192<sup>3)</sup>], *a hippocentaur* [MUIRHEAD, *Gaius*, III, § 97<sup>3)</sup>].

III. The form *an* was longer retained before sounded *h* than before any other consonant, the *h* being, perhaps, less strongly aspirated in earlier English than it is now. In SHAKESPEARE *a* is the usual form, but the opposite is the case in the Authorized Version (1611).

1) MURRAY. 2) FOELS—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 80, N.

3) MURRAY, s. v. *horizontal*, 2.

By the middle of the 18<sup>th</sup> century the present practice of using *a* before sounded *h* seems to have been observed by the majority of writers. Occasional instances of *an* before sounded *h* are, however, met with even in the latest English. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 864 ff; STORM, Eng. Phil.<sup>2</sup>, 1003; AL. SCHMIDT, Shak. Lex.; W. A. WRIGHT, Bible Word-Book; THUN, Eng. Stud., VIII; LANNERT, An Investigation into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Accid., I; UHRSTRÖM, Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Richardson, 35.

The following cutting from the Westm. Gaz. (Sat. Ed.), No. 6141, 4b may be acceptable:

"To the Editor of the "Saturday Westminster".

Sir,—I was sorry to notice, in the leading article of the Westminster Gazette of yesterday, a solecism, general in America, but from which our first-class journals have usually kept themselves free, namely, putting the article *a* instead of *an* before such words as *heroic*. Euphony demands that in cases where the syllable beginning with *h*, even though aspirated, is not accentuated, *an* and not *a* shall be used as the preceding article. Thus we say: *a* *hövel*, but *an* *hotél*; *a* *history*, but *an* *històrical novel*; *a* *héro*, but *an* *heroïc action*. The error, which is very distressing to a cultivated ear, no doubt arose from imperfectly instructed persons modelling their language on the precepts of a Grammar Primer instead of the practice of people of education and refinement.—Yours faithfully, FRANCIS W. CAULFIELD, B.A., Oxford."

Interesting is the extract from a letter written by HUME to ROBERTSON, quoted by THUN (Anmerkungen zu Macaulay's History VI, Eng. Stud. VIII). "But what a fancy is this you have taken of saying always *an hand*, *an heart*, *an head*? Have you an ear? Do you know that this *n* is added before vowels to prevent the cacophony, and ought never to take place before *h* when that letter is sounded? It is never pronounced in these words: why should it be wrote? Thus I should say *a history* and *an historian*, and so you would too, if you had any sense. But you tell me that SWIFT does otherwise. To be sure there is no reply to that, and we must swallow your *hath* upon the same authority."

*Humble* was pronounced with the *h* mute down to the 19<sup>th</sup> century and, consequently, had *an* as the form of the indefinite article (MURRAY).

*An humble* fugitive from Folly view. SHER., School for Scand., V, 3, (438). And (I) from their lessons (sc. from the lessons of the Dead) seek and find Instruction with *an humble* mind. SOUTHEY, The Scholar, III.

A correspondent in the Literary World of the year 1894, in page 21 observes that Parliament still presents *an humble address* to the Queen, but that Uriah Heep and his mother would have made this pronounciation impossible to the present generation, even if it had had any currency among educated speakers at the time when David Copperfield appeared. Compare the following passage:

"I am well aware that I am the *umblest* person going," said Uriah Heep, modestly; "let the other be where he may. My mother is likewise a very *umble* person. We live in a *numble* abode, Master Copperfield, but have much to be thankful for. My father's former calling was *umble*. He was sexton". Ch. XVI, 117a.

i. *An horn* (CHAUC., Cant. Tales, ProL, 116), *an hundred* crowns (Taming of the Shrew, V, 2), *an humble* heart (Jul. Cæs., III, 1, 35), *an Hebrew*

(Two Gentlemen, II, 5, 57); *an hill* (Bible, Matth., V, 14), *an house* (ib., X, 12), *an hundredfold* (ib., XIII, 8), *an hundred words* (Spectator, I), *an hundred realms* (GOLDSM., Trav., 34), *an hundred years* (SCOTT, Marm., VI, Intr., viii), *an hero's eye* (id., Lady, II, xxii), *an hundred miles* (LYTTON, Night and Morn., 33), *an heresy* (id., Rienzi, I, Ch. I, 10), *an hospital* (NUTTALL, Eng. Dict., s. v. *lazaret*).

ii. *a half* (Bible, Exodus, XXV, 10), *a hairy man* (id., Gen., XXVII, 11), *a hammer* (id., Jeremiah, XXIII, 29).

IV. The full form *an* is also occasionally met with in Present English before *u* or *eu*, whether stressed or unstressed, and before *one*. This is keeping up the tradition of Earlier English, in which *u* was pronounced as a falling diphthong as in the Dutch *nieuw*, and the lip-back consonant was not heard in *one*. ABBOT, Shak. Gram.<sup>3</sup>, § 80; FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, § 270; SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 200; id., N. E. Gr., § 1137; LANNERT, An Investig. into the Lang. of Rob. Crus., Accid., I; UHRSTRÖM, Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Richardson, 35.

"In the spoken language the form *an* is now hardly ever heard" (MURRAY).

"To write *an* before such words is a gross mistake" (RIPPMANN, Sounds of Spoken Eng., § 45).

i. *an usurer's chain* (Much Ado, II, 1, 197), *an eunuch* (Twelfth Night, I, 2, 56), *an union* (Hamlet, V, 2, 283), *an uniformly good man* (Rich., Pamela, IV, 140<sup>1)</sup>), *an universal good* (SCOTT, Brid. of Trierm., Pref.), *an unanimous enthusiasm* (Mac., Hist., Ch. I, 137), *an universal rout* (id., Fred., (697a)).

ii. *such an one* (Rich., Sir Ch. Grand., VIII, 313<sup>1)</sup>); CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. III, 27b; BROWNING, Soul's Trag., II; JEROME, Paul Kelver, I, Ch. I, 14b; W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., Prol., 7a), *many an one* (W. MORRIS, The Earthly Par., The Doom of King Acris., 73a).

V. Vulgarly the form *a* is sometimes used before words beginning with a vowel.

'If the law supposes that,' said Mr. Bumble . . . 'the law is *a ass* — *a idiot*.' Dick., Ol. Twist, Ch. LI, 481.

I shall take *a early* opportunity of mentioning it to the board. Ib., Ch. II, 25.

A aged woman of ninety . . . told me that a family of some such name as yours in Blackmoor Vale came originally from these parts, and that 't were *a old* ancient race. HARDY, Tess, III, Ch. XVII, 139.

Once there was *a old* aged man over at Mellstock. Ib., 142.

#### MEANING.

4. The primary and most important function of both the definite and the indefinite article is to indicate that the thing of which we have formed a conception, is marked off or defined, i. e. thought of within certain physical or imaginary outlines or limits.

This must be understood thus. When there is no notion of defining, there is no room for either article; but, as the following discussions

<sup>1)</sup> UHRSTRÖM, Stud., 40.



will show, there are many cases in which one or the other article is absent, notwithstanding the notion of defining which is conveyed by the discourse.

5. Besides this, its primary function of marking off or defining, which it has in common with the indefinite article, the definite article has the secondary power of denoting:

a) that the thing(s) we are speaking of, is (are) individualized or specialized, i. e. connected in our thoughts with (a) particular person(s), animal(s) or thing(s). This individualizing or specializing is mostly expressed by (a) word(s) used for the purpose, but it is often indirectly indicated by the context, or even left unexpressed altogether, as being readily understood or unimportant. In the function here described the definite article is practically a weak determinative.

i. *The wine which he drank was sour.*

ii. He was armed with a rapier and a dagger, *the rapier he held in his right hand, the dagger in his left.* MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, § 126. (i. e. the rapier *with which he was armed*, etc.)

I plucked a flower; this is *the flower.* MURRAY. (i. e. the flower *that I plucked.*)

iii. And God said: Let there be light: and there was light. And God saw *the light*, that it was good: and God divided *the light* from *the darkness.* And God called the light Day, and *the darkness* he called Night. Gen., I, 3-5. (i. e. the light *that he had created.*)

*The air was full of the sweet smell of the hay.* THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 45. (i. e. the air *of a certain district*; the hay *that had been made.*)

When vessels are about to founder, *the rats* are said to leave 'em. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XVI, 133a. (i. e. the rats *that are in them.*)

*The Queen is still in London.* (i. e. the Queen *of England.*)

*The bride is dressed.* (i. e. the bride *who is in our midst, who is going to be married*, etc.)

Observe the idiom in: Prince Michael had observed *to the letter* the instructions of the will. Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2c.

They were willing to be hanged or shot or die at the stake if their beloved lord would but *give them the word.* lb.

Note I. Things that are single in their kind, such as *world, sun, universe*, etc., although not, of course, admitting of individualizing in the same sense as others, may yet be thought of in relation to other conceptions. Their names are, therefore, preceded by the definite article under the same conditions as ordinary class-nouns.

II. It may be observed that classifying adjuncts (Ch. IV, 1) do not imply any notion of defining, and are, accordingly, of no influence as to the use of the definite article.

*Civil strife*, as usual, distracted the energies of Northumbria. GREEN, Short Hist.

*Blue ink* is not so much in favour as *black.*

*Honest men* marry early, *wise men* not at all. Lit. World.

One of his accusations against *modern opera* is that it does not give a chance to the human voice. Il. Lond. News, No. 3816, 879a.

III. Individualizing or specializing adjuncts, on the other hand, mostly connote a notion of defining. (4)

Various additions have been made to *the systems of the main lines* to provide adequate facilities for *the Durbar traffic*. Times, No. 1814, 799d.

Here follow a few sentences showing that this connotation of defining may be absent in an individualizing adjunct.

At one end of Tynemouth a new building has been constructed, with adjacent pleasure-grounds and picturesque walls; it is a winter garden and aquarium, built by the inhabitants of the place on *ground which is given them by the benevolent despot of the district*, the Duke of Northumberland, for a nominal rent. ESCOTT, Eng., Ch. III, 30.

Mr. Summer was mistaken in concluding that *love of slavery* and *hatred of the Union* dictated the foolish things that were often said and the unrightful things that were sometimes done by England. M'CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXIV, 375. The story of his hair-breadth escape, and how it was *thought of her* that had nerved him to endurance, would move her he was sure. JOHN OXENHAM, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. XIII, 90.

From *inquiries made at the India Office*, it appears that [etc.]. Times, No. 1814, 799d.

*Visitors from Europe* will be well advised to obtain, as soon as may be, . . . the official handbook of information on the Dehli Durbar railway. lb.

*Readers who appreciate this paper*, may give their friends an opportunity of seeing a copy. lb.

The absence of the definite article is, of course, quite natural when the specializing adjunct assumes a classifying nature (Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. II and III), as in:

*Family life* is the root of empire. Nineteenth Cent., No. CCCXCXVI, 258.

Do not let us rush to the conclusion that *treaty law* and international obligations are useless, because they break down under some emergencies. Westm. Gaz., No. 4961, 1b.

The only safe hypothesis for us, to whom *sea-power* is vital, is that what a competitor can do, he will do or may do. lb., No. 4961, 1c.

b) that the conception we have formed is generalized. Ch. XXIX, 14 and 21. See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 38.

i. *The blind* are objects of compassion, not of sorrow. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 342.

ii. *The beautiful* can never die. CH. KINGSLEY, Hypatia, Ch. II, 6b.

iii. The *steam-gauge* is an instrument for indicating the pressure of steam in a boiler. WEBST.

iv. As *the Germans* see the Kaiser; as *the British* see the Kaiser. Westm. Gaz. Note I. A specialized conception may in its turn be generalized. (Ch. XXIX, 14a, Note I.)

*The African elephant* is taller than the Indian.

The care which covers the *seed of the tree* under tough husks and stony cases, provides for *the human plant the mother's breast* and *the father's house*. EMERSON, Domestic Life (ELIZ. JANE IRV., Lit. Read., III, 238).

II. A generalized conception must not be confounded with an indefinite number of individuals of the same class indicated by a singular noun preceded by the definite article, as in *The king went out to hunt the wild boar*.

I this application the definite article has the same function as under a. EILERT EKWALL, The Unchanged Plural in Eng., 4.

III. A conception generalized sometimes approximates to a conception of a thing that is single in its kind. Thus in the following sentence *the field* representing a generalized conception, and *the air* and *the water* indicating conceptions single in their kind, are understood in the same way:

The desire of earning fame in the sports of *the field*, *the air*, and *the water*, was uppermost in the breast of his friend Winkle. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 3.

- c) that the most eminent specimen is meant of whatever is expressed by the noun. In this function the definite article has strong stress. (2.)

I am alone *the villain* of he earth. ANT. and CLEOP., IV, 6, 30.

Clive was eminently *the Nabob*, the ablest, the most celebrated, the highest in rank, the highest in fortune, of all the fraternity. MAC., *Ess.*, Clive, (535a).

He is *the pianist* of the day. ONIONS, *Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 270.

This hero, so well-known that his name need not be mentioned, because he is *the champion*, *the victor* — who should he be except Siegfried? VERNON LEE, *The Victor of Xanten* (Westm. Gaz., No. 4961, 3b).

The Young Men's Christian Association would not deny that humility is a virtue. It is because there are some people who think it *the virtue*, that the row begins. CHESTERTON (Il. Lond. News, No. 3677, 495c).

"Good Housekeeping". *The Magazine for the Home*. Advertisement.

Observe the use of *the thing*, as in: Miss Pole clutched my arm, and begged me not to turn, for "it was not *the thing*". What "*the thing*" was I never could find out, but it must have been something eminently dull and tiresome. MRS. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. IX, 172.

He really looked quite *the genteel thing*, and was taken by everybody to be a person of consideration. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 22.

QUEST. Why was Richard the First called Coeur the Lion? — ANSW. Because it was rather *the thing* to talk French in those days. PUNCH.

NOTE I. This full-stressed *the* differs but little from another, which has the force of marking that of all possible specimens or varieties a particular one of special importance or significance is meant.

We spoke of many subjects, but not of *the* subject. (i. e. the subject which was nearest to my heart, etc.)

This is also the force of the definite article in the Shakespearean expression *to die the death* when, what is mostly the case, it is applied to the death inflicted by law.

She hath betray'd me, and shall *die the death*. ANT. and CLEOP., IV, 14, 26. Either to *die the death* or to abjure | For ever the society of men. MIDS., I, 1, 65.

For God commanded, saying, Honour thy father and mother; and, He that curseth father or mother, let him *die the death*. Bible, Matth., XV, 4.

II. Strong-stressed *the* may be used absolutely.

"How goes it?" — "All well," said Mr. Gills, pushing the bottle towards him. He took it up, and having surveyed and smelt it, said with extraordinary expressions: "*The?*" — "*The,*" returned the instrument-maker. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. IV, 32.

III. When it has become conventional to denote a particular person animal or thing in the above way, the definite article loses its strong stress, while the noun assumes the character of a proper name. (23.)

This is the case in *The Lord* (= God), *The Bible*, *the Scriptures*, *the Nativity*, *the Conquest*, *the Reformation*, *the Peninsula*, etc.

She thinks of nothing but the Isle of Wight, and she calls it *the Island*, as if there were no other island in the world. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. II, 17.

When London people talk of *the river*, they always mean the Thames. GÜNTHER, *Leerb.*, 76.

IV. To emphasize the notion of particular importance the noun is sometimes followed by an adjunct made up of *of* + the plural of the same noun.

The land question is *the question of questions* in Russia. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIV, 308a.

- d) that a person, animal or thing, in all their eminent characteristics is meant. A similar idea may also be expressed by the indefinite article. (7, d.) The definite article seems to have this function only after an intensive, mostly *quite*.

She was quite *the woman* of business, and always judged for herself. Mrs. GASKELL, *Cranford*, Ch. XIII, 238.

I was going on behind the screens, when a gentleman (quite *the gentleman*, I can assure you) stepped forwards and asked if I had any business he could arrange for me. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 167.

He is quite *the gentleman*. LYTTON, *Night and Morning*, 315.

Babcock was too much *the gentleman* to mention it again. ANSTEY, *Fallen Idol*, Ch. XVI, 209.

Compare with this also the construction in: Enrico was *of the Germans*, *German*. EDNA LYALL, *Knight-Errant*, Ch. I, 8.

6. a) The definite article is the descendant of the Old English neuter demonstrative pronoun *þæt*, which was used also as a definite article. Even in Present English the definite article sometimes has the force of either *this* or *that* as a demonstrative, or of *that* as a determinative.

Cæsar said to me, Darest thou, Cassius, now Leap in with me into this angry flood, And swim to yonder point? — Upon *the* word, Accoutred as I was, I plunged in. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 104. (*the* = *this*.)

He meditated curse more dread, And deadlier, on *the* clansman's head, Who, summon'd to his chieftain's aid, *The* signal saw and disobeyed. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, xi, 6. (The article before *clansman's head* is determinative, that before *signal* is demonstrative.)

And from his place on the coach-roof the eager young fellow looked down upon the city, with *the* sort of longing desire which young soldiers feel on the eve of a campaign. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.

In some combinations the use of the definite article instead of the demonstrative pronoun has become the rule. Thus in:

**for the day.** The hammering of the Steam-Boiler Works had stopped *for the day*. WALT. BES., *The Bell of St. Paul's*.

**upon the instant.** Light flashed up in the room *upon the instant*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 33. (The meaning of this phrase passes into that of *at the same instant*, *immediately*. It has another meaning in: Important decisions which have to be taken *on the instant*, are not likely to offer no occasion for criticism. *Spectator*, *Westm. Gaz.*, No 5388, 16c.)



**of the kind.** Nothing *of the kind* could happen to the heiress of Katzenellenbogen. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Spectre Bridegr., 164.  
Needless to say we do not anticipate anything *of the kind* happening. Westm. Gaz., No. 5219, 1b.

**at (for) the moment.** i. *At the moment* it (sc. the structure) has a somewhat incomplete appearance. II. Lond. News, No. 3832, 452.

ii. He looked down upon the basket, which he had *for the moment* forgotten. Dick., Chuz., Ch. XXXVI, 285a.

He cannot *for the moment* recall it to mind. Notes and Queries.

*For the moment* we are over-supplied. Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2a.

**for the purpose.** i. The young Count Von Altenburg had been recalled from the army *for the purpose*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Spectre Bridegroom, 155.

By an Order in Council, passed *for the purpose*, he has been promoted to the rank of an Admiral of the Fleet. Times.

ii. The fiddler plunged his hot face into a pot of porter, especially provided *for that purpose*. Dick., Christm. Carol, II, 46.

I occupy my place in the Cathedral, where we all went together, every Sunday morning, assembling first at school *for that purpose*. Id., Cop., Ch. XVIII, 132b.

**at (for) the time.** i. \* There was a heavy gale *at the time*. A Ship on Fire (Stof., Leesb., I, 3).

\*\* My aunt and I were *at that time* vacating the two cottages at Highgate. Dick., Cop., Ch. LV, 391a.

ii. (She had) her darlings about her (*for the time* neither quarrelling nor crying). CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. I, 1.

The definite article is also a full determinative in:

Slowly and sadly Enoch answer'd her. | "His head is low, and no man cares for him. | I think I have not three days more to live; I am *the man*". TEN., En. Arden. 897. (i. e. *that man* whom we are speaking about.)

b) The definite article, as the descendant of the old instrumental case *fȳ* of the neuter demonstrative *fæt*, is used adverbially before comparatives as in *the more the merrier*, *the worse for liquor*. Ch. XXX, 40.

c) The exact grammatical function of what appears as the definite article before certain predicative superlatives and before adverbial superlatives, as in *the actions of which we are the very proudest*, *he writes the worst*, is hard to define. Ch. XXX, 34—36.

7. The indefinite article has the special function of marking that our conception is one that has not yet been mentioned, and that it is not specialized. Its force may furthermore be:

a) that of a weak *one*, especially before the names of measures, as in: *a foot* high, wait *a minute*.

b) that of a weak *some* or *a certain* as in:

There is *a tide* in the affairs of men, | Which, taken at the flood, leads on to fortune. Jul. Cæs., IV, 3, 218.

Let *a man* go down with the proper messages, let *a servant* carry a note. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 18.

Once upon a time there was *a youth* named Kilwyth. Now Kilwyth set out on *a gray steed* strong of limb. ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt., § 274.

Note. In Early Modern English *some* often appears to have the value of the indefinite article, especially in connection with *certain*. FRANZ., *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 355; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, III, 272.

i. Gentle Lucetta, fit me with such weeds As may beseem *some* well-reputed page. *Two Gentleman*, II, 7, 43.

A man is never undone till he be hanged, nor never welcome to a place, till *some certain* shot be paid and the hostess say 'Welcome!' *Ib.*, II, 5, 6.

c) that of a weak *any* as in:

I know no man who has ever paid me *a* particular attention, whom I would not prefer to Mr. Surface. *SHER., School for Scand.*, III, 1, (391).

She was scrupulous in her devotions, good to the poor, never knowingly did anybody *a wrong*. *THACK., Virg.*, Ch. IV, 37.

*An island is a piece of land* surrounded by water. *ONIONS, Adv. Eng. Synt.*, § 175.

Note I. Compare with the above the following quotations in which *any* appears with weak stress, and, consequently, hardly differs from the indefinite article:

And so she sobbed on like *any* child. *CH. KINGSLEY, Herew.*, Ch. XIX, 84*b*.

Shakespeare foresaw the difficulty of representing a merchant... as executing a bond so hazardous in its conditions, that *any* child would shrink from signing it. *FURNESS, Note to 'Merch. of Ven.'*, I, 1, 2'. (*Macm. Eng. Clas.*)

He bathed her face with a care equal to *any* woman's. *ETH. M. DELL, The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. IV, 48.

Sometimes weak *any* is merely a metrical variant of the indefinite article.

Or, if there were *a* sympathy in choice, War, death or sickness did lay siege to it (sc. love), | Making it momentary as *a* sound, | Swift as *a* shadow, short as *any* dream. *Mids. Night Dream*, I, 1, 141-144.

But the meek maid | Swiftly forbore him ever, | being to him | Meeker than *any* child to *a* rough nurse, | Milder than *any* mother to *a* sick child. *TEN., Lanc. and El.*, 850-2.

Conversely the indefinite article sometimes has the value of strong *any*. There a dozen girls in this dead-alive neighbourhood, who are a thousand times prettier than you, and who can play, or paint, and all that, while you can't do *a thing*, and yet a fellow can't get you out of his head. *BAR. VON HUTTEN, Pam.*, VI, Ch. VI, 311.

For a comparison of the indefinite article with *any* see also MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, III, 276, FRANZ., *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 352, Anm. I.

II. As a weak *any*, the indefinite article is sometimes hardly distinguishable from the generalizing definite article. (5, *b*.) Thus it is difficult to see any difference between. *A lion is a beast of prey* and *The lion is a beast of prey*. (The indefinite article before *beast* is a weak *some*.) Compare MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 191. Similarly in the following quotations the meaning would hardly be changed by the use of the other article:

i. One eye had lost its pupil, and was glaring and spectral; but the other had a gleam of *a genuine devil* in it. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk.*, XXXII, 359.  
Charles was more of *a gentleman* than *a king*, and more of *a wit* than *a gentleman*.<sup>1)</sup>

1) I. SCHMIDT, *Eng. Gram.*, § 304.

A *cigarette* is for the trivial moments of life; a *cigar* for its fulfilments, its pleasant comfortable retrospections; but in real distress — in the solving of a question, the fighting of a difficulty — a *pipe* is man's eternal solace. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XII, 130.

- ii. I was ever of opinion that *the honest man* who married and brought up a large family, did more service than he who continued single, and only talked of population. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. I.

Old and broken-down as he (sc. the horse) looked, there was more of *the lurking devil* in him than in any young filly in the country. WASH. IRVING, Sketch-Bk.; XXXII, 359.

By disposition, perhaps, he was more of *the politician* than *the lawyer*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4919, 2b.

Note the varied practice in: Until pride be subdued, there is more hope of *a fool* than of *the sinner*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. IV, 53.

Thus also in the following quotation we may assume the suppression of either the indefinite or the generalizing definite article (31, b, Note IX). See also the latter part of the first sentence on this page.

In difficulty a silent tongue and a cool head are usually *man's* best weapons. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XV, 164.

III. Sometimes it is open to question whether the indefinite article is to be understood as a weak *any* or a weak *one*. Thus the following sentence is ambiguous:

You are not listening to *a* word I am saying. OSCAR WILDE, Dorian Gray, Ch. V, 89.

IV. Some nouns preceded by the indefinite article in the meaning of weak *any*, are equivalent to indefinite pronouns: Thus *a man*, *a fellow*, etc. are approximate equivalents of the Dutch *men*. (Ch. XL, 195, a.)

- d) to indicate that a person, animal or thing in all their eminent characteristics is meant (5, d), as in:

So was it when my life began: So is it now I am *a man*. WORDSWORTH. A man is never *a man*, till he can defy wind and weather, range the woods and wilds, sleep under a tree and live on hunter's fare. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 133).

But teach high thought, and amiable words And courtliness, and the desire of fame, And love of truth, and all that makes *a man*. TEN., Guin., 480. Since the author of "Tom Jones" was buried, no writer of fiction among us has been permitted to depict to his utmost power a *Man*. THACK., Pend., Pref. (The author has *man* printed in capitals.)

Note. Also in this function the indefinite article to a certain extent interchanges with the definite. (5, d.) This is shown by their alternative use in:

When you durst do it, then you were *a man*; And, to be more than what you were, you would | Be so much more *the man*. Macb., I, 7, 51.

"You are too much *a man of the world* not to see with the eyes of the world. If other people think Sotherton improved, I have no doubt that you will." — "I am afraid I am not quite so much *the man of the world* as might be good for me in some points." JANE AUSTEN, Mansfield Park, Ch. X, 102.

8. a) The indefinite article is the descendant of the Old English *an*,

which was used both as a numeral and as the indefinite article. Even in Late Modern English *a(n)* often has practically the same value as the numeral *one*. The use of *a(n)* instead of *one* causes the sentence stress to be thrown forward on to the following noun, which, as unity is the prominent idea in our minds, seems to be contrary to sense. It is especially frequent after:

1) the negative *not*. (Ch. XL, 119, Obs. I.)

He lay in the dark empty house, with *not a man, a woman, or a child*, to say he was kind to me in this or that, and for the memory of one kind word I will be kind to him. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 96.

2) certain prepositions. In this combination *a(n)* often has the secondary meaning of *the same*. For instances in SHAKESPEARE see ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 81; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, f 270. The prepositions referred to, are especially:

**at.** Seven *at a blow*. ANDREW LANG. *The Blue Fairy Book, The Brave Little Tailor*.

The tide of human progress is raised at intervals to higher levels *at a bound*. SARAH GRAND, *The Heavenly Twins*, I, 128.

He emptied the glass *at a draught*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVII, 243.

It see it all *at a glance*. BYRON, *Our Boys*, I, (12).

To catch a hundred fish *at a haul*. WEBST., s. v. *haul*.

O proud Death! | What feast is toward in thine eternal cell, | That thou so many princes *at a shot* | So bloodily hast struck? HAMLET, V, 2, 377.

Martha ... told them ... how many hours she worked *at a stretch*. *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 72. (Also, but less frequently (*up*) *on a stretch*, see below).

Its (sc. of the Budget) rejection by the Lords would *at a stroke* reduce the House of Commons to an inferior place in the Constitution. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5137, 1c.

Two *at a time*. MURRAY.

How long do you keep him out *at a time*? DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 5.

They saw that he sat for a few minutes *at a time* like one in a brown study. *Id.*, *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. XXIV, 91a.

For months *at a time* (they lived) on the most amicable terms. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 393.

He had transmuted the subject *at a touch*. MRS. WARD, *Rob. Elsm.*, I, 149.

**in.** At this point the Republicans rose *in a body* and shouted "Vive la République." *Times*.

"How delightful!" cried Marian and Christie *in a breath*. PHILIPS, *Mrs. Bouverie*, 73.

They were crying, keening and laughing *in a breath*. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*.

Loder realised *in a glance* that the most distinguished of women could wear such ornaments and not have her beauty eclipsed. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XIII, 142.

*In a word* it was one of those unparalleled storms. WASH. IRV., *The Storm-Ship* (STOR., *Handl.*, I, 83).

**of.** You'll find two *of a face* as soon as *of a mind*. PRODV.

Birds *of* 1 *feather* flock together. *Id.*

The gentleman of the profession ben't all *of a mind*. SHER., *Rivals*, I, 1.

We are *of a mind* once more. *Id.*, *School for Scand.*, III.

At Spa no two guests are *of a nation*. *Ib.*, II, 2.

All their proceedings were *of a piece* with this demand. MAC., *Hist.*, I Ch. II, 232.



I detest people who are always doing 'outré' things like that — it's all *of a piece* with their fads about no stays and Jaeger's woollen clothes. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XIII, 110.

The power of these princes was much *of a size* with that of the Kings of Sparta. SWIFT.<sup>1)</sup>

**on.** They were both tall and their eyes were *on a level*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIII, 319.

I don't put myself *on a level* with you. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. XL, 319b.

Our prudery in this respect is just *on 'a par* with the artificial blushes of a courtesan. SHER., *Critic*, I, 1.

We always played seven hours *on a stretch*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. I, 2. (Also, apparently with no appreciable difference (*up*) *on the stretch*, as in If he goes to London for months *upon the stretch*. Mrs. WOOD, *East Lynne*, III, 50.<sup>2)</sup> Compare also: He then sleeps for six weeks *on an end*. PUNCH. (= a an één stuk).

**to.** He always succeeded in being accurate *to a figure*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 482, 130a.

The very gold and silver fish ... *to a fish*, went gasping round and round their little world in slow and passionless excitement. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 61. (= *not one fish excepted*.)

The monks were Danes *to a man*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XXVI, 108b.

If the men wavered at all, the women, *to a woman*, were on Johnny's side. KATH. TYNAN, *Johnny's Luck*.

**without.** Mrs. Bretton ... desired me to open my drawers and show my dresses; which I did *without a word*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XX, 258.

Note I. The following quotations may show that the numeral *one* is also used in some of the above collocations. Thus after:

**at.** You do not know what it is, *at one blow*, to be deserted by a lovely and fascinating creature. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XI, 89.

The appointment of the Bishop of Stepney *at one bound* to the Archbishopric of York has startled many people. REV. of REV., CCXXVIII, 517a.

These myriads of cows stretching under her eyes from the far east to the far west, outnumbered any she had ever seen *at one glance* before. HARDY, *Tess*, III, Ch. XVI, 133. (Also *in one glance*: The young stranger, comprehending *in one glance* the result of the observation ... answered [etc.]. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. II, 43.)

If we can dispense with physical force, let us abolish the Navy altogether and save £ 32 000 000 *at one stroke*. REV. of REV., CCXIX, 232a.

If the Peers are determined not to assent to the Licensing Bill in anything like its present shape, then it is better that it should be disposed of *at one stroke*. Westm. Gaz.

Go = a quantity of anything supplied *at one time*. MURRAY.

Scripture subjects; such as I have never seen since in the hands of pedlars, without seeing the whole of Peggotty's brother's house again, *at one view*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 15b.

**in.** *In one word* things between Sir William and me must be behind the curtain. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. man*, V.

**of.** He has conspired against me, like the rest, and they are but birds *of one feather*. DICK., *Ch uz.*, Ch. III, 22b.

The Bishops who lately met at Lambeth, were *of one mind* with the Trade Unionists. REV. of REV., CCXXVI, 311a.

1) MURRAY.

2) FLÜGEL.

Compare with the above also: i. Mr. Pickwick and his followers rose *as one man*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXIV, 218.

All western and south-western England rose *as one man*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § 5, 82.

Spain rose *as one man* against the stranger. *Ib.*, Ch. V, § 4.

The camp rose to its feet *as one man*. BRET HARTE, *The Luck of Roaring Camp.*, 6.

ii. They (sc. the birds) will rise, when they finally do go, *like one bird*, will cross the sea in a large and various crowd [etc.]. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5454, 3a.

iii. She wondered by what gift he could be sleepless and saddlesore, serene and temperately gay, all *at the one time*. HAL. SUTCL., *The Lone Adventure*, Ch. II, 36.

iv. She said *in the same breath* that it would be ungenerous not to marry Boldwood, and that she couldn't do it to save her life. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XX, 150.

Quesada, the conqueror of New Granada, ... cannot be named *in the same breath* with Vasco Nunes de Balbao. *Athen.*, No. 4451, 183a.

v. That you should make fun of his infirmities and vulgarities *in the self-same breath*... is simply unendurable. JAMES PAYN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

II. Instances of the indefinite article being used in the sense of the numeral *one* or *the same* when no preposition precedes, seem to be very rare. The following is the only one to hand at the moment of writing:

These foils have all *a length*. *Hamlet*, V, 2, 276.

b) Sometimes the indefinite article has the full force of an indefinite pronoun. It is then practically equivalent to *some* or *a certain*. We find it in this meaning especially:

1) in certain expressions such as:

a) *after a sort (kind), after a fashion, for a time, in a manner, in a measure, in a sense, of a kind (sort), (up)on a day;*

β) *to have a way, to have a trick.*

i. \* The Nationalists, indeed, have a policy, *after a sort*, though even they are not by any means agreed, either in their objects or in their methods. *Times*.

\*\* The hotel ... has separate bedrooms and beds of a sort, and the traveller is done for (or more frequently "done") *after a fashion*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6311, 3a.

\*\*\* The effect of the successes of Edward the First and of Henry the Fifth was to make France, *for a time*, a province of England. *Mac., Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 18.

On the south of the Ebro the English won a great battle, which *for a time* decided the fate of Leon and Castile. *Ib.*, 19.

Flying-fish = a fish which can sustain itself in the air *for a time* by means of the long pectoral fins. *ANNAND., Stud. Dict.*

\*\*\*\* He complained loudly of thus being *in a manner* dispossessed of his territories by mere bugbears. *WASH. IRV., Dolf. Heyl. (Stof., Handl.*, I, 114).

Torture in a public school is as much licensed as the knout is in Russia. It would be ungentlemanlike (*in a manner*) to resist it. *THACK., Van. Fair*, I, Ch. V, 44.

\*\*\*\*\* Goodness *in a measure* implies wisdom. *SMILES, Charac.*, I, 8<sup>1</sup>)

\*\*\*\*\* This was *in a sense* compulsory upon the writer. *MRS. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë*, 403.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *measure*, 14, b.

It was *in a sense*, the great event of his life! EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. IV, 39.

*In a sense* it is true; in another sense it is false. Athen., No. 447, 67b. (Here the indefinite is even used in contrast with *another*.)

\*\*\*\*\* He had, of course, predecessors *of a kind*. Athen.<sup>1)</sup>

He held convictions *of a kind*, but what these convictions were, nobody knew. NORRIS, *My Friend Jim*.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\*\*\*\* It was *upon a day*, *a summer's day*. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CII. Now *on a day*—about the year 1054—... Lady Godiva sat... in her bower with her youngest son,... at her knee. Ch. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 9a.

ii. \* Brown Major, *had a trick* of bringing up unpleasant subjects. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 94.

\*\* The carrier *had a way* of keeping his head down, like his horse. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 14b.

He *had a way* of suggesting, not teaching—putting things into my head, and then leaving them to work out their own problems. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. IV, 19.

Note I. There can be little doubt that *some* or *a certain* could be substituted for the indefinite article without detriment to idiomatic propriety in most or all of the above collocations. Sufficient documentary evidence is not, however, to hand at the moment of writing to prove this.

She was perhaps unconsciously wishful that he might *in some measure* be subject to her influence. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. I, 3.

II. Sometimes the indefinite article would seem to be preferable to *some*, when the latter might be understood in the sense of *some considerable*. (Ch. XL, 178, Obs. II). Thus in the combination *for a time*.

III. Also *one*, partly as a numeral, partly as an indefinite pronoun, sometimes appears as an approximate equivalent of the indefinite article in the above sense.

"Are they all brothers, sir?" inquired the lady who had carried the "Davy" or safety lamp. "*In one sense* they are, ma'm", replied Squeers. DICK., *Nich. Nickl.*, Ch. VI, 29a.

2) before the proper name of a person preceded by a title. When the title is absent, *one* takes the place of *a*. (Ch. XL, 159.)

She is engaged to be married to *a* lieutenant Osborne, a very old flame. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIV, 145.

He inquired for *a* Mr. Maldon. Miss BRADDON, *Lady Audley's Secret*, I, Ch. V, 57.

Before abstract nouns the indefinite article often has the value of the indefinite numeral *some*. (38—40.)

I find *a knowledge* of the Greek and Roman types of mind a help, not a hindrance to a study of the conditions of modern life. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 469, 578a. Of late years, the value of *a knowledge* of natural science has become generally recognized as a potent force in our educational system. Bookman, No. 261, 103.

d) Further pregnant meanings of the indefinite article may be observed in:

1) Scrooge was not *a man* to be frightened by echoes. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 20. (= *a kind of (a) man*, the word-group *a man* being a kind of prop-word. Ch. XL, 195, a.)

2) His habit is to regale his readers with four false quantities *to a page*. MAC., *Add.*, (736a). (= *to each page*.)

1) TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, X. 2) ROORDA, *Dutch and Eng. comp.*, I, § 17.

- e) The indefinite article is sometimes found before a numeral (+ plural noun) to remove its definiteness or to express an approximate estimate. This usage, which at one time was as common in English as it is in Modern Dutch, is now usual only when the numeral is preceded by *good* (Ch. XXVI, 17, *a*, Note II), and before *many* and *few* (Ch. IV, 6). See also MURRAY, s. v. *A*, adj.<sup>2</sup>, 2.
- f) What appears as an indefinite article now in such expressions as *twice a day*, is in reality a worn-down proclitic form of the Old English preposition *an* or *on*. It was at first used only before nouns denoting time, but, when its meaning as a preposition was no longer felt, it came also to be placed before other nouns denoting measure, as in *a penny a mile*, *sixpence a pound*, *tenpence a hundred*, *so much a head*. This distributive use of the indefinite article appears now as a modification of the numerical meaning. (7, *a*.) Compare MURRAY, s. v. *A*, adj.<sup>2</sup>, 4; prep.<sup>1</sup>, 8, *b*; SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2046; MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 191.

Note I. The following quotations may show that other idioms with approximately the same meaning as that of the indefinite article in the above combinations, and corresponding to those used in Dutch, are current in English also:

- α) with the definite article: i. Wheat was at twenty shillings *the quarter*. Mac., Hist., I, Ch. III, 409.
- ii. Favoured spots are pointed out in Manitoba in which wheat has given 60 bushels *to the acre*. Times.  
The average yield of the district this year is 30 bushels *to the acre*. Ib.  
The amount of dirt in the Chicago atmosphere, at a height of 35 ft., is six tons *to the acre*. Westm. Gaz.  
Oxford were rowing at about 34 *to the minute*. Times, No. 1839, 259b.
- iii. He bullied and punished me; not two or three times *in the week*, nor once or twice *in the day*, but continually. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. I, 5.  
Two or three evenings *in the week* he used to disappear mysteriously for several hours. CH. KINGSLEY, Alt. Locke, Ch. VI, 68.  
He devotes one day *in the week* to receiving the widows and the orphans. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 151.  
Twice *in the week*, however, under the graceful direction of Stella, there were public days at the deanery. D. LAING PURVES, Life of Swift, 27.  
Give him ten drops of this in a little water, every thirty minutes; that is to say twice *in the hour*. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. XI, 95.  
How many posts have you *in the day* here? MURRAY, s. v. *post*, 4.
- β) with the indefinite article: i. The trees blew steadfastly one way, never writhing round, and scarcely tossing back their boughs once *in an hour*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXV.  
He comes in his cab twice or thrice *in a week*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. V, 51.  
They (sc. the old bay posters) were drawing my aunt's yellow chariot, in which she never went out but thrice *in a year*. d., Sam. Titm., Ch. VIII, 91.  
My dear girl has been to see us lately every day, sometimes twice *in a day*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. LX, 500.
- ii. His habit is to regale his readers with four false quantities *to a page*. Mac., Add., (736a).



- ;) with **each**: Among the musical disciples who assembled, one evening *in each week*, to receive his instructions in psalmody, was Katrina van Tassel. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *The Legend of Sleepy Hollow*, 350.
- δ) with **every**: i. Twice *every Sunday* did we march down the centre aisle of St. Mary's church. MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christm.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 66).

ii. This medal is to be awarded once *in every five years*. Times.

II. Also the Latin *per* is frequently used in a sense similar to that of the above *a*, especially in language referring to the paying or receiving of money. In this combination *day*, *month* and *year* are mostly severally replaced by *diem*, *ensem* and *annum*.

i. \* They begin, about fifty, to attend twice *per diem* at the polite churches and chapels. FIELDING, *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. VIII, 16.

\*\* The salary is Rs. 500 *per mensem*, rising by annual increments of Rs. 50 to Rs. 750 *per mensem*. Athen., No. 4393, 145c.

\*\*\* This unlucky page engaged in an evil hour at six pounds ten *per annum*, was a source of continual trouble to me. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XLVIII, 343b. Her (Lady Byron's) sole income at this time was £ 130 *per annum*. Life of Byron (Chamb., Childe Harold).

ii. The works of George Eliot... in 19 Volumes. Also sold separately, price 5 s. *per volume*. Cabinet Edition.

The writer suggests various methods of preventing waste of what is still the cheapest source of light *per candle power*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 171b. The production *per head* sank in Victoria from £ 26 in 1871 to £ 25 in 1901. Ib., CCXXXI, 256a.

The remuneration will be on a scale of 1s. 6d. *per paper* examined. Acad. and Lit.

Mr. Wyndham promises us a tax of 2s. *per quarter* on corn and flour. Westm. Gaz.

#### USE.

9. When our conceptions are of a nature as described above, the article, whether definite or indefinite, is yet often suppressed. Though the suppression is sometimes simply a matter of arbitrary usage, and any attempt to account for it would often seem to be futile, yet it will be found that in the majority of cases there are certain well founded reasons for it.

These reasons are chiefly the following:

- a) The noun from the nature of its application denotes a conception thought of within certain limits, and cannot be accompanied by any specializing adjunct, so that there is no need for either article. This is the case with proper names when used in their ordinary function, as in *John is a lazy fellow*, *England is a mighty empire*. For those cases when proper names, owing to a peculiar application, are accompanied by either the definite or indefinite article, see 22 ff.

The omission of the article is often extended to ordinary common nouns, when they are applied in a way which causes them to resemble proper names, as in *Will you help me, father?* *There's father coming*. For details see 16, 43.

- b) The grammatical character of the noun is modified so as to resemble that of other parts of speech which have no adnominal modifiers:
- 1) The noun used as nominal part of the predicate or as predicative adnominal adjunct often approximates more or less to an adjective, with the result that the article is omitted (Ch. XXIII, 16). For details see 44—52.
  - 2) The noun has assumed the character of an indefinite pronoun or numeral, the modification often entailing the loss of the article. Thus we find *Things had come to this*, *He has plenty of money*, because *things* and *plenty* are respectively synonymous with the indefinite *it* and *much*. For details see 57—60.
- c) The 'specializing is vague, so that there is no call for a word whose chief function is to announce the fact that the conception indicated by the noun should be understood in a specialized way. Thus we find *After dinner he went for a walk*, *He was taken to hospital*, because the specializing notions are but dimly thought of. For details see 15.
- d) The noun is part of an expression whose component parts are not thought of separately, but are understood as denoting a kind of unit. Thus we say *to drop anchor*, *to change countenance*, *to say grace*, etc. because these expressions stand for one idea. For details see 63.
- e) To the above causes, which make themselves felt in ordinary language, literary as well as colloquial, we may add the universal *vis inertiae*, i. e. the desire of saving time, space and trouble, which is especially prevalent in commercial language, and in a still higher degree in the language of telegrams and advertisements. The article being the part of speech, which of all others can be best dispensed with, it is but natural that it should be the first to be dropped. Thus for *at foot of bridge*, *tram-terminus* and *facing main entrance to palace*, which is a portion of an advertisement, ordinary language would have *at the foot of the bridge*, *the tram-terminus*, and *facing the main entrance to the palace*.
- f) It stands to reason that, when the noun is preceded by a modifier which, besides other functions, has the power of indicating specialization, there is no occasion to use the definite article. Thus we say *this book*, *my book*. *John's book*, not *\*the this book*, *\*the my book*, *\*the John's book*. Thus also *the king's book*, in which the definite article belongs to the modifier, and where the use of an additional definite article as a modifier of the head-word alone would occasion an incongruous accumulation of articles. But there is no such reason to drop the article in the periphrastic equivalent of the last-mentioned collocation: *the book of the king*, in which, on the contrary, its absence would result in an impossible construction *\*book of the king*. Similarly when an attributive genitive is modified by a demonstrative pronoun, a possessive pronoun or another genitive, as in *this boy's book*, *my brother's book*, *my master's mistress's maid*, usage invariably rejects the definite article.

In a collocation containing a classifying genitive (Ch. XXIV, 44, Obs. V), the definite article may, however, belong to the head-word:

*The ladies' umbrellas which I sold that day, fetched a higher price than the gentlemen's umbrellas.* Compare also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2059.

- g) Finally it must be observed that in verse the article, whether definite or indefinite, is often discarded, when it would interfere with the measure.

i. *Sweetest nut* has *sourest rind*. As you like it, III, 2, 115.

ii. There rode | Full slowly by a knight, *lady*, and *dwarf*. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 187.

Conversely it is, for the same reason, sometimes used in verse, where ordinary prose would reject it.

It is not that I died *the death*. BYRON, *Parisina*, XIII.

He goes on Sunday to *the Church*. LONGF., *Vil. Blacksmith*, V.

His hair is crisp, and black and long, | His face is like *the tan*. *Ib.*, II.

The above seem to be the principal causes that may be responsible for the suppression of the article. They operate both in Dutch and in English, but frequently take effect in one language, not in the other. It is especially the definite article that is more frequently dropped in English than in Dutch, chiefly owing to the fact that in English it has retained more of its original demonstrative or determinative force than in Dutch. It is hardly necessary to observe that when strong-stressed (5, c), its suppression is out of the question.

Conversely it will be seen that the indefinite article is often found in positions in English, where the Dutch idiom rejects it. In both languages, however, the use or suppression of either article often seems to be quite arbitrary, and presents a great many inconsistencies, which baffle all explanation.

Owing to the multiplicity and uncertainty of the causes that may be assigned for the use or suppression of the articles, it is particularly difficult to discuss the details with any degree of method. The following is the order of discussion which at the moment of writing seemed to be the most rational and convenient.

#### THE USE OF THE INDIVIDUALIZING DEFINITE ARTICLE IN DETAIL.

##### THE DEFINITE ARTICLE BEFORE COMMON NOUNS.

10. Conceptions primarily undefined, may become defined through being individualized or specialized. This may, or may not, occasion the use of the definite article, according to the nature of the specializing adjunct.
11. When the individualizing is expressed by an adnominal clause, the definite article is used almost regularly.

He forgot to return *the money I had lent him*.

*The circumstances recorded in this story*, took place some score of years ago. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 10.

Note the usual absence of the article in the phrase. *Time was (came) [when (or that) etc.]*.

- i. *Time was* he would have envied the dandies their fine horses in Rotten Row. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 311.

*Time was* when you called him better names than rogue and swindler. *Id.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 244.

*Time came* when you might stand in the little bare stone church on the hill in rapt admiration of that lovely face, wondering what manner of man it was that painted it. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-Heart Gillian*, Ch. VII, 49.

- ii. *The time had been* when no such exhortations would have been necessary. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXIV, 367.

*The time was* when we might have a good piece of salmon up from London for you. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. XXII, 167.

Compare also: *There was a time* when the two were inseparable. ROORDA, *Dutch and English Comp.*, § 12.

12. When the individualizing is expressed by a prepositional word-group, the omission of the article is more common.

Apart from the defining being sometimes more or less vague or uncertain (57), this seems to be chiefly owing to the fact that the prepositional word-group, if not containing the preposition *of*, is felt more or less as an adverbial adjunct. Compare: *events in South Africa* (*Times*) with *the events of the last few years*. Thus also *Boulevards in Paris were thronged at night* is practically identical with *In Paris Boulevards were thronged at night* (*Graphic*).

Also adjuncts with *of* are often incapable of causing the article to be used, when they form a kind of unit with their head-word: *Members of Congress*. When there is no such unity, the suppression is much less usual. See the quotations marked with a †.

For convenience of comparison with later quotations the following arrangement has been made alphabetical, the singulars having been divided from the plurals.

#### Singulars.

**force.** All these studies help to an understanding of the relationship of national life to *force of arms*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 473, 690a.

**literature.** † *In English literature of the eighteenth century*, Berkeley and Butler and Hume are greater names than Gray and Collins. DOWDEN <sup>1)</sup>.

**love.** † You think I will risk my life and liberty for *love of the old gentleman*. R(OBERT) L(EWIS) ST(EVENSON).<sup>1)</sup>

**opinion.** *Opinion in Austria Hungary* is clearly in a very unsettled state. *Westm. Gaz.*

If *opinion in the press* is to be taken, both sides are rather nervous at what is suggested. *Ib.*, No. 6329, 1c.

**trade.** i. Durban lives simply on the up-country trade — *the trade of the two Republics*, whose annexation is now demanded. *Morning Leader*.  
*The trade of the city* is at a standstill. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6353, 1c.

ii. *Trade with the United States* is decidedly better than it was. *Ib.*, No. 4977, 2b.  
They have been hailing the Underwood tariff as a new opportunity for *British trade with the United States*. *Ib.*, No. 6353, 2a.

**war.** In *the war of the future* civilization itself may disappear. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVIII, 513a.

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 171.



## Plurals.

**events.** i *The events of the last fortnight* in Tripoli show that the Italian occupation even of the coast towns is not to be effected by a mere military promenade. *Times*, No. 1818, 882d.

That fear had been dispelled by *the events of recent years*. *Ib.*, No. 1819, 904a.

ii. This is the most valuable lesson taught to us and to others by *events in the Mediterranean*. *Ib.*, No. 1814, 803a.

I want you to understand how impossible it is, after *recent events in Canada* that your present system can be maintained. *Ib.*, No. 1815, 820a

**members.** As in every other crisis, *Members of Congress* are trimming to the political demagogues who shout the loudest. *Times*.

*Members of the Liberal Party* will have read with the greatest satisfaction the words in which the Prime Minister declared [etc.]. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5459, 1b.

**reviews.** *Weekly reviews of the home and foreign situation*... reveal clearly the profound concern and dissatisfaction with which all classes of society regard the international outlook and the present situation of Germany. *Times*, No. 1815, 815c.

**trade returns.** It seems safe to predict that *the trade returns for the remainder of the year* will not come up to the average of the first seven years. *Times*, No. 1814, 799c.

Note I. Sometimes the absence of the article may be due to the stressless nature of the noun, as part of an expression that has the value of a mere preposition. (65, c.) See especially ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 31.

\* He was at first... somewhat annoyed with himself, *at feel of* the thrall of her beauty. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. VIII, 59.

\*\* Here *at sound of* their voices, madame came bustling in from the back. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. IV, 35.

And suddenly *at sound of* quiet footsteps, you might turn and blink your startled eyes in amazement, as they fell on the living image of the pictured face. *Ib.*, Ch. VII, 49.

He turned *at sound of* a step over-stream. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. VII, 101.

*At sound of* her words, his secret ambitions quickened to stronger life. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XXII, 233. (Thus *passim*, throughout the book, always without the article.)

\*\*\* M. le Curé... (was) gratified *at thought of* this mighty widening of her outlook. *Ib.*, Ch. IX, 67.

II. In the following quotations the absence of the article seems to be due to the demands of measure. Compare ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>1</sup>, § 89; FRANZ., *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 267.

Who comes so past in *silence of the night*? *Merch. of Ven.*, V, 1, 25.

If you would walk in *absence of the sun*. *Ib.*, 128.

Will you be pricked in *number of our friends*. *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 1, 216.

The 'why' is plain as *way to parish church*. *At you like it*, II, 7, 52.

13. When the individualizing is indicated by an adnominal noun in the common case (Ch. XXIII, 3, *b*; 12), the definite article is frequently dropped.

This seems to be due to a variety of causes:

- a) These adjuncts often partake more or less of the character of classifying adjuncts (Ch. XXIII, 13, Obs. II and III), which, as has been pointed out in 5, Note II, are of no influence as to the use of the definite article. Thus in *London tailors have raised their prices* the absence of the definite article may be partly due to the fact that, perhaps, more is meant than simply tailors that carry on business in the metropolis, there being, possibly, an intention to refer to a certain degree of superior skill by which these representatives of the tailoring trade are distinguished.
- b) The defining notion is sometimes more or less vague. (57.) Thus in the above sentence the adnominal noun *London* marks off the representatives of the tailoring trade of the metropolis with less distinctness than would be done by the prepositional word-group *of London*, the employment of which, accordingly, would entail the use of the definite article.
- c) The adjunct is often felt as an equivalent of a noun in the genitive. (9, f.) Thus in the same sentence *London* stands practically for *London's*.
- d) The adjunct is often more or less adverbial in import (Ch. XXIII, 12, c): *London tailors* as used in the above sentence may also be interpreted as *tailors in London*.

## Singulars.

**interest.** Douglas owed his appointment to *Court interest*. STEPHEN GWENN, Thom. Moore, Ch. II, 33.

**life.** How proud he would be, if he could show his young friend a little of *London life*! THACK., Virg., Ch. XVI, 168.

**postage.** Previous to the inauguration of *penny postage*... the cost of sending a letter from London to Edinburgh or Glasgow was 1 s. 3½ d. T. P.'s Weekly; No. 471; 634b.

**practice.** The German, Paul Haenlein, constructed a dirigible balloon much more on the lines of *present day practice*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 30a.

**trade.** Nowhere have these complaints been more just than in *the China trade*. Times.

Similar circumstances exist in *the New Zealand* and in *the South Africa trade*. Id.

## Plurals.

**men.** He is... a Cork man, and *Cork men* are a race apart. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 496, 577b.

**people.** i. *The Edinburgh people* are, indeed, the most responsible of all God's creatures. Id. No. 471, 620a.

ii. *Edinburgh people* have a way of their own. Ib.

**politics.** *Cape politics* had been so disagreeable a subject that persons in authority at the Colonial Office dismissed them from their minds. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 48.

**streets.** He was a wanderer in *London streets*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 472, 652b.

14. Also when the individualizing is effected by an adjective (Ch. XXVIII, 2, b; 3), the definite article often remains absent.

This is due, in the main, to the same causes as those which are responsible for the dropping of the article in the case of the individualizing being expressed by an adnominal noun in the common case. (13.) Thus in *All men are swayed and chained by public opinion* (LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. III, 86),

- a) the adjective *public* is more or less classifying;
- b) the notion of defining implied by the adjective is more or less vague;
- c) the adjective is practically equivalent to a genitive.

In *The year 1907 was a boom year for British and European trade* (The Nation, in Westm. Gaz., No. 4961, 16c), the adjectives *British* and *European* are distinctly adverbial in import, as may be seen by comparing the above sentence with *The year 1908 was a year of gradually declining trade in Great Britain. Trade at home remained fairly good until May* (ib.).

The suppression is, apparently, regular in many word-groups such as *English, French, etc., history, literature* (but *the English language*), *policy, influence, commerce, trade; English (French, etc.), public opinion, public feeling* (but *the popular or general sentiment*), *popular liberty* and, probably, many more in which the adjective has coalesced into a kind of unit with the noun it modifies.

#### Singulars.

**blood.** But Matilda, though of *the royal Saxon blood*, was not the heir to the monarchy. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XLII, 448.

**commerce.** It has been the fashion for some time now to decry *British Commerce* at every conceivable opportunity. *Times*.

**diplomacy.** The whole basis of *German European diplomacy* has been founded on the idea of Turkey in Europe as an institution. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 49, 148.

**drama.** Our leading dramatist has some interesting and curious remarks attributed to him concerning *American and English drama*. *West. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 7b.

**feeling.** In the ten days since the affair of the caravans had been reported from Persia, *public feeling* had run high. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XXV, 275. (Compare *sentiment*.)

**government.** For all practical purposes the great machine of *German government* remains in fact and in theory what it was before. *Westm. Gaz.*

**history.** In this by-place of nature, there abode, in a remote period of *American history*, ... a worthy wight of the name of Ichabod Crane. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Book*, XXXII, 344.

**influence.** *German influence* has made rapid strides during the last few weeks. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5024, 2c.

**interest.** *Public interest* in it (sc. the National Insurance Bill) has rather increased than diminished during the months it has been before the public. *Times*, No. 1816, 843b.

**learning.** Erasmus embodied for the Teutonic peoples the quickening influence of the *New Learning*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VI, § 4, 306. (Thus regularly before the name of this movement in this book.)

**liberty.** Ghent was what it ought always to have remained, the bulwark, as it had been the cradle of *popular liberty*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 900a.

**opinion.** *Public opinion*, in these cases, is always of the feminine gender — not the world, but the world's wife. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VII, Ch. II, 455.

Mr. Redmond understands *Irish opinion* as we cannot pretend to understand it, but there are some points about *British opinion* which we hope he will bear in mind. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 1c.

No student of the French Press can have failed to detect the existence of a similar spirit among influential sections of *French opinion*. *Times*, No. 1819, 903b. (Thus, apparently, regularly.)

**policy.** *British policy* was admirably expounded by the Prime Minister. *Westm. Gaz.* It was reported that my right hon. friend... had in a public speech used language attacking *German policy*. *Times*, No. 1819, 893c.

**pressure.** They hold together against the *Imperial pressure*. *Westm. Gaz.*

**recollection.** His leadership of the Opposition in the trying years that followed during the ministries of Sir Henry Campbell-Bannerman and Mr. Asquith, will be fresh in the *general recollection*. *Times*, No. 1819, 894a.

**ritual.** Her (sc. Elizabeth's) taste revolted from the bareness of *Protestant ritual*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 378.

**sentiment.** This is in tune with the *popular sentiment*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCV, 27b. We find an admirable summary of the *general sentiment* in the felicitous speech which Lord Rosebery made. *Westm. Gaz.* (Compare *feeling*.)

**trade.** (This) would not compensate him for what he must lose, if the *European trade* should be driven by his violence to some other quarter. MAC, Clive, (513a).

#### Plurals.

**affairs.** The prominence... given to *Canadian affairs* will be of service to Canada. *Times*, No. 1816, 943b.

**circumstances.** It cannot be said too often in *present circumstances* that the credit of the Government is an asset of all parties. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 1c.

**conditions.** In *existing conditions* it seems fairly certain that only after a victorious war can Austria hope to gain her ends. *Westm. Gaz.*

**events.** *Recent events*... have drawn the eyes of the world to Canada. *Times*, No. 1816, 843b.

**elections.** A number of Canadian correspondents have written, complaining of opinions alleged to have been expressed by the *Times* on the result of the *Canadian elections*. *Times*, No. 1815, 819c.

**magazines.** "T. P.'s magazine" maintains its unique position among *English magazines*. *Advertisement*.

**politics.** It was an innovation in *American politics*. *Westm. Gaz.*

The following quotation may further illustrate the arbitrariness of usage: If the gap between *intelligent native opinion* (= the opinion of intelligent natives) and the *official bureaucracy* is to be bridged, *official India* must necessarily revise some of its traditions. *Westm. Gaz.*

Note especially:

**in due time (season, course, course of time).** The party was landed at the Royal Gardens *in due time*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 54.



*In due course of time* they got into the hot air of London. W. BLACK, *Madcap*, V, Ch. VII, 69.

(the) old(en) time(s) (days). i. \* A good old gentleman, one of the *olden time*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXIV, 260.

\*\* The talking was about *the olden times*. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 35.

In *the old days*... our legislators seem to have had more staying power. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 4b.

ii. The heavy drops fall drip, drip, upon the broad flagged pavement, called, from *old time*, the Ghost's Walk. DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. II, 6.

\*\* If not of those goodly proportions that Maypoles were wont to present in *olden times*, (it) was a fair young ash. *Id.*, *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. I, 1b.

We'll talk over Boniface and *old times*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 316. In *old days* men managed by hook or crook to publish Scandals of the Court or Horrible Revelations of High Life. CHESTERTON. (*Il. Lond. News*, No. 3684 A, 741.)

Compare with this *in ancient times*, which does not, apparently, admit of a similar variation.

This quarter derives its appellation from having been, in *ancient times*, the residence of the Dukes of Brittany. *WASH. IRV.*, *The Sketch-Bk.*, XXV, 242.

15. Some nouns denoting conceptions primarily defined (4), may yet stand without the definite article, when not accompanied by any specializing adjunct (5), the omission being partly a survival of Old English practice (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2061), partly the outcome of the factors mentioned in 9, c, d, and e. Compare also 63.

Omission is especially common:

- a) before the names of certain localities, institutions and establishments, such as *bed, chapel, class, college, confessional, court, church, dock, (ex)change, harbour, home, hospital, jail, market, port, prison, school, town*, when the reference is rather to the proceedings carried on there than to the material thing. MURRAY, *s. v. at*, 5; *in*, 1, b; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 214; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 35.

The altered application sometimes causes some of these nouns to be practically abstract nouns, and the suppression is favoured by the specializing being often so vague that the noun appears almost used in a generalizing sense. (7.) It is, accordingly, sometimes open to question, whether it is the individualizing or generalizing definite, or the indefinite article which is suppressed. (7, c, Note II.) Compare also 36 and 63.

The omission of the article seems to be favoured, and in the case of some nouns even conditioned, by the presence of prepositions denoting a relation of either place or time.

To the above nouns we may add certain names of actions, which resemble them in their altered meanings, and also under the same conditions more or less regularly reject the definite article. Such are *auction, council, lesson, mass, meeting, office, rehearsal, service, term, trial*, etc.

*Town*, without the article, means the town where we live or the large town, often the metropolis, referred to in our daily conversation. *The town* indicates the place referred to in a narrative with

which we have no further connexion, and also an aggregate of buildings, institutions, etc., rather than a place of human residence. MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 214; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 35.

**auktion.** Last year a single article sold for £ 10.000 *at auction*. Times, No. 1809, 701c.

The captain sells the fish *by auction*. Daily News, 1881, 29 Dec. 6.4.<sup>1)</sup>

These... were put up from time to time *to auction*. ROGERS, Pol. Econ., XIII, 21.<sup>1)</sup>

**bed.** i. It would have been in vain for Scrooge to plead that the weather and the hour were not adapted to pedestrian purposes; that *bed* was warm, and [etc.]. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, II, 35.

In due course there was *bed*; where, but for the resumption of the studies which took place in dreams, were rest and sweet forgetfulness. Id., Domb., Ch. XII, 110.

ii. To be (lie, stay, etc.) *in bed*. To go retire, etc. *to bed*.

She has not been *out of bed* since. Mrs. ADAMS, Lett., 349.<sup>1)</sup>

I won't go *to bed*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. VIII, 66.

His companions remained *in bed*. Ib., 67.

I gave Gus a lecture about spending his Sundays idly; and read out one of Blair's sermons before we went *to bed*. As I turned over *in bed*, I could not help thinking about the luck the pin had brought me. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. IV, 46.

Compare: The two gentlemen moved away *from the bed*. Mrs. WOOD, Orville Col., Ch. II, 23.

To lie or sleep *in the bed* one has made = to accept the natural fruits or results of one's own conduct. MURRAY, s.v. *bed*, 5, c.

**camp.** How is the ordinary citizen to acquire either this discipline or this skill from a few afternoons in a drill-hall and a fortnight at the outside *in camp* once a year? Times, No. 1825, 1031.

The artillery are back *in camp*. Punch, No. 3712, 172b.

**chapel.** i. Men and women might lie another ten minutes in bed... without reprobation, because *chapel* was missed. JANE AUSTEN, Mansf. Park, Ch. IX, 90.

ii. Lamb never stirred out of the hall that night *after chapel*. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. V, 66.

He read the service *in chapel* when his turn came. MORLEY, Crit. Misc., Pattison, III, 156.<sup>1)</sup>

Compare: When mass was ended, they retired together *from the chapel*. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. II, 48.

**church.** i. To attend *church*.

I hope none of you forget *church*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 17.

ii. To be *at church*. *After (before, during) church*. To be (stay, etc.) *in church*. To come (go, etc.) *from (to, out of) church*.

But soon the steeples called good people all *to church and chapel*. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 62.

Compare: He told me, coming home that he hoped the people saw him *in the church*. Ib., III, 66.

Note I. In *to go into the Church* (= to take holy orders, to become a clergyman); *to be in the Church* (= to be in holy orders, to be a clergyman); *to leave the bar for the Church* and similar expressions, *church* has a collective meaning, and the article has a generalizing function. (32, a.)

II. In the following quotation the article is used merely for the sake of the metre: He goes on Sunday *to the church*. LONGF., Vil. Blacks., V.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**class.** Isn't Yeats the poet the Yeats who was *in class* with us at school? T. P.'s Weekly, No. 408, 709c.

**college.** i. That patrimony he dissipated before he left *college*. MEREDITH, Ord. of Rich. Fev., Ch. I, 2.

ii. I remember Allworthy *at college*. FIELDING, Tom Jones, IV, Ch. X, 56a (Compare: "I thought", said the Parson, "he had never been *at the University*." lb.) At my father's death I paid what debts I had contracted *at college*. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XX, 216.

*After college* he hung about his mother's house. THACKERAY.<sup>1)</sup>

**confessional.** He communicated a curious account; that you had been to him that evening *at confessional*. CH. BRONTË, Villetta, Ch. XVII, 230.

I went and sought them (sc. companionship, friendship and counsel) *in church and confessional*. lb., 231.

Compare: The secrets of the *confessional*. FOWLER, Conc. Oxford Dict.

**council.** The Signory is *in council*. BYRON, Mar. Fal., I, 1.

Perhaps it is true to say that as yet his weight *in council* has not been felt. Times. Note *by order in Council* (= Dutch: bij Koninklijk Besluit.)

**court.** i. \* For Arthur on the Whitsuntide before | Held *court* at old Caerleon upon Usk. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 146.

\*\* If thou never wast *at court*, thou never sawest good manners. As you like it, III, 2, 71. (Compare: Those that are good manners *at the court* are as ridiculous in the country as the behaviour of the country is mockable *at the court*. lb., III, 2, 47.)

Our director, his lady, and daughter were presented *at court*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 84.

A friend *at court* is always an advantage. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 468, 529a.

ii. A photograph of the prosecutrix was produced *in court*. Times.

If they had seen that this would be the outcome of the proceedings, they would not have been in such a hurry to go *into Court*. lb.

The proceedings *in Court*. lb., No. 1816, lb.

In these cases it is Mr. A., the plaintiff, who brings the complaint *into court*. ANNA BUCKLAND, Our Nat. Instit., 43.

*Out of court* they (sc. the judges) had human minds like yours and mine. W. J. LOCKE, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. III, 45.

Compare: i. Out west they would never have left *the court* alive. lb., Ch. V, 70.

ii. My poor wife and I walked *out of the court*, and back to our dismal room in the prison. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 157.

Silence *in the court* there! lb., Ch. XII, 151.

**divan.** They had rather a grumpy time of it *in divan* that night. LOCKHART, I, 187.<sup>2)</sup>

**dock.** He (sc. the American interviewer) and his notebook are on the spot as the "liner" comes *into dock*. RITA, America—Seen through Eng. eyes, Ch. III, 63.

**exchange.** Scrooge's name was good *upon 'change*. DICK., Chrism. Car.<sup>3)</sup> I, 5. But there they were, in the heart of it (sc. the city); *on 'change*, amongst the merchants. lb., IV, 87.

**hall.** *After hall* they went to Mr. Buck's to take wine; and after wine to chapel. THACK., Pend., I, 168.<sup>3)</sup>

Then they went to *hall*. W. J. LOCKE, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. XVII, 180. On the same evening, his Royal Highness dined *in hall*. II. Lond. News, No. 3835, 566.

Soon as the meal was over, she stole *out of hall*. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. IV, 62.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS-KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 273. <sup>2)</sup> ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 36.

<sup>3)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *chapel*.

**harbour.** The South African Constitution may now, we think, be reckoned as safely *in harbour*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 5001, 1c.

I woke to hear we were *in harbour*. *IB.*, No. 6347, 5a.

**headquarters.** He had no quarrel with Mr. Cadogan, but only with those *at head-quarters*, who had belied him. THACK., HENRY ESMOND, II, Ch. XV, 284.

**home.** i. There is no place like *home*. PROV.

*Home is home*, be it ever so homely. *ID.*

ii. I am wandering from my story, and must get back *to home*. THACK., BARRY LYNDON, Ch. I, 19.

At one hour he was sure to be at church; at another, at market; in his office at a third; and *at home* when respectable men should be *at home*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 5.

A minute later we were in the street and walking *for home*. CON. DOYLE, *Mem. of Sherl. Holm.*, II, B, 77.

I walked *towards home*. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. X, 113.

She is *at home*, as usual, — every evening for a few people. MRS. WARD, *Lady Rose's Daught.*, I, Ch. I, 9b.

**hospital.** i. They will be allowed to proceed to their homes, instead of being made prisoners, as soon as they can leave *hospital*. TIMES.

ii. My father died of his wounds *in hospital*. MEREDITH, *Lord Ormont*, Ch. III, 50. Nobody could live *in hospital* like Edward Hallin and his sister. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, III, 33.

A patient I had been nursing for weeks, had to be removed *to hospital*. *IB.*, III, Ch. IV, 354.

I am going to take this child *to hospital*. *ID.*, *Sir George Tres.*, I, Ch. IV, 285. (Compare: As they went *into the hospital*, George caught a few of the things she was saying to the porter. *IB.*)

Lord Hardinge was taken *to hospital*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6111, 1c. (Compare: The Viceroy said manfully, on being taken *to the hospital*, that this attempt on his life had made no change in his feelings towards India and her people. *IB.*)

**jail.** To be *in jail*. To let *out of jail*. To send *to jail*. MURRAY.

He had been arrested or suspicion of the crime of Arson and lodged *in jail*. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. V, 34.

**lesson.** Never before and never again, while Tom was at school, did the Doctor strike a boy *in lesson*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VIII, 156.

I shall get floored to a certainty *at second lesson*, if I'm called up. *IB.*, II, Ch. VII, 316. Tom renewed the discussion *after second lesson*. *IB.*

**market.** i. He attended *market* and sessions. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 20.

ii. But yet I run before my horse *to market*. *Rich.* III, I, 1, 160.

In the first place, I shall be seen, and that is no small advantage to a girl who brings her face *to market*. GOLDSM., *She Stoops to Conquer*, III, (203).

The eggs we had counted on selling *at market* were broken. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXX, 847.

Bathsheba said very little to her husband all that evening of their return *from market*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XLI, 317.

There rode by a butcher with a basket of meat hastening *to market*. ROBIN HOOD (GÜNTH., *Handbook*<sup>2</sup>, 24).

If you could take a cup of tea with us on your way home *from market*, my father would be glad to see you. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, II, Ch. VI, 65.

Compare: i. When *the market* was over, one of them invited Robin Hood to dine with their company. ROBIN HOOD (GÜNTH., *Handbook*<sup>2</sup>, 25).

ii. I was first *at the market*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. IX, 55.

On reaching the town, Robin Hood put up his horse at an inn, and then went *into the market*. ROBIN HOOD (GÜNTH., *Handbook*<sup>2</sup>, 25).



My poor dear nother's own sherry was in *the market* then. DICK., Cop., Ch. I, 2a. (Thus regularly in this collocation.)

A larger pen with a very flexible nib, . . . has this year been put *upon the market*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXI, Advertisement. (Thus regularly in this collocation.)

**mass.** i. To say (sing, hear, attend etc.) *mass*. MURRAY.

When *mass* was ended, they retired together from the chapel. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. II, 48.

*Mass* had been said in the grey old church among the trees. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. IV, 55.

She heard *mass* at a very early hour. Times, No. 1818, 887a.

ii. To be (stay etc.) *at mass*. To come (go, etc.) *from mass*. To go *to mass*. MURRAY. We had all been *to mass* at the Cathedral. Westm. Gaz., No. 4949, 9a.

The maids were slow on their feet *from Mass*. Ib.

**office.** i. To take (leave, etc.) *office*.

ii. To be (stay, etc.) *in office*. To come (go, etc.) *into (out of) office*. Jack in (out of) *office*. MURRAY.

For the fourth time in succession Sir Wilfrid Laurier has been returned *to office* by a General Election. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVII, 403a.

Neither is it well for the same party to remain continuously *in office*. Ib.

Compare: When I came back *to the office*, I pretty soon let the fellows know [etc.]. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. II, 20

**port.** i. Doubt was expressed . . . as to the possibility of the measure reaching *port* this year. Echo,<sup>1)</sup> No. 3273, 2.<sup>1)</sup>

Is there any doubt, Master Pathfinder, that we shall reach *port* in safety. COOPER, The Pathfinder.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. The boats perhaps had sighted some rare vessel, and compete the prize of towing her up *to port*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6023, 3a.

He captured two Dutch East Indiamen and brought them safely *into port*. Ib., No. 6011, 9c.

**prison.** For having broken *prison* I am ordered for immediate execution. GAY, Beggar's Op., III, 2.

Compare: She had only just come *from the prison*, where she learned my address. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 167.

My poor wife and I walked out of the court, and back to our dismal room *in the prison*. Ib., Ch. XII, 157.

**rehearsal.** Don't you think it is time to go *to rehearsal*? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XI, 116.

When Miss Costigan came home *from rehearsal* [etc.]. Ib., Ch. XII, 23.

The next day *to rehearsal*. OSCAR WILDE, An Ideal Husband, II, 43.

A certain orchestral player at Drury Lane Theatre had suffered sundry admonishments *at rehearsal* from his revered conductor. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 468, 524a.

Compare: My poor Theo had a nice dinner waiting for me *after the rehearsal*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LXXIX, 842.

**school.** i. Afternoon *school* began. Mrs. Wood, Orville College, Ch. VII, 101. He liked all to make their appearance on the eve of *school*. Ib., Ch. I, 9.

ii. To be *at school*, to go *to school*, to put (send) *to school*. MURRAY.

To tell tales *out of school*. Ib.

About ten minutes *before school* Martin and Arthur arrived in the quadrangle. HUGHES, Tom Brown, II, Ch. IV.

There had been some talk on occasions of my going *to boarding-school*. DICK., Cop., Ch. IV.

We will take the Juvenal *at afternoon school*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 28.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY. <sup>2)</sup> ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 36.

Did you not say you had a sister *at boarding-school*? *Id.*, Virg., Ch. XXXIX, 407. Compare: *The school* is not quite deserted... A solitary child... is left there still. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, II, 37.

It was the close of *the forenoon school*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 26.

Both Arthur and Mr. John Pendennis had been *at the school*. *ib.*, 24. (= *at this school*.)

They saw five or six nearly new balls hit on the top of *the school*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IX.

**service.** I doubt not but you will be honoured with some portion of her notice, when *service* is over. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XXVIII, 158.

*Service* concluded, the governor began to turn a wheel in his pew. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. X, 112.

Stool of Repentance. A low stool placed in front of the pulpit in Scotland, on which persons who had incurred an ecclesiastical censure, were placed during *divine service*. E. COBHAM BREWER, *Dict. of Phrase and Table*.

**study.** One afternoon when he came down *from study* with Pen, ... she went out and shook hands with him with rather a blushing face. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVI, 162.

**town.** i. Lady Jane is about to leave *town* immediately. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. III, 40.

*Town* is very dreary. MAR. CRAWF., *A Tale of a Lonely Par.*, Ch. III, 23.

ii. A perfect and celebrated "blood", or dandy *about town* was this young officer. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. X, 97.

(He) was, I do believe, as happy, whenever his friends brought him a guinea, as he had been during his brief career as a gentleman *on town*. *Id.*, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. XII, 159.

With your advantages you might turn the heads of half the girls *in town*. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, I, 140.

Compare: He gave her all the pleasures of *the town*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 19.

**trial.** Have you authority to put me in the pillory *before trial*? CH. READE *It is never too late mend*, I, Ch. I, 18.

Five men and a woman were put *on trial* for the crime. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXII, 318.

Two days later we were committed *for trial* at the Central Criminal Court ANNIE BESANT, *Autob.*, 209.

Compare: *After the trial* it was proved that one of the five prisoners was never near the spot on the day of the rescue. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXII, 317.

It was represented to the jury that this statement substantially corroborated the evidence given by Fletcher and other witnesses *at the trial*. *Times*, No. 1814, 803c. They now began to be put *on their trials*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXII, 316

- b) before the names of meals, such as *banquet*, *breakfast*, *dinner*, *lunch(eon)*, *meat*, *mess*, *supper*, *table*, *tea*, and *tiffin* when used in a more or less immaterial sense. Also before these nouns the omission of the article is especially frequent, when they are preceded by a preposition denoting a relation of time or place; likewise in many collocations, such as *to ask (invite) to (for) dinner*, etc. *to stay (stop) tea or to tea*, etc. (Ch. V, 11), *to wait dinner* etc. (*ib.*), *to come (go) to (into) dinner* etc., *to take out (take in) to dinner*, etc., in which the omission is so usual as to be almost regular. Conversely the article would appear to be commonly used after prepositions not denoting any relation of either time or place, but the evidence available at the time of writing is too scanty to make this more than a surmise.

- i. *Supper's ready*, Sir. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VIII, 65.  
 The entrance of *supper* opportunely adjourned this difficulty. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. III, 17.  
*Dinner was over*. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. II, 12.  
*Dinner will be served almost directly*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XIV  
 "Dinner is served", he announced, in his discreet and well-trained voice. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XXII, 250.  
 \*\* She seemed to be engaged in a mental calculation of the probable extent of the pettitoes, in the event of Sam's being asked to *stop supper*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVI, 236.  
 I am going to *stay tea*. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. VI, 87.  
 \*\*\* My master has been *waiting dinner* for you these three hours. Robin Hood (GILTH., *Handb.*, 140).  
 I never *wait supper* for anybody. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. IX, 73.
- ii. \* *After tea* the young gentlemen withdrew to fetch up the unfinished tasks of that day. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 107.  
 One evening *after mess* he told Colquhoun that [etc.]. BESANT and RICE, *Gold. Butterfly*, Ch. XIII.<sup>1)</sup>  
 \*\* *At breakfast* I announced to Diana and Mary that I was going a journey. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVI, 519.  
 He paid Dobbin fifty pounds that evening *at mess*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIII, 133.  
 We were talking about it *at mess* yesterday. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 108.  
 He was absolute master of the life and liberty of all who sat *at meat* with him. MAC., *Fred.*, (676b).  
 Till ev'n the knights *at banquet* twice or thrice | Forgot to drink to Lancelot and the Queen. LANC. and EL., 731.  
 The father and mother were already *at table*. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, I, 33.  
 \*\*\* *Before tea* they all went for a walk. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 106.  
 \*\*\*\* Only once *during dinner* was there any conversation that included the young gentlemen. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 106.  
 \*\*\*\*\* He invited me *for dinner* next Sunday in Myddelton Square. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 41.  
 I just want you to come to my rooms in St. James' Street *for tea and dinner*. BAR. VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*, Ch. XIII, 92.  
 They have just knocked off *for dinner*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 5.  
 \*\*\*\*\* *Come into dinner*, Phineas. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 12.  
 \*\*\*\*\* My husband was often *invited to dinner*. JOHNSON, *Idler*, No. 47.<sup>1)</sup>  
 We ought to *ask him to dinner*. MURRAY, s.v. *ask*, 21.  
 Her fear was lest they should *stay to tea*. CH. BRONTË, *Shirley*, I, Ch. VII, 144.  
 The guest *stayed to dinner*. LYTON, *Caxtons*, III, Ch. VII, 79.  
 I have come to *take Miss Yeoland and you out to dinner*. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*, Ch. XIII, 90.
- Compare: i. *The dinner* was as hearty an affair as *the breakfast*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 254.  
*The supper* was ready laid. Ib., Ch. IX, 72.  
*The supper* passed off without any attempt at a general conversation. Ib., Ch. VIII, 66.  
 On ordinary evenings *the supper* was served immediately after they came out of chapel. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. I, 16.

1) MURRAY

I will go rest here awhile till *the breakfast* is ready. WESJ.M. GAZ., No. 4949, 9a.

Throughout the greater part of *the dinner* my opinion of the young man rose steadily but surely. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

Possibly they ate extremely little during the course of *the dinner*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXIII, 251.

- ii. He had made acquaintance with him *at the mess* by opening the conversation. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXIX, 314.

All *during the dinner* she was playing the coquette openly, for every one to see. W. BLACK., *The New Prince Fortunatus*, Ch. XIV.

I am told that it was through you that the boy was invited *to the dinner* to-night. *Ib.*

A curious instance of divided usage is:

*Tea* was served in a style no less polite than *the dinner*. DICK., *Dombey*, Ch. XII, 107.

Note I. When these nouns are used in a distinctly material sense, the article is not dropped.

*The dinner* was not so good as might have been expected.

II. Nor is the article ever wanting when the individualizing is expressed.

He sat down to *the dinner that had been hoarding for him by the fire*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 97.

- c) Before the names of the main divisions of a day, such as *day*, *evening* (*eve*, *even*, *eventide*), *morning* (*morn*) and *night*, when the reference is to a natural phenomenon or to an epoch. In either application the article seems to be regularly omitted after such prepositions as *at*, *till* (*until*), *towards*. The article is not dropped when distinctly a period is meant: consequently it is never absent after the prepositions *during* and *in*. It should also be noted that *forenoon* and *afternoon*, although frequently denoting an epoch, apparently, rarely lose the article. Compare *We won't go home till morning* with *We won't go home till the afternoon*.

- i. *Night* closed in. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk*, *Spectre Bridegr.*, 159.

The time was *evening*. *Ib.*, Ch. VIII, 71.

They watched her breathing becoming more and more difficult, until *evening* deepened into *night* and until midnight was past. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VIII, 63.

When *day* broke, the enemy was no more to be seen. MACAULAY.<sup>1)</sup>

He read the book calmly but earnestly in the warm air, till *day* declined. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. VI, 82.

*Evening* came. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 55.

It wanted but two hours of *day*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVII, 133b.

*Gloomy day* passed into *gloomier night*. G. GISSING, *Eve Madeley's Ransom*, Ch. I.

- ii. I slept undisturbed *till morning*. GOLDSM., *Vicar*.

In that equivocal kind of weather, when a fire becomes agreeable *toward evening*. WASH. IRV., *Sketches*, *The Inn Kitchen*, 150.

One afternoon it began to freeze, and the frost increased *with evening*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. III, 22.

Gabriel had watched the blue wood-smoke curling from the chimney with strange meditation. *At evening* he had fancifully traced it down the chimney to the spot of its origin. *Ib.*, Ch. IV, 28.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 272.

H. POUTSMA, *A Grammar of Late Modern English*. II.



The Kaiser at that moment was engaged in sport *by day* and jollification *at night* at a country-seat in Austria. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 509.

We shall be miles away *by morning*. ETH. M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, I, Ch. III, 37.

Boats were being got ready for landing parties *towards evening*. Times, No. 1814, 802*d*.

Compare: i. *The day* had been uncommonly sultry. WASH. IRV.<sup>1)</sup>

*The afternoon* came on wet and somewhat misty. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 45.

He had ogled the last girl out of the last church, and *the evening* was beginning to fall. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 45.

There he stood gazing for some minutes lost in many thoughts while *the night* fell. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 73.

It seemed as if *the morning* would never come. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

*The day* was closing in. Westm. Gaz.

ii. What enabled Sir George Cary's illustrious ship, the *Content*, to fight single-handed, from seven in *the morning* till eleven at night? CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XX, 150*a*.

She stated that two men had attacked her *during the night*. Times, No. 1814, 787*a*.

Twice *during the morning* he drove to the entrance of Clifford's Inn. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. VI, 61.

Note i. The article is also usually dropped when these words are modified by the name of a day, the reference being in this case to an epoch.

On *Midsummer Night* the emigrants get up an entertainment. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. II, 41.

Late on *Monday night* there was a serious disturbance at the British Wagon Works, Swansea. Times, No. 1814, 767*a*.

II. The definite article, however, appears to be sometimes used when the morning, etc. referred to is distinctly associated in the speaker's or writer's mind with another. Compare *e*.

i. It was rather expected that he would pay a round of calls on *the Monday morning* to explain and apologize to the Cranford sense of propriety. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. II, 27.

Early on *the Thursday morning* Captain Bretton was roused from a short and uneasy sleep on the sofa in his study by the sound of voices on the staircase. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. XXXVIII, 375.

We reached Dresden on *the Wednesday evening*, and stayed there over the Sunday. JEROME, *Three Men on the Bummel*, Ch. VII, 133.

ii. It was Monday night. On *Wednesday morning* Monmouth was to die. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 191. (Compare: On *the Wednesday morning*, at his particular request, Doctor Thomas Tenison . . . came to the Tower. *Ib.*, 192.)

III. The article is also frequently dropped before such nouns and word-groups as *break of day* ( *day-break* ), *cock-crow(ing)*, *dawn(ing)*, *dead of night*, *dusk*, *midnight*, *noon*, *nightfall*, *peep of day*, *pudding-time*, *sundown*, *sunrise*, *sunset*, *twilight*, etc., which, like the above, are used to denote a natural phenomenon or an epoch. After a preposition, which is practically the only connection in which the majority of these words and word-groups are found, the article seems to be suppressed almost regularly.

i. *Noon* approached, and after many adieux and promises to return, he tore himself away. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XVIII, 159.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 272.

As *twilight* deepened, we descended a valley, dark with wood, and long after night had overclouded the prospect, I heard a wild wind rushing amongst trees. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. V, 45. Afternoon had made way for *twilight*, and *twilight* for *dusk*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6347, 9a. (Note the distinction made between *twilight* and *dusk*.)

- ii. Here he sat on the banks of an unknown lake... and that *at deep midnight*. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. XVI, 60a.

The fire broke out *at dead of night*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXI, 524. (In this phrase the definite article occasionally appears, apparently, for the sake of the measure: *At the dead of night* a sweet vision I saw. THOM. CAMPB., *The Soldier's Dream*, II.)

I must be on horse *before cock-crow*. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXIV, 369.

*From cock-crow* he had been travelling. SOUTHEY, *Well St. Keyne*.<sup>1)</sup>

The character would vanish like a ghost *at cock-crow*. GOLDW. SMITH (*Atl. Monthly*, No. 268, 208).<sup>1)</sup>

All this dudgey, *from cock-crowing* to starlight. EMERSON, *Young American*, II, 301.<sup>1)</sup>

I went to bed *at day-break*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LV, 391a.

He only returned home *at dusk*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXI, 285.

Doubtless *at high noon*... the garden was a trite, trodden-down place enough. *Ib.*, Ch. XII, 130.

The band halted *at nightfall* on this side the Pontine Marshes. LYTON, *Rienzi*, III, Ch. I, 123.

Shortly *after sunrise* they crossed those fatal swamps which had already been partially drained by Boniface VIII. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 123.

It would be better if you were to proceed onward to Fondi, where I will join you *at sunset*. *Ib.*, 137.

He rode on *until sundown*. *Books for the Bairns*, No. 56, 31b.

Dick wanted to be there *before dusk*. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. XXVIII, 210.

Collation: the light repast or refecton taken by the members of a monastery *at close of day*. MURRAY, s. v. *collation*, 8.

*By early dawn* this morning the multitude were already drifting towards the harbour end. *Times*, No. 1823, 973d.

- Compare: i. Meanwhile *the noon* was passed, and little impression was made on the iron gate. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXX, 329.

- ii. These 'thaumata', or wonders, last... till the boy goes to school, and then, somehow or other, the 'thaumata' vanish into thin air, like ghosts *at the cockcrow*. LYTON, *Caxtons*, I, Ch. VI, 25.

Year after year he took part with excited fancy in the procession of the Magdalen choir boys to the College tower on May day, to sing *at the sun-rising* a hymn to the Trinity. ALICE S. GREEN, *Intro. to GREEN*, *Short Hist.*, 5.

Percy asks us to ride out — to-night — *at the dawn* — well, we'll answer him. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. IV, 57.

#### IV. The following is an exceptional application of *midnight*:

Then they fall to together *in the midnight*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. IV, 51.

- d) before the names of the seasons: *winter*, *spring*, *summer* and *autumn*, and also before such nouns as *Carnival*, *Lent*, *harvest*, *term*.

- i. With such sentiments, upon a beautiful day in the latter end of *harvest*, the king mounted his horse. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXXVI, 446.

*Winter* came early and sudden that year. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. IV, 36.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *cock-crow* and *cock-crowing*.

Once he stopped to pick up the large brown fan of a horse-chestnut leaf. "It's pretty, isn't it? only it shows that *autumn* has come." *Ib.*, Ch. I, 10.  
*Carnival* ends on the 5th of February. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 225.

- ii. The medical man of the House hoped he might rally in *spring*. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XLII, 442.

There are few things that I enjoy so much as the rare invitations which I receive to spend a few days *during term* at one of the colleges in the University of Oxford. *Westm. Gaz.*

- Compare: i. *The winter* was gloomy at home as well as abroad. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XI, 151.

As *the summer* drew on, she passed more of her time in the open air. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LVI, 459.

- ii. Bathsheba revived with *the spring*. *Ib.*, LVI, 459. (Thus probably regularly after *with*.)

The general election will most probably take place *in the autumn*. *Daily Mail*.

I did come here last year, early *in the fall*. M. E. FRANCIS, *Honesty*, II, Ch. X.

The following quotations are typical illustrations of divided practice:

It shows that *autumn* has come... And how shall you live *in the winter* when there is no out-of-door work to be had. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 10.

Through *the winter* Alfred girded himself for this new peril. At break of *spring* his army closed round the town. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, § 5, 48.

The threats of the Montenegrins and Serbs are held in check by the approach of *winter*, and until *the spring* comes, they are not likely to make any serious move. *Westm. Gaz.*

*The winter* has been long. I am glad *spring* is coming. BAR. VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*, Ch. IX, 63.

- e) before the names of months, days and festivals. *Epiphany*, however, from its meaning, seems to stand regularly with the article. (24, c.)

He will return at *Christmas*.

His taxes are in arrear, *quarter-day* passes by, another quarter-day arrives. DICK., *Sketches*, I, 2a.

I did not go to the office till half an hour after opening time on *Monday*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 41.

Late in *October* Pam caught her heel in a hole in the stair-carpet. BAR. VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*, Ch. XIV, 102.

*Lord Mayor's Day* was observed on *Wednesday* in London in the traditional fashion. *Times*.

It was the beginning of *wheat-harvest*, when I came to Dunster town. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXVII, 156.

Note. The definite article is not infrequently met with when the month, day or festival is distinctly associated in the speaker's or writer's mind with another. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2032; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 26; TEN BRUGGENCATE, *Taalstudie*, VI, 26.

It would be easy to catch Will Wilson on his return from the Isle of Man, which he had planned should be on *the Monday*; and on *the Tuesday* all would be made clear. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXIII, 239.

As it was, however, it (sc. the letter) reached Silverbridge on Sunday, and lay there till *the Monday*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 39. (Note the varied practice.)

On *the Saturday* Thompson died. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. VI, 290. Thompson was buried on *the Tuesday*. *Ib.*, 201.

16. When a noun is applied to a particular specimen of a conception, so that it partakes of the character of a significant proper name, we sometimes find the specializing definite article dropped. This applies especially to:

a) nouns that are also used in address, which may be:

1) names of relationship:

"Come, come", says Western, "none of your maidenish airs; I know all; I assure you, *sister* hath told me all". FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, VI, Ch. VII, 94b.

If your own horses be ready, you may whip off with *cousin*, and I'll be bound that no soul here can budge a foot to follow you. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, V, (224).

*Father-in law* has been calling me whelp and hound this half year. *Ib.*, I, (174).

*Aunt* was always at law with her tenants. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IX, 105.

*Aunt* and Mary used to walk gravely up and down the New Road. *Ib.*, Ch. X, 120.

'There's *father* coming', cried the two young Cratchits. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 65.

Had it anything to do with *father's* making such a mommet (= blockhead) of himself in thik (= that) carriage this afternoon? HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. III, 22.

*Papa* will show you the two counties on the map. SCOTT.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. It may here be observed that these nouns are usually preceded by a possessive pronoun, when the speaker is not related to the person spoken of in the way indicated by them.

'He (sc. Tiny Tim) was very light to carry', she (sc. Mrs. Cratchit) resumed, "... and *his father* loved him so... And there's *your father* at the door". DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, IV, 99.

'T was on this account that *your father* rode home in the vlee. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. III, 22.

2) certain titles of courtesy, as used in the language of servants, especially:

**Madam**, now no longer substituted for the name of a lady entitled to be addressed as 'madam' (MURRAY), *mistress* being used instead, except in the language of shop-assistants.

i. Poor Harry can keep nothing quiet, and then there would be a pretty quarrel between *madam* and me! THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VI, 61.

When *madam* began to write, she gave us brief notices of Harry and his wife. *Ib.*, Ch. LXXXV, 909.

ii. "I want a rose, please; a large pink rose"; — "Yes, *madam*; certainly, *madam*; I will get some one to attend to you immediately: "Miss Jones, *madam* requires a rose." The assistant stepped forward [etc.]. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6311, 3c.

**Master**. i. \* *Master* thought another fit of the gout was coming to make him a visit. SHER., *Rivals*, I, 1.

*Master* sent me over with the shay-cart to carry your luggage up to the house. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVIII, 248.

1) FOELS-KOCH, *Wiss. Gram.*, § 257.



*Master* says he can't eat no dinner. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VIII, 61.

\*\* But tell us, Mr. Fag, how does *young master*? SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1. (= Dutch de jongeheer.)

If *young master* will take a poor mariner's gift, there it is. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 3b.

- ii. She come and took 'em away last night, but *the master* says they must be fetched soon. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. VIII, 61.

**Miss.** We got acquainted with *Miss* while on a visit in Gloucestershire. SHER., *Rivals*, I, 1.

There was another person besides *Miss* at my aunt's house. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXVIII, 825.

He came hither... to pay court to *Miss*. *Ib.*, Ch. LXXXIV, 895.

**Mistress (Missis, Missus).** i. He's in the dining-room, Sir, along with *mistress*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 109.

"*Missis* is not at home," said the man. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. VII, 81.

*Missis* always turns off the gas at the main herself at half past ten. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 20.

*Master* and *Missis* are going out to dinner. *Ib.*, 16.

- ii. I have spoke to Mr. Helder, friendly, an' he laughed, an' did me a picture of *the missis* that is as good as a coloured print. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. V, 61.

*The "missus"* could not find it in her heart to bestow such a mark of affection upon him. *Tit-bits*.

BISHOP (reproving delinquent page): "Wretched boy! Who is it that sees and hears all we do, and before whom even I am but a crushed worm?" —

PAGE: "*The missis*, my lord." *Punch*.

Note. Also *master* and *mistress* have the possessive pronoun under the same circumstances as the names of relationship. In this case their use is not confined to the language of servants.

"Is *your master* at home, my dear?" said Scrooge to the girl. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, V, 108.

Where is *your mistress*? KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XIII, 139.

- 3) certain names of professions, especially such as are held by domestic servants, the absence of the article expressing good-humoured familiarity.

**cabby.** i. She sprang out of the carriage before *cabby* could descend. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. I, 15.

- ii. Call *the cabby* up for my trunk and hat-box! *All the Year Round*, 1859, No. 34, 177.

**coachman.** *Coachman* comes out with his waybill. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. IV, 74.

**cook.** i. You had better go down with Sarah into the kitchen; *cook* will take care of you. Sarah, my love, take him down to *cook*. MARRYAT, *Jacob Faithful*, Ch. II, 7b.

While he operated, the maids, and Buttons and *cook*... crowded round him. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. V, (325).

The second-floor arch in a London house... by which *cook* lurks down before daylight to scour her pots and pans in the kitchen; by which young master stealthily ascends..., down which miss comes rustling in fresh ribbons... for conquest and the ball. *Id.*, Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXVI, 279.

Would you like to go and see if *cook* has got your dinner ready? *Westm. Gaz.*

- ii. For many days did the exhibition continue during which I was domiciled with *the cook*. MARRYAT, *Jacob Faithful*, Ch. II, 8b.

She put questions to him regarding baby and *the cook's* health. THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. II, (313).

**guard.** i. *Guard* emerges from the tap. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 74.  
*Guard* looks at him with a comical expression. *Ib.*, 76.

ii. *The guard* is locking the hind boot. *Ib.*, 75.

**(h)ostler.** i. *Ostler, Boots* and the Squire stand looking after them. *Ib.*, 70.<sup>1)</sup>  
"Young gen'l'm'n, Rugby; three parcels, Leicester; hamper o'game, Rugby", answers *Ostler*. *Ib.*, 69.

ii. Having ordered *the Hostler* to take Care of my Dog. ELLWOOD, Autobiog., 20.<sup>1)</sup>

**head-waiter.** "Tea or coffee, sir?" says *head-waiter*, coming round to Tom. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 74.

**nurse.** i. There was room enough at Framley Court for *baby and nurse*. TROL., Framl. Pars, Ch. I, 7.

On opening the door she saw a well-ordered comfortable room, lit by the glow of a bright fire, *nurse* at her needlework beside the large table, and a neat nursemaid sitting on the floor showing a picture-book to a little boy... There was a pause, every one looked up, and then *nurse* slowly rose, exclaiming, "Law, Miss Marjory". Mr. ALEX., A Life Interest, I, Ch. I, 20. She makes *nurse* give us jam whenever we want it. BAR. VON HUTTEN, Pam, Ch. X, 54.

ii. *The nurse* said she was come to nuss (= nurse) Master Fitzroy, and knew her duty. THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. VI, 327.

The omission of the article before other names of professions seems to be rare or obsolete. Thus in:

*Lord keeper* and *lord treasurer* were proposed (sc. at the club). SWIFT, Journ. to Stella, XXV.

*Policeman* said he'd call again towards evening. Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXIII, 241.

*Sportsman* looks on approvingly, and orders a ditto for himself. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 74.

- 4) certain plural nouns denoting the things with which a person is chiefly occupied, or for which he is conspicuous, such as *boots, buttons, lamps*, etc. STOF., Eng. Leesb., I, 143.

**boots.** i. Another (sc. of these worthies) buttoned on a pair of gaiters, with many execrations at *Boots* for not having cleaned his boots well. WASH. IRV., Bracebridge Hall (STOF., Eng. Leesb., I, 7).

*Boots* looks in and says [etc.]. HUGHES, Tom Brown, I, Ch. IV, 69.

"You make use of my name", he added proudly — "Bob, *boots* at the Lion." LYTTON, Caxtons, V, Ch. I, 106.

ii. "Thank'ee, sir", said *the Boots*, and away he went. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.

He asked for the landlady, and missed *the old Boots*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 298.

In setting off the next morning, *the Boots* . . . good-naturedly informed me [etc.]. LYTTON, Caxtons, V, Ch. I, 106.

**Buttons.** *Little Buttons* bounced up to his mistress, said he was butler of the family. THACK., A little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. VI.

The united strength of the establishment Butler, Footman, Coachman, Lady's maid, Housemaid and *Buttons*. CUTHBERT BEDE, Adventures of Mr. Verdant Green, I, 16.<sup>2)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.    <sup>2)</sup> HOPPE, Sup. Lex.

Compare the following quotation containing several denominations of the kind described above, all of them, however, with the definite article:

"I thought you were *the King's taxes*." "No!" said Mr. Winkle. "I did indeed," responded Bob Sawyer, "and I was just going to say that I wasn't at home, but if you'd leave a message, I'd be sure to give it to myself; for he don't know me; no more does *the Lighting and Paving*. I think *the Church-rates* guesses who I am, and I know *the Water-works* does, because I drew a tooth of his when I first came here." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVIII, 349.

The variable practice is strikingly exhibited in:

I tapped the barometer, and it jumped up and pointed to "very dry." *The Boots* stopped as he was passing, and said he expected, it meant to-morrow. I fancied that, maybe, it was thinking of the week before last, but *Boots* said, No, he thought not. JER., *Three Men in a Boat*, Ch. V, 52.

- 5) the noun *baby*: i. Mrs. Veneering does not expect that Mr. Twemlow can in nature care much for such insipid things as babies, but so old a friend must please to look at *baby*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. II, 11. She put questions to him regarding *baby*. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. II, (313).

ii. *The baby* howled a great deal during the day. *Ib.*, Ch. VI, (327).

The usage is sometimes extended to terms of endearment.

What does little *birdie* say | In her nest at peep of day? | Let me fly, says little *birdie* [etc.]. TEN.

- b) the names of certain legislative bodies, such as *Congregation*, *Congress*, *Convocation*, *Council*, *Government*, *Parliament*.

**Congregation**, in the sense of "a general assembly of the members of a University, or of such of them as possess certain specified qualifications." MURRAY, s. v. 3b. The suppression seems to be practically regular.

This week *Congregation* has passed the preamble to the financial statute setting up an advisory and supervisory Council. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5625, 2a.

**Congress**, in the sense of the Congress of the United States of America. The suppression is decidedly the rule.

- i. *Congress* is not wiser or better than *Parliament*. EMERSON, *Eng. Traits*, *Result*, 128b.

The president is responsible to the nation and to *Congress*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XIII, 203.

*Congress* will not meet till December. *Times*.

As in every other crisis, Members of *Congress* are trimming to the political demagogues who shout the loudest. *Id.*

It is not easy to read a Roosevelt Message to *Congress* without using a bad word. *Saturday Review*.

- ii. *The Congress* shall assemble at least once in every year. *Constitution*, U. S., I, § 1.1)

*The Congress* mistrusted him. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 983. (For the rest, apparently, regularly with the definite article suppressed in this novel.)

**Convocation**, in the sense of a) "in the Church of England: A provincial synod or assembly of the clergy, constituted by statute and called together to deliberate on ecclesiastical matters." MURRAY, s. v. 3;

b) "in the English Universities: At Oxford and Durham: The great legislative assembly of the University, consisting of all qualified members of the degree of M. A.; also a meeting of this body (the earlier sense). In the University of London and the Royal University of Ireland: a body consisting of all registered graduates, having the power of discussing and expressing an opinion on any matter connected with the interests of the University, and of electing certain members of the Senate." *Id.*, s. v. 4. In either meaning the suppression appears to be regular.

- i. As the head of the English Church, he (sc. the king) summons and dissolves *Convocation*, as the assembly of the clergy of the Church of England is called. ANNA BUCKLAND, *Our Nat. Inst.*, 7.

*Convocation* is an ecclesiastical Parliament, summoned in each Province by the archbishops under the command of the King. *Id.*, 69.

- ii. Every measure, before it reaches *Convocation*, must go through Congregation; and Congregation, as the Act finally passed, means the whole body of residents and next to nobody else. *Sat. Rev.*, 1863, 300.<sup>1)</sup>

I am sorry to see that even if the Resolution allowing an alternative language to be offered in place of Greek at Responsions is carried in *Convocation*, it is proposed that the Hebdomadal Board should decree that all Passmen, with the exception of certain classes not yet defined, should be forced to offer Greek at the First Public Examination. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5466, 4c.

Last week *Convocation* accepted the compromise on the Greek question, whereby students taking honours in science and mathematics are exempted from compulsory Greek. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5625, 2a,

**Council**, when the reference is to a body assisting the governor of a Crown colony or dependency of Great Britain in an executive or legislative capacity, or in both.

Mr. Satyendra Sinha, who is appointed legal member of *Council*, is a lawyer of high repute and great practice. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4961, 2a.

**Government**, in the sense of the English government. The suppression of the article is unusual.

- i. What changed his nature was the famine and the way in which *Government* behave in face of it. *A cad.*<sup>2)</sup>

*Government* must educate the poor man. EMERSON.

This he sent up to *Government*. HOGG, *Life of Shelley*, II, 210.

- ii. *The Government* have acted wisely in laying these important facts before the English people. *Times*.

**Parliament**, in the sense of the English Parliament. The article is mostly absent. In GREEN, *A Short Hist. of the Engl. People*, the article is, perhaps, as frequently used as dropped.

- i. *Parliament* will be opened by the Queen. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 19.

I wonder you don't go into *Parliament*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5)</sup>, I, 12.

- ii. I wonder whether it would be worth any gentleman's while now, to buy that observation (= observation) for the Papers; or *the Parliament*. *Id.*, *Chimes*<sup>3)</sup>, I, 13. The Papers is full of observations as it is; and so's *the Parliament*. *Id.*, 14. On the 27th of November *the Parliament* reassembled. MAC., *Wil. Pitt*. *The Parliament* itself rose and bowed to the vacant throne, when his name was mentioned. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 1, 350.

Above all, we see *the Parliament* destroyed, the business of the nation stopped, its finances thrown into confusion by one exercise of the power now claimed. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5207, 1c.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *congregation*, 3b.    <sup>2)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, X.



**Note.** When the word is distinctly understood to denote a period, the use of the article may be the rule.

For the early part of *the Parliament* the procedure has been to wait on the chapter of accidents, snap divisions [etc.]. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6294, 2a.

17. The names of conceptions that are single in their kind are mostly found with the definite article, under the same conditions as in Dutch.

**earth.** And God saw that the wickedness of man was great in *the earth*. Bible, Gen., VI, 5.

Moses was very weak above all the men which were upon the face of *the earth*. Id., Num b., XII, 3.

Ye are the salt of *the earth*. Id., Matth., V, 13.

**ecliptic.** The path which the earth traverses in its revolution around the sun, is called *the ecliptic*. Cassell's Conc. Cycl.

**sea.** Soon *the sea* became rough and chopping. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 139b.

Supremacy on *the sea* is vital to this country. *Westm. Gaz.*

So much is at stake for us in keeping the command of *the sea*. Ib., No. 4925, 4c.

**sun.** See under **ecliptic**.

**universe.** The greatest object in *the universe* is a good man struggling with adversity. GOLDSM., *Vicar*.

Peggotty told me it was well-known that Yarmouth was, upon the whole, the finest place in *the universe*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XIII, 15a.

**world.** Ye are the light of *the world*. Bible, Matth., V, 14.

**Note I.** Sometimes the article is dropped for the sake of the metre.

Last a heathen horde, | Reddening the sun with smoke and *earth* with blood . . . brake on him. TEN., *Coming of Arthur*, 37.

II. For the common suppression of the definite article before *earth*, chiefly after the prepositions *of*, and *on*, and before *sea*, chiefly after the preposition *at*, *by* and *to*, see 63.

18. The definite article is often dropped after *all* and *both*, even if the noun they modify is accompanied by a specializing modifier.

**all.** i. They had given him an opportunity of displaying before the eyes of *all nations* and *all ages* some qualities which irresistibly call forth the admiration and love of mankind. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 64.

*Of all modern English poets* Tennyson has most readers. WALLACE, *Gen. Instr.* to Ten.'s, Princ., 10.

An inspector came up and asked to see *all tickets*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5024, 7b.

I did more work in half an hour than he had done *all day*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 75.

ii. The omnibus is in favour with *all classes* of the community. GÜNTH., *Leerb.*, I, 74.

*All parties* in the Reichstag repudiated the Kaiser's imputation of German unfriendliness to England. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVIII, 509.

*All news* of the day will be found in 6.30 Final Edition of the Westminster Gazette presented in the most readable form. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 13.

This accounts for the universal sigh with which the passing of Mr. Balfour has been received by *all parties and sections of the House of Commons*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 471, 617b.

Compare: i. *All the five* were sentenced to death. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317.

If the crowns of *all the kingdoms* were laid at my feet in exchange for my books, I would spurn them all. Westm. Gaz. (after FÉNÉLON).

ii. \* These ruffings and patchings will only make us hated by *all the wives* of our neighbours. GOLDSM., Vicar.<sup>1)</sup>

Who were the supporters of the Irish people in this demand? *All the forces of democracy* in this country. Times, No. 1815. 820c.

\*\* Now the man Moses was very meek, above *all the men* which were upon the face of the earth. Bible, Numbers, XII, 3.

both. i. *Both young ladies* applied themselves to tending Mr. Pecksniff's wounds in the back parlour. Dick., Chuz., Ch. I, 6b.

She spake for a few minutes to *both children*. Mrs. ALEX., A Life Int., I, Ch. I, 21.

ii. *Both sons of my neighbour over the way* have made their fortune in Australia.

Compare: i. *Both the prisoners* were sent to the Tower by water. MAC.<sup>1)</sup> The force of his character . . . enabled him to bid defiance to *both the extreme parties*. Id., Hist., I, Ch. I, 49.

ii. \* *Both the Houses of Parliament* gave a hearty assent to the measure.

\*\* *Both the poets you mention* have equally contributed to introduce a false taste into their respective countries. GOLDSM., Vicar.<sup>1)</sup>

In natural courage and intelligence *both the nations which now became connected with England*, ranked high. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 64.

19. Common is also the suppression of the definite article before certain nouns modified by *last* or *next*, when an epoch is meant.

a) When the modifier is *last*, the suppression is regular in case the epoch referred to is that immediately preceding the moment of speaking or writing.

i. *Last noon* beheld them full of lusty life, | *Last eve* in Beauty's circle proudly gay. BYRON, Child Har., III, XXVIII.

Your conduct of *last evening* was of a description which no gentleman could endure. Dick., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.

It was only *last holidays* he had in a manner robbed the great apple-tree. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 31.

All the servants . . . rose up on his entrance and bowed or curtsied to him. They never used to do so *last holidays*. Ib.

He tamed two snakes *last half*. HUGHES, Tom. Brown, II, Ch. III, 234.

I was there late *last evening*. Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, I, Ch. X, 162.

No such procession was allowed in France even under the monarchy of *last century*. Rev. of Rev. CCXXVI, 310b.

The following passage . . . is one of the finest pieces of English written *last century*. Ib., CCXXXI, 277a.

At *last Election* the Liberal-Labour men were returned by a majority of about 6.000. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVI, 310b.

*Last tour* everybody was talking about it. Times, No. 1823, 981d.

Thus also in: Because I thought you brave, *night before last*, was no reason why I should have thought you a coward yesterday. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Land., II, Ch. XV, 279. (More usual: *the night before last*.)

ii. Were I but sure the Lady Isabelle were fit for travel after the horrors of *the last night*, we would not increase the offence by remaining here an instant longer. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXIII, 293.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS-KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 284.

I have lived in Avignon with my aunt until *the last year*. MAY WYNNE, *When Terror ruled*, Ch. I, 14.

Note I. The use of these phrases to denote an epoch immediately preceding a moment of the past, is unusual and seems improper. In this case the use of the article may be more common. For instances see also Ch. XXX, 11.

i. They went down to the landing-place, where they had left their goods *last night*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXIII, 195a.

ii. He made a scanty breakfast on the remains of *the last night's* provisions. WASH. IRV., *Dolf. Heyl.* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 123).

She . . . left me sitting in the neighbouring chamber, the scene of *the last night's* quarrel. THACK., *Newc.*, II, Ch. XLII, 437.

II. In the following quotation the suppression of the article is exceptional, and due to an excessive desire of shortness:

KITE. But, sir, you have got a recruit here that you little think of. — PLUME. Who? — KITE. One that you beat up for *last time* you were in the country. FARQUHAR, *Recruiting Officer*, I, 1, (254).

b) When the modifier is *next*, the suppression is met with chiefly in adverbial adjuncts and adnominal genitives or their periphrastic equivalents. In these it is regular when the reference is to an epoch immediately succeeding the moment of speaking or writing. Usage is divided in denoting an epoch following upon a moment in the past. Ch. XXX, 12.

i. *Next week* (fortnight, quarter, half, year, century) matters will have greatly improved.

Which day shall we say? Monday in *next week*? KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XX, 219.

They promise all sorts of dreadful deeds *next Session*, if the Home Rule Bill goes through. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6305, 3b.

There ought to be a General Election before *next Session*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6329, 2a.

In *the Weekly Times of next week* a new serial will be begun.

Further details will be found in *next week's* issue.

ii. \* 't Was *the next day* my aunt found the matter out. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (217). About the middle of *the next day* . . . a sudden noise below seemed to speak the whole house in confusion. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XXVIII, 159.

That day in private they went into the thing together, and saw that some roguery was being played. *The next day* it was all out, and ruin stared them in the face. Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. III, 50.

*The next morning* Mr. Eden visited some of the poorest people in the parish. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. VII, 83.

*The next morning* little Capitaine Crépin came back in a great state of excitement. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fortun.*, Ch. XIV.

\*\* He was early at the office *next morning*. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, V, 109. Susan was up betimes *next day*. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, Ch. XVIII, 244.

Note. *Next* sometimes occasions the dropping of the definite article also before other nouns than such as express time. Thus:

a) regularly before *door*, as in:

Trying to hide himself, behind the girl from *next-door* but one. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, II, 45.

The sound appeared as if it was in our house instead of *next-door*.  
MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

β) exceptionally in:

You'll cross a lane after *next field*. HUGHES *Tom Brown*.<sup>1)</sup>

20. The definite article is often dropped also before some other superlatives:

a) It is mostly omitted before the indefinite numeral *most*. ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 27. Sometimes the dropping is attended by a change of meaning: compare *He has eaten most apples* with *He has eaten the most apples*. In the first sentence there is a comparison of the apples that have been eaten and those that have been left. In the second there is a comparison of two or more persons as to the number of apples that each has eaten. But, as the following quotations show, the article is often dropped where, according to the principle underlying the distinction between the two above sentences, it ought to be used. In not a few cases the principle cannot be applied at all.

1) The article is not uncommon before the conjoint *most*.

i. This was the part of his life on which he afterwards looked back with *most* pride. MAC., *Lord Clive*, (530a).

Like *most* writing which is at once very good and very laboured, Junius appears to *most* advantage in quotations. LECKY, *Hist. of Eng.*, III, 236.<sup>2)</sup>

He said that he could persuade *most* men of *most* things and himself of almost anything. TIMES.

But, if the question is who in his own time, or indeed in any other, gave the world *most* harmless amusement, there will be but one answer. ID., No. 1832, 111d.

In the production of *most* vowels the tongue is convex to the palate. JONES, *Pron. of Eng.*, § 20.

ii. What a troublesome world this is, when one has *the most* right to expect it to be as agreeable as possible. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. IV, 22b.

It is those who injure women, who get *the most* kindness from them. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XV, 158.

Perhaps it was the hardest task of all which Laura had to go through in this matter: and the one which gave her *the most* pain. ID., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 295.

I like to talk with the man who can drink *the most* beer. IB., I, Ch. XXX, 317.

As for the question of drink, the races that produce *the most* effect on the world are those that consume *the most* meat and *the most* alcohol. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, II, Ch. X, 181.

Ask the beggar whom he gets *the most* pence from. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 136.

Which of our kings had *the most* children? *Notes and Queries*.

The women who work *the most* mischief in civilised communities, are supreme egoists. MRS. BELLOC LOWNDES, *Jane Oglander*, Ch. VIII, 127.

Note the change of meaning which the omission of the definite article in the following quotation would entail:

1) SATTLER, E. S., XXXI, 341.

2) IB., 345.



The religious belief of *the most* civilised nations, and the rude traditions of the roughest savages, alike number it (sc. the delight of meeting at Christmas) among the first joys of a future condition of existence. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXVIII.

- 2) The article is less common before the absolute *most* than before the conjunct. (Ch. XXVIII, 11.)

i. I lose *most* of my money, if I marry without my aunt's consent till of age. SHERIDAN, *Rivals*, I, 2, (217)

*Most* of the company lounged out one by one to the bar-room in the next block. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XVI, 141b.

He sat *most* of the evening whistling and talking with Roundhand on the verandah. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 43.

It was four hundred acres, all arable and *most* of it poor sour land. CH. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 2.

*Most* of the assembly were dissolved in tears. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. II, 58.

*Most* of the work in these departments is done by men especially retained for this purpose. *Good Words*, 1885 (STOF., Leesb., I, 94).

Miss Wooler's pupils... were *most* of *them* daughters of well-to-do families in the neighbourhood. MISS FLORA MASSON, *The Brontës*, Ch. V, 28.

- ii. *The most* of them (sc. his followers) answered "There is no contravening that." SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXV, 376.

There you must spend *the most* of your time. JANE AUSTEN, *North. Abbey*, Ch. XXX, 233.

*The most* of my patrons are boys. STEVENSON, *New Arabian Nights*, 30. I believe they (sc. the Jews) have *the most* of it (sc. your money) already.

TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XV, 118.

The millionaire must be regarded as the working bee, *the most* of whose golden store must at his death be appropriated by the community. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCV, 28.

'Heart' is used in many compounds, *the most* of which need no special explanation. WEBST., i. v. *heart*.

'Fellow' is often used in composition, indicating an associate or sometimes equality: as 'fellow-student'. *The most* of these are self-explaining. *Id.*, s. v. *fellow*.

You have a great deal more than *the most* of your fellow-creatures have. MRS. OLIPHANT, 1)

He (sc. Quiller-Couch) believed that *the most* of them (sc. the revisers of the Old Testament) could wonderfully improve 'the talent of the ear', as he would call it. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6240, 8d.

- 3) Usage seems to be about equally divided before the substantive *most*, which is generally used of things, rarely of persons.

i. \* Those who know *most* of Sir Thomas. TROL.<sup>2)</sup>

I think I have done *most* by sea. LADY BARKER, *Lett.* 141.<sup>2)</sup>

\*\* He is more generously equipped in the matter than *most*. ETHEL M. DELL, *The Way of an Eagle*, II, Ch. XII, 94.

- ii. \* They who know *the most* | Must mourn the deepest o'er the fatal truth, |  
The Tree of Knowledge is not that of Life. BYRON, *Manfred*, I, 1.

It was Mrs. Dibble who could tell *the most*. MISS BURNETT, *Little Lord*, 240. Of all our dramatists Shakespeare loses *the most* by a dumb-show performance. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6353, 7a.

\*\* Sunk... | Too deep for *the most* to discern. M. ARNOLD, *Youth of Nature*, 71.<sup>3)</sup>

1) TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, VI.      2) SATTLER, *E. S.*, XXXI, 343.

3) MURRAY, s. v. *most*, A, II, 7, b.

To *the most*, indeed, he had become not so much a Man as a Thing. CARL., Sart. Res. Ch. III, 11.

To the Editor of these sheets, as to a young enthusiastic Englishman, however unworthy, Teufelsdröckh opened himself perhaps more than to *the most*. Ib., 13.

- 4) Some cases call for special mention. The indefinite article is never or hardly ever dropped:

- a) when *most* is modified by *by far*.

As pre- (præ-) and pro- are great Latin prefixes, it follows that *by far the most* of the words in this section are of Latin origin MURRAY, Pref. Note to N. E. D., *premisal* — *prophesier*.

- β) when *most* is modified by an adnominal clause.

The rat is almost unteachable; *the most* that can be taught him being attachment to the person. All the Year Round, 1883, July, 42a.

This is really *the most* that I can concede. MURRAY, s.v. *most* A, II, 5.

*The most* that can be hoped for, is [etc.]. FOWLER, Concise Oxford Dict., Pref.

Note the idiom in: If she knows her letters, *it's the most she does*. DICK., Our Mut. Friend, I, Ch. III, 27. (= Dutch: zal het mooi zijn.)

- γ) in the phrase *to make the most of*.

We have not made *the most of* our victories. SWIFT, Conduct of the Allies, Pref., (421a).

How to make *the most of* her beauty. GAY, Beggar's Opera, I, 4.

Every pretext for physical recreation was seized and made *the most of*. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XIV, 156.

Let his enemies make *the most of* it. DICK., Pickw., Ch. I, 3.

We cannot complain if Protectionist writers and speakers make *the most of* this plum. Westm. Gaz., No. 5513, 1c.

- δ) in the phrase *for the most part* in the sense of *for the greater part*. Ch. XXX, 9.

i. His neighbours are bad *for the most part*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

Reviews of books... are *for the most part* done by outsiders. Good Words (STOF., Leesb., I, 94).

ii. In Germany as elsewhere, the ninety-and-nine Public Men can *for most part* be but mute train-bearers to the hundredth. CARL., Sart. Res., Ch. III, 16.

NOTE I. When not preceded by *for*, *most part* seems to stand mostly without the article. The article is regularly dropped before this phrase used adverbially.

i. \* I went and took a view of *most part* of Hungary. S. L. tr. Fryke's Voy. E. Ind., 2.<sup>1)</sup>

I was puzzled to bequeath *most part* of my clothes ... to Lorna. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVII, 217.

\*\* Mere resin and noise *most part*. CARLYLE, French Rev., I, 109.<sup>2)</sup>

Old official gentlemen, military *most part*. Id., Fred.<sup>2)</sup>

His nature was *most part* a cold one. E. FITZ GERALD.<sup>2)</sup>

ii. My dear little girl was, thank God, unable to understand *the most part* of their ribaldry. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. XII, 158.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s.v. *most*, A, 1, c.

<sup>2)</sup> SATTler, E. S., XXXI, 346.

Some few of the younger grovelled at his knees, and kissed his feet, . . . but *the most part* kept a stolid indifference. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXV, 184b.

II. Before *most* when equivalent to *most part*, the article seems to be dropped regularly.

It had rained *most* of October, but November was, though dark, fairly dry. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*. Ch. XIV, 102.

Compare with the above: The personal charms which Tess could boast of were *in main part* her mother's gifts. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. III, 21.

- b) What has been said of *most* most probably applies, in the main, also to *least* when used as an indefinite numeral. The evidence to hand at the moment of writing is, however, too scanty to justify the drawing of any definite conclusions.

conjunct. i. He showed *least* mercy to those who had forsaken him. I. SCHMIDT, *Eng. Gram.*, § 223.

Of the well-defined vowels that which is articulated with *least* effort is [a]. RIPPMAHN, *Sounds of Spok. Eng.*, § 37

- ii. The fewest words will probably do *the least* harm in the long run. H. B. MAYOR, *The Fallacy of the Elder Brother* (Nineteenth Cent., No. 393, 813).

Of all people in the world the English have *the least* sense of the beauty of literature. OSCAR WILDE, *The Pict. of Dor. Gray* Ch. IV, 62.

absolute. i. Those who have most virtue in their mouths have *least* of it in their bosoms. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops to Conquer*, II, (190).

- ii. At last it was the turn of the good old-fashioned dance which has *the least* of variety and the most of merriment in it. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VI, Ch. X, 407.

substantive. i. The truly modest and stout say *least* and are least exceptional. WYCH., *The Plain Dealer*, II, 1.

The few who are wealthy... are the ones who have *least* to fear. *Lit. World* 1892, 377a.

- ii. Those who know *the least*, obey the best. G. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, IV, 1, (307).

*The least* said the soonest mended. MARRYAT, *Pirate*, V. (In this proverb the article is mostly suppressed before both superlatives.)

We, of all the peoples, have the most to lose and *the least* to gain by war. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 49, 151.

Note. *Least* never loses the article:

- a) when in negative, hypothetical or interrogative contexts it has the meaning of *any however small*. (Ch. XL, 18, Obs. IV). In this function it approaches, however, distinctly to an ordinary adjective. (Ch. XXX, 8, s. v. *least*, a.)

Fire-escape intended to be always ready without *the least* preparation. II. Catal., *Gt. Exhib.*, 330.<sup>1)</sup>

I visited all the scenes that were in *the least* degree associated with Winnie, TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, XIV, Ch. I, 386.

Have you *the least* idea of what they are talking about? BERN. SHAW, *Getting Married*, (241).

- β) in the phrase *to say the least* (of it).

We hold the moral law to be as much, *to say the least of it*, the appointment of God as any natural law. McCOSH, *Div. Govt.*, II, ii, 197.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

γ) when modified by *possible*:

"And what will you have for dinner, mem?" — "Oh, *the least possible*!"

AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, III, Ch. I, 239.

They only wish to do *the least possible* that will satisfy Wales. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6147, 7a.

- c) It may reasonably be assumed that *fewest* exhibits, in the main, the same practice as *least* as regards the use of the article. Anything like adequate documentary evidence is not, however, available at the moment of going to press.

Of all my acquaintance he has *fewest* friends. I. SCHMIDT, *Eng. Gram.*, § 223.

Those who have *fewest* children have *fewest* cares. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. II, 61.

The present Prime Minister has set an admirable example of forcible, condensed speaking, but he has few imitators, and perhaps *fewest* on the front benches. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5549, 2a.

- d) The superlative *first* often loses the definite article in the adverbial phrase *the first thing (place)*, especially in colloquial language, in which unimportant words are often suppressed for the sake of brevity.

- i. Where have you been to, *first place*? MRS. GASK, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XII, 133.

What were you fretting about, *first place*? *ib.*, Ch. V, 42.

You must pay him *first thing*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. IV, 203.

I meant to have a few words with you on this subject *first thing*. MRS. WARD, *Sir George Tres.*, III, Ch. XXI, 177a.

You can order a fly *first thing*, and bring me my breakfast early. *ib.*, I, Ch. II, 14a.

- ii. He must go there *the first thing* the next day. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsem.*, Ch. X, 83.

Go down, *the first thing* to-morrow, by the six o'clock train. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. LXXI, 251.

I shall go to get news of him, *the first thing* to-morrow morning. FLOR. MARRYAT, *A Beautiful Soul*, 18.

Compare: It's a jolly time; a goal kicked by us *first day*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. VI, 115.

They had done work for *first lesson*. *ib.*<sup>1)</sup>

- e) Occasionally we find the article dropped also before other superlatives than the above, mostly as it seems, for the sake of metre or rhythm. Instances are especially frequent in earlier English. Compare 28, a, 3, a, Note II; 64, c; and see DUBISLAW, *Beitr.*, § 9, ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 37; EINENKEL, *Streifz.*, 28; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 267.

So *longest way* shall have the *longest* moans. *Rich.* II, V, I, 90.

*Best* safety lies in fear. *Hamlet*, I, 3, 41.

But grace abus'd brings forth the foulest deeds, | As *richest* soil the most luxuriant weeds. COWPER.<sup>1)</sup>

Blighting my life in *best* of its career. BYRON, *Lam. of Tasso*, IV, 21.

Thus also *chief* sometimes loses the article:

Caius Marcius is *chief* enemy to the people. *Coriol.*, I, I, 8.

O Son, in whom my soul hath *chief* delight. *Milt.*, *Par. Lost*, III, 168

Stapylton has *chief* control of its finances. *Bar. ORCZY*, *The Case of Miss Elliott*, Ch. II, 18.

<sup>1)</sup> SATTLER, E. S., XXXI, 341.



21. The definite article is often suppressed before *one*, when used as the correlative of *the other*, *another*, *other* or of another *one*. See Ch. XL, 155-158, and compare also TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, VI, 28.

a) When it is the correlative of *the other* (Ch. XL, 155, a).

1) Suppression is practically regular:

a) when the two words are connected by *or* or *nor*.

i. \* When the question is settled *one way or the other*, I don't believe Mr. Brough will take any further notice of me. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 81.

My Lady Warrington ... had the faith and health of the servants' hall in keeping. Heaven can tell whether she knew how to doctor them rightly: but, was it pill or doctrine, she administered *one or the other* with equal belief in her authority. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XLV, 465.

They want to eat their cake and have it—to escape conscription and cut down the Navy — It cannot be done, gentlemen! It is *one or the other*, as Cobden saw fifty years ago. Rev. of Rev., CCXVIII, 127a.

The overwhelming majority of the books noted are so prejudiced on *one side or the other* that they are quite negligible. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6147, 11b.

\*\* The tide of battle seemed to flow now toward the southern, now toward the northern extremity of the lists, as *the one or the other* party prevailed. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XII, 123.

ii. It is but two months since you were sighing at her feet — making poems to her — placing them in hollow trees by the river-side. I knew all. I watched you — that is, she showed them to me. Neither *one* nor *the other* was in earnest, perhaps; but it is too soon now, Arthur to begin a new attachment. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVII, 294.

β) when the reference is indefinite.

I don't know that he has accused me of stealing Van den Bosch's spoons and tankards when we dine there, or of robbing on the highway. But for *one* reason or *the other* he has chosen to be jealous of me. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXX, 743. (*The one ... the other* would be equivalent to *the former ... the latter*. See 2, a.) Sometimes they (sc. these chieftains) hired themselves to *one* state to protect it against *the other*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, Ch. IV, 103.

γ) when the two words, connected by *and*, form a kind of unit standing for *each* or *both*.

When Laura appeared blushing and happy, as she hung on Pen's arm, the Major gave a shaky hand to *one and the other*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 399.

She had taken unfair advantage of him, as her brother had at play. They were his own flesh and blood, and they ought to have spared him. Instead, *one and the other* had made a prey of him. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XLVIII, 496.

Thus also the definite article is regularly dropped in the phrase: *one way and the other* = to and fro.

To flounce = to throw the limbs and body *one way and the other*. WEBST., *Dict.*

To wag = to move *one way and the other* with quick turns. Ib.

Note also the regular absence of the definite article in the saying: *six of one and half-a-dozen of the other* (= Dutch *oud lood om oud ijzer*.)

Mostly they come for skill — or idleness. *Six of one, and half-a-dozen of the other.* DICK., *Bleak House*, Ch. XXIV, 211.

- d) when the two words are used in reciprocal relation, an intervening preposition having occasioned the substitution of *the other* for *another*. (Ch. XL, 156, c, Obs. III.)

i. They walked *one* behind *the other*. CONAN DOYLE, *Refugees*, 317.  
We depended *one* upon *the other*. BESANT, *All Sorts and Conditions of Men*, Ch. XVI, 126.

ii. Here the two bodies are inimical *the one to the other*. Athen., No. 4447, 61c.

- 2) The article seems to be almost regularly retained before *one*:

- a) when the word-group is used substantively and equivalent to *the former . . . the latter*.

i. The First Minister of State has not so much business in public as a wise man has in private; if *the one* have little leisure to be alone, *the other* has little leisure to be in company. COWLEY, *Essays, Of Solitude*, 50.  
*The one* vanquished by a single blow, *the other* by efforts successively repeated. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. I.

Mr. Bumble had a great idea of his oratorical powers and his importance. He had displayed *the one*, and vindicated *the other*. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 24.

ii. Warfare and barter in the market came, *one* as easily as *the other*, to those who tilled the stormy dale. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. VI, 7b.

- b) in the conjunctive expressions *on the one hand . . . on the other, in the one case . . . in the other*. (Ch. X, 10.)

i. The acute Roman took care, *on the one hand*, how he betrayed to the Knight more than he yet knew, or he disgusted him by apparent reserve *on the other*. LYTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. IV, 105.

ii. \* *In the one case* there is no limit to the power of the party to pass any legislation in the teeth of any popular movement; *in the other* the party is to be brought to a full-stop, unless it will submit itself to a plebiscite. Westm. Gaz.

\*\* Guarded by his own conscience *on one hand, on the other*, by the remoteness of the hamlet, . . . he had maintained the old decencies of worship here. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. IV, 56.

- 3) For the rest usage is divided, but there seems to be a distinct tendency to suppress the article.

i. *One* hand may wash *the other*, but both the face. Proverb.

You look at it, Arabin, from *one* side only; I can look at it from *the other*. TROL., *Framl. Pars*, Ch. XXXVI, 353.

Of the two rival claimants, *one* did homage to Philip and *the other* to Edward. GREEN, *Short Hist.*

There are two drawers to my table; in *one* I put my copy-books, in *the other* my letters. GÜNT., *Leerb. der Eng. Taal.*

The Commissionaire plumped down into the chair, and stared from *one* to *the other* of us. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holm.*, *The Blue Carbuncle*.

ii. They (sc. the twins) were both so exactly alike, that it was impossible to distinguish *the one* from *the other*. LAMB., *Tales, Com. of Er.*, 212.

The product of the first year, great or small, shall be divided amongst us. You *the one* half, I and my men *the other* half. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. IV, 105.

The garden was screened by old moss-grown paling, from the neighbouring garden on *the one* side, and a lane on *the other*. Id., Night and Morning, 155.

Captain de Catinet had hardly vanished through *the one* door, before *the other* was thrown open by Madlle Nanon. CON. DOYLE, Refugees, 85.

- b) When *one* is the correlative of *another* (Ch. XL, 156), of *other* (Ch. XL, 157), or of another *one* (Ch. XL, 158), it regularly stands without the article.

i. *One* man must not look at a horse, while *another* may leap over the hedge. Mrs. WOOD, ORV. COL., Ch. V, 76.

*One* good turn deserves *another*. PUNCH, 1894, 155.

ii. He tried to reassure himself with an old and favourite maxim of his, that *one* way or *other* all would turn out for the best. WASH. IRVING, DOLF HEYL. (STOF., HANDL., I, 124).

The longer it goes on, the nearer it must be to a settlement *one* way or *other*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. XIV, 112.

iii. *One* after *one* the men got up and bustled out. HALL CAINE, Deemster, Ch. XXIV, 170.

*One* said this and *one* said that. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVI, 213.

22. Partly contrary to ordinary Dutch practice, the definite article stands before nouns modified by such participial adjectives as (*afore*)*said*), *before-mentioned*, etc.

*The said* face indicated an independent dignity. Mrs. CRAIK, John Hal., Ch. X, 109.

Annual subscriptions, which must be prepaid, are received to *the under-mentioned* periodicals. Times, Adv.

#### THE ARTICLE BEFORE PROPER NOUNS.

23. Proper nouns in their primary and ordinary application stand without either article.

As in Dutch, proper nouns may assume the character of class-nouns, and, like the latter, take the definite or indefinite article. In their altered application they admit of being used in the plural.

i. The lighter, which might have been compared to another garden of Eden, of which my mother was *the Eve*, and my father *the Adam* to consort with, was entered by this serpent, who tempted her. MARRYAT, Jacob Faithful, Ch. I, 3a.

ii. He is *a plain John Bull*, and has no relish for frippery and nicknacks. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., John Bull, 309.

The lofty alliance had converted the once gentle and dreamy Rose into *a very Roxana*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho! Ch. XIX, 146b.

iii. A supposition at which *the two young Cratchits* became livid. CHRISTM. CAROL, III, 68.

Note in this connection the placing of *a* before names of persons used as war-cries. This *a* is now mostly treated as the indefinite article, but is in reality the representative of the obsolete interjection *a*, which

is a dialect form of *o* and *ah*. See MURRAY, s.v. *A*, interjection. DUBISLAW (Beit. zur hist. Synt. des Eng., § 11) explains this *a* as a survival of the French preposition *à*.

*A Clifford! a Clifford!* we'll follow the king and Clifford. Henry VI, B, IV, 8, 52.

"*A Hubert! a Hubert!*" shouted the populace. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XII, 137.

"*A Colonna! a Colonna!*" "*An Orsini! an Orsini!*" were shouts loudly and fiercely interchanged. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 14.

The little town was in an uproar with men running to and fro, and shouting "*A Monmouth! a Monmouth!* the Protestant religion!" MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 142. Such as had possessed themselves of pikes in the city waved pennons in the air and cried: "*A Roy! a Roy of Calverton*". MAX PEMBERTON, *I crown thee king*, Ch. XVIII, 234.

They were sore weary, laggards in hope, but still they cried: "*A Wyat! a Wyat!*". *ib.*, 233.

24. Many proper names are distinctly significant, and are, consequently, more or less regularly preceded by the definite article.

The function of the article is twofold, i. e. it suggests a specializing or individualizing element, as in *the Channel* (= the Channel between England and France) or it indicates pre-eminence as in *the Book* (= the best book or the Bible). Cf. 5. a) and c). This difference is not however, here insisted on, as being of no importance for any practical purpose.

The following groups of significant proper names may be distinguished.

- a) names of persons and deities: *the Devil*, *the Father*, *the Lord*, *the Redeemer*, *the Saviour*, *the Virgin*, *the Speaker*, etc.
- b) names of localities: *the Channel*, *the Exchange*, *the Levant*, *the Mall*, *the Mint*, *the Peak*, *the Poultry*, *the Strand*, *the Tower*, etc.
- c) names of institutions and social or political events: *the Inquisition*, *the Synod*, *the Reformation*, *the Restoration*, *the Revolution*, etc.

Thus also the *Epiphany* or the manifestation (sc. of the infant Jesus to the Gentiles in the persons of the Magi), chiefly used as the name of a church festival, also called *Twelfth Night*.

- d) names of books and other publications: *the Bible*, *the Book*, *the Standard*, *the Times*, *the Globe*, etc.

A little illustration must suffice:

**book.** Swear upon *the Book* | Not to reveal it, till you see me dead. TEN., *Enoch Arden*, 834.

With the coming of the new year a minor improvement has been made in the way of administering the oath in the courts. No longer is it necessary to kiss *the Book*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5201, 2b.

**Epiphany.** While December 25 came to be universally observed as the day of Nativity, the feast of January 6, twelve days after, was retained as *the Epiphany*. *Harmsw. Enc.*, s.v. *Epiphany*. (The absence of the article before *nativity* seems to be exceptional.)

The First Sunday after *the Epiphany*. *Common Prayer*.

**Tower.** The lions in *the Tower*. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXV, 244.

Note. *Devil* and its substitutes often lose the article in imprecations.

i. *Devil* take you. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (235).

*O devil* on't. *ib.*, II, 2, (233).

*Pox* on her! *ib.*, III, 4, (256).



*Deuce* take the man! DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXV, 249.

*Devil* take you! ID., CHUZ., Ch. LI, 393a.

*Plague* take them! THACK., Van. Fair, I, Introd.

- ii. *The devil* take me! CONGREVE, Love for Love, V, 2, (301).

O' *the devil*! what damned costive poet has given thee this lesson in fustian to get by rote? ID., III, 3, (241).

*The devil* fetch me if I do (sc. fetch it)! G. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, IV, 3, (320).

Compare with the above: a) Captain Absolute and Ensign Beverley are one and the same person — *The devil* they are! SHER., Riv., I, 1, (213).

- β) To what *the devil* does this tend? THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXI, 341.

Who *the deuce* was she? ID., Virg., Ch. VII, 70.

The indefinite article is also found in sentences of this type: What *a plague* means my niece, to take the death of her brother thus? Twelfth Night, I, 3, I.

What *a pox* does this Foresight mean by this civility? CONGREVE, Love for Love, II, 2, (236).

II. Also *Lord* sometimes loses the article in the language of invocation.

*Lord* send we may be coming to something better in the New Year nigh upon us! DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, I, 14.

*Lord* love you! TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. VIII, 82.

*Lord* deliver us! BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 29.

The article is, of course, regularly dropped before *Lord* in the vocative.

Ah, *Lord*, help you! FARQUHAR, The Beaux' Stratagem, III, 3, (398).

25. a) When the significant meaning of such words ceases to be understood, they are apt to lose the article.

This is the case with *Christ*, *God*; *Eden*, *Heaven*, *Hell*, *Paradise*, *Purgatory*; *Elysium*, *Hades*, *Orcus*, *Tartarus*.

And a river went out of *Eden* to water the garden. Bible, Gen., II, 10.

He descended into *Hell*; The third day he rose again from the dead. He ascended into *Heaven*. Common Prayer.

I know not . . . if it (sc. the bird) were in winged guise! A visitant from *Paradise*. BYRON, Prisc. of Chil., X, 34.

In Homer *Tartarus* is a place beneath the earth, as far below *Hades* as *heaven* is above the earth. Cassell's Concise Cycl.

Note I. *Christ* is sometimes found with the article.

Thou art *the Christ*. Bible, Matth., XVI, 16.

We have found the *Messias*, which is, being interpreted, *the Christ*. ID., John, I, 41.

I made them lay their hands in mine and swear | To reverence the King, as if he were | Their conscience, and their conscience as their King, | To break the heathen and uphold *the Christ*. TEN., Guin., 467.

*Christ* is dealt with as an ordinary appellative and may, accordingly, stand with any of the ordinary noun-modifiers, when it denotes an image used as an object of worship.

At a meeting of the paths was a crucifix, and between the feet of *the Christ* a little red patch of dead poppies. Westm. Gaz., No. 6182, 7a.

II. Usage is divided as to *heaven*, whether in the singular or the plural.

The singular in its various shades of meaning, mostly stands without the article; apparently, regularly when it denotes the Supreme

Being, and when forming a kind of unit with earth in the sense of the Universe.

The plural, on the other hand, in all its varied applications, is almost regularly preceded by the article, except in the vocative. (Ch. XXV, 20.) See also ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 26.

- i. In the beginning God created *the heaven* and the earth. Bible, Gen., I, 1.  
The sun slowly sank in *the heaven*. W. COLLINS, *After Dark*, 81.<sup>1)</sup>  
When from *the heaven* does not smile a listening Father, it soon becomes an empty space. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 133.
- ii. \* *Heaven's* high canopy, that covers all. DRYDEN. *Ovid's Met.*, I.<sup>2)</sup>  
Better to reign in Hell, than serve in *Heaven*. MILTON, *Par. Lost*, I, 263.  
Trees, | As high as *heaven*. TEN., *Sea Dreams*, 100.  
Things of great height are said by hyperbole to reach to *heaven*. MURRAY, s. v. *heaven*, 1b  
The clouds, winds, breath, fowls of *heaven*. *Ib.*, 2.  
\*\* (I would) speak with her, if *Heaven* gives me an opportunity, as *Heaven*, I feel assured, will give. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 143b.  
\*\*\* There are more things in *heaven* and earth, Horatio, | Than are dreamt of in your philosophy. Hamlet, I, 5, 166.  
Papa ... would move *heaven* and earth for her, if he could. TROL., *Orley Farm*, Ch. XIX.<sup>2)</sup>  
Nothing in *heaven* or earth would have stayed her hand now. *New Antigone*, Ch. XIX.<sup>2)</sup>

III. SHAKESPEARE sometimes has the article before *Heaven* when the supreme Being is meant, and before *Paradise* when it is not the abode of the blessed, but the Garden of Eden that is referred to. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 265.

*The heaven* such grace did lend her. *Two Gentlem.*, IV, 2, 41.

Not that Adam that kept *the Paradise*, but that Adam that keeps the prison. *Com. of Err.*, IV, 3, 15.

IV. *God* takes the definite article, when preceded by a continuative adjective, but *Almighty God* is more frequent than *the Almighty God*.

i. He thanked *the good God* for all the blessings He had bestowed on him.

ii. \* I am *the Almighty God*; walk before me. Bible, Gen., XVII, 1.

\*\* Great and manifold were the blessings, most dread Sovereign, which *Almighty God*, the Father of all mercies, bestowed upon us, the people of England. *Authorised Version*.

On Tuesday in St. Paul's Cathedral the King and Queen rendered thanks to *Almighty God* for the safe and happy course and ending of their visit to India. *Times*, No. 1832, 116d.

On the analogy of *Almighty God* also, perhaps, *Almighty Power*, as in:  
The stillness of *Almighty Power* is here. EBENEZER ELLIOTT, *Love*, II.

b) The suppression cannot, however, always be accounted for in this way. As is also shown by a comparison of the nouns mentioned in 24 and 25, a, it is sometimes due to no apparent cause, beyond the generally prevailing economy of language.

1) Thus the definite article is mostly omitted before *Scripture*, notwithstanding the significance of the word. The plural, however, seems to take the article regularly.

1) ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 26. 2) MURRAY, s. v. *heaven*.

- i. \* So spoke, in the emphatic words of *Scripture*, the helpless and bereft father. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXV, 373.

The clergyman . . . read the service in a lively agreeable voice, giving almost a dramatic point to the chapters of *Scripture* which he read. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XV, 148.

We have the authority of *Scripture* for believing that the unjust steward, though he fears not God and regards not man, nevertheless is roused to action if the importunate widow will but be importunate enough. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVII, 406a.

\*\* *The Scripture* moveth us in sundry places [etc.]. Common Prayer. I asked the boy whether he or his parents were acquainted with *the Scripture* and ever read it. GEORGE BORROW, *The Bible in Spain*, Ch. I, 11.

- ii. Dutch tiles designed to illustrate *the Scriptures*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 21.

Her religion, manufactured in the main by her own intelligence and an ardent study of *the Scriptures*, was an aid to her in this matter. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. I, 4.

There's an infallible guide both for you and me, and that's *the Holy Scriptures*. MRS. WARD, *Dav Grieve*, I, 238.

- 2) In the language of the illiterate *Bible* sometimes drops the definite article.

"Flesh is grass", *Bible* says. MRS. GASK.<sup>1)</sup>

26. There are, however, numerous cases in which the article continues to be used, although all significance in the name is practically gone, or at least forgotten. Thus the article is regularly used:

a) before all plurals (Ch. XXV, 19, i).

- b) before the following singulars. Those mentioned in the second group have a Dutch equivalent without the article.

i. *the Carnatic, the Crimea, the Hague, the Herzegovina, the Lindenness, the Lizard* (= *Lizard Point*), *the Minch, the Naze* (= *the Lindenness*), *the Nore, the Palatinate, the Punja(u)b* (= *Punjab*), *the Sahara, the Solent, the Sound, the Sudan, the Ukraine*.

ii. *the Deccan, the Grisons, the Morea, the Texel* (as the name of an arm of the sea).

Note. *Alsace*, unlike the Dutch *de Elzas*, has not the article.

iii. *the Acropolis, the Alhambra, the Capitol, the Pantheon*.

A few illustrative quotations must suffice:

**Lindenness.** The coast of Norway, studded with isles from its southern extremity; *the Lindenness*, or *Naze*, to the North Cape. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. I, 2.

**Lizard.** It was only on the nineteenth of July that the sails of the Armada were seen from *the Lizard*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § VI, 418. Arthur's ship is sighted off *the Lizard*. GRANT ALLEN, *Hilda Wade*, Ch. I, 25.

Lieutenant Prowse was washed off the conning-tower platform of submarine "C 37" near *the Lizard* on Saturday of last week. 11. Lond. News, No. 3703, 528a.

**Morea.** Its modern name, *the Morea*, . . . was given to it from its resemblance in shape to a mulberry leaf. Harmsw. Encycl., s.v. *Peloponnesus*.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 267.

**Punjaub.** During his few years of office he annexed *the Punjaub*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 175.

The manufacturing industry of *the Punjab* is more extensive than in any other province of India. Cassell's *Conc. Cyclop.*

**Texel.** They (sc. the ships) were said to be in *the Texel*. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 119.

While his small fleet lay tossing in *the Texel*, a contest was going on among the Dutch authorities. *Ib.*, 139.

The Dutch fleet from *the Texel*, which was to protect a French force in its descent upon Ireland, was met by a far larger fleet under admiral Duncan. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, 810.

We may be anywhere between *the Texel* and Cap Gris Nez. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. VI, 40b.

Before some the article has disappeared or is disappearing: *the Buenos Ayres, the Carac(c)as, the Hainault, the Honduras, the Mauritius, the Tyrol*.

Instead of *the Brazils*, modern practice has the singular *Brazil*.

**Buenos Ayres.** i. She must have been bound from *the Buenos Ayres*, or the Rio de la Plata, in the south part of America, beyond *the Brazils*, to *the Havana*, in the Gulf of Mexico. DEFOE, *Rob. Crusoe*, 192.

ii. The mean temperature of *Buenos Ayres* is nearly the same as at Cadiz. *Harmsworth Encyclop.*, s.v. *Argentine Republic*, 331a.

**Carac(c)as.** i. (This) was going on, it seemed, to some Señora or other at *the Caraccas*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVII, 206a.

How far is it to *the Caraccas*? *Ib.*, Ch. XV, 124a.

ii. I am to be governor of La Guayra in *Caraccas*. *Ib.*, Ch. XII, 100b.

*Caracas* is connected with La Guaira by a narrow-gauge line. *Harmsworth Encycl.*

**Hainault.** i. Its fantastic belfry (sc. of Mons) marks it as a capital of *the Hainault*. H. BELLOC, *Mons* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5317, 5a).

*The Hainault* is still called *the Hainault* upon stamped paper beyond the frontier line. *Ib.*

ii. From the middle of the 11th century down to 1477, the countship of *Hainault* was almost continuously united with it. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s.v. *Flanders*.

**Honduras.** i. Don't you mind William Prust, that Captain Hawkins left behind in *the Honduras*? C. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XX, 153a.

ii. *Honduras* is burdened with a heavy external debt. *Harmsw. Encycl.*

**Mauritius.** i. The ship bore for *the Mauritius*. *A Ship on Fire* (STOF., *Leesb.*, I, 5).

ii. On Thursday she sighted the Island of Rodrigues, and arrived at *Mauritius* on Monday 23rd. *Ib.*

He is now the holder of a Government appointment in the island of *Mauritius*. CON. DOYLE, *Sherl. Holmes*, II, 280.

The omission of these colonies and some others, such as *Mauritius*, from the list can only be temporary. *Ib.*

**Tyrol.** i. I will send you a guide-book from *the Tyrol*. BEATR. HARRADEN, *Ships*, I, Ch. XIX, 107.

The castle, which is the largest in *the Tyrol*, has fallen from its former high estate. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5388, 13b.

Motorists travelling *the Tyrol* should note the new police regulations regarding motor traffic. *Ib.*, No. 5394, 13b.

ii. The Alps of Switzerland being extended into *Tyrol*. Cassell's *Concise Cyclop.*, s.v. *Tyrol*.



The Inn, the Adige, and the Drave have part of their courses in *Tyrol*. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s.v. *Tyrol*.

With its romantic landscape, its many historic associations, and its hospitable, cultured people, *Tyrol* has an irresistible appeal for every traveller. *Il. Lond. New*, No. 3816, 891a.

**Peloponnesus (Peloponnese).** i. Sparta...the chief city of the *Peloponnesus*. *Cassell's Concise Cyclop.*, s.v. *Sparta*.

ii. Asclepius was gone into *Peloponnese*. *CH. KINGSLEY, The Heroes*, II, II, 110. The Achæan cities in the north of *Peloponnesus* consolidated and enlarged their ancient league. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s.v. *Greece*, 333a.

**Note.** According to WENDT (*Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 164) *Barbado(e)s*, apparently a plural, often stands with the article, *Bermuda* is getting more and more common for the *Bermudas* when the whole archipelago is designated, the *Bahamas* has not yet been ousted by *Bahama*, the *Havana* occasionally appears for *Havana*.

27. An unconscious or dim perception of the significancy that originally attached to all proper names, may also account for the occasional use of the definite article before certain ancient family-names of Scotch or Irish, and more rarely of English history.

The article is said to have the force of representing the bearer of the name as a person of note and (or) as the head of his clan or family, but its use is highly irregular. We find it especially in the old ballads and the romantic tales of SCOTT. Instances also occur in SHAKESPEARE and, indeed, in the oldest literature. In the latest English we also find it before the names of famous beauties, or 'stars'. Sometimes the old practice is revived in mock-heroic poetry.

- i. We will persuade the Duke of Burgundy | To leave *the Talbot* and to follow us. *Henry VI, A, III, 2, 20*.

My ancestors did from the streets of Rome | *The Tarquin* drive, when he was call'd a king. *Jul. Cæs.*, II, I, 54.

Is there not my father, my uncle and myself? lord Edmund Mortimer, my lord of York and Owen Glendower? is there not *the Douglas*? *Henry IV, A, II, 3, 27*.

*The Douglas* and *the Hotspur* both together | Are confident against the world in arms. *Id.*, A, V, I, 116.

Can I not frame a fever'd dream, | But still *the Douglas*, is the theme? *Scott, Lady, I, xxxv, 18*.

Pour forth the glory of *the Graeme*! *Ib.*, II, vi, 28.

Take arms, if you love *the Stewart*. *Scott, Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXV, 373. Robert *the Bruce* was present, and assisted the English to gain the victory. *Id.*, *Tales of a Grandf.*, 25b.

Baldeary O'Donnel, who called himself *the O'Donnel*, a title far prouder in the estimation of his race, than any marquise or dukedom, had been bred in Spain. *MACAULAY, Hist.*, VI, Ch. XVI, 58.

- ii. I've seen *the Siddons*, sir, and *the O'Nale* — They were great, but what were they compared to Miss Fotheringay. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 57.

Your manner reminded me of Mars. Did you ever see *the Mars*, Miss Fotheringay? *Ib.*, Ch. XI, 113.

*The Fotheringay* was uncommonly handsome, in a white raiment and leopard skin. *Ib.*, I, Ch. XIV, 138.

*The Sherrick* creates quite a different sentiment — *the Sherrick* is splendid, stately, sleepy. *Id.*, *New c.*, I, Ch. XXV, 278.

I never knew *the Bernstein* but as an old woman. *Id.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXVII, 281.  
If *the Cattarina* wrote him billets-doux, I fear Aunt Bernstein would have bade him accept the invitations. *Ib.*, Ch. XXVIII, 289.

*The Yarmouth* bears no malice. *Ib.*, Ch. XLI, 422.

She had not so grand an appearance as *the Symonds*. JAMES PAIN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, H, Ch. II, 149.

When *the Symonds* broke her leg, there was nothing for it but to engage yonder excellent young woman. *Ib.*, 152.

- iii. *The Balfour* and *the Chamberlain* | Were walking close at hand; | They wept like anything to see | So great a waste of sand; | "If Asquith would but plough it up", | They said, "it would be grand". *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5249, 5.

Oh! I mustn't forget — I want to present Mr. Dummer . . . *the Dummer*, you know. ANSTEY, *Voces Populi*.

Compare with the above the following quotations: Those who wish to investigate the subject, may consult the chronicles of Winton, and the History of *Bruce*, by Archdeacon Barbour. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, *Introd.*, 16.

Let him arise at your call . . . — the partaker of the illustrious blood of *Douglas*. *Ib.*, *Introd.*, 14.

Concerning the Exploits of *Edward Bruce*, *the Douglas*, and the Death of *Robert Bruce*. *Id.*, *Tales of a Grandf.*, 39a.

*Bruce* struck Comyn a blow with his dagger. *Ib.*, 26a.

*Douglas* went in disguise to the house of one of his old servants. *Ib.*, 32b.

28. Also when a proper name is not significant, we may find it preceded by the definite article. This is often the case, when it is accompanied by an adnominal adjunct, whether restrictive or continuative. DEN HERTOOG, *Ned. Spraakk.*, III, § 34; STOF., *Stud.*, B, § 16; EINENKEL, *Streifzüge*, 2; KELLNER, *Hist. Outl. of Eng. Synt.*, 137; ELLINGER, *E. S.*, XX; *Id.*, *Verm. Beitr.*, 29; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 164.

- a) Restrictive adjuncts may, or may not, cause the use of the definite article.

- 1) When the adjunct is a clause, the article would seem to be indispensable.

I am referring to *the Napoleon* who lost the battle of Sedan, not to *the Napoleon* who died of Saint Helena.

- 2) When the adjunct is a prepositional phrase, the article is seldom absent, unless the phrase is felt as part of the proper name.

- i. Could *the England* of 1685 be, by some magical process, set before our eyes, we should not know one landscape in a hundred or one building in ten thousand. *Mac.*, *Hist.*, II, Ch. III, 276.

The difference in salubrity between *the London* of the nineteenth century and *the London* of the seventeenth century was far greater than the difference between London in an ordinary season and London in the cholera. *Ib.*, Ch. III.

- ii. \* The same may be said of the numberless entries . . . applying to *London* of the last century. *Periodical*.<sup>1)</sup>

<sup>1)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 185.

When we look at *Italy of the Renaissance*, at *England of the sixteenth century*, we are amazed. FRANCIS THOMPSON, *Health and Holiness*, 24.

\*\* *Frankfort-on-the-Main*, *Newcastle-on-Tyne*, *Newcastle-under-Lyne*.

*Antipholis of Syracuse*, *Antipholus of Ephesus*. LAMB., *Tales*, Com. of Er. (Thus throughout the tale, irrespective of grammatical function.)

3) Practice is more varied when the adjunct is an adjective.

a) With quality-expressing (participial) adjectives usage may be equally divided, when they enter into a free combination with their head-words. There seems to be a tendency of omitting the article, when the restrictive force of the adjective is weakened, i. e. when the notion of any alternative is but dimly present to the speaker's mind.

names of persons. i. The other was John Comyn, ... usually called *the Red Gomyn*, to distinguish him from his kinsman *the Black Comyn*, so named from his swarthy complexion. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.*, 25a. The goldsmith ... had given the chain to *the wrong Antipholis*. LAMB., *Tales*, Com. of Er., 219.

*The married Antipholis* had done all the things she taxed this *Antipholis* with. *Ib.*, 222.

During this time *the old Mr. Dickens* was confined in the Marshalsea Prison. MISS DICK. (STOF., Leesb. voor Aanvangsklassen, I, 16).

The result was his marriage and the adoption of *the new Mrs. Acland's* son. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. II, 33.

There in a comfortable chair sits *the modern Alexander*, a map of the battlefield before him. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 114a.

ii. It was not so with *old Mr. Osborne*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XIII, 128. *Old Mr. Osborne's* scowl, terrific always, had never before looked so deadly to her. *Ib.*, 130.

names of countries, towns, etc. i. I see already rising the liberties and the grandeur of *the New Rome*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 40. They had institutions derived partly from imperial Rome, partly from papal Rome, partly from *the old Germany*. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 67. The sight of *the new Boston*. BELLAMY, *Look Backw.*, 38.

Burglary was not among the perils of *the modern Boston*. *Ib.*, 39.

There is a long chain of lakes, extending from *the ancient Phrygia* into Cappadocia. CASSSELL'S CONC. CYCLOP., s. v. *Asia Minor*.

*The New Egypt*. Title of a Book.

Remains of *the Ancient Olympia*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIV, 124.

Neither our sympathy with *the new Turkey*, nor our improved relations with Russia, could justify us in encouraging or helping on this adumbrated Slav Confederation. WESTM. GAZ.

The Powers are all but agreed upon the limits of *the autonomous Albania*. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6177, 1b.

ii. \* Wherever a language derived from that of *ancient Rome* is spoken, the religion of *modern Rome* to this day prevails. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 67. \*\* *New Italy* vindicates the memory of every martyr whom the clericals have done to death. LIT. WORLD.

*Greater London* has got over 100 theatres and music-halls. GRAPH., No. 2267, 723c.

Note I. But when the adjective forms a kind of fixed or standing combination with its head-word and (or) is understood as part of the proper name, the article is dispensed with.

i. *New York*, *New Orleans*, *New Zealand*, *New Caledonia*.

*Lesser Asia*. WEBST., Dict. (more commonly called *Asia Minor*.)

- ii. *Loftus Major, Loftus Minor.* Mrs. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, passim. (with which compare *the elder Osborne.* THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXI, 346; *the elder George.* *ib.*, II, Ch. XXI, 227; *the younger Brutus.* LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. V, 39.)

II. In the following quotations the absence of the article may be due to the superlative being understood as absolute. See, however, 20, *e.*

I have been in *farthest Greece.* LAMB, *Tales*, *Com. of Er.*, 213. *Darkest Africa.* *Times.*

- β) When the adjective expresses a relation, the article is but rarely met with, at least before the names of countries, towns, etc.

i. *Northern and central France* had by this time fallen into utter ruin. GREEN, *Short Hist.*

Réaumur's thermometer is used only in *North-Western Europe.* Cassell's *Conc. Dict.*, s. v. *thermometer.*

It was supposed that *Eastern Roumelia* would in reality be restored to Turkey. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 315b.

*Of Roman London* and of *Saxon London* little is comparatively known. JOHN DENNIS, *Good Words* (STOF., Leesb., I, 78).

They had institutions derived partly from *imperial Rome*, partly from *papal Rome*, partly from the old Germany. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 67.

All statesmen are agreed that *Mahometan Turkey* has no right of rule in Modern Europe. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, Nov., 622.

The Turks ... have not recently taken any special military measures or precautions in *European Turkey.* *ib.*

*Mediaeval Europe* was a camp with a church in the background. WILLIAM BARRY, *The Papacy*, *Prol.*, 17.

- ii. Beyond that region lies another vast tract, which may be regarded as the Hinterland either of the Egyptian provinces or of *the French Congo.* *Times.* (The use of the article may be due to *Congo*, although the name of a territory, being still felt as the name of the river.)

The following quotations must be given without comment:

"Tell me about my uncle", cried *Virginian Harry.* THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XV, 150.

She brings before us the prudishness of the theatre-going public in *eighteenth-century Paris.* *Athen.*, No. 4447, 62c.

- b) Usage is equally varied when the adjunct is continuative:

- 1) The article is regularly dispensed with, when the adjunct is a clause or a prepositional phrase.

She's devilish like *Miss Catler*, that I used to meet at Dumdum. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 27.

I was quite relieved to find it was only *Brooks* of Sheffield. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 12b.

- 2) Usage is highly arbitrary, when the adjunct is an adjective, but there is a distinct tendency:

α) to use the article, when the adjective is purely descriptive, i. e. intended to give information about what is expressed by its head-word;

β) to omit it, when it is purely emotional, i. e. expressive of some emotion (mostly of sympathy, pity, or admiration, sometimes of contempt) on the part of the speaker or writer.



It stands to reason that we must meet with variable practice with many adjectives which, from the nature of their meaning, are always more or less emotional. Such, among many others, are *beautiful*, *cruel*, *fair*, *great*, *little*, *noble*.

names of persons. i. *The cruel Macbeth*. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandfather*, I, 8b.

Antipholus of Syracuse married *the fair Luciana*; and *the good old Ægeon* . . . lived at Ephesus many years. LAMB, *Tales, Com. of Er.*, 228.

On this, as on all other occasions, he (sc. Mr. Pickwick) is invariably attended by *the faithful Sam*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. LVII, 526.

(This respite) made *the timid little Amelia* almost as happy as a full reprieve would have done. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXV, 264.

It had been as well for Arthur if *the honest Foker* had remained for some time at College. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIX, 193.

"Bless me, father", said eagerly *the young Pisistratus*. LYTTON, *Caxtons*.

*The young Cola* bent his mind to listen. Id., *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 11.

So deeply did *the young Adrian* feel the galling truth of all he uttered. Ib., I, Ch. III, 24.

"Oh, how dull art thou?" answered *the fair Irene*. Ib., I, Ch. IV, 31.

*The inestimable Toots*. SAINTSB., *Ninet. Cent.*, Ch. III, 150.

ii. "I am your father!" cried he. "*young Rip van Winkle* once — *old Rip van Winkle* now!" WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *Rip van Winkle*.

"Don't swear, Will. Harry is much better company than you are, and much better *ton* too, sir!" — "Tong, indeed, confound his tong," growled *envious* Will to himself. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XVI, 169.

"To it again, you little rogues!" says *facetious papa*. Ib., Ch. L, 518.

"How do you mean?" asks *simple Harry*. Ib., Ch. LIX, 615.

While poor Caroline is resting in her coffin, *dapper little George* . . . is dancing a pretty dance with Madame Walmoden. Id., *Four Georges*, II, 55.

They sent this little spar out of the wreck with their love to *good Mrs. Sedley*. Id., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XV, 176.

"We'll find means to give them the slip," said *dauntless little Becky*. Ib., Ch. XXV, 266.

See us at the palace next week, *young Cola*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. I, 16.

As a child and a boy *young Tennyson* was remarked both for acquisition and performance. ANDREW LANG, *Alfred Tennyson*, Ch. I, 4.

names of countries, towns, etc. i. *The mighty London*. WASH. IRV., *Hist. of New York*.

The place where the British exiles had congregated . . . was *the rich and popular Amsterdam*. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 118.

*The ambitious, pushing Melbourne*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. VII, 93.

ii. You have persuaded me to leave *dear England*, and *dearer London*. THOM. SOUTHERN, *Oroonoko*, I, I, (161a).

In *hospitable Cornwall*, especially on such a day, every guest was welcome. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. V, 36b.

I was heartily glad, when . . . I was whirled away from *gouty consumptive Buxton* to London. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 75.

I felt into a wonder that comfort-loving beings could live in *horrible New York*. JOHN HABBERTON, *Helen's Babies*, 34.

Its long struggle with Teutonic Cæsars . . . had daunted the courage even of *unwearied Rome*. WILLIAM BARRY, *The Papacy*, Ch. I, 34.

The responsible Ministerial journals do not indulge in ebullitions of this kind against *perfidious Albion*. *Times*.

Even in *thickly populated London* miles upon miles of streets are lined with wage-earners' cottages. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5255, 4c.

in *happy England* six is the ordinary complement of a first-class carriage. *Id.*, No. 5283, 4c.

Going south through *sleeping France* the difficulty is to keep them (sc. the foot-warmers) out on a moderately warm night. *Id.*

*Catholic Spain* is as free as *Protestant England*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No 5561, 15b.

Few persons would give a longer expectation to *poor Russia* than to *rich Germany*. *Id.*, No. 6059, 3a.

The meeting of the Eucharistic conference in *Protestant England*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 309a.

Sometimes the importance of the town itself has declined . . . , but its stately Town Hall survives as a monument of its former commercial importance. *Remote Bolsward* and *shrunkn Franeker* are instances of this, and a more signal example is the graceful *Stadhuis of decayed Veere*. *Graph.*, No. 2258, 362a.

Note I. Sometimes the use or absence of the article is conditioned by the metre. Compare the two following pairs of sentences.

i. \* Here *the noble Antony*. *Jul. Cæs.*, III, 2.

\* All the conspirators save only he, | Did that they did in envy of *great Cæsar*. *Id.*, V, 5, 70.

ii. \* The ocean queen, *the free Britannia*, bears | The last plunder from a bleeding land. *BYRON, Childs Har.*, II, XIII.

\* Full swiftly Harold wends his lonely way | Where *proud Sevilla* triumphs unsubdued. *Id.*, I, XLV.

II. Some adjectives lose (almost) entirely their original meaning, when used as emotional words. This is, for example, the case with *old*, *poor*, and, to a large extent, with *dear*, *little*. There is, consequently, a wide difference between *poor John* and *the poor John*, *old John* and *the old John*.

*Poor duke of Shrewsbury* has been very ill of a fever. *SWIFT, Journ. to Stella*, XXV, June 25.

As I spoke, *poor Mr. Burchell* entered the house. *GOLDSMITH, Vic.*

He would make a gentleman of the little chap, was Mr. Osborne's constant saying regarding *little Georgy*. *THACK., Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXI, 227.

In the following quotations the use of the article seems to be improper:

For it was my honest friend, *the poor Jack Wildman*, who now lay in this sad condition. *BLACKMORE, The Maid of Sker*, III, 177.<sup>1)</sup>

*The poor Marie* wept for him constantly. *MRS. OLIPHANT, The Laird of Norlaw*, II, 133.<sup>1)</sup>

III. Several of such purely emotional adjectives are sometimes accumulated before one noun.

*Poor dear old Bishop* Grantly had on this matter been too lenient. *TROL., Barch. Tow.*, Ch. IX, 60.

*Poor dear old Dad* has just told me that he has had a big loss on 'Change. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6101, 6c.

Our reader must now please to quit . . . the humdrum life of *poor little Fairoaks*, and transport himself . . . to London. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. XXVIII, 296.

Twinkling in her breast *poor old Pen* saw a locket, which he had bought of Mr. Nathan in High Street with the last shilling he was worth. *Id.*, Ch. VI, 74.

IV. Some emotional adjectives are apt to attach permanently to their head-word, insomuch that they are more or less felt as part of the proper name. Thus *Little Dick* (*GOLDSMITH, Vicar*), *Tiny Tim* (*DICK., Christm. Car.*).

<sup>1)</sup> ELLINGER, E. S., XX.

Also distinctly descriptive adjectives which are constantly used before one and the same name in the course of a narrative or in the daily conversation of certain circles, are apt to lose some of their independence, and, consequently, to discard the article. Thus *Black Sambo* (THACK., Van. Fair); *Blind Bertha* (DICK., Crick.).

The loss of the article imparts a certain degree of familiarity to the combination, and is, therefore, incompatible with the dignified style of poetry. Hence in TENNYSON'S *Idylls of the King* there is no omission of the article before the permanent epithets given to the principal knights, unless required by the metre. Thus *the fine Gawain*, *the meek Sir Percivale*, *the pure Sir Galahad*, etc., but:

So Arthur bad *the meek Sir Percivale* | And *pure Sir Galahad* to uplift the maid.  
TEN., *Lanc. & El.*, 1256-7.

Some of such combinations have become traditional. Such are *Bloody Mary*, *Good Queen Bess*, *Bluff King Hal*; *Merry England*, *Old England*, *Sunny France*.

The English are very fond of their country; they call it '*Old England*' and '*Merry England*'. SCOTT, *Tales of a Grandf.*<sup>1)</sup>

V. Adjectives that are used as titles, such as *honourable*, *noble*, *reverend*, are not, of course, emotional, and, consequently, do not dismiss the article. *The Right Honourable Francis Goodchild*, Lord Mayor of London. THACK.<sup>2)</sup>  
*The Worshipful Francis Goodchild*, Esq. becomes Sheriff of London. Id.<sup>2)</sup>

Thus also when the person is indicated by his social status or rank, as in: That refined patron of the arts, and enlightened lover of music and the drama, *the Most Noble the Marquis of Steyne*. Id., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XIV, 140.

They are Suffolk people, and distantly related to *the Right Honourable the Earl of Bungay*. Id., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. I.

VI. This also applies to participles used as adjectives. Note that when such participial adjectives as *aforsaid*, *before-mentioned* are placed after the head-word, the article is dispensed with.

i. "Plead you to me, fair dame?" said *the astonished Antipholis*. LAMB, *Tales, Com. of Er.*, 218.

*The said Eliza, John and Georgina* were now clustered round their mama in the drawing-room. CH. BRONTË, *Jany Eyre*, Ch. I, 1.

This association does hereby return its warmest thanks to *the said Samuel Pickwick Esq.* DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 1.

*The aforsaid Martin*, whom Arthur had taken such a fancy to [etc.]. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

ii. In default of which issue the ranks and dignities were to pass to *Francis aforsaid*. THACK., *Henry Esme.*, III, Ch. VI, 380.

VII. Adjectives, especially when purely descriptive, are not often placed before geographical proper names, a class-noun being mostly inserted between them. Thus *the populous Amsterdam* is less usual than *the populous city of Amsterdam*.

In the centre of *the great city of London* lies a small neighbourhood . . . , which goes by the name of Little Britain. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXV, 241.

Close upon *the village of Clavering before-mentioned*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 19.  
My godmother lived in a handsome house in *the clean and ancient town of Bretton*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. I, 1.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCK, *Wis. Gram.*, § 255.

<sup>2)</sup> *Ib.*, § 257.

At last we reached *the large handsome town of Irkutsk*. CONWAY, *Called Back*, Ch. XI, 130.

VIII. The article is, of course, never used when the head-word is a vocative.

*Fair Greece!* sad relic of departed worth. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, II, LXXIII.

29. Compound proper names both or all of whose parts are insignificant, reject or take the article under the same circumstances as those made up of only one name.

30. When one or all the parts of a compound proper name are significant, usage is variable.

- a) The definite article is mostly used when the noun modified is a plural.

Thus in: *the Kaatskil Mountains, the Rocky Mountains; the Ochil Hills; the Sulu Islands; the Low Countries, the Netherlands, the United States*.

The alternative usage is instanced by:

The road which leads across *Marlborough Downs* in the direction of Bristol. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 118.

The Armada dropped anchor in *Calais roads*. J. R. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 6, 419.

- b) The definite article is mostly used, when the defining part is an adjective.

Adjectives derived from proper names, such as *Atlantic, Caspian, Chinese*, etc., are considered as significant words:

- i. *the Arctic Ocean, the Antarctic Ocean, the Atlantic Ocean, the Baltic Sea, the Black Sea, the Caspian Sea, the Mediterranean Sea, the North Sea, the Pacific Ocean* (= *the South Sea*). CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVII, 134, b);

- ii. *the Argentine Republic; the Holy Land; the Orange Free State; the Transvaal Republic;*

- iii. *the British Museum, the Inner Temple, the Middle Temple, the National Gallery, the Royal Exchange; the White House.*

- iv. *the Holy Ghost, the Holy Virgin.*

To the N. W. (sc. of the Capitol) are the Treasury, *the White House*, and [etc.] *Harmsw. Encycl.*, s.v. *Washington*.

NOTE I. In some of these names the noun is sometimes or usually suppressed: *the (Ant)arctic, the Atlantic, the Baltic; the Mediterranean, the Pacific; the Argentine, the Transvaal; the Engadine*.

The United States will increase its fleet in *the Pacific*, and possibly in *the Atlantic* also. *Westm. Gaz.*

There was a remarkable volte-face of the Liberal Press with regard to *the Transvaal*. *Times*.

We get beef from *the Argentine*. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3680, 490b.

II. According to WENDT (*Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 166) *White House* no longer requires the article.

Excepted are a) some names of streets, which are more frequently found without than with the article; *the High Street* is, however, quite common, especially in referring to the smaller towns.



I was charged seven dollars to go to Central Park from *Thirty-second Street* and back again. RITA, *America—Seen through Eng. eyes*, Ch. I, 31.

The Windsor hotel in *Fifth-Avenue* was destroyed in three hours. Graph.

There are shops in *Main-Street* that would make a good figure in Paris. W. ARCHER (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4931, 4a).

I began to wonder whether I were not back among the Vanderbilts and Goulds in *Fifth-Avenue*. Ib., No. 4967, 12c.

**High Street.** i. Pen felt a secret pride in strutting down *High Street* with a young fellow who owned tandems, talked to officers, and ordered turtle and champagne for dinner. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 43.

Alleys which lay between *High Street* and the Avon. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. III, 29.

ii. He turned into the *High Street*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 9.

The Messrs Foker and Pen strolled down the *High Street*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 42.

We actually boasted a pavement in the *High Street* of our town of Norton Bury. Mrs. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. I, 5.

Neither the ignominious procession up the *High Street*, nor the near view of death had power to disturb the gentle and majestic patience of Argyle. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 131.

Also names of streets made up of an adjective — the noun *Road* seem to have the definite article as a rule.

Aunt and Mary used to walk gravely up and down the *New Road*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 120.

β) some names of countries, provinces, districts, towns, boroughs, etc., which regularly stand without the definite article, e. g.: *Great Britain*, *Mid-Lothian*, *East Anglia*, *West-Ham*, *Westminster*, *Grand Rapids*, *Green Hill*, etc.

Can you tell us the way to Green Hill? SWEET, *Country Walk*.

γ) some compound names containing *Holy*, especially *Holy Church*, *Holy Kirk*, *Holy Week*, *Holy Writ*, which almost regularly lose the definite article.

**Holy Church.** i. *Holy Church* is merciful. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XII, 174.

Can you expect that the king dare pass over such an offence against *Holy Church*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 11b.

Was not the blessing of *Holy Church* upon their union? CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XVII, 74.

It was not I, who was intended for *Holy Church*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4949, 9a.

ii. If I were to let thee go hence at large, I were thereby wronging the *Holy Church*. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXI, 339. (For the rest, apparently, regularly without the article in this novel.)

**Holy Kirk.** i. We shall not be wanting...to do whatever may advantage *Holy Kirk*. Ib., Ch. VI, 94.

ii. Your vassals are obliged to rise for the defence of the *Holy Kirk*. Ib.

**Holy Week.** i. In *Holy Week* all the out-door world is stirred by strange emotions. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 15b.

This week being *Holy Week*, Her Majesty's and the Haymarket will be closed all the week, reopening on Easter Monday. *Morn. Leader*.

ii. The Pope designs to officiate at some of the Functions of the *Holy Week*. *London Gaz.*, 1)

**Holy Writ.** Trifles light as air | Are to the jealous confirmations strong | As proofs of *Holy Writ*. *Othello*, III, 3, 324.

It is all foretold in *Holy Writ*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XXVI, 108a.

The immeasurable advancement of the negro, manifested in character, courage, and cash is confirmation strong as proof of *Holy Writ* that [etc]. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4937, 5a.

- c) The definite article is mostly used, when the defining part is a class-noun.

Thus regularly in the names of hotels, inns, etc., and of theatres, as *the Swan hotel*, *the Bull Inn*; *the Court Theatre*, *the Blackfriars Theatre*, *the Globe Theatre*, *the Criterion Theatre*; and also almost regularly in the names of some other buildings, such as *the Queen's Hall*, *the Guildhall*, *the Mansion House*, *the Crystal Palace*, etc.

- i. The stranger continued to soliloquise, until they reached *the Bull Inn*, in the High Street, where the coach stopped. *Dick.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. II, 9.

The lad and three others were discovered making a supper off a pork pie and two bottles of prime old port from *the Red Cow public-house* in Grey Friars Lane. *Thack.*, *Newc.*, I, Ch. VI, 68.

- ii. Mr. N. N.'s new comedy was produced at *the Court Theatre* on Tuesday. *Times*.

*The Tyranny of Tears* at *the Criterion Theatre*. *Graph*.

*The Gay Lord Quex* at *the Globe Theatre*. *lb*.

- iii. Compounds with *Hall*: \* It (sc. the Mayor's Court) is held at *the Guildhall* before the recorder. *Harmsworth Encyclop.*, s.v. *Mayor's Court*. Among them (sc. the famous buildings) may be mentioned *the Guildhall*, ... St. Paul's Cathedral; *the Mansion House* etc. *lb.*, s.v. *London*.

Sir Harry Johnston will be received by the Mayor and Corporation at *the Guildhall*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6177, 8b.

Herr Havemann gave a recital at *the Queen's Hall*, *Truth*, No. 1802, 105a.

The memorable occasion of last week at *the Queen's Hall*. *Times*.

in Free Trade demonstration at *the Queen's Hall*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4949, 1b.

\*\* The wooden giants in *Guildhall*. *WASH. IRV.*, *Sketch-Bk.*, XXV, 244.

At a great Free Trade meeting in *Queen's Hall* on March 9 Lord Avebury presided. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4949, 5.

Among the coming musical events ... there are two very interesting concerts, fixed for the afternoons of Oct. 3 and 10 at *Queen's Hall*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3777, 394b. (In the same article a few lines further down: One of the signs that tell of the autumn season is the reopening of *the Queen's Hall* on Sundays.)

- iv. Other compounds. \* The musical performances given at *the Crystal Palace* have attained a great reputation for their high standard of excellence. *Hazell's Annual*, 1894.

One (transparency) represented a moonlit landscape, the other the Houses of Parliament and *Clock Tower* at Westminster. *W. ARCHER* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 12c).

Funds are collected at *the Mansion House* for distribution among sufferers from war, pestilence, floods and other misfortunes. *Harmsworth Encyclop.*, s.v. *Mansion House*.

\*\* The Dalai Lama the next day drove to *Government House*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3703, 535.

The alternative usage is found:

- a) in some names of institutions: *All Souls College*, *Queen's College*, *University College*.

Sir W. Anson, Warden of *All Souls College*, has been nominated as Vice-Chancellor for the ensuing year. *Times*.

Dr. Mayrath, Provost of *Queen's College*, laid down the office of Vice-Chancellor. *Ib*.

Professor Osbert Chadwick delivered an address at *University College*. *Ib*.

- β) in names of towns: *Cape Town*, *Cedar Rapids*, etc.

A meeting of Africander members of Parliament was held in *Cape Town*. *Times*.

Speaking at *Cedar Rapids* Mr. Mc Kingley observed that [etc.] *Ib*.

- γ) names of streets: *Bow Street*, *Dock Lane*, etc.

An old woman that lives in *Bull-and-Mouth Street*. *WASH. IRV., Sketch-Book*, XXV. 244.

The steeple of *Bow-Street*. *Ib.*, XXV, 244.

The Red Cow public-house in *Grey Friars Lane*. *THACK., Newc., I*, Ch. VI, 68.

He (sc. Disraeli) outdandied every other dandy in London, and drew after him bewildered crowds as he walked down *Regent Street* or up Bond Street, in garments of colours too glittering for anything but the melodramatic stage. *T. P.'s Weekly*, XVIII, No. 466, 450a.

Note, however, *the Haymarket*: He took four sporting sketches to a printseller in *the Haymarket*. *THACK., Newc., I*, Ch. XXVII, 300.

Walking down *the Haymarket* the other day, I paused and looked into that delightful old bow-windowed shop. *Graph*.

Instances of divided usage are:

**Cape Colony** (the most usual) and *the Cape Colony*.

- i. An old Boer hunted in *Cape Colony* so far back as the end of the last century. *Lit. World*.

A detachment of troops was sent to secure the line of communication between *Cape Colony* and the British territories to the North. *Times*.  
The real danger is in *Cape Colony*. *Ib*.

The British possessions in South Africa comprise *Cape Colony*, Natal, the Orange River Colony, the Transvaal and [etc.] *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s.v. *South Africa*.

- ii. *The Cape Colony* was originally a Dutch colony. *Froude, Oceana*, Ch. III, 42

**Land's End** and *the Land's End*, usage being, perhaps, equally divided.

- i. There is still extant in the neighbourhood of *Land's End* a tradition that the Scilly Isles were once part of the mainland. *F. J. Rowe, Note to Tennyson's Lanc. and El.*, 35.

Mr. Tregarthen has added to his studies of wild life at *Land's End*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6147, 14c.

- ii. The invaders doubled *the Land's End* and ravaged Cornwall. *FREEMAN, Norman Conq.*, I, Ch. V, 295.<sup>1)</sup>

Does this 'bus go to *the Land's End*? *Westm. Gaz*.

**Regent's Park** (the most usual) and *the Regent's Park*. i. The society's collections of living animals are lodged in the Zoological Gardens in *Regent's Park*. *Harmsw. Encycl.*, s.v. *Zoological Society*.

- ii. Baines represents the house in *the Regent's Park*. *THACK., Newc., I*, Ch. XXVII, 299.

I hired a furnished house in *the Regent's Park*. *DICK, Letters*<sup>2)</sup>.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *double*, 9.

<sup>2)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, VI.

d) The definite article is now used now dropped, when the defining word is a proper name.

- 1) It is mostly dropped before the names of buildings, bridges and other structures: *Buckingham Palace*, *Westminster Abbey*, *Victoria Station*, *St. Paul's Cathedral*, *Lincoln's Inn*, *Gray's Inn*, *Exeter Hall*, *Magdalen College*, *Richmond jail*, *London Bridge*, *Waterloo Bridge*.

Stephens was committed to *Richmond Prison*. M'CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXII, 314.

So Aldred . . . sat in *York keep*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XXIV, 103a. "You will not burn *York*? O God! is it come to this? — "And why not *York town*, or *York minster*, or *Rome* itself with the Pope inside it, rather than yield to barbarians? *Ib.*, 103b.

A sermon was preached in *Westminster Abbey* by the Archbishop of Canterbury. *Times*. (Compare with this: *the Westminster Cathedral*, the name of the seat of the Roman Catholic Archbishop of Westminster.)

*Exeter Hall* was crowded on Saturday afternoon. *Times*.

The annual meeting was held at *Grosvenor House*. *Ib.*

The Emperor William devoted Thursday morning to this duty at *Buckingham Palace*. *Graph*

**Irregularities:** If you like, we can telegraph to some friend to meet you at *the Christiania station*. EDNA LYALL, *A. Hardy Norseman*, Ch. XVII, 156. His father, John Dickens, was at this time stationed in *the Portsmouth dockyard*. FORSTER, *Life of Ch. Dick.*, I, Ch. I, 1b. (Compare: Their home, shortly after, was again changed, on the elder Dickens being placed upon duty in *Chatham dockyard*. *Ib.*, I, Ch. I, 2b).

The definite article is, however, almost regularly used in the names of hotels, museums and theatres, but names of hotels with the name of the proprietor in the genitive stand without the article: *the Clarendon Hotel*, *the Windsor Hotel*; *the South Kensington Museum*; *the Garrick Theatre*, *the Savoy Theatre*; but *Claridge's Hotel*. Thus also in the *Alexandra Palace*, *the Albert Hall*, *the Fleet Prison*, *the Marshalsea Prison* and in certain foreign names, such as *the Mont Valérien*.

- i. \* The Budget Protest League held a dinner at *the Ritz Hotel* on Thursday to commemorate the close of its work. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179. 1b. One of the most disastrous fires of recent years was that by which *the Windsor hotel* in Fifth-Avenue was destroyed. *Graph*.

\*\* I am at *Claridge's Hotel*. MAX. PEMB., *Doctor Xavier*, Ch. VI, 29a.

- ii. Sir Norman Lockyer last week distributed prizes at *the South Kensington Museum*. *Times*.

- iii. \* 'Halves' at *the Garrick Theatre*. *Times*.

Mr. N. N. has decided to revive H. M. S. Pinafore, which will be produced at *the Savoy Theatre*. *Ib.*

The new play at *the St. James's Theatre*. 11. *London News*.

\*\* On Sundays Mrs. Hoggarty used to go to Saint Pancras Church, then just built, and as handsome as *Covent Garden Theatre*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. X, 120.

There is a tale to the effect that a certain orchestral player at *Drury Lane Theatre* had suffered sundry admonishments at rehearsal from his revered conductor. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 468, 524a.

- iv. *The Alexandra Palace* is not far from Charing Cross.



The frequenters of *the Albert Hall* were exacting as ever in the matter of encores. Times.

It was late before the Emperor and Empress reached the concert at *the Albert Hall*. Graph.

*The Fleet Prison* is pulled down. Dick, Pickw., Pref.

There had been taken to *the Marshalsea Prison* a debtor, with whom this narrative has some concern. Dick., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 296.

He was confined in *the Mont Valérien* pending the Esterhazy trial. Times.

Curious is the following quotation, as exhibiting the different practice of father and daughter: The most notable event of last month in the Revival of the Drama was the production at *Worthing Theatre* of "Julius Caesar" by the *Sompting Village Players*. My daughter, has written the following report of the performance. — "I have just returned from witnessing a unique dramatic performance given at *the Worthing Theatre*." Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, 267a.

Here follow some instances of divided usage; the head-word is:

**university, college, school**, etc. i. When he met the Princess, he was a student at *Bonn University*. Times.

In a Convocation of *Oxford University* Dr. Meyrath, Provost of Queen's College, laid down the office of Vice-Chancellor. Ib.

ii. Cuff, on the other hand, was the great chief and dandy of *the Swishtail Seminary*. THACK. *Van Fair*, I, Ch. V. 41.

A meeting of the canvassing committee of *the Birmingham University* was held last week. Times.

At a court *the Victoria University* held in Liverpool the degree of Doctor of Science was conferred on Lord Lister. Ib.

Dr. Saundby, Professor of Medicine at *the Mason University College*, delivered the address at the opening of *the Cardiff Medical School*. Ib.

**hall**. i. A great public meeting was held in *St. James's Hall*, London. M'CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXII, 316.

In the evening the imperial party heard a sacred concert in *St. George's Hall*. Graph.

The only recital announced by M. Paderewski this season, drew a large audience to *St. James's Hall* on Tuesday afternoon. Times.

ii. Mr. Louis de Rougemont gave his first public lecture on Monday in *the St. James's Hall*. Id.

I note with satisfaction that you have abandoned the idea of holding the meeting in *the Ulster Hall*. Id., No. 1831, 83a.

**hospital**. i. Edinburgh has some noble hospitals and charitable institutions. Among these are . . . *Heriot's Hospital* . . . *Watson's Hospitals*. Penn y Cycl., IX, 275 l. 1.)

ii. A curious position of affairs has arisen at *the St. John's Hospital* for Diseases of the skin in Leicester Square. Truth, No. 1802, 75a.

Note I. The noun modified is sometimes dropped in the names of buildings that are preceded by the definite article.

The father of *the Marshalsea*. Dick., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VI, 296.

The marriages were subsequently celebrated in any building within the Liberty of *the Fleet*. Harmsworth Cycl.

Few have been privileged to assemble so large and distinguished an audience as that which gathered at the last night of the season at *the St. James's*. Graph.

It is thoroughly characteristic of modern politics, at least on the Unionist side, that this eminent breaker of Parliaments should be dined at *the Ritz* and presented with a cigar-box for a trophy. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5179, 1b.

"The Servant in the House", at *the Adelphi*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3680, 630b. Mme Sarah Bernhardt produces at *the Adelphi* the Hamlet, in which she appeared here last night. *Times*.

He did not wait long to try to put in practice the lessons he had learned at *the St. James's*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVI, 303a.

II. In the names of hotels the two nouns are sometimes transposed.

He is staying in London at *the Hotel Métropole*. *Times*.

A farewell dinner was given by Dr. Carl Peters on Monday at *the hotel Cecil*. *Ib.* The great fire at *the hotel Windsor*, New York. *Graph*.

This is rarely done in the names of other buildings:

*Castle Lowestein* taken by stratagem. *MOTLEY, Rise*, III, Ch. V, 445a (Compare: On the western verge of the isle of Bommel stood *the castle of Lowestein*. *Ib.*).

Near it (sc. Apeldoorn) is *Castle Loo*, the summer residence of the royal family. *Harmsworth Cycl.*

- 2) The definite article is almost regularly dropped before the names of streets, squares, parks, etc., i. e. proper names containing such nouns as *circus*, *crenset*, *cross*, *field(s)*, *garden(s)*, *park*, *square*, *street*, *terrace*; e. g.: *Oxford Street*, *Queen's Street*; *Finsbury Circus*; *Charing Cross*, *Soho Fields*; *Covent Garden*; *Hyde Park*; *Russell Square*, *King's Square*, etc. But: *the Thames embankment*.

i. \* We had a temporary lodging in *Covent Garden*. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. LV, 391a. The Emperor was in *Buckingham Palace Gardens* by eight the next morning. *Graph.* (with which compare: The weather cleared up and showed *the Marlborough House grounds* to advantage. *Ib.*)

He crossed *Fleet Street* from *Clifford's Inn* to *Middle Temple Lane*. *KATH. CECIL THURNSTON, John Chilcote, M. P.*, Ch. XII, 131.

\*\* The Captain... gave a dinner at *the Kildare Street*. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. V, 59.

ii. He turned up *the Thames Embankment*. *W. J. LOCKE, Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. V, 70.

Note I. Compounds of *road* mostly drop the article when a street is meant, and retain it when denoting a track for travel forming a communication between one city, town, or place and another.

i. \* They crossed from the Angel into *St. John's Road*. *DICK., Ol. Twist*, Ch. VIII, 83.

Its (sc. that of the North-East London Railway) city terminus is at the Monument, whence it runs to *Hackney Road* in tube. *Harmsworth Encycl.*, s. v. *London*, 26c.

Some 500 vehicles per hour pass the junction of *Oxford Street* and *Tottenham Court Road*. *Ib.*, 26a.

*Sussex-Gardens* itself is apparently a subsidiary highway, and the traffic in that direction from *Edgware-Road* to Bayswater, passes three quite unimportant crossings. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6317, 8c.

\*\* That the book furnished a hint for which the time was ripe, was seen by the success of the movement which had for its result the People's Palace in *the Mile-end road*. *Times*.

I picked it (sc. my pink toque) up in *the Edgware Road*. *AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diamond cut Paste*, II, Ch. II, 119.

The den of the occult one was dim, and eastern of *the Tottenham Court Road*. *Ib.*

Going into a large house near *the Bayswater road*, she went upstairs to her daughter's bedroom. Westm. Gaz., No. 6311, 3c.

The Marble Arch was reached; there, still oblivious of his surroundings, he had crossed to *the Edgware Road*, passing through it to the labyrinth of shabby streets that lie behind Paddington. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. III, 2.

- ii. Panting and crying, but never stopping, (I) faced about for Greenwich, which I had understood was on *the Dover Road*. Dick., Cop., Ch. XXII, 90a.

I doubt if I should have had any (sc. notion of going back), though there had been a Swiss snow-storm in *the Kent Road*. Ib., Ch. XIII, 90a.

II. Observe also the frequent absence of the definite article in the names of other localities as in:

As for the suburban mothers and daughters, their envy is reserved for the processions, between *Hyde Park Corner* and *Marble Arch*, later in the day. Westm. Gaz., No. 5607, 8d. (*The Marble Arch* would be a reference to the monument as in: (He moved) rapidly till *the Marble Arch* was reached. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. III, 26.)

- 3) Usage is divided in geographical names, some regularly taking the definite article, some as regularly rejecting it.

- a) Those which take the article are especially such as contain any of the following nouns: *basin, channel, district, pass, peninsula, range, reef, river, rock, valley*.

**basin.** *The Thames basin* may be divided into two parts.

*The Congo basin.* Times.

**channel.** The Severn turns out a noble river by the time it reaches the King's Roads, and forms *the Bristol Channel*. Mrs. CRANK, John Hall, Ch. II, 18.

**district.** *The cattle of the Calgary district.* Times.

**pass.** Describing his visit to *the Khyber Pass*, Mr. Fisher writes [etc.]. II. Lond. News, No. 3875, 141a.

**peninsula.** Singapore, a British settlement off the southern extremity of the Malay Peninsula. Cassell's Conc. Cycl.

**range.** This morning *the Drakensberg Range* is draped in snow. Times.

**reef.** *The Manacles Reef.* Id.

**river.** One summer morning in the year 1756... the Young Rachel... came up *the Avon river* on her happy return from her annual voyage to the Potomac. THACK., Virg., Ch. I, 4.

It is *the Severn River*, though at this distance you cannot perceive it. Mrs. CRANK, John Hall, Ch. II, 18.

*The Peace river* flows nearly due east for a couple of hundred miles. Times. Thus also: And the fog rose out of *the Oxus stream*. MATTH. ARNOLD, Sohrab and Rustum, 2.

**rock.** *The Inchcape Rock* has been the death of many a sailor.

**valley.** *The Nile Valley.* Times.

NOTE I. Except for some newly coined names, such as *Peace-river*, the noun *river* is now mostly dispensed with: *the Severn, the Rhine, the Thames*, etc.

II. The definite article is sometimes suppressed before such bare names of rivers:

regularly in English names of towns, such as *Newcastle-on-Tyne*, *Stratford-on-Avon*; German names of towns retaining the article: *Frankfort-on-the-Main*, *Frankfort-on-the-Oder* (Cassell's Conc. Cycl.). The article is not, of course, suppressed in such collocations as *London on the Thames*, *Liverpool on the Mersey*, the name of the river not forming part of the proper name.

occasionally, in earlier or archaic English. FRANZ, Shak. Gram., § 119; MATZNER, Eng. Gram., III, 169.

And when you saw his chariot but appear, | Have you not made an universal shout, | That *Tiber* trembled underneath her banks? JUL. CÆS., I, I, 46.

Bring us not over *Jordan*. Bible, Numbers, XXXII, 5

E'er since a truant boy I pass'd the bounds | To enjoy a ramble on the banks of *Thames*. COWPER, TASK, I, 115

Peace waits us on the shores of *Acheron*. BYRON, Child's Har., II, vii.

I little thought, when first thy rein | I slack'd upon the banks of *Seine* [etc.]. S. GRAM., LADD, I, X, 12.

Before Shakespeare's resting-place, under the tall spire which rises by *Avon*. THACK., VIET., CH. I, 7.

A large part of the country beyond *Trent* was, down to the eighteenth century, in a state of barbarism. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 249.

Through the black Tartar tents he pass'd which stood | Clustering like bee-hives on the low flat strand. OF DYES, MAHMOUD, Sohrab and Rostum, 14.

There was already river pollution: dyes and dirt floated down from mills and towns. *Teviot*, below Hawick, was a vulgar *Styx*; and below Galashiels, *Tweed* was little better. But from *Teviot Stone* to Hawick, the water was clearer than amber; so was *Ettrick*, almost till it joins *Tweed*; so was *Yarrow*; so was *Ail*; and they were not over-fished. II. LOND. NEWS, No. 3618, 882a.

III. When, what is often done, the proper name is placed after the noun *river*, it has not, of course, the article: *the river Danube*. While on the subject, it may be observed that anciently appositional *of* was placed between the class-noun and the proper name: *the river of Thames*. MURRAY, s. v. *of*, 23. Thus also archaically in:

He had a tedious but easy water-journey down the *river of Rhine*. THACK., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. X, 250.

And then, behold, beneath him was the long green garden of Egypt and the shining *stream of Nile*. CH. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, I, iv, 70.

- β) Those which reject the article are especially such as contain any of the following nouns: *bay*, *bill*, *city*, *cliff*, *harbour*, *haven*, *head*, *hill*, *island*, *mountain*, *plain*, *sea*, *sound*, *strait(s)*, *town*.

**bay.** This district stretches from *Hudson's Bay* to the Great Lakes. Times. England at the present moment is directing a very keen, critical eye upon *Delagoa Bay*. Id.

**bill.** *Portland Bill* (also *the Bill of Portland*).<sup>1)</sup>

**city.** *Kansas City* at the mouth of the Kansas river. Harmsworth Encyclop.

**cliff.** To the right the white curve of *Ramsgate cliffs* looks down on the crescent of Pegwell Bay. GREEN.<sup>1)</sup>

**harbour.** Drake dropped anchor again in *Plymouth harbour*. GREEN.

**haven.** *Milford Haven*, a land-locked arm of the sea. Harmsw. Encyc.

**head.** *Beachy Head* rises to a perpendicular height of 564 ft. Id.

<sup>1)</sup> FORTIS, KOCH, WIS. GRAM., § 263.



**island.** You will see *Ram Head* and *Cawsand Bay* and *Drake's Island*. MARRYAT.<sup>1)</sup> The Khalifa was last heard of at *Baha*, three days west of *Abbah Island*. Times.  
**mountain.** We stumbled down *Penmaenmaur Mountain*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6311, 3a.

**plain.** The road lay right across *Salisbury plain*. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V. 170  
**strait(s).** The British India line (London and *Brisbane* via *Torres Straits*). Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. *Brisbane*.

**sea.** From *Behring Sea* to the Gulf of *Pe-chi-li* stretches her (sc. Russia's) sea-base. Times.

**sound.** The Prince of Wales, who is serving as a midshipman in the battleship *Hindustan* now in *Plymouth Sound*, paid a visit to *Devonport Dockyard* last Friday. Times, No. 1807, 660a.

- 4) The article is now practically regularly suppressed before geographical names in which any of the nouns *cape*, *fort*, *lake* (*loch*, *lough*), *mo(u)nt*, *port* precede the proper name.

**cape.** From *Cape Comorin* to the Himalayas. MAC.

**fort.** *Fort St. George* had risen on a barren spot. Id., Clive.

**lake.** *Lake Lemán* lies by *Chillon's* walls. BYRON, *Pris. of Chil.*, VI, I. The rapids between *Lakes Lindemann and Bennett*. Graph.

**loch.** *Loch Katrine* lay beneath him rolled. SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xiv, II.

**lough.** He had brought from the neighbourhood of *Lough Erne* a regiment of dragoons. MACAULAY.<sup>2)</sup>

**mount.** At *Mount Edgcumbe* you will behold the finest timber in existence. Id.

**mont.** There are places in which *Mont Blanc* might be sunk without showing its peak above water. HUXL., *Col. Es.*, VIII, I, 12.

**port.** *Port Arthur* was ceded to Japan.

Note I. *Mount* is often dispensed with: An eruption of *Vesuvius*. Times. Such is *Vesuvius*, and these things take place in it every year. LYTTON, *Last Days of Pomp.*, Motto.

*Parnassus, Ida, Athos, Olympus, Ætna*. BYRON, *Childe Har.*, IV, LXXIV.

Observe the exceptional suppression of the article before *Caucasus* in: And they knew that they were come to *Caucasus*, ... *Caucasus*, the highest of all mountains. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, II, iv, 152.

Compare: *Kazbek*, volcanic mountain in *the Caucasus*. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. *Kazbek*.

*Trans-Caucasia* ... lies between *the Caucasus* on the north and *Turkey-in-Asia* and *Persia* on the south. *Cas. Conc. Cycl.*, s. v. *Trans-Caucasia*.

II. The ancient names of mountains in England, Wales and Scotland are never preceded by *mount*, and stand without the article.

'T were long to tell... | When rose *Benledi's* ridge in air. SCOTT.<sup>2)</sup>

The *Cambrian Range* includes all the Welsh mountains, the highest of which is *Snowdon*.<sup>2)</sup>

III. Early Modern English sometimes has the article before *mount*. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2)</sup>, § 265; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2)</sup>, III, 162.

ANT. Where lies he? — CÆS. About *the Mount Misenum*. ANT. and Cleop., II, 2, 164.

I am going to *the Mount Zion*. BUNYAN, *Pilgr. Progr.*, (160).

1) FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 263.

2) *ib.*, § 261.

The following is a Late Modern English instance:

In other ways... he (sc. Blake) was also a forerunner; striking into the light and air high up on *the mount Parnassus* new fountains of song, which were in the future to become rivers of fresh emotion, thought, and imagination. STOPFORD A. BROOKE, *Stud. in Poetry*, Ch. I, 2.

IV. German names of mountains usually have the definite article: *the Brocken*, *the St. Gothard*, etc.

Two parties from the Monchjoeh and *the Finsteraarhorn* had anticipated us. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6311, 3a.

*The Breithorn*, *the Glandegg* and *the Théodul* are no place for you and me. *Ib.*

Thus also in the foreign names instanced in the following quotations:

i. Of course there is not that sort of excitement in store for us as we make for... *the Monte Rosa* at Zermatt. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6311, 3a.

ii. The inn (is) as remarkable in some respects as its neighbour at Nant Borant, on the other side of *the Col de Bonhomme*. *Ib.*

iii. The snowy summits of *the Sierra Nevada* shone like silver. *WASH. IRV.* 1)

V. Names of promontories ending in *head*, *ness* or *point* never stand with the article: *Beachy Head*, *Fife Ness*, *Corsill Point*, etc.

5) The definite article is regularly retained before the names of ships, or other means of locomotion.

i. Over the little mantel-shelf was a picture of *the Sarah Jane lugger*. *DICK.*, *Cop. Ch. III*, 25b.

On the 14th of October following *the Rodney cutter* arrived with the sad news in England. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. LXXIV, 788.

*The Phaeton frigate* on which Moore had procured a passage, left Spithead on Sept. 25th. *STEPHEN GWENN.*, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. II, 29.

*The Boston frigate* took him to New York. *Ib.*

ii. Under pretence of going to read a Greek play with Smirke, this young reprobate set off so as to be in time for *the Competitor down coach*. *DICK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. VI, 67.

Note I. The noun modified is often dispensed with: *the Osborne the Mauretania*.

The owner of *the Young Rachel*... gave the hand of welcome to Captain Franks. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. I, 3.

II. When, what is often done, the proper name is placed after the class-noun, the former loses the definite article: *the ship Good Fortune* (*TEN.*, *Enoch Arden*, 523).

A wireless call for help... came from *the steamship Niagara*. *Times* No. 1842, 1d.

#### THE USE OF THE GENERALIZING DEFINITE ARTICLE IN DETAIL.

### 31. The definite article is normally used:

a) before adjectives partially converted into nouns, which denote either a class of persons or a quality in a generalizing way (*Ch. XXIX*, 14—15; 21).

i. \* *The blind* are objects of compassion, not of sorrow. *ANNIE BESANT*, *Autob.*, 342.

\*\* *The Dutch* are slow to move, but when moved are moved effectually. *FROUDE*, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 51.

ii. *The beautiful* can never die. *Ch. KINGSLEY*, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 6b.

1) FOELS-KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 261.

Note I. Also when an adjective denotes a single person in a generalizing way after such verbs as *to commit*, *to do* and *to play*, the definite article is regularly used. (Ch. XXIX, 16.)

He had always a great notion of committing *the amiable*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 125.

II. When in denoting an abstraction a pure noun is used instead of a partially converted adjective, the article is regularly absent (Ch. XXIX, 22, Obs. II,  $\beta$ ). See, however, 35.

Then the inspiring love of *novelty* and *adventure* came rushing in full tide through his bosom. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl.* (Stof. Handl., I, 124).

b) before singular nouns denoting persons, animals or things spoken of in a generalizing way.

i. We often had *the traveller* or stranger visit us. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. I, (236). Those who see *the Englishman* only in town, are apt to form an unfavourable opinion of his character. WASH. IRV.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. *The fox*, whose life is, in many counties, held almost as sacred as that of a human being, was considered as a mere nuisance. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. III, 307.

*The lion* is a beast of prey.

iii. God made *the country* and man made *the town*. COWPER.<sup>2)</sup>

What comes by *the wind* goes by *the water*. CA. READER, It is never too late to mend. I, Ch. I, 23.

It was war to *the knife* between Marjory and myself. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Interest*, I, Ch. IV, 76.

Remarkable exceptions are *man*, whether denoting the human species or the male human species, and *woman*. The absence of the article may be due to the fact that these nouns, when used in a generalizing way, assume more or less the character of indefinite pronouns. (57.)

i. \* Universal History, the History of what *man* has accomplished in the world, is at bottom the History of the Great. CARLYLE, *Hero Worship*, 10. *Man* everywhere is the born enemy of lies. *Ib.*, 4.

Of all living creatures none are created so unequal in strength, size, courage, skill, in anything: as *man*. WALT. BESANT, *St. Kath.*, II, Ch. I, I.

\*\* *Man's* love is of *man's* life a thing apart, | 'Tis woman's whole existence. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CXXIV.

ii. *Woman* forgives but too readily, Captain. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXIII, 237.

Play is not so fatal as *woman*. *Id.*, *Newc.* I, Ch. XXVIII, 308.

Of all this and much more, the rosy landlady of the Blue Dragon took an accurate note and observation, as only *woman* can take of *woman*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. III, 156.

Ay, though he loved her from his soul, with such a self-denying love as *woman* seldom wins. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXI, 251a.

*Woman's* love is a robe that wraps her from many a storm. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, III, Ch. III, 142.

Who loves wine, loves *woman*. TEN., *Beck.*, *ProL.*, (694b).

Fear not the face of man, but look not on the face of *woman*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 5a.

1) FOELS-KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 267.

2) WEBST.

Note I. Sometimes the article is used, mostly when syntactically connected with another noun which has the generalizing article, or a plural without the article.

- i. \* Every age produces those links between *the man* and the baboon. MACAULAY.<sup>1)</sup>  
A French man of letters has just published a most curious and valuable work on Mad Dogs, which demonstrates the continuity, not only of madness in the Dog, but of folly in *the Man*. Newspaper.<sup>1)</sup>  
\*\* *The woman* looms much larger in the world of books than *the man*, and she reads more sociological works than the other sex. Fortn. Rev., 1912, 164.<sup>2)</sup>
- ii. It is almost impossible to realise the prejudices which existed in Crimean times against giving either authority or responsibility to women in what was regarded as *the man's* sphere. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 11a.

II. In such sentences as *The child is father of the man* (WORDSWORTH), *You can see the woman in the little girl*, quoted by MURRAY (s.v. *the*, II, 19) as exceptions, the reference is rather to a quality than to a person understood in a generalizing way. (Ch. XXIX, 22, Obs. II, a.)

"The childhood," said Milton, "shows *the man*, as morning shows the day. EMERSON. Domestic Life (ELIZ. JANE IRV., Lit. Read., III, 238. (In this quotation the suppression of the definite article before *morning*, which is at variance with the meaning conveyed and with accepted usage, improves the rhythm.)

III. In the following quotation the definite article is, apparently, used for the sake of the metre. It may have been dropped for the same reason before *men* in the preceding line.

Your beauty is no beauty to him now; | A common chance — right well I know  
it — pall'd — | For I know men: nor will ye win him back, | For *the man's* love,  
once gone, never returns. TEN., Ger. and En., 330—3.

IV. Classifying adjuncts sometimes cause the definite article to be re-established, but continuative adjuncts have no such effect.

- i. \* The idea of *the Universal Man* did not exist in Pope's time. STOPFORD BROOKE, Theol. in the Eng. Poets, Ch. I, 17.

The gentle art of doing nothing appears to be one of those which education has taken from *the modern man*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 5a.

Strange—strange are the ways of *the modern woman*. Mrs. BELLOC LOWNDES, Jane Oglander, Ch. XX, 268.

Of course, there are other instances (sc. of the way in which over-elaborated societies end up with their tails in their mouths; in a posture not merely twisted but inverted), at which I have already glanced. There was *the primitive man*, whom we left offering sacrifice to the gods. CHESTERTON (II. Lond. News, No. 3801, 271b.)

How wisely has the modern Confessor adapted himself to *the modern Man*. FRANCIS THOMPSON, Health and Holiness, 19.

\*\* The nobler conceptions of human life... are necessarily totally incomprehensible to *primitive man*. Times, No. 1826, 1049b.

So far, no trace of *Neanderthal man* has been discovered in England. Id., No. 1832, 109b.

Mr. Munro was well advised in selecting *prehistoric man* as the subject of the first course of the Munro Lectures. Athen., No. 4433, 419a.

Man, especially *English man*, is so very afraid of doing a new thing. Westm. Gaz., No. 6299, 4c.

1) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., 168-9.

2) PRICK VAN WELY, E. S., XLVI, 336.



ii. Much may be learned with regard to *lovely woman* by a look at the book she reads. THACK., *Men's Wives*, Ch. II, (328).

It was long indeed since an English sovereign had knelt to *mortal man*. MAC., *Hist.*, III, Ch. VIII, 97.

All the people in Seriphos said that he was not the son of *mortal man*. CH. KINGSLEY, *The Heroes*, I, Ch. II, 31.

V. The article cannot be dispensed with before the combination adjective — *man*, when *man* is used as a prop-word. (Ch. XXIX, 14b.)

If there is a man in the world needs the love and sympathy of a wife, it is *the literary man*. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 478, 4a.

Even in Ireland, which has a reputation for witty sons, *the Cork man* is held to be supreme for his wit. *Id.*, No. 496, 577b.

VI. In the following quotation the suppression, due to the measure, seems to be rather that of the possessive pronoun than the definite article:

Do what you can for *fellow-man*. CH. MACKAY, *There's Work for all to do*, I.

VII. The definite article is regularly placed before *man* and *woman* in the collocations *to play the man or woman*. (Ch. XXIX, 16, Note III.)

I told him he had better *play the man* a little more. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 137a.

There will be fearful vengeance taken on those tyrants, unless they *play the man* to-day. *Id.*, Ch. XX, 153a.

VIII. The use of the definite article before *man* in the Authorised Version, Gen. II, 15, 16, 18 and, perhaps, more places, may be due to some specializing element, such as (*the man*) which I (*he*) have (*had*) created, being understood.

And the Lord God said, It is not good that *the man* should be alone. Bible, Gen., II, 18. (Compare: God created *man* in his own image. *Id.*, I, 4.)

IX. It may have been observed that in some of the above quotations it seems as plausible to assume the absence of the indefinite as of the generalizing definite article: the function of the one being sometimes practically the same as that of the other (7, c, Note II). This will also become apparent from a comparison of *a midge* and *man* in the following quotation:

As *a midge* before an elephant, so is *man* when opposed to Fate. J. D. BERESFORD, *Force Majeure* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6299, 9a).

32. The definite article is less regularly used before collective nouns in a generalizing sense.

a) Some of these, especially such as express a class, a sect or a section of society, never reject it any more than their Dutch equivalents. For illustration see also Ch. XXVI, 9.

**aristocracy.** Who says that *the aristocracy* are proud? Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, XI, 206.

**bar.** The dinner to be given by *the English Bar* to M. Berryer. *Times*.

**church.** The death of dean Stanley is a loss to *the Church*. *Lit. World*. Dr. Maclagan has done good service in *the Church*. *Westm. Gaz.*

**clergy.** *The new Protestant clergy* were often unpopular. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § III, 378.

The publican has thrown his weight into the same scale, and *the clergy* certainly have not remained at home. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5219, 2a.

**commonalty.** He may look very well on the outside, but I detect at once in his speech the flavour of the great unwashed, the mob, *the commonalty*. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

**community.** The omnibus is in favour with all classes of *the community*. GÜNTHER, *Leerb.* (According to BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*, 60, the Americans say: *Community* thinks so too.)

**democracy.** I think that *the democracy* would be with them (sc. the Liberals) as in 1910. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6305, 7a.

**gentry.** *The gentry* rode their own horses or drove, in their own coaches. THACKERAY, *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 50.

**herd.** *The herd* has been eating and drinking and marrying as usual. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. II, 7b.

**laity.** That is the essential part of a book which we do not hesitate to describe as a medical manifesto of real importance addressed equally to the medical profession and *the laity*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 10b.

The appeal . . . is as much to the medical man as to the *laity*. *Ib.*

**mass.** All great regenerations are the universal movement of *the mass*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 52.

**mob.** Is *the mob* more bold, more constant? *Ib.*, I, Ch. VIII, 52.

**multitude.** To me, all great regenerations seem to have been the work of the few, and tacitly accepted by *the multitude*. *Ib.*, I, Ch. VIII, 52.

**nobility, people, priesthood.** In Gaul were two orders, *the nobility* and *the priesthood*, while *the people*, says Cæsar, were all slaves. MOTLEY, *Rise, Hist. Intr.*, 4b.

**peasantry.** *The peasantry* go barefooted. BAIN, *H. E. Gr.*

**people.** Tell *the people* how much I have loved them always. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiography*, 331. (See also under *nôbittity*.)

**priesthood.** See under **nobility**.

**public.** Do you suppose that *the public* reads with a view to its own conversion. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 343.

**rabble.** *The rabble* call him lord. HAMLET, IV, 5, 101.

**town.** *The town* has asserted that I never yet patronized a man of merit. GOLDSMITH, *Good-nat. man*, IV.

**world.** *The world* have paid too great a compliment to critics. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, V, Ch. I, 63.

- b) But the definite article is suppressed, contrary to the Dutch practice, before many other nouns of a similar collective sense, such as *Christendom* (= the christians, or the christian countries collectively), *humanity*, *humankind*, *manhood*, *mankind* (with the accent on the second syllable = the human species, with the accent on the first syllable = the male sex) *maturity*, *posterity*, *royalty*, *society*, *womankind*; and also before the names of abstractions and of religious philosophical and artistical systems that have a collective meaning, such as *childhood*, *infancy*, *youth*; *barbarism*, *Catholicism*, *Christianity* (= the Christian faith); *Islam*, *Mohammedanism*, *Paganism*, *philosophy*, *Protestantism*, *Romanism*.

The suppression of the article is, apparently, due to the original abstract

meaning of these words, which, indeed, pervades their altered application also in a more or less degree (34), partly also, perhaps, to their having to a certain extent the character of indefinite pronouns. (57.) The first of the following quotations aptly illustrates their different treatment, as compared with that observed with the collective nouns mentioned higher up. For illustration see also Ch. XXVI, 9.

**barbarism, philosophy.** The struggle is not even between *philosophy* and *barbarism*. The struggle is one between *the aristocracy* and *the mob*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. II, 8a.

**Catholicism, Protestantism.** We often hear it said that the world is constantly becoming more and more enlightened, and that this enlightenment must be favourable to *Protestantism*, and unfavourable to *Catholicism*. MAC., *Es.*, *Popes*, (542b). Jerusalem, after all, is the cradle of the faith, not of *Protestantism*, nor of *Catholicism*, but of *Christendom* at large. *Times*.

**childhood.** The two real interests of *childhood* and play (Miss Austen's opinion of children). *ILL. LOND. NEWS*.

*Childhood* is poetic and creative. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 483, 193a.

**christendom.** He would rather you addressed the populace than the best priest in *Christendom*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 52.

The eyes of all *Christendom* will be directed hither. *Ib.*, II, Ch. III, 84.

**christianity.** See under *paganism*.

**humanity.** Thus the rascally tailors were to be put down, *humanity* clad and the philanthropists rewarded with a clear return of 30 per cent. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, II, Ch. II, 32b.

His mode of life has very much resembled that of Tom Jones, Roderick Random, specimens of *humanity* whom I hold in peculiar and especial detestation. SARAH GRAND, *The Heav. Twins*, I, 109.

The difficulty to keep so poor a specimen of *humanity* as Richard Boyce in his place. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 194.

**humankind.** Her separation from her parent had reconciled her to all *human-kind*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLVI, 353b.

Her brother and her nephew represented to her the flower of *humankind*. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 159.

Compare: One lingering sympathy of mind | Still bound him to *the mortal kind*. SCOTT, *Lady*, III, vii, 16.

**Islam.** The Caliph of *Islam* is said to be considering whether in response to this attack by a Christian Power upon the Moslem Empire in Africa, he ought to proclaim a *Jehad* in defence of endangered *Islam*. STEAD, Letter to the *Times* (quoted in *Weekly Times*, No. 1814, 796c).

**manhood.** English *manhood* is not peculiar in being lectured from time to time on its manners. *Westm. Gaz.*

**mankind.** i. Courage becomes the first quality *mankind* must honour. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, III, Ch. II, 59.

Honour is the foundation of all improvement in *mankind*. *Ib.*, 60.

Only queens should rule *mankind*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVI, 130a.

ii. Should all despair | That have revolted wives, the tenth of *mankind* | Would hang themselves. *Winter's Tale*, I, 2, 99.

The infinite simplicity and silliness of *mankind* and *womankind* at large. TROL., *Lady Anna*, Ch. IX, 67.1)

Compare: You don't know *human nature*, *male human nature*! AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. I, 114.

**maturity.** Youth suffers and howls with pain, while *maturity* suffers and smiles at the futility of howling. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 469, 569a.

**mortality.** Pasteur and Lister have done so much by their genius to alleviate the sufferings to which *mortality* is heir. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 11b.

**Paganism, Christianity.** Do not fancy that the battle is merely between *Paganism* and *Christianity*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. II, 8a.

**posterity.** *Posterity* has not yet confirmed honest Hogarth's opinion about his talents for the sublime. THACKERAY.

**Protestantism.** See under **Catholicism**.

**Romanism.** To-day's issue of the Nuova Anthologia contains an article upon the progress of *Romanism* in England. Times.

**Royalty.** *Royalty* in most countries is fond of the stage, but merely as a spectator II. Lond. News.

**society.** i. This one thing is clear — *Society* must deal with the unemployed, or the unemployed will deal with *Society*. ANNIE BESANT, *Autobiog.*, 319.

If you choose to associate with the scum of *society*, you may do as you like. GRANT ALLEN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

ii. The causes of this improvement in the productive powers of labour, and the order according to which its produce is naturally distributed among the different ranks and conditions of men in *the society*, make the subject of the first book of this Inquiry. ADAM SMITH, *Wealth of Nations*, *Introd.*, 2.

What have been the effects of those debts upon the real wealth, the annual produce of the land and labour of *the society*? *Ib.*, 4.

**womankind.** She was at any rate their natural guardian in those matters, relating to *womankind*. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, I, 194.

**youth.** What follies will not *youth* perpetrate! THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVIII, 187. But he was young and *youth* is curious. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Ch. I, 1b.

Note I. Continuative adjectives do not cause the article to be used before the above nouns, but restrictive adjectives may.

i. Fortunately — most fortunately for *erring humanity* — no dog cares two wags of his tail about your moral character. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 6b.

The inestimable benefits conferred upon *suffering humanity* by Lord Lister. *Ib.*, No. 6329, 11a.

ii. \* He had been at the Treasury, and for a month or two at the Admiralty, astonishing *official mankind* by his diligence. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. II, 15.

\*\* The Christian idea of *the New Mankind*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 7a.

II. It seems difficult to account for the regular use of the generalizing definite article before *Papacy*, a noun which is, apparently, of a similar collective meaning as the other names of ecclesiastical systems.

The Republic of Venice was modern when compared with *the Papacy*, and the Republic of Venice is gone and *the Papacy* remains. *The Papacy* remains, not in decay, not a mere antique, but full of life and youthful vigour. MAC., *Popes*, (542a).

Dr. Windhorst's task as the Champion of *the Papacy* was anything but an easy one. Graph.

All that Byzantium lost, *the Papacy* won. WILLIAM BARRY, *The Papacy*, *Procl.* 16. *The Papacy* fell into unspeakable degradation. *Ib.*, 18.

III. *Creation* seems to take the definite article, when the reference is to living beings, and to throw it off, when it has the wider sense of *all things created*. When not used in a collective sense, but denoting the beginning of the world, it seems to take the article regularly: *creation* standing for *creation of the world*.



- i. I will not enlarge this quaint saying to the most beautiful part of *the creation* in general. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, XV, Ch. II, 98b.

A fine girl is worth all the priestcraft in *the creation*. GOLDSM., *Vicar*, Ch. VII.

My life has been chiefly spent in a college or an inn, in seclusion from that part of *the creation* that chiefly teach men confidence. Id., *She Stoops*, I, (180).

(His horse was) sweating and terrified, as if experiencing that agony of fear with which the presence of a supernatural being is supposed to agitate *the brute creation*. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXII, 227.

He is fond of hearing stories how the mightiest of *the brute creation* may be deceived by the wiles employed against them. DEIGHTON, *Note to Jul. Cæs.*, II, 1, 203-7.

The landlady ... had already given vent to an indignant inquiry whether Mr. Wardle considered himself a lord of *the creation*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. X, 85.

The Lords of *the Creation* are ripe for reform. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 4b.

- ii. No change, no degradation, no perversion of humanity, in any grade, through all the mysteries of wonderful *creation*, has monsters half so horrible and dread. DICK., *Christm. Carol*, III, 84.

Acknowledged history is but a grain of sand on the shore of *creation*. *Good Words*.

While there is another town left in *creation*, I'll never trouble you again, Tergou. CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XI, 60.

But ever and anon his childish prattle recurred to what impressed his imagination even more deeply than the wonders of *creation*. HARDY, *Tess*, I, Ch. IV, 35.

- iii. The simple words in which the writer of Genesis records the proceedings of the fifth and sixth days of *the Creation*. HUXLEY, *Col. Es.*, VIII, 1, 35.

- c) Collective nouns of the second kind, i. e. such as denote conceptions without limits (Ch. XXVI, 7), like material and abstract nouns (34), regularly reject the definite article.

*Infantry (foot)* seldom resists *cavalry (horse)*.

33. Before plural nouns when denoting a class of persons, animals or things in a generalizing way, the definite article is mostly used.

- a) Thus we find it normally in the following quotations:

And Jesus said unto them, *The foxes* have holes, and *the birds of the air* have nests; but the Son of Man hath not where to lay his head. Bible *Matth.*, VIII, 20.

Then you're no friend to *the ladies*. GOLDSM., *She Stoops*, II, (194).  
The fact is, that the cigar is a rival to *the ladies*. THACK., *Fitzboodile Pref.*, (204).

From indulging in that simple habit of smoking, I have gained among *the ladies* a dreadful reputation. *Id.*, (209).

A shy man's lot is not a happy one. *The men* dislike him, *the women* despise him, and he dislikes and despises himself. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, IX, 143.

While man is very little higher than *the beasts*, he is also very little lower than *the angels*. MALET, *Mrs. Lorimer*, 209. 1)

Sir Robert Peel's apostrophe to *the Conservatives* was reproduced by Mr. Bal-four in his speech at the Primrose League demonstration at Hatfield. *Graph*.

1) TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, X, 218.

If only *the ladies* could all have their own way in this world, and never be thwarted, then were the Millennium near at hand. Ib.

It is necessary that *the nationalists* shall be absolutely independent. Ib.

*The Extremists* ask for nothing less than the establishment of complete Ministerial responsibility, while *the Moderates* are willing to be content with some assurance that the Chancellor will in future be responsible to the Reichstag. Westm. Gaz.

Note I. When what is meant is not a class in a generalizing way, but an indefinite number, the article is not, of course, used.

The stranger who would form a correct opinion of the English character, must sojourn in *villages* and *hamlets*; he must visit *castles*, *villas*, *farmhouses*, *cottages* [etc.]. WASH. IRVING.<sup>1)</sup>

Such plurals correspond to singulars preceded by the indefinite article in its varied functions. (7.)

i. *Days* elapsed before any one understood what had happened.

ii. *Boys* showed us the way.

iii. \* *Islands* are pieces of land surrounded by water.

\*\* *Lions* are beasts of prey.

iv. We want *men* for such a task.

But in like manner as the indefinite article, as a weak *any*, is sometimes practically equivalent to the generalizing definite article (7, c, Note II), plurals without the article are sometimes used in, apparently, the same meaning as plurals with the generalizing definite article.

When *leaves* fall and *flowers* fade, great people are found in their country-seats. LYTTON. What will he do with it?, V. Ch. I. 242

The task before *Liberals* and *Free Traders* is to drive home the fact that the Opposition policy is one of food taxes as a preliminary to full-blooded Protection. Westm. Gaz.

II. The difference between the generalizing (or indefinite) singular and the indefinite (or generalizing) plural is clearly brought out by the following quotations:

*Men* die, but *Man* is immortal. Periodical.<sup>2)</sup>

Most thinkers write and speak of *man*; Mr. Browning of *men*. Symons.<sup>2)</sup>

III. Sometimes the use or absence of the article is conditioned by the metre. Thus in:

*Men* are God's trees, and *women* are God's flowers; | And when the Gascon wine mounts to my head, | *The trees* are all the statelier, and *the flowers* | Are all the fairer. TEN., Beck., Prol., (694b).

IV. Sometimes the absence of the article may be due to the noun assuming more or less the vagueness of an indefinite pronoun. (57).

*Liberals* therefore are beginning to ask with much insistence what future is there either for the Government or for the party, if no means can be found of removing the obstruction of the Peers. Westm. Gaz. (= Dutch Van liberale zijde begint men te vragen enz.)

If the English tongue should ever die out, *future generations* would have to learn English as a dead language in order that they might read Milton. Ib., (=Dutch...zou men voortaan Engelsch moeten leeren, enz.)

1) FOELS.—KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 267.

2) WENDT, Synt. des heut. Eng., 169.

- b) Regular is the suppression of the definite article before plurals used in a generalizing sense after a superlative, when the notion of comparison with other specimens of the class is obscured, i. e. when little more is meant than a high degree of the quality expressed by the adjective. Thus *English is the easiest of languages* = English is a very easy language; *English is the easiest of the modern languages* = Of the modern languages English is the easiest to acquire.

The misses Osborne had had *the best of governesses*. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XII, 114.

That very evening Amelia wrote him *the tenderest of long letters*. Ib., Ch. XIII, 133. *The best of women* (I have heard my grandmother say) are hypocrites. Ib., I, Ch. XVII, 179.

Dare any soul on earth breathe a word against *the sweetest, the purest, the tenderest, the most, angelical of young women?* Ib., I, Ch. XVII, 188.

They vilipended the poor innocent girl as *the basest and most artful of vixens*. Ib., I, Ch. XVI, 131a.

Riding is *the most healthy of exercises*. G. ELIOT, Mid., I, Ch. II, 12.

With his jests and his frankness he made *the best of crimps*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVI, 131a.

Few of us realize how recently the changes have begun, which have made London the healthiest instead of *the unhealthiest of cities*. Graph.

*Even the healthiest of persons* is liable to stomachic derangement sometimes. Westm. Gaz., No. 6029, 13c.

He (sc. the hawfinch) is among *the shyest of birds*. Ib., 13a.

Compare with the above the following quotations, in which the use of the article has the effect of imparting to the superlative its ordinary meaning of exceeding all others:

(He only procured) a trifle occasionally...by obtaining an appearance at one or other of *the commonest of the minor theatres*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. III, 24.

*The Last of the Barons*. LYTTON, name of a novel.

*The Last of the Mohicans*. FENIMORE COOPER, name of a novel.

Man is *the shortest-lived of the beasts*. Il. Lond. News, No. 3831, 428a.

The Nation, *best and brightest of the Weeklies*. (For the absence of the article before the superlative see 20, e. Thus also in: Professor Reinhardt, *most popular of theatrical directors*, was responsible for the staging. Il. Lond. News, No. 3796, 76b.)

Note I. The article is sometimes suppressed also when there is a distinct notion of comparison with other specimens of the class.

*The greatest of faults* is to be conscious of none. CARLYLE, Hero Worship, II, 43.

Rotterdam is *the most enterprising of Dutch cities*. Lit. World.

II. The same construction may be observed with a singular abstract noun instead of a plural.

Both appeared to be in *the best of health*. Times, No. 1809, 698c. (= in excellent health.)

This would be denounced...as *the rankest of treason*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6389, 1b.

III. Sometimes a noun expressing a high degree of excellence, takes the place of the superlative. Such a noun may be preceded by the indefinite article, and the preposition *of* may be replaced by *among*.

i. *The prince of charioteers*. SHER., Riv., I, 1.

Archibald Forbes, *the prince of war correspondents*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 4971, 613b.

- ii. I lived with *a king of men* and did not know his greatness. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, III, 157.  
*A prince of dreamers*. F. A. STEELE, name of a novel.
- iii. She (sc. Ladx Mary Wortley Montagu) was *a queen among women*. T. P.'s Weekly.

IV. A singular noun identical with the plural sometimes has the value of a superlative: *the sin of sins* = *the greatest of sins*.

Acquiescence in things as they are is *the sin of sins*. Rev. of Rev., CXCIV, 138b. (That is) *the gift of gifts*. II. Lond. News, No. 3844, 945a.

Compare with this *A Whig of the Whigs*, he (sc. Lord John Russell) proved typical of a period which [etc.]. Bookman, No. 262, 162a (= a Whig to the backbone.)

Here mention may also be made of such a collocation as *in his heart of hearts* (= in his inmost heart), in which the article is suppressed on the same principle.

Like many fond parents I have in *my heart of hearts* a favourite child. And his name is David Copperfield. DICK., Cop., Pref.

The fact is that the Germans in *their hearts of hearts* know perfectly well that no one of these neighbours can attack them with any chance of success. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 97b.

IV. Partially converted adjectives denoting a class of persons in a generalizing way, never lose the article.

Master Jeremy... fell into the error of supposing that we clods and yokels were *the simplest of the simple*. BLACKM., Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVIII, 228.

34. The definite article is rarely used before the names of materials, and of actions, states or qualities (material and abstract nouns) when spoken of in a generalizing way.

a) The Dutch idiom in this case is variable. Although, as a rule, the article is dispensed with, it is not infrequently met with. Thus the article would (or might) be used in translating the following sentences:

i. *Money* makes the mare to go. Prov.

*Money* exercises an undue influence in the world. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*, I, (19).

Besides its commonest use as the working substance in engines, *steam* is also largely employed for heating. Harmsworth Encyclop. In Scotland *gas* is governed by the Sale of Gas Act Ib., s.v. *gas*, (121c).

ii. *Health* is above wealth. Prov.

*Art* is long, *life* is short. Id.

*Time* is a file that wears and makes no noise. Id.

'Tis safest in *matrimony* to begin with a little aversion. SHER., Riv., I, 2, (220).

What an enormous camera-obscura magnifier is *Tradition*. CARLYLE, *Hero Worship*, 23.

*Charity* begins at home, *justice* begins next-door. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXVII, 227a.

Self-preservation is the first law of *nature*. Id., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. X, 24a.

So long as *nature* supports me, never, never, Mr. Clump, will I desert the post of duty. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 201.

*Nature*, in all its operations, impresses man with the idea of an invisible Power. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, III, Ch. II, 52.

*Marriage* is the best state for man in general. REV. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. II, 26.



*Fame* and reward are powerful incentives, but they bear no comparison to *affection*. *Ib.*, Ch. III, 34.

*Charity* covers a multitude of sins. *Lit. World*.

*Note*. Indefinite or vague specializing bears some resemblance to generalization, and, therefore, has the same effect.

On all grounds *opinion* had better be left to ripen before positive steps are taken on either side. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6359, 7a.

*Opinion* has fortunately moved forward somewhat. *Ib.*, No. 6365, 2a.

His career owes nothing whatever to *influence* or to circumstances apart from his brilliant ability. *Ib.*, 2b.

b) The generalizing definite article is also rejected before the above nouns.

1) in sentences in which what is considered true at all times, is applied to a special case.

*Necessity* excused stratagem. *G. Eliot*, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXVII, 267.

2) when the ideas they express are personified. Personification of an abstraction is essentially only a modified form of generalizing an abstraction. It is often even difficult to tell how far generalizing has passed into personification. Thus some of the quotations given above might with a fair show of justice be cited as instances of personification. The uncertainty is also shown by the variability of the pronouns used in referring to abstractions. (Ch. XXVI, 38, b.)

The clearest form of personification is that in which a quality is represented as a deity, as when we speak of *Chance*, *Fate*, *Providence*, *Fortune*, etc.

The names of personified abstractions are practically significant proper names, and also as such would reject the article.

*Abundance*. It is a time when Want is keenly felt and *Abundance* rejoices. *Dick.*, *Christm. Carol*, I, 11.

*Art*. *Art* is a jealous mistress. *Storm*, *Eng. Phil.*, 352.

*Chance*. *Chance* afforded him an opportunity of making the acquaintance of this class of society. *Thack.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 317.

*Death*. *Death* alone parted them. *Academy*.

*Fate*. As *Fate* would have it, the two had stopped just opposite him. *Ch. Kingsley*, *Westward Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 146a.

*Fortune*. *Fortune* favours the bold. *Prov.*

Cursed as I am with more imperfections than my fellow-creatures, kind *Fortune* sent a heaven-gifted cherub to my aid. *Sheridan*, *Riv.*, V, 1, (272). I afraid of *Fortune*! Why *Fortune* has done her worst: I defy her to do worse than she has done! *Walt. Besant*, *St. Kath.*, Ch. VIII.

*History*. *History*, we believe, will do justice to it (sc. this Parliament). *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5, 173, 2a.

*Love*. *Love* looks not with the eyes, but with the mind. *Mids.*, I, 1, 224. *Love* flies out of the window, when poverty comes in at the door. *Prov.*

*Mercy*. *Mercy* blotted out the accusation. *Sterne*, *Tristram Shandy*, VI, 8.

*Misfortune*. It seemed as if *Misfortune* was never tired of worrying into motion that unwieldy exile. *Thack.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXXII, 351.

*Nature*. *Nature* meant very gently by women, when she made that tea-plant. *Id.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXXII, 347.

*Omnipotence*. Bright retorted that it was an affliction which not even *Omnipotence* could inflict on the noble lord. *Truth*, No. 472, 650c.

**Omniscience.** He only learned that the more he himself knew, in his little human way, the better he could distantly imagine what *Omniscience* might know. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, II, Ch. X, 183.

**Providence.** *Providence* has been kinder to us than we to ourselves. GOLDSM., *Vic.*

**Rumour.** *Rumour* called her a Spaniard. G. MEREDITH, *Lord Orm.*, Ch. II, 39.

*Rumour* had subsequently more to say. *Ib.*

So it came about that, when on the night of the big row contiguity produced physical conflict, the Colonel was in it. At least, so *Rumour* says. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4943, 5a.

*Rumour* has run wild during the present week. *Ib.*, No. 5237, 1b.

**Time.** *Time* heals many a sore. *Prov.*

*Time* will show. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XVI, 133a.

*Time* and tide wait for no man, saith the adage. *Ib.*, Ch. X, 80a.

35. Both before material nouns and abstract nouns the generalizing definite article is occasionally met with.

a) Sometimes the use of the article may be due to the requirements of metre or rhythm (9, g.) or to a desire to give the sentence a proper balance.

i. How many times shall Cæsar bleed in sport, | That now on Pompey's basis lies along, | No worthier than *the dust*. JUL. CÆS., III, 1, 116.

A feeling of sadness and longing | That is not akin to pain, | And resembles sorrow only | As *the mist* resembles rain. LONGFELLOW, *The Day is Done*, III. (Note the absence of the article before *rain*, although used in the same grammatical meaning as *mist*.)

ii. She is as pure as is *the ice*. OUIDA, *Moths*, III, 264.<sup>1)</sup>

iii. Only a little ice where the fire should glow, only a cold look, where *the love* should burn. REV. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. 10, 104.<sup>1)</sup>

But this would hardly account for the use of the article in:

Pray, gentlemen, let me have one honest man in my company, for *the novelty's* sake. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, V, 5, (339).

It is evident that as long as *the steam power* was to be used only as an auxiliary, it would be impossible to reckon on speed and certainty of arrival. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. I, 13. (Compare: Neither the *Sirius* nor the *Great Western* was the first vessel to cross the Atlantic by means of *steam propulsion*. *Ib.*, Ch. I, 13.)

When everything else falls away, *the love* will endure because it cannot die while there is any life, if it is true love, for it is immortal. RID. HAG., *Jess*, I, 86.<sup>2)</sup>

I am not of a mind to venture my life for *the truth's* sake. MOTLEY, *Rise, Hist. Introd.*, 39a.

She had remained pure as *the snow*. EL. GLYN, *The Reason why*, Ch. XVII, 155.

In the following quotation, given by WENDT (*Synt. des heut. Eng.* 172), the use of the definite article, indeed, makes for rhythm, but the indefinite article would seem to be more appropriate.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, VI, 24.

<sup>2)</sup> *Ib.*, X, 218.

Admirers of *the strenuous life* must acclaim Professor Wright, who has just completed his great English Dialect Dictionary. Periodical.

- b) The article is rather common before the names of certain diseases, such as *bronchitis*, *fever*, *gout*, *indigestion*, *rheumatism*, *whooping-cough* and the compounds of *ache*. This practice, however, is now regarded as more or less vulgar. WYLD, *The Growth of English*, Ch. V, 65. Before most names of diseases, especially when scientific names, the article is practically never used. Such, among many others, are *cholera*, *consumption*, *pleurisy*, *phthisis*, *diphtheria*, *paralysis*, *neuralgia*, etc. Before others we mostly find the indefinite article. (41, a.) The definite article is practically regular before *plague* and *pest*. It may here be observed that the article is exceedingly common before plural names of diseases. See the illustrative quotations given in Ch. XXV, 19, c.

**ache.** i. I was to spend the day with Miss Sheridan, who was ill with *the tooth-ache*. MISS LINLEY (G. G. S., *Life of Sheridan*, 28).

I am sure you have *the head-ache*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. VII, 74.

I am very much afraid she caught *the head-ache* there. *Ib.*, 76.

Miss Pritchard had *the head-ache*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LXXX, 848.

He came because I had *the tooth-ache*. *Ib.*, Ch. LXXXIV, 895.

- ii. She laboured under severe *head-ache*. MRS. GASK., *Life of Charl. Brontë*, 416.

**fever.** i. The latter caught *the typhus fever*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. III, 25.

Colonel Washington has had *the fever* very smartly. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XII, 122.

Miss Birch died of *the scarlet fever*. *Ib.*, *Van Fair*, I, Ch. I, 3.

- ii. His Excellency, Colonel Rawdon Crawley died of *yellow fever*. THACK., *Van Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 372.

Having gone to bed ill with *fever* [etc.]. *Ib.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. XVI, 163.

Percie had died of *fever*. *Story of Rob Roy*, 45.

*Fever* and a bad head-ache have prevented me from writing to my adorable friend. *Truth*, No. 470, 595c.

**gout.** i. Master thought another fit of *the gout* was coming to make him a visit. SHER., *Riv.*, I, I, (213).

- ii. *Gout* is the chief disease from which rheumatism has to be distinguished. ROBERTS, *Handbk. Med.*<sup>3</sup>, I, 231.1)

**measles.** i. Don't you remember dying of *the measles* and coming here to be buried? MISS BRADDON, *My First Happy Christmas* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 77).

- ii. The worthy medical man round the corner has a right to tell me that I have *measles*. CHESTERTON (11. *Lond. News*, No. 3817, 869c).

**plague.** i. During the 19th century *the plague* in Europe was confined almost exclusively to Turkey and S. Russia. *Harmsworth Encyclop.* s. v. *plague*, (382c).

From June 1890 to January 1900 *the plague* prevailed in Oporto in Portugal. *Ib.*

- ii. At length it seems as if *plague* was being got over. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6299, 2a.

**rheumatism.** i. If this frolic should lay me up with a fit of *the rheumatism*, I shall have a blessed time of it with dame van Winkle. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *Rip van Winkle*.

- ii. On wet Sundays, or whenever he had a touch of *rheumatism*, ne used to read the three first chapters of Genesis. G. ELIOT, *Adam Bede*, Ch. XVIII, 161. It was evident from the way he moved, that every one of his poor old joints was stiff with *rheumatism*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5201, 9a.

**small-pox.** When my poor James was in *the small-pox*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XIX, 201.

A few quotations containing names of diseases which never take the generalizing definite article, must suffice.

He died of *cholera*. MC CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 181.

She died from *inflammation of the lungs*. (?), *Mad. Leroux*, Ch. I.

Thousands of people had perished of *starvation*. YORK POWELL, *Life of Ch. Gordon*, (GÜNTHER, *Leerb.*, 135).

She possessed a husband whom she had left ill with *malaria* at Florence. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. VII, 82.

- c) The generalizing definite article is also more or less common before the following abstract nouns:

**chase**, which has it practically regularly, except for certain expressions, such as *to hold chase*, *to give chase*, *to be (hold) in chase*. Sometimes the use or absence of the article is determined by the measure.

- i. The gentleman is going to *the chase*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XVII, 175.

All the fierce gaiety of his nature broke out in the chivalrous adventures of his youth, ... in his defiant ride over the ground which Geoffry Martel claimed from him, a ride with hawk on fist, as though war and *the chase* were one. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § 4, 75. (Note the different practice before *war* and *chase*.)

The Normans made *the chase* and war the only noble occupations. *Suggestive Lessons*, IV, 90.

- ii. Spies of the Volsces | Held me in *chase*. CORIOL., I, 6, 19.

And now the two canoes in *chase* divide. BYRON, *The Island*, III, x.

Since long ago that men in Calydon | Held *chase*. W. MORRIS, *The Earthly Par.*, *The Son of Cræss.*, XXI.

Next day King Helge gave *chase* to Frithiof. EDNA LYALL, *A Hardy Norseman*, Ch. III, 28.

**light**, which regularly has the article in the collocation *to see the light* = to come into the world, to be brought forth or published. Usage is divided in the collocation *to bring to (the) light*. The article seems to be regularly suppressed in *to come to light*.

- i. \* Many documents from his hand ... will probably never see *the light*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 901a.

This book first saw *the light* in the pages of an illustrated daily paper. *Lit. World*.

\*\* "Here they are, here they are!" cried Ned exultingly, as he brought two young owls to *the light*. SWEET, *The Old Chapel*.

- ii. \* Everybody wished to bring to light some of the treasures. MAX MÜLLER, *Sci. Relig.*, 185.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\* They will stick at nothing to keep the truth from coming to light. *Times*. To crop out = to come to light. WEBST., *Dict.*

The fraud came to light. *Graph*.

**death**, which regularly has the article in the collocation *to the death* with *to* in a temporal meaning. See also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2)</sup>, § 262; ELLINGER, *Eng. Stud.*, XXXI; id., *Verm. Beit.*, 26.



I will battle it *to the death*, and die game at last. DICK., Letters.<sup>1)</sup>

I trust thee *to the death*. TEN., Coming of Arthur, 133.

Lestrangle... vowed to wage war, not only *to the death*, but after death, with all the mock saints and martyrs. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 386.

They swore a great oath... to obey their officers *to the death*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXI, 174a.

Here is seemingly a quarrel *to the death*, Punch.

Shere Khan knew that Mother Wolf would fight *to the death*. RUDY. KIPLING, Jungle Book.

They would resent an insult to themselves or one of their family *to the death*. PHILIPS, Mrs. Bouverie, 96.

A thousand Granitanians swore unsolicited to follow him *to the death*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5382, 2c.

Note. When *to* has not a temporal meaning, the article is not used. Thus it is absent in:

He was *frozen to death*, *starved to death*, *frightened to death*. He *bored himself to death*. He *drank himself to death*. These terms *have been done to death*. He *was put to death*. Sheridan... *wounded to death*, was removed to the White Hart Hotel. (T. P.'s Weekly, No. 475, 746b.)

In the following quotations the definite article is, apparently, used for the sake of the metre:

I am *hurt to the death*. Othello, II, 3, 157.

Leave me to-night: I am *weary to the death*. TEN., Ger. and En., 358.

Tho' he... [ ... were himself nigh *wounded to the death*. Ib., 918.

**law**, which has the article regularly, or almost regularly, in certain applications or collocations, dropping it as regularly in others.

*Law* has the article:

a) when denoting the body of enacted or customary rules recognized by a community as binding, often with a notion of personification.

He was at a loss how it should come to pass that *the law*, which was intended for every man's preservation, should be any man's ruin. SWIFT, Gul., IV, Ch. V. Laws grind the poor, and rich men rule *the law*. GOLDSMITH, Trav., 386.

Ignorant of *the law*, *the law* seemed to him, as it ever does to the ignorant and the friendless, [etc.]. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 120.

"If *the law* supposes that", said Mr. Bumble... *the law* is a ass — a idiot. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. LI, 481.

Combination is an instinct which, as *the law* cannot eradicate it, it is sound policy on the part of *the law* to recognize. ESCOTT, England, Ch. X, 156.

In that year the principle was asserted that *the law* owed its duties of protection to women as well as children. Ib., Ch. X, 138.

*The law* forbids, allows. FOWLER, Concise Oxf. Dict.

To lay down *the law*. Ib.

Observe especially to *break* (*infringe*, *transgress*) *the law*, as in:

Neither will it be necessary for you *to break the law* in an attempt to deprive us forcibly of the use of property. Times, No. 1831, 83a.

Mr. Pankhurst... (gave) an undertaking not *to break the law* while her trial is pending. Westm. Gaz., No. 6165, 2c.

Note 1. The following quotations may exhibit exceptional practice:

Your late husband's estate will be seized upon by *law*. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LIV, 419a.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., Taalst., VI, 24.

The regulations prescribed by *law*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. X, 151.

II. It may be observed that when a branch of the law is meant, as in *canon* (*civil, common, martial*) *law*, the article is absent, although a generalizing sense is meant.

The crown lawyers pleaded against *Canon Law*. WILLIAM BARRY, *The Papacy*, Ch. I, 17.

- β) in the sense of binding injunctions in general, especially in the phrase *to give the law to* (=to impose one's will upon).

Mr. Brady *gave the law* at Castle Brady. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. I. (Occasionally without the article: In literature she *gave law* to the world. MAC., *Hist.*, III, Ch. I, 397.)

- γ) when denoting a science: He consults men *learned in the law*. J. H. NEWMAN, *Par. Sermon*.<sup>1)</sup>

I have *studied the law*. PUNCH. (Occasionally without the article: These chapters were rewritten under the immediate eye of W. H., who *studied law* 35 years ago. MARK TWAIN, *Pud. Wilson*, 5.)

Note. The article is absent in the combinations *student-at-law*, *student of law*, *professor of law*:

Simple questions and answers for the use of *students-at-law*. PUNCH.

- δ) in the sense of judicial remedy, especially in the phrases *to take (to have) the law of a person*, *to take the law into one's own hands*, *to have the law in one's own hands*.

There's a hackney-coachman downstairs, vowing he'll *have the law of you*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 60.

I'll *take the law of yer* for assault an' battery. MRS. WARD, *Marce.*, I, 152.

The term (sc. lynch-law) is said to be derived from a Virginia farmer named Lynch, who thus *took the law into his own hands*. WEBST., *Dict.*, s. v. *lynch-law*.

- ε) in the sense of the legal profession.

Bred *to the law*. FOWLER, *Concise Oxf. Dict.*

*Law* stands without the article:

- α) in the sense of controlling influence of the law.

The Reign of *Law*. ESCOTT, England, Ch. X, 156, (Compare: the Reign of Terror.)

*Law* . . . is at each stage the organised public opinion of the country. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6323, 1c.

- β) in the sense of *law-courts* as providing judicial remedy, especially in the phrase *to go to law*.

*Go to law* upon the spot and retain me. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. III, 29.

- γ) in the combinations *court-of-law*, *son-in-law*.

Note. In such a sentence as *It may be common sense, but is not law*, the absence of the article before *law* is due to its application as a predicative noun. (Ch. XXIII, 16, a.)

*peace*, which almost regularly has the article when it stands for *the King's peace* (= the general peace and order of the realm, as provided for by law). MURRAY. Thus in:

- α) the collocations *to keep (preserve) the peace*, *to break (disturb) the peace*, and allied combinations, such as *preservation (breach, disturbance) of the peace*.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

- i. We were bound over to *keep the peace*. THACK., Virg., Ch. LV, 570. *Keep the peace*, or I'll lay a heavy hand on the pair of you. HAL. SUTCL., The Lone Adventure, Ch. II, 45.

Sir Edward Grey may be satisfied of his own ability to *keep the peace*. Westm. Gaz.

We remain of opinion that, in spite of all these hitherings and thitherings, the Balkan question will eventually be settled without *disturbing the peace*. Ib., No. 4937, 1a.

I will do the best of my power to cause *the peace to be kept and preserved*. Il. Lond. News, No. 3775, 342.

The Man who defies the law is he who provokes others to a *breach of the peace*. Times, No. 1831, 91c.

The Constabulary had received instructions . . . to disperse by force assemblies from which a *disturbance of the peace* might be apprehended.

Il. Lond. News, No. 3851, 177.

- ii. The High Commissioner was hoping against hope that *peace* might be *preserved*. Times.

A warning that *peace must be kept* during the bye-election. Il. Lond. News, No. 3851, 177.

The venerable Ruler, whose wisdom has helped so much to *preserve peace*. Ib., No. 3879, 276.

His services in the difficult work of *keeping peace* on the Indian frontier it would be hard to overrate. Westm. Gaz., No. 6246, 2a.

β) in the collocation *Justice of the Peace* (formerly also *Justice of Peace*.

- i. In counties the Court is held before the *Justices of the Peace*. ANNA BUCKLAND, Our Nat. Instit., 47.

- ii. The clerk . . . doubted whether a *Justice of Peace* had any such power. FIELDING, Amelia, I, Ch. II.

You talked, for all the world, as if you was before a *Justice of Peace*. GOLDSMITH, She Stoops, III, (205).

Note. Similarly in *constable* (*officer, conservator, sergeant*) of the *peace*.

- γ. in the collocations: *to be sworn of the peace* (= to be made a magistrate), *the commission of the peace* (= the authority given under the Great Seal empowering certain persons to act as Justices of the Peace in a specified district), *precept of the peace, sessions of the peace*.

I am *sworn of the peace*. Merry Wives, II, 3, 54.

In England this title (sc. that of Justice of the Peace) was first conferred by an act of 1360, and *the commission of the peace* in counties became a permanent institution from about that time. Harmsworth Encyclop.

Note. In other combinations *peace* rejects the article. Thus in *to make (to conclude, to bring, to bring about, to secure) peace*.

Lord Morley's aim has been not to disturb an existing peace, but *to bring peace* in disturbed conditions. Westm. Gaz., No. 4937, 2a.

The Powers . . . have at least *secured peace* among themselves, even if they have not *made peace* in the Balkans. Id., No. 6341, 2a.

### 36. The generalizing article is also suppressed:

- a) before some of the names of localities, institutions and establishments, and allied words mentioned in 15, a. For illustration see also that §.

**church.** *Church* begins at two. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, Ch. XVIII, 159.

*Church* is good for the publican. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. II, 40.

**college.** *College* he seems to have disliked. LYTTON, Life of Lord Byron, 14b.

**home.** *Home* is home, be it ever so homely. Prov.

**market.** A silver fox skin...will fetch in open *market* between two thousand and two thousand five hundred dollars. II. Lond. News, No. 3877, 211

**prison.** Our friend seems to think that *prison* is a hospital. JOHN GALSWORTHY, Justice, III, 1, (70).

You don't understand what *prison* is. Ib., IV, (101).

*Prison* for lads should be the last, and not the first, resort. Daily News, 1897, 30 Aug., 51.

**school.** *School* would be a complete change. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. III, 25.

'Would you like to go to *school*?' Again I reflected: I scarcely knew what *school* was. Ib., 24.

You've had your holiday and *school's* begun again. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XI, 125.

Compare: For those who followed Lister's guidance *the hospital* ceased to be a slaughter-house. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 11b.

b) before the names of meals. (15, b.)

I allowed half an hour for this meal and an hour for *dinner*. GOLDSMITH, Vicar, Ch. IV, (256).

I never wait *supper* for anybody. DICK., Pickw., Ch. IX, 73.

*Dinner* is generally the most substantial meal we take in the course of the day.

c) before the names of certain of the main divisions of a day, when the reference is to a natural phenomenon, or to an epoch. The article is not suppressed, when distinctly a period is meant: hence it is always retained after the prepositions *in* and *during*. Nor is it, apparently, ever dropped before *afternoon* and *forenoon*. (15, c.)

Ev'n *silent night* proclaims my soul immortal. YOUNG, Night Thoughts, I, 102.

*Evening* must usher *night*, *night* urge the morrow. SHELLEY, Adonais, XXI. *Night* is generally my time for walking. DICK., The Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 1a.

d) frequently before the names of seasons. The article seems to be especially common after the prepositions *in* and *during*, which help to express a period. (15, d.)

i. *Winter* is long and harsh; *summer* is brief and burning. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. XX, 331.

All the gardeners could not keep the impress of *autumn's* destroying hand from the grounds about the Court. Miss BRADDON, Lady Audley's Secret, I, Ch. XIV, 152.

In *summer* the heat of the sun is tempered by the fresh keen air of the mountain. Ib., Ch. IX, 129.

ii. \* In *the summer* I often leave home early in the morning, and roam about fields and lanes all day. DICK., The Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 1a.

There were glass houses to protect the delicate plants *in the winter*. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. VIII, 121.

The remarkable family gatherings were held every year, usually *in the autumn*. Times.

It is a pretty sight to see these orchards *in the spring*. GÜNTHER, Leerb., 76.

The squirrel is monogamous, and *in the spring* rears usually two or three young. Westm. Gaz., No. 6059, 13a.



\*\* People say, it is best to live in the country *during the summer*, and in town *during the winter*. Laurie's New Third Standard Reader.<sup>1)</sup>

The following is a remarkable instance of divided usage:

*In the winter* this waik is sheltered from the bitter east winds by the belt of wood, and *in summer* pleasantly over-shaded by the overhanging trees. L. MALET, Mrs. Lorimer, 42.<sup>2)</sup>

Note. When the name of the season is followed by a (continuative) adnominal clause, the article is indispensable.

*In the winter*, which he spends in Melbourne, this highland home of his is sometimes swathed in snow. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. IX, 129.

c) almost regularly before the names of months, days and festivals. (15, c.)

i. The inhabitants most religiously eat pancakes on *Shrove Tuesday*, hot-cross buns on *good Friday*, and roast goose at *Michaelmas*; they send love-letters on *Valentine's Day*, burn the Pope on the fifth of November, and kiss all the girls under the mistletoe at *Christmas*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XXV, 243.

The engines do not observe *Sunday*, not being human. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. II, 40.

ii. Why such impress of shipwrights, whose sore task | Does not divide *the Sunday* from the week? Hamlet, I, I, 76. (The use of the article is, apparently, due to the metre.)

The gallery being shut up on *the Wednesday*. Eliot's Life II, 182.<sup>3)</sup>

Note. The article seems to be regularly kept before *Sabbath*.

To keep (break) *the Sabbath*. MURRAY.

She called upon him categorically to state whether he did not think that travelling on *the Sabbath* was an abomination and a desecration. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. V, 37.

37. The difficulty of deciding whether the conception formed in our minds is specialized or generalized, is often responsible for the vacillation in the use of the article. Thus in:

What the devil signifies *right* when your honour is at stake? Do you think Achilles, or my little Alexander the Great ever inquired where *the right* lay? SHER., Riv., III, 4.

He had no doubt as to having *right* on his side. Mrs. OLIPHANT, I, 175.<sup>2)</sup>

Of special interest is the divided usage in the collocations:

a) *to draw, paint, or take, etc. from (the) life; studies, or copies, etc. from (the) life; true to (the) life*. Compare TEN BRUG, Taalst., X, 217.

i. \* "What is the design?" ... — A cook... with a beautiful *muræna (taken from the life)*, on a spit at a distance. LYTON, Last Days of Pomp., I, Ch. II, 16a.

He had been all the morning at Carrel's studio *drawing from the life*. DU MAURIER, Trilby, 6.

He had been working for three or four years in a London art-school, *drawing and painting from the life*. Ib., 103.

Men and women must be *studied from the life*. Id., Soc. Pict. Sat., 18.

He *copied from the life* only glaring and obvious peculiarities. BAIN, H. E. Gr., s. v. *from*.

<sup>1)</sup> SCHULZE, Beit. zur Feststellung des mod. eng. Sprachgebrauches, 19. <sup>2)</sup> TEN BRUG, Taalst., VI, 26, 23. <sup>3)</sup> Ib., X, 219.

\*\* *A study from the life.* DICK., *Crick.*, I, 24.

\*\*\* I will put you in my first novel, a little idealised perhaps, but *true to the life.* BEATRICE HARRADEN, *The Fowler*, I, Ch. XIII, 68.

ii. \* *Taken from the life.* II. Lond. News.

\*\* *Studies from life* at the Zoo. Id.

\*\*\* The characters were overdrawn and *untrue to life.* W. J. LOCKE, *Glory of Cleopatra*, Ch. II, 17.

Note. Compare with the above: *studies*, etc. *from nature*, invariably without the article.

b) *to speak, say, or tell (the) truth.* i. *To tell the truth*, he did not care to venture there in the dark. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 151).

He was very good-natured, generous, *told the truth.* THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXIV, 272.

*To say the truth*, she certainly was not (so) an angel. Id., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 10.

*To speak the truth*, you are my child. TEN., *Lady Clare*, VI.

ii. *To say truth*, ma'am, 'tis very vulgar to print. SHER., *School for Scand.*, I, I, (370).

I am engaged as a poetical gazetteer, *to say truth*, and am writing a poem on the campaign. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. XI, 245.

No matter what the verses were, and, *to say truth*, Mr. Esmond found some of them more than indifferent. Id., II, Ch. XI, 245.

She was a mild and patient creature, if her face *spoke truth.* DICK., *Christm. Car.*, IV, 97.

*Speak truth* and shame the devil, that's my motto. LYTTON, *Night and Morn.*, 125.

*I tell you truth*, sir. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 114a.

*To speak truth*, if I thought I had a chance to better myself where I was going, I would go with a good will. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, 10.

Note. The article seems to be regularly absent in the absolute infinitive clauses *to say truth*, *truth to say*, *truth to tell*; and to be as regularly used in the absolute infinitive clause *to tell you the truth*. Compare with these phrases also *to say true*, *to tell one true*, and see Ch. XVIII, 24.

i. I have seen him but little, nor, *truth to say*, esteem him much. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. VIII, 53.

*Truth to tell*, good looks are the exception, not the rule, in Naples. EDNA LYALL, *Knight Errant*, Ch. II, 8.

ii. *To tell you the truth*, he had some forty stout countrymen of his with him. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. II, 7b.

iii. You *say true.* DRYDEN, *Love for Love*, III, 3, (241).

Sir Nicholas *tells you true.* TEN., *Queen Mary*, V, I, (636a).

c) *worth (the) having, living*, etc. i. Something which was well *worth the having.* DICK., *Dombey*, Ch. I, 2.

Any recipe for catching such a son-in-law was *worth the having.* Id., *Chuz.*, Ch. XVIII, 157a.

I knew all along that the prize I had set my heart on, was not *worth the winning.* THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXI, 354.

Life might perhaps be *worth the living.* RIDER HAG., *Jess*, Ch. IV, 33.

A cheaper and smaller edition might be *worth the issuing.* Acad.

The secret was hardly *worth the telling.* WHITEING.<sup>1)</sup>

ii. He means to give you some present *worth having.* DICK., *Chuz.*, XXIV, 204a.

Domestic felicity, like everything else *worth having*, must be worked for. Rev. E. J. HARDY, *How to be happy though married*, Ch. I, 12.

<sup>1)</sup> KONRAD MEIER, E. S., XXXI, 328.

## USE OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

38. The chief feature of the use of the indefinite article in English, as compared with Dutch, is its frequent employment before the names of actions, qualities or states, to denote that a special variety or instance is meant. (Ch. XXV, 24, a.) Compare also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*, § 276. While in both languages the use of the article is quite common, when the nature of the variety or instance is specified by an adnominal clause, it is rather rare in Dutch and frequent in English, when there is no such specifying.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| i. Dat is <i>een zelf-opoffering</i> als wij zelden aantrefien. | That is <i>a self-sacrifice</i> such as we seldom meet with. |
| Dat is <i>een zelf-opoffering</i> die achting afdwingt.         | That is <i>a self-sacrifice</i> which commands respect.      |
| ii. Hij heeft <i>aanleg</i> voor muziek.                        | He has <i>a turn</i> for music.                              |
| Dat is <i>jammer</i> .  | That is <i>a pity</i> .                                      |

Both English and Dutch are, however, highly variable and arbitrary in the use of the indefinite article before abstract nouns; that is to say, not only do some nouns now take now lose it, but also there are many that, from no cause lying in the nature of their signification, seem to be excepted from the prevailing tendency. Some of these latter are included in the following illustrations for comparison.

It is hardly necessary to say that the subject here raised is one of almost illimited extent, and that, therefore, only a few of the most remarkable points can be touched upon.

39. Two peculiar English idioms may be recorded at the outset:

- a) the use of the indefinite article before the stem of a verb, which is much more widely spread in English than in Dutch. In colloquial language, indeed, almost any verb-stem expressing an action, may be converted into a substantive and used with the indefinite article.

**bite.** She never knew she had *a bite*, till Tom told her. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 32.

**dislike.** The consequence of his taking *a dislike* to us . . . is . . . that he loses some pleasant moments. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 78. (See also page 615.)

**escape.** You have had *a narrow escape* with life. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. IV, 36.

**fix.** I'm in *a fix*. KATH. CEC. THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. X, 118.

**laugh.** "How kind you all are to me! All," she added with *a laugh*, "except you, Mr. Joseph. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 27.

A man must have *a laugh* sometimes. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. X, 137.

**say.** As to the concerts for schools, the education committee has *a say* in the matter. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 484, 210c.

The husband should have *a say* in the matter. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6299, 3b.

**shoot.** The gentlemen return from *a shoot* just a little before dinner. Westm. Gaz.

The Indian scene of *a tiger shoot* is vividly shown in these pictures. Graph., No. 2269, 846.

Compare: (He) has been good enough to invite me to Bareacres for the pheasant *shooting*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 23.

**talk.** There was *a talk* of his marrying Miss Hunkle. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 23.

**wait.** There was *a wait*. KATH. CEC. THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. X, 115.

**warm.** Sit ye down before the fire, my dear, and have *a warm*, Lord bless you. DICK., Christm. Car<sup>ol</sup>, III, 57.

- b) the use of the indefinite article before gerunds, which also is extended to practically any verb. A few instances must suffice.

**hearing.** This was *a delightful hearing*. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXIV, 178a. (= Dutch verrukkelijk om aan te hooren.)

That's *a bad hearing*. Ib., Ch. IV, 22a.

Sullivan could scarcely obtain *a hearing*. MAC., Clive, (529a).

The Society is certainly to be commended for bringing a festival novelty to *a hearing* as quickly as possible. Athen., No. 3135, 719c. 1)

Compare: That is *good hearing* for those of us who [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 105a. (This seems to be the ordinary construction: the use of the article as in the two first quotations given above is infrequent.)

**knocking.** *A knocking* at the door was heard. DICK., Christm. Car<sup>ol</sup>, II, 52.

Compare: There was *a knock* at the door. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 27.

**liking.** Lady Bellaston had more than once seen Sophia there since her arrival in town, and had conceived *a very great liking* to her. FIELDING, Tom Jones, XV, Ch. II, 98b.

I began to take *a liking* for her very soon. MRS. CRAIK, Dom. Stor., I, Ch. IV, 241.

He had taken *a liking* to Mrs. Aikman's new nurse. DOR. GER., The Etern. Wom., Ch. XVII.

(I) have *a liking* for him, for precise statement, etc. FOWLER, Conc. Oxf. Dict. (Note the variety of the prepositions with which *liking* is construed.)

Compare: *Liking* for Great Britain was not too common in the United States in the years from 1865 to 1898. Times, No. 1818, 881b. (This looks like a highly unusual construction.)

**misgiving.** I had *a strong misgiving* that his nightly absence was for no good purpose. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 7a.

Compare: There is *great and general misgiving* about this measure. Times, No. 1823, 982d.

Note. The plural is often used instead of the singular preceded by the article. (Ch. XXV, 24, a.)

**sitting.** A dismal *sitting* it was for all parties. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XV, 154.

**wetting.** It seemed doubtful whether we should *escape a wetting*. Times, No. 1809, 701a.

1) TEN BRUG., Taalst., X, 222.



40. Before other abstract nouns the indefinite article is especially frequent, when the noun it modifies is:

- a) the non-prepositional object or the subject of a passive sentence. In this case this noun often enters into a fixed combination with (a) particular verb(s), frequently *to feel*, *to have* and *to take*.
- b) part of a prepositional expression, denoting either an adverbial relation or a state, or representing a prepositional object. For instances see also under *in*, *of* and *with* in 67, and under *without* in 68.
- c) the subject of an active sentence. Of especial frequency is the use of the indefinite article in sentences opening with *there is (was)*.
- d) the nominal part of the predicate or a predicative adnominal adjunct.

In the following illustrations these functions are distinguished by the letters *a)*, *b)*, *c)* and *d)* respectively, others being marked by *e)*. In all of them a modifying adjective furthers the use of the article. Some instances have been included of the use of the indefinite article before nouns that have assumed a more or less distinctly concrete meaning.

If a collocation is given without comment, it may in general be understood to hardly allow of the alternative practice, but the available evidence has often been far too scanty to justify any reliable conclusion.

**account.** *a)* When I come again, I will demand from you a strict account. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. II, 24.

*He kept an exact account of his salary.* MAC., Clive, (533a).

*He felt as if he must now render up an account to Sir Michael of the fate of that woman.* MISS BRADDON, Lady Audley's Secret, II, Ch. XIII, 239. Note. Thus also *to give*, *yield* or *render an account* and *to ask an account*. But *to take account*.

*She was absorbed in the direct, immediate experience, without any energy left for taking account of it and reasoning about it.* G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. VI, 373.

*b) i.* If he condones the act of the Lords in refusing supplies, he transfers the power from himself to an authority which he cannot call to an account. Westm. Gaz., No. 1207, 1b.

*ii.* The only check on his tyranny was the fear of being called to account by a distant and careless government. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 200.

Note. The use of the article in the above collocation would appear to be rare. This applies also to *to turn to account* and *to hold to account*.

*These are advantages which will turn to real account.* MRS. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 157.

*No working-man shall be held to account for any of the proceedings which are held guiltless in Carson.* Westm. Gaz., No. 6383, 7b.

**acquaintance.** *a) i.* They are opposite neighbours, and made an acquaintance through Mrs. Fundy's macaw. THACK., A Little Dinner at Timmins's, Ch. I.

The latter would have liked to make a further acquaintance. Id., Pend., I, Ch. XXXII, 346.

- ii. He *had made acquaintance* with him at the mess by opening the conversation. *Id.*, Ch. XXIX, 314.

I *made acquaintance* with the farmers. *LYTTON*, *Caxtons*, XII, Ch. I, 307.

It was his intention to *make acquaintance* with the neighbours. *Id.*, IV, Ch. IV, 96.  
Note I. The article seems to be usually absent. Thus, most probably, also after *to renew*, but here it is rather the definite than the indefinite article that is dispensed with.

He *renewed acquaintance* with some of their old comrades there. *THACK.*, *Pend.* I, Ch. XVII, 174.

II. On the analogy of *to form an alliance*, *a friendship* etc. the article may be expected before *acquaintance* after *to form*. This is not, however, the regular practice. He *formed acquaintance* with the son of a scene-painter. *Lit. World*.

III. In *to strike up an acquaintance* (*FOWLER*, *Concise Oxford Dict.*, s. v. *strike*) the article cannot, apparently, be dispensed with.

IV. Instead of the above constructions we mostly find that with a genitive or its equivalent: Where did you make *my friend's acquaintance*, *the acquaintance of my friend*, *his acquaintance*, etc.

Very glad *to make your acquaintance*. *DICK.*, *Nich. Nickl.*, Ch. V, 24.

Chance offered him an opportunity of *making the acquaintance* of this class of society. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXX, 317.

Observe also: *to make the acquaintance of* = *to form an acquaintance with*. *MURRAY*, s. v. *acquaintance*.

**ambition.** b) It is only to inspire you with *a proper ambition*. *LYTTON*, *Lady of Lyons*, I, 1.

**antipathy.** a) Those were books to which he *had taken an antipathy*. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Alton Locke*, Ch. VI, 67.

She *had an antipathy* to doing anything useful. *Mrs. Wood*, *East Lynne*, I, 17.  
Note. Compare *sympathy*.

**appearance.** a) (He only procured) a trifle occasionally by borrowing it of some old companion, or by *obtaining an appearance* at one or other of the commonest of the minor theatres. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. III, 24.

All men must *put in a personal appearance* at the Last Assize. *SPURGEON*, (*Christ. Herald*, 1883, 24 Oct., 235 l.).<sup>1)</sup>

And you've got to *put in an appearance* — for party reasons? *KATH. CECIL THURSTON*, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XII, 136.

Note. Thus also *to make an appearance* = to put in an appearance. *FOWLER*, *Concise Oxf. Dict.*, s. v. *put*.

**appetite.** a) Nothing like dissecting, to *give one an appetite*. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 267.

Note. Thus, apparently, with great regularity. Similarly in *to have an appetite*. Observe, however the absence of the article in the following quotation:

Men must *have appetite* before they will eat. *BUCKLE*, *Civilis*, XI, 629.<sup>1)</sup>

b) He began to eat *with an appetite*. *DICK.*, *Little Dorrit*, Ch. I, 4a.

**aptitude.** a) He *had a singular aptitude* for dealing with the difficulties of a crisis. *Lit. World*.

Note. The alternative practice may be quite as usual. Compare *aptness*, *capacity*, *facility* and *faculty*.

**aptness.** a) He *showed amazing aptness* in mastering other branches of knowledge. *WASH. IRV.*, *Dolf. Heyl*. (*STOF.*, *Handl.*, I, 111).

Note. The alternative practice may be quite as usual. Compare *aptitude*, *capacity*, *facility* and *faculty*.

**attachment.** a) She *has formed an attachment* to another. *SHERIDAN*, *School for Scand.*, IV, 3, (412).

<sup>1)</sup> *MURRAY*.

**audience.** a) i. He had a right *to demand an audience* of his sovereign. JUN. Lett. XLI, 216<sup>1</sup>).

She hastened *to seek an audience* with her protector. LYTTON.<sup>2</sup>)

Mr. Balfour *had an audience* of the king at Buckingham Palace on Wednesday. Times, No. 1819, 893d.

ii. The Bishop retired to the Parsonage, where . . . he was *to give audience* to the delegates. G. ELIOT, Scenes, III, Ch. VI, 224.

Note. In the sense of 'a formal interview granted by a superior to an inferior' (MURRAY), *audience* mostly stands with the article in the above combinations. In the more abstract sense of 'the action of hearing, attention to what is spoken' (MURRAY), it always stands without.

Then follow me and *give me audience*. JUL. CÆS., III, 2, 2.

These teachers easily *found attentive audience*. MAC., Hist., I, 406.<sup>1</sup>)

b) i. They came *for an audience* of the Queen. Graph.

Zara's manner was that of a sovereign graciously receiving foreigners *in a private audience*! EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XII, 103.

ii Lord Rosebery was received *in audience* by the Emperor Francis Joseph at Schönbrunn on Saturday. Times, No. 1821, 938a.

He (sc. Bismarck) certainly did ask *to be received* by her (sc. the Empress Frederick) *in audience*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6347, 8d.

Note. Except for the collocation *to receive in audience*, the article seems to be usually employed.

**aversion.** a) Make her *have an aversion* for the booby. CONGREVE, Love for Love, II, 2, (233).

Tom *had an aversion* to looking at him. G. ELIOT, Mill, II, Ch. III, 145.

**awe.** a) He is taller by the breadth of my nail than any of his court, which alone is enough *to strike an awe* into beholders. SWIFT, Gul. Trav., I.

Note. The alternative practice may be as common.

c) A *great awe* seemed to have possessed his soul. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVIII, 135a.

An *awe* crept over Nina. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. II, 164.

**blaze.** b) The whole country was *in a blaze*. MAC., War. Hist., (609a).

From the overgrown village (sc. Turin) . . . proceeded the spark which set the whole of the Italian peninsula *in a blaze*. RICH. BAGOT, My Italian Year, Ch. II, 20.

**breath.** a) i. The gentleman *drew a long breath*. DICK., Chuz., Ch. XXXIX, 310a.

She stopped *to fetch a deep breath*. DOR. GER., Et. Wom., Ch. III.

She *drew another breath* very audibly. Ib.

There he paused and *drew a long breath*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XII, 132.

ii. Even the inhabitants of New Amsterdam began *to draw short breath*. WASH. IRVING, Knickerb., 157.<sup>1</sup>)

Then spoke King Arthur *drawing thicker breath*. TEN., Morte d'Arthur, 148.

Note. The construction without the article is only used when repeated action is in question. Thus also when a possessive pronoun takes its place, as in: A simple child, | That lightly *draws its breath*. WORDSWORTH, We are seven.

**buzz.** b) In a little time the whole town was *in a buzz* with tales about the Haunted House. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 114).

**capacity.** a) i. He *manifested an unsuspected capacity* for adapting himself to the 'genius loci'. Rev. of Rev., No. 179, 228a.

He *had found a new capacity* within himself. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXV, 285.

1) MURRAY.      2) SATTLER, Anglia, III.

ii. He appears *to have shown extraordinary capacity* for acclimatising himself to the American atmosphere. Rev. of Rev., No. 189, 228a.

Note. The two constructions may be of equal frequency.

c) With each yielding on her part had come *new capacity* for yielding. Mrs. WARD, Sir George Tres., III, Ch. XXIII, 199a.

Note. The construction with the indefinite article may be equally common.

**care.** a) If of life you *keep a care*, | Shake off slumber and beware. Temp., II, 1, 301.

*Have a care*, Joe; that girl is setting her cap at you. THACK., Van. Fair I, Ch. II, 24.

*Have a care* of him! Id., Sam. Titm., Ch. IX, 107.

Note. *To keep a care* is now obsolete. The article is in regular use in combination with *to have*, and is as regularly absent in combination with *to take*, as in: *Take care* of the pence and the pounds will *take care* of themselves. Prov.

*I shall take care* how I let you choose for me another time. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 27.

**chance.** a) If a man never utters his thoughts, I should think they might *stand a chance* of escaping controversy. SHER., Riv., IV, 3, (266).

Note. Thus practically with any verb forming a rational combination with *chance*.

c) i. I think there is a (*good, fair, etc.*) *chance* of success.

ii. There is *good chance* that we shall hear the hounds. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 182. (The absence of the article is due to the measure.)

**certainty.** b) I know *for a certainty* what he did to bring the arm of the law upon him. TENANT, The World went very well then. II, 285-6)

Mistakes of detail . . . must *of a certainty* occur in a story which covers so vast a field. ALICE S. GREEN, Intro. to GREEN, Short Hist., 19.

d) And that they (sc. the venereal diseases) will be eventually stamped out is *a certainty*. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 245.

**change.** a) The last few years *have wrought a complete change* in Oxford. ESCOTT, England, Ch. VII, 93.

b) i. This is very good *for a change*.

ii. He . . . sick of home went overseas *for change*. TEN., Walking to the Mail, 18.

A proportion at least of the agriculturists are eager *for change*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6383, 2b.

Note. The suppression of the article is exceptional.

c) *A complete change* had come on my whole life. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXVI, 259a. When the need of a change arises, then does *a change* come. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 283.

**chill.** a) He (sc. Bacon) *caught a chill*, which ended in his death on 9th April 1626. JOHN W. COUSIN, Short Biog. Dict. of Eng. Lit., s.v. Bacon, 19.

You may *give a baby a chill* which will kill it, . . . without giving it fresh air at all. FLOR. NIGHTINGALE, Nursing, 91.<sup>2)</sup>

c) As he passed through the familiar entrance, *a chill* fell upon him. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXIII, 260.

**claim.** a) He *had a claim* indefeasible in justice to the succession. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 184.

He *has a claim* upon my gratitude. ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. Compared, § 18. Note. The use of the article after *to have* seems to be as regular as its absence is after *to lay*.

Francis I of France *laid claim* to Savoy. Harmsworth Enc., s.v. Savoy.

**cold.** a) i. The old man *caught a cold* at the County-Sessions. ADDISON, Spect., No. 517.<sup>2)</sup>

1) TEN BRUG., Taalst., X, 222.

2) MURRAY.



Lady Loveit, *having got a cold*, had complained of some little disorder. ELIZA HEYWOOD, *Betsy Thoughtless*, IV, 287.<sup>1)</sup>

Scrooge *had a cold* in his head. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 21.

Her servant *had a bad cold*. W. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. II, 17.

*I have got a bad cold — a fresh cold*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2033.

- ii. You will *take cold* in the evening air. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. VIII, 64.

*I'm afraid I've caught cold*. Id., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. XII, 27b.

A woman of your years will *catch cold* in such abominable weather. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 29.

Note. In combination with *to have* the article seems to be regularly used; with *to catch*, *to get* and *to take* usage is variable, except when there is an adnominal modifier, as in *to catch*, *get* or *take a severe cold*, when the article appears to be indispensable. See also SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2047.

**comparison.** a) It may be doubted whether any equal portion of the life of Hannibal, Caesar or of Napoleon, will *bear a comparison* with that short period. MAC., *Fred.*, (620a).

**compassion.** a) i. *I have a compassion* for your youth. FIELDING, *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. VIII, 17.

- ii. *Have compassion* on the mighty, whom love hath abased. LANE, *Arab. Nts.*, I, 104.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. The article is regularly absent in the collocation *to have compassion up(on)* and the obsolete *to take compassion (up)on*. Of *to have (a) compassion for* no further instances have been found.

**contempt.** a) He *had a profound contempt* for Summers-Howson. BARRY PAIN, *Culminating Point*.

**courage.** a) i. The words of the stout burgomaster *inspired a new courage* in the hearts of those who heard him. MOTLEY, *Rise*, IV, Ch. II, 576b.

- ii. Wherever Father John appeared, help entered in the efficacious form of pecuniary assistance, ... cheering words that *infused courage* and psychic vitality. Rev. of Rev., CXXX, 132a.

Often times John had to travel thousands of miles to bring relief in misfortune or *inspire courage* to endure it. Ib.

Note. Apparently it is the adjective which causes the indefinite article to be used. Accordingly only *to take (to pluck up, to lose) courage*.

**deadlock.** b) All things are *at a deadlock*. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norsemen*, Ch. XIX, 168.

**defeat.** a) i. He at last *suffered a total defeat*. ELPHINSTONE, *Hist. Ind.*, II, 108.<sup>1)</sup>

In that House of Commons ... the Court *had sustained a defeat* on a vital question. MAC., *Hist.*, II, 26.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. Mr. Cope Cornford draws a picture of the results that would accrue, were the Navy *to suffer defeat*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 467, 495c.

Note. MURRAY has *to suffer (sustain) a defeat*, evidently the ordinary construction. It should be observed that for *to suffer* or *sustain (a) defeat* the Dutch has *de nederlaag lijden*.

**delay.** c) A *delay* implies a doubt. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. I, 14.

**delight.** a) i. He seems *to take a great delight* in giving me pain. OSCAR WILDE, *Dorian Gray*, Ch. I, 21.

- ii. You *take delight* in vexing me. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. I, 9.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

Note. The article is, apparently, mostly suppressed. MURRAY mentions only *to take* or *have delight*, although he gives two quotations, dated respectively 1300 and 1569, with *to have a delight*.

**departure.** a) "Me!" said Joseph, *meditating an instant departure*. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. IV, 27.

**difference.** a) \* Dress does *make a difference*, David. SHER., Riv., III, 4.

"As if that could have made any difference", cried she, in superb scorn. — "Ah, but it did *make a difference!*" AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, III, Ch. VII, 239.

\*\* We have never *had a difference*. JEROME, The Master of Mrs. Chilvers, I, (44).

b) Here was the toss of the head, here the pout, the flash of the eye, but *with a difference*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. VI, 183.

This is politics—*with a difference*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5173, 9a. (= Dutch *heel andere politiek*.)

c) It has never occurred to him that there is *a difference* between assertion and demonstration. MAC., Southey, (99b)

d) It *wasn't a difference* in your face. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. X, 116.

**difficulty.** a) i. He seemed to *have a difficulty* in answering this question. ROORDA, Dutch and English Compared, § 18.

*A difficulty* may sometimes *be felt* in understanding how [etc.]. GEIKIE, Phys. Geog., IV, 232.

ii. They may *find difficulty* in meeting the cost of the final stage of their military training. Times, No. 1825, 1025b.

There was *great difficulty* in deciding about the title. Westm. Gaz., No. 6358, 12b.

Note. The article seems to be ordinarily used.

b) *In difficulty* a silent tongue and a cool head are usually man's best weapons. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XV, 164.

He spoke *with difficulty*. *Ib.*, Ch. XXXI, 335.

*In dire difficulty* he laboured on. *Ib.*

Note. The construction with the article may be as common. Compare *emergency*.

d) The children, I admit, *are a difficulty*. MURRAY, s.v. *difficulty*, 2, a.

**disadvantage.** b) Our men will be *at a disadvantage*. Times, No. 1825, 1031a.

**disgust.** a) it had *given him a disgust* to his business. JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch V, 21.

Men *have a disgust* for what offends their sensibilities. WEBST., s.v. *aversion*.

**dislike.** a) i. He *conceived a dislike* to his cousin. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 29.

Mr. Featherstone *had an especial dislike* to him. G. ELIOT, Mid., IV, Ch. XXXIV, 238.

He *had a strange dislike* to the Pomeranian. EDNA LYALL, Don., I, 78.

It had been banished, because he *had taken a strong dislike* to it. ANSTEY, Fal. Id., Ch. IX, 128.

ii. He *felt dislike* at applying to a stranger even for casual information. SCOTT, Waverley.

Note. The article is, apparently, rarely absent. (See also page 608.)

**disposition.** c) There is *a disposition* in China to accept the ... terms. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 2b.

Note. Compare (dis)*inclination*.

**doubt.** a) The old Sexton *expressed a doubt* as to Shakespeare having been born in her house. WASH. IRVING, Sketch-Bk., XXVI, 262.

She *had had a great doubt* and terror lest Arthur should not know her. THACK., Pent., II, Ch. XV, 154.

A delay *implies a doubt*. *Ib.*, I, Ch. I, 14.

**ecstasy.** *b*) i. Meg was *in an ecstasy*. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, I, 17.

ii. "Why it's Ali Baba!" Scrooge exclaimed *in ecstasy*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 39.

Note. The article seems to be ordinarily used.

**effect.** *a*) Every sentence was uttered with an obvious sincerity and feeling, which *made a profound effect*. TIMES, No. 1823, 974*b*.

**embarrassment.** *a*) My request is so out of the usual that I feel *an embarrassment*. ENG. REV., 1912, Aug., 3.

**emergency.** *b*) i. Perhaps as unique a design for "raising the wind" *in an emergency* as could be had. TIT-BITS, 1895, 2 Nov., 74*b*.

*On an emergency* he would even undertake to measure land. SMILES, *Huguenots Eng.*, II, 22.

Keep these (*sc.* sovereigns) *for an emergency*. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. III, 23.

ii. The English officers... were not ashamed to care for them to win their friendship, even *on emergency* to consult their judgment. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XX, 150*a*.

Note. The article seems to be almost regularly used in these combinations. For *in* or *on an emergency* we also find *in case of emergency*, in which *emergency* is said by JOHNSON and MURRAY to be used catachrestically.

Ham Peggotty... had been for some days past secreted in the house... as a special messenger *in case of emergency*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. I, 5*b*.

**enmity.** *a*) Frederic had succeeded in *producing a bitter enmity* between them. MAC. FRED., 1912*a*.

**esteem.** *a*) I really *had an esteem* for Mr. R. G. G. S., *Life of Sheridan*, 24.

**exaggeration.** *d*) It would scarcely *be an exaggeration* to say that it was a choice between flight or premature breakdown. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 471, 617*c*.

**example.** *a*) i. Christians might *take an example* from him for his lealty. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIX, 309.

ii. *Take example* by your lady. FARQUHAR, *Const. Couple*, I, 2, (58).

*Take example* by this man. TEN., *Queen Mary*, IV, 3, (630*b*).

Note. Apparently the article is mostly absent. Regular is the use of the article, however, in the phrases *to give (leave, set) an example*. Compare also *pattern*.

**excitement.** *b*) Scrooge cried *in great excitement*: "Why, it's old Fezziwig!". DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, II, 43.

Note. The article may be common enough, compare: *ecstasy, heat, rapture, transport*.

**expense.** *b*) i. *At a heavy expense* I procured the rods. MARRYAT, *Olla Podrida*.

ii. Not so long ago a scientific study of air, water, matter and ether would have been impossible save *at great expense*. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 471, 622*b*.

Note. The omission of the article seems to be the exception.

**extent.** *b*) That did break the monotony *to a certain extent*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 73.

**facility.** *a*) Having from my youth *a great facility* in learning languages. SWIFT, *Gul.*, IV, Ch. II, (192*b*).

Note. The alternative construction may be equally common: compare *aptitude, aptness, capacity, faculty*.

**faculty.** *a*) I can hardly *find* any trace of my father in myself, except *an inborn faculty* for drawing. HUXL., *Autobiogr.*, 5*b*.

In his boyhood he *had a wonderful faculty* for making friends. REV. of REV., CXCI, 84*a*.

Compare: One talent, however, displayed itself. *The faculty* of drawing he inherited from his father. HUXL., *Life and Let.*, I, 6.

**fall.** *a*) Pride will *have a fall*. BOHN'S Handb. of Prov. (= Dutch hoogmoed komt voor den val.)

Note. Of this proverb there are many variants and variations; all of them with the article.

Pride must *have a fall*. G. ELIOT, *Mid*, VIII, Ch. LXXIV, 553.

Pride was sure to *have a fall*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XV, 122a.

Pride cometh *before a fall*. WALT. BESANT, *The World went very well then*, II, 226.

**fancy.** *a*) If she were to *take a fancy* to anybody in the house, she would soon settle. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. I, 9.

Sandy Mackay *had a great fancy* for political caricatures. CH. KINGSLEY, *Alton Locke*, Ch. VI, 67.

I don't happen to *have a fancy* for sitting down on my own little packet of thorns. DOR. GER., *Etern. Wom.*, Ch. XVII.

**farewell.** *a*) i. \* I dared not even see thee to *bid thee a last farewell*. SCOTT, *Abb. ot.*, Ch. VIII, 78.

Harry ran up to *bid* these ladies *a farewell*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XX, 203.

He *bade a warm farewell* to Torpenhow at the station. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. III, 30.

I am going to *bid a long farewell* to England. MRS. ALEX., *A Life Int.*, I, Ch. VI, 74.

ii. The guests then *bade farewell* to the travellers. *Times*, No. 1820, 924a.

Note. The article is regularly used when there is a modifying adjective; otherwise it seems to be rare.

**footing.** *a*) They (sc. the Amazons) *gained a firm footing* in Greek song and story through Arctinus of Miletus. NETTLESHIP, *Dict. Clas. Antiq.*, s.v. *Amazons*.

*b*) It is difficult to see how the money can be found for maintaining the 300.000 *on a war footing*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6317, 1b.

**friendship.** *a*) This poor man for whom I know you *professed a friendship*. GOLDSM., *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI. 1) (Another edition has *professed friendship*.)

Miss Sedley... *had a friendship* for Miss Sharp. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. II, 15.

**frenzy.** *b*) i. Jack knows that the least demur puts me *in a frenzy* directly. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 2, (222).

ii. Some hot-headed Roman Catholic, driven *to frenzy* by the lies of Oates. MAC., *Hist.*, I, 374. 2)

Note. In neither of the two above combinations does the alternative construction seem to be possible.

**fume.** *b*) She went off *in a fume*. ROORDA, *Dutch and Eng. Comp.*, § 18. All this put the little doctor *in a terrible fume*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 114).

**funk.** *b*) With all my heroism, I was *in a frightful funk*. M. COLLINS, *Transmigr.*, II, XI, 183. 2)

We encounter the miserable Dr. Blandling *in what is called... a blue funk*. *Sat. Rev.*, 1861, 23 Nov., 534. 2)

Note. Slang, but very common.

**gratitude.** *a*) Her thrift *won a general gratitude*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, p. 3, 374.

Note. The article is probably often dispensed with.

**grief.** Mrs. Tursey's information had *suggested to me a fresh grief*. JEROME, *Paul Kelyer*, I, Ch. I, 13b.

**guard.** *b*) The prisoner was conveyed *under a strong guard* to Ringwood. MAC.

1) MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*, III, 193. 2) MURRAY.

3) FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 279.



**guess.** *b)* This was a manuscript containing, *at a guess*, some 5,000 words. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6065, 9a.

**halt.** *a)* i. They *called a halt*. *CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIV, 113a.

Here let us *make a halt*. *MURRAY.*

Is it not time *to call a halt*? *Times*, No. 1842, 311c.

ii. For me, now, *to cry halt*... would be ridiculous. *JEROME, The Master of Mrs. Chilvers*, I, (38).

**Note.** The suppression of the article imparts to *halt* the character of a quoted word.

*b)* The cord stretched in front of the escape is designed to bring *to a halt* young or excitable horses. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3687, 880.

Seeing them come *to a halt* above the island. *KANE, Arct. Expl.*, II, XV, 154. 1)

The Montenegrins appear to have been brought *to a halt* at Scutari. *Westm. Gaz.*, Na. 6065, 1c.

**harm.** *a)* i. Not one of them... would have gone out of his way *to do it a harm*. *GALSWORTHY, The Black Godmother (Eng. Rev., Feb. 1912, 445).*

ii. One would think you *had received harm* from the poor boy. *SCOTT, Abbot*, Ch. III, 27.

He *had done* no man *harm* all his days. *W. J. LOCKE, Glory of Clem.*, Wing, Ch. III, 36.

This theory... *has done incalculable harm*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 57, 128.

**Note.** The use of the article seems to be uncommon. Compare *wrong*.

**hatred.** *b)* His heart was burning *with a hatred* to the whole British race. *Mc CARTHY, Short Hist.*, Ch. XXXIII, 184.

**Note.** Probably the article is often dispensed with.

*d)* Her most vital trait *was a hatred* of conventionality. *Bookman*, 1893, June 86 1. 1)

**heat.** *b)* Walking about *in a heat*. *SHREVE, Rev.*, IV, 2, (264)

**holiday.** *a)* i. It chanced at that great English festival, at which all London *takes a holiday* upon Epsom Downs, that a great number of the personages to whom we have been introduced in the course of this history, were assembled to see the Derby. *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. XXI, 222.

They might *have a holiday* in the evening. *G. ELIOT, Mill*, II, Ch. V, 160.

In November he *took a holiday*. *Mrs. Alex., For his Sake*, II, Ch. IV, 78.

ii. Lucy shall *have holiday*. *Mrs. Wood, East Lynne*, III, 275.

To feast = *to keep holiday*. *MURRAY, s. v. feast*, 1, b.

*To make holiday.* *Id.*, s. v. *holiday*, 2, c.

*b)* i. He had come home *on a holiday*.

ii. I suppose she was *on holiday*. *HALL CAINE, Christian*, I, 276.

There is also a difference between the time that you go to sleep, when you are at work or when you are *on holiday*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVIII, 525b.

**Note.** In its primary meaning *holiday* is, of course, a noun denoting a defined conception. But it is often applied in an undefined sense, approximately that of *vacation* or *leisure*. Also in this application it may stand with the indefinite article: see the second quotation. For further particulars compare also Ch. XXV, 20.

**horror.** *a)* Mr. Boniface *had a horror* of the modern craze for rushing into all sorts of philanthropic undertakings. *EDNA LYALL, Hardy Nors.*, Ch. XIX, 173.

Mrs. Shaw seems to think that an Early Christian *would have felt a profound horror* about drawing a sword. *CHESTERTON (Il. Lond. News)*, No. 3884, 464c).

**huff.** *b)* He left the room *in a huff*. *ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. Comp.*, § 18.

**humour.** *b)* When I'm pleased, I'm generally *in a good humour*. *THACK., Pend.*, II, Ch. I, 9.

**hurry.** *b*) He could not remain passive, when all the world was *in a hurry*. WASH. IRV., Sketch. Bk., Spectre Brideg., 155.

The brandy was too good to leave *in a hurry*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. XXX, 267.

**ill-will.** *b*) With an *ill-will* Scrooge dismounted from his stool. DICK., Christm. Car. 5, I, 17.

Note. The expression is pronounced obsolete by MURRAY, who quotes only one instance dated 1601.

**importance.** I *attach a very serious importance* to what you say. W. COLLINS, No Name, 226.

**(dis)inclination.** *a*) Do not you *feel a great inclination* to seize such an opportunity? JANE AUSTEN, Pride and Prej., Ch. X, 55.

She was obliged to assume *a disinclination* for seeing it. Ib., Ch. XLIII, 238.

Note. For further instances see also Ch. XIX, 53, *c*, page 692.

**indignation.** *b*) i. "I will try", said Arthur, *in a great indignation*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVII, 203.

ii. Lily was about to reply *in great indignation*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. II, 25.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

**influence.** *a*) i. These family gatherings *exerted a considerable direct influence* upon European politics. Times.

ii. The press had begun *to exercise unprecedented influence* on the public mind. MAC., Addison, (738*b*).

I was her medical adviser, and as such I *had influence* over her. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm.

To influence = *to exert influence upon*. MURRAY, *s. v. influence*, *v*, 1 and 2.

I have always *had great influence* over Wilderspin. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, Ch. XVI, 458.

They *wield incalculable influence*. Eng. Rev., No. 57.

Note. Apparently usage is equally divided as to the use of the article in these phrases.

**injustice.** *a*) You *are doing* Magdalen *an injustice*. W. COLLINS, No Name, 226.

**insight.** *a*) i. He had *gained an insight* into all sorts of affairs at home and abroad. G. ELIOT, Romola, Proem, 4.

My knowledge of Greek language and literature, art, religion and philosophy has *given me an insight* into the progress of humanity. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 469, 579*a*.

ii. It is evident that the more familiar a sound is, the easier it is to *gain insight* into its mechanism. SWEET, Sounds of Eng., § 24.

Note. MURRAY has five instances of the article being used in these or similar phrases, none of the article being absent. Hence it seems safe to assume that the omission is infrequent.

**interest.** *a*) i. I *have an interest* in being the first to deliver this message. GOLDSM., Vicar, Ch. VIII, (282).

You *have felt an interest* in her. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. VIII, 41*a*.

Miss Dartie *took a great interest* in all our proceedings. Id., Cop., Ch. XXIV, 178*a*.

Where the Canadian Pacific *has an interest*, it usually makes things hum. II. Lond. News, No. 3815, Sup. XI.

(This) has *lent an interest* to the subject of the value of racehorses. Ib., 3877, 222*a*.

ii. Maiden aunts are apt to *take great interest* in affairs of this nature. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Spectre Bridegr. 155.

The delightful season of the year for the country-dweller who *takes interest* in observing the wild things of nature is again with us. Westm. Gaz., No. 5277, 4*c*.

A sermon which *aroused very extraordinary interest*. II. Lond. News, No. 3886, 555*a*.

**Note.** Apparently these phrases appear mostly with the article. Compare also: Lord Lyons, the public servant, is, after all, the person in whom the public *takes concern*. Athen., No. 4487, 445a.

**journey.** b) I intend to go *on a journey*. He is *on a journey*. ROORDA, Dutch and Engl. Comp., § 18.

In a few days, my darling, I must leave you, and go *upon a journey*. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. I, 20.

**Note.** Thus also before other nouns of a similar meaning.

She had gone, as *on a pilgrimage*, to the house at Brixton. Eng. Rev., No. 59, 199.

**knack.** a) I really *have a knack* for doing those things. Mrs. WARD, Sir George Tres., Ch. III, 21.

**knowledge.** See 8, c.

**leave.** a) i. George came and *took a tender leave* of her the next morning. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 133.

ii. When she *took leave* of me the night before starting. Mrs. CARLYLE, Lett., III, 236.<sup>1)</sup>

**Note.** The article is used only when there is a modifying adjective. It may, however, be observed that, when there is no such adjective, *leave* is not infrequently preceded by a possessive pronoun: *to take one's leave*.

With an easy and careless grace the Knight of St. John *took his leave*. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. I, 8.

**lesson.** a) Yesterday I *had a lesson* in Gothic. He *gave me a lesson* in Gothic.

**loose.** a. i. She resolved to *give a loose* to her amorous inclinations. FIELDING, Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. IV, 12.

He *gave a loose* to guilty pleasure. SMOLLETT, Rod. Rand., Ch. XXII, 150.

They *have given a sudden loose* to passions they could no longer control. DICK., Barn. Rudge, Ch. II, 9b.

The little boy . . . *gave a loose* to his innocent tongue. THACK., Virg., Ch. XLIII, 445.

They *give a loose* to their feelings on proper occasions. Id., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXI, 216.

Miss Nora *giving a loose* to her imagination. Id. Barry Lyndon, Ch. I, 26.

ii. Young ladies should not *give loose* to their affections. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XLI, 399.

You spoke of girls *giving loose* to their affections. Ib., 400.

**Note.** This phrase, which, curiously enough, is not illustrated in MURRAY, appears mostly with the article. Compare also: Young ladies should not *give play* to their affections. TROL., Framl. Pars., Ch. XLI, 400.

I could not withhold *giving some loose* to my inclination. CH. BRONTE, Wuthering Heights, II.

**loss.** b) i. \* The priest was almost *at a loss* what to say. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. II, 15.

He felt suddenly and strangely *at a loss*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XVII, 183.

\*\* The advertisement was withdrawn *at a dead loss*. DICK., Cop., Ch. I, 2a.

To sell anything *at a loss*. (Compare *profit*.)

ii. I am *at loss* for Words. RICH., Pam., II, 129.

**Note.** The phrase without the article is now obsolete.

**mastery.** a) He *had acquired a singular mastery* over every kind of disease. WALT. BESANT, The World went very well then, Ch. I, 4.

1) MURRAY.

**measure.** *b*) i. The decision of causes was, *in a great measure*, left to the equity and common sense of the judges. HUME, Es. XIII, Of Eloquence, 102.

Their order was now *in a great measure* suppressed. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. III, 41. Nature . . . had bestowed on him, *in a large measure*, the talents of a captain. MAC., Fred., (662*b*).

ii. Mr. Southey brings to the task two faculties which were never, we believe, vouchsafed *in measure* so copious to any human being, the faculty of believing without a reason, and the faculty of hating without a provocation. *Ib.*, (98*b*.) (Observe also the use of the article before *reason* and before *provocation*.)

His work had been *in large measure* successful. Westm. Gaz., No. 6111, 11*b*.

Her (sc. Holland's) fortunes . . . are *in small measure* dictated by her own initiative. *Ib.*

Note. In the Westm. Gaz. the article is, apparently, regularly absent. MURRAY (s. v. *measure*, 14, *b*), however, mentions only *in a great or large measure*. Compare also *in a measure* (= in a certain measure). (8, *b*, 1.)

**mercy.** *d*) It is a *mercy* he did not bring us over a black daughter-in-law. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. IV, 30.

It is a *mercy* he didn't shake his arm off. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, V, 109.

**mind.** I always *had a great mind* to tell lies. CONGREVE, Love for Love, II, 2, (237).

*Hast* thou really a *mind* to the service? FARQUHAR, Recruiting Officer, IV, I, (304).

Francois, *have you a mind* to escape? DICK., Advent. of a Galley Slave.

I *had a good mind* to ask an old man, in wire spectacles, who was breaking stones upon the road, to lend me his hammer for a little while. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXVI, 250*a*.

She had almost a *mind* to be civil to old Bows. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XII, 128.

I *have a mind* to break Mr. Sady's (sc. bones). *Id.*, Virg., Ch. XI, 116.

Silas Marner could cure folk's rheumatism if he *had a mind*. G. ELIOT, Sil. Marn., Ch. I, 3.

Note. The phrase is somewhat archaic without such an adjective as *good* or *great*. Observe also the common *to have half a mind*.

**mischief.** *a*) i. Don't speak to me, or I shall *do you a mischief*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIV, 125*a*. (= Dutch of ik bega een ongeluk aan je.)

ii. Do not believe | But I shall *do thee mischief* in the wood. MIDS., II, 1, 237.

Note. The phrase is not mentioned by MURRAY and seems to be rare.

*c*) You must be on your guard, my poor boys — you must learn your lessons, and not anger your tutor. A *mischief* will come, I know it will. THACK., Virg., Ch. V, 50.

**mock.** *a*) i. I could never forgive her for *making a mock* of me. CROCKETT, Raiders, 21.<sup>1</sup>)

Fools *make a mock* at sin. Prov.

Fools who *made a mock* at sin. Rev. of Rev., CLXXXIX, 251*b*.

ii. She *made mock* of Lucy's personal vanity. MRS. WARD, Dav. Grieve, III, 225.

He frankly *made mock* of the whole affair (sc. the Peace Conference). Rev. of Rev., CCX, 577*a*.

Note. *To make (a) mock at*, according to MURRAY, is now obsolete. *To make a mock of* is given without the variant with no article by MURRAY, but seems to be less common than the latter.

*d*) Besides it *were a mock* | Apt to be rendered, for some one to say, | "Break up the senate till another time, | When Cæsar's wife shall meet with better dreams." Jul. Cæs., II, 2, 96.

Robin Hood . . . changes clothes with the palmer (who at first thinks the proposal *a mock*). CHILD, Ballads, III, 178/1.<sup>1</sup>)

Note. In this combination *mockery* is more usual. See below.

<sup>1</sup>) MURRAY.



**mockery.** *d)* There's a great lord who has been saying that Old-Age Pensions are so paltry as to *be* but *a mockery*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4943, 5b.

**mood.** *b)* Dear Jack!... don't say you're in *a bad mood*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXII, 236.

**moonlight.** *c)* There was *a moonlight*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. III, 42.

**need.** *a)* He thought there were always ways and means of getting those high characters furnished, when people *had a need* for them. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VIII, 118.

Note. The construction used in the above quotation appears to be an unusual one, MURRAY not so much as mentioning it. Of *to have need of*, which seems to be ordinarily used instead, there is, apparently, no variant with the article.

*b)* Sir William of Deloraine, good *at need*. SCOTT, Lay, I, xxii.

She (sc. the country) is *in urgent need* of officers. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. I, 16.

A friend *in need* is a friend indeed. Prov.

**noise.** *a)* How could he have got into the house without *making a noise*? WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 117).

Note. Often used figuratively, as in:

Such persons as have *made a noise* in the world. ADDIS (—)

*c)* There was *a noise* as if some person were moving side. DICK., Old Cur. Shop, Ch. I, 3a.

**oath.** *a)* i. They felt secure since the Sheriff of Nottingham *had taken an oath* to help them at need. ROB. HOOD (GRUNC Ser., 150).

ii. I could have *made oath* it was you I saw on horseback this morning. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXVI, 373.

The councillors *having made oath* to denounce any one of their number who should violate the pledge [etc.]. MOTLEY, Rise.

Rose...*made oath* to her soul she would rescue him. G. MEREDITH, Evan Harrington, Ch. XLIII, 481.

Note. To all appearance *oath* regularly drops the article, when used in connection with *to make*, and retains it, when used in combination with *to take*. In *to take an oath* the article is often replaced by a possessive pronoun.

I could take *my oath* he said "son". DICK., Domb., Ch. IV, 29.

**objection.** *a)* i. (He) *had an objection* to dramatic entertainments. THACK., Pend., Ch. VI, 69.

Ladies as a rule *have an insuperable objection* to showing their necks. RID. HAG., Mr. Mees. Will, Ch. XIV, 138.

ii. Mr. Mahaffy *has taken objection* to the breadth of meaning I have given to the word 'motive'. DK. ARGYLL, Reign Law, 426, Note. 1)

To this arrangement the publishers *made objection*. Introd. to 1001 Gems of Eng. Poetry.

Note. Observe the use of the article before *objection* when combined with *to have*, and its absence when combined with *to take* and *to make*.

**occasion.** *a)* i. He seldom *lost an occasion* of wounding his feelings. DICK., Cop., Ch. VII, 47b.

ii. A mistake which *had given occasion* to a burst of merriment. JOHNSON, Rambler, No. 141. 1)

I once *had occasion* to go there. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, I, Ch. VIII, 74.

As we *had occasion* to note in our last issue [etc.]. 11. Lond. News, No. 3879, 292.

Note. As a rule the article seems to be used after *to lose* and to be dispensed with after *to give*. After *to have* it seems to be regularly absent.

*c)* There would be *an occasion* for humour, if it were not an opportunity for indignation. BEATR. HARRADEN, Ships, I, Ch. IX, 35.

1) MURRAY.

Note. For other combinations see 63

**opportunity.** a) i. I shall *take an early opportunity* of mentioning it to the Board. DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 25.

You *have an opportunity* that can never come again. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXXIV, 368.

Lilian was not the woman to *lose an opportunity*, whether the space at her command was long or short. *Id.*, Ch. XXVIII, 306.

The problem of the play (sc. *Much Ado about Nothing*) is not to show that the two scoffers are in love with each other, ... but to *find an opportunity* which will force them to admit their love. *Athen.*, No. 4477, 165c.

ii. We must *give them opportunity* to speak together. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. X, 97. Lawrence *had not opportunity* to show in actual result the greatness of spirit that was in him. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 16.

It was not until half an hour after the votes had been taken that Loder... *found opportunity* to look for Eve. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXV, 282.

I desire to express my thanks to my kinsman, Lord Coleridge, for *opportunity* kindly *afforded* me of collating the text of the fragments... with the original MSS E. H. COLERIDGE, *Pref. to the Poems of S. T. Col.*

Note. In these combinations the article is not usually absent. For further instances and for a comparison with the construction with the definite article see 73.

c) When law and *opportunity* favoured. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, III, Ch. VII, 230. When *opportunity* offers. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch XXXIV, 305. If *opportunity* serves. *Times*.

**option.** a) The tastes and interests of Frederic would have led him, if he had been allowed *an option*, to side with the House of Bourbon. MAC., *Fred.*, (687b).

**order.** b) i. \* Her talents and accomplishments are *of a high order*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. II, 15.

He has *by an Order in Council*, been promoted to the rank of an Admiral of the Fleet. *Times*, 1898, 761d.

ii. The promotion of Admiral Richards, *by special Order in Council*, is a peculiarly significant recognition of his services to the Navy. *Id.*

The Prime Minister... told the House that provision would be made *by Order in Council* for delegating the exercise of certain of the executive functions of the Crown during his Majesty's absence. *Times*, No. 1819, 900c.

Note. The article seems to be ordinarily absent before *Order in Council*.

**pace.** b) The old man proceeded *at a measured pace*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 122).

The old man... walked on *at a slow pace*. DICK., *Old Cur. Shop*, Ch. I, 6b.

I walked *at a sharp pace*. TH. WATTS DUNTON, *Aylwin*, II, Ch. VI, 90.

Note. Compare *run*, *step* and *trot*.

**panic.** b) i. All the inhabitants turned out *in a panic*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 102).

If the Government yielded *in a panic* on this question, it is highly probable [etc.]. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6359, 2a.

ii. Cæsar's soldiers were seized *with panic*. FROUDE, *Cæsar*, XXII, 382. 1)

The sound filled her *with panic*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXXIII, 360.

For one or two days Calcutta was a prey *to mere panic*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 177.

Note. The article seems to stand after *in* and to be dispensed with after other prepositions.

c) If he ever showed a little impatience, it was only where *panic* would too openly have proclaimed itself by counsels of wholesale cruelty. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 178.

**pardon.** a) He *received a pardon* at once. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317. (*Pardon* to be understood in the sense of *remission of the legal consequences of crime*, Dutch *kwijtschelding van straf*.)

Note. From what evidence there is in MURRAY, it may be concluded that the article is rarely absent.

**part.** a) i. \* It is also unquestionable that the transactions in which he now began *to take a part*, have left a stain on his moral character. MAC., Clive, (515a). Lord Kitchener *took a leading part* in giving effect to a very important political reform in Egypt. 11. Lond. News, No. 3876, 187*n*.

He has *played an active part* in the saving of a hundred lives from shipwreck. Punch, 1896, 111.

Germany has decided . . . that it will not *take a part* in the Panama Exhibition. Westminster, 1882, No. 6311, 29.

\*\* It was well known that she had deeply regretted some violent acts in which her husband *had borne a part*. MAC., Hist., II, Ch. V, 206.

In these conferences Rumbold *had borne a part* from which [etc.]. Ib., II, Ch. V, 98.

He *had borne a part* in the movement. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 814.

ii. \* On the morrow commenced that long quarrel . . . in which all the most eminent statesmen and orators of the age *took active part* on one or the other side. MAC., War Hist., 662*n*.

Many had given up a successful career *to take part* in what they were led to believe would be the great national uprising of the Irish people. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 316.

The Princess Louisa *took part* in three public ceremonies at Oxford on May 25. Times.

I know that the consciousness can leave the body, *take part* in events going on at a distance. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiography, 26.

\*\* The tragedy in which they *bore part* cost many an agony of tears. Ib., 27.

Note. MURRAY has *to take part*, always without the article (His definition of *to partake*, however, is *to take a part in*), and *to bear a part*, always with the article, and this most probably represents the ordinary practice. Only the article is rarely dispensed with in the first combination, when *part* is accompanied by an adjective: *to take an active (leading, etc.) part*. See, however, the quotation from MACAULAY.

**passion.** b) At which words she flew *into a violent passion*. FIELD., Jos. Andr., I, Ch. VIII, 19.

I know you are *in a passion*. SHER., Riv., II, 1.

If he ever flagged in his industry, the doctor would fly *into a passion*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl (STOFF. HANDL., I, 103).

**pattern.** The Commissioners of Police might *take pattern* by Berlin. Punch.

To take a leaf out of a person's book = *to take pattern* from him. MURRAY, s.v. *book*, 15.

Note. Compare *to take (an) example*.

**pause.** a) Here Master Wingate *made a pause*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. IV, 44.

b) "How could you do so, Rebecca?" at last she said, *after a pause*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 9.

c) Here there was *a pause*. Id., Ch. II, 22.

After he spoke, there was *a prolonged pause*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXVI, 292.

There was *a fresh pause*. Ib., Ch. XXXI, 339.

**perspiration.** b) The waiter is *in a cold perspiration* and well-nigh desperate. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, A. 13.

**pinch.** *b)* Each of them could *at a pinch* stand in the shoes of the other. EMERSON, Eng. Traits, Ability, 100*b*.

It will be found that, when it comes *to a pinch*, we shall always give in. Rev. of Rev.

**pity.** *d)* It is *a pity* you can't come.

I call it *a pity* that such talents should lie idle.

Note. Formerly, and archaically in Present English, without the article. FRANZ, Shak. Gr.<sup>2</sup>, § 276, Anm.; MURRAY, s. v. *pity*; UHRSTRÖM, Stud. on the Lang. of Sam. Richardson, 41.

That were *pity*. Merch. of Ven., II, 2, 209.

'Tis *great pity* he's so extravagant. SHER., School for Scand., IV, 2, (407).

'Tis *pity* her temper is something particular. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXIII, 293.

'Tis *pity* learned virgins ever wed | With persons of no sort of education. BYRON, Don Juan, I, xxii.

'Tis *pity* though, in this sublime world, that | Pleasure's a sin, and sometimes sin's a pleasure. *Id.*, I, cxxxiii.

That were *pity*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. II, 18*a*.

And *pity* that would be. *Id.*, Herew. Ch. II, 24*b*.

**pleasure.** *a)* i. They seemed to *take a pleasure* in indulging that forenoon in a luxury of slovenliness. CH. BRONTË, Villette, Ch. XIV, 160.

I *took a pleasure* in extracting the young fellow's secrets from him. THACK., Newc., II, Ch. III, 26.

He *had a strange pleasure* in venturing his person. MAC., Hist., III, Ch. VII, 7.

Mrs. Furse *took a pleasure* in the phrases. JEROME, Paul Kever, Ch. I, 15*a*.

ii. (He) *takes pleasure* in rearing and collecting birds. WEBST., s. v. *bird-fancier*. He must pass the night in an abominable tight mail-coach, instead of *taking pleasure*... in some of the most agreeable and select society in England. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. I, 15.

No Liberal certainly can *take pleasure* in the fact that an increase in the Navy has been found necessary for national security. Westm. Gaz., No. 4931, 2*a*.

I *had great pleasure* in hearing Mr. Brough, in a magnificent speech, declare a dividend of six per cent. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 84.

He found that everything could *yield him pleasure*. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, V, 108.

He contrived to deliver himself in uncompromising terms which *gave sincere pleasure* to Radicals. Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 1*b*.

Note. MURRAY has *to take pleasure* and *to take a pleasure*, and gives two illustrative quotations, both with the article. But there can be little doubt that in this and similar combinations the article is mostly absent, even when there is a modifying adjective.

**pride.** *a)* i. I *had a new pride* in my rooms after his approval of them. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXIV, 178*b*.

ii. She *took great pride* in her descent from them. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. II, 11. Their dialect is uncouth, but they *take pride* in it. ESCOTT, England, Ch. VI, 80.

Note. MURRAY mentions only *to take a pride*, but in his only illustrative quotation bearing on the subject, *pride* stands without the article.

**profit.** *b)* He was always buying things and selling them *at a profit*. BESANT, Bell of St. Paul's, I, 71.

Note. Compare *loss*.

**propensity.** *a)* He *had a propensity* for saving. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. IV, 28.

**protest.** *a)* The British Ambassador has *lodged a protest* with the Porte against the



passage of four torpedoboat destroyers through the Dardanelles to the Black Sea. Times.

**quarrel.** a) It was clear that the Emperor was resolved *to have a quarrel*. MC CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXIV, 372.

Note. Thus also regularly with the article: *to pick a quarrel*.

**question.** c) There was always *a question* about James's courage. THACK., The four Georges, II, 34.

**rage.** b) "You impudent villain!" cries the lady *in a rage*. FIELD., Jos. Andrews, I, Ch. VIII, 19.

**rapture.** b) i. Toby took the shortest possible sniff at the edge of the basket, and cried out *in a rapture*: "Why, it's hot." DICK., Chimes<sup>3</sup>, I, 16.

ii. You're perfect! she exclaimed *in rapture*. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, III, Ch. III, 255.

Whether he liked it (sc. the nickname) or not, we adopted it *with rapture*. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 191.

Who can look *without rapture* on the beautiful proportions of the horse? Ib., 261.

Note. Usage may be equally divided. Compare *ecstasy*.

**reason.** a) i. They *found a reason* for detesting him. MC CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XIII, 183.

ii. I *had good reason* to hope that I was being of use at Roost. F. E. PAGET, Curate Cumberworth.<sup>1)</sup>

I began this winter by admiring Sir Henry's benevolence... more than I *saw reason* to do afterwards. HT. MARTINEAU, Brooke Farm, Ch. V, 62.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

c) There is *reason* to believe that [etc.]. MAC., War. Hist., (607a).

**regard.** a) I *have a regard* for Miss Richland. GOLDSM., Good-nat. man, II. I *have conceived a great regard* for Jinkins. DICK., Chuz., Ch. IX, 69b.

I *had a regard* for Mr. Eustace Meeson. RID. HAG., Mr Meeson's Will<sup>2</sup>, Ch. XXI, 223.

For the head-master, Dr. Drury, he *conceived a strong regard*. TOZER, Introd. to Byron's Child Har.

b) In the death of Lucretia we are warned against suffering our passions perfidiously to lead us to seek a secret revenge *without a regard* to either justice or our own honour. Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 7a.

Note. This seems to be an exceptional use of the article: it is not recorded by MURRAY (s. v. *regard* 8, b). Compare *respect*.

c) *A regard* for truth *forbids* us to do more than claim the merit of their (sc. of these adventures) judicious arrangement and impartial arrangement. DICK., Pickw., Ch. IV, 30.

**reluctance.** a) He *felt a reluctance* to ask the support of the Newcastle family. MC CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. X, 129.

**repugnance.** a) i. She *had an extraordinary* repugnance to dining in company. DICK., Little Dorrit, Ch. V, 28a.

ii. Scott *felt considerable* repugnance to acting in any such matter with Whigs and Radicals. LOCKH., Life of Sir Walt. Scott, Ch. VI, 572.

Note. The ordinary practice most probably is to use the article in these combinations.

**rescue.** a) The prisoners only *meditated a rescue*. MC CARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXII, 317.

**resemblance.** a) In some respects he (sc. Edmund Gosse) *bears a curious resemblance* to Andrew Lang. Bookman, No. 261, 112a.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY, s. v. *reason*, 8b.

**resistance.** a) It was the bounden duty of the Opposition to *offer a determined and continuous resistance* to this proposal. *Times*.

Methuen reports that the party defeated on 5 April, *made a good resistance* for four hours. *Ib.*

The Spaniards *opposed a stubborn resistance*. *Ib.*

The rebels *offered a stout resistance*. *Ib.*, No. 1819, 899*d*.

(**dis**)**respect.** a) i. I *have a particular respect* for three or four high-backed claw-footed chairs. *WASH. IRVING, Sketch-Bk.*, XXV, 243.

He *had a high respect* for native sagacity. *DICK., Cop.*, Ch. IV, 28*b*.

She thought Mr. Riley would *have a respect* for her now. *G. ELIOT, Mill*, I, Ch. III, 11.

Human nature is so constituted that it can *pay a respect* to religious conviction. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6347, 1*b*.

ii. *Have respect* to mine honour. *JUL. CÆS.*, III, 2, 15.

He was incapable of... supposing that *she meant intentional* disrespect to him. *SCOTT, Abbot*, Ch. III, 37.

Note. The use of the article appears to be practically regular. In the quotation from SHAKESPEARE its absence may be due to the demands of the metre. Compare *regard*.

**revenge.** a) i. She felt quite sure that he had offended some of his examiners, *who had taken a mean revenge* on him. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. XXI, 216.

ii. *Taking revenge* too deep for a transient wrong. *TEN., Maud*, I, III.

Note. The article is, apparently, only used when there is a modifying adjective.

**reverence.** b) She spoke of Mr. Pendennis... *with an awful reverence*. *THACK., Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 24.

**risk.** a) He lost all he had in the world and... *run a narrow risk* of being hanged. *SCOTT (LOCKHARDT, Life of Sir W. Scott)*, I, I, 3.<sup>1)</sup>

Whatever accommodation he can have, which *involves* not a *risk* of discovery,... it is our duty to afford him. *SCOTT, Mon.*, Ch. XVI, 194.

Note. The indefinite article varies with the definite. No instances of either article being absent have been found.

Why am I *to run the risk* of scarlet fever being brought into the house. *F. E. PAGET, Pageant*, 38.<sup>1)</sup>

c) There was *risk* that the lawful owner might have parted company therewith (sc. that chain). *SCOTT, Mon.*, Ch. XVIII, 205.

There would be *great risk* of a lamentable change in the character of our public men. *MAC., Hist.*, III, I, 310.<sup>1)</sup>

d) Suppose the likeness should leak out? It's *a risk*. *KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. VI, 69.

**run.** b) She came back *at a run* to meet him. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4983, 2*c*.

Note. Compare *pace*, *step*, and *trot*.

**scale.** b) There is nothing so troublesome as a hero *on a small scale*. *WASH. IRV. DOLF HEYL (STOF., Handl.)*, I, 110.

**sensation.** a) His little expeditions to his lands were attended with a bustle and parade that *created a sensation* throughout the neighbourhood. *WASH. IRV., DOLF HEYL (STOF., Handl.)*, I, 109.

His death created *a profound sensation*. *MCCARTHY, Hist. of Our Own Times*, III, XLIV, 333.<sup>1)</sup>

b) The gentleman in search of *a sensation*. *LOWELL, Among my Books*, Ser. I, Rousseau, 346.

c) *A slight sensation* was perceptible in the body of the court. *DICK., Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 307.

**shame.** d) i. \* It *were a shame* to call her back again. *Two Gentlem.*, I, 2, 51.

\*\* Some shook their heads; and thought it *a shame* that the Doctor should put

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

Dolf to pass the night alone in that dismal house. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., HANDL., I, 120).

- ii. \* *Shame* were it to accept the praise of other men's labours. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 366.

It were *shame* to our profession, were we to suffer it. Id., Ivanhoe, Ch. XL, 416.

It were *shame* to think otherwise of a form so noble. Id., Abbot, Ch. III, 28.

\*\* Men thought it *shame* to dwell at such a time under the shadow of a house.

FREEMAN, Norm. Conq. IV, XVIII, 187. 1)

Note. The construction without the article survives only as a literary archaism. Conversely there never is an article in other phrases, such as *to have shame* (poetic), *to take shame* (*to, unto, or upon oneself*), *to put to shame*.

\* I *take shame* to say, that [etc.]. SCOTT, Kenilw., Ch. XV, 176.

You ought *to take shame*! ARNOLD BENNETT, Hilda Lessways, I, Ch. II, II, 21.

\*\* No young woman of this year has come near her: those of the past seasons she has distanced, and utterly *put to shame*. THACK., Newc., II, Ch. III, 26.

*share.* a) It is certain that he was never charged with having *borne a share* in the worst abuses which then prevailed. MAC., War. Hist., (599b).

Note. Thus also *to have* and *to take a share*. The indefinite article is sometimes replaced by a possessive pronoun. MURRAY, s. v. *share*, 3.

*shift.* a) i. That's just the place where I could *make a shift* to do without it (sc. honour). SHER., Riv., IV, I, (256).

He could *make a shift* to express himself intelligibly enough to King Louis. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXXVII, 468.

- ii. By my other labours I can *make shift* to eat and drink and have good clothes.

GOLDSMITH (R. ASHE KING, O. Goldsm., Ch. XI, 123).

I could *make shift* to chalk a little bit. DICK., Domb., Ch. II, 16.

Note. The absence of the article seems to be the exception.

*show.* a) I made *a show* of arranging my papers. JEROME, Novel Notes.

*sight.* a) i. In his eagerness *to catch a sight* of the unknown, he flared his feeble candle so suddenly, that it went out. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., HANDL., I, 121).

I *caught a sight* of him over their heads. JOWETT, Plato, I, 193. 2)

- ii. The trainbands *had caught sight* of his well-known face. MAC., Hist., I, 580. 2)

She sent up a shriek as soon as she *caught sight* of it. JOHN OXENHAM, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. II, 19.

Note. MURRAY (s. v. *catch*, 46) distinguishes between *to catch a sight of* (= to get a momentary or sudden view of), and *to catch sight of* (= to come abruptly in view of, to see all at once). There is not, apparently, a variant with the article of the phrases *to lose sight* and *to have sight of*. MURRAY, s. v. *sight*, II, 4, c. Compare also 63.

*silence.* c) i. There was *a silence*. CH. KINGSLEY, Herew., Ch. XIV, 62a.

There was *a silence*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XI, 119; Ib., Ch. XV, 167; Ib., Ch. XVII, 178; etc.

There was *a long silence*. Ib., Ch. XXXIV, 365.

Again *a painful silence* filled the room. Ib., Ch. XXXIII, 353.

- ii. During the first few moments of the drive there was *silence*. Ib., Ch. XIII, 144; Ib., Ch. XV, 163; etc.

There was *silence* for a few minutes. WIL. J. LOCKE, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. I, 9.

Note. After *there* is usage seems to be equally divided, when there is no modifying adjective. After a preposition there is no article: *in grim silence* (she) returned home. ARN. BENNETT, Hilda Lessways, I, Ch. III, 1, 25.

1) MURRAY, s. v. *shame*, 9.

2) MURRAY, s. v. *catch*, 46.

**sin.** *d*) I always had a great mind to tell lies: but they frightened me, and said that it was a *sin*. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, II, 2, (237).

'Tis pity though, in this sublime world, that | Pleasure's a *sin*, and sometimes *sin*'s a pleasure. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, CXXXIII.

'Twould be a *sin* and a shame, if we let her go dirty now she's ill. MRS. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. XIX, 202.

**skill.** *a*) i. He had a wonderful *skill* in grazing the edge of treason. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 95.

ii. This author...had good *skill* in the feeding and ordering of singing-birds. RAY, *Corr.*, 122.

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

**spirit.** *a*) These words infused a *spirit* into Joseph. FIELDING, *Jos. Andrews*, I, Ch. XV, 39.

**spite.** *a*) He seemed to have a *spite* to Mrs. Gashleigh. THACK., *A little dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. VI, (339).

**stand.** *a*) I suddenly made a *stand*, lest it (sc. the hill) should fall on my head. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, (153).

Sigtryp...made a *stand* against the Cornish. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. V, 38*b*.

The Turks are unable to make a *stand* at this point. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6071, 1*b*.

*b*) Now was Christian somewhat at a *stand*. BUNYAN, *Pilg. Prog.*, (152).

The business of the Exchange was at a *stand*. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 335.

It is certain that there is a point at which sympathy with drivers who pass signals must come to a *stand*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6377, 2*c*.

**standstill.** *b*) Everything is at a *standstill*. EDNA LYALL, *Hardy Norseman*, Ch. X, 85.

The trade of the city is at a *standstill*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6353, 1*c*.

(This) is to bring the House to a *standstill*. *Ib.*, No. 6347, 7*b*.

The negotiations between the two Powers have been brought to a *standstill*. *Ib.*, No. 4937, 1*a*.

**stir.** *a*) i. The report created a great *stir*. *Times*.

Mr. Keir Hardie tried to make a *stir* on behalf of the natives of India. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 287.

ii. There are two annual events which produce great *stir and sensation* in Little Britain. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXV, 249.

Note. In the last quotation the absence of the article is probably due to the coupling of the two nouns together.

**success.** *a*) They rejoiced when the Americans won a *success*. *Times*.

**suspicion.** *a*) She had conceived a *suspicion* at her last interview with her mistress. FIELD., *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. VIII, 19.

**sympathy.** I feel a mysterious *sympathy* with the tumult of nature. DICK., *Barn. Rudge*, Ch. II, 9*b*.

My knowledge of Greek language and literature, art, religion and philosophy, has given me...a *sympathy* with their (sc. humanity's) sorrows and aspirations *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 469, 578*a*. (See also the last quotation under *stand* and compare *antipathy*.)

**talent.** *a*) He had a natural *talent* at pleasing the fair sex. WASH. IRV., *Doll Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 142).

She had a rare and surprising *talent* for getting the baby into difficulties. DICK., *Crick.*, I, 12.

**thankfulness.** My first thought was a great *thankfulness*. KATH. CEC. THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XXXI, 339.

Note. It may be assumed that the use of the article is exceptional.



**thickness.** *b*) These threads are *of an even thickness*. ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. Comp., § 19.

**thirst.** *b*) i. Better discipline might have converted this desire of amusement *into a thirst* for knowledge. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. III, 31a.

ii. It may be distinctly traced... either *to thirst* for money or *to thirst* for blood. MAC., Hist., V, 1, 657.<sup>1</sup>)

Note. Usage may be equally divided.

**trade.** *a*) She *drove a brisk trade* in lollipop. G. ELIOT, Scenes, II, Ch. I, 72.

He stuck to his business and *drove a thriving trade*. BLACK, Adv. Phaeton VI, 81.

**train.** *b*) Everything was soon *in a fair train*. JANE AUSTEN, Mansfield Park, Ch. VII, 67.

**trial.** *a*) i. I intend *to make a trial* of their hearts. SHER., School for Scand., II, 3, (386).

He has strongly recommended me *to make a trial* of your goods. BUS. Let. Writer, I.

ii. I had a letter from her telling me that I could take three orphan girls of hers to the coast during the holidays, and then *make trial* of a situation with her as a teacher. G. ELIOT, Mill, VI, Ch. IX, 405.

The temper of the man moves him to conceal for the present the reason which he has, that he may *make trial* of Enid's love and submission to his desires. G. C. MAC., Note to Ten.'s Mar. of Ger., 761.

Note. The construction with the indefinite article is probably the ordinary one. Compare also: Well, well, *make the trial* if you please. SHER., School for Scand., III, 1, (388).

**trot.** *b*) You may see her on a little squat pony... puffing round the Ring *on a full trot*. SHER., School for Scand., II, 2, (380).

He went away *at a trot* into the woods. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. V, 49.

He put his horse *to a brisk trot*. BLACK'S Sir Walt. Scott's Read., Rob Roy, 22.

Note. Compare *pace*, *run* and *step*.

**turn.** *a*) Mr. Eugenius Maunder *had a turn* for oils. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, B, 40.

**uproar.** *b*) All the district was *in an uproar*. BUCHANAN, That Winter Night, Ch. III, 30.

**use.** *a*) i. Give me back nine pounds. Jane, *I've a use* for it. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXI, 274.

*To find a use* for banana-skins. FOWLER, Concise Oxf. Dict.

ii. He *made good use* of his wealth. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOE, Handl., I, 152).

The Russians *made summary use* of their advantage. KATH. CEC. THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. XXIII, 253.

He *made use* of a quibble. PRAY *make use* of my telephone. FOWLER, Concise Oxf. Dict.

**value.** *a*) It is not surprising then that such talents should win the affections of a girl who by education was taught to value an appearance in herself and, consequently, to *set a value* upon it in another. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. VII, (272).

Friends on whose opinions I *set a high value*. TOZER, Intr. to Childe Har., 49. Some fathers *set too great a value* on books. H. J. BYRON, Our Boys.

**vengeance.** a) i. An English army came to their assistance to *take a terrible vengeance* upon Cawnpore, MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XIII, 186.

ii. He *threatened vengeance* on any one who should depreciate his property. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOR., *Hand.*, I, 114).

"My attachment to your person, sir" said Mr. Tupman... "is great — very great — but upon that person I must *take summary vengeance*." DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 130.

(They were) drinking freely at the expense of the peasantry and *vowing dire vengeance* against the enemy. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 45.

Note. The use of the article seems to be rather the exception than the rule.

**venture.** b) A quack prescribes *at a venture*. GOLDSMITH (RICH. ASHE KING, O.L. Goldsm., Ch. IV, 51).

**visit.** b) Mr. A... is assisting his wife to show a book of photographic portraits to a girl *on a visit*. PUNCH.

**welcome.** a) They *gave me a most cordial welcome*. POE., *Gold-bug*. (NAUTA, *Stories*, I, 79).

She *gave a kind welcome* to the stranger. *Story of Rob Roy*, 4.

Note. The article is regularly absent in the phrases *to bid welcome* and *to make welcome*, in which however, *welcome* is not felt as a pure noun.

All who cared to come *were made welcome*. M. S. FRANCIS, *The Manor Farm*, Ch. XII.

**will.** b) "Now, then!" roared Amyas, "Fire, and *with a will*!" CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XX, 151b.

If I had a chance to better myself, I would go *with a good will*. STEVENSON, *Kidnapped*, 10.

The Pension Officers have all worked *with a will*. *Westm. Gaz.*

**wind.** c) There had been *a wind* all day. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LV, 392a.

**witness.** a) i. The list of additions to the Department of Manuscripts in the British Museum during the five years 1906—10 *bears a witness* to the growing scarcity and rise in price of fine manuscripts by the very small number of them it contains. *Athen.*, No. 4448, 91a.

ii. (The shadows beneath his eyes) *bore witness* to the sleepless night spent in pacing Chilcote's vast and lonely room. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XXVI, 289.

Note. The construction with the article is the exception.

e) There is *witness* to a regular and periodical migration. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6329, 4c.

d) That any child should be branded as illegitimate *is*, in itself, *witness* to the inadequacy of our moral code. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 282.

**wrong.** i. Who does this, *does a wrong*. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, III, 72.

She was scrupulous in her devotions, good to the poor, never knowingly *did* anybody *a wrong*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IV, 34.

I find I *have done* you *a wrong*. *Ib.*, Ch. XI, 116.

ii. You have done us *wrong*. DICK., *Chimes*<sup>3</sup>, III, 73.

Note I. The use of the article appears to be very common. It is useful to compare the above quotations with the following, in which not a single but a repeated phenomenon is referred to, and in which, consequently, there is no occasion for the use of the article.

She had *suffered great wrong* in some of the frequent forays. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. II, 25.

If I *sustained wrong* from those you loved and favoured, was I to disturb your place with idle tale-bearings and eternal complaints? *Ib.*, Ch. V, 59.

II. The article does not appear to be ever used, when the word is not used in the meaning of *injustice*, as in the above sentences.

I *have done wrong* in loving this poor orphan lad more than other of his class. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. IV, 49.

He meant to punish her when she *did wrong*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, I, Ch. V, 32.

**zest.** a) i. This *adds a zest* to [etc.]. FOWLER, *Concise Oxf. Dict.*

He *has an amazing zest* for social pleasure. *Graph.*, No. 2278, 880a.

ii. She tasted a condiment which *gave* it (sc. the heavy festal mass) *zest*.

CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XIV, 176.

**Note.** Usage may be equally divided.

#### 41. The indefinite article is also usual:

a) before the names of certain disorders, especially:

- 1) **ache** and compounds of **ache**. For instances of the indefinite article being absent or being replaced by the definite article see 35, b.

\* He was not put into better humour either, by the reflection that he had taken it into his head, early in the evening, to think he had got *an ache* there, and so stopped at home. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXVI, 336.

\*\* They awoke with *a headache*. JANE AUSTEN, *Mansfield Park*, Ch. IX, 90. (The same writer repeatedly has *the headache*.)

One day, Amelia had *a headache*. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 26.

The mildest form of hysteria often ends in laughter and tears together, and is followed by *a headache* and a sleep. *Harmsworth Enc.*, s.v. *Hysteria*.

- 2) **fever**. Compare 35, b.

But Simon's wife's mother lay sick of *a fever*. *Bible*, Mark, I, 30. Master Ribstone coming home for the Christmas holidays from Eton, over-ate himself and had *a fever*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 16.

The lady... caught cold, took *a fever*, and died after a very brief illness. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XXII, 237.

To watch with a man in *a fever*. WEBST., s.v. *watch*.

Astrupp had caught *a fever* in Florence. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., XXII, 237.

- 3) those illustrated in the following quotations:

**dropsy**. There he found himself ill at ease, and no doubt, but in time would have died of *a dropsy*. ELIZ. MONTAGU, *Letters* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5201, 5a).

**quinsy**. Why don't you speak out? do not stand croaking like a frog in *a quinsy*! SHER., *Riv.*, IV, 2, (261).

**rheumatism**. (He) has been up all night with *a rheumatism*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. VII, 79.

**Note.** In this connection it may be observed that *sore throat* is sometimes felt as an abstract noun, as is shown by its discarding the article.

These old-fashioned precautions will not prevent us from catching *sore throat*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3834, 543a.

Every one recognizes (these) as the symptoms of *sore throat*. *Ib.*

Compare: This fact should made every one careful never to neglect *a sore throat*. *Ib.*

- b) before *time* and *distance*, when preceded by *short* or *long*, or adjectives of like import.

i. \* In *a little time* the whole town was in a buzz with tales about the Haunted House. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 114).

The last wolf that has roamed our island had been slain in Scotland *a short time* before the close of the reign of Charles the Second. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. III, 307.

In Kensal Rise there have been two particularly atrocious murders committed within *a short time*. Times (= korten tijd na elkaar.)

\*\* At *a safe distance* from the scene of the action. WILLOCK, Voy., 305. Neiss... is only *at a short distance* from the Austrian frontier. THACK., Barry Lyndon, Ch. VI, 95.

- ii. \* *Short time* had Angelo to gaze on his comrades that were to be. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 154.

Discovering before *very long time* that he had little taste or genius for the pursuing of the exact sciences [etc.]. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

\*\* The watchman ... withdrew himself to *good distance*. BLACKMORE, Lorna Doone, Ch. XXXVII, 224.

Much of my prudence was forgotten, or at least the better part of courage, which loves danger at *long distance*. Ib., Ch. XXXVIII, 233.

- c) in some salutations and imprecations. Compare 24.

- i. \* *A pleasant journey!*

*A good morning* to you! CONGREVE, Love for Love, I, 1 (205).

*A merry Christmas and a happy new year!* DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 71.

Miss Sharp, I wish you *a good morning*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. I, 7.

I wish you *a good day*. Id., Pend., II, Ch. XII, 130.

*A murrain* on your tongue! MAX PEMBERTON, I crown thee king, Ch. I, 15.

*A mischief* upon my bad manners and my pride, if the words I used meant to imply that Lysander was false! DEIGHTON, Note to Mids., II, 2, 54.

- ii. *Good morning (afternoon, evening, night)!*

*Mercy* on me! SHER., School for Scand., II, 2, (381).

They wished each other *Merry Christmas* in their can of grog. DICK., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 75.

He heard them give each other *Merry Christmas*. Ib., II, 37.

*Long life* to him! Ib., III, 71.

- d) in titles of books, essays, poems, etc. before the names which indicate the general character of the composition.

*An elegy on the Dead of Mad Dog*. GOLDSM., Vicar.

*A primer of spoken English*. SWEET.

*A new English Grammar*. Id.

*A History of English Literature*. SHAW.

Our National Institutions, *A short sketch for schools*. ANNA BUCKLAND.

42. Practice is variable as to the use of the indefinite article before abstract nouns after the determinative *such* (Ch. XXXVII, 7 ff.) and the exclamatory *what* (Ch. XXXVIII, 10 ff.).

There is not, apparently, any principle by which the use or omission of the indefinite article in this position is conditioned, beyond, perhaps, that of rhythm or euphony. Before some nouns, such as *change*, *pity* and *shame*, the article is, however, rarely dispensed with. Compare also MATZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup>, III, 195 and 281; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 39.



- i. \* The storm continued with *such fury*, that the seamen themselves acknowledged they had never known a worse. DEFOE, Rob. Crusoe, 10.

To me it was not easy to sleep after a day of *such excitement*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XIV, 190.

All of which ornaments set off this young fellow's figure to *such advantage* that [etc.]. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 41.

It is a shame to speak with *such levity* about the character of ladies. Id., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXI, 317.

*Such sudden and violent revenge* would not have been thought strange in Scotland. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 146.

I felt *such delight* at the prospect of the day before me, that I forgot all my scruples. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

What! me spend a month's meal and meat and fire on *such vanity* as that! CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. I, 7.

Mr. Roosevelt is not to see the Pope. That is *such bad business* for the Vatican that the decision to say "No" almost extorts admiration. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 2a.

To *such extravagance* does the political temper of the Protectionist lead! *Ib.*, No. 5386, 1c.

There was nothing in his long and splendid range of parts, which brought him out to *such advantage*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 474, 713c.

\*\* *Such a bustle* ensued, that you might have thought a goose the rarest of all birds. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 67.

Lady Clavering was in *such a good humour* that Sir Francis even benefited by it. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XXXVIII, 390.

Gracious God, who was he, weak and friendless creature, that *such a love* should be poured out upon him? Id., *Henry Esmond*, II, Ch. VI, 203.

There is no sin in *such a love* as mine now. *Ib.*, 204.

The aforesaid Martin, whom Arthur had taken *such a fancy* for, was one of those unfortunates [etc.]. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.

- ii. \* *What affection* in her words, *what compassion* in her repressed tears! DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. IX, 50b.

*What native acuteness* in the stealthy eye! *What hardened resolve* in the full nostril and firm lips! *What sardonic contempt* for all things in the intricate lines about the mouth! LYTON, *Night and Morning*, 321.

How the mother looks into the doctor's eyes! What thanks if there is light there; *what grief and pain*, if he casts them down and dares not say "hope"! THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. XV, 155.

Any one can guess with *what exultation* we got off the dusty road. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

At the mention of it (sc. the Old Chapel) we jumped up and said "What a place! and *what weather!*" *Ib.*

*What taste! what perfection!* AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. IV, 150.

\*\* *What a shame!* ah, *what a fault* were this! HENRY VI, C, V, 12.

*What a pity* the carriage should break down in such a spot! LYTON, *Lady of Lyons*, III, 1.

*What a change* between to-day and yesterday! THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VIII, 75.

*What a life!* Mrs. CRAIK, *Dom. Stor.*, I, Ch. IV, 24.

*What a happiness!* DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXIII, 216a.

*What a happiness* it would be to set the pattern about here! G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, I, Ch. III, 20.

Note. Before the names of substances the indefinite article seems to be regularly absent after both *such* and *what*.

I never tasted *such wine* before.

*What capital wine!* THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XIII, 131.

II. For the use of the indefinite article before a plural preceded by a numeral, or by *what* or *such* see Ch. XXVI, 17.

SUPPRESSION OF THE ARTICLE BEFORE NOUNS IN CERTAIN GRAMMATICAL FUNCTIONS IN WHICH THEIR MEANING IS MODIFIED.

43. In certain functions common nouns assume to a certain extent the character of proper names, and, consequently reject the article more or less regularly.

This is the case:

- a) when they are used in address. Compare SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2056.

Is this true, *widow*? THOM. SOUTHERN, Oroonoko, I, 1, (163a).

That's your own fault, *mistress*. Ib., I, 2, (164a).

I beg, *captain*, you'll be seated. SHERIDAN, Rivals, III, 3.

"Yes, *Lady*," said the boy. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. III, 27.

I do know the reason, *Prince*. MAX PEMB., Doctor Xavier, VI, 29a.

You cannot regret as he regrets, *Highness*. Ib.

Here is your rose, *pet*, and I only hope it is the shade you wanted. Westm. Gaz., No. 6311, 3c.

It ought to take your headache away, *darling*, it is so lovely. Ib.

I have something to say to you, *child*. Punch, No. 3759, 88a.

Don't buy clothes for me, *woman*. Ib.

Note. SHAKESPEARE sometimes had the definite article before a vocative. Compare FRANZ, Shak. Gram.<sup>2</sup> § 261. Occasional instances may occur in later English.

*The Gods!* it smites me | Beneath the fall I have. Ant. and Cleop., V, 2, 171.

*The last of all the Romans*, fare thee well! Jul. Cæs., V, 3, 99.

Sleep thou — *the persecuted, the disinherited orphan — the son of an ill-fated mother* — sleep thou! SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. VIII, 83.

- b) when they are used as appositions of the third kind. (Ch. IV, 12 ff.)

The precious stone *beryl* is unique among minerals. Daily Mail.

- c) when they stand after appositional or specializing *of*. (Ch. IV, 4, Obs. IV.)

- 1) In this position some are also found with the indefinite article, the variable practice being due to the fact that the preposition *of* may also be understood as denoting a relation of possession. The following illustrations must be accepted for what they are worth. The absence of illustration of one or the other practice must not be understood to mean that it is non-existent.

**business.** He carried on the *business of a vintner*. STOF., Handl., III, § 57.

**capacity.** No doubt, they (sc. the stories) were interesting to her in her *capacity of a novelist*. RID. HAGGARD, Mr. Mees. Will<sup>2</sup>, Ch. V, 50.

**character.** i. He never really appeared but in one *character*, that of a *philosopher*. H. ROGERS, Ess., I, Ch. VIII, 335.<sup>1)</sup>

- ii. Mr. Wyndham, in the *character of* *postulant* for the Chancellorship of the Exchequer in the Tariff Reform Administration, promises us a tax of 2 s. per quarter on corn and flour. Westm. Gaz.

1) MURRAY.

**commission.** The King gave him the *commission of a lieutenant colonel* in the British Army. MAC., Clive, (511b).

**craft.** He did not despise the *craft of boat-builder*. W. BESANT, Master Craftsman, I, 118.

**degree.** i. Do you think I would marry under the *degree of a Gentlewoman*? HEYWOOD, Fortune by Land, I, II, 1)

ii. The *degree of Doctor of Science* was conferred on Lord Lister. Times.

**dignity.** i. He could well support the *dignity of a governor*. CLARENDON, Hist. of the Great Reb., 1,603.

ii. He (sc. Holcroft) rose... to the *dignity of actor*. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent., Ch. I, 38.

**name.** Thus he bore without abuse | The grand old *name of gentleman*. TEN., In Memoriam, CXI.

You have brought disgrace on the *name of philosopher*. MAC., Fred., (691a).

**office.** We have already seen how low an estimate Cranmer had formed of the *office of a Bishop*. Id., Hist., I, Ch. I, 74.

**part.** i. I must play the *part of a father* here. DICK., Chuz., Ch. LIII, 415a.

He acted something like the *part of a deserter*. FREEMAN, Norman Eng., III, Ch. XII, 121.

He was resolved to act the *part of a man of honour*. MISS LINLEY (G. G. S., Life of Sheridan, 27).

ii. He made it clear, ... that we had not played the *part of mischief-maker* imputed to us by irresponsible critics. Times, No. 1820, 923a.

I shall have to play the *part of seducer*. VICTORIA CROSS, Six Chapt. of a Man's Life, 133.

A small travelling circus in which he played the *part of clown*. Times.

**position.** The *position of uncle to Tristram* would not have tempted him alone. EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. XXXII, 302.

He holds the *office of Laureate*. BOOKMAN, No. 263, 2a.

**profession.** i. A residential College especially equipped for preparing the sons of gentlemen for the *profession of an engineer*. Times, No. 1819, 902b.

ii. Mr. Pendennis exercised the *profession of apothecary and surgeon*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 15.

An insignificant little person who suffered from the *profession of music-teacher*. BARRY PAIN, Culminating Point.

M. Steinheil was one of those worthy and timid mediocrities who had adopted the *profession of painter*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 493, 481b.

**quality.** Fanny never made her appearance in the *quality of nurse* at his chambers any more. THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XV, 156.

**rank.** i. He has been promoted to the *rank of an Admiral of the Fleet*. Times. He obtained the *rank of a lieutenant*. II. Lond. News.

Commoner = One of the common people, a member of the commonalty (Now applied to all below the *rank of a peer*). MURRAY, s. v. *commoner*, 2.

ii. To prefer an officer to the *rank of general*. WEBST.

A commissioned military officer below the *rank of captain*. Ib.

The sovereign was pleased to advance Colonel Sir Michael O'Dowd to the *rank of Major General*. THACK., Van. Fair, II, Ch. XXXII, 362.

**title.** The *title of king* was not revived. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 132.

The King had taken to himself the *title of Defender of the Faith*. HAL. SUTCL., Pam the Fiddler, Ch. II, 24.

1) MURRAY.

**trade.** i. He learned the *trade of a dyer*. STOF., HANDL., III, § 7.

ii. The two ushers at Tom's school were only driving their poor *trade of usher* to get such living as they could. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, I, Ch. III, 59.

Returning to England, Cromwell continued to amass wealth by adding *the trade of scrivener*, something between *that of a banker and attorney*, to his other occupations. GREEN, *Short. Hist.*, Ch. VI, § VI, 332. (Note the varied practice.)

Note I. The definite article is sometimes met with in the same position.

They cultivate all trades save that of *the armourer*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. I, 78.

II. The indefinite article is, of course, impossible in referring to a station, rank, post, etc. that can be held by only one person at a time.

At the end of this month Captain A. D. Ricardo will vacate, on time limit, *the post of Captain* of Chatham Dockyard, and go on half-pay. Truth, No. 1802, 76a.

2) Regular is the suppression of the definite article, when specializing of is followed by a plural noun, as in *the House of Lords*, *the House of Commons*, *the Chamber of Deputies*, *the Book of Proverbs*.

44. When a noun is used predicatively, i. e. as nominal part of the predicate or as predicative adnominal adjunct, it often loses some of its substantival character, approximating more or less to an adjective. The result is that it sometimes rejects the article, whether definite or indefinite, according as the circumstances of the case are applicable to only one person or thing, or to one out of a number. As the following discussions will show, there is a marked difference between English and Dutch practice only so far as the indefinite article is concerned. Compare also Ch. XXIII, 16; Ch. XXIV, 36; and see FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 277; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 39.

45. a) The definite article is frequently suppressed before a predicative noun denoting a specified family or social relation, or a specified civil, military or ecclesiastical dignity or office.

The predicative noun as nominal part of the predicate: The child is *father* of the man. WORDSWORTH.

The boy is *father* of the man. THACK., *Four Georges*, IV, 93.

The wish is *father* to the thought. PROV.

I was *nursery-governess* in a family where Mr. Copperfield used to visit. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 5a.

You are *heir* to great estates. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Hol.*, Ch. XIX, 143b. Wilkins was now *member* for a mining constituency. MRS. WARD, *Marcella*, II, 237.

Boldwood was *tenant* of what was called Little Weatherbury Farm. TH. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. XVIII, 136.

A speech delivered by my right hon. friend who is now *Home Secretary*. Times, No. 1819, 893c.

During all this time he was *leader* of the Irish Party. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 495, 546c.



That (sc. *morphia*) which had been *slave*, gradually became *master*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. I, 9.

He is...*chief* of a counting-house. Westm. Gaz., No. 6011, 4c.

Note. Thus also when a superlative or, the adjective having the value of a superlative, or an ordinal numeral is part of the name of the office.

Lord Derby again became *Prime Minister*. GREEN, Short Hist., Epilogue, 843. I was *best man* at the wedding. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XXI, 194. It was reported that my right hon. friend, then *First Lord of the Admiralty*, had in a public speech, used language attacking German policy. Times, 1819, 893c.

He became *Chief Secretary* in 1887. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 1b.

The predicative noun as predicative adnominal adjunct, a) of the first kind: It was this little child who commonly acted as *mistress of the ceremonies* to introduce him to Mrs. Osborne. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXXV, 392.

Mr. Whittington served *Sheriff of London* and was three times Lord Mayor. ANDREW LANG, Blue Fairy Book.

For seven years he wielded power as *President of the United States*. Westm. Gaz., No. 5323, 1b.

β) of the second kind: Rebecca was now engaged as *governess*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. VII, 67.

The directors appointed Clive *governor* of Fort St. David. MAC., Clive, (511b) The nation everywhere acknowledged him *master*. MOILEY, Rise, V, Ch. IV, 718b.

The gates and bridges of the State should be under the control of whomsoever should be elected *Chief Magistrate*. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. VI, iii.

For by thy state I And presence I might guess thee *chief* of those [etc.]. TEN., Lanc. and El., 182.

He was appointed...*Latin Secretary* to Cromwell. Cassell's Conc. Dict. s. v. *Milton*.

He was declared *heir presumptive* to the Danish throne. Times.

With the preceding quotations compare:

i. Purpose is but *the slave* to memory. Hamlet, III, 2, 200.

Matilda, though of the royal Saxon blood, was not *the heir* to the monarchy. SCOTT, Ivanhoe, Ch. XLII, 448.

ii. I will have | My young son Henry crown'd *the King of England*. TEN., Beck., Prol., (696a).

The following quotations show variable practice:

My father had the sole charge (sc. of the lighter) — he was *monarch* of the deck; my mother of course was *queen*, and I was *the heir apparent*. MARRYAT, Jac. Faithf., Ch. I, 3a. (Compare: I have said that I was *heir apparent*. lb., 4a.)

He was *the chief* now and lord. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 30.

We are glad to hear the Conservative spokesman lay this stress upon the need of making the labourer *master* of his own house, but whether it is necessary for that purpose to make him *the owner* is quite another question. Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 2a.

Mrs. Brooks, the lady who was *the householder* at the Herons, and *owner* of all the handsome furniture, was not a person of an unusually curious turn of mind. HARDY, Tess, Ch. LVI, 595.

As *the head* of the English Church, he (sc. the Sovereign) summons and dissolves Convocation. ANNA BUCKLAND, Our Nat. Inst., 7. (Compare: The King, as *head* of the nation, is the head of the National Church. lb., 69.)

- b) Suppression of the article is the rule before such a noun, when it stands adnominally after a proper name, the relation or office being specified.

The suppression of the article changes the grammatical function of such a noun, converting it from an apposition into an undeveloped clause. Compare Ch. IV, 3, Obs. I; Ch. XXI, 3.

The noun denoting a family or social relation: i. He was the only son of Katharine Ralston, *widow of admiral Ralston*. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 7.

The elder was Mrs. Benjamin Slayback, *wife of the well-known member of Congress*. *Ib.*, 8.

ii. Edward Russell, *the brother of Lord Russell*. GREEN.<sup>1)</sup>

The noun expressing a dignity or office: i. Edward the Confessor, *King of England*. SCOTT, *Tales*.<sup>1)</sup>

Mr. White, *Minister of Finance*, said at a banquet given in his honour [etc.]. *Times*, No. 1819, 904b.

The Ministers were accompanied by Prince Louis of Battenberg, *First Sea Lord*; Vice Admiral Sir John Jellicoe, *Second Sea Lord*. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3886, 543.

ii. Denewulf, *the bishop of Winchester*. GREEN.<sup>1)</sup>

Malger, *the Archbishop of Rouen* *Ib.*

Dr. Kerzl, *the Physician to the Emperor of Austria*. *Athen.*, No. 4437, 566a.

Note I. When the relation, or the dignity, office or trade is not specified, the article is not, as a rule, dispensed with.

i. Thoff (vulgar for though) Jack Gauge, *the exciseman*, has ta'en to his carrots, there's little Dick, *the farrier*, swears he'll never forsake his bob. SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1, (215).

It was not . . . to Richardson, *the author*, that Goldsmith applied for work, but to Richardson, *the printer*. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsm.*, Ch. VI, 70.

ii. I should like to see *Molly housemaid* stealing to the terrace-gardens in the grey dawning to cull a wistful posy. I should like to see *Betty kitchenmaid* cutting off a thick lock of her chestnut ringlets, which she proposed to exchange for a woolly token from young Gumbo's pate. TACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XX, 199.

*Robin postman* took the proffered tea, put his dripping hat on the ground, and thanked *Jemima cook*. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. V, 40. To compare *Symons poet* with *Watts-Dunton poet* is like comparing chalk and cheese. *Periodical*.<sup>3)</sup>

II. Also when the noun denotes to doer of a specified action, the article is not suppressed.

Admiral Monk, *the restorer of the Stuarts* is better known in Dutch history as Duke of Albemarle.<sup>2)</sup>

46. The indefinite article is suppressed, mostly contrary to Dutch practice:

- a) generally before predicative nouns denoting either a relation of kinship or a social relation.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS:—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 258.      <sup>2)</sup> KRUISINGA, *Gram. of Pres. Day Eng.*, § 392.      <sup>3)</sup> WENDT, *Synt. des heut. Eng.*, 161.

The relational meaning of the noun is sometimes symbolized by the preposition *to*, while the placing of the indefinite article before the relational noun would normally entail the use of the pleonastic genitive (Ch. XXIV, 33), with, of course, an altered meaning: *He is son to my neighbour* corresponds to *He is a son of my neighbour's*.

i. Miss Jenkins was *daughter* of a deceased rector of Cranford. MRS. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. I, 21.

He was an old school-fellow of his, and *son* of a merchant in that town. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVI, 131a.

He is *cousin* to the Loftus boys. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. II, 23.

ii. 'Tis Clincher, who was *apprentice* to my uncle Smuggler. FARQUHAR, *The Constant Couple*, I, 1, (53).

It (sc.) the funeral had been that of a boy of Dolf's years, who had been *apprentice* to a famous German doctor. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl*. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 105).

Note I. We find the same practice invariably before nouns constituting undeveloped clauses. (Ch. XXI.)

Sir Dudley North, *younger brother* of the Lord Keeper. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. IV, 88. Among the wounded was Colonel F. W. Rhodes, *brother* of Mr. Cecil Rhodes. *Times*.

Thus also in descriptions of the 'dramatis personæ' of a play.

Paris, a young nobleman, *kinsman* to the Prince. *Romeo and Juliet*. *Romeo*, *son* to Montague. *ib.*

Geoffrey, *son* of Rosamund and Henry. TEN., *Becket*.

II. When such a relational noun is accompanied by a classifying modifier, it resumes its full character of a noun, and, consequently, requires the indefinite article.

She was *a good daughter* to you.

b) sometimes before predicative nouns denoting a quality.

Man, "said the Ghost", if *man* you be in heart, not adamant. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 70.

She gazed at me, as if she really did not know whether I were *child* or *fiend*. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. IV, 27.

Let the boy go with us, lest he prove *traitor*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, Ch. I, 13.

Is Emile Grenat still *anglomane*? G. MEREDITH, *Lord Ormont*, Ch. IV, 77. You are *woman* through and through. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. II, 38.

"Fräulein," said Coralie, "you're as wise as you are *darling*". AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, II, Ch. IX, 222.

Compare with the above the following quotations, which exhibit the more usual practice:

"Why, my dear Copperfield," said the Doctor; "you are *a man*!" DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. XXXVI, 259b.

He determined to marry her, while he was still *a hobbledehoy*. TROL., *Thack.*, Ch. IV, 110.

The man's *a fool*. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, D, 58.

When it behoved him (sc. Edward VII) to be *a king*, he was *a king*; but always he was *a man* with a man's heart. LORD ROSEBERY, *Speech*.

Note I. When nouns in this function make up a series of two or more, the article is often dropped for oratorical effect. (69.)

In this business he was both *knave* and *fool*. MASON, Eng. Gram.<sup>34</sup>, 15, N. II. When such nouns are modified by an adverb of degree, which, indeed, converts them, to all intents and purposes, into pure adjectives, the suppression is regular. (Ch. XXIII, 16, c.)

I was *fool enough* to buy a stock that cost me five-and-twenty shillings. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. V, 49.

She is *more child* than woman. G. ELIOT, Scenes, II, Ch. VIII, 131. (She is *more a child* than a woman = She is rather a child than a woman.)

She was *thoroughly master* of French. ANNIE BESANT, Autobiog., 22.

III. English practice almost regularly has the article before nouns denoting a quality which constitute undeveloped clauses (Ch. XXI), not only if the headword is a noun, but also if it is a pronoun. In the latter case Dutch regularly rejects it.

i. Paris, *a young nobleman*, kinsman to the Prince. ROM. & JUL. (Observe that the varied practice illustrated by this quotation depends on the different character of the nouns in question.)

ii. \* It would ill become me, *a sinful and secular man*, to complain of a bed as hard as a board. SCOTT, Monastery, Ch. XVI, 184.

God have mercy upon me, *a sinner*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXXIII, 247b.

Have pity on me, Sir, *an aged and a lonely man*. CH. READE, It is never too late to mend, I, Ch. XV, 172.

He was thinking... of the kind, wise words she had spoken to him, *an ignorant fellow*. BEATR. HARRADEN, Ships, I, Ch. XIII, 69.

\*\* Gracious God, who was he, *weak and friendless creature*, that such a love should be poured out upon him? THACK., Henry Esmond, II, Ch. VI, 203.

In such a sentence as the following we have not, of course, to deal with an undeveloped clause, but with a vocative:

For what a prodigious quantity of future crime and wickedness are you, *unhappy boy*, laying the seed! THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 27.

c) mostly before *master* and *mistress* in the sense of *proficient*. (Ch. XXIII, 16, d.)

i. He was *master* of most modern languages. SCOTT, Wav., Ch. III, 30a.

A Jack of all trades is *master* of none. PROV.

She was *mistress* of Danish, German, English and French. TIMES.

ii. He's *a master* of languages. FARQUHAR, The Beaux' Stratagem III, 2, (394).

He is a good scholar, as well as a consummate soldier, and *a master* of many languages. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXIV, 246.

Note. I. Also when accompanied by an intensive adjective, *master* and *mistress* occasionally stand without the article.

i. He spent two-and-twenty years in Egypt and returned *perfect master* of all science. LEWES, Hist. Phil., 42.

A mode of warfare in which she was *past mistress*. MRS. WARD, Marc., I, Ch. I, 11.

ii. His daughter was *a perfect master* of music. FIELDING, Tom Jones, IV, Ch. V, 49a.

There was the weight a man's sayings carry, when he is *a real master* of one thing. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., I, Ch. VIII, 188.

I found him to be *a thorough master* of the Basque language and people. ALG. WEST, Some Remin. of Mr. Gladst. (Ninet. Cent., No. 395, 83).



II. Before *master* in the sense of a person who has the upper hand, the article is regularly absent.

He had made himself *master* of Olympia. NETTLESHIP, Dict. of Clas. Antiq., 467b.

III. The use of the *definite* article in the following quotations seems to mark exclusiveness:

He is *the master* of his subject. Rev. of Rev., CCIV, 56a.

- d) occasionally before such words as *foe* (*enemy*) and *friend*, denoting a person's disposition towards another person or a thing. The ordinary practice is, however, to use the article, even when *to* follows.

i. And I'll grow *friend* to danger. Troilus and Cres., IV, 4, 72.

You are *foe* to the Orsini, yet you plead for him — it sounds generous; but hark you, — you are more a friend to your order than a foe to your rival. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. II, 159. (Note the varied practice.)

"You thought me *Friend*!" he said — "You should have known me *Foe*!" MAR. CORELLI, Sorrows of Satan, II, Ch. XL, 259.

ii. Not that I am *an enemy* to love. SHERIDAN, Duenna, I, 1, (310).

He was *a friend* to me. TEN., The Death of the Old year, III.

47. The *indefinite* article is mostly used, contrary to ordinary Dutch practice:

- a) before predicative nouns denoting a state.

1. The predicative noun as nominal part of the predicate:

She will be *a mother* soon. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XXXV, 390.

She is *a widow*. TROL., Thack., Ch. V, 130.

I am *an orphan*. LYTTON, Rienzi, IV, Ch. I, 151.

The Emperor surrendered his sword, and was *a captive* in the hands of his enemies. MCCARTHY, Short Hist., Ch. XXIV, 372.

When he became *a millionaire*, of course, that course of conduct became impossible. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, II, C, 39.

For several years she remains *a widow*. Lit. World.

She was *a wife* herself. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. XI, 229.

2. The predicative noun as predicative adnominal adjunct:

I will live *a bachelor*. Much Ado, I, 1, 248.

I have heard him say he would die *a bachelor* for your sake. GOLDSMITH, Vic., Ch. XXXI, 1, (467).

Sooner than thou shouldst abandon the noble cause to which I have devoted thee, would I see thee lie *a corpse* at my feet. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. IX, 89.

He comes home now, where he lives *a godless old recluse*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXIX, 310.

I shall live and die *an old bachelor*. Ib., I, Ch. II, 23.

He expected to come back *a prince* at least. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Hol., Ch. V, 41a.

Note. The following quotations show variable practice:

**bankrupt.** i. He was *adjudicated a bankrupt*. Times.

To be *adjudicated a bankrupt*. Cas. Conc. Cycl., s.v. *insolvent*.

ii. The debtor had been *adjudicated bankrupt*. Times.

**party.** i. We have never had any quarrel to which I have been *a party*. DICK., Christm. Car., I, 12.

ii. He was... *party* to some of the foulest judicial murders recorded in our history. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. II, 270.

**prisoner.** i. \* Her father is *a prisoner*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 126a.

\*\* Requesting him to keep Rob Roy *a prisoner*. Black's Sir W. Scott's Readers, Rob Roy, 32.

Geoffrey is made *a prisoner*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 125b.

The Boers have taken possession of the telegraph office, making the operator *a prisoner*. Times.

ii. \* The daughter of a Turkish bashaw fell in love with me too, when I was *prisoner* among the Infidels. FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer, III, 2, (294).

Lord Arran was twice *prisoner* in the Tower. THACK., Henry Esq., III, Ch. IV, 346.

\*\* Water spread itself wheresoever it listed — or would have done so, but for the frost that held it *prisoner*. Dick., Crism. Car.<sup>5</sup>, III, 74.

He was held *prisoner*. Story of Rob Roy, 29.

He had been made *prisoner*. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worn Tales, II, B, 24

They made him *prisoner*. SWEET, N. E. Gr., § 2060.

**witness.** i. To witness = to be *a witness* of. ANNAND., Conc. Dict.

ii. I have been *witness* to many mortifications he (sc. Goldsmith) has suffered in Johnson's company. R. ASKE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. XIII, 157.

Each practice is illustrated in:

I might have been *a knight* by mary, after the French fashion, many a year ago. I might have been *knight*, when I slew the white bear. CH. KINGSLEY, Hereward, Ch. XX, 89a.

b) before nouns denoting a trade, profession, dignity, office, position, station, etc. that may be held by more than one person at a time.

1. The predicative noun as nominal part of the predicate: He has become *a student* at the university. THACK., Newc., I, Ch. XXVII, 301. She is *a teacher* in a school in Derbyshire. Mrs. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. VI, 86. He was only *a captain* in the Austrian army. Lit. World.

He had continuously been *a Minister of the Crown* or Leader of the Opposition in the House of Commons. Times, No. 1819, 893d.

2. The predicative noun as predicative adnominal adjunct: The King dubbed his son *a knight*. WEBST, s.v. *knight*.

They appointed him *a member* of Council at Madras. Mac., War. Hist., (600b).

Dupleix had not been bred *a soldier*. Id., Clive, (509a).

He had been elected *a member* of several fashionable clubs. Mrs. WARD, Marc., I, 94.

He had been born and brought up *a Quaker*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 475, 769a.

Note I. Instances of the alternative practice are by no means infrequent.

1. The predicative noun as nominal part of the predicate: If I were *Minister*, I would not allow such latitude to any man in office. TREVELYAN, Mac., 227.

He ... rendered an inestimable service to philology by laying the foundation of Greek studies in the University of Cambridge, where he was *professor*. SHAW, Hist. Eng. Lit., Ch. III, § 6.

Educated at Cambridge, he became *fellow* of Trinity of College in 1822. WEBB, Intr. to Mac.'s Lays.

He (sc. Holcroft) rose from being *suble-boy* at Newmarket, ... to quasi-literary positions as schoolmaster and clerk, and then to the dignity of actor. SAINTSB., Ninet. Cent., Ch. I, 38.

2. The predicative noun as predicative adnominal adjunct, a) of the first kind: They sent him *admiral* into the narrow seas. CLARNDON, Hist. of Great Reb., I, 379.

The King's Hussars in which his father lived to see him *Major*. LOCKHART, *Scott*, II, 57.

She was familiar with Miss Brabazon from having formerly lived *servant* in the college. MRS. WOOD, *Orv. Col.*, Ch. IV, 90.

β) of the second kind: They call him *captain*, but anybody is captain. HARDY, *Return of the Native*, I, 311.

We do him injustice — if we merely call him *novelist*. CUMING WALTERS, *Phases of Dick*, 19.

Mr. Satyendra Sinha, who is appointed *legal member* of Council, is a lawyer of high repute and great practice. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4961, 2a.

II. The suppression of the article may be quite usual, when the noun is used in a pregnant meaning, i. e. approaches to a quality-expressing word. (46, *b*.)

To call him *poet* would be a gross misapplication of the term. GARNETT, *Age of Dryden*, 117.

In much of his later work Browning almost ceases to be *artist*. H. WALKER, *Greater Victorian Poets*, 155.

Observe the varying practice in: i. Antipholis now lost all patience and calling her *a sorceress*, he denied that he had ever promised her a chain. LAMB., *Tales, Com. of Er.*, 221.

On this Antipholis became quite frantic, and again calling her *sorceress* and witch,... ran away from her. *Ib.*, 122.

ii. I sometimes wish that I were *queen* — *a queen* in my own right. JAMES BLYTH, *The King and Isabel*, 74.

III. The suppression seems to be regular before such nouns when they stand by way of undeveloped nominal clause after a proper name. (Ch. IV, 4, Obs. I; Ch. XXI, 3.)

It was at Newark that Byron, under the superintendence of Mr. Ridge, *bookseller and publisher*, first appeared as a poet. LYTON, *Life of Lord Byron*, 15a.

IV. The fact that *sovereign* may be understood as an adjective explains the absence of the article in:

If I were *sovereign*, I would rule that no woman should inherit a fortune of more than five thousand pounds. HOLME LEE, *Beautiful Miss Barrington*, I, 43.<sup>1)</sup> (Compare: No one disputes the fact that the electorate is politically *sovereign*. *Ninet. Cent.*, No. 395.)

Observe also the absence of the article before *lay*, which, unlike the Dutch *leek*, is an adjective.

I am *lay* to the profession of war on land. *Times*.

V. Sometimes it is the measure which causes the article to be thrown out.

And jealous Oberon would have the child | *Knight* of his train. *Mids.*, II, 1, 25.

48. a) Usage is also divided before the nouns mentioned in 46—47, when in the function of predicative adnominal adjunct they are preceded by the conjunction *as*.

The article seems to be indispensable when *as* has a temporal or a causative connotation. (Ch. VI, 7, *b*.) Conversely the suppression is especially common, when *as* is followed by two or more nouns.

1. The indefinite article after *as* with a temporal or cau-

<sup>1)</sup> ELLINGER, E. S., XXXI, 153.

sative connotation: *As a boy, as a youth*, thou hast held fast thy faith amongst heretics. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. VIII, 78.

Jos went to court *as a loyal subject* of his sovereign. THACK., Van Fair, II, Ch. XXV, 277.

*As a bachelor* ... nobody cares how poor I am. Id., Pend., I, Ch. II, 23.

You remember, don't you love, how full of play he was *as a baby*? Mrs. GASK. Mary Barton, Ch. XVIII, 199.

*As a boy* he had been too idle, *as a man* he soon became too busy, for literary pursuits. MAC., Clive, (500a).

It is a difficult position for me, *as an Indian patriot*, to assume even in imagination. [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVII, 4234.

Compare. To me you owe everything — your life *when an infant* — your support *while a child*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. IX, 89.

2. The indefinite article used after *as* without any temporal or causative connotation: Indeed they say the senators to-morrow | Mean to establish Cæsar *as a king*. JUL. CÆS., I, 3, 86.

At our next annual meeting, I attended in my capacity *as a shareholder*. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VII, 84.

She did her part *as a hostess* with much kindness and grace. Times.

We think of him rather *as a great journalist* than *as a politician*. Westm. Gaz.

Sir P. M. Warrington was greater *as a lawyer* than *as a politician*. Ib.

3. The indefinite article absent after *as*: I remained an inmate of its (sc the school's) walls, after its regeneration, for eight years: six *as pupil*, and two *as teacher*. CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. X, 98.

If a man can command a table, a chair, pen, paper, and ink, he can commence his trade *as literary man*. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 10.

She took a situation *as teacher* in a school near Halifax. Miss FLORA MASSON, The Brontës, Ch. VII, 40.

Emily was despatched home, and Anne came *as pupil* in her place. The gentle Anne made out her two years at Roehead, and Charlotte remained there *as teacher*, with a salary, till early in 1838. Ib., 39.

(They) employed young Hardy *as amanuensis*. W. L. PHELPS, Es. on Modern Novel, II, 47.

He (sc. Mohammed V) ... spent the better part of his life *as prisoner*. Il. Lond. News, No. 3834, Sup. VII.

The briefest reference to Wagner *as man* was all that was necessary in an "essay on Wagnerian drama". Athen., No. 4436, 530a.

The following quotations exhibit divided usage:

On the 29th of July 1835 Charlotte went *as teacher* to Miss W.'s, Emily accompanied her *as a pupil*. Mrs. GASK., Life of Ch. Brontë, 101.

Neither *as Queen of Denmark*, nor *as a Princess of Hesse-Cassel*, could she, indeed, be expected to entertain very cordial feelings towards Russia. Times. (Possibly it is the definite article which is dropped before *queen*.)

When the time came to separate, one of the four went to Oxford *as an assistant* in the library, and became *a University lecturer*, and another went to London to be *clerk* in a bank, and rose to be manager. HALL CAINE, Prodigal Son, I, Ch. II, 17.

Neilson had re-established himself in Iceland first *as factor* for a firm in Copenhagen, and afterwards *as a merchant* on his own responsibility. Ib.

*As a philosopher* ... he (sc. Shakespeare) was not great. ... Even *as painter of character* he is greatly overpraised. Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 7a.

Sometimes the absence of the article may have been furthered by the accumulation of two or more nouns in the same grammatical function. (69.)

She had thought and prayed there *as girl and woman*. Mrs. WARD, Rob. Elsm., I, 172.



Perhaps there had been too much tendency in the speeches made during the week to honour Milton *as reformer* rather than *poet*. Westm. Gaz.

He (sc. Poincaré) has also won fame *as orator* and *as writer*. 11. Lond. News, No. 3849, Sup. I.

Compare: Myrddia was famous as both *a bard* and *a magician*. W. L. JONES, King Arthur, 112.

- b) After the preposition *for*, used as a variant of *as* (Ch. VI, 16), the indefinite article is all but regularly used:

- i. How the plague shall I be able to pass *for a Jew*? SHER., The School for Scand., III, 1, (389).

The dogs, too, not one of which he recognized *for an old acquaintance*, barked at him. WASH. IRV., Rip van Winkle.

He went *for a soldier*. DICK., Bleak House, Ch. VII, 52.

Arthur Pendennis chose to watch Miss Bell dance her first quadrille with Mr. Pynsent *for a partner*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVI, 272.

He will be sold *for a slave*. CH. KINGSLEY, Hypatia, Ch. XIII, 68b.

- ii. Why does your Master pass only *for ensign*? SHER., Rivals, I, 1, (213).

Observe the absence of the article in the following quotation where *to sham* is understood in the meaning of *to pass for*:

Now, if he had shammed *general*. SHER., Rivals, I, 1, (213).

Note. The indefinite article appears to be practically indispensable before the name of a thing, whether preceded by *as* or its equivalent *for*.

- i. An old red-brick mansion, used *as a school*, was in its place. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXXIV, 259a.

I treasured it *as a keepsake*. Ib., Ch. V, 33b.

I shall esteem it *as a favour*, my lord, if Colonel Esmond will give away the bride. THACK., Henry Esmond, III, Ch. IV, 355.

This served him *as a place of prayer*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XXV, 187a.

I hold it *as a rule* that nine men out of ten are unfortunate in their first attachment. MISS BRAD., Captain Thomas.

It was Napoleon who laid it down *as a maxim* that soldiers had often accomplished most, when their case seemed almost desperate. Times, No. 1819, 897a.

- ii. \* A plank was laid over the brook to serve *for a bridge*. Robin Hood (GÜNTH., Handb.).

Willy has given his fiancée such a beautiful ring *for a Christmas present*.

Mrs. ALEX., For his Sake, II, Ch. III, 49.

\*\* *For reply* Lady Maria Esmond gives three shrieks. THACK., Virg., Ch. XXXVIII, 398.

Observe the idiom in:

- i. We know *for a fact* that those districts in which the Danes had settled, are precisely those in which English grammar became simplified most rapidly. BRADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. II, 32.

- ii. For thirty years or so we have taken it *as a matter of course* that the great London dailies . . . should chastise us as robbers and outcasts. Westm. Gaz., No. 6359, 7a.

- iii. *As a matter of fact*, however, the scene itself was as powerful as it was pathetic. RID. HAG., Mees. Will, Ch. III, 32.

*As a matter of fact*, every form of irregular union exists to-day, but shamefully and hidden. Eng. Rev., No. 58, 282.

- iv. *As a rule*, I felt much more inclined to weep than to laugh. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 12c.

As a rule he was seen only with those who belonged to the same political faith as himself. TRUTH, No. 472, 650*b*.

49. Usage mostly rejects the indefinite article after *to turn*, but the article does not appear so rarely as is often believed. It is indispensable, when the noun is modified by an adjective.

- i. \* You bid me *turn a traitor*. DRYDEN, *All for Love*, V, 1, (101).  
 I'll *turn a knave*. FARQUHAR, *The Constant Couple*, I, 2, (57).  
 Didn't you make him *turn a sailor*? DOUGLAS JERROLD, *Black Ey'd Susan*, I, 2.  
 The Signor Colonna has taken up my old calling, and *turned a wit*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 160.  
 \*\* I *turned a good fellow*. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Marner*, Ch. XI, 92.
- ii. I hope you have no intent *to turn husband*. *Much ado*, I, 1, 195.  
 Here comes another of the tribe: a third cannot be matched, unless the devil himself *turn jew*. *Merch. of Ven.*, III, 1, 181.  
 Gibbon, when a lad at Oxford, *turned Catholic*. MAC., *Boswell's Life of Johns.*, (168*b*).  
 I little knew why, or that I should ever *turn engineer*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. XXV, 106*a*.

50. Dutch and English practice are uniform as to the suppression of the indefinite article before a predicative noun that is followed by an adnominal clause with the relative *that* or an adverbial clause with the conjunction *as*, which contains the copula *to be*. (Ch. XXXIX, 4.)

- i. These little infirmities would not have prevented him, *honest faithful man* that he was, from being a shining light in the Dissenting Circle of Bridgeport. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. II, 21.  
 I have encouraged him too much — *vain fool* that I have been! CH. KINGSLEY, *Hypatia*, Ch. IV, 18*a*.  
*Strange man* that he is! G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XLIV, 438.
- ii. Mr Franklin who, *printer's boy* as he had been, was a wonderful shrewd person. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. IX, 83.  
 Ah, grovel in the dust! crouch—crouch! *wild beast* as thou art! LYTTON, *Rienzi*, I, Ch. II, 69.

51. Abstract nouns take the indefinite article after *to make*, or a verb of like import, when they are followed by an adnominal gerund- or infinitive-clause. Compare also Ch. XIX, 39; 49, Obs. V.

**boast.** Brough made especially *a boast* of drinking beer. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 75.

**feint.** He made *a feint* of putting on the one glove which he usually carried in his hand. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXI, 276.

**merit.** He made *a merit* of having given the place to his cousin. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. VII, 85.

**plan.** He laid down *a plan* of restoring his falling fortune. GOLDSM., *Vic.*

**point.** i. He usually made it *a point* to choose his walk in a different direction. SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXIX, 306.

I made *a point* to act the fine gentleman completely. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 48.

- ii. Many educated — and many more half-educated speakers, make *a point* of keeping the *h* everywhere. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, § 205.

The teacher should make *a point* of drawing the instructor's special attention to pupils whose breathing is defective. RIPPMAHN, *Sounds of Spoken Eng.*, § 4.

**practice.** Any country which makes *a practice* of balancing deficits by borrowing, must come to grief sooner or later, Graph.

**pretext.** Godfrey made it *a pretext* for taking up the word again. G. ELIOT, *Sil. Mar.*, Ch. IX, 59.

**rule.** I make it *a rule* never to sleep out of my own bed. J. PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, I, N, 244.

**show.** I made *a show* of arranging my papers on my desk. JEROME, *Novel Notes*.

52. When a predicative nominal occurs both as an adjective and a noun, there is a tendency of dealing with it in the former function in Dutch, and in the latter function in English. This mostly appears by such a word standing without the indefinite article in Dutch, with it in English. Thus: *Hij is Protestant* = *He is a Protestant*. But such evidence is mostly wanting after *to turn*: *Hij werd Protestant* — *He turned Protestant*. For further details see Ch. XXIII, 17, Obs. II; and compare 49.

53. A common noun preceding a proper name (or a noun understood as a proper name), which stands in apposition to it, is apt to give up its character as a head-word and become in its turn the adjunct-word to the proper name, with the result that it loses some of its substantival nature and rejects the definite article, or the possessive pronoun. This change takes place, in the main, in the same cases in Dutch as in English. In the details there are, however, some differences which are of some interest. (Ch. IV, 4.) See also SWEET, *N. E. Gr.* § 90; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 156; ELI'NGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 27.

- a) The suppression is regular, both in English and Dutch, when the noun preceding the proper name denotes some family or social relationship. In this case it is more plausible to assume the omission of the possessive pronoun than the article.

Lillias had rightly read her mistress's temper, who, wise and good as she was, was yet a daughter of *grandame Eve*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. IV, 46. The bells of St. Paul's... reminded him that *friend Sampson* was going to preach his sermon. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXXVI, 381.

Wherever *Father John* appeared, help entered in the efficacious form of pecuniary assistance. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXX, 732b.

**Note.** When the relative is not the speaker or writer, nor the subject of the narrative, the article cannot be dispensed with.

Goldsmith had dealings both with *the uncle Newbery* and *the nephew Newbery*.

Thus also when the proper name and the common noun are transposed. Neither could *the Newbery nephew*, to whom both *The Traveller* and *The Vicar of Wakefield* were sold, be truthfully called "the friend of all mankind". R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. XV, 168.

b) The suppression is almost regular, in English as well as in Dutch, when the common noun preceding the proper name denotes a profession or dignity, whether civil, military or ecclesiastical. This practice is also observed before German proper names with *von* and French proper names with *de*. Compare SCHULZE, *Beitr. zur Feststellung des modernen Englischen Sprachgebrauchs*, 19.

i. \* When sister *Livy* is married to *Farmer Williams*, we shall have the loan of his cider-press for nothing. GOLDSM., *Vicar*.

*Lawyer Clippurse* found his patron involved in a deep study. SCOTT, *Wav.*, Ch. II, 28*b*.

He was glad to ransom himself by making over most of the remaining half (sc. of his property) to *Speaker Lenthal*. MAC., *War. Hast.*, (596*a*).

*Shepherd Matthew* watched his master. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler* Ch. VI, 90.

The last sacraments were administered to *nurse Pecha*. *Times*.

*Professor Osbert Chadwick* delivered an address. *Ib*.

The retiring Lord Mayor, *Alderman Sir H. D. Davis*, entertained at luncheon the Aldermen. *Ib*.

*President Mac Kingley* directs that the Americans shall assume the government of Puerto Rico on October 18. *Ib*.

*Ex-President Porfirio Diaz*... will doubtless have been deeply interested in recent events. *II. Lond. News*, No. 3858, 418*c*.

*Senator Quay* and his son have been committed for trial. *Ib*.

*Chancellor von Bulow* is struggling in advance with the problem which will preoccupy Mr. Lloyd George as soon as Parliament meets. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXX, 103*a*.

On Monday... the Midland Railway published their reasons for dismissing *Guard Richardson*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6171, 2*a*.

\*\* *Major Dobbin* had joined the ...th regiment at Chatham. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXXII, 362.

*Marshal Tiptoff* had died. *Ib.*, II, Ch. XXXII, 362.

*Admiral Sir John Arbuthnot Fisher*, K. C. G., was formerly a Lord of the Admiralty and Controller of the Navy. *Graph*.

*Captain the Hon. Charles Bigham*. *II. Lond. News*, No. 1812, 718.

*Lieutenants Walton and Sword*. *Times*.

*Generals Buller and Warren*. *Morning Leader*.

\*\*\* From this decision *Archbishop Longley* dissented. *Graph*.

*Archbishop Clark* reckons that fifty men will be needed. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4937, 3*a*.

In the next year he gave a casting vote in favour of *Bishop Wilberforce's* motion. *Graph*.

The Headmasters' Conference was opened last Thursday under the presidency of *Prebendary Moss*. *Times*.

ii. \* He will open the merchant *Abuda's* chest. STEVENSON, *Walking Tours* (PEACOCK, *Select Essays*, 537).

*The nurse Pecha* was still alive on Wednesday afternoon. *Times*.

\*\* The Huguenots had become a formidable party under the guidance of the *Admiral Coligni*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 4, 382.

\*\*\* *The syndic Pavillon* was announced. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXII, 283. The correspondence with the *solicitor Pyne*... attests the urgency of these troubles. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5448, 9*c*.

\*\*\*\* *The cardinal Balue* is politic and liberal. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XIII, 189.



He had engaged in a furious and acrimonious contest . . . with *the Abbot Eustatius*. Id., *Abbot*, Ch. I, 11.

*The abbot Eustatius* is no more. Ib., Ch. X, 95.

Note. Thus also the article regularly falls out before *Saint* + proper name: *Saint Nicholas*.

#### 54. When the common noun is a title, usage is divided.

a) Regular is the suppression when the title is one that is only used in connection with a proper name, and when only one person is referred to: *Mr. Johnson*, *Mrs. Johnson*, *Miss Johnson*, *Master Johnson*, *Sir Walter Scott*, *Childe Harold*, *Dan Chaucer*.

Note I. When more persons than one are referred to, the ordinary practice seems to be that the article is used, when the persons bear the same name, and that it is suppressed, when the names differ. See also Ch. XXV, 17.

i. *The Misses Osborne* . . . wondered more than ever what George could see in poor little Amelia. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XII, 117.

John Barton was not far wrong in his idea that *the Messrs. Carson* would not be over-grieved for the consequences of the fire in their mill. *Mrs. GASK.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. VI, 52. (In the same page *Messrs. Carson*.) *The Messrs. Bell* desire me to thank you for your suggestion respecting the advertisement. Id., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 228.

ii. *Messrs. Dodson and Fogg* intreated the plaintiff to compose herself. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 307.

The two gentlemen were *Messrs. Frederic and James*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. XXII, 231.

Meanwhile Costigan had not the least idea but that his company was perfectly welcome to *Messrs. Pendennis and Bows*. Ib., II, Ch. XI, 123. The Colonel of the —th regiment, in which *Messrs. Dobbin and Osborne* had companies, was an old general. Id., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. XXIV, 251. With *Misses P. and W.* the tender passion is out of the question. Ib., I, Ch. XII, 119.

*Young Masters Alfred and Edward* clapping and hurraing by his side. Id., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XVI, 183.

II. *Mr.* is often placed before the names of certain civil authorities followed by a proper name, as in:

With this beautiful peroration, *Mr. Serjeant Buzfuz* sat down, and *Mr. Justice Stareleigh* woke up. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXXIV, 311. (Compare *Sergeant Buzfuz* . . . here paused for breath. Ib., 309.

Thus we also say *Mr. Chairman* (= Dutch *Mijn heer de Voorzitter*).

b) Usage is variable and divided before titles of sovereigns and noblemen, which may also be used by themselves, the general tendency being to use the definite article before the unfamiliar and foreign titles, and also, though less markedly, in dignified style.

The article is, accordingly, found:

regularly, or practically regularly, before *Caliph* (*Calif*, *Khalif(a)*), *Dauphin*, *Doge*, *Emir*, *Grand Duke*, *Grand Duchess*, *Grand Prince*, *Infante*, *Infanta*, *Khedive*, *Landgrave*, *Landgravine*, *Palatine*, *Rhinegrave*, *Signor*, *Signora*, *Sultan*, *Sultana*.

mostly before *Archduke*, *Archduchess*, *Baroness*, *Czar (Tsar)*, *Czarina* (= *Czaritza*), *Czarevitch* (*Czarewich*), *Elector*, *Electress*, *Heer*;

often before *Countess, Emperor, Empress, Marquis, Princess* ; sometimes before *Lady, Lord* ;

rarely before *Count, Dame, Duke, Earl, King, Queen, Viscount*.

Note I. Titles preceding French names beginning with *de*, mostly stand with the article; while it is mostly suppressed before titles preceding German names with *von*. Pure foreign titles such as *Monsieur, Herr, Señor, Don (Dom)*, mostly have no article, any more than they have in the original languages, barring occasional exceptions.

II. The apparent anomaly of the common use of the article before *princess* while it is almost regularly suppressed before *Prince*, may be due to the fact that *Princess* is a comparatively modern title, which did not come into use until the 18th century, *lady* being used before that time. Thus in MAC., Hist., III, Ch. VIII, the daughters of James II are called *the lady Anne* and *the lady Mary*. This may also be the reason why many Englishmen (perhaps the majority) pronounce the word with the stress on the second syllable; except when there are no rhythmical or metrical reasons for doing otherwise.

III. *Lord* and *Lady* regularly have the article in directions of letters, where, as a rule, they are more formally preceded by distinctive epithets, such as *Honourable, Right Honourable*, etc. In other positions the article seems to be used before *Lady* especially, when the fact that the title is one by birth, not by marriage, is insisted on. Also when followed by the name of a dignity which a lady holds on the strength of her husband's office, the word regularly stands with the article: *the Lady Mayoress*. *Lord* also mostly has the article, when followed by an appellative denoting an office.

IV. The placing of a defining word before *Prince* as in *Crown Prince, Hereditary Prince*, seems to be of no influence as to the use of the article, when the two words form a kind of unit.

V. Titles which occasionally throw off the article in ordinary conversation or newspaper announcements, such as *Czar, Emperor, Empress, Princess*, regularly keep it in the language of history. Thus only *the Emperor Charles V, the Empress Maria Theresa*.

VI. Sometimes the use or absence of the article is conditioned by the measure. See the quotations under *king*.

VII. For details see also MÄTZN., Eng. Gram.<sup>2</sup> III, 156; O. SCHULZE, Eng. Stud., XXII; XLIII, 138; TEN BRUGGENCATE, Taalstudie, VI; X; ELLINGER, Verm. Beitr., 28.

**Archduke.** i. Francis Ferdinand of Austria... was born at Graz, and is the son of *the Archduke Charles Louis*. Harmsw. Encycl., s. v. *Francis Ferdinand*.

It (sc. the picture) was purchased in 1605 by *the Archduke Albert*. Il. Lond. News, No. 3777, 415.

ii. Emperor Francis Joseph is now at the manœuvres in Bohemia, accompanied by the Heir Presumptive *Archduke Francis Ferdinand*. Graph.

**Baron.** i. *The Baron Hardinge of Penshurst* belongs to a famous family of pro-consuls. Id., No. 2269, 836.

ii. It is just two years ago since *Baron D'Aehrenthal* told me [etc.]. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 3b.

*Baron Komura* affirms the unalterable determination of his Government to preserve the principle of the open door. Westm. Gaz., No. 4919, 2a.

**Baroness.** i. Who was the baroness? *The Baroness Bernstein*, the young ladies' aunt. THACK., Virg., Ch. II, 12.

Under such circumstances met Warren Hastings and *the Baroness Imhoff*. MAC., War. Hist., (601a).

The Historical Romances of *the Baroness Orczy* are very suitable as Christmas gifts. Westm. Gaz., No. 5185, 1a.

- ii. The Old Man in the Corner by *Baroness Orczy*. Ib., No. 4961, Advert. (Thus, apparently, regularly in giving the titles of literary or musical compositions.)

*Baroness Bertha von Suttner*, née Countess Kinsky, was born at Prague... on June 9, 1843. Graph., No. 2271, 946a.

**Begum.** (He) was at present in this country trying to negotiate with *the Begum Clavering* the sale of the Nawaub's celebrated nose-ring diamond. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXXVII, 392.

**Calif.** *The Khalif Omar*. WASH. IRV.<sup>1)</sup>

**Consul.** Long live *the Consul Rienzi*! LYTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. VIII, 118.

**Count.** i. Find me a meet hour to draw Don Pedro and *the Count Claudio* alone. Much ado, II, 2, 33.

- i. I could not avoid repeating the famous story of *Count Abensberg*. GOLDSM., Vicar, Ch. I.

Of all these airships the most successful is that of *Count Zeppelin*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 30a.

**Countess.** i. Had I not left *the Countess Hameline* of Croye to the charge of those whom she herself selected as counsellors and advisers, *the Countess Isabelle* had been ere now the bride of William de la Marck. SCOTT, Quent. Durw., Ch. XXIII, 303.

*The Countess Hatzfeldt*... had married a brutal husband. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 466, 450b.

Tell *the Countess Shulski* I wish to speak to her. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. I, 8.

- ii. *Countess Shulski* clasped her hands. Ib., Ch. II, 14. (In this novel usage is about equally divided.)

**Czar.** i. Princess Dagmar was married to *Tsar Alexander III*. II. Lond. News.

He became a great favourite of *the Tsar Nicholas*. Times.

He received a warning as to the precariousness of his own position from *the Tsar Alexander III*. Ib.

- ii. The death of *Czar Alexander III* has cast much gloom over Court circles. Graph. Although *Czar Nicholas* had succeeded to his brother with sentiments somewhat more pacific, the question was further complicated by a French army in the Peloponnesus. Academy.<sup>2)</sup>

*Tsar Ferdinand* of Bulgaria recently sent a conciliatory telegram to the King of Roumania. II. Lond. News, No. 3875, 142b.

**Dame.** *Dame Magdalen Græme* thus addressed her grandson. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. XII, 105.

Happy are they who are not only subjected to the caprices of *Dame Fortune*, but [etc.]. Id., Mon., Ch. XXXVI 391.

Never was greater attention paid to *Dame Fashion* than at present. II. Lond. News, No. 3880, 336c.

(They) exemplify some touches of *Dame Nature* in her work of animal development. Ib., No. 3814, 795c.

**Doge.** The conspiracy of *the Doge Marino Faliero* is one of the most remarkable events in the annals of the most singular government, city, and people of modern history. BYRON, Marino Faliero, Preface.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS-KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 256.

<sup>2)</sup> TEN BRUG, Ta'alst., X.

**Dom.** A monarchical régime under King Manoel or *Dom Miguel* would be preferred. *Times*, No. 1824, 1006*d*.

**Don.** *Don José* and his lady quarrell'd. *BYRON, Don Juan*, I, xxiii.

**Donna.** i. *Don José* and *the Donna Inez* led | For some time an unhappy sort of life. *BYRON, Don Juan*, I, xxvi.

ii. But that which *Donna Inez* most desired, | ... Was, that his breeding should be strictly moral. *Ib.*, I, xxxix. (Throughout the poem the use of the article is dependent on the measure.)

**Duchess.** "This set belonged to George II", said the General, "he gave it to *the Duchess Lavinia* on her marriage. *BARING-GOULD*, II, 213.<sup>1</sup>)

**Duke.** i. *The Duke Charles* is now at Peronne. *SCOTT, Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XVI, 221. He assumed the lofty title of *the Duke Werner*. *LYTTON, Rienzi*, I. Ch. II, 20.

ii. *Duke Henry* is four years older than his bride-elect. *Graph*. Prince Christian was the sixth child of *Duke Frederick William* of Holstein-Sondersburg-Glücksburg. *Times*.

**Earl.** i. This was the approach of *the Earl Douglas*. *SCOTT, Fair Maid*. Ch. XXXIII, 353.

ii. Among those present were *Earl Spencer*. *Times*,  
The sudden death of *Earl Percy* is a loss to more than a family or a party  
*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5195, 2*b*.  
*Earl Grey* has been the moving spirit of the scheme. *II. Lond. News*,  
No. 3875, 129*a*.

**Emir.** *The emir Yakub* with his followers gathered in a dense mass round their standard and proudly faced the leaden hail. *II. Lond. News*.  
*The emir Mahmoud*. *Graph*.

**Emperor.** i. *The Emperor Charles* had an exalted opinion of his capacity for the field. *MOTLEY, Rise*, VI, Ch. VII, 899*b*.  
- *The Emperor Francis Joseph* received the King Alexander of Servia on Monday morning. *Times*.

ii. *Emperor Francis Joseph* is now at the manoeuvres. *Graph*.  
The figure "Nine" has a peculiar connection with the career of *Emperor William* of Germany. *Ib.*, 1894, 10 Febr., 143.<sup>2</sup>)

**Empress.** i. The Duke and Duchess of Edinburgh have been in Berlin with *the Empress Frederick*. *Graph*.  
I refer to the murder of *the Empress Elizabeth* of Austria. *Times*.

ii. The Queen returned to Windsor from Osborne at the end of last week, accompanied by *Empress Frederick*. *Graph*.

**Grand Duke.** *The Grand Duke Peter*, her nephew, who now ascended the Russian throne, was [etc.]. *MAC., Fred.*, (699*a*).  
Behind the Czar walked *the Grand Duke Serge*. *II. Lond. News*.

**Grand Duchess.** In the mourning coaches that followed sat the Empress, *the Grand Duchess Alexandra Feodorowna*. *II. Lond. News*.  
The King of the Hellenes was married to *the Grand Duchess Olga*. *Ib*.

**Heer.** i. In (this) valuable kind of lore *the Heer Antonie* seemed deeply versed. *WASH. IRVING, Dolf Heyl*. (*STOF., Handl.* I, 134).  
When he had washed it down by two or three draughts from *the Heer Antonie's* bottle. *Ib.*, 133.

ii. In the midst of his joviality, however, *Heer Antonie* did not lose sight of discretion. *Ib.*, 133.

1) ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 28.

2) O. SCHULZE, *E. S.*, XXII.



**Infanta.** *The Infanta Eulalia* has addressed to the *Imparcial* ... a letter, in which she declares her unaltered affection for Spain and the King and the Queen Mother. *Times*, No. 1824, 1006d.

**King.** i. Bare-footed came the beggar-maid | Before *the King Cophetua*. *TEN.*, Beggar-maid.

The Emperor Francis Joseph received *the King Alexander* of Servia on Monday morning. *Times*.

Last month, full of years and full of honours, *the old King Christian* of Denmark passed away. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCV, 120b.

ii. Between them *King George* and the Emperor Nicholas are rulers of nearly half the world. *Graph.*, No. 2171, 949.

**Landgrave.** Prince Christian was the sixth child of Duke Frederick William of Holstein-Sonderburg-Glücksburg, and Princess Caroline, daughter of *the Landgrave Charles* of Hesse-Cassel. *Times*.

She was the third daughter of *the Landgrave William* of Hesse-Cassel. *Ib.*

**Lady.** i. \* Looking up he beheld his aunt, *the Lady Rockerville* and two of her daughters, of whom the one who spoke was Harry's betrothed, *the Lady Ann*. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, II, Ch. II, 28.

The Queen of Hungary was a worthy descendant of *the Lady Mary* of Burgundy. *MOTLEY*, *Rise*, I, Ch. II, 78b.

When he was gone, *the Lady Godiva* bowed her head into her lap. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Herew.*, Ch. I, 11b.

*The Lady Laura* is my cousin, and if I choose to give her brevet rank, who shall hinder me. *II. Lond. News*.

That is *the Lady Grace Eveleigh* (a duke's daughter). And remember, she is not *Lady Grace*, but *the Lady Grace*. A knight's wife is a Lady, you know. 'The' makes all the difference in the world. *Cornh. Mag.*

\*\* Her Royal Highness was welcomed on arrival at Liverpool by *the Lady Mayoress* (Lady Derby), and Lady Victoria Stanley presented the Princess with a handsome bouquet. *Times*, No. 1823, 977d.

ii. *Lady Audley* pursed up her rosy lips. *MISS BRAIDDON*, *Lady Audley's Secret*, I, Ch. XVI, 186.

**Lord.** i. \* From Robert Beaufort Esq. M. P., to *the Lord Lilburne*. *LYTTON*, *Night and Morn.*, 376.

He is too fond of my poor — of *the Lord Hereward*. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *Hereward*, Ch. I, 11b

\*\* Of the new nobles the most conspicuous were *the Lord Treasurer Rochester*, *the Lord Keeper Guildford*, *the Lord Chief Justice Jeffreys*, *the Lord Godolphin* and *the Lord Churchill*. *MAC.*, *Hist.*<sup>1)</sup>

ii. \* *Lord Crewe* ... said that a reduction of the British Army in India was contemplated. *Times*, No. 1819, 901a.

\*\* *Lord Keeper Guildford* stole some hours from the business of their courts to write on hydrostatics. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 401.

Note. The following quotation exhibits varied practice, for which there is no apparent reason.

He was assured that *the Lord James* was coming this road at the head of a round body of cavalry. And, accordingly, *Lord James* did so far reckon upon him, that he sent this man Warden ... to my master's protection. *SCOTT*, *Mon.*, Ch. XXXIII, 357.

**Maharajah.** His competitor was a Hindoo Brahmin ..., *the Maharajah Nuncomar*. *MAC.*, *War. Hist.*, (603a).

**Marquis.** i. *The Marquis Ito* had been sent to Portsmouth [etc.]. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXC, 375a.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 256.

The Convention was signed in the palace of *the Marquis Marialva*. MORRIS, Note to *Byron's Child Har.*, I, xxv, 2.

A few days ago, Count Etienne Tisza... met *the Marquis George Pallavicini* and fought his third duel this year. II. Lond. News, No. 3880, 337a.

The constitution under which Japan is now governed, is the work of *the Marquis Ito*. Harmsworth Encycl., s. v. *Ito*.

ii. Japan offered Russia her alliance through *Marquis Ito*. Rev. of Rev., CXc, 375a.

Pope. i. When *the Pope* Alexander Borgia issued his Bull, dividing the whole undiscovered non-Christian world between Spain and Portugal, he awarded India to the latter power. A. LYALL, *The Rise of the British Dominion in India*, 8.

ii. Foremost among them in zeal and devotion was Gian Pietro Caraffa, afterwards *Pope Paul the Fourth*. Mac., *Popes*, (549b).

About this time there came to the Wittenberg district the Dominican monk Tetzel, selling pardons and releases from Purgatory, in accordance with the indulgence issued by *Pope Leo X*. Harmsw. Encycl., s. v. *Luther*.

Prince. i. \* The punch went round; and as many of his attendants as would be dangerous sent dead drunk on shore; the rest we secured; and so you have *the Prince Oroonoko*. THOM. SOUTH., *Oroonoko*, I, 2, (165a).

The Academic Committee of the Royal Society of Literature has received from the Princesse Edmond de Polignac the offer of a sum of money for the foundation of a prize for literature to be awarded by the Academic Committee in memory of her husband, *the Prince Edmond de Polignac*. Times, No. 1814, 803c.

\*\* The imperial couple lost their only son, *the Crown Prince Rudolph*, in a very sad manner a few years ago. II. Lond. News.

The last two days spent alone by Mary Vetsera and *the Crown Prince Rudolph*. Graph., No. 2267. 740a.

ii. \* *Prince Christian* was the sixth child of Duke Frederick William. Times.

\*\* On the death of *Hereditary Prince Alfred*, the Duke of Connaught at once occupied precisely the same position. Graph.

Princess. i. Those are the sons of *the Princess Pocahontas*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. VII, 70.

*The Princess Alexandra* was provided with an English nurse. Graph.

*The Princess Alexandra* is by two distinct lines of descent the great-great-great granddaughter of George II. Times.

Prince Waldemar is married to *the Princess Marie d'Orleans*. II. Lond. News.

ii. *Princess Dagmar* was married to the Tsar Alexander III. Id.

*Princess Marie* is most affable and engaging. Graph.

Note. The following quotation exhibits varied practice, for which there is no apparent reason:

The Queen and *the Princess Beatrice* were present on Saturday at the Confirmation of the Hereditary Grand Duke of Hesse at Darmstadt. Her Majesty also attended the christening of the infant child of *Princess Louis* of Battenberg, and was one of the sponsors. Times, Weekly Ed., 1885, May 1, 1.1)

Queen. i. This ground belongs to him no more than it does to me, but to *the Queen Elizabeth*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XXI, 162a.

Hitherto *the Queen Alexandra* has been regarded more or less as an ornamental asset of the Empire. Rev. of Rev., CXcII, 583.

ii. *Queen Alexandra*... drove to Marlborough House. Times. No. 1819, 900c.

Senor. The Infanta Eulalia has telegraphed to *Senor Canalejas*, the Spanish premier, as follows. Times, No. 1823, 976d.

**Sheik.** What would the Turkish Ambassador think if *the Sheik-ul-Islam* was portrayed by Mr. Dan Leno in a patter-song at the London Pavilion? *Times*.

**Signor.** i. *The Signor Colonna* has taken up my old calling, and turned a wit. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, IV, Ch. II, 160.

ii. *Signor Alberto Randegger* had a career of extraordinary interest. *Times*, No. 1825, 1032c.

**signora.** Having written his letter to Mrs. Bold, he proceeded to call upon *the Signora Neroni*. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XXVII, 225.

He went to his villa in the Dordogne, where *the Signora Stella Ballerina* awaited him. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5382, 2c.

**Squire.** She created so much confusion in the congregation, that if *Squire Allworthy* had not silenced it, it would have interrupted the service. FIELDING, *Tom Jones*, IV, Ch. X, 55b.

**Sultan.** i. 300.000000 Mahomedans reverence in him, *the Sultan Abdul Hamid*, their Khalif. *Times*.

ii. By this scimitar, — | That slew the Sophy, and a Persian prince | That won three fields of *Sultan Solymán*, — [etc.]. *Merch.* II, 1, 26.

Mohammed V... became Sultan of Turkey after the deposition of his elder brother, *Sultan Abdul Hamid II*. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3834, Sup. VIII. Negotiations were carried on by Dr. Herzl with *Sultan Abdul Hamid*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6329, 8c.

**Viscount.** Among those present were *Viscount Chelsea*. *Times*.

*Viscount Morley* explained to the House of Lords the large scheme of representative government which we are about to concede to India. *Westm. Gaz.*

**Titles before proper names containing the French *de*:**

i. It must be owned that the 'Vieux Souvenirs' of *the Prince de Joinville* contain a large admixture of small beer. *Graph.*<sup>1)</sup>

Madame the Stael had fallen out with *the Viscount de Choiseul*. *Titbits*.<sup>1)</sup> Last week it was announced that *the Comte de Paris* was lying seriously ill at Stowe House. *Graph*.

ii. *Baron de Courcel* is well acquainted with English affairs and statesmen. *Graph.*<sup>1)</sup>

*Count de Francigny* was an old friend of my brother's. *BARONESS BLOOMSFIELD, Reminiscences*.<sup>1)</sup>

**Titles before proper names containing the German *von*:**

i. *The Baron Von Koëldwethout*, of Grogzwig in Germany, was as likely a young baron as you would wish to see. *Dick.*, *Nich. Nickl.*, 34a.

ii. Two more volumes contain the essays, speeches and memoirs of *Count von Moltke*.<sup>1)</sup>

55. When adjectives not belonging to the title, precede the combinations mentioned in the preceding §§, the definite article is used under the same conditions as before proper names standing by themselves. (28.)

i. Take from me the same horse that was given him by *the good Bishop Jewel*. *GOLDSM.*, *Vic.*, Ch. III, (247).

If my servants have too little wages, or any husband too much wife: let them repair to *the noble Serjeant Kite*. *FARQUHAR, The Recruiting Officer*, I, I, (251).

Four of the London hospitals have come in for a considerable windfall under the will of *the late Professor Hughes*.

1) SCHULZE, *Eng. Stud.*, XII.

ii. "Now you have no more money to play with, you can come and play with us!" cries *fond Lady Fanny*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LVI, 578.

56. When the common noun does not belong to any of the groups mentioned above in 53—54, the definite article is regularly used, both in Dutch and in English.

**child.** Miss Clairmont had known Byron in London, and their acquaintance now ripened into an intimacy the fruit of which was *the child Allegra*. SYMONDS, Shelley, Ch. IV, 88.

**hero.** Honour and gratitude which they were conferring on *the hero Roberts*. Times.

**man.** Now *the man Moses* was very meek, above all the men which were upon the face of the earth. BIBLE, Numbers, XII, 3.

**woman.** As to *the woman Gudgeon*, who laid claim to be her mother, he thought she was suffering from a delusion. TH. WATTS DUNTON, Aylwin, XVI, 458.

Note. With *widow* however, practice is variable.

- i. Surely that's better than the careless manner in which *the widow Ochre* caulks her wrinkles. SHER., *School for Scandal*, II, 2, (379).

Now in this matter *the widow Bold* was scandalously ill-treated by her relatives. TROL., *Barch. Tow.*, Ch. XIV, 112.

*The Widow Blackacre*, beyond comparison Wycherley's best comic character, is the Countess in Racine's 'Plaideurs'. MAC., *Com. Dram.*, (578b).

He (sc. Uncle Toby) is celebrated for his love passages with *the widow Wadman*. WEBST., s. v. *Uncle Toby*.

- ii. Enter Captain Driver, teased and pulled apart by *widow Locket*. THOM. SOUTHERN, *Oroonoko*, I, 2, (163b).

Two little boys had stolen some apples from Farmer Benson's orchard, and some eggs had been missed off *Widow Hayward's* stall. Mrs. GASK., *Cranf.*, Ch. XI, 207.

57. The generalizing or specializing definite article is dispensed with before certain plural nouns of a more or less vague meaning, when they assume the character of indefinite pronouns. (9, *b*, 2; 13; 14; 31, *b*.) This applies especially to:

- a*) the colloquial *chaps*, *fellows* and *persons*, and to the literary *men*;  
*b*) *affairs*, *matters* and *things*.

Also the collective noun *people*, which in every respect is dealt with as a plural, is an instance of the same practice. In colloquial language *people* is often replaced by *folk(s)*. See Ch. XXVI, 10.

The above nouns occur chiefly as subjects, less frequently as objects, and most of them very rarely, or not at all, in other grammatical functions. *Affairs*, however, is mostly found after a preposition.

*a*) **chaps.** *Chaps* don't dine at the West-End for nothing. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. IV, 46.

**fellows.** *Fellows* will understand that I don't care to have you come out on a troop-ship. SARAH GRAND, *The Heavenly Twins*, I, 145.

**folks.** *Folks* don't use to meet for amusement with fire-arms. SHER., *Riv.*, V, 1.

**men.** \* Your face, my thane, is as a book where *men* | May read strange matters. Mac b., I, 5, 63.

*Men* at some time are masters of their fates. JUL. CÆS., I, 2, 139.



"'Tis not for me to state how these doubts arise," said Douglas — "but *men* say the eagle was killed with an arrow fledged from his own wing". SCOTT, *Fair Maid*, Ch. XXXIII, 353.

*Men* said that he was proud. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 6a.

*Men* have asked themselves, much more insistently than heretofore, why, if the self-governing principle has had this magical effect in South Africa, and, in a previous generation, in Canada, we should not try what it may do for Great Britain and Ireland. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5454, 1b.

\*\* Honours and wealth change *men's* natures. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XII, 172. All this did not alter the settled conviction on *men's* minds. *TROL., Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XXXVII, 358.

**people.** \* I don't know whether there are ghosts or not, but *people* say they've seen them. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. X, 186.

*People* always recognize the ghost instantly, if it's that of a person they've known. *Id.*, Ch. X, 187.

*People* can be divorced for incompatibility of temper. *Id.*, Ch. XII, 223.

\*\* Have you been mentioning that to *people*? W. PETT RIDGE, *New Scheme* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4983, 3c).

**persons.** (unusual.) Do no let *persons* on this account suppose that Mrs. Robarts was a tuft-hunter, or a toad-hunter. *TROL., Framl. Pars.*, Ch. X, 101.

*Persons* are requested not to sit upon the pier. Inscription on Greenwich Pier.

b) **affairs.** Such was the state of *affairs*, as the carriage crossed Westminster-bridge. THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 54.

But a great and sudden turn in *affairs* was at hand. MAC., *Clive*, (527b).

The inhabitants of the village, while discussing the position of *affairs*, had suddenly been startled by the appearance of six mounted Uhlans. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. V, 45.

**matters.** \* Should *matters* become yet more distracted here... we will provide for your safe-conduct to Germany. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XVIII, 243.

*Matters* are not so bad as that. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 18.

\*\* It is difficult to believe that Mr. Asquith and his colleagues can feel that the result of the elections will justify them in pushing *matters* to extremes. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5219, 16c.

**things.** \* After a while *things* went so far that the Fenian leaders in the United States issued an address. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXX, 314.

*Things* jarred between them frequently. MRS. WARD, *Marc.*, III, 102.

*Things* are coming to a pretty pass. H. J. BYRON, *Our Boys*.

I have seen a pretty while how *things* are going on here. READE, *It is never too late to mend*, I, Ch. I, 18.

\*\* We looked at *things* through a telescope. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. II, 12b.

We have no desire to exaggerate the dangers inseparable from such a state of *things*. *Times*.

Mr. Roosevelt is making *things* hum in American politics. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5406, 1b. (= Dutch: *brengt leven in de brouwerij*.)

She hadn't the energy to go about and do *things*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 58, 199.

Note. The same usage is often extended to other nouns, especially, the following among, perhaps, many others (12—14):

a) **ministers.** From questions recently put to *Ministers* in Parliament. *Times*. Mr. Redmond feels for instance that an honest pledge on the part of *Ministers* to dedicate this Parliament to the House of Lords question is not sufficient for him. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5231, 1c. (Thus, probably, the invariable practice in this paper.)

**members.** *Members* were really astonished at this display of feeling from a statesman who has the reputation of being extremely reticent. *Id.*

**parties.** \* *Parties* in the House are balanced pretty much as they were in the last Chamber. Graph.

\*\* Either the Irish question must be settled by a deal between *parties*, or the Government must take vigorous measures. Westm. Gaz., No. 6383, 1c.

**politicians.** Congress will not meet till December, and *politicians* are still making holiday. Graph.

**voters.** *Voters* went early to the polls, and hurried away to make holiday in the fine weather. Graph.

Note. Of particular interest is the frequent *noble lords*, as in:

They had mingled their tears with those of *noble lords* opposite in regard to the brevity of the time given to that House for discussion. LORD CREWE, Speech.

The amount of discussion which that measure had received both in and out of Parliament, enabled *noble lords* opposite to decide to throw the Bill out. Ib.

Fortunately, although *noble lords* sometimes say very nearly winged words to each other, human emotions and passions seem to be much more under restraint in the Upper than in the Lower House. Westm. Gaz., No. 5107, 4a.

b) **appearances.** *Appearances* are at least against you. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIX, 146b.

My only chance of success depends on my keeping up *appearances*. MRS. ALEXANDER, A Life Interest, I, Ch. IV, 72.

**circumstances.** You will have me back again, should *circumstances* permit HARDY, Far from the madding Crowd, Ch. LI, 416.

The work is being pushed forward as quickly as *circumstances* permit. Times. His career owes nothing whatever to influence or to *circumstances*, apart from his brilliant ability. Westm. Gaz., No. 6365, 2b.

How could *circumstances* be so cruel to her? EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XXXV, 322.

Compare: The Greek and Turkish negotiations are supposed to be going on as smoothly as *the circumstances* permit. Westm. Gaz., No. 6365, 1c.

This will lead public opinion to consider the one and only form of relief which *the circumstances* permit. Ib., 2a.

**events.** Silent, therefore, and passive, Adrian waited the progress of *events*. LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. III, 88.

**times.** *Times* grew worse and worse with Rip van Winkle, as years of matrimony rolled on. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., V, 36.

*Times* have indeed changed, since the days when the decrees of the Medes and Persians altered not nor were changed. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 512a.

II. Sometimes the suppression may have been furthered by the nouns standing in juxtaposition in the same grammatical function.

The afternoon studies proceeded as on other afternoons, but neither *masters* nor *boys* felt at ease. MRS. WOOD, Orv. Col., Ch. III, 42.

Neither *things* nor *scholars* had shaken down into their routine. Ib., I, 15.

III. Even the presence of a specializing adjunct does not always cause the article to be used before these nouns. (12.)

a) **persons.** Cape politics had been so disagreeable a subject that *persons* in authority at the Colonial Office dismissed them from their minds. FROUDE, Oceana, Ch. III, 48.

**members.** *Members of the Opposition* saw, or thought they saw, a reflection of it in the exaggerated unconcern on the Ministerial benches. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, John Chilcote, M. P., Ch. I, 2.

b) **circumstances.** With the aid of a few cartloads of sand, and a little imagination they make the best of *circumstances* in their back garden. Punch.

Compare. If their action were criticized, it would, he felt sure, be remembered that *the circumstances* had presented considerable difficulties. Times, No. 1820, 919b.

Thereafter Mr. Long and he forsook the lobbies of the House, feeling that it was no place for them in *the circumstances*. *Ib.*

58. Certain nouns are apt to assume the character of indefinite numerals, and, consequently, to reject the indefinite article. This applies especially to:

**abundance.** According to MURRAY 'less correctly' used in reference to number.

There are *abundance* who want a morsel of bread for themselves and their families. FIELDING, *Amelia*.<sup>1)</sup>

Providence had enriched him with *abundance* of poor relations. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *The Spectre Bridegroom*, 154.

**galore.** Now commonly found after the noun modified. Compare *store*, below. According to MURRAY (s. v. *galore*) also: *in galore*.

*Galore* of alcohol to ratify the trade. RUXTON, *Life in Far West*, I, 21.<sup>1)</sup>

Anthological volumes *galore* fill the present writer's shelves. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 492, 139c.

**legion**, in allusion to Bible, Mark, V, 9: *My name is legion: for we are many*.

Of the Taylors the name is *legion*. *Times*.

Of this form of stanza (sc. the quatrain) the name is *legion*. TOM HOOD, *Eng. Versific.*, 33.

To those who believe in Father John — and their name is *legion* — the age of miracles is not yet over. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXX, 133a.

The number of student-clubs is *legion*. GÜNTHER, *A New Eng. Read.*, 92.

Note I. This *legion* is even used as a conjoint indefinite numeral.

When pouring o'er his *legion* slaves on Greece, The eastern despot bridged the Hellespont. SOUTHEY, *Joan of Arc*, X, 443.<sup>1)</sup>

The poor curate's wife with the *legion* family clothed from the odds and ends of her rich sister's cast-offs. C. JAMES, *Rom. Rigmarole*, 148.<sup>1)</sup>

II. The following application of *legion* appears to be infrequent:

In Austria, where the lecturer is *as legion*, nine times out of ten, be the subject what it may, he will drag in a reference to, or a digression on, England. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6153, 4b.

**multitude.** In this application, apparently, rare. The suppression of the article may be due to rhythmical reasons.

In *multitude* of counsellors there is safety. Bible, Proverbs, XXIV, 6.

**number.** Instances are rare, and seem to be entirely wanting in Late Modern English. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 277; ABBOT, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>3</sup>, § 84. Compare the Dutch *tal*, as in *tal van voorbeelden*.

Belike you slew *great number* of his people. *Twelfth Night*, III, 3, 29. Nor is this present Age void of *number* of Authors, who have written more on Architecture. GERBIER, *Counsel*.<sup>1)</sup>

**part.** I made *part* of the journey from Carlow to Naas with a well-armed gentleman from Kilkenny. THACK., *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 50.

*Part* of the service was intoned, *part* read, *part* sung. Mrs. Wood, *Orville College*, Ch. I, 15.

He had brought home a moderate fortune, *part* of which he expended in extricating his father from pecuniary difficulties and redeeming the family estate. MAC., *Clive*, (510b).

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.



Note I. *Part*, as used in these quotations, is practically equivalent to *some*. (Ch. XL, 179, *b*, Note II.) Thus in the two following quotations the two words are used in precisely the same connections:

I wish to spend *some* of the year in London. Mrs. WARD, *Marcella*, III, 244.  
It would only be for *part* of the year. *Ib.*

II. *Part* may even stand in the place of the conjoint *some*:

Meanwhile Pam had gone *part way* down the side of the cloister. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *What became of Pam*, Ch. IX, 64.

III. Sometimes *some part* is used in practically the same meaning as either *part* or *some*.

The Chase of Chaldicotes is to vanish from the earth's surface. *Some part* of it, however, is the private property of Mr. Sowerby. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. III, 19.

IV. The suppression of the article seems to be regular in the adverbial expression *in part* = partly. Observe *in whole* as the opposite of *in part*.

If the charge is proved either *in whole* or *in part*, we imagine the French public will show itself less sentimental in these matters than ourselves. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6377, 2c.

V. Also the collocations *great part*, *large part*, and, according to MURRAY, *most part*, sometimes have the character of indefinite numerals, and, consequently, may dispense with the indefinite article. The omission seems to be regular in the adverbial phrases in *great (large) part*. Compare for a *large (great) part*.

i. \* *Great part* of her (sc. England's) wealth is hidden underground. GÜNTHER, *Leerb.*, I. We were at Oxford *great part* of last week. WHEWELL, *Life* (1881), 512. 1)

\*\* The country (sc. Russia) is still semi-Asiatic in *great part*. Athen., No. 4482. 271b. They are in *large part* a stage army. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6005, 1b.

The year has been a bad one, but that is in *large part* due to the fact that in many trades increases in wages were long overdue. *Ib.*, 6377, No. 2c.

ii. \* Mrs. Gashleigh had lived a *great part* of her life in Devonshire. THACK., *A little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. II, (315).

The floods which have laid a *large part* of Paris under water, have driven thousands of persons from their homes. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5219, 2a.

These are the conditions in which a *large part* of the rural population live. *Ib.*, No. 6359, 1b.

\*\* He had played with secular politics for a *large part* of his life. *Ib.*, No. 6413, 2a.

Compare: During a *great portion* of the day, Mark found himself riding by the side of Mrs. Proudie. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. IV, 35.

V. When *part* is understood to indicate a distinctly detached portion, the indefinite article is used; but, as a comparison of the two following groups of quotations shows, the distinction between a *part* and *part* is often arbitrary.

i. Lambert was obliged to tell a *part* of what he knew about Harry Warrington. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XXVIII, 291.

William by a feint of flight drew a *part* of the English force from their post of vantage. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. II, § 4, 80.

Fragment as it (sc. Berwick) was, it was always viewed legally as representing the realm of which it had once formed a *part*. *Ib.*, Ch. IV, § 6, 216.

The South of Britain became a *part* of the Roman empire. GEORGE CRAIK, *Man. of Eng. Lit.*, 3.

Dr. Morris has already made the discrimination of the Middle English dialects a *part* of historical grammar teaching. SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, Pref. 10.

Explaining the etymology of grammatical terms... is really no more a *part* of grammar than the etymology of such a word as 'oxygen' is a *part* of chemistry. *Ib.*, 7.

It is not a *part* of primary and necessary morality that it is always wrong to hit a man. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3875, 128c.



It is a *part* of woman's innermost nature to give of herself to man. Eng. Rev., No. 28, 269.

- ii. Often, as *part* of his commercial training, a Liverpool youth will pass some years in a foreign land. ESCOTT, *England*, Ch. VI, 85.

I find it easier to imagine all that ugly past than you do, because I myself have been *part* of it. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*, Ch. XXVIII, 211.

They (sc. these ten volumes) form *part* of St. Martin's Illustrated Library. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 190a.

The Empire of which his country now forms *part*. Times.

They had played one of those tricks on the Opposition that have become *part* of their regular Parliamentary weapons. Id., No. 1823, 982d.

He conceives the Irish question as *part* of a big British Parliamentary problem. Westm. Gaz., No. 6371, 1b.

- VI. Sometimes we find the definite article absent before *greater part*.

She knew by heart | All Calderon and *greater part* of Lope. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, xi. After living *greater part* of my life in a poor working-class district, I am now residing in a genteel suburb. Westm. Gaz., No. 5613, 4a.

**plenty.** The suppression is now almost regular, the use of the indefinite article being chiefly met with in American writers. MURRAY.

- i. He has *plenty* of money.

- ii. Mr. Gunter, of Berkeley Square, supplied the ices, supper and footmen, — though of the latter Brough kept *a plenty*. THACK, *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. V, 50.

If her ladyship had six (sc. children), I've *a plenty* for them all. Id., Ch. XIII, 172.

*A plenty* of smoke was delivered from the council of three. Id., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXVI, 290.

Remember to let it have *a plenty* of gravel in the bottom of its cage. LONG-FELLOW, *Kavanagh*, 71.<sup>1)</sup>

Note I. *Plenty* is in no way to be distinguished from an indefinite numeral, when it throws off the preposition *of*. The practice seems to be quite usual in certain dialects. Thus in Modern Scotch: There were *plenty* folk ready to help. I know of *plenty* places to go to. MURRAY.

He'd *plenty* other childer. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. IX, 97.

Out into the darkness, out of night, | My flaring heart gave *plenty* light. MASEFIELD, *The Everlasting Mercy*, 76.

- II. This also applies to *plenty* when used predicatively. In this case it is even found occasionally in the comparative and superlative.

- i. If reasons were as *plenty* as blackberries. Henry IV, A, II, 2, 265.

And what may lawns, cypresses, and ribands fetch, where gold is so *plenty*? SCOTT, *Kenilw.*, Ch. I, 16.

They (sc. factory girls) can earn so much, when work is *plenty*. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. I, 7.

- ii. Wherever kicks and cuffs are *plentiest*. LE FANU, T. O'Brien, 84.<sup>1)</sup>

Poets would be *plentier*. LOWELL, *Study Wind*, 22.<sup>1)</sup>

III. Of *plenty* used as an adverb of degree, no further instance than the following has been found:

I'm seventeen, *plenty* old enough. BARONESS VON HUTTEN, *Pam.*, III, Ch. V, 134.

**ruck.** The suppression appears to be rare. No instances are given in MURRAY.

Th' carriages went bowling along toward her house, some w' dressed-up gentlemen like circus folk in 'em, and *ruck* o' ladies in others. Mrs. GASK., *Mary Barton*, Ch. IX, 94.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

**store.** Instances of suppression of the article are frequent enough in SHAKESPEARE, even when an adjective or *such* precedes. Late instances seem to be rare. FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 277.

I do nothing doubt you have *store* of thieves. *Cymb.*, I, 4, 107.

OCT. You may do your will, | But he's, (sc. Lepidus) a tried and valiant soldier.  
— ANT. So is my horse, Octavius; and for that, | I do appoint him *store* of provender. *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 1, 30.

See also *Taming of the Shrew*, III, 2, 188; *Two Gentlemen*, I, 1, 108; *Com. of Er.*, III, 1, 34.

Prithee, Vizard, can't you recommend a friend to a pretty mistress by the by, till I can find my own? You have *store*, I'm sure. FARQUHAR, *The Constant Couple*, I, 1, (51).

There were plenty of thistles, which indicates dry land; and *store* of fern, which is said to indicate deep land. SCOTT, *Pirate*, Ch. IV, 45.

To make the miracle the more, | Of these feathers there is always *store*. SOUTHEY, *Pilgr. to Compostella*, VII, 267. 1)

Ah, dear, he took me from a goodly house, | With *store* of rich apparel, sumptuous fare. TEN., *Mar. of Ger.*, 709.

Note. SCOTT also has *store* after the noun modified, as in:

And broadswords, bows and arrows *store*. *Lady*, I, xxvii.

The race of yore, | Who danced our infancy upon their knee, | And told our marvelling boyhood legends *store* [etc.]. *Ib.*, III, 1.

Observe also the absence of the indefinite article in the following quotations:

Of language he had more than *ordinary share*. DIXON, *Life of Wil. Penn.*, I, 33. 2)

The air was gay with bright-green parrots flitting about, — very mischievous they are, I am told, taking *large tithe* of the fruit. LADY BARKER, *Station Life in New Zealand*, 51. 2).

59. *Half* almost regularly loses the (in)definite article, not only when it assumes the character of an adverb of quantity or degree, as in *half the sum*, *half the men* (Ch. V, 16, Obs. VII), but also when it partakes of the nature of an absolute indefinite numeral, as in *half of the sum*, *half of the men*. (Compare *much of the sum*, *many of the men*.)

The preposition *of*, which is mostly dropped when a noun follows, is never suppressed before a personal pronoun, and rarely before a substantival demonstrative pronoun. Thus regularly *half of us* (*you or them*), not *\*half us* (*you or them*); *half of this* (*these, that or those*), rarely *half this* (*these, that or those*). Before a substantival clause (Ch. XV) *of* is regularly omitted, when the relative *what* is thrown off, while it is rarely dispensed with, when the relative is retained.

In the collocation *at half price*, *half* has the same meaning as in *half the sum*, notwithstanding the absence of the definite article before *price*, and may, therefore, be regarded as an adverb of degree or quantity. *Half* is a substantival indefinite numeral in such expressions as *too knowing* (*clever, wild, etc.*) *by half* = Dutch *veel te bij de hand* (*knap, wild, enz.*).

*Half* is also found preceded by the definite or indefinite article and followed by *of*, in which case it may be further modified by an adjective, as in *the (a) half of the estate which fell to his share*, *the*

1) MURRAY S. V. *more*, A, 1, g.

2) ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 38.

*latter half of the last century.* In this construction, which, so far as the definite article is concerned, is quite common, it denotes a detached portion of whatever is referred to; and is, of course, a pure noun. This holds true also when *one* as the alternative of *other* precedes, and *of* follows, as in *One half of the men were seriously ill, the other could not be prevailed upon to do any extra work.* It is but rarely and, apparently, only to meet the requirements of the metre that we find *half* preceded by the definite article (or some other modifier), while *of* is suppressed.

Compare also Ch. V, 15—16, and see ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 17; MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 180.

1) *half* not preceded by either article and not followed by *of*,

a) before a noun or the substitute of a noun: The silver rims won't sell for above *half the money.* GOLDSMITH, *Vicar.*

The first blow is *half the battle.* Id., *She Stoops to Conquer*, I, (181).

I believe she owns *half the stocks.* SHER., *Riv.*, I, 1.

I traversed *half the town* in search of it. Ib., I, 2.

How could he spare *half ten thousand pounds?* JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLIX, 298.

Then all the Cratchit family drew round the hearth in what Bob Cratchit called a circle, meaning *half a one.* DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 69.

I never gave more than six guineas for a shawl in all my life. And Cornelia never more than *half six.* MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, I, 39.

And yet she held him on delayingly . . . Trying his truth and his long-sufferance, | Till *half-another*, year had slipt away. TEN., *Enoch Arden*, 468.

A reprint of the 'Encyclopædia Britannica' at *half price.* II. Lond. News.

β) before a substantive clause without *what*: Christmas was upon them before *half she wanted to do* was accomplished. MRS. ALEXANDER, *For his Sake*, II, Ch. II, 34.

*Half they hear at public meetings* is false. Westm. Gaz., No. 5083, 16c.

γ) before a substantive clause with *what*: The estimates published in the papers place the value of the property destroyed at £ 140.000.000, or little more than *half what the South African war cost Great Britain.* Rev. of Rev., CCXXIX, 9b.

2) *half* not preceded by either article, but followed by *of*,

a) before a noun: Regan advised him to go home again with Goneril and live with her peaceably, dismissing *half of his attendants.* LAMB, *Tales, Lear*, 157.

The black cook spent *half of the day* at the street pump. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 114).

With that fortress *half of Silesia* . . . had been transferred to the Austrians. MAC., *Fred.*, (698b).

For *half of their fleet* to the right and half to the left were seen. TEN., *Revenge*, V.

Note the varied usage in: If she should ever wed, she was sure the lord to whom she gave her hand, would want *half her love, half of her care and duty.* LAMB, *Tales*, 148.

β) before a personal pronoun: "I drink your health with cheerfulness, Mrs. Mann;" and he swallowed *half of it.* DICK., *Ol. Twist*, Ch. II, 25.

*Half of you* will be dead this time next year. RUDY. KIPPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. XI, 155.

γ) before a substantive clause with *what*: I became sick before I had eaten *half of what I had bought.* DE QUINCEY, *Conf.*, Ch. II, 32.

There was never believing *half of what that Bob said.* THACK., *Sam. Titm.* Ch. II, 18.

- 3) *half* preceded by the definite article, but not followed by *of*: And *the half my men* are sick. TEN., *Revenge*, I, vi.  
And then will I... | Endow you with broad land and territory | Even to *the half my realm* beyond the seas. Id., *Lanc. and El.*, 953.
  - 4) *half* preceded by other modifiers than either article, but not followed by *of*: She did not understand *one-half the compliments* which he paid. THACK., *Van. Fair*, II, Ch. XXVIII, 305.  
It is impossible to muster *one-half the nominal strength* of the Unionists of all shades. Rev. of Rev., CXCVI, 341b.
  - 5) *half* preceded by either the definite or the indefinite article, and followed by *of*,
    - a) before a noun. She had not forgot *the half of the kingdom* which he had endowed her with. LAMB., *Tales*, *Lear*, 157.  
(He) left her *the half of his fortune*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. XCII, 979.
    - β) before a personal pronoun: i. I don't know how much money he has had from your governor, but this I can say, *the half of it* would make F. B. a happy man. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXV, 284.  
ii. I have asked about men in my company, and found that *a half of them* under the flags were driven thither on account of a woman. THACK., *Henry Esmond*, III, Ch. V, 36.
    - γ) before a demonstrative pronoun: If *the half of this* be true, I will turn Christian. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XIV, 60a.
    - δ) before a substantive clause with *what*: You have got *the half of what I have*. THACK., *Virg.*, Ch. LV, 568.
  - 6) *half* preceded by another modifier than either article and followed by *of*: *One half of the men* were seriously ill. MURRAY.
  - 7) *half* in the adverbial phrase *by half*: The other's economy in selling it (sc. the house) to him was more reprehensible by half. SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 2, (394).  
He is too moral *by half*, lb., IV, 3, (418).  
Bob was always too knowing *by half*. THACK., *Sam. Titm.*, Ch. II, 12.  
Note. On the analogy of *half-an-hour*, *quarter-of-an-hour* sometimes loses the indefinite article:  
*Quarter-of-an-hour* later the bell rang. JEROME, *Paul Kever*, I, Ch. III, 26a.  
Inject it (sc. the serum) three times a day, *quarter-of-an-hour* before meals. BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, I, 24.
60. Also *double* rejects the definite article, when its grammatical function is changed to that of an adverb of degree or a substantival indefinite pronoun. The preposition *of* is thrown out before nouns, but mostly retained before substantival pronouns. (Ch. V, 16, Obs. VIII). See also MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 180.
- i. The silver rims will sell for *double the money*. GOLDSMITH, *Vicar*.  
Instead of having *double the strength* of our opponent, it is doubtful if we shall have even the equivalent strength. Westm. Gaz., No. 4967, 1b.  
The majority which Mr. Asquith can claim is 275 and no more, and we shall not ask him to act, as if it were *double that number*. lb., No. 5237, 1b.  
His (sc. a railway porter's) fees from the public... are equivalent to doctor's fees in the second-class passengers, and *double* doctor's fees in the case of first. BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, Pref., 26.
  - ii. \* She enclosed *double of what* I had asked. DE QUINCEY, *Confessions* Ch. II 13.



\*\* In every instance I found the price would be almost *double what* I should have paid for the same thing in England. RITA, *America—Seen through English eyes*, Ch. II, 53.

The railway was badly built and cost *double what* was estimated. ATHEN., No. 4447, 62*b*.

- iii. You paid me extremely liberally for the lie in question; but I unfortunately have been offered *double* to speak truth. SHER., *School for Scand.*, V, 3, (435).

61. Many other nouns discard the article owing to a change of meaning. The discussion of the numerous cases that might be mentioned here, falls outside the scope of this book, belonging rather to the department of lexicography. A few instances must suffice. Compare 15, *a*; 36, *a*; 62; and also Ch. XXV, 27.

**ballet.** It was suggested in this place last night that *ballet* had been rather too much in evidence at Drury Lane. II. LOND. NEWS, No. 3875, 134*a*. (Compare: This has revived the taste for *the ballet* in England. *Ib.*, No. 3875, 135*a*).

**compliment.** Mr. Bonar Law also pays high *compliment* to the sincerity and courage of the Nationalists. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6371, 3*c*.

**head.** i. (He did not care) to what extent property was destroyed, or the pursuits of life suspended, so that he did but make *head* against the enemy. MAC., FRED., (698*a*).

- ii. The unexpected success of the original war with Turkey appears to have caused a deplorable loss of *head* among (the statesmen). WESTM. GAZ., No. 6288, 1*c*.

The man had heart as well as *head*. II. LOND. NEWS, No. 3884, 462*c*.

**leaf.** Three or four sycamore trees, which were in full *leaf*,... served to relieve the dark appearance of the mansion. SCOTT, ABBOT, Ch. IX, 92.

**outline.** All these things are made clear to us in broad *outline*. HUDSON, *Stud. of Lit.*, Ch. III, 248.

**rank.** Dr. Alfred Russel Wallace... takes *rank* as one of the greatest figures of the nineteenth century. WESTM. GAZ., No. 6377, 2*a*.

**tongue.** When papa opened the door, Chubby was giving *tongue* energetically. G. ELIOT, *Scenes*, I, Ch. II, 25.

Note. Thus also *to throw tongue*. FOWLER, *Concise Oxf. Dict.*

**tribute.** It is impossible to withhold respectful *tribute* to his extraordinary skill in turning events to his own advantage. WESTM. GAZ., No. 4977, 1*b*.

Compare: We are unwilling to conclude this notice of Professor Skeat's last piece of work without paying *a tribute* to the great services rendered by him to the study of English. SEDGEFIELD (*Mod. Lang. Rev.*, VIII, III, 295).

**way.** The king's resistance gave way. GREEN. 1)

Note. Thus also *to make way* (for others), *to make way* (= to make progress).

**word.** \* He had himself carried *word* of the catastrophe to the firm's lawyers the previous day. JOHN OXENHAM, *A Simple Beguiler*.

\*\* He had left *word* with little Jack that he was going a long walk. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hal.*, Ch. XV, 143.

\*\*\* Maria and Sylvia sent down *word* by the maid that they were tired that morning. JAMES PAYN, *That Friend of Sylvia's*.

\*\*\*\* He went on Tuesday, as I wrote you *word*. JANE AUSTEN, *Pride and Prej.*, Ch. XLVII, 279.

## THE ARTICLE SUPPRESSED FOR THE SAKE OF BREVITY.

62. Both the definite and the indefinite article are often omitted where, strictly speaking, they are required by the sense.

The suppression is mostly due to motives of economy, which urge speakers and writers to sacrifice all words of minor significance, but may also arise from the necessities of rhythm or metre or oratorical polish. (9, *d*; 15.) In many cases it may be a survival of the practice in the earlier stages of the language. (SWEET, *N. E. Gr.*, § 2061.)

Sometimes it is open to question whether it is the definite or indefinite article which is understood. In not a few cases also there is no reason to prevent us from assuming the omission of a weak possessive pronoun. The reader is, therefore, cautioned to consult also Ch. XXXIII, where the supposed omission of the latter is discussed.

In many cases the suppression causes the noun to appear in a modified meaning, or, contrariwise, the modified meaning causes the suppression of the article. See the preceding §.

## SUPPRESSION OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

63. The suppression of the *definite* article is chiefly met with, when the noun stands without any individualizing adjunct, and is:

- a) the non-prepositional object, or the subject of a passive sentence.
- b) part of a prepositional word-group.

In either position the noun often forms a kind of unit with a preceding verb, e. g.: *to balance accounts*, *to take into account*. (9, *d*.) Of the innumerable cases which offer themselves for discussion, we can present only a few, which seem of particular interest. Some of the instances of suppression mentioned in 15 might also find a place in this §. Compare also MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 213; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 35; for instances in SHAKESPEARE especially FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 267.

**account(s).** a) *to keep accounts*. FOWLER, *Concise Oxf. Dict.*  
*to balance or square accounts*. *lb*.

b) \* A very considerable proportion are shipped *for account* of the manufacturers. T. TOOKE, *Currency*, 102.

\*\* The Free Traders are so benighted that they do not take *into account* the amount of internal trade. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6365, 2b.

The Sultan has to take *into account* the fact that [etc.]. *Times*.

Those individuals may almost be left *out of account*. *lb*.

Note. MACAULAY has *to take into the account* and *to leave out of the account*, probably regularly, instead of *to take into account* and *to leave out of account*, the phrases given by MURRAY, s. v. *account*, 14.

We must take *into the account* the liberty of discussion. *Mac., Southey*, (118b). (Thus passim in this essay.)

Nor did any landowner take them (sc. the veins of copper) *into the account* in estimating the value of his property. *Id.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 311.

These transactions.. must not be left *out of the account*. *lb.*, III, Ch. VIII, 132.

**alarm.** a) i. The timid soul, *taking alarm* at once, acceded to his desire to stay at home. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 32.

Voltaire's sensitive vanity began *to take alarm*. *Mac., Fred.*, (679b).

ii. The more bigoted of the clergy were quick *to take alarm*. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VI, § IV, 309.

I cannot find it in my heart *to take alarm*. Eng. Rev., Febr. 1912, 486.  
Note I. MURRAY only has *to take the alarm*, and this seems to be the ordinary expression. After *to give* and *to raise* the article seems to be rarely, if ever, dispensed with.

He flung the sentinel over the ramparts, just as he was going *to give the alarm*. DICK., Adventures of a Galley-Slave.

Ryder instantly *gave the alarm*. CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., Blue Carb. You rifled the jewel case, *raised the alarm*. Ib.

II. Very rarely the indefinite article is used after these verbs.

She... ran to Coggan's, the nearest house, and *raised an alarm*. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. XXXII, 245.

**anchor.** a) \* They're *heaving anchor*! Mrs. GASK., Mary Barton, Ch. XXVIII, 278. Going on board they *hove anchor*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVI, 132b.

\*\* He immediately *weighed anchor* for Deal. Westm. Gaz., No. 5036, 4b.

Last Saturday the steamship Medina, having on board their Majesties, ... *weighed anchor* at Portsmouth. Times, No. 1820, 922d.

Note. Thus also regularly *to cast anchor* and *to drop anchor*, but *to slip the anchor* (= to let the anchor go by letting the cable slip), *the ship drags her anchor*. MURRAY.

b) \* A little shallop lay | *At anchor* in the flood. TEN., In Mem., CIII, 20.

A ship rides *at anchor*, when it is secured at its moorings. Harmsw. Enc. s. v. *anchor*.

\*\* To anchor = to cast anchor, to come *to anchor*. MURRAY.

Note. Also *to come to an anchor*, as in:

Here we were obliged to come *to an anchor*. DEFOE, Rob. Crusoe, 8.

A great steamer came *to an anchor* off the town. Three Pretty Maids.<sup>1)</sup>

**arms.** a) Bavaria *took up arms*. MAC., Fred., (668b).

Note. MURRAY, s. v. *arm* 4, 5 and 6 has: *to carry arms* (= to wage war), *to take up arms*, *to bear arms* (= to serve as a soldier) *to lay down arms*; *to order arms*, *to port arms*, *to present arms*, *to shoulder arms*, *to slope arms*, *to trail arms*; and s. v. *change*, 9: *to change arms*.

b) \* All the country and Europe were *in arms*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.

\*\* *To arms!* the fierce Virago cries. POPE, Rape, V, 37.

Were he himself the son of a belted Earl, he could not be better trained *to arms*. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. II, 23.

The whole force stood *to arms* half an hour before daybreak. Times. (= Dutch *stand in het geweer*).

The infantry stood *to arms* on the occasion of Columbus's remains being reinterred in Seville Cathedral. II. Lond. News.

Note. Thus also *to rise in arms*, *to be up in arms*, *under arms*, *to appeal to arms*, *a passage of (or at) arms*, *an assault of (or at) arms*; *man of arms*, later *man-at-arms*, (one practised in war, a warrior), *man-in-arms* (armed man); but: *Stand to your arms!* (i. e. in order of battle, with arms presented).

**bank.** b) Such men as Mills and Hodson... offer help to a drowning man only when he has struggled *to bank*. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. VIII, 90.

**battle.** a) Edward resolved *to give battle*. GREEN.<sup>2)</sup>

Note. MURRAY, s. v. *battle*, 11, has *to have*, *keep*, *make*, *smite*, *strike*, *battle* (all obs.); *to bid* (obs.), *offer*, *refuse*, *accept*, *take* (arch.), *battle*; *to join battle*; also, *to do battle*, (= to fight); *to give battle* (= to attack, engage).

b) Far liefer had I gird his harness on him, | And ride with him *to battle* and stand by. TEN., Mar. of Ger., 94.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG, Taalst., X.

<sup>2)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, Wis. Gram., § 279.

The Liberals will go forth *to battle* with a foregone assurance of victory. Rev. of Rev.

**block.** *b)* i. But the woman answered that so fine a head should never come to *block*. MAX. PEMB., *I crown thee King*, Ch. IV, 45.

ii. It was by bills of attainder... that the great nobles were brought *to the block*. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 1, 341.

The King's uncle, the Earl of Kent, was actually brought *to the block*. *Ib.*, Ch. IV, § 4, 215.

Note. The omission appears to be rare.

**blush.** *b)* At *first blush* it may seem not only necessary, but even indecent, to discuss such a proposition as the elevation of cruelty to the rank of a human right. BERN. SHAW, *The Doctor's Dilemma*, Pref.

Note. MURRAY has *at*, *on*, etc. (*the*) *first blush* (= at the first glance). In none of his quotations is the article absent.

**board.** *b)* He volunteered to keep watch and ward *on board* till noon. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVII, 133*b*.

Note. Thus also *within board*, *without board*, *over board* (rarely *over the board*); but *by the board*. The phrase *above board* (often hyphenated) in the sense of *open(ly)* also regularly without the article.

**book.** *a)* Johnson will repeat to me to-morrow morning before breakfast, *without book*,... the first chapter of the Epistle of Saint Paul to the Ephesians. DICK., *Domb.*, Ch. XII, 107.

Note. MURRAY, *s. v. book*, 14 and 15, has *by (the) book* (= in set phrase) *to bring to book* (= to bring to account).

**boot.** *b)* He is as proud and vindictive as a hundred Douglasses and a hundred devils *to boot*. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXI, 221.

Note. *To the boot*, and *into the boot*, according to MURRAY (*s. v. boot*, 1*b*), are Scotticisms.

(You are) on the point of marrying your only daughter to a beggarly Jacobite bankrupt, the inveterate enemy of your family *to the boot*. SCOTT, *Bride of Lam.*, Ch. XXI, 220.

**bottom.** *a)* I do not believe we have *touched bottom*; I believe the reduction will go on. *Pall Mall Gaz.*, 1886, 22 April, 11/2.

He (sc. Goldsmith) must indeed *have touched bottom* at Peckham, if Paternoster Row was an improvement upon it. RICH. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsm.*, Ch. VI, 74.

*b)* At *bottom* the character was severe and stern. *Truth*, No. 472, 650*b*.

The world is good at *bottom*. *Times*, No. 1832, 111*d*.

Note. With *at bottom* (= in reality, as distinguished from superficial appearances) compare *to be at the bottom of* (= to be the real author or source of), as in: The Jesuits were *at the bottom* of the scheme. MAC., *Hist.*, I, 387.<sup>1)</sup>

For *at bottom* MURRAY gives *at the bottom* as a variant, but instances of the latter appear to be rare.

**bulk.** *b)* Such knowledge can be obtained only by personal inquiry, directed not to men *in bulk*, but to the individuals who make up the mass. *Times*, No. 1822, 963*b*. Note. Thus also *to sell in bulk* (= in large quantities, as it is in the hold). FLÜGEL has *by the bulk* (= im Ganzen, im Durchschnitt, durchgängig, in Bausch und Bogen). Compare also *in the lump*, *in the mass*.

**channel.** *b)* The flood was making strongly *up channel*. BLACKMORE, *The Maid of Sker*, I, 16.<sup>2)</sup>

**character.** *b)* \* But, Moses! would not you have him run out a little against the annuity bill? That would be *in character*, I should think? SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 1, (390).



She can do justice to it (sc. the Ode to an Expiring Frog), sir. She will repeat it *in character*, sir, to-morrow morning. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XV, 129.

\*\* It is always self-ignorance that leads a man to act *out of character*. G. MASON, *Self-Knowl.*, I, IV, 41.<sup>1)</sup>

**circuit.** *b)* Pen's neighbours, the lawyers, were gone *upon circuit*. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. IX, 97.

**country.** *b)* He wrote to the chaps at school about his top-boots, and his fêats *across country*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 33.

He set out for a long aimless ride *across country*. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. I, 15.

**court.** *b)* She was fined £ 250 .... for contempt of court. II. *Lond. News*, No. 3815, 830a.

**daggers.** *b)* Was Marston still *at daggers drawn* with his rich uncle? R. B. BROUGH, *Marston Lynch*, XXIV, 257.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. The phrase *at daggers drawn* seems to have been evolved from (*at*) *daggers* (or *daggers'*) *drawing*, an expression which appears to have gone out of use. MURRAY. A quarrel in a tavern where all were *at daggers drawing*. SWIFT, *Drapier's Let.*, VII.<sup>1)</sup>

*At daggers' points* is an infrequent variant of *at daggers drawn*.

Five minutes hence we may be *at daggers' points*. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. XXX, 397a.

**date.** *b)* There is preserved at the back of a Lincoln corporation minute-book, *under date* of the sixth of Queen Elizabeth, a list of stage properties. *Athen.*, No. 4477, 166b.

**day.** *b)* Halbert was only awakened by the dawn of day. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XX, 232. The first sacrifice was offered at the very peep of day. J. PARKER, *Apost. Life*, I, 118.<sup>1)</sup>

The classes of passengers will vastly vary according to the time of day. GÜNTHER, *Leerboek*, 74. (Compare: By the clock we tell the time of the day. *ib.*, 32.)

Though I waited at every hour of day and far into the night, no lightfootstep came to meet me. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. XXXVI, 216.

Note. The article is practically regularly dispensed with in expressions denoting a point of time.

**ear.** *a)* He... even went the length of offering to pitch his broad-brimmed hat and many-buttoned soutane into the bag... if only she would *give ear* to him. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. III, 23.

Some men of sober judgment *lent unwilling ear* to these reports. DIXON, *Life of Wil. Penn.*, II, 78.<sup>2)</sup>

*b)* \* He must learn to recognize each sound *by ear*. SWEET, *Prim. of Phon.*, § 1. To sing or play *by ear*: i.e. without the aid of written music. MURRAY.

\*\* He had played it *from ear*. EL. GLYN, *The Reason why*, Ch. X, 85.

Compare: To write down sounds *from hearing*. SWEET, *Prim. Phon.*, § 59.

**earth.** *b)* i. \* They must infallibly have all gone rolling over and over together, until they reached the confines of *earth*. DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XIV, 119.

But to return to the things and thoughts of *earth*. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. III, 88.

The rulers of *earth* were fain to swim with the stream. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hyp.*, Pref.

\*\* Nothing *on earth* can give me a moment's uneasiness. SHER., *Riv.* II, I, (227).

Dare any soul *on earth* breathe a word against the most angelical of women?

THACK., *Van. Fair*, Ch. XVIII, 188.

Now, why *on earth* should you be glad? PUNCH.

Better than aught else *on earth*. RID. HAG., *The Brethren*, Ch. II, 20.

\*\*\* When the storm-time comes, the lower growths grimp close to *earth* and go unscathed, and the graceful palm may be laid low. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. IV, 34.

1) MURRAY.

2) ELLINGER, *Verm. Beiträge*, 38.

- ii. \* Certainly beyond the river, which was the end of all the earth, lived the Bad Men. RUDY. KIPL., *Wee Willie Winkie*.

\*\* I love my cousin here better than aught else upon the earth. RID. HAG., *The Brethren*, Ch. II, 20.

I was not wanted in heaven or upon the earth. JEROME, Paul Kever, Ch. I, 14a. Note. The suppression of the article would appear to be the rule after (*upon*), regular in the emotional *on earth* in negative and interrogative sentences. (Ch. XLI, 10, Obs. III and IV.) Also after *to* the dropping may be practically regular. When, however, no relation of place is expressed, as after *of*, the omission is less usual. Compare 17. Observe that there is no analogous suppression of the article before *globe* and *world*, which are often used in practically the same meaning.

**edge.** b) He continually keeps his reader *on edge*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6029, 9c. Note. Thus also *to set on edge*.

**elbow(s).** b) \* Pay that hardly keeps him in *at elbows*. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XXXVIII, 281.

\*\* Bessie had seen him out *at elbows* before. Id., *Bessie Costrel*, 63.

**end.** b) Each trunk is made to stand *on end*. Graph., No. 2271, 964.

**ends.** a) Many stories are told of the stern economy which the young couple had to practise to make *ends* meet. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 474, 713c.

Note. The ordinary expression is *to make both ends meet*.

**expectation.** a) The second ballots in France on Sunday exactly fulfilled *expectation*. Graph.

Sir Oliver Lodge's address . . . has not disappointed *expectation*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6329, 2b.

Note. The construction without the article (or possessive pronoun) is not mentioned in MURRAY. It is hardly necessary to say that the possessive pronoun is frequently met with.

b) Against (*beyond*, *contrary to*) *expectation* the man turned up at the right moment.

**fashion.** b) i. \* In true English *fashion* they won their markets at the point of the sword. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XVIII, 135a.

\*\* To be *in* or *out of* *fashion*. To bring, come or grow *into* *fashion*. To go *out of* *fashion*. MURRAY, s. v. *fashion*, 11.

The St. Mildred race used to be so much more *in* *fashion*. MISS YONGE, *Heir of Redc.*, I, Ch. I, 8.

- ii. \* Lord Mayor's Day was observed on Wednesday in London *in the traditional* *fashion*. Times.

They opened the shells by fire, instead of leaving them to decay gradually *after the Arabian* *fashion*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 97a.

\*\* He dressed usually *in the Spanish* *fashion*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. II, 76b.

Note. To all appearance *fashion* stands with or without the article in the sense of *manner*, and to dispense with it in the sense of *vogue* (= Dutch *zwa ng*). When denoting a mode or style of dress, furniture, speech, etc., as in the phrases *to lead* or *set the* *fashion*, it is the *fashion*, the article seems to be used regularly. Compare MURRAY, s. v. *fashion*, 11 and 10.

**favour.** b) He was *out of* *favour* at Court. Athen., No. 4477, 165c.

Note. Thus also *to be in* *favour*.

**flank.** b) They were to attempt their original plan of landing to the westward of the town and taking it *in* *flank*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 142b.

**flight.** *To take* *flight*. MURRAY, s. v. *flight*, 2.

Note. Rarely with the article: My juvenile *takes the* *flight*, and leaves me here. SCOTT, *Mon.*, Ch. XXVII, 288.

Both phrases, that with and without the article, are uncommon, the ordinary expression being *to take to* *flight*.

*b*) Thisbe, arriving first, perceived a lioness, which had just torn to pieces an ox, and, therefore, took to flight. DEIGHTON, Note to Mids., I, 2, 12.

Note. Thus also: to betake oneself to flight, to put to flight, to turn to flight (= to cause to flee).

*grace.* *a*) At last the dishes were set on, and grace was said. DICK., Christm. Car. 5, III, 67.

*guard.* *a*) \* I kept guard at intervals over Hector's room. MRS. CRAIK, A Hero, 93.

\*\* The two young Cratchits, mounting guard upon their posts, crammed spoons into their mouths, lest they should shriek for goose. DICK., Christm. Car. 5, III, 67.

Let an intelligent policeman be told off to mount guard. PUNCH, 1872, 21 Sept. 116 l.

\*\*\* Her dependants one after another relieved guard. THACK., Henry Esmond, I, Ch. IV, 32.

*b*) The Kaiser ... has ... drawn public attention to the misgivings and apprehensions which prevail in military circles in Germany as to dangers against which they need to be on guard. REV. of REV., CCXXX, 97b.

Note. The ordinary practice is to place the possessive pronoun before guard: to be, stand or lie (upon one's guard; to put or set a person on his guard. The possessive pronoun is regular in off one's guard.

*hand.* *b*) \* He had promised to be at hand in case anything was needed. EDNA LYALL, A Knight Errant, Ch. XXXVIII, 375.

The hour was at hand to which Campion had been looking forward so impatiently. ANSTEY, A Fallen Idol, Ch. VI, 86.

The man with whom the Colonial Office deals at first hand. SPECTATOR.

The custom of adopting Latin words at second hand. BEADLEY, The Making of Eng., Ch. III, 93.

\*\* He was brought up by hand. DICK., Ol. Twist, Ch. II, 22.

\*\*\* By this time he had himself pretty well in hand. EDNA LYALL, A Knight Errant, Ch. XXIX, 272.

This will be done with much greater ease, if the matter is taken in hand at an early stage. TIMES.

Orders will only be executed to the amount of cash in hand. WHITELEY.

\*\*\*\* What have you on hand just now? CON. DOYLE, Sherl. Holm., I, 106.

\*\*\*\*\* He was executed out of hand. HUXLEY, Lect. and Es., 113b, N.

The Turkish troops have got completely out of hand. REV. of REV.

\*\*\*\*\* The first that comes to hand. GOLDSMITH, Good-nat. man, III.

The latest news to hand is [etc.]. DAILY TEL.

*horse.* *b*) I must be on horse before cock-crow. SCOTT, Mon., Ch. XXXIV, 369.

*hounds.* *b*) He had lived, all his life, a country gentleman, ... riding to hounds and shooting all things that were to be shot in their season. W. J. LOCKE, The Glory of Clem. Wing, Ch. III, 44.

*house.* *a*) Lady Ethelinda Montfichet had kept house for her father. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. VII, 71.

Note. Compare to keep the house = to stay in the house, as in sickness.

*key.* *b*) The excitement of the departure puts him in key for that of the arrival. STEPHENSON, Walking Tours.

*leaf.* *b*) The French Renaissance put forth their finest flowers, before the Elizabethan era was well in leaf. SIDNEY LEE, The French Renaissance in England, I, Ch. I, 6.

*length.* *b*) \* While stretched at length upon the floor, [Again I fought each combat o'er. SCOTT, Marm., III, Intr. viii.

\*\* She now took the occasion of a momentary amelioration in Arthur's disease to write to him at length. LYTTON, Night and Morn., 479.

\*\*\* At length she spoke, "O Enoch! you are wise". TEN., En. Ard., 210.

Note. For *at length* in the first application modern practice mostly has *at one's full length*. For *length* in the third application Early Modern English also had *at the length*: *At the length* truth will out. *Merch. of Ven.*, II, 2, 72.

**letter.** *b*) \* What he proposes carries out his promises *in letter* and in spirit. *Westm. Gaz.*

Sir Robert Peel's apostrophe to the Conservatives was reproduced in spirit if not *in letter* by Mr. Balfour in his speech at the Primrose League demonstration at Hatfield. *Graph*.

\*\* Pres. Wilson's pledge... will be kept *in the letter* — but only *in the letter*. *Spectator* (*Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6383, 16c).

Note. *In letter* in this application is pronounced archaic by MURRAY, s.v. *letter*, 5; but seems common enough in conjunction with *in spirit*. The phrase *in the letter* is not mentioned by MURRAY.

Note also: *to the letter*, as in: This threat was executed *to the letter*. *LYTTON*, *Rienzi*, II, Ch. VIII, 104.

**measure.** *b*) \* My Lady was once vexed *beyond measure*. *BLACK*, *Adv. Phaeton*, XXXI, 414. <sup>1)</sup>

\*\* In Scotland grain used to be sold *by measure* alone. *STEPHENS*, *Bk. Farm*, II, 394. <sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* The suit is more likely to be bought ready-made than 'made *to measure*'. *MAYHEW*, *London Lab.*, I, 476 2. <sup>1)</sup>

**mode.** *b*) At any rate, card-playing is *out of mode*. *THACK.*, *Virg.*, Ch. XXIV, 253. Note. Thus also *in mode*. According to MURRAY (s.v. *mode*, 10), the definite article may be used in these phrases, which are now obsolete.

**night.** *b*) Wo buys flowers at this time *of night*? *GAISWORTHY*, *The Pigeon*, I, (10). Note. What has been said of *day* also applies m.m. to *night*.

**occasion.** *a*) He *took occasion* to inquire about the portrait that hung against the wall. *WASH. IRV.*, *Dolf Heyl* (*STOF.*, *Handl.*, I, 144).

He *had taken occasion* to express his opinion of Lady Bracknell in the most unequivocal terms. *NORRIS*, *My Friend Jim*, Ch. XVIII, 109.

Who knew the seasons when *to take* | *Occasion* by the hand. *TEN.*, *To the Queen*. Compare: She now *took the occasion* of a momentary amelioration in Arthur's disease to write to him at length. *LYTTON*, *Night and Morn.*, 479.

On returning to the inn, Dr. Riccabocca *took the occasion* to learn from the innkeeper... such particulars as he could collect. *Id.*, *My Novel*, I, Ch. IX, 33. I *seized the occasion* of a promenade. *THACK.*, *Henry Esme.*, III, Ch. XIII, 445. Compare: 40 and 73, and see also Ch. XIX, 49, Obs. VI.

**opposition.** *b*) When that gentleman was *in opposition*. *THACK.*, *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. X, 97.

Lord Loughborough... was now *in opposition*. *MAC.*, *War. Hist.*, (651a). They are *in opposition* and not in office. *Westm. Gaz.*

**order.** *b*) Mr. Blotton (of Aldgate) rose *to order*. *DICK.*, *Pickw.*, Ch. I, 3.

The Prime Minister of Great Britain called Europe *to order*; and Europe recognized the voice of authority. *Sat. Rev.*

Note. Thus also: The speaker (or motion, etc.) is not *in order* or *out of order*. *MURRAY*.

**part.** *a*. *To take part* | Against Olympius. *CHAPMAN*, *Iliad*, I, 570.

There wanted not those who were willing to acquire the favour of the lady of Avenel by... *taking part* with the youth whom she protected. *SCOTT*, *Abbot*, Ch. III, 39.

Steele *took part* with the Opposition. *MAC.*, *Addison*, (772a).



**Note.** MURRAY also has *to take the part of*, practically in the same meaning as *to take part with*. Thus also with a possessive pronoun: he took *my (your, his, etc.) part*.

**pickle.** *b)* The Commons House of Parliament has many a rod *in pickle* for the Peers. Rev. of Rev., CXCVIII, 566b.

**Note.** Thus, apparently, regularly in this saying. Compare, however: It was only after the last good word of glad tidings had been said, that the rod was taken *out of the pickle*. MRS. LYNN LINTON, *Rebel of Family*, II, vii.1)

**pike.** *a)* She saw the boy attempt, with a long stick, to mimic the motions of the warder, as he alternately *shouldered, or ported, or sloped pike*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. III, 27.

**possession.** *a)* In the later empire they (sc. the Goths) *obtained possession* of part of Dacia. DIGHTON, *Note to 'As you like it'*, III, 3, 9.

**Note.** Thus also in *to get (take) possession*.

**post.** *b)* A letter from Lady Florence to her sister had arrived *by first post* two days before the event. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diam. cut Paste*, III, Ch. I, 232.

**Note.** This seems to be an exceptional case, although the article is regularly absent, when no ordinal numeral precedes.

**practice.** *b)* The Cape Colony, as we ought to know, but *in practice* we always forget, was originally a Dutch colony. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. III, 42.

**Note.** Thus also regularly in *to put in (or into) practice, to reduce to practice; to be in (out of) practice*.

**press.** *b)* \* The book is not *at press*. Acad.2)

Second edition now *at press*. Westm. Gaz., No. 4961, 1a.

\*\* At the moment of going *to press* the Austrian Government is talking about issuing an ultimatum. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 507b.

**Note.** *At press* seems to be an unusual collocation, *in the press* being mostly used instead. The definite article regularly stands in other combinations analogous to the above, such as *to bring (put, commit, send, submit) to the press; to carry (see) through the press; to come to pass, undergo the press; to correct the press* = the printing, or the errors in composing the type). MURRAY, s. v. *press*, 13, e.

**proof.** *a)* Long before this date... Chaucer... *had given proof* of how far his genius preceded his age by several examples of composition in prose. GEORGE CHAIR, *Man. of Eng. Lit.*, 184.

**question.** *b)* \* Every crow is a swan to this writer, when Liszt is *in question* Lit. World.3)

\*\* It was not till comparatively a late period that the general accuracy of his narrative... was brought *into question*. SCOTT, Pref. to 'The Bridal of Triermain'.

I shall not repeat them, lest the veracity of Antonie van der Heyden and his comrades be called *into question*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 134).

**Note.** Thus also *to come into question* (MURRAY, s. v. *question* 1, d). *To bring into question* seems to be uncommon. Instead of *to call into question* we mostly find *to call in question*. MURRAY, s. v. *call*, 18.

The article is never dropped in *out of the question*, as in: Inviting him was *out of the question*. THACK., *A Little Dinner at Timmins's*, Ch. I, (306).

Observe also: He could not lawfully be put *to the question*. MAC., *Bacon*, (371a). (= tortured.)

**rein.** *a)* \* Rashleigh had long ago drawn *rein*. MRS. ALEX., *For his Sake*, II, Ch. I, 17.

Dick drew *rein* an instant. W. MORRIS, *News from Nowhere*.

1) MURRAY. 2) TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, XI. 3) TEN BRUG., *Taalst.*, X.

\*\* 'And yet', thus gave she *rein* to jeer and gibe. R. BRIDGES, *Eros and Psyche*, No. XXI.<sup>1)</sup>

Note. MURRAY has to give (the) *rein(s)* to. Apparently the ordinary construction is to give the *reins* to. The article and the plural form of *rein* seem to be regularly used in other phrases analogous to the above.

\* Bulstrode holds the *reins* and drives him. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLVI, 334.

\*\* No man ever more completely laid the *reins* on the neck of his inclinations. OPIE, *Lect. on Art.*, IV, 332.<sup>1)</sup>

\*\*\* He could afford to let the *reins* loose at times. MRS. CRAIK, *A Hero*, 24.

\*\*\*\* Sir Henry Campbell Bannerman took up the *reins* of office. *Times*, No. 1819, 894a.

\*\*\*\*\* To give it that degree of prominence is to throw the *reins* to one's whim. M. ARNOLD, *Es. Crit.*, II, 82.<sup>1)</sup>

Observe also: They gave a fairly loose *rein* to their criticisms of the policy of the cabinet. *Times*.

**rescue.** b) He had undoubtedly been concerned in the attempt at *rescue*. MCCARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. XXII, 317.

Note. Compare the phrase: to the *rescue*! as in: The Genoese are come—ho! to the *rescue*! BYRON, *Mar. Fal.*, IV, II, (376b). See also 40.

**rest.** b) \* There the wicked cease from troubling; there the weary are at *rest*. Bible, Job, III, 17.

Our suspicions can now be set at *rest*. MRS. WOOD, *East Lynne*, II, 71.

Set your mind at *rest*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. VIII.

\*\* Alarbus goes to *rest* and we survive | To tremble under Titus' threatening looks. Tit. *Adr.*, I, I, 133.

Four years ago the mortal remains of Francis Thompson were laid to *rest*. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 472, 652a.

Note. At *rest* has no variants with a modifier before *rest*; but for to go to *rest* and to be laid to *rest* we frequently find, respectively: to go to one's (long) *rest* and to be laid to one's (long) *rest*: Long ere they were within sight of land, Lucy Passmore was gone to her *rest*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVII, 209b. The old warrior was laid to his long *rest* in the presence of only three people. *Times*.

He went to his long *rest* at Kensal Green Cemetery. *Rev. of Rev.*

**risk.** a) I scarcely know what thoughts I had; but they ran *risk* of being hardly more rational and healthy than that child's mind must have been. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. II, 10.

I thought she ran *risk* of incurring such a careless, impatient repulse. *Id.*, Ch. III, 31.

Note. The suppression of the article seems unusual and is not recorded by MURRAY, who gives to run the *risk* and to run a *risk*.

**saddle.** b) \* Kit Norton slipped from *saddle*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. I, 8.

\*\* He gathered the reins into his hand, and got to *saddle*. *Id.*, 16.

Get up to *saddle*. *Id.*, Ch. VI, 76.

Note. MURRAY does not mention these combinations, and the dropping of the article or possessive pronoun may be rather the exception than the rule. Observe also the figurative phrases in the *saddle*, to get into the *saddle*, to cast out of *saddle*. MURRAY, s.v. *saddle*, 2.

He who hath achieved nobility by his own deeds, must ever be in the *saddle*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. III, 30.

**sail.** a) There was a vessel ready to make *sail*. WASH. IRV., *Dolf Heyl* (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 123).

Note. Thus also to cross (hoist, lower, set, shorten, strike etc.) *sail*. MURRAY, s.v. *sail*, 2.

**sea.** *b*) He is quite *at sea*, he does not know what else to do. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, IV, Ch. XL, 299.

*War at sea* is analogous to war on land. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6288, 11*b*.

Although fairly well acquainted with "Hamlet", I found myself constantly *at sea*. *ib.*, No. 6353, 7*a*.

\*\* Clouds were far off, sailing away *beyond sea*. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XIV, 157.

\*\*\* He made his way *by sea* to Naples. DICK., *Cop*, Ch. L, 355*b*.

Commanders who *by sea* or land upheld the honour of the country. *Times*.

\*\*\* On *sea*... there are always a countless number of possible communications. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6288, 11*b*. (Compare: Hastings was little more than four months *on the sea*. MAC., *War. Hist.*, (639).

\*\*\*\* The land-breeze had blown fresh out *to sea*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!* Ch. XVII, 133*b*.

A liner like the New York puts *to sea* with about 9000 serviettes. *Titbits*.

Note. MURRAY has *beyond (the) sea* or *seas*; *on or upon the sea*; *over (the) sea*; *to put (put off, put out, stand out) to sea*. Compare: *over the sea*, as in: He could look out *over the sea*. (JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. XII, 81), with: By the help of canvas wings... [he] proposes to fly *oversea* from Dover to Calais (H. BROOKE, *Fool of Qual*, IV, 2*b*), and with: Now living *oversea* in a quiet farmstead (*Daily Chronicle*).

The article does not seem to be thrown out after *out of*: The outside light striking on her eyes, made them like green stars looking up *out of the sea*. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-Heart Gillian*, Ch. XI, 76.

**sentence.** *a*) \* You have *passed sentence* upon and marked with disgrace your officer Lucius Pella. HUNTER, Note to *Jul. Cæs.*, IV, 3, 2.

\* She (sc. Lady Anne Berkeley) opened the Commission, sat on the bench, impannelled the jury, and, when the verdict was given, *pronounced sentence*. *II. Lond. News*, 1895, 786*a*.

Note. Thus, according to FLÜGEL (s. v. *sentence*) also *to give or pass sentence* (upon). Compare also: St. Ogg's *passes Judgment*. G. ELIOT, *Mill*, VIII, Ch. II.

**shop.** *a*) *to shut up shop*. FOWLER, *Concise Oxf. Dict.*

Note. In the sense of *to cease to do business* we also find *to shut up the shop*: He *shut up the shop* altogether. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 16.

And what will you do with yourself when you've *shut up the shop*? W. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. III, 44.

**shore.** *b*) Built upon a dismal reef of sunken rocks, some league or so *from shore*,... there stood a solitary lighthouse. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, III, 75.

\*\* Let us be thankful that we are once more *on shore*.

\*\* Heaven help him!" quoth Lars Porsena, "And bring him safe *to shore*. MAC., *Lays. Hor.*, LXIII.

Then the watching boat trailed home *to shore*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6023, 3*b*.

**sight.** *b*) \* Payable *at (or after) sight*.

He liked to create the impression that he could read any classical author *at sight*. BARRY PAUL, *The Culminating Point*.

No one would have believed *at first sight* that he was nine years older. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.*, I, Ch. I, 8. (Note the difference with *at sight*.)

The National Convention has agreed upon a scheme which *at first sight* seems bold and original. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVIII, 513*a*.

\*\* We walk by faith, not *by sight*. Bible, Cor. B, V, 7.

To know a man *by sight*.

\*\*\* A ditch or a stretch of newly macadamised road comes *in sight*. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 73.

\*\*\* They ought to be shot *on sight*. W. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clem Wing*, Ch. III, 48.

\*\*\*\* *Out of sight* out of mind. Prov.

\*\*\*\*\* Though lost *to sight*, to memory dear. Prov.

Till the bird was lost *to sight* in the clouds. Titbits.

\*\*\*\*\* Long ere they were *within sight* of land, Lucy Passmore was gone to her rest. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XXVII, 209b.

Note I. *At the sight* and *at the first sight* do not lose the article, when they have distinctly the value of an adverbial clause of time, as in:

She pointed to the old goat whose legs were hobbled, and so evidently cursed her, that both girls laughed out *at the sight*. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. II, 15. (= *when they saw this*.)

His timidity struck me *at the first sight*. GOLDSMITH, *She Stoops*, III, (197). (= *when I first saw him*.)

Observe, however, the absence of the article in the prepositional expression *at sight of*, as in: Sir Roderick... Reddened *at sight of* Malcolm Græme. SCOTT, *Lady*, II, xxvii.

II. *At first sight* is equivalent to the idioms illustrated in:

i. Nor, strange as it may appear *at a first glance*, is their contentment hard to understand. *Good Words*. (STOF., *Leesb.*, I, 74).

ii. It appears *at the first blush* that [etc.]. LYTTON, *Caxtons*, XII, Ch. VII, 328.

iii. The present antagonists appeared *at the first glance* more evenly matched than the last. *Ib.*, III, Ch. II, 137.

**silence.** a) i. "Could you lick three men?" I said, *breaking silence*. WIL DE MORGAN, *Joseph Vance*, Ch. I, 2.

\*\* The playwright (requires) us to suppose that a man would *keep silence* . . . about facts which could only distress temporarily a dead person's family. *Il. Lond. News*, No. 3879, 274c.

ii. Gabriel *broke the silence*. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. VIII, 67.

It was the Queen who *broke the silence*. HAL. SUTCL., *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. VIII, 125.

Note. MURRAY has *to keep* and *to break silence*, not mentioning the alternative practice, which may, however, be common enough. Compare also: Still must thy sweeter sounds *their silence keep*? SCOTT, *Lady*, I, 1.

**spirit.** b) i. *In spirit*, I believe we must have met. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. XXXVII, 551.

Bayham says he is disturbed *in spirit*. THACK., *Newc.*, I, Ch. XXV, 281.

He felt that the party were united *in spirit*. *Times*, No. 1820, 919a.

ii. I am standing *in the spirit* at your elbow. DICK., *Christm. Car.*

Dick had turned northward across the park, but he was walking *in the spirit* on the mud-flats with Maisie. RUDY. KIPL., *The Light that failed*, Ch. V, 61.

Note. Both *in spirit* and *in the spirit* are used as opposites of *in the flesh* and *in (the) letter*, the latter being, apparently the more frequent, except when used in conjunction with either of the last-mentioned phrases. See also under *letter*.

**sport.** a) He was not willing *to spoil sport*. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. VI, 54

**spur.** a) i. \* Few were able to make way through that iron wall; but of those few was Dunois, who, *giving spur* to his horse, . . . fairly broke his way into the middle of the phalanx. SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXXVII, 461.

\*\* *Setting spurs* to his horse. Black's *Sir Walter Scott's Read.*, *The Abbot*, 48.



\*\*\* Foker *striking spurs* into his pony, cantered away down Rotten Row. THACK., *Pend.*, II, Ch. II, 28.

\*\*\*\* Carver Doone . . . *thrust spurs* into his flagging horse. BLACKMORE, *Lorna Doone*, Ch. LXXIV, 507.

*in*. He put *the spurs* to his horse. HALL CAINE, *Deemster*, Ch. VI, 52.

Note. The construction with the article seems to be unusual.

*stable*. *b*) He put the horse *in stable* again. HALL STICEL, *Pam the Fiddler*, Ch. V, 74.

Note. The suppression is probably rather the exception than the rule.

*stake*. *b*) So much is *at stake* for us in keeping the command of the sea. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4925, 1c.

Note. The suppression of the article is practically regular. In the following quotation it is inserted for the sake of the metre:

Rightly to be great | Is not to stir without great argument, | But greatly to find quarrel in a straw, | When honour's *at the stake*. HAMLET, IV, 4, 56.

*street*. *b*) Working the steam *down street* as well as he. HUGHES, *Tom Brown*, 264).

Note. The absence of the definite article in this combination appears to be very rare.

*tale*. *b*) The clipped crowns . . . were to be received *by tale* in payment of taxes. MAC., *Hist.*, XXII, IV, 695, 2).

*tiptoe*. *b*) All Europe was *on tiptoe* with expectation to see how Philip would avenge himself. MOORE, *Rise*.

He followed his cousin *on tiptoe*. HUGHES, *Tom Brown at Oxf.*, Ch. XXXII, 2).

Note. FLÜGEL (s.v. *tiptoe*) has *to be on tiptoe in expectation*, *to be a tiptoe with expectation*, and *to be on the tiptoe of expectation*. The House is now waiting *on the tiptoe* of expectation for the Budget. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 4c.

Compare also: Do not keep expectation *on the tiptoe*. FLOR. NIGHTINGALE, *Nursing*, 38, 2).

Mrs. Berry left the room *tiptoe*. G. MEREDITH, *Ord. of Rich. Fev.*, Ch. XXX, 246.

*top*. *b*) His head was small, and flat *at top*. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *Leg. of Sleepy Hollow*, 344.

Note. No further instances of the article being thrown out have been found.

*trial*. *b*) \* I have him *on trial*. MRS. ALEX., *For his sake*, I, Ch. XV, 243.

\*\* He was determined to put their mettle *to trial*. SMOL., *Rod. Rand.*, Ch. II, 14.

Note. Thus also, according to FLÜGEL: *the hour of trial*, *by way of trial*. Compare also: His fortitude was not put *to the proof*. STEPH. GWENN, *Thom. Moore*, Ch. I, 12.

It is . . . becoming more common at our public schools for a newly appointed assistant to come at first *upon probation*. *Times*.

*view*. *b*) \* The pack had vanished *from view*. *Graph*.

\*\* Directly you *have in view*. DICK., *Our Mut. Friend*, I, Ch. I, 5.

When any national object is *in view*. *Times*.

The Government has also *in view* a system of Labour Exchanges. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5107, 2a.

\*\*\* They passed the Headland and were lost *to view*. *ib.*, No. 6023, 3a.

Note. FLÜGEL (s.v. *view*) also has *at first view*, *to take from view*, *in full view of the assembly*, *to keep in view*. FOWLER mentions *on view* = open to inspection.

*water*. *b*) It has kept my head *above water*. MRS. GASK., *Life of Ch. Brontë*, 306.

\*\* Sir Roger and the Spectator go *by water* to Vauxhall Gardens. *Spectator* No. 383 (Compare: I had promised to go with him *on the water* to Spring-garden. *ib.*)

1) ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 36.

2) MURRAY.

\*\*\* He felt vaguely that if he sprang into the air, he would swim about in it like a fish *in water*. T. P.'s *Christm.* Numb. for 1911, 4c. (Note the different practice observed in *into the air* and *in water*).

\*\*\* He took the horses *to water*. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.* XXXII, 346.

**window.** b) I should throw myself *out of window*: THACK., *Van. Fair*, I, Ch. XXIII, 237.

Note. The omission seems to be due to an excessive desire of brevity, and is not usual, except in the phrase *to turn the house out of window* (= Dutch *het huis op stellen zetten*). Compare: I threw *out of the window* everything he possessed. JAMES PAYN, *Glow-Worm Tales*, II, D, 55.

She looked out *from the window*. DICK., *Christm. Car.* 5, IV, 96.

**work.** He promptly *sets his solicitor to work*. *Westm. Gaz.*

Note. Thus also *at work*. In the following quotation the use of the article is due to the distinctly specialized meaning of *work*:

James set himself energetically and methodically *to the work*. MAC., *Hist.* III, Ch. VIII, 138.

**year.** b) There's a good deal of fog always along the Thames at this time *of year*. W. BLACK, *The New Prince Fort.*, Ch. XIV.

The grass is wonderfully green for this time *of year*. GÜNTHER, *Leerb.*, 66.

Note. The suppression of the article seems to be confined to the collocation *this or that (the) time of year*.

#### 64. Some groups of adverbial adjuncts in which the definite article has fallen out, deserve special mention:

a) Such as are made up of a preposition + the positive of an adjective totally or partially converted into a noun; e. g.: *after dark*; *at dark*, *at full*, *at large*, *at present*, *at random*; *for good*; *in common*, *in full*, *in future*, *in general*, *in little*, *in particular*, *in short*, *in special*; *of late*, *of old*; *on high* etc. For illustration see Ch. XXIX, 11; 12, c; 22, Obs. VII and VIII.

b) Such as are made up of the preposition *at* + superlative of an adjective partially converted into a noun; e. g.: *at best*, *at earliest*, *at farthest* (or *furthest*), *at fewest*, *at first*, *at last*, *at latest*, *at least*, *at longest*, *at most*, *at widest*, *at worst*, etc. Most of these are also found with the article, the two constructions sometimes expressing different shades of meaning. JESPERSEN (*Mod. Eng. Gram.*, 6,36) ascribes the loss of the article in these combinations to phonetic decay: *at* representing Middle English *atte* = Old English *at þe*. For a discussion see Ch. XXX, 38.

c) Such as are made up of a preposition + superlative + noun. The suppression seems to be rather the exception than the rule. Compare 20, e and see MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.* 2, III, 205; and especially ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 37 and DUBISLAW, *Beitr.*, § 9.

Their friendship dated *from earliest youth*. MOTLEY, *Rise*, I, Ch. II, 77b.

Here was nerve that was truly wonderful, restoring calm and confidence in an assembly where men's nerves were *at highest tension*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 4a. (Compare: It is a noticeable fact that, after a full-dress debate, when everybody's nerves have been stretched *to the highest pitch*, the benches next day are scantily attended. *Ib.*, 4b.)

The realisation of this ambition has received the careful attention of inventors and students *from earliest times*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXIX, 30a.

*From earliest times* the Waganda have been a clothed people. Graph., No. 2271, 962b.

65. Sometimes it is the connection of a noun with another noun that appears to be responsible for the suppression of the definite article. Thus it is more or less regularly absent:

a) in many adverbial expressions containing two nouns both preceded by a preposition, *from* before the first and *to*, sometimes *till*, before the second:

1) such as denote a period:

- i. *From morn to noon, from noon to dewy eve.* BAIN, H. E. Gr. He was tipping and tipsy *from morning till night.* THACK., Pend., II, Ch. XXXVIII, 404.  
Thirty masses consumed the hours *from night till morn.* LYTTON, Rienzi, II, Ch. VI, 109.  
His mouth was filled with texts *from morning to night.* CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XVI, 131b.
- ii. His eye had been on the work *from commencement to close.* CH. BRONTË, Villetta, Ch. XIX, 247.
- iii. He stayed *from first to last.* Times. (Sometimes with the article: His work *from the first to the last* lay chiefly among the Submerged Tenth. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 232a.)

2) such as denote a space or distance:

- i. I'll undertake to read you the whole *from beginning to end.* SHER., Critic, I, I, (450)  
He made a bet of a bowl of punch that he could repeat the whole of the Daily Advertiser *from beginning to end.* II. Lond. News. (Sometimes with the article: I did not see a fault in any part of the play, *from the beginning to the end.* SHER., Critic, I, I, (450).)
- ii. The Northwest territories have an extent *from east to west* of just 1100 miles. Times.
- iii. My first aim will be to clean down Moor House *from chamber to cellar.* CH. BRONTË, Jane Eyre, Ch. XXXIV, 479.
- iv. The Academy is Royal *from flagstaff to floor.* II. Lond. News, No. 1812, 712.
- v. Frank trembled *from head to foot.* CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIX, 145b.  
He trembled *from head to foot.* T. P.'s Weekly, Christm. Numb., for 1911, 4b.
- vi. After perusing the paper he could repeat every word of it *from start to finish.* II. Lond. News.
- vii. At market he went *from pen to stall.* THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 20.
- viii. *From pillar to post* (originally *from post to pillar*) MURRAY, s. v. pillar, II.

Thus also: To live *from hand to mouth*: Since then you have lived *from hand to mouth.* EL. GLYN, The Reason Why, Ch. II, 12.

Note. The above expressions bear a close resemblance to those in which the two nouns standing after *from* and *to* (*till*) are identical, such as:

a) *from week's end to week's end.* (Ch. XXIX, 24, d).

β) He was sent *from school to school.* MAC., Clive, (498b).

The tale is *from end to end* an ingenious invention. R. ASHE KING, OI. Goldsmith, Ch. V, 53.

In these, however, there is rather an ellipsis of *one... another* (or *the other*) than of the definite article. (Ch. XL, 155-6.)

- b) in many adverbial expressions of attendant circumstances, consisting of two nouns, only the second of which is preceded by a preposition. Most of them have the value of a nominative absolute. (Ch. V, 10, b, 2.)

i. Doolan's paper was lying on the table *cheek-by-jowl* with Hoolan's paper. THACK., P. end., I, Ch. XXX, 325.

The Nationalists sat *cheek-by-jowl* with the Tories. Westm. Gaz., No. 4943, 5a.

ii. Mr. Gladstone was working *hand in glove* with a Russian lady against the Government of his own country. Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, 278a.

iii. I heard that Jack was *head over heels* in love with me. Titbits, 1895, 9 Nov., 92c.

iv. There sat a reporter *pencil in hand* to take down his words. MURRAY, s. v. *hand*, 29.

v. He must die some day *sword in hand*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIX, 147b.

Note. Also in these expressions, when the two nouns are identical, as in *arm in arm*, *shoulder to shoulder*, etc., it is more plausible to assume the ellipsis of *one... another* or (*the other*). See Ch. XL, 155-6.

II. An adverb sometimes takes the place of preposition + noun.

The Boers won *hands down*. Rev. of Rev., CCVII, 232b.

The straddling bowman lost his left foothold and went over *head downwards*. CHESTERTON, The Free Man (T. P.'s Christm. Numb. for 1911, 4c.)

- c) in many adverbial expressions containing two nouns the first preceded by various prepositions, the second by *of* as the substitute of a genitive. In many of these the individual meaning of the words is dimmed, so that they approach in value to prepositions. Such are *on account of*, *in advance of*, *in aid of*, *in behalf of*, *on behalf of*, *in case of*, *in company of*, *in consequence of*, *in consideration of*, *in contravention of*, *under cover of*, *in default of*, *in defence of*, *in defiance of*, *in despite of*, *by dint of*, *in favour of*, *by force of*, *for (from) lack of*, *in lieu of*, *by means of*, *(up)on pain of*, *in point of*, *in praise of*, *in pursuance of*, *in quest of*, *at the rate of*, *by reason of*, *in regard of*, *in respect of*, *in right of*, *in search of*, *in spite of*, *in time of*, *by (or in) virtue of*, *for want of*, *by way of*, etc.

In some, hardly differing from the above, the individual meaning of the component parts is more sensibly preserved, so that they more or less regularly retain the article before the first noun. This is the case with: *on (the) charge of*, *at the cost of*, *in (the) course of*, *at (or by) the desire of*, *for the ends of*, *in (the) event of*, *with the exception of*, *in (the) face of*, *on the face of*, *by (the) favour of*, *in (the) front of*, *at the hand(s) of*, *by (the) help of*, *in the middle of*, *in the midst of*, *in the name of*, *(up)on (the) occasion of*, *at (or by) the order(s) of*, *(up)on the part of*, *in (the) place of*, *to the point of*, *in (the) presence of*, *(up)on (or under) (the) pretence of*, *in (the) room of*, *for (the) sake of*, *on the score of*, *with a*, *show of*, *by the side of*, *at (the) sight of*, *in (the) stead of*, *on the strength of*, *on the subject of*, *in the teeth of*, *on (the) top of*, *at the*



*top of, at the urgency of, on the view of, by (the) vote of, in the way of, etc.*

The discussion of the word-groups belonging to one and the other of the above lists, belongs rather to the chapter dealing with prepositions than to the present. For numerous illustrations see also ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 31.

- d) in many adverbial expressions containing two (or more) nouns connected by *and*, which denote things often thought of together or as a whole, or which express two aspects of one and the same thing, or which are put together for the sake of assimilation or assonance or both.

- 1) Such as do not contain any preposition. These mostly express a relation of attendant circumstances, generally of an intensive import. In many of the combinations illustrated below, we may also assume a possessive pronoun to be understood.

**bag and baggage.** Here's Klaas Klummer come in, *bag and baggage*, from the farm. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (*Story, Handl.*, I, 113). (Compare, however: Come, shepherd, let us make an honourable retreat; though not *with bag and baggage*, yet with scrip and scrippage. As you like it, III, 2, 170.)

**body and bones.** See Ch. V, 10, *b*, 1.

**body and soul.** (Ch. V, 10, *b*.) *Body and soul and mind* he belonged to Bismarck. *T. P.'s Weekly*, 2*b*.

**field and road.** See Ch. V, 10, *b*, 1.

**hammer and tongs.** She was always at it, *hammer and tongs*, just as hard as ever. BARRY PAINE, Miss Slater. Before the middle of October we shall be at it, *hammer and tongs*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6305, 7*a*.

**hand and foot.** See Ch. V, 10, *b*, 1.

**head and shoulder.** See Ch. V, 10, *b*, 1.

**heart and soul.** (Ch. V, 10, *b*, 1): Carlo Emmanuelle III...threw himself, *heart and soul* into the national movement towards liberty. RICH. BAGOT, *My Italian Year*, Ch. II, 23.

**hip and thigh.** The Saxons would have been smitten, *hip and thigh*. WALT. BESANT, *London*, I, 30.

**horse and foot.** See Ch. V, 10, *b*, 1.

**lock, stock and barrel.** He repudiated Protection and Food taxes, *lock, stock and barrel*. *Rev. of Rev.*, No. CXCVI, 341*b*.

**neck and crop.** See Ch. V, 10, *b*, 1.

**root and branch.** See Ch. V, 10, *b*, 1.

**tooth and nail.** As they had fasted since the middle of the day, they did no great violence to their own inclinations in falling on it (sc. the supper), *tooth and nail*. DICK., *Chuz.*, Ch. XLIII, 333*b*.

I go at it, *tooth and nail*. *Id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XLII.

The whole profession in Middlemarch have set themselves, *tooth and nail*, against the Hospital. G. ELIOT, *V. Mid.*, Ch. XLIV, 325.

Note. 1. Sometimes we find two or more of these intensive combinations accumulated together.

To the good cause I devote thee, *flesh and fell, sinew and limb, body and soul*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. X, 94.

**Note.** There is no intensive import when the the nouns are connected by *or*, as in:

Only this I know, | That whatsoever evil happen to me, | I seem to suffer nothing,  
*heart or limb.* TEN., Mar. of Ger., 472.

III. When the two nouns are identical, as in *neck and neck*, we may assume the ellipsis to be that of *one . . . the other* (Ch. XL, 155-6.)

- 2) such as have a preposition before the first noun, that before the second being mostly suppressed as being identical with the preceding.

**body and soul.** The reaction has been trying *to body and soul*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 478, 3b. (Also *soul and body*), see below.)

**brow and crown.** He coloured *over brow and crown*. G. ELIOT, Adam Bede, Ch. I, 3.

**Church and State.** "Only Scotchmen need apply" seems to be written up over most of the highest offices alike *in Church and State*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXIII, 517a.

**finger and thumb.** (This) can be done mechanically by separating the lips *with finger and thumb*. SWEET, The Sounds of Eng., § 31.

**fire and sword.** They had not long since ravaged Romagna *with fire and sword*. LYTTON, Rienzi, I, Ch. II, 20. (= Dutch *te vuur en te zwaard*.)

**flood and field.** The holiday season is in full swing and has so far been marked by more than its usual crop of accidents *by flood and field*. Times.

**head and ears.** He's *over head and ears* in debt. THACK., Van Fair, I, Ch. XI, 106.

**land and sea.** I sought you *over land and sea*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XIX, 146b.

**lock and key.** Having put *under lock and key* the greater number of his own staff, he (sc. Huerta) is as near an absolute dictator as a man can be. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2a.

**sea and land.** Within twenty-four hours they might be at war *on sea and land* all round the world with the German Empire. Rev. of Rev., CCXXVIII, 505b.

**soul and body.** The friar was famous for his skill administering *to both soul and body*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., Spectre Brideg., 157. (Also *body and soul*, see above.)

**Note I.** Repetition of the preposition *between* is, of course, out of the question.

**actor and manager.** There was always a certain sympathy *between actor and manager*, which there can never be *between actor and syndicate*. T. P.'s Weekly, No. 474, 715a.

**body and spirit.** The interaction *between body and spirit* is understood, or at least apprehended (for comprehended it cannot be), as never it was before. FRANCIS THOMPSON, Health and Holiness, 27.

**devil and deep sea.** Here we are *between devil and deep sea*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6288, 7b. (The suppression of the article is rare, no instances being given by MURRAY.)

**officers and men.** Hence . . . that strong fellow feeling *between officers and men*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. XX, 151a.

**stem and stern.** I would serve the best man so that ever stepped *between stem and stern*. SMOL., Rod. Rand., Ch. VI, 33. (Compare: In an instant

a storm of bar and chain-shot...swept the proud Don *from stem to stern*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XX, 151*b*.)

II. Also *or* sometimes figures in such combinations.

**tale or history.** Ay me! for aught that I could ever read | Could ever hear *by tale or history*, | The course of true love never did run smooth. *Mids.*, I, 1, 133.

III. *Or* varies with *and* in the expression *by hook or crook*, the preposition being mostly repeated before the second noun.

Do come, *by hook or by crook*. G. ELIOT, *Life*, I, 112.<sup>1)</sup>

In old days men managed, *by hook or crook*, to publish Scandals of the Court or Horrible Revelations of High Life. *II. Lond. News.* No. 3684, A, 741. *By hook and by crook* he managed to raise the necessary funds. JOHN OXENHAM, *Great-heart Gillian*, Ch. XVI, 119.

66. a) The definite article is mostly dropped before headings in books, essays and other writings.

i. Preface, Prologue, Proem, Introduction, Advertisement, Epilogue, Biographical Sketch, State of England in 1685 (MACAULAY), History of England before the Restoration (id.), Fall of the Melbourne Ministry (MC CARTHY), Fall of the Great Administration (id.), Rise of Municipal Power (MOTLEY), Insurrection at Ghent (id.), Declaration of War by England (id.), Assault upon the City (id.), Extravagance of the Aristocracy (id.), Death of the Grand Commander (id.), Enemy active (TIMES), Prince's Escape (id.).

ii. *The Life of Lord Byron* (LYTTON), *The Afghan War* (MC CARTHY), *The Indian Mutiny* (id.), *The Conspiracy Bill* (id.), *The Civil War in America* (id.), *The Congress of Berlin* (id.)

Note. Almost regularly: *The end*.

b) Similarly the article is usually suppressed in the language of stage-directions.

Exit into *garden*. Goes towards *desk* and puts in *bundle*. Looking at *watch*.

SUPPRESSION OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

67. The indefinite article in the sense of a weak *some* is apt to be dropped after certain prepositions. For practical purposes the distinction between concrete and abstract nouns is here disregarded. Before the latter there is often, strictly speaking, no need for the indefinite article, so that the term suppression is sometimes out of place.

The indefinite article is dispensed with after:

**by**, practically regularly when followed by the name of a means of transmission, conveyance or mode of locomotion, etc., as in:

to send (dispatch, forward, etc.), to receive obtain, get etc.), to travel (go, come, etc.) *by coach* (*steamer, omnibus*, etc.); to learn (tell, etc.) *by letter*. She came from the station *by 'bus*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, *Christm. Numb.* for 1911, 52*a*.

Having written his letter and despatched it *by express* [etc.]. EL. GLYN, *The Reason why*, Ch. XXIV, 218.

<sup>1)</sup> MURRAY.

Note. In these collocations we may also sometimes assume the suppression of the definite article, whether specializing or generalizing, or even of a possessive or demonstrative pronoun.

*in*, especially before such nouns as *fashion*, *style*, etc., otherwise only by way of exception.

Mr. Southey brings to the task two faculties which were never, we believe, vouchsafed *in measure* so copious to any human being. (Mac., Southey, 98*b*.) *In quite remarkable fashion* Willie's wish came to be realized. Eng. Rev., No. 59, 443.

The Kaiser...has *in very characteristic fashion* drawn public attention to the misgivings and apprehensions which prevail in military circles in Germany. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 97*a*.

Under the shock of the waves the external form of marine plants is modified *in characteristic fashion*. Westm. Gaz., No. 6371, 17*a*.

Show me a man who has never done that which he ought not to have done, and you will show me...an angel masquerading *in moral vesture*. W. J. LOCKE, The Glory of Clem. Wing. Ch. III, 40.

He is *in frock coat*. She is *in smart afternoon reception-gown*. MRS. BARRY PAIN, The Reason Why, (37).

They had got through the rejoicings *in fine style*. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XXXVIII, 356.

They never allowed their own minds to be seen *in undress*. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Ch. XXV, 186. (Thus almost regularly. But DICKENS, Little Dorrit, Ch. IX, 47*b* has: She was *in an undress*. Compare also: an officer *in undress uniform*. DICK., Pickw., Ch. II, 16.)

Note. Observe especially the following collocations with the article, the Dutch equivalents of which mostly stand without it:

So he came in for the following speech, delivered *in a loud bold voice*. CH. KINGSLEY, Westw. Ho!, Ch. I, 2*a*.

She told him *in a low but resolute voice* that Doctor James Brown had offered her marriage. MRS. GASK., Cranford.

Compare: If the Doctor...had said *in awful voice*, "Boy, take down your pant \* \* \*. THACK., Van. Fair, I, Ch. II, 9.

of, *a*) often when preceded by *kind* (*sort*), *manner* or *type*:

i. \* He was anxious to know what *kind of room* it was. DICK., Crism. Car. 3, IV, 95.

You're not the *kind of man* I wanted at all. BERTHA MOORE, Which is it? One has only to realise what *kind of man* Goldsmith was. R. ASHE KING, Ol. Goldsmith, Introd., 18.

\*\* Sometimes I resigned myself to endeavouring to recall what *sort of boy* I used to be, before I bit Mr. Murdstone. DICK., Cop., Ch. V, 36.

He has been speculating as to what *sort of place* Rugby is. HUGHES, Tom Brown.

He is a *sort of fellow* that's certain to make friends. MRS. ALEXANDER, A Life Int., I, Ch. III, 61.

Gustavus Adolphus is a very good *sort of dog*. JEROME, Idle Thoughts, VIII, 119.

Note the common idiom that *sort of thing* (= Dutch *zoo iets*).

... What *manner of man*? As you like it, III, 2, 215.

The great calamity which had fallen on Argyle had this advantage, that it enabled him to show... what *manner of man* he was. Mac., Hist., III, Ch. V, 130.

That will suffice to indicate the *manner of man* he was. Rev. of Rev., CCXXX, 133*a*.



\*\*\* Yet another *type of man* . . . refrain from seeking any outlet for mere physical desires from what I only know how to describe as "a finer sexual fastidiousness." Eng. Rev., No. 58, 272.

Had he been an ordinary *type of official*, he might well have delayed the progress of telegraphy and telephony in this country. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2c.

ii. \* What *kind of a place* is this Bath? SHERIDAN, Riv., I, 2.

It is some *kind of a joke*. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. I, 6.

What *kind of a nature* could his wife have, to be so absolutely mute, and unresponsive? Ib., Ch. XX, 181.

\*\* And the wound was healed in a *sort of a way*. Mrs. CRAIK, The Laurel Bush, II, 49.

What *sort of a man* is he? Oh, a very good sort of fellow. SWEET, Elem. Buch, § 26. (Note the varied practice.)

They did not know what *sort of a little fellow* had come among them. Miss BURN., Little Lord, Ch. IV, 61.

What a very odd *sort of a man*! JEROME, Paul Kelter, Ch. II, 22b.

Note I. It is interesting to compare a *kind of gentleman* and a *gentleman of a kind* (8, b). "The former expresses approach to the type, admitting failure to reach it, while the latter emphasizes the non-typical position of the individual. Hence, a *kind of* may be used as a saving qualification, as in a *kind of knave*". MURRAY, s. v. *kind*, 14, c.

II. Here mention may also be made of the curious phrase *of sorts*, as illustrated in:

He was shot at Monte Carlo in a *fray of sorts*. EL. GLYN, The Reason why, Ch. XXIV, 243.

About this phrase a correspondent writes in the Westm. Gaz., No. 6353, 4a: "Then came the plague of the expression *of sorts*, from which we are not yet free. He became an *errand-boy of sorts*. I lately read He had a *religion of sorts*, He was a *Tory of sorts*, and so on "for ever and everywhere. Now what conceivable advantage has *of sorts* over a *sort of*? If I say a *sort of Tory*, that is intelligible, "for the class contains varieties; but a *Tory of sorts* should mean "only one who should combine various varieties of opinion which "are always found separate." A week later another correspondent writes: "Again an *errand-boy of sorts* is different from a *sort of errand-boy*. A King's messenger is a *sort of errand-boy*. The obliging youth to whom you give sixpence for taking a note to a friend, and who tears the note up and spends the money, is an *errand-boy of sorts*."

b) frequently when used in a description of the physical, mental, moral or social circumstances of a person, animal or thing.

i. These refugees were in general men *of fiery temper* and *weak judgment*. Mac., Hist., II, Ch. V, 94.

Wild animals *of large size* were then far more numerous than at present. Ib., I, Ch. III, 307.

He was *of good birth*. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 18.

At first he had seemed to her like a being from another world and of *superior make*. JOHN OXENHAM, Great-heart Gillian, Ch. VIII, 60.

In works of art he was represented as a young and handsome man *of strong sinewy frame*. NETTLESHIP, Dict. Clas. Antiq., s. v. *Ares*.

Kiréef was a man *of great stature*. Rev. of Rev., CCXXXI, 277a.

He was a man of *unnatural stature*. *Times*, No. 1818, 881*b*.

The whole service was conducted by one of them, a man of rather Caucasian features, but of *dark brown tint*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 4967, 13*a*.

He was of *good family*. WIL. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. I, II.

He was a man of *wide culture*. *Ib.*, Ch. II, 34.

The room was of *medium size*. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote M. P.*, Ch. XXI, 224.

- ii. The boy was naturally of *an undaunted temper*. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. II, 19. His present demeanour was of *a graver and more determined character*. *Ib.*, Ch. V, 56.

The clerk...tried to warm himself at the candle; in which effort, not being a man of *a strong imagination*, he failed. DICK., *Christm. Car.*, I, 9. His hair was of *a healthy brown colour*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. III, 32.

Harry Webb was a boy of *a timid and gentle disposition*. SWEET, *Old Chapel*.

with, *a*) sometimes when part of an adverbial adjunct of instrumentality or attendant circumstances:

- i. Though Miss Jessie plucked at my gown, and even looked up *with begging eye*, I durst not refuse to go where Miss Jenkyns asked. *Mrs. GASK, Cranf.*, 26. <sup>1)</sup>

A youth entered Mr. Notley's front garden *with firm step*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 489, 365*a*.

A country house, *with ample garden*, was the proprietor's passion! DIXON, *Life of Wil. Penn*, II, 137. <sup>1)</sup>

The pairs of young men and maidens who flaunted their foolish happiness in places of public resort, she regarded *with misanthropic eye*. W. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. II, 14.

- ii. Roland Grame entered the apartment *with a loftier mien* and somewhat *a higher colour* than his wont. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. V, 56.

They paced through several winding passages and waste apartments *with a very slow step*. *Ib.*, Ch. X, 96.

Rip had but one question more to ask, but he put it *with a faltering voice*. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, *Rip van Winkle*.

She set to work every morning at her daily business *with a dogged persistence*. MRS. CRAIK, *The Laurel Bush*, 82.

*With a passionate fidelity* she remembered all Robert Roy's goodness. *Ib.*, 99. Every sentence was uttered *with an obvious sincerity* and feeling. *Times*, No. 1823, 974*b*.

I will give you a charming wife *with a fortune*. EL. GLYN, *The Reason why*, Ch. I, 6.

Observe the varied practice in:

Not as some do *with angry grief* or *futile resistance*, but *with a quick patience*, so complete that only a very quick eye would have found out that she was suffering at all. MRS. CRAIK, *The Laurel Bush*, 52.

- b*) sometimes when used in a description of the physical, mental or moral qualities of a person, animal or thing.

- i. He was a tall, powerfully-built man of forty-five, *with erect military carriage*, and a face still preserving much of the freshness of youth. BUCHANAN, *That Winter Night*, Ch. I, 2.

In works of art Achilles was represented as similar to Ares, *with magnificent physique*, and hair bristling up like a mane. NETTLESHIP, *Dict. Clas. Antiq.*, s.v. *Achilles*.

- ii. He was a collected, quiet little gentleman in black stockings *with a bald head*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 18.

<sup>1)</sup> ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 39.

Ephraim Quixtus, Ph. D., was a tall gaunt man of forty, *with a sallow complexion*. W. J. LOCKE, *The Glory of Clem. Wing*, Ch. II, 22.

His companion is a well-wrapped clergyman of medium height and stoutish build, *with a pleasant, rosy face*. GALSWORTHY, *The Pigeon*, I, (2).

Her face... is decided and sincere, *with deep-set eyes, and a capable well-shaped forehead*. Ib.

NOTE. The suppression is common enough in enumerations. (69.)

As he stands there *with beating heart and kindling eye*,... he is a symbol... of brave young England. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. I, 5a.

68. Of particular interest is the suppression of the indefinite article in the sense of a weak *any*.

Thus it is wanting:

a) frequently in sentences with sentence-modifying *ever* or *ever* that suggest some such phrase as *Was there ever a man that*, etc. or *There never was a man that*, etc. (31, b.) The noun before which the article is omitted, is mostly found in the function of the subject, occasionally in that of the object. Sometimes both the subject and the object drop the article. The idiom here referred to is also met with in French, as in: *Jamais écrivain ne peignit mieux ses contemporains*; and in Dutch, as in: *Nooit heeft groofter schelm op een troon gezeten*.

The omission of the article seems to give an emotional colouring to these utterances, possibly also it is occasioned, at least in the Germanic languages, by a desire to give a rhythmical flow to the sentence.

i. \* Had *ever* man so hopeful a pupil as mine? FARQUHAR, *The Beaux' Stratagem*, II, 3, (383).

Did *ever* mortal hear of a man's virtue? FIELD, *Jos. Andr.*, I, Ch. VIII, 18.

Was *ever* man so crossed as I am? SHER., *School for Scand.*, III, 1, (391).

Did *ever* woman since the creation of the world, interrupt a man with such a silly question? STERNE, *Tristram Shandy*, I.

I have seen him, within an hour of eternity, sleeping as sweetly as *ever* man did. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 133.

If *ever* poet were a master of phrasing, he was so. A. C. BRADLEY, *Com. on TEN.* In *Memorial*, Ch. VI, 75.

\*\* Julia sate within as pretty a bower | As *e'er* held *hour*i in that heathenish heaven | Described by Mahomet. BYRON, *Don Juan*, I, civ.

ii. \* QUEEN ELIZ. Was *never* widow had so dear a loss! — CHILDREN, *Were never orphans* had so dear a loss! — DUCH. Was *never* mother had so dear a loss! *Rich.* III, II, 2, 78.

And *ne'er* did *Grecian chisel* trace | A nymph, a Naiad, or a Grace | Of finer form or lovelier face! SCOTT, *Lady*, I, xviii.

*Never* man had a more unsentimental mother than mine. CH. BRONTË, *Villette*, Ch. XX, 264.

Locke maintained such steady silence and composure as forced the tools of power to own with vexation that *never* man was so complete a master of his tongue and of his passions. MAC., *Hist.*, II, Ch. V, 115.

*Never* yet | Was noble *man* but made ignoble talk. TEN., *Lanc. and E.*, 1081.

*Girl* *never* breathed to rival such a rose; ' *Rose* *never* blew that equall'd such a bud. Id., *Queen Mary*, III, 3. (608a).

On his (sc. Wellington's) death it (sc. the nation) tried to give him such a public funeral as *hero never* had. M'CARTHY, *Short Hist.*, Ch. X, 126.

*Never* had heart felt more heavy, *never* had existence felt more unbearable, than Donovan's. EDNA LYALL, *Donovan*, I, 86.

The King, in consideration of Whittington's merit, said, "*Never* had prince such a subject"; which being told to Whittington at the table, he replied, "*Never* had subject such a king." ANDREW LANG, *Blue Fairy Book*.

\*\* Since I could distinguish betwixt a benefit and an injury, I *never* found man that knew how to love himself. Oth., I, 3, 315.

\*\*\* *Faint heart never won fair lady.* Prov.

Note. The following quotations show that the omission is not regular.

i. I believe she regards him with as true a love as *ever a girl* felt for a man. TROL., *Framl. Pars.*, Ch. XLI, 401.

ii. \* *Never* was a father more idolized by his children than was Lyman Beecher. T. P.'s *Weekly*, No. 483, 163a.

*Never* was a man more exquisitely sensitive to snubs, slights and insults than Goldsmith. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. II, 20.

\*\* On a fairer face thine eye *never* rested. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. X, 94.

II. Conversely the omission is sometimes extended to sentences of a similar import not containing either *ever* or *never*.

When did *Knight* of Provence avoid his foe, or forsake his love? LYTTON, *Rienzi*, III, Ch. II, 130.

When was *age* so crammed with menace? TEN., *Locksley Hall*, sixty years after.<sup>1)</sup>

Fully a century has passed, since *mason's* hand has touched it. HUNGERFORD. *Molly Bawn*, I, 152.<sup>1)</sup>

III. The indefinite article is not driven out by *ever* or *never*, when the tenor of the sentence is different from that of the above quotations.

\* *Never* was an *Englishman* more at home than when he took his ease in his inn. MACAULAY.

*Never* was there a *better chance* for you. ROORDA, *Dutch and Eng. Comp.*, § 20.

\*\* A *better man* Rome *never* lost. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, V, Ch. III, 207.

IV. Here mention may also be made of *ever* (*e'er*) *a(n)* in the sense of strong *any* (*at all*), and of *never* (*ne'er*) (*a*)*n*, the corresponding negative, the former now only archaic or vulgar, though the latter is in good colloquial use. MURRAY, s. v. *ever*, 8; *ne'er a*; *never*, I, 3; FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2)</sup>, § 272.

i. And I'd foot it with *e'er a captain* in the country. SHERIDAN, *Riv.*, III, 4. He knows every path and alley in the woods as well as *e'er a hunter* who frequents them. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Ch. XL, 415.

Fra Moreale seems as much a bugbear to you as to *e'er a mother* in Rome. LYTTON, *Rienzi*, Ch. I, 149.

ii. Have we *ne'er a poulterer* among us? FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, V, 4, (338).

Then by the Mass, sir! I would do no such thing — *ne'er a Sir Lucius o'Trigger* should make me fight. SHERIDAN, *Riv.*, IV, 1.

Now my Lady...differs therein from my Lord, who loves *never a bone* in his skin. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. IV, 44.

And *never a saint* took pity on | My soul in agony. COLERIDGE, *Anc. Mar.*, IV, III. *Never a day* passed, but that cruel words were spoken between them. Graph.

<sup>1)</sup> DUBISLAV, *Beiträge*, § 8.



- b) sometimes in adverbial clauses which form the second member of comparisons, i. e. such as are introduced by either *than* or *as*, and are more or less like those with *ever* mentioned under a). Indeed, this adverb may occasionally be met with in them. The idiom seems to have been more common in Early Modern English than it is now. Compare also FRANZ, *Shak. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, § 267; ELLINGER, *Verm. Beitr.*, 40; *id. Eng. Stud.*, XXXI.
- i. Your tongue's sweet air | More tuneable than *lark* to shepherd's ear. *MIDS.*, I, 1, 183.  
Though home is a name, a word, It is a strong one; stronger than *magician* ever spoke, or spirit answered to, in strongest conjuration. *DICK.*, *Chuz.*, Ch. XXXV, 278.
  - ii. He gives not only a good dinner, but as dear a one as *heart* can desire. *THACK.*, *Men's Wives*, Ch. II, (325).  
I slept at Carlow as sound as *man* could sleep. *THACK.*, *Barry Lyndon*, Ch. III, 49.  
He led her to an old-fashioned house, almost as small as *house* could be. *MRS. GASK.*, *Mary Barton*, Ch. XXXI, 293.  
They came into that wild Black Sea, and saw it stretching out before them, without a shore, as far as *eye* could see. *CH. KINGSLEY*, *The Heroes*, II, iv, 149.  
He was as near perfection as *mortal man* could be. *ANDREW LANG*, *Tennyson*, Ch. II, 11.
- c) Sometimes in adnominal clauses modifying either a noun preceded by a superlative, or some such word(-group) as *all*, *anything*, *nothing*, *no* + noun. The suppression is especially frequent before the noun *mortal* or before the adjective *mortal* + noun. See d).
- i. He is thus attempting the greatest task to which *poet* or *philosopher* can devote himself. *STEPHEN*, *Pope*, 161.<sup>1)</sup>  
There was the chance of being blown up in some of the many experiments which Martin was always trying, with the most wondrous results that *mortal boy* ever heard of. *HUGHES*, *Tom Brown*, II, Ch. III, 237.
  - ii. \* All that *servant* ought to be. *SHER. KNOWLES*, *Hunch.*, II, 3.<sup>2)</sup>  
Mc. Potts is doing all that *mortal man* can do. *HUNGERFORD*, *Molly Bawn*, I, 278.<sup>1)</sup>  
\*\* 'It' and 'which' may refer to anything that *heart of man* can conceive. *HODGSON*, *Errors*, 8, 74.  
\*\*\* I hope there may be no degree of age or experience to which *mortal* may attain, when he shall become such a glum philosopher, as not to be pleased by the sight of happy youth. *THACK.*, *Pend.*, I, Ch. XVII, 173.
- d) Sometimes before the noun *mortal* or the adjective *mortal* + noun, in other connections than that mentioned under c).
- i. Nowhere is *mortal* so much alone as in the heart of a great city. *Rev.* of *Rev.*
  - ii. Their forms were invisible to *mortal eye*. *MAC.*, *Hist.*, I, Ch. I, 5.  
It was long indeed since an English sovereign had knelt to *mortal man*. *ib.*, III, Ch. VIII, 97.
- e) Sometimes after the preposition *without*.
- i. Here you see an honest young soldier, who is willing to take her *without fortune*. *GOLDSMITH*, *Vic.*, Ch. XXXI, (470).  
He inherited ... her health *without flaw*. *CH. BRONTË*, *Villette*, Ch. I, 2.

1) DUBISLAW, *Beiträge*, § 8.      2) MÄTZN., *Eng. Gram.*<sup>2</sup>, III, 163.

The polite pupil was scarcely gone, when, unceremoniously, *without tap* in burst a second intruder. *Ib.*, Ch. XXI, 295.

There is booty *without end*. CH. KINGSLEY, *Westw. Ho!*, Ch. XIX, 144*b*. (Probably regularly in this combination from association with the liturgical expression: *world without end, amen.*)

A month which was, *without exception*, the most miserable I have ever spent. JEROME, *Idle Thoughts*, VI, 73.

Modern Italy, although a monarchy, is *without doubt*, the most genuinely democratic of the great countries of Europe. RICH. BAGOT, *My Italian Year*, Ch. II, 20.

My feelings have been outraged times *without number*. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6383, 4*c*.

So we were told times *without number*. *Rev. of Rev.*, CCXXVIII, 520*a*. (Probably regularly in this combination.)

Sunday passed off *without incident* in San Sebastian. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5382, 1*b*.

The autumn hues of some of the fruit-trees are almost *without rival*. *Ib.*, No. 6065, 2*c*.

The rest (sc. of the Tory newspapers), *without exception*, found it (sc. Lloyd George's campaign) perilously exciting. *Ib.*, No. 6365, 1*b*.

The Lansburg incident in the House last week is not *without precedent*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 504, 3*b*.

- ii. I see a vacant seat...and a crutch *without an owner*. DICK., *Christm. Car.*<sup>5</sup>, III, 70.

His colour changed though, when *without a pause* it came on through the heavy door. *Ib.*, I, 22.

A novel *without a hero*. THACK., *Van Fair*.

When we are struck at *without a reason*, we should strike back very hard. CH. BRONTË, *Jane Eyre*, Ch. VI, 64.

*Without a military education* of any sort Clive led an army like an experienced officer. MAC., *Clive*, (508*b*)

There *without a doubt*, diplomacy will step in. *Eng. Rev.*, 1912, Nov. 623. He does nothing *without a reason*. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. X, 116.

- Note I. The same variable practice may be observed after *beyond*, when used in the sense of *without*.

- i. (These) passages ... prove *beyond doubt* that a considerable period of time must have elapsed at Cyprus between the landing of Othello, and Desdemona's death. DEIGHTON, *Introd. to 'Othello'*, 13.

With it came the desire ... to know *beyond question* whether her smiling unconcern meant malice or entertainment. KATH. CECIL THURSTON, *John Chilcote*, M. P., Ch. XXVIII, 309.

- ii. The appointment ... was cancelled *beyond a doubt*, because of Goldsmith's incompetence. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. VII, 87.

The loyalty of the people is *beyond a question*. MARJ. BOWEN, *I will maintain*, I, Ch. VI, 66.

- II. In the following quotations the indefinite article could not be dispensed with, as being equivalent to the numeral one (8, *a*, 2):

England was left *without an ally* save Spain. GREEN, *Short Hist.*, Ch. VII, § 3, 370.

Balliol himself surrendered and passed *without a blow* from his throne to an English prison. *Ib.*, Ch. IV, § 6, 216.

Balliol found himself at last *without an adherent*. *Ib.*

- III. It is hardly necessary to observe that in enumerations the suppression is quite usual.

The country lay helpless *without army or fleet*, or the means of manning one. GREEN, Short Hist., Ch. VII, § 3, 370.

It is the exception to see a man *without knife and pistol*. ALG. BLACKWOOD, Impressions at Batoum (Westm. Gaz., No. 5335, 2c).

IV. In some of the sentences mentioned under *a*), *b*), *c*) and *d*) the suppressed article may also be apprehended to be the generalizing definite article (7, *c*, Note II). Thus, for example, in:

*Faint heart never won fair lady*. PROV.

They saw it (sc. the Black Sea) stretching out before them, without a shore, as far as *eye* could see. CH. KINGSLEY, The Heroes, II, IV, 149.

He is thus attempting the greatest task to which *poet* or *philosopher* can devote himself. STEPHEN, Pope, 161.<sup>1)</sup>

Their forms were invisible to *mortal eye*. MAC., Hist., I, Ch. I, 5.

V. Sometimes a sentence is ambiguous, the sense varying according as the indefinite article or the generalizing definite article is supposed to be understood.

Was ever *selfish man* so called upon to make a greater sacrifice? THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XVIII, 182.

69. As in Dutch, both the definite and the indefinite article are often suppressed in enumerations, generally to give an emotional colouring to the discourse. Sometimes it is doubtful whether it is the generalizing definite or the indefinite article that has fallen out. (7). Many instances have already been given incidentally in the preceding pages of this chapter, and also in Ch. XXIX, 25; 26, *a*. We add the following:

i. It was delightful to hear . . . the impracticable feats they were to perform during their six weeks' emancipation from the abhorred thralldom of *book, birch, and pedagogue*. WASH. IRV., Sketch-Bk., XX, 187.

Pen smoked and joked with *guard* and *fellow-passengers* and *people* along the familiar road. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. XXVIII, 297.

This slender line having to make its way through the forest will be subject to endless attacks *in front, in rear, in flank*. ID. Virg., Ch. LI, 528.

She sincerely loved and respected the former schoolmistress, to whom she was now become *companion* and *friend*. MRS. GASK., Life of Charl. Brontë, 102.

Then *stout mother* and *thin daughter* took their leave. G. MOORE, A Drama in Muslin, 111.

The light which came from her, was like the light of *sun, moon, and stars* rolled into one. BOOKS for the Bairns, LVI, 37a.

That he should really have expected so high-minded a lady to look with favour upon one who is a compound of *fool, prodigal, and coward*, is hardly to be supposed. DEIGHTON, Introd. to 'Twelfth Night,' 15.

Whether *as man, as orator or as statesman*, Mr. Bright will be long and deeply lamented by the whole of the Anglo-Saxon race. Graph.

That he (sc. Leonardo da Vinci) was *painter, architect, and sculptor* was nothing unusual in the age of Raphael and Michelangelo. But he was *musician, engineer, mechanic* and a profound and exact investigator into natural science as well. Times, No. 1808, 679b.

Some forty others were injured in *greater or less* degree. II. Lond. News, No. 3777, 412.

<sup>1)</sup> DUBISLAW, Beiträge, § 8.

Note I. Some combinations have become traditional. Many have already been mentioned in 65. Also the following deserve attention:

**chapter and verse.** People say what they like to say, not what they have *chapter and verse* for. G. ELIOT, *Mid.*, V, Ch. XLIX, 359.

He was fifty-five, if he was a day. Miss Tabitha could have given you *chapter and verse* for it in a second. JOHN OXENHAM, *The Simple Beguiler* (SWAEN, *Selection*, II, 138).

**Heaven and earth.** There are more things in *Heaven and earth*, Horatio, than are dreamt of in your philosophy. HAMLET, I, 5, 166.

I hold to my judge ... to the King of *Heaven and earth*. GREEN.<sup>1)</sup>

He would move *Heaven and earth* to ferret out a mystery. ALVAREZ, *Mexican Bill*, 24.

**time and tide.** *Time and tide* wait (or tarry) for no man. PROV.

**town and country.** I see Mr. Beauclerk very often both in *town and country*. GOLDSMITH (R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsmith*, Ch. XX, 227).

Sold by all booksellers and newsmen in *town and country*. *Athen.*, No. 4421.

II. Sometimes the singular is made to express a plural notion. (Ch. XXV, 35.)

What *British and Boer* have done for South Africa, *Liberal and Unionist* will yet have to do for this country. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5173, 5b.

The huge many-coloured morning clouds went to and fro in the shapes of *dragon or of cherub*. CHESTERTON, *The Free Man* (T. P.'s *Christm Num b.* for 1911, 4b).

His intense love for *bird and beast* is well-known. W. L. PHELPS, *Es. on Mod. Nov.*, Ch. II, 53.

70. Also in epigrammatic language, especially when two or more nouns, in whatever grammatical function, express a kind of antithesis, the article, whether definite or indefinite, is frequently dispensed with. Some of the epigrammatic sayings here following have the nature of proverbs. In not a few the omission of the article makes for rhythm.

i. Though *body* be strong, *mind* is stronger. CH. KINGSLEY, *Hereward*, Ch. XV, 66b.

We can no longer set *body* against *spirit* and let them come to grips after the light-hearted fashion of our ancestors. FRANCIS THOMPSON, *Health and Holiness*, 30.

*few* conquered *Roman*, as *Roman* had conquered *East and West*. WILLIAM BARRY, *The Papacy*, Prol., 11.

Zara, freed at last from eye of *friend or maid*, collapsed on to the white bearskin in front of the fire again. EL. GLYN, *The Reason why*, Ch. XXXII 302.

ii. You will never lose *fair lady* for *faint heart*! SCOTT, *Quent. Durw.*, Ch. XXXI, 405.

A sinful heart makes *feeble hand*. PROV.

Use is *second nature*. ID.

I forbid you to put *pen* to paper. THACK., *Van. Fair*, III, Ch. V, 54.

For manners are not idle, but the fruit | Of *loyal nature*, and of *noble mind*. TEN., *Guin.*, 333.

It seems that when *Turk* meets *Italian*, there is no tug-of-war, but only a worse kind of peace. *ATHEN.*, No. 4433, 404b.

<sup>1)</sup> FOELS.—KOCH, *Wis. Gram.*, § 267.



71. Finally we subjoin some instances of the suppression of the article through the influence of metre. See also 9, *g*; 12, Note II; 31, *b*, Note III; 33, *a*, Note III; 35, *a*, *c*; 47, Note IV.

O Rome! I *make* thee *promise*; | If the redress will follow, thou receivest | Thy full petition at the hand of Brutus! JUL. CÆS., II, 1, 58. (Ordinary practice has *to make a promise*; see § 73, s. v. *promise*.)

But, with an angry wafture of your hand, | (You) *gave sign* for me to leave you. *ib.*, II, 1, 247. (Ordinary practice has *to make a sign*.)

Some beauties yet no precepts can declare. | For there's a happiness as well as *care*. POPE, *Es. on Crit.*, I, 142. (Note the varied practice.)

Yet pass we that; *the war and chase* | Give little choice of resting place. SCOTT. *Lady*, I, xvi. (In ordinary prose *war* stands without, *chase* with the article.)

When late I left Cæleon, our great Queen | ... *Made promise*, | that whatever bride I brought, | Herself would clothe her like the sun in Heaven. TEN. *Mar. of Ger.*, 783. (See above.)

I doubted whether *daughter's* tenderness. | Or easy nature, might not let itself Be moulded by your wishes for her weal. *ib.*, 797.

#### VACILLATION BETWEEN THE DEFINITE AND THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE.

72. In certain combinations either article may be expected, often with equal propriety, with the frequent result that there is some vacillation in the choice, and that another article is used, or preferred, in Dutch than in English.

73. *a*) There is often a distinct tendency to use the indefinite article in English, notwithstanding the fact that the noun is accompanied by a specializing adjunct, or that such an adjunct can be supplied from the context.

The following instances are intended to bring out this tendency. Some quotations with the definite article, and a few without either article, are added for comparison and to show the irregularity and arbitrariness of usage. It may not be superfluous to caution the reader that absence of illustration of either practice must not be considered as evidence that it is non-existent, rare or even infrequent.

**charge.** Breakfast, dinner and supper are provided at *a charge* of 11 d. per day. *Times*.

**chance.** i. He stands *a chance* of rushing unaneled upon purgatory. LYTON. *Rienzi*, II, Ch. II, 83.

If I had *a chance* to better myself where I am going, I would go with a good will. STEV., *Kidnapped*, 10.

If you have *a chance* of founding a home for yourself, do not throw it lightly aside. DOR. GERARD, *Etern. Woman*, Ch. XI.

The War-Office saw *a chance* to do a little cheese-paring at their expense. *Times*.

All the more intelligent and able boys had *a chance* of securing good openings. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5317, 5a.

- ii. Did you ever hear of anyone who would not escape from prison, if he had *the chance*? MAR CRAWL, *Tale of a Lonely Parish*, Ch. XIII, 102.

I'll hit harder this time, if Heaven gives me *the chance*. CH. READE, *The Cloister and the Hearth*, Ch. XX, 81.

Give them *the chance* of settling everything themselves. EL. GLYN, *The Reason why*, Ch. XII, 111.

He felt glad he had not given her *the chance* to snub him again. *Ib.*, Ch. XX, 181.

**condition.** And for the wits, I'm sure I am in *a condition* to be even with them. CONGREVE, *Love for Love*, I, 1, (201).

**conviction.** She felt *a conviction* that she was hastening to the tomb. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXX, 328.

**desire.** i. I had *a desire* to see the old family seat of the Lucys. WASH. IRV., *Sketch-Bk.*, XXVI, 264.

I have had *a great desire* to know something more about her. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VIII, 41a.

I had *a new pride* in my room after his approval of them, and burned with *a desire* to develop their utmost resources. *Id.*, *Cop.*, Ch. XXIV, 178b.

He expressed *a desire* to slumber. W. J. LOCKE, *Glory of Clem. Wing*,

ii. He had rowed the skiff in which he left the castle, to the side of the lake most distant from the village, with *the desire* of escaping from the notice of the inhabitants. SCOTT, *Abbot*, Ch. VII, 66.

**example.** i. To give (leave, set) *an example*. MURRAY, s. v. *example*, 6.

That was to set *an example*. R. ASHE KING, *Ol. Goldsm.*, Ch. XIII, 32.

ii. Walk on your toes, whispered my mother, setting *the example* as she led the way up the stairs. JEROME, *Paul Kever*, I, Ch. III, 26a.

NOTE. MURRAY does not illustrate any of the above locutions. Nor does he mention *to set* (etc.) *the example*. Compare also 40.

**faculty.** See 40.

**fashion.** i. It has even become *a fashion* to go over to Ireland. *A cad.*

It is *a fashion* at present to ascribe the great popularity of 'In Memoriam' entirely to the 'teaching' contained in it. A. C. BRADLEY, *Comment. on Tennyson's In Mem.*, Ch. IV, 36.

ii. It was then very much *the fashion* ... to publish results and conceal methods. DE MORGAN, *Es. Probab.*, Pref. 1)

Compare also 8. b, 1, 63 and 67.

**gift.** a) If I had *a gift* for writing like that chap, I'd chuck the old office mighty quick, I can tell you. *An Englishman's Home*, I, (15).

**habit.** i. You have *a bad habit* of jumping at conclusions. MRS. CRAIK, *John Hall*, Ch. X, 100.

He had *a habit* of going to sleep in his chair after dinner. *Rev. of Rev.*, CXCIH, 84b.

The chimney has *a habit* of smoking, when the fire is first lighted. MURRAY, s. v. *habit*, 9, a.

Some men have *a habit* of laughing at anything which is said just as they leave the dining-room. MAR. CRAWF., *Kath. Laud.* I, Ch. VI, 115.

ii. He was little in *the habit* of resisting importunate solicitation. MAC., *Hist.* I, 176. 1)

NOTE. For further illustration see also Ch. XXIV, 34, Obs. VIII, a.

**hope.** i. The judge paternally expressed *a hope* that the combative people would make it up. ROORDA, *Dutch and Eng. Comp.*, § 14.

He had all the time nursed *a faint hope* of a possible reunion. EDNA LYALL, *Don.*, II, 20.

- ii. Whatever dangers I went upon, it was with *the hope* of making myself more worthy of your esteem. FARQUHAR, *The Recruiting Officer*, II, 2, (268). In *the hope* that no soldier would venture to outrage a lady, ... she placed herself before the trunk. MAC., *Fred.*, (588*a*).

Her Majesty expressed *the hope* that he would soon be perfectly recovered. *Daily Chronicle*.

I have, therefore, in conclusion to express *the hope* that our educational authorities will be cautious in introducing phonetics and appointing teachers of it. SWEET, *Sounds of Eng.*, Pref.

**idea.** I always had *an idea* that you were at least seven feet high. THACK., *Van Fair*, I, Ch. IV, 31.

Mrs. Paradyne has *an idea* that the boys are shunning him. Mrs. Wood, *Orville College*, Ch. VI, 89.

Compare *notion*.

**impression.** I have an *impression* that I have somewhere met with it before. MURRAY, *s. v. impression* 17.

**knack.** Hares and rabbits have a foolish *knack* of running butt into an advancing train. *Titbits*.

**notion.** Some persons have consequently taken up *a notion* that she was from the first an overrated writer. MAC., *Madame d'Arblay*, (730*b*).

She has *a notion* that a widow should not marry within seven years of her husband's death. HARDY, *Far from the Madding Crowd*, Ch. LII, 426.

Compare *idea*.

**opinion.** Witnessing these things, the collegians would express *an opinion* that the turnkey, who was a bachelor, had been cut out by nature for a family man. DICK., *Little Dorrit*, Ch. VII, 35*b*.

**opportunity.** i. I was afraid he would never give me *an opportunity*. SMITH, *Riv.*, I, 2.

I should have told you before now, ... but I had not *an opportunity*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. III, 20*b*.

The great fire of 1666 afforded *an opportunity* for effective extensive improvements. MAC., *Hist.*, I, Ch. III, 403.

The other day I had *an opportunity* of introducing N. N. to P. P. Punch.

We are a free people, and we should never neglect *an opportunity* for impressing that fact on those who may be inclined to doubt it. *An Englishman's Home*, I, (13).

- ii. One day I took *the opportunity* of reading to him the first canto. SCOTT, *Intr. to 'the Lady of the Lake'*.

This was *the opportunity* to put his new-born resolution to the test. ID., *Abbot*, Ch. VIII, 73.

I ought to give her *the opportunity*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LV, 391*a*.

What could be better for us than that they ... should give us *the opportunity* of saying that they are wrecking the national interest for the sake of sticking to office? *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5277, 4*a*.

Note. For collocations without either article and for further illustration see 40.

**plan.** They had formed *a plan* to get her out of the castle. BLACK'S *Sir Walt. Scott's Read.*, *Story of the Abbot*, 32.

**position.** i. We are in *a position* to state [etc.]. *Times*.

If she be in *a position* to carry out her assurances, there must be some form of government. *ib.*, No. 1823, 983*a*.

- ii. The Tory Party was in *the position* of a business-house trading under cover of a protective tariff. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6359, 7*a*.

**pretence.** She made *a pretence* of using her fork. MAR. CRAWF., Kath. Laud., II, Ch. X, 183.

**promise.** I readily gave *a promise* of making the settlement he required. GOLDSM., Vic., Ch. XXXI.

Note. For further illustration see also 71 and Ch. XIX, 49, Obs. IV. MURRAY mentions *to give (afford) promise*, unfortunately without any illustrative quotations.

**propensity.** The inhabitants appeared to have *a propensity* to throw any little trifles they were not in want of, into the road. DICK., Cop., Ch. XXVII, 199a.

**question.** i. It is *a question*, whether N. had much to complain of. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales.<sup>1)</sup>

It is even now *a question*, whether we had not better entrust it to him.

ROORDA, Dutch and Eng. Comp., § 15.

It was *a great question*, if they should see him alive. THACK., Pend., I, Ch. II, 28.

ii. That is *the question* to which American public opinion demands an answer. Times, No. 1823, 983c.

**reputation.** He had *a reputation* of being a model father. JAMES PAYN, Glow-Worm Tales, I, B, 39.

**resolution.** I have formed *a resolution* to have no bailiff at all. HARDY, Far from the Madding Crowd, Ch. X, 87.

**right.** i. A sheriff has *a right* to arrest a criminal. WEBST., s. v. *right*.

Gardner had *a perfect right* to put up a poster. Westm. Gaz., No. 5817, 2a.

When I do get a holiday, I think I've *a right* to spend it how I like. An Englishman's Home, I, (24).

ii. I had no need to enlarge upon it, if I had had *the right*. DICK., Cop., Ch. LV, 391a.

Those who pay the piper have *the right* to call the tune. Times.

The thinking public has *the right* to demand an explanation. Eng. Rev., No. 38, 310.

iii. You have *right* to say it. SCOTT, Abbot, Ch. II, 21.

**scale.** The remuneration will be on *a scale* of 1 s. 6 d. per paper examined. Acad. and Lit.

**situation.** We are in *a situation* to offer more than the usual commission. THACK., Sam. Titm., Ch. VI, 69.

**view.** i. I composed it actually with a horror of the stage, and with *a view* to render the thought of it impracticable. BYRON, Let. to Mr. Murray.

ii. He left the university without taking a degree with *the view* of becoming an artist. TROL., Thack., Ch. I, 28.

Note. For illustration see also Ch. XIX, 62, b.

**way.** i. His mother began to be greatly perplexed how to put him in *a way* to shift for himself. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., Handl., I, 104).

The youngster ... seemed in *a fair way* to fulfil the prediction of the old gentleman before mentioned. Ib., 116.

ii. The foreign concessionaire is on *the way* to become a bogey in Belgium. Westm. Gaz., No. 6377, 2c.

**wish.** i. I expressed to Wordsworth *a wish* that his poems were printed in the order of their composition. Acad.<sup>1)</sup>

Sir James expressed *a wish* to you again in the morning. AGN. & EG. CATTLE, Diam. cut Paste, II, Ch. I, 115.

ii. They expressed *the wish* that we should come to an amicable understanding with Russia. Times.

<sup>1)</sup> TEN BRUG., Taalst., X.



- b) Also the use of the indefinite article in the combinations illustrated by the following quotations is of some interest:

**average.** i. Earthquake-shocks occur, *on an average*, about three times a week.

HUXLEY, *Physiogr.*, 188.1)

Half a million workers have been affected by these troubles and have lost *on an average* fourteen days each. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6377, 2c.

- ii. And when he (sc. Mr. Pickwick) was knocked down (which happened *upon the average* every third round), it was the most invigorating sight [etc.].  
DICK., *Pickw.*, Ch. XXX, 271.

The agricultural labourer...is stil *on the average* badly paid. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6423, 1b.

The wind...blows southwest *on the average* for 103 days. *Ib.*, 13c.

Note. MURRAY also has *at an average*, which does not, apparently, occur very frequently. Of (*up*)*on the average* no mention is made by either MURRAY or FLÜGEL; the phrase, however, seems to be common enough.

**change.** We must grow a little more terrestrial *for a change*. *Eng. Rev.*, No. 57, 129.

**end.** \* Its splendour...was all *at an end*. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 116).

The energy and the action of my life were *at an end*. DICK., *Cop.*, Ch. LIV, 383a.

\*\* Whereupon this colloquy came *to an end*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. II, 29.

These two cities (sc. New York and San Francisco) cannot cease to grow till... mankind pass off the globe and come *to an end*. FROUDE, *Oceana*, Ch. XX, 336.

Note. The indefinite article seems to be regularly used in the above phrases. With *to the end*, as used in the following quotation, compare *to a (the) finish* in the same meaning; see below.

The Boers will resist *to the end*. *Times*.

**finish.** i. The Free-Staters do not seem at all inclined to fight *to a finish*. *Daily Chron.*

The Government are fond of saying that the country has declared to continue the war in South Africa and fight *to a finish*. *Daily News*.

- ii. This time it's a fight *to the finish*. *Punch*.

Note. Compare with this the sporting term *to be in at the finish*.

The old squire was determined *to be in at the finish*. W. S. HAYWARD, *Love against World*, 13.1)

**living.** She was compelled to appear before public audiences *for a living*. *T. P.'s Weekly*, No. 474, 714a.

**sacrifice.** The country would *fall a sacrifice* to the hostile ambition of the Spanish monarchy. SHER., *Crit.*, III, 1.

**victim.** Her husband had *fallen a victim* to his zeal for the public safety. WASH. IRV., Dolf Heyl. (STOF., *Handl.*, I, 102).

Compare: Shortly after this he *became the victim* of a passionate attachment to a young lady. ARTHUR C. DOWNER, *The Personal Hist. of John Keats*, 3.

74. In some combinations the definite article is preferred, although the indefinite would appear to be at least equally appropriate.

**exception.** It is *the exception* to see a man without knife and pistol. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 5335, 2c. (See also under *rule*.)

What a happiness it would be to *set the pattern* about here! G. ELIOT, Mid., I, Ch. III, 20.

**rule.** i. Symphonies and symphonic poems are now *the rule* rather than the exception. II. Lond. News, No. 3775, 326*b*.

ii. His supposition that usually both the publisher and author share a loss on the ordinary novel is, we fear, more in the nature of an exception than a *rule*. Athen., No. 4479, 200*c*.

**shoulder.** i. *Showing the cold shoulder*. COBH. BREW., Dict. of Phrase and Fable, s. v.

Casaubon has devilish good reasons ... for *turning the cold shoulder* on a young fellow whose bringing-up he paid for. G. ELIOT, Mid., V Ch. XLVI, 341.

ii. He was therefore not willing to *give them a cold shoulder*. TROL., Barch. Tow., Ch. XXXV, 316.

## CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS.

---

Page	4	line	5	from top, <i>change world into would.</i>
"	7	"	2	" " " Gate " Gates.
"	7	"	27	" " " more " wore.
"	25	"	7	" " " 45 " 44.
"	64	"	28	" " " after <i>minutes</i> place ( <i>ϕ</i> ).
"	64	"	35	" " " , <i>change (q) into (ϕ).</i>
"	64	"	4	" bottom, <i>place (r) after understood.</i>
"	81	"	22	" top, <i>change head-word into noun in the modifying element.</i>
"	81	"	38	" " , <i>change head-word into noun in the modifying element.</i>
"	81	"	10	" bottom, <i>change element modified into modifying element.</i>
"	100	"	20	" top, <i>change Love's Labour Lost into Love's Labour's Lost.</i>
"	112	"	2	" bottom, <i>change to into do.</i>
"	140	"	13	" " " for stands <i>into</i> stands for.
"	141	"	15	" top, <i>change trives into trewes.</i>
"	146	"	25	" " " words-groups <i>into</i> word-groups, and <i>strike out the comma.</i>
"	155	"	20	" bottom, <i>change ashes into ash(es).</i>
"	164	"	1	" top, <i>change repectables into respectables.</i>
"	174	"	7	" " " <b>Balcans into Balkans.</b>
"	176	"	4	" bottom, <i>change somewhath into somewhat.</i>
"	201	"	26	" " " " TROL. <sup>2</sup> <i>into</i> TROL. <sup>1</sup>
"	203	"	2	" " " " A1 " A11.
"	205	"	1	" " " " 24a " 25, a.
"	206	"	19	" " " " 39 " 40.
"	231	"	16	" " " " <i>at one's wits end into at one's wits' end.</i>
"	234	"	1	" " " " XXVI, 5, c, Note <i>into</i> XXVI, 5, Note iv.
"	238	"	13	" " " " <i>shorts into sorts.</i>
"	313	heading,		<i>change</i> CONCORDS <i>into</i> CONCORD.
"	326	line	9	from bottom, <i>change</i> speacing <i>into</i> speaking.
"	343	"	17	" top, " Old English <i>into</i> Middle English.
"	360	"	11	" " " " Tithonius " Tithonus.
"	366	"	21	" " " " particular " partial.
"	371	"	26	" " " " immorta " immortal.

Page 384 line	3	from top, <i>place i before disorderly.</i>
" 401 "	19	" " , <i>change elder born into elder-born.</i>
" 401 "	21	" " , " <i>eldest born " eldest-born.</i>
" 410 "	5	" bottom, <i>change Ch. XXXI, 34, a into Ch. XXXI, 31, a; 34, a.</i>
" 428 "	15	" top, <i>change grounds into grounds.</i>
" 436 "	26	" top, " <i>38, f into 40.</i>
" 437 "	5	" bottom, <i>change Ch. XXXI, 19 into Ch. XXXI, 20.</i>
" 437 "	6	" " " <i>19 into 20.</i>
" 443 "	22	" " <i>add Compare Ch. XXXI, 19, a.</i>
" 494 "	14	" " <i>change periphrastical into periphrastical.</i>
" 508 "	1	" top, <i>change Frequent into Interesting.</i>
" 528 "	12	" bottom, <i>place c) before Before.</i>
" 559 "	5	" top, <i>change indefinite into definite.</i>
" 607 "	24	" bottom, <i>strike out to say truth.</i>
" 650 "	14	" top, <i>change Ch. XXV, 17 into Ch. XXV, 10 and 17.</i>

Page 6, line 4 from bottom. The use of *wool* instead of *woollen*, as in *a wool hat, cap, jacket*, etc. is not rare, but in these combinations the word has a different meaning from *woollen*: *a wool cap*, etc. being a cap, etc. made of knitted wool.

*Lead*, instead of *leaden*, seems to become more and more the ordinary word in the trade. See also MURRAY, s. v. *lead*, 10. It is probably the only word, when the reference is to strips or sheets of lead used for roofing or other building purposes; e. g.: *a lead flat, a lead roof*. MURRAY, s. v. *lead*, 7.

Page 33, c. So far as Early Modern English is concerned, the suppression of the genitival *s* after nouns ending in a sibilant may in many cases be considered as a survival of Middle English practice. Compare EINENKEL, *Streifzüge*, 83.

Page 50. Among the names of things mentioned in 16, *a*, which in ordinary prose are frequently placed in the genitive, include *boat, ship, vessel*, etc., and proper names of ships. Thus in the *Times*, No. 1842, 1d: *the Titanic's passengers, the Carmania's decks, the Carmania's captain*.

For quotations with *boat, ship, vessel*, etc. see under 16, *d*).

Page 71, *b*. Add: Note. In such a sentence as *But we beg pardon of our readers for arguing a point so clear* (MAC., Es., War. Hist., 609b) *of* is not a genitive equivalent, but part of a prepositional object.

Page 97, line 20 from top. Like *all* and *both*, also *half* may belong to the modifying element alone:

He used to do *half the chaps' verses*. THACK., *Pend.*, I, Ch. X, 107.

Page 100, Obs. II. Insert mostly *between* is *and* felt. Like the noun *firm* (Ch. XXVI, 9) genitives denoting a firm are occasionally construed as singulars.

*Selfridge's* admits that Ready-for Service clothes have had a shocking reputation in the past. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6147, 1b.

Page 112, 2, Obs. I, line 8—21. For what is here said about the *th* substitute: In Old English *þ* became voiced between voiced sounds, according to BÜLBING (*Elementarbuch*, § 474) about the year 700.



Thus in *āḥas*, *clāḥas*, *mūḥas*, *paḥas*, *baḥu* (*baḥo*, also *baḥa*, especially in later texts), respectively the plural of *āḥ*, *clāḥ*, *mūḥ*, *pāḥ*, *bāḥ* (Modern English *oath*, *cloth*, *mouth*, *path*, *bath*). In Middle English the singular of these words ends in voiceless *ḥ*, the plural in *ðes*, i. e. in voiced *ð* + *es*, while, moreover, the short vowel in *paḥas* and *baḥu* was lengthened (before 1200). Hence the rule in Modern English: *th* at the end of a plural is voiced, if preceded by a long vowel.

If the half-long vowel of the singular is pronounced in the plural as well (new formations), *th* and *s* are voiceless. Thus in *laths*, *truths*, *youths*, whereas, if the vowel is lengthened in these words, *th* and *s* are voiced. In *growths* and *heaths* the vowel seems to be half-long with most, if not all, speakers, so that *th* and *s* are breathed.

The rule stated above also accounts for the fact that in such plurals as *deaths*, *months*, *healths*, where the vowel is short, and in others like *births*, *fourths*, *hearths*, in which it is half-long, *th* and *s* are voiceless.

Page 122. Note II. Add: *Swine*, both as a singular and a plural, is also used as an opprobrious designation of a man.

i. I was just bringing back your little lad for the second time, when I meets the *swine* coming out of this window in his Sunday togs and topper. ZANGWILL, *The Next Religion*, I, (60).

You're a nice, chivalrous, brotherly sort of *swine*, you are. BERN. SHAW, *Getting Married*, I, (207).

ii. These beastly *swine* make such a grunting here. I cannot catch what Father Bourne is saying. TEN., *Queen Mary*, I, 3, (582b).

Page 125, c, line 28 from top. Add: *prima donna* — *prima donnas* — *prime donne*.

Page 130. Note I. Add: *Moslem* (or *Muslim*) has in the plural *Moslims* (or *Muslims*) and *Moslemin*, while some writers employ the singular form as a plural or collective. The plural *moslemins* is a vulgarism. For illustration see MURRAY.

Page 232, s.v. *works*. Add: *Earthwork* is also used in the singular.

Sigtryg threw up an *earthwork* and made a stand against the Cornish. CH. KINGSLEY, *Herew.*, Ch. V, 38b.

Page 237, s.v. *nut*. Add: the colloquial *to be nuts to* (= Dutch *een bron van genot zijn voor, een kolfje naar de hand zijn van*), Coralie had a tit-bit of information that she knew *would be nuts to* the old lady. AGN. & EG. CASTLE, *Diamond cut Paste*, II. Ch. II, 111.

Page 266, c. *Change* It is, apparently, never preceded by a word denoting number etc. *into* It may be preceded by a word denoting number etc.

It hardly appeared comfortable to the parent that she should have so *many* prickly *offspring* cuddling into her side. *Westm. Gaz.*, No. 6276, 13b.

Page 328, line 19 from top. The use of the neuter pronouns in referring to grown-up persons is not vulgar, as is here stated, but rather expresses contempt.

"Oh! the poor angry darling, there!" she laughed spitefully, "and was *it* jealous! Well, *it* shan't be teased. But what a clever husband to know all about his wife! He should be put in a glass case in a museum. EL. GLYN, *The Reason Why*, Ch. XXV, 232. (Note the change from *it* to *he*.)

Page 329, s. v. **Providence**. Also the feminine pronouns are occasionally used to refer to *Providence*.

*Providence* had given us the British Oak, the finest building material for building ships; why should we fly in *her* face by actually suggesting not only the sacrifice of our oak forests, but the substitution of a material which would not even float. Eng. Rev., No. 61, 116.

Page 343, *b*). Observe that *youngster* is occasionally said of the young of animals:

In turning over the grass in search of a ball, a mother hedgehog and five *youngsters* were discovered. Westm. Gaz., No. 6276, 13*b*.

Her five *youngsters*, about the size of small rats, were snuggling on one side of her. *Ib*.

Page 618, before line 7 from bottom insert:

**hope.** *c*) i. There is *a hope* that Great Britain may still participate in the Panama Exhibition. Westm. Gaz., No. 6401, 2*c*.

ii. There is *hope* yet. Dick., Christm. Car.<sup>5</sup>, IV, 97.

Note. Usage may be equally divided. Compare 73.









PE Poutsma, Hendrik  
1105 A grammar of late modern  
P6 English 2d ed.  
1928  
v.3

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---



